



# **FORCEPOINT**

## **Next Generation Firewall**

**Product Guide**

**6.2**

Revision A

© 2017 Forcepoint  
Forcepoint and the FORCEPOINT logo are trademarks of Forcepoint.  
Raytheon is a registered trademark of Raytheon Company.  
All other trademarks used in this document are the property of their respective owners.

Published 2017

This document may not, in whole or in part, be copied, photocopied, reproduced, translated, or reduced to any electronic medium or machine-readable form without prior consent in writing from Forcepoint. Every effort has been made to ensure the accuracy of this manual. However, Forcepoint makes no warranties with respect to this documentation and disclaims any implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose. Forcepoint shall not be liable for any error or for incidental or consequential damages in connection with the furnishing, performance, or use of this manual or the examples herein. The information in this documentation is subject to change without notice.

# Table of contents

<b>Preface</b> .....	21
<b>Introduction to the Forcepoint Next Generation Firewall solution</b> .....	23
<b>1 The Forcepoint Next Generation Firewall solution</b> .....	25
Security Management Center.....	25
Components in the Forcepoint NGFW solution.....	26
Benefits of the SMC.....	28
Licensing components and features.....	29
<b>2 Introduction to Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role</b> .....	31
Overview of Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role.....	31
Forcepoint NGFW benefits.....	31
<b>3 Introduction to Forcepoint NGFW in the IPS and Layer 2 Firewall roles</b> .....	41
What IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls do.....	41
How IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls inspect traffic.....	42
How IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls respond to incidents.....	42
Main benefits of IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls.....	44
IPS Cluster load balancing.....	45
Disconnect mode for IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls and how it works.....	46
<b>Deployment</b> .....	47
<b>4 Deploying the SMC</b> .....	49
Overview of SMC deployment.....	49
Security considerations for SMC deployment.....	50
Positioning the Management Server.....	51
Positioning Log Servers.....	51
Positioning Management Clients.....	52
Example: SMC deployment.....	52
Post-installation steps for the SMC.....	53
<b>5 Deploying Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role</b> .....	55
Supported platforms for Forcepoint NGFW deployment.....	55
Deploying NGFW Engines in the Amazon Web Services cloud.....	56
Running NGFW Engines as Master NGFW Engines.....	56
Hardware requirements for installing Forcepoint NGFW on third-party hardware.....	57
Hardware for Firewall Cluster nodes.....	57
Guidelines for deploying Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role.....	58
Positioning Firewalls.....	59
Post-installation steps for Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role.....	62
Cable connection guidelines for Firewalls.....	62
Single Firewall configuration overview.....	63
Firewall cluster configuration overview.....	66
<b>6 Deploying Forcepoint NGFW in IPS and Layer 2 Firewall roles</b> .....	71

Supported platforms for Forcepoint NGFW deployment.....	71
Running NGFW Engines as Master NGFW Engines.....	72
Hardware requirements for installing Forcepoint NGFW on third-party hardware.....	72
Guidelines for deploying IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls.....	73
Positioning IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls.....	74
Deploying IPS engines in IDS or IPS mode.....	77
IPS deployment examples.....	84
Post-installation steps for Forcepoint NGFW in the IPS role.....	88
Deploying Layer 2 Firewalls in IPS or Passive Firewall mode.....	88
Layer 2 Firewall deployment example.....	92
Post-installation steps for Forcepoint NGFW in the Layer 2 Firewall role.....	92
Cable connection guidelines for IPS and Layer 2 Firewalls.....	93
Speed and duplex settings for NGFW Engines.....	96

**Setting up..... 99**

<b>7 Using the Management Client.....</b>	<b>101</b>
Management Client and how it works.....	101
Log on to the SMC.....	108
Customize the Management Client layout.....	108
Bookmark Management Client views.....	109
Change the logon view.....	112
Centralized management of global system settings.....	112
View, approve, and commit pending changes.....	113
Create logon banners for administrators.....	114
Change the default language of the Management Client.....	115
Using search features.....	115
Communicating with other administrators.....	119
Use Tools Profile elements to add commands to elements.....	120
Use the online Help locally.....	121
<b>8 Network address translation (NAT) and how it works.....</b>	<b>123</b>
Network address translation and how it works.....	123
Static source translation.....	124
Dynamic source translation.....	125
Static destination translation.....	125
Destination port translation.....	126
<b>9 Configuring system communications.....</b>	<b>127</b>
Considerations for setting up system communications.....	127
Define contact IP addresses.....	129
Select the Location for the Management Client.....	135
Enable NTP on the SMC Appliance.....	136
Configuring SSH access to the SMC Appliance.....	137
Considerations for Multi-Link system communication.....	137
<b>10 Managing elements.....</b>	<b>139</b>
Introduction to elements.....	139
Benefits of exporting or importing elements.....	148
Restore elements from Snapshots.....	152
Lock elements.....	155
Unlock elements.....	155

How the Trash works.....	156
How Categories help you view only certain elements.....	159
Legacy elements.....	164

**Monitoring.....** 167

<b>11 Monitoring Forcepoint NGFW components.....</b>	<b>169</b>
Getting started with monitoring the system.....	169
System monitoring tools in the Management Client.....	170
Overviews and how they work.....	186
Monitoring connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs.....	193
View and compare Element Snapshot elements.....	200
Monitoring connections using Geolocation elements.....	202
Monitoring configurations and policies.....	205
Monitor administrator actions.....	206
Monitor tasks.....	206
Traffic captures and how they work.....	207
Checking maintenance contract information.....	209
Check when internal certificates or CAs expire.....	211
<b>12 Monitoring third-party devices.....</b>	<b>213</b>
Getting started with monitoring third-party devices.....	213
Converting logs from third-party devices.....	214
Methods for monitoring third-party device status.....	224
Configuring Log Servers to monitor third-party devices.....	227
Activate monitoring of third-party devices.....	228
Configuring third-party devices for monitoring.....	229
Changing the ports for third-party device monitoring.....	230
Activate or deactivate third-party device monitoring alerts.....	231
<b>13 Viewing and exporting logged data.....</b>	<b>233</b>
Getting started with the Logs view.....	233
Browsing log data.....	241
Changing how log entries are displayed.....	251
Exporting data from the Logs view.....	253
Save data in PDF or HTML format.....	256
Create rules from log entries.....	258
Create Executable elements from log entries.....	259
<b>14 Reports.....</b>	<b>261</b>
Getting started with reports.....	261
Restricting a report's scope.....	263
Designing reports.....	264
Generate and view reports.....	272
Exporting reports.....	277
Example of reports.....	282
<b>15 Filtering data.....</b>	<b>283</b>
Getting started with filtering data.....	283
Creating filters.....	284
Organizing Filter elements.....	294
Examples of filters.....	295

<b>16 Working with Diagram elements</b>	297
Getting started with Diagram elements	297
Using the Diagram Editor	298
Create Diagram elements	299
Edit the background of Diagram elements	300
Create new elements in Diagram elements	300
Create Diagram elements from configured elements	301
Add comments to Diagram elements	302
Set the layout of Diagram elements	303
Connecting elements in Diagram elements	303
Creating links between Diagram elements	305
View diagram elements	307
<b>17 Incident Case elements</b>	311
Getting started with Incident Case elements	311
Create Incident Case elements	312
Set a context for Incident Case elements	313
Attaching data to Incident Case elements	313
Add Players to Incident Case elements	317
Add journal entries to Incident Case elements	318
Working with existing Incident Case elements	318
Example: Incident Case scenarios	321
<b>Controlling engines</b>	323
<b>18 Controlling engine operation</b>	325
Commanding engines remotely	325
Set engine options	330
Change a NetLink state manually	333
Disable cluster nodes temporarily	334
Re-enable disabled cluster nodes	334
Editing engine configurations	335
<b>19 Working on the engine command line</b>	337
Considerations for working on the engine command line	337
Access the engine command line	338
Reconfigure engine settings	339
Create engine scripts	340
Manually restore configurations on engines	341
Send commands to Virtual NGFW Engines	342
<b>SMC configuration</b>	343
<b>20 Administrator accounts</b>	345
Getting started with administrator accounts	345
How administrator accounts work	346
Default administrator account elements	347
Administrator account configuration overview	349
Creating Administrator Role and Access Control List elements	349
Add administrator accounts	351

Enforce an approval workflow.....	354
Restrict the log data an administrator can view.....	354
Customize log colors for administrators.....	355
Replicate administrator accounts on engines.....	356
Enable and define password policy settings.....	357
Change administrator passwords.....	358
Authenticate administrators using RADIUS or TACACS+ methods.....	360
Disable administrator accounts.....	361
Delete administrator accounts.....	362
API client accounts and how they work.....	362
Configure SMC API.....	363
<b>21 Alert escalation.....</b>	<b>367</b>
Alert escalation and how it works.....	367
Creating Alert elements.....	371
Configure notifications for alerts.....	373
Alert Chain elements and how they work.....	374
Creating Alert Policy elements.....	376
Install Alert Policy elements.....	379
Acknowledge active alerts.....	379
How custom scripts for alert escalation work.....	381
Create SMTP Server elements.....	382
Use a script for SMS notification.....	383
Configure SNMP access for the Management Server.....	384
Test alerts.....	385
Examples of alert escalation.....	386
<b>22 Domain elements.....</b>	<b>389</b>
Getting started with Domain elements.....	389
How Domain elements work.....	390
Create and modify Domain elements.....	391
Log on to a Domain.....	394
Log off from all Domains.....	394
Move elements between Domains.....	395
View Domain status.....	396
Delete a Domain.....	397
Examples of Domain elements.....	397
<b>23 Setting up the Web Portal.....</b>	<b>401</b>
Getting started with the Web Portal.....	401
Define Web Portal Server settings.....	402
Activate HTTPS on the Web Portal Server.....	403
Change Access rules to allow Web Portal connections.....	404
Create Web Portal User accounts.....	406
Customizing the Web Portal.....	408
Write announcements to Web Portal users.....	410
<b>24 Distributing Management Clients through Web Start.....</b>	<b>413</b>
Getting started with Web Start distribution.....	413
Activate Web Start on the Management Server.....	414
Distribute Web Start from external servers.....	415
Access the Web Start Management Clients.....	416

- 25 Configuring the Log Server**..... 417
  - Modify Log Server elements..... 417
  - Select backup Log Servers for high availability..... 418
  - Forwarding log data from Log Servers to external hosts..... 419
  - Edit Log Server configuration parameters..... 424
  - Certify Log Servers..... 426
- 26 Configuring SMC servers for high availability**..... 429
  - Using additional SMC servers for high availability..... 429
  - Management Server HA configuration overview..... 430
  - Log Server HA configuration overview..... 434
  - Manage HA Management Servers..... 437
- 27 Reconfiguring the SMC and engines**..... 441
  - Modify Management Server elements..... 441
  - Configure SMC API..... 443
  - Forward audit data from Management Servers to external hosts..... 445
  - Change the Management Server database password..... 448
  - Change the Management Server or Log Server platform..... 449
  - Change Management Server and Log Server IP addresses..... 450
  - Create Internal ECDSA Certificate Authority elements..... 454
  - Troubleshooting connecting to Management Servers..... 456
  - Things to consider when changing the NGFW Engine role..... 457

**Engine element configuration**..... 461

- 28 Creating and modifying engine elements**..... 463
  - Getting started with engine elements..... 463
  - Creating engine elements..... 464
  - Editing existing engine elements..... 489
  - Configure global contact policy settings for node-initiated contact to the Management Server..... 502
  - Synchronizing engine times..... 503
- 29 Creating and modifying Master NGFW Engine and Virtual NGFW Engine elements**..... 505
  - Configuration of Master NGFW Engines and Virtual NGFW Engines..... 505
  - Create Master NGFW Engine elements..... 508
  - Create Virtual Resource elements..... 509
  - Create Virtual NGFW Engines..... 510
  - Modify Master NGFW Engines and Virtual NGFW Engines..... 514
  - Convert Firewalls to Master NGFW Engines and Virtual Firewall elements..... 516
  - Example: deploying Virtual Firewalls for MSSP customers..... 525
- 30 Network interface configuration**..... 529
  - Network interfaces for engines..... 529
  - Configuring interfaces for Firewalls..... 531
  - Configuring interfaces for IPS engines..... 558
  - Configuring interfaces for Layer 2 Firewalls..... 573
  - Configuring interfaces for Master NGFW Engines..... 587
  - Configuring interfaces for Virtual NGFW Engines..... 602
  - Add manual ARP entries to NGFW Engines..... 614
  - Examples of Single Firewall interface configuration..... 615
  - Examples of Firewall Cluster interface configuration..... 617



Examples of IPS engine interface configuration.....	619
Examples of Layer 2 Firewall interface configuration.....	624
<b>31 Connecting engines to the SMC.....</b>	<b>629</b>
Management connections for engines and how they work.....	629
Connect engines to the SMC.....	631
<b>32 Element-based network address translation (NAT).....</b>	<b>635</b>
Element-based NAT and how it works.....	635
Add NAT definitions for element-based NAT.....	636
Edit or remove NAT definitions for element-based NAT.....	637
<b>33 Configuring the engine tester.....</b>	<b>639</b>
Getting started with the engine tester.....	639
Specify global engine tester settings.....	640
Add engine tests.....	640
Configuring additional test-specific settings for engine tests.....	641
View configured engine tests.....	645
Remove engine tests.....	645
Disable or enable engine tests.....	646
<b>34 Engine permissions.....</b>	<b>647</b>
Getting started with engine permissions.....	647
Define administrator permissions for engines.....	648
Select allowed policies for engines.....	649
<b>35 DNS Relay.....</b>	<b>651</b>
Getting started with DNS relay.....	651
Enable DNS relay.....	654
<b>36 Setting up SNMP for engines.....</b>	<b>657</b>
Getting started with SNMP configuration for engines.....	657
Configure SNMP for engines.....	657
<b>37 Alias element translations for engines.....</b>	<b>661</b>
Getting started with Alias element translations.....	661
Add Alias element translation values.....	662
Remove Alias element translation values.....	663
<b>38 Add-on features for engines.....</b>	<b>665</b>
Getting started with add-on features for engines.....	665
Edit add-on settings for engines.....	666
Configure anti-malware on engines.....	666
Configure anti-spam on engines.....	669
<b>39 Advanced engine settings.....</b>	<b>675</b>
Getting started with advanced engine settings.....	675
Open the advanced settings.....	676
Adjusting Firewall clustering options.....	676
Adjust IPS clustering options.....	680
Adjust Layer 2 Firewall clustering options.....	680
Adjust Master NGFW Engine clustering options.....	681
Configure inspection of tunneled traffic.....	684
Set connection timeouts.....	684

Configure SYN rate limits for engines.....	685
Configure log handling settings for engines.....	686
Configure DoS protection settings for engines.....	687
Configure scan detection settings for engines.....	688

**Routing.....** 691

<b>40 Configuring routing and antispoofing.....</b>	<b>693</b>
Getting started with routing.....	693
Using routing and antispoofing.....	695
Routing configuration overview.....	698
View and add default routes.....	699
Add single-link routes.....	700
Add routes for firewalls.....	701
Adding routes for Master NGFW Engines.....	706
Adding routes for Virtual Firewalls.....	706
Defining Multi-Link routes for firewalls.....	706
Define routing for the Route-Based VPN.....	710
Add routes for IPS engines or Layer 2 Firewalls.....	710
Remove routes.....	711
Modify antispoofing.....	712
Check routes with a Route Query.....	714
Examples of routing configuration.....	715
<b>41 Configuring dynamic routing.....</b>	<b>717</b>
Getting started with dynamic routing.....	717
Dynamic routing configuration overview.....	718
Creating elements for dynamic routing.....	718
Configure BGP.....	722
Configure OSPFv2.....	724
Configure PIM.....	726
Preview the dynamic routing configuration in Quagga syntax.....	727
Using the command line to configure dynamic routing.....	728
Restart dynamic routing processing.....	730
<b>42 Outbound traffic management.....</b>	<b>731</b>
Getting started with outbound traffic management.....	731
Configuring outbound Multi-Link settings.....	737
Create outbound load-balancing NAT rules.....	740
Monitoring and testing outbound traffic management.....	742
Examples of Multi-Link.....	742
<b>43 Inbound traffic management.....</b>	<b>745</b>
Getting started with inbound traffic management.....	745
Defining Server Pool elements.....	749
Install Server Pool Monitoring Agents.....	755
Uninstall Server Pool Monitoring Agents.....	756
Configuring Server Pool Monitoring Agents.....	757
Enable Server Pool Monitoring Agents.....	768
Entering Server Pool IP addresses for your DNS Server.....	769
Create Access rules for inbound load balancing.....	770
Configuring dynamic DNS updates for Server Pools.....	771

Test Monitoring Agents on the command line.....	774
Monitor Monitoring Agents on the command line.....	774
Examples of Server Pools.....	775

**Traffic inspection policies..... 777**

<b>44 Creating and managing policy elements.....</b>	<b>779</b>
Getting started with policies.....	779
Create template policies or policies.....	788
How sub-policies work.....	790
Install policies.....	792
Using policy elements and rules.....	798
Deleting policies templates or sub-policies.....	800
Firewall Policy elements examples.....	801
IPS Policy example.....	803
<b>45 Ethernet rules.....</b>	<b>805</b>
Getting started with Ethernet rules.....	805
Overview of Ethernet rules.....	805
Configuration of Ethernet rules.....	806
Examples of Ethernet rules.....	809
<b>46 Access rules.....</b>	<b>811</b>
Getting started with Access rules.....	811
Overview of Access rules.....	811
Configuring Access rules.....	812
Using Access rules.....	818
Examples of firewall Access rules.....	824
Examples of IPS Access rules.....	827
<b>47 NAT rules.....</b>	<b>831</b>
Getting started with NAT rules.....	831
Configuring NAT rules.....	832
Using NAT and NAT rules.....	835
Examples of NAT configuration.....	839
<b>48 Inspection Policy elements.....</b>	<b>843</b>
Inspection Policy elements and how they work.....	843
How Inspection Policy elements are designed.....	844
Set default options for Exception rules in Inspection Policy elements.....	849
Example: Tuning an Inspection Policy element to eliminate false positives for a firewall.....	849
<b>49 Editing policies.....</b>	<b>851</b>
Getting started with editing policies.....	851
The different parts of the policy editing view.....	853
Editing rules in a policy.....	856
Add Insert Points in Policy Templates.....	862
Automatic rules and how they work.....	862
Configure settings for Automatic rules.....	863
Add Ethernet rules.....	863
Add Access rules.....	865
Add NAT rules.....	874
Add Inspection rules.....	880

Add Exception rules.....	883
Specify rule validity times.....	886
Validate rules automatically.....	887
How default rules can be changed.....	891
<b>50 Defining IP addresses.....</b>	<b>893</b>
Defining IP addresses as elements.....	893
Access and modify network elements.....	898
Edit Expression elements.....	898
Using SMC elements to represent IP addresses in policies.....	899
<b>51 Working with Service elements.....</b>	<b>901</b>
Getting started with Service elements.....	901
Creating Service elements.....	902
Protocol elements and how they work.....	905
Defining Protocol parameters.....	905
<b>52 Defining Situation elements.....</b>	<b>915</b>
Getting started with Situation elements.....	915
Situations configuration overview.....	916
Create custom Situation elements.....	917
Context options for Situation elements.....	919
Defining Context Options for Correlation Situation elements.....	920
Anti-Malware Contexts for Situation elements.....	926
DoS Detection Contexts for Situation elements.....	926
Scan Detection Contexts for Situation elements.....	926
Protocol-specific Contexts for Situation elements.....	926
File Contexts for Situation elements.....	927
System Contexts for Situation elements.....	927
Default elements for Situation elements.....	927
Using Tags with Situation elements.....	927
Vulnerability elements and how they work.....	930
Using Situation elements.....	931
Examples of custom Situation elements.....	932
<b>53 Using Network Application elements.....</b>	<b>935</b>
Getting started with Network Application elements.....	935
Create TLS Match elements for network application detection.....	936
Access rules for network application detection.....	938
Example: blocking network application use.....	941
<b>54 Defining User Response elements.....</b>	<b>943</b>
User Response elements and how they work.....	943
Create User Response elements.....	945
<b>55 Quality of Service.....</b>	<b>947</b>
Quality of Service (QoS) and how it works.....	947
Create QoS Class elements.....	955
Define QoS Policy elements.....	956
Apply QoS to traffic.....	959
Examples of bandwidth management and traffic prioritization scenarios.....	960
<b>56 File filtering.....</b>	<b>963</b>
How file filtering works.....	963

Integrate file reputation services and sandboxes.....	965
Integrate McAfee GTI file reputation with Forcepoint NGFW.....	965
Integrate TIE file reputation with Forcepoint NGFW.....	966
Forcepoint Advanced Malware Detection and how it works.....	967
Integrate Forcepoint Advanced Malware Detection with Forcepoint NGFW.....	971
Integrate an Advanced Threat Defense server with Forcepoint NGFW.....	973
Restrict file types with file filtering.....	974
<b>57 Integrating McAfee ePO and McAfee EIA with Forcepoint NGFW.....</b>	<b>977</b>
EIA integration and how it works.....	977
EIA integration configuration overview.....	978
Integrate McAfee ePO with Forcepoint NGFW.....	979
Configure the EIA settings on the engine.....	980
Define Executable elements.....	980
Use Client Applications, Executables, and predefined user types in IPv4 Access rules.....	982
Enable logging of Client Application and Executable information.....	983
<b>58 Filtering URLs.....</b>	<b>985</b>
URL filtering and how it works.....	985
Enable ThreatSeeker for engines.....	988
Use an HTTP proxy to connect to the ThreatSeeker Intelligence Cloud server.....	989
Add Access rules for category-based URL filtering.....	990
Add URL List elements to manually block or allow URLs.....	991
Add Access rules for custom URL Lists.....	992
Migrate a single NGFW Engine to ThreatSeeker URL filtering.....	993
Migrate an NGFW cluster to ThreatSeeker URL filtering.....	994
Examples of URL filtering.....	995
<b>59 Spam filtering.....</b>	<b>997</b>
Spam filtering overview.....	997
Configuring spam filtering for engines.....	997
Using spam filtering.....	998
<b>60 Anti-malware scanning.....</b>	<b>1001</b>
Anti-malware scanning overview.....	1001
Configuring anti-malware scanning.....	1002
Using anti-malware scanning.....	1002
<b>61 Protocol Agents on engines.....</b>	<b>1005</b>
Protocol Agents overview.....	1005
Configuring Protocol Agents.....	1007
Using Protocol Agents.....	1008
Examples of Protocol Agents.....	1014
<b>62 Sidewinder Proxies.....</b>	<b>1017</b>
Sidewinder Proxies and how they work.....	1017
Change logging options for Sidewinder Proxies.....	1020
Enable Sidewinder Proxy.....	1021
Configure Sidewinder SSH Proxy.....	1021
Add custom Service elements for Sidewinder HTTP Proxy.....	1027
Add custom Service elements for Sidewinder TCP Proxy or Sidewinder UDP Proxy.....	1028
Add rules for Sidewinder Proxy.....	1028
Advanced settings for Sidewinder Proxies.....	1029

Supported advanced Sidewinder Proxy settings.....	1030
<b>63 Setting up TLS inspection.....</b>	<b>1035</b>
TLS inspection and how it works.....	1035
Using TLS inspection.....	1039
Configure TLS inspection for server protection.....	1040
Configure TLS inspection for client protection.....	1042
Define trusted certificate authorities for TLS inspection.....	1046
Exclude traffic from decryption for TLS inspection.....	1047
Activating TLS inspection.....	1050
Examples of TLS inspection.....	1054
<b>64 Using external content inspection servers.....</b>	<b>1057</b>
External content inspection and how it works.....	1057
Create a Content Inspection Server element.....	1061
Define a Service element for CIS redirection.....	1062
Redirect traffic to a CIS server.....	1063
Define NAT for CIS redirection.....	1064
Example: screening traffic to the Internet with an external content inspection server.....	1065
<b>65 Blacklisting IP addresses.....</b>	<b>1069</b>
Blacklisting traffic and how it works.....	1069
Enable blacklisting traffic.....	1072
Configure automatic blacklisting of traffic.....	1073
Blacklist traffic manually.....	1075
Monitoring blacklisting.....	1076
<b>Users and authentication.....</b>	<b>1077</b>
<b>66 Setting up directory servers.....</b>	<b>1079</b>
Getting started with directory servers.....	1079
Integrating external directory servers.....	1082
Enabling access control by user.....	1087
Defining user accounts.....	1090
Add Users to User Group elements.....	1093
Remove Users from User Group elements.....	1093
Import user information.....	1094
Export user information.....	1094
Change user passwords.....	1095
Remove the authentication settings of a user.....	1095
Reset a firewall engine's local user database.....	1096
Set user database replication on or off for Firewalls and Master NGFW Engines.....	1096
Examples of Directory Servers.....	1097
<b>67 Setting up user authentication.....</b>	<b>1099</b>
Getting started with user authentication.....	1099
Integrating external authentication services.....	1102
Define IPv4 Access rules for authentication.....	1107
Enable browser-based user authentication.....	1108
Authenticate to firewalls or virtual firewalls.....	1114
Customize the User Authentication Pages for browser-based user authentication.....	1115
Monitoring and testing user authentication.....	1117

Examples of user authentication.....	1118
<b>Virtual private networks.....</b>	<b>1123</b>
<b>68 Getting started with VPNs.....</b>	<b>1125</b>
VPNs and how they work.....	1125
IPsec protocol in VPNs.....	1128
Authentication in IPsec VPNs.....	1130
Supported encryption methods for IPsec VPNs.....	1134
Configuring IPsec VPNs with external gateway devices.....	1137
Logs related to VPNs.....	1137
Using a dynamic IP address for a VPN endpoint.....	1138
Using a NAT address for a VPN endpoint.....	1138
Clustering and VPNs.....	1139
Multi-Link and VPNs.....	1139
<b>69 Basic Policy-Based VPN configurations.....</b>	<b>1141</b>
Getting started with basic policy-based VPN configurations.....	1141
Configuration 1: Basic VPN between NGFW Engines.....	1142
Configuration 2: Basic VPN with a partner gateway.....	1145
Configuration 3: Basic VPN for remote clients.....	1153
Configuration 4: Basic VPN hub.....	1160
<b>70 Configuring VPNs.....</b>	<b>1165</b>
VPN configuration overview.....	1165
Default elements for policy-based VPNs.....	1168
Define a custom Gateway Profile element.....	1169
Defining VPN gateways.....	1170
Defining Site elements for VPN gateways.....	1177
Define VPN Traffic Selector elements.....	1182
Defining VPN profiles.....	1183
Defining Policy-Based VPN elements.....	1192
SSL VPN configuration.....	1209
Overview of Route-Based VPN configuration.....	1214
Edit the Route-Based VPN.....	1217
Monitoring policy-based VPNs.....	1222
Monitor SSL VPN connections.....	1223
Examples of policy-based VPNs.....	1224
Examples of the Route-Based VPN.....	1228
<b>71 Managing VPN certificates.....</b>	<b>1231</b>
VPN certificates and how they work.....	1231
Define additional VPN certificate authorities.....	1233
Create an internal ECDSA certificate authority for VPN gateways.....	1235
Select the default internal certificate authority.....	1236
Create a VPN certificate or certificate request for a VPN Gateway element.....	1236
Sign external VPN certificate requests with an internal certificate authority.....	1238
Select which internal certificate authority signs each certificate.....	1239
Upload VPN certificates manually.....	1240
Replace expired VPN certificates.....	1241
Export signed VPN gateway certificates or VPN certificate authority certificates.....	1242
Import an externally signed VPN gateway certificate.....	1243

Check when VPN gateway certificates expire.....	1244
Check when VPN certificate authorities expire.....	1245
<b>72 Reconfiguring existing VPNs.....</b>	<b>1247</b>
Changing tunnels in a VPN.....	1247
NAT traversal in VPNs.....	1248
NAT for VPN gateway communications.....	1248
NAT for traffic in VPN tunnels.....	1249
Add gateways to an existing VPN.....	1249
Changing gateway IP addresses in an existing VPN.....	1250
Giving VPN access to more hosts.....	1251
Route all Internet traffic through policy-based VPNs.....	1251
Redirect traffic between VPN tunnels.....	1252
Changing pre-shared keys for VPNs.....	1254
Gateway settings for VPNs.....	1256
<b>73 VPN client settings.....</b>	<b>1259</b>
VPN client settings and how they work.....	1259
VPN client settings in the Management Client.....	1260
Defining IP addresses for VPN clients.....	1262
<b>Maintenance and upgrades.....</b>	<b>1267</b>
<b>74 Configuration of automatic updates and upgrades.....</b>	<b>1269</b>
Getting started with automatic updates and upgrades.....	1269
Configure automatic updates and upgrades.....	1270
<b>75 Backing up and restoring system configurations.....</b>	<b>1273</b>
Backups and how they work.....	1273
Back up system configurations.....	1275
Copy backup files to a storage location.....	1276
Restoring backups.....	1276
Restore system configurations after a hardware failure.....	1279
Managing SMC Appliance backups.....	1280
<b>76 Managing log data.....</b>	<b>1283</b>
Log data management and how it works.....	1283
Reducing unnecessary log generation.....	1286
Archive log data.....	1287
Delete log data.....	1289
Export log data.....	1293
View history of completed Log Tasks.....	1295
Examples of log management.....	1295
<b>77 Managing and scheduling Tasks.....</b>	<b>1297</b>
Getting started with Tasks.....	1297
Task configuration overview.....	1298
Task types.....	1298
Creating Task Definitions.....	1300
Schedule Tasks.....	1305
Start Tasks manually.....	1306
Pause the scheduled execution of Tasks.....	1307
Remove Tasks from schedules.....	1307



Stop running Tasks.....	1308
<b>78 Managing licenses.....</b>	<b>1309</b>
Getting Started with licenses.....	1309
Generate licenses.....	1312
Upgrading licenses manually.....	1313
<b>79 Upgrading the SMC.....</b>	<b>1319</b>
Getting started with upgrading the SMC.....	1319
Upgrading the SMC configuration overview.....	1320
Obtain SMC installation files.....	1321
Upgrade SMC servers.....	1322
Default SMC installation directories.....	1323
<b>80 Upgrading the engines.....</b>	<b>1325</b>
Getting started with upgrading NGFW Engines.....	1325
Upgrading the engines configuration overview.....	1326
Obtain and import NGFW Engine upgrade files.....	1327
Upgrade engines remotely.....	1328
<b>81 Manual dynamic updates.....</b>	<b>1331</b>
Getting started with manual dynamic updates.....	1331
Dynamic update configuration overview.....	1332
Import dynamic update packages.....	1332
Activate dynamic update packages.....	1333
<b>82 Managing SMC Appliance patches.....</b>	<b>1335</b>
Getting started with SMC Appliance patches.....	1335
Manage SMC Appliance patches.....	1336
Roll back the SMC Appliance.....	1338
<b>Troubleshooting.....</b>	<b>1339</b>
<b>83 General troubleshooting tips.....</b>	<b>1341</b>
If your problem is not listed.....	1341
Tools for further troubleshooting.....	1341
<b>84 Troubleshooting accounts and passwords.....</b>	<b>1343</b>
Replace forgotten passwords.....	1343
Troubleshoot user accounts.....	1344
Create an emergency administrator account.....	1344
<b>85 Messages for troubleshooting.....</b>	<b>1347</b>
Alert log messages for troubleshooting.....	1347
Log messages for troubleshooting.....	1349
Error messages for troubleshooting.....	1355
<b>86 Troubleshooting certificates.....</b>	<b>1357</b>
Problems with certificates.....	1357
Renew SMC server certificates.....	1359
Renew engine certificates.....	1361
Troubleshoot expiring certificate authorities.....	1362
Revert to an Internal RSA Certificate Authority.....	1363

<b>87 Troubleshooting engine operation</b> .....	1365
Troubleshoot engines that do not go or stay online.....	1365
Troubleshoot errors when commanding engines.....	1366
Troubleshoot heartbeat and synchronization errors.....	1367
Troubleshoot contact between engines and the Management Server.....	1367
<b>88 Troubleshooting licenses</b> .....	1369
Problems with licenses.....	1369
Troubleshoot licenses that are shown as retained.....	1369
Troubleshoot licenses that are shown as unassigned.....	1370
<b>89 Troubleshooting logging</b> .....	1373
Troubleshoot the Logs view.....	1373
Troubleshoot log storage.....	1374
Troubleshoot Log Server operation.....	1375
<b>90 Troubleshooting the Management Client</b> .....	1377
Troubleshoot disabled options in the Management Client.....	1377
Troubleshoot slow Management Client startup and use.....	1378
Troubleshoot logging on to the Management Client.....	1379
Troubleshoot Management Client layout and views.....	1380
Troubleshoot missing or incomplete statistics.....	1380
Troubleshoot status monitoring.....	1381
Troubleshoot Web Start installation on an external server.....	1381
Troubleshoot Management Server commands.....	1382
<b>91 Troubleshooting NAT</b> .....	1385
Problems with NAT and possible causes.....	1385
Troubleshoot NAT that is not applied correctly.....	1386
Troubleshoot NAT that is applied when it should not be.....	1387
<b>92 Troubleshooting policies</b> .....	1389
Troubleshoot policy installation.....	1389
Troubleshoot rules.....	1392
Troubleshooting packets incorrectly dropped by antispoofing.....	1395
Troubleshooting unsupported definitions in IPv6 Access rules.....	1396
<b>93 Troubleshooting reporting</b> .....	1397
Error messages for reports.....	1397
Troubleshoot report generation.....	1397
Troubleshoot reports with empty sections or incomplete data.....	1398
<b>94 Troubleshooting upgrades</b> .....	1401
Troubleshoot upgrade failure because of running services.....	1401
Respond to Security Management Center installation failed messages.....	1401
<b>95 Troubleshooting VPNs</b> .....	1403
Find VPN issues.....	1403
Information about IPsec tunnels in logs.....	1403
VPN certificate issues.....	1404
Problems with VPNs with external gateways.....	1405
Stonesoft VPN Client connection issues.....	1406
If traffic does not use the Route-Based VPN.....	1407

<b>Appendices</b> .....	1409
<b>A Command line tools</b> .....	1411
Security Management Center commands.....	1411
Forcepoint NGFW Engine commands.....	1424
Server Pool Monitoring Agent commands.....	1430
<b>B Default communication ports</b> .....	1433
Security Management Center ports.....	1433
Forcepoint NGFW Engine ports.....	1436
<b>C Working with expressions</b> .....	1441
Introduction to expressions.....	1441
Using operands.....	1442
Expression processing order.....	1443
Grouping operands using parentheses.....	1444
Nesting expressions.....	1444
<b>D Predefined Aliases</b> .....	1445
Predefined User Aliases.....	1445
System Aliases.....	1445
<b>E Situation Context parameters</b> .....	1447
Correlation Context parameters.....	1447
Other Context parameters.....	1450
<b>F Regular expression syntax</b> .....	1451
SMC regular expression syntax.....	1451
Special character sequences.....	1453
Pattern-matching modifiers.....	1454
Variable expression evaluation.....	1456
Stream operations.....	1458
System variables.....	1459
Independent subexpressions.....	1461
Parallel matching groups.....	1461
Tips for working with regular expressions.....	1461
<b>G SNMP traps and MIBs</b> .....	1463
SNMP traps and MIBs.....	1463
<b>H Schema updates for external LDAP servers</b> .....	1473
Schema updates for external LDAP servers.....	1473
<b>I Log fields</b> .....	1475
Log entry fields.....	1475
Facility field values.....	1495
Type field values.....	1496
Action field values.....	1497
Event field values.....	1498
IPsec VPN log messages.....	1501
Audit entry types.....	1506
Syslog entries.....	1510
Log fields controlled by the Additional Payload option.....	1510

Connection states.....	1511
<b>J Keyboard shortcuts.....</b>	<b>1513</b>
General shortcuts.....	1513
Shortcuts for browsing logs and alerts.....	1514
Other view-specific shortcuts.....	1515
<b>K Multicasting.....</b>	<b>1517</b>
Multicasting vs. unicasting or broadcasting.....	1517
Overview of IP Multicasting.....	1518
Internet Group Management Protocol and how it works.....	1519
Ethernet multicasting.....	1519
Multicasting and Forcepoint NGFW Firewalls.....	1520
<b>L TCP/IP protocol headers.....</b>	<b>1523</b>
Internet Protocol.....	1523
Internet Control Message Protocol.....	1524
Transmission Control Protocol.....	1524
User Datagram Protocol.....	1525
<b>M ASCII character codes.....</b>	<b>1527</b>
ASCII character codes.....	1527
ASCII control codes.....	1531





# Preface

This guide provides the information you need to work with your Forcepoint product.

## Conventions

---

This guide uses these typographical conventions and icons.

<i>Book title, term, emphasis</i>	Title of a book, chapter, or topic; a new term; emphasis.
<b>Bold</b>	Text that is strongly emphasized.
User input, code, message	Commands and other text that the user types; a code sample; a displayed message.
<b>Interface text</b>	Words from the product interface like options, menus, buttons, and dialog boxes.
<a href="#">Hypertext</a>	A link to a topic or to an external website.
	<b>Note:</b> Additional information, like an alternate method of accessing an option.
	<b>Tip:</b> Suggestions and recommendations.
	<b>Important/Warning:</b> Valuable advice to protect your computer system, software installation, network, business, or data.
	<b>Warning:</b> Critical advice to prevent bodily harm when using a hardware product.

## Find product documentation

---

On the Forcepoint support website, you can find information about a released product, including product documentation, technical articles, and more.

You can get additional information and support for your product on the Forcepoint support website at <https://support.forcepoint.com>. There, you can access product documentation, Knowledge Base articles, downloads, cases, and contact information.



# PART I

## Introduction to the Forcepoint Next Generation Firewall solution

### Contents

- [The Forcepoint Next Generation Firewall solution](#) on page 25
- [Introduction to Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role](#) on page 31
- [Introduction to Forcepoint NGFW in the IPS and Layer 2 Firewall roles](#) on page 41

Before setting up Forcepoint™ Next Generation Firewall (Forcepoint NGFW), it is useful to know what the different components do and what engine roles are available. Forcepoint NGFW was formerly known as Stonesoft® Next Generation Firewall by Forcepoint.





# The Forcepoint Next Generation Firewall solution

### Contents

- [Security Management Center](#) on page 25
- [Components in the Forcepoint NGFW solution](#) on page 26
- [Benefits of the SMC](#) on page 28
- [Licensing components and features](#) on page 29

The Forcepoint NGFW solution consists of one or more Forcepoint NGFW Engines, and the Forcepoint™ NGFW Security Management Center (SMC), formerly known as Stonesoft® Management Center by Forcepoint (SMC). The SMC is the management component of the Forcepoint NGFW solution.

## Security Management Center

---

The Security Management Center (SMC) is the centralized management component of the Forcepoint NGFW solution. The SMC makes the Forcepoint NGFW solution especially well-suited to complex and distributed network environments.

The SMC configures and monitors all components in the Forcepoint NGFW solution. The centralized management system provides a single point of contact for many geographically dispersed administrators.

The unified management platform provides major benefits for organizations of all sizes:

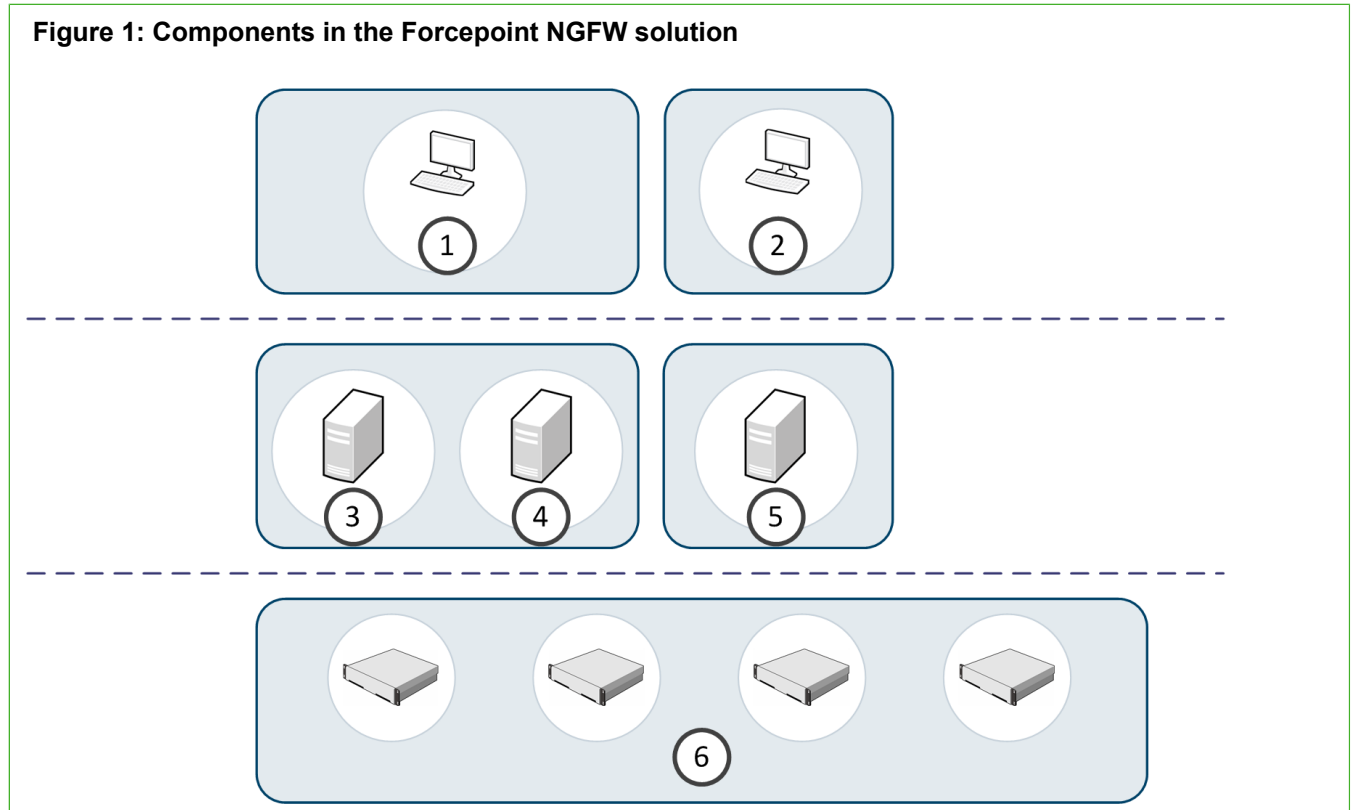
- By allowing automatic coordinated responses when a security threat is detected, interaction between components managed by the same Management Server creates security benefits. Automatic coordinated responses provide instant blocking of unwanted traffic, and reduce the need for immediate human intervention.
- Multiple administrators can log on at the same time to efficiently configure and monitor all NGFW Engines. The SMC provides a single user interface. This interface allows unified configuration, monitoring, and reporting of the whole Forcepoint NGFW solution with the same tools and within the same user session.
- The reuse of configuration information across components in the system allows you to:
  - Avoid the laborious and error-prone duplicate work of configuring the same details for all components individually.
  - Export and import the configurations between multiple separate systems.

The SMC is designed to manage large installations and geographic distribution. The SMC design creates flexibility and allows scaling up the existing components and adding new types of components to the system without sacrificing its ease-of-use.

# Components in the Forcepoint NGFW solution

The Forcepoint NGFW solution includes NGFW Engines, SMC server components, and SMC user interface components.

**Figure 1: Components in the Forcepoint NGFW solution**



Number	Component	Description
1	Management Client	The Management Client is the user interface for the SMC. You use the Management Client for all configuration and monitoring tasks. You can install the Management Client locally as an application, or you can start the Management Client with a web browser using the Java Web Start feature. You can install an unlimited number of Management Clients.
2	Web Portal	The Web Portal is the browser-based user interface for the services provided by the Web Portal Server.
3	Management Server	The Management Server is the central component for system administration. One Management Server can manage many different types of engines.
4	Log Server	Log Servers store traffic logs that can be managed and compiled into reports. Log Servers also correlate events, monitor the status of engines, show real-time statistics, and forward logs to third-party devices.
5	Web Portal Server	The Web Portal Server is a separately licensed optional component that provides restricted access to log data, reports, and policy snapshots.
6	NGFW Engines	NGFW Engines inspect traffic. You can use NGFW Engines in the Firewall/VPN, IPS, or Layer 2 Firewall role.

## Management Clients

---

The Management Client is the tool for all day-to-day configuration and management tasks, including network interface configuration and remote upgrades.

All commands and configuration changes are relayed through the Management Server, so the Management Clients never connect to the NGFW Engines directly. Management Clients also connect to Log Servers to fetch log entries for administrators to view. Many Management Clients can be deployed anywhere in the network.

## Management Server

---

The Management Server is the central component for system administration. One Management Server can manage many different types of engines.

The Management Server provides the following types of services:

- Administration and system commands: The Management Server is the central point of all administration tasks (accessed through the Management Client).
- Configuration database: The Management Server stores all configuration information for Firewall/VPN, IPS, and Layer 2 Firewall engines and other system components.
- Monitoring: The Management Server tracks the operating state of the system components and relays this information to the administrators.
- Alert notifications: The Management Server can notify administrators about new alerts in the system, for example, by sending out an email or an SMS text message.
- Certificate authorities (CAs): The Management Server installation includes two basic CAs:
  - An Internal CA that issues all certificates that system components need for system communications.
  - VPN CA that can be used to issue certificates for VPN authentication.

## Log Server

---

Log Servers store traffic logs that can be managed and compiled into reports. Log Servers also correlate events.

Multiple Log Servers can be deployed, which is useful in geographically distributed systems. Log Servers provide the following types of services:

- Log data: Log Servers receive and store logs from other system components and make the data available for viewing and generating reports.
- Statistics and status data: Log Servers receive, relay, and store information about the operation of other system components and keep a record available for generating reports.
- Event correlation: Log Servers detect patterns of events in traffic inspected by multiple NGFW Engines.

## Web Portal Server

---

The Web Portal Server is a separately licensed optional component that can be used to provide restricted access to log data, reports, and policy snapshots.

The Web Portal Server provides a web-based interface that users who have Web Portal user accounts can access with their web browsers.

# Benefits of the SMC

---

The SMC has three main benefits: centralized remote management of system components, support for large-scale installations, and server high availability.

## Centralized remote management

---

A centralized point for managing all system components simplifies the system administration significantly.

Ease of administration is central to the SMC. The centralized management system:

- Provides administrators with visibility into the whole network.
- Simplifies and automates system maintenance tasks.
- Reduces the work required to configure the system.

You can also combine information from different sources without having to integrate the components with an external system.

The centralized management system is not an add-on; the system has been designed from the start to be centrally managed.

The main centralized management features in the Security Management Center include the following:

- Sharing configuration data in different configurations eliminates the need for duplicate work, which reduces the complexity of configurations and the amount of work required for changes. For example, an IP address used in the configurations of several different NGFW Engines has to be changed only one time in one place. It has to be changed only once because it is defined as a reusable element in the system.
- Remote upgrades can be downloaded and pushed automatically to several components. A single remote upgrade operation updates all necessary configuration details on the NGFW Engines, including operating system patches and updates.
- Fail-safe policy installation with automatic rollback to prevent policies that prevent management connections from being installed.
- The integrated backup feature allows saving all system configurations stored on the Management Server in one manually or automatically run backup.
- Central access point for administrators with centralized access control. The Management Client requires no separate installation, because it can be made available centrally and be started through a web browser. Several administrators can be logged on at the same time and simultaneously change the system. Conflicting changes are automatically prevented. Administrator rights can be easily adjusted in a highly granular way.

## Support for large-scale installations

---

The Security Management Center is scalable from managing a single NGFW Engine up to a system consisting of hundreds of components.

Several Log Servers are required in larger systems, but a single Management Server can still effectively manage large installations. Features that make large-scale installations easy to manage include:

- The possibility to separate configurations into isolated Domains.
- To filter configuration definitions in and out of view based on user-defined categories.

## High availability

---

You can optionally install one or more additional Management Servers or Log Servers.

If the active Management Server is damaged, loses power, or becomes otherwise unusable, additional Management Servers allow system control without delays and loss of configuration information. A special Management Server license for multiple Management Servers is required.



**Note:** The Forcepoint™ NGFW Security Management Center Appliance (SMC Appliance) does not support high availability for the Management Server or the Log Server.

Log Servers can also be used as backups for each other to allow continued operation when a Log Server goes offline. When a Log Server becomes unavailable, engines can automatically start sending new logs and monitoring data to another pre-selected Log Server. Log Servers do not automatically synchronize their data, but you can set up automatic tasks in the system for backing up important records.

## Licensing components and features

---

License files provide your system a proof of purchase. The Management Server maintains license files.

You receive most licenses as proof-of-license (POL) codes. The proof-of-serial (POS) license code for Forcepoint NGFW appliances is printed on a label attached to the appliances. Using your license code, you can log on to the License Center and view and manage your licenses at: <https://stonesoftlicenses.forcepoint.com>.

Generally, each SMC server and each Firewall, IPS, Layer 2 Firewall, and Master NGFW Engine node must be separately licensed in your SMC. Virtual NGFW Engines do not require their own licenses.

- The SMC components must always be licensed by importing a license file that you create at the Forcepoint website.
- Licenses for Forcepoint NGFW appliances can be generated automatically. You might also need to generate these licenses manually at the Forcepoint website, depending on the appliance model and Management Server connectivity.

The use of some individual features is also limited by license.

All licenses indicate the latest version for which they are valid and are valid on all earlier software versions up to the version indicated. Licenses are by default automatically updated to the newest version possible for the component. If automatic license updates are not possible or disabled, you must generate new licenses manually before upgrading to a new major release.

License upgrades are included in maintenance contracts. If the maintenance contract of a component expires, it is not possible to upgrade the license to any newer version. Evaluation licenses are valid for 30 days.



# Introduction to Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role

### Contents

- [Overview of Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role](#) on page 31
- [Forcepoint NGFW benefits](#) on page 31

NGFW Engine in the Firewall/VPN role provides access control and VPN connectivity.

## Overview of Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role

---

Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role provides access control and VPN connectivity.

The term *Firewall* refers to the combination of the Forcepoint NGFW software in the Firewall/VPN role, and the hardware device or the virtual machine that the software runs on.

Firewalls have the following representations in the SMC:

- The Single Firewall and Firewall Cluster elements are containers for the main configuration information directly related to the Firewall.
- The individual physical engine devices are shown as one or more Nodes under the main Firewall element in some views of the Management Client.

The Forcepoint NGFW software includes an integrated operating system (a specially hardened version of Linux). There is no need for separate operating system patches or upgrades. All software on the engines is upgraded during the software upgrade.

## Forcepoint NGFW benefits

---

In addition to standard firewall features, the Forcepoint NGFW provides additional advanced features.

## How Multi-Layer inspection works

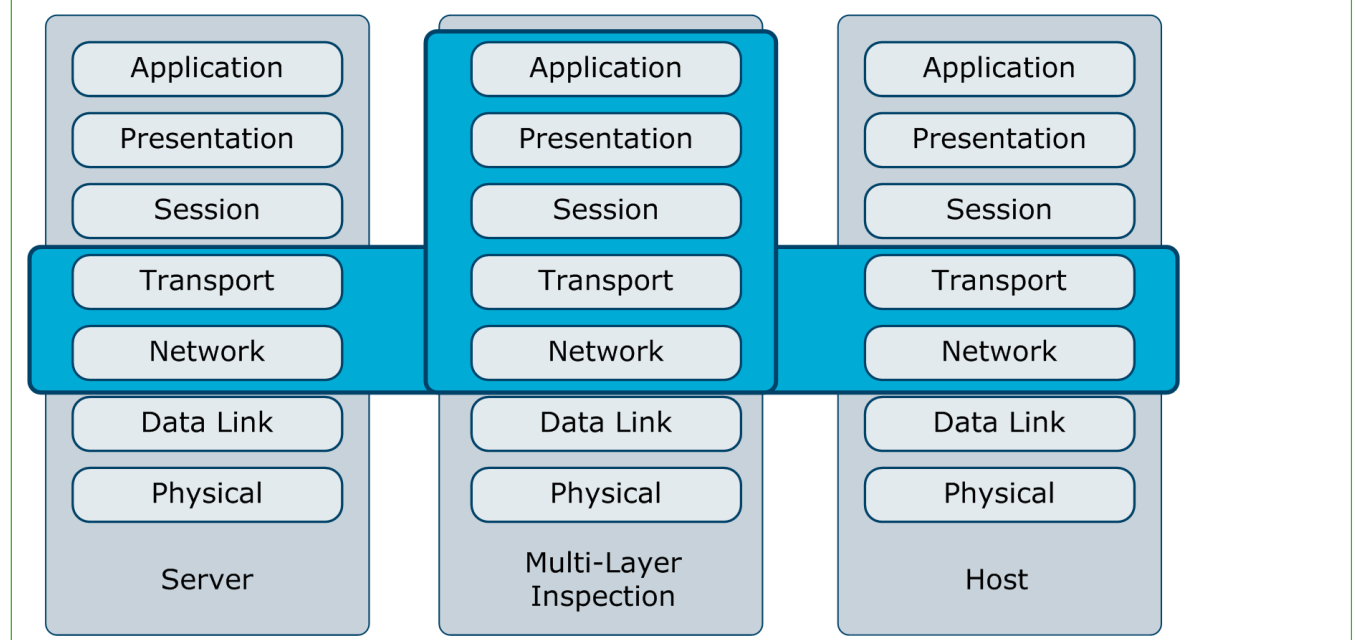
---

*Multi-Layer inspection* combines application layer inspection, stateful inspection, and packet filtering technologies flexibly for optimal security and system performance.

Like stateful inspection, the Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role uses state tables to track connections and judge whether a packet is a part of an established connection or not. Forcepoint NGFW also features application-layer inspection through specific Protocol Agents, when necessary, for enhanced security to inspect all data up

to the application layer. Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role can also act as a packet filter for types of connections that do not require the security considerations of stateful inspection.

**Figure 2: Multi-Layer inspection model**



By default, all Firewall Access rules implement stateful inspection. You can flexibly configure rules with simple packet filtering or an extra layer of application level security as needed.

Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role applies application level inspection with or without proxying the connections, depending on what is required. Application level inspection can be selected to certain types of traffic by attaching a connection to a protocol-specific Protocol Agent.

Protocol Agents are also used to handle protocols that generate complex connection patterns, to redirect traffic to content inspection servers, and to change data payload if necessary. For example, the FTP Protocol Agent can inspect the control connection and only allow packets containing valid FTP commands. If an FTP data connection is opened using a dynamically assigned port, the Protocol Agent reads the port and allows the traffic. If network address translation (NAT) is applied to the connection, the Protocol Agent changes the packet payload IP address and port. The Protocol Agent change allows the connection to continue despite the NAT.

### Related concepts

[Protocol Agents overview](#) on page 1005

## Advanced traffic inspection

The Firewall's traffic inspection process is designed to ensure a high level of security and throughput. The Firewalls' policies determine when to use stateful connection tracking, packet filtering, or application-level security.

The Firewall uses the resources necessary for application-level security only when the situation demands it, and without unnecessarily slowing or limiting network traffic.

Some types of connections can be selected for inspection of the data content against harmful or otherwise unwanted patterns in connections. The deep packet inspection features provide IPS-type capabilities right on the Firewall, and help in finding and stopping malicious or suspicious network activities. You can even inspect the content of encrypted HTTPS connections using the built-in deep packet inspection features.



An anti-malware scanner complements the standard traffic inspection features when the Firewall is licensed for the unified threat management (UTM) feature.

## Deep packet inspection and unified threat management

---

*Deep packet inspection* includes measures such as malware detection, web content filtering, intrusion detection, or some other check of the actual data being transferred. When several such features are combined together with a firewall, the solution is often called unified threat management (UTM).

The UTM solution includes:

- Malware checking
- URL filtering
- Intrusion detection

By combining several features, a UTM solution simplifies the physical network setup and makes the administration simpler. However, device performance limits can be quickly reached when several advanced inspection features are active. For this reason, UTM firewalls are used in environments where the traffic load stays relatively low even at peak times. When higher traffic volumes are needed, external content inspection servers and IPS devices are more often used for further inspecting the traffic.

### Related concepts

[URL filtering and how it works](#) on page 985

[Anti-malware scanning overview](#) on page 1001

## Built-in clustering for load balancing and high availability

---

The Firewall provides innovative built-in clustering and load-balancing features that provide several benefits over traditional solutions.

Traditionally, to achieve high availability on the firewall itself, additional hardware switches, software clustering products, or special load-balancing devices have been added and maintained. This often results in the transfer of a *single point of failure* to another network component — typically the network link.

Forcepoint NGFW Firewalls have built-in support for clustering, which allows operating up to 16 physical Firewall devices as a single unit. All units can actively handle traffic at the same time. No special configuration is required in the surrounding network as the whole implementation is achieved through basic networking standards.

The Firewall engines dynamically load-balance individual connections between the cluster nodes, transparently transferring connections to available nodes in case a node becomes overloaded or experiences a failure. The processing of network traffic is automatically balanced between the cluster nodes. This way, the performance of the Firewall upgrades by simply adding new nodes to the cluster when necessary. You can also take individual nodes offline during business hours for maintenance purposes. Connections handled by that particular engine are transparently redistributed to other online nodes.

The Forcepoint NGFW Firewall also comes with built-in technology for high availability and load balancing between different network connections.

## Benefits of clustering

---

Clustering firewall nodes can significantly reduce the risk of problems with availability and maintenance.

A Single Firewall can be a single point of failure. This can affect the availability of business critical applications and complicate the maintenance of the firewall equipment. Clustering firewall nodes can significantly reduce the risk of these problems.

The Forcepoint NGFW solution uses built-in clustering technology. No additional software or hardware is needed to cluster several nodes. If a node itself or the surrounding network equipment malfunctions, the other nodes in the cluster take over the traffic processing, minimizing any disruptions to the traffic flow. Similarly, maintenance is easier with a cluster, because individual nodes can be taken offline and even exchanged for new hardware without causing service outages.

Firewall Clusters also balance the load of traffic processing between the firewall nodes. You can flexibly add nodes to scale up the Firewall Cluster, improving the throughput and performance.

## Communication between Firewall Cluster nodes

---

Information between Firewall Clustered nodes is synchronized through selected interfaces via a heartbeat network that uses multicast transmissions.

The Firewall Cluster nodes exchange information constantly. The state tables that list open connections (state sync) and the operating state of the other nodes (heartbeat) are exchanged. This exchange of information guarantees that all nodes have the same information about the connections. If a firewall node becomes unavailable, the other nodes of the cluster immediately notice the change. The exchange of information between clustered Firewall nodes is synchronized through selected interfaces via a heartbeat network using multicast transmissions. The heartbeat messages are authenticated, and can also be encrypted if necessary. Authentication is enabled by default.

## Load balancing

---

In load-balanced clustering, traffic is balanced between the nodes dynamically.

In a Firewall Cluster configuration, the recommended way to cluster the nodes is load-balanced clustering, where traffic is balanced between the nodes dynamically. Load-balanced clustering provides both fault tolerance and performance benefits.

The traffic arriving at the Firewall Cluster is balanced across the nodes according to the settings of the cluster's load-balancing filter. This filtering process distributes packets between the firewall nodes and keeps track of packet distribution. The Firewall determines the packet ownership of the nodes by comparing the incoming packet with node-specific values based on the packet headers. The load-balancing filter is preconfigured for optimal performance and is not meant to be adjusted independently by the system administrators.

The Firewall Cluster keeps track of which node is handling each ongoing connection. As a result, all packets that are part of a given connection can be handled by the same node. Some protocols use multiple connections, which are sometimes handled by different nodes, but this distribution does not usually affect the processing of the traffic.

## Standby operation

---

In standby clustering, only one node at a time processes traffic, and other nodes wait on standby.

Nodes that wait on standby are ready to take over when the currently active node goes offline. Nodes that should not take over automatically can be set offline. The drawback with standby mode is that there is no performance gain in clustering the firewalls.

# Clustering modes for firewalls

You can configure traffic to be directed to the cluster using several modes.

There are several modes for how traffic can be directed to the cluster. The modes are explained in the following table. If necessary, see the documentation for the router, hub, or switch you are using for information about which mode is best in your environment:

**Table 1: Clustering modes**

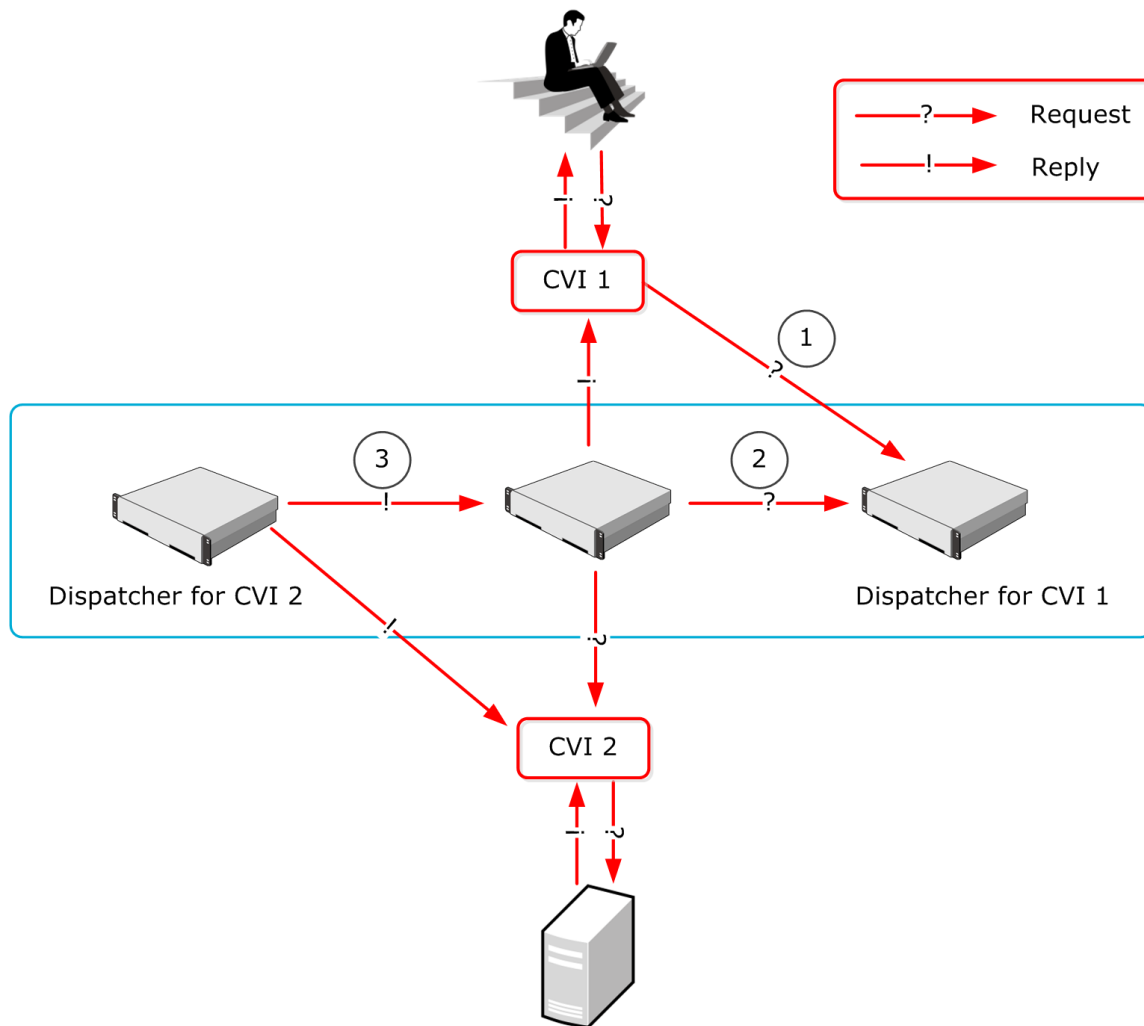
Mode	Description
Packet dispatch	<p>Packet dispatch is the recommended clustering mode. One node per physical interface is the dispatcher that handles the distribution of traffic between the different nodes for all CVIs on that physical interface. The assigned node handles the traffic processing.</p> <p>No additional switch configuration is needed.</p> <p>This mode can also be used with hubs but it is not the optimal clustering mode with hubs.</p>
Unicast MAC	<p>Unicast MAC is the recommended mode when hubs are used. This mode cannot be used with most switches.</p> <p>All nodes in the cluster share unicast MAC address for the CVI. All nodes in the cluster see all packets</p>
Multicast MAC	<p>The nodes share multicast MAC address for the CVI. All nodes in the cluster see all packets.</p> <p>Do not use this mode instead of the packet dispatch mode except in special cases, for example, if MAC address of the network interface cards cannot be changed.</p>
Multicast MAC with IGMP	<p>The clustering works otherwise the same as in the Multicast MAC mode except that the engine answers to IGMP membership queries.</p> <p>This mode allows limiting multicast flooding when the switch does not support static MAC address forwarding tables.</p>

All CVIs on the same physical interface must use the same mode. It is possible to set different cluster modes for CVIs that are defined for different physical interfaces.

## Packet Dispatch mode and how it works

In Packet Dispatch mode, one node acts as the dispatcher and assigns packets to the other nodes.

In Packet Dispatch mode, the node selected as the dispatcher on the physical interface assigns the packets to itself or to some other node. The assigned node then handles the actual resource-intensive traffic processing. The dispatcher attempts to balance the nodes' loads evenly, but assigns all packets that belong to the same connection to the same node. The node that acts as the packet dispatcher can be different for CVIs on different physical interfaces. The following illustration shows an example of how packet dispatch handles a connection.

**Figure 3: Packet Dispatch CVI Mode**

- 1 The dispatcher node for CVI 1 receives a new packet.
- 2 The dispatcher node either handles the packet itself or dispatches the packet to one of the other firewall nodes for processing according to the load-balancing filter. The packet is sent to the other node through the interface the packet arrived from.
- 3 The dispatcher node for CVI 2 forwards the replies within the open connection to the same node.

One node is responsible for handling each connection. The node responsible for the connection handles all resource-consuming tasks: it determines if the connection is allowed to continue, translates addresses as necessary, and logs the connection.

The dispatcher node controls the CVI's IP address and MAC address. The other nodes use their own physical interface's MAC address for the same CVI. When the dispatcher node goes offline, one of the other nodes becomes the dispatcher node. The new dispatcher node changes its interface's MAC address to the address defined for the Packet Dispatch CVI.

The network switch must update its address table without significant delay when the packet dispatcher MAC address is moved to another firewall node. This operation is a standard network addressing operation where the switch learns that the MAC address is located behind a different switch port. Then, the switch forwards traffic destined to the CVI address to this new packet dispatcher.

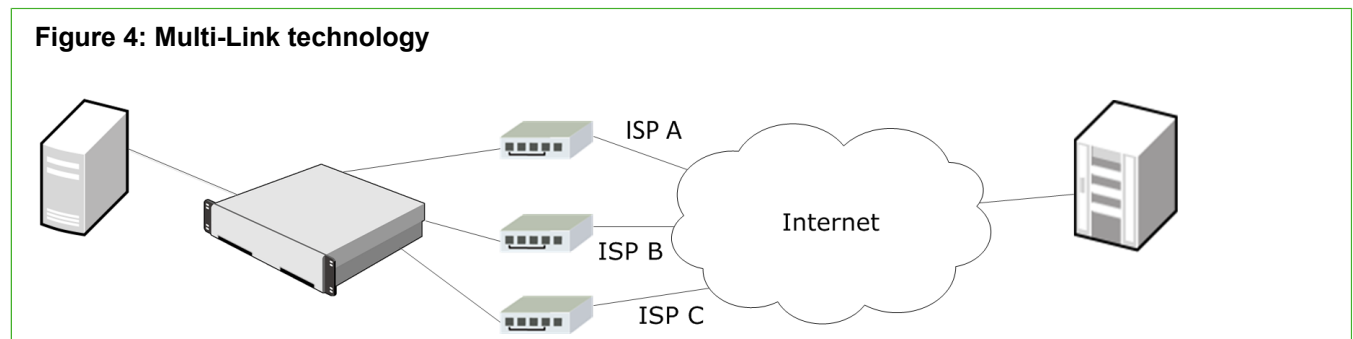
# Multi-Link technology

Single-node and clustered Firewall installations both support Multi-Link, which guarantees high availability for network connections by using alternative network links.

Multi-Link allows configuring redundant network connections out of standard network connections without the complexity of traditional solutions that require redundant external routers and switches. There is no need to use complex routing protocols, such as:

- Border gateway protocol (BGP) and hot standby routing protocol (HSRP)
- Peering arrangements between the ISPs.

Any IP-based link with a dedicated IP address range can be used as part of a Multi-Link configuration. You can also define standby links that are used only when primary links fail. The illustration that follows shows a basic Multi-Link setup with a Single Firewall that has two active and one standby network links to the Internet.



Most often, multiple network links are used to guarantee continuity of Internet access, but Multi-Link can be used to provide redundant links to internal networks as well. Traffic is dynamically balanced across the different links based on a performance measurement or based on the links' relative bandwidths. The traffic automatically fails over to other links when the Firewall detects that one of the links fails. The Firewall uses NAT to direct the traffic through the different links to make the source IP address valid for the link used.

Multi-Link technology provides highly available network connections for the following scenarios:

- Outbound connections: *Multi-Link routing* makes sure that outbound traffic always uses the optimal link toward its destination and allows configuring standby links as backups. The traffic can be distributed across the links in several different ways.
- Inbound connections: The built-in inbound traffic management feature can use Multi-Link to guarantee continuity of services your company offers to external users.
- VPN connections: The Multi-Link tunnel selection for VPN traffic is done independently from other types of traffic. Standby links can also be selected independently for a VPN.

## Related concepts

[Getting started with outbound traffic management](#) on page 731

[Using Multi-Link with Server Pools in inbound traffic management](#) on page 747

[Multi-Link and VPNs](#) on page 1139

## Built-in inbound traffic management

---

The built-in Server Pool feature allows Firewalls to monitor a pool of alternative servers that offer the same service to the users.

If one of the servers becomes unavailable or overloaded, the Firewall automatically redirects new connections to the alternative servers. Server pools can also interact with the Multi-Link feature for high availability of the incoming network connection.

### Related concepts

[Getting started with inbound traffic management](#) on page 745

## Quality of Service (QoS) and bandwidth management

---

Quality of Service (QoS) Policies are interface-specific rules on a Firewall that help you ensure that important network services are given priority over less important traffic.

With QoS rules, you can set up a minimum guaranteed bandwidth and maximum bandwidth limit for traffic, and set a priority value for the traffic. You can optionally define settings for Active Queue Management (AQM) to queue and send traffic according to a scheduling algorithm. Sending traffic reduces the volume of dropped or retransmitted packets when there is network congestion.

Quality of Service and bandwidth management features are not supported for Modem interfaces of Single Firewalls.

You can also create DSCP Match/Mark rules that read or write DiffServ Code Point (DSCP) type of service (ToS) field values. Creating DSCP Match/Mark rules allows you to integrate the Firewall with other network equipment that implements QoS management in your own or your ISP's network.

### Related concepts

[Quality of Service \(QoS\) and how it works](#) on page 947

## Integrating Firewall/VPN with IPS and Layer 2 Firewalls

---

The interoperation between Firewall/VPN, IPS, and Layer 2 Firewall products makes a powerful network security solution.

IP address blacklisting is a shared feature for Firewall/VPN, IPS, and Layer 2 Firewalls. Blacklisting allows blocking harmful traffic not just at the component that detects it, but also on other engines on the connection path.

## Clustered Multi-Link VPNs

---

Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role provides fast, secure, and reliable VPN connections. The added benefits of the clustering and Multi-Link technologies provide load balancing and failover for both the VPN gateways and the network connections.

The system's scalability allows administrators full control over how many tunnels are created and used.

The VPN links can be in three different modes: *active*, *aggregate*, and *standby*. If there are multiple links in active mode, traffic is dynamically balanced across the different links based on a performance measurement or based on the links' relative bandwidths. If there are multiple links in aggregate mode, each connection is balanced between all the aggregate links in round robin fashion. The standby links are only used if the active or aggregate links fail.

**Related concepts**

[VPNs and how they work](#) on page 1125





# Introduction to Forcepoint NGFW in the IPS and Layer 2 Firewall roles

### Contents

- [What IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls do on page 41](#)
- [How IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls inspect traffic on page 42](#)
- [How IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls respond to incidents on page 42](#)
- [Main benefits of IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls on page 44](#)
- [IPS Cluster load balancing on page 45](#)
- [Disconnect mode for IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls and how it works on page 46](#)

The NGFW Engines in the IPS and Layer 2 Firewall roles are part of the Forcepoint NGFW solution. The IPS component provides intrusion detection and prevention, and the Layer 2 Firewalls provide access control and deep inspection of traffic.

## What IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls do

An IPS engine or a Layer 2 Firewall is responsible for picking up and examining network traffic in real time. The engines perform event correlation and analysis for traffic they inspect.

The engines can also initiate immediate responses to any threats that they detect. Depending on how they are installed, engines can also block traffic based on commands that other components send.

IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls can be flexibly scaled up to form clusters of up to 16 devices that work as a single virtual entity. Clustering IPS engines improves performance and provides high availability for the traffic inspection service. Only one Layer 2 Firewall node in the Layer 2 Firewall Cluster is active at a time. The other Layer 2 Firewall nodes remain in standby mode. If the active Layer 2 Firewall node fails, one of the standby nodes automatically starts processing traffic.

The IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls include an integrated operating system (a specially hardened version of Linux). There is no need for separate operating system patches or upgrades; all software on the engines is upgraded during the software upgrade.

Layer 2 Firewalls are basic firewalls with a limited set of features. They provide access control and deep inspection of traffic. More advanced firewall features such as VPNs and authentication are not supported on Layer 2 Firewalls.

# How IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls inspect traffic

There are two main phases in the traffic inspection process: detecting anomalies in traffic and normalizing the suspicious traffic for closer inspection.

Layer 2 Firewalls and IPS engines examine traffic in a similar way. The main difference is that a Layer 2 Firewall drops packets that have not specifically been allowed to pass according to the engine's policy. An IPS engine, in contrast, by default allows packets to pass if the engine's policy does not set a more specific action.

First, the IPS engine or Layer 2 Firewall inspects the network traffic for any anomalies. If the engine detects ambiguities in the traffic, it normalizes the traffic before inspecting it further. Traffic normalization also helps the engine in detecting attempts to use evasion techniques (for example, packet fragmentation, TCP segmentation, or combinations of evasions) to bypass inspection altogether.

In this process, known attacks are detected through attack signatures that are augmented with protocol awareness to form powerful attack *fingerprints*. Protocol awareness decreases the number of false positives compared to simple signatures. Each pattern is applied only to the correct type of traffic. For example, an attack that uses HTTP can be detected when the pattern is seen in HTTP traffic. The HTTP pattern does not falsely match an email message header transported over SMTP.

While fingerprinting accurately detects known attacks, it does not detect attacks that are not yet known. IPS and Layer 2 Firewall engines provide two types of anomaly detection to complement fingerprinting:

- *Protocol analysis* identifies violations in network communications, such as unexpected data, wrong connection states, and additional or invalid characters. Detecting such violations is useful because many attacks purposely violate standards to trigger abnormal operating responses in vulnerable target systems.
- *Statistical anomaly detection* gathers traffic statistics to detect events such as slow scans and unusual number of connections. This method tracks patterns based on frequency and sequence of events, or the occurrence of sets of related events within a specified time range. For example, many connection attempts from one host to many ports and IP addresses is certainly a network scan of some kind.

# How IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls respond to incidents

There are various responses that an IPS engine and a Layer 2 Firewall can take when it detects traffic of interest. For example, they can log the connection or actively filter out the traffic.

Several responses are available:

- As the mildest response, an event can be logged. The log entries can be used, for example, for generating statistical reports. Generating statistical reports might be appropriate, for example, for tracking trends in normal network traffic patterns.
- A step up from a log entry is to generate an alert entry that can be escalated to administrators through multiple configurable alert channels. Alert channels include email, mobile phone text messaging (SMS), and SNMP, in addition to being used like log entries.
- Also, logs and alerts can record the full packet headers and data payload for further analysis.



**Note:** Storing or viewing the packets' payload can be illegal in some jurisdictions due to laws related to the privacy of communications.

- Blacklisting makes it possible to block unwanted network traffic for a specified time. IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls can add entries to their own blacklists based on events in the traffic they inspect. They can also send blacklist requests to other NGFW Engines. Connections that match the blacklist are mainly stopped (depending on the enforcing component's policy).

The available responses on an IPS engine or Layer 2 Firewall depend on the engine's physical configuration. There are two possible configurations for IPS engines, both of which can be used on the same IPS engine at the same time (on different network interfaces). There are three possible configurations for Layer 2 Firewalls. The following table describes the installation modes for IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls.

**Table 2: Installation modes for IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls**

Role	Mode	Description
IPS	Inline	In an inline installation, the traffic flows through the IPS engine. The IPS engine has full control over the traffic flow and can be used to automatically block any traffic. An inline IPS engine can also enforce blacklisting commands received from other components. Fail-open network cards can be used to guarantee that traffic flow is not disrupted when the IPS engine is offline. An inline IPS engine also provides access control and logging for any Ethernet traffic (layer 2).
	Capture	In a capture installation, external equipment duplicates the traffic flow for inspection, and the IPS engine just "listens in". The IPS engine does not have direct control over the traffic flow, but it can respond to selected threats by sending packets that reset the connections. An IDS only IPS engine can send blacklisting requests to other IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewalls, or Firewalls, but it cannot enforce blacklisting requests from other components.
Layer 2 Firewall	Inline	In an inline installation, the traffic flows through the Layer 2 Firewall. The Layer 2 Firewall has full control over the traffic flow and can be used to automatically block any traffic. An inline Layer 2 Firewall can also enforce blacklisting commands received from other components. An inline Layer 2 Firewall also provides access control and logging for any Ethernet traffic (layer 2).
	Capture (Passive Firewall)	In a capture (Passive Firewall) installation, external equipment duplicates the traffic flow for inspection to the Layer 2 Firewall, and the Layer 2 Firewall just "listens in". The Layer 2 Firewall does not have direct control over the traffic flow, but it can respond to selected threats by sending packets that reset the connections. A Layer 2 Firewall in Passive Firewall mode can send blacklisting requests to other Layer 2 Firewalls, IPS engines, or Firewalls. A Layer 2 Firewall in Passive Firewall mode cannot enforce blacklisting requests from other components.
	Passive Inline	In a passive inline installation, the traffic flows through the Layer 2 Firewall, but the Layer 2 Firewall is configured to only log connections. A Layer 2 Firewall in Passive Firewall mode can send blacklisting requests to other Layer 2 Firewalls, IPS engines, or Firewalls. A Layer 2 Firewall in Passive Firewall mode cannot enforce blacklisting requests from other components.

# Main benefits of IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls

---

IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls have four key benefits: accuracy, manageability, scalability, and high availability.

## Accuracy of IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls

---

To provide the best possible accuracy, the IPS and Layer 2 Firewall engines provide multiple detection methods that complement each other.

Effective response to network security incidents requires the capability to recognize an enormous number of possible threats. The IPS system must not produce a high number of false alarms that:

- Engage the system administrators in needless investigations.
- Automatically stop legitimate business communications.

Attack signatures are supplemented with protocol-specific matching to produce accurate fingerprints of attacks. The observations on network traffic are not passed on to administrators directly, but instead collected together for further analysis and combined presentation.

What is considered to be a serious threat to a crucial system in one environment might not be considered an event at all in another network. There is more than one set of traffic inspection policies that would work ideally in every environment. So IPS and Layer 2 Firewall provides detailed customization possibilities for the entire inspection process. The efficient configuration tools provide default policies that can be edited using drag and drop, while still allowing highly detailed controls for advanced configuration.

With accurate detection results, efforts can be concentrated on countering real threats instead of working on analyzing an endless stream of false alarms.

## Manageability of IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls

---

IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls provide network administrators the tools to save time, reduce mistakes, and get a network overview.

While ease-of-use is one of the main goals for the product, IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls do not achieve it by cutting the available features. The system provides extensive inspection process tuning possibilities, detailed information for monitoring, advanced automation, and tools for complete remote management (including all software upgrades). The distributed architecture allows components to be on separate computers and in different networks. Components can even be in different countries and continents – and still be easily managed as a single system.

An easy-to-use system helps the administrators concentrate on investigating the security threats instead of configuring the security systems.

# Scalability and high availability of IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls

---

Introduction of new tools and services that rely on network access means that network traffic continues to grow over time. Network traffic continues to grow even in companies that are not otherwise expanding. IPS engines must be scalable to meet the growing demands and high availability. Clustering answers this demand by combining devices together in a single, virtual entity.

Clustering also provides high availability for the intrusion detection services. If the system is down during an attack, attackers have a head start. Having a head start allows the attackers to penetrate deeper into the network and cover up their tracks. An IPS Cluster is a group of IPS nodes that work as a single logical entity to share the load of traffic processing. A Single IPS is an IPS engine that consists of a single node. If a node in an IPS Cluster stops processing traffic, the inspection can switch over to the other remaining IPS node transparently. If the active Layer 2 Firewall node in a Layer 2 Firewall Cluster fails, one of the standby nodes automatically takes over traffic inspection. This way, it is also possible to conduct online maintenance of individual IPS engines without corresponding interruptions in traffic inspection.

IPS engines can be transparently clustered together into a single virtual entity in which the performance of each node contributes to the total throughput. Clustering IPS engines allows new devices to be added flexibly as traffic volumes grow while retaining the existing equipment and configurations. Clustering improves performance by balancing the load intelligently between the clustered IPS nodes.

Optional high availability measures are also available for the Security Management Center.



**Note:** The SMC Appliance does not support high availability for the Management Server or the Log Server.

Scalability and high availability guarantee that the system can adapt to growing needs, simplify planned maintenance, and protect against hardware failure.

## IPS Cluster load balancing

---

In a load-balanced cluster, traffic is dynamically balanced between the nodes.

The recommended way to cluster the nodes in an IPS Cluster is load-balanced clustering, where traffic is balanced between the nodes dynamically. Load-balanced clustering provides both fault tolerance and performance benefits.

When load-balanced clustering is used, the traffic arriving at the IPS Cluster is balanced across the nodes with a load-balancing filter. This filtering process distributes packets between the IPS Cluster nodes and tracks packet distribution. The IPS Cluster determines the packet ownership of the nodes by comparing the incoming packet with node-specific values based on the packet headers.

The IPS Cluster tracks which node is handling each ongoing connection. As a result, the same node can handle all packets that are part of a given connection. Some protocols use multiple connections, which are sometimes handled by different nodes, but this usually does not affect the processing of the traffic.

# Disconnect mode for IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls and how it works

---

IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls support disconnect mode, which enables constant monitoring of link connections and minimizes delays caused by link failures.

When IPS engines or Layer 2 Firewalls are deployed in inline mode, link failures cause significant traffic transfer delays if the link failure is undetected. Failure to detect link failures can be prevented in disconnect mode.

If a link fails on one side of an Inline Interfaces pair, the IPS engine or Layer 2 Firewall:

- Detects the failure
- Simulates cable disconnection on the other side
- Takes down the other side's link transmitter (TX)

The IPS engine or Layer 2 Firewall continues to monitor the receiver (RX) side of a pair of Inline Interfaces. It detects when the link is up again and brings the transmitter (TX) backup accordingly.

By default, disconnect mode is active on:

- All IPS appliances that support the feature
- On all Forcepoint NGFW appliances that are used in the IPS or Layer 2 Firewall role

# PART II

## Deployment

### Contents

- [Deploying the SMC on page 49](#)
- [Deploying Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role on page 55](#)
- [Deploying Forcepoint NGFW in IPS and Layer 2 Firewall roles on page 71](#)

Before you can set up the system and start configuring elements, you must consider how the different SMC components should be positioned and deployed.





# Deploying the SMC

### Contents

- Overview of SMC deployment on page 49
- Security considerations for SMC deployment on page 50
- Positioning the Management Server on page 51
- Positioning Log Servers on page 51
- Positioning Management Clients on page 52
- Example: SMC deployment on page 52
- Post-installation steps for the SMC on page 53

When deploying the SMC, there are some general guidelines for positioning components to guarantee the security of the system.

## Overview of SMC deployment

The positioning of SMC components depends on the size and complexity of the network environment.

## Supported platforms for SMC deployment

SMC server components can be installed on third-party hardware or they are available as a dedicated Forcepoint™ NGFW Security Management Center Appliance (SMC Appliance).

### Third-party hardware



**CAUTION:** Do not install the SMC components on the Forcepoint NGFW hardware.

- You can install the SMC on third-party hardware that meets the hardware requirements. The hardware requirements can be found at <https://support.forcepoint.com>.
- You can install all SMC server components on the same computer, or install separate components on different computers.
- In a large or geographically distributed deployment, we recommend installing the Management Server, Log Server, and optional Web Portal Server on separate computers.

## SMC Appliance

The Management Server and a Log Server are integrated with the hardware operating system as a dedicated server appliance.

## Management Client

Although the Web Start distribution of the Management Client is certified to run only on the listed official platforms, it can run on other platforms. These platforms include Mac OS X and additional Linux distributions with JRE (Java Runtime Environment) installed.

## General SMC deployment guidelines

The basic SMC installation consists of a Management Server, a Log Server, and Management Clients.

It is possible to run the Management Server and the Log Server on the same computer in low-traffic environments. In larger environments, the components are run on dedicated servers. Several Log Servers might be needed in large or geographically distributed organizations. The Management Clients connect to the Management Server for configuring and monitoring the system and to Log Servers for browsing the log entries.

**Table 3: General guidelines for SMC deployment**

SMC component	General guidelines
Management Server	Position on a central site where it is physically accessible to the administrators responsible for maintaining its operation.
Log Servers	Place the Log Servers centrally and locally on sites as needed based on log data volume and administrative responsibilities.
Web Portal Server	The Web Portal Server can be deployed in any location that has network access to the Management Server and the Log Servers.
Management Clients	Management Clients can be used from any location that has network access to the Management Server and the Log Servers.

## Security considerations for SMC deployment

The information stored in the Security Management Center (SMC) is highly valuable to anyone conducting or planning malicious activities in your network. Someone who gains administrator rights to the Management Server can change the configurations.

An attacker can gain access by exploiting operating system weaknesses or other services running on the same computer to gain administrator rights in the operating system.



**Important:** Secure the Management Server computer. Anyone who has administrator rights to the operating system can potentially view and change any SMC configurations.

Consider at least the following points to secure the Management Server and Log Server:

- Prevent any unauthorized access to the servers. Restrict access to the minimum required both physically and with operating system user accounts.
- We recommend allowing access only to the required ports.
- Never allow Management Client connections from insecure networks.
- Take all necessary steps to keep the operating system secure and up to date.
- We recommend that you do not run any third-party server software on the same computer with the SMC servers.
- We recommend placing the servers in a separate, secure network segment without third-party servers and limited network access.

You can optionally use 256-bit encryption for the connection between NGFW Engines and the Management Server. 256-bit encryption requires both the engines and the Management Server to be version 5.5 or later. You must also use an Internal ECDSA Certificate Authority to sign certificates for SMC communication.

#### Related reference

[Security Management Center ports](#) on page 1433

[Forcepoint NGFW Engine ports](#) on page 1436

## Positioning the Management Server

The Management Server is positioned on a corporate headquarters or data center central site where it can reach all other Security Management Center (SMC) components.

The Management Server does not need to be close to administrators. The Management Clients connect to the Management Server and Log Servers over the network using an encrypted connection.

We recommend using the same SMC to manage all your engines. This unified approach simplifies managing physically distributed network environments and allows closer integration, for example, sending blacklist requests from IPS engines to Firewalls. The configuration information and log data can then be shared and used efficiently together. A single Management Server can manage many components efficiently. You can optionally install one or more additional Management Servers for a High Availability setup. Only one Management Server is active at a time. The additional Management Servers function as standby Management Servers.



**Note:** The SMC Appliance does not support high availability for the Management Server or the Log Server.

The Management Server also handles active alerts and alert escalation to inform the administrators of critical events. In an environment with multiple Management Servers, all active alerts are replicated between the Management Servers.

## Positioning Log Servers

Log Servers store engine-generated logs and traffic captures. Several Log Servers can be located both on a central site as well as at remote sites.

The transferred amounts of data can be substantial, so the primary concern for Log Server deployment is the number and throughput of the engine components that send data to the Log Server. A single shared Log Server can be sufficient for a number of remote sites with low traffic volumes, whereas a large office with very high volumes of network traffic might require even several Log Servers for efficient use.

# Positioning Management Clients

The Management Client provides an interface for managing and monitoring the entire system.

With access to the Management Server and Log Servers, Management Clients can be used anywhere for:

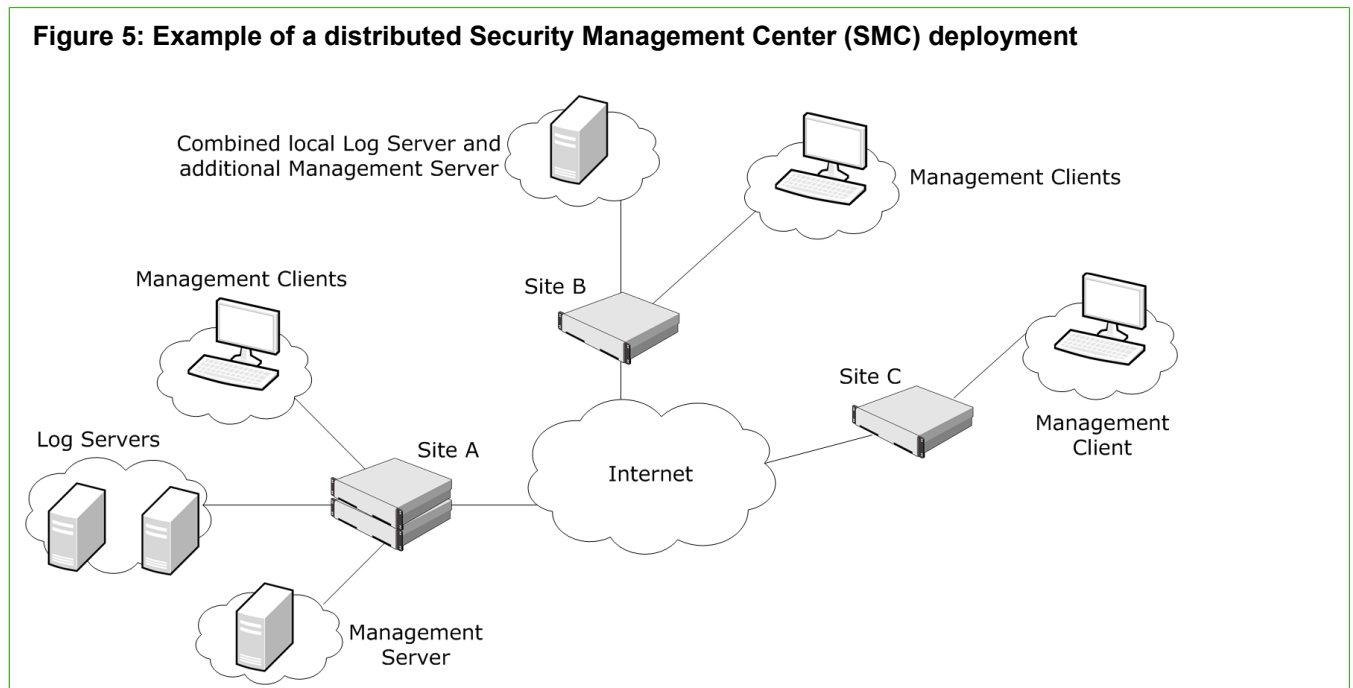
- System administration
- Log and alert browsing

The Firewall/VPN and IPS engines are managed through the Management Server, so the Management Client never connects directly to the engines.

The Management Clients can be installed locally or started through Java Web Start. The difference between the installations is that locally installed clients are upgraded locally and individually. The Web Start installation is updated centrally and the individual Management Client installations are automatically upgraded. Also, local installations are possible only on supported Security Management Center platforms. Running the Web Start version is also possible on other platforms that have the required version of Java runtime environment (JRE) installed.

## Example: SMC deployment

In this example deployment, a company has operations in three different locations. There are some NGFW Engines and administrators who are responsible for managing the local equipment at each site.



Site A is the main site of the company. The active Management Server that manages all local and remote components is at Site A. The main administrators responsible for maintaining the server are also stationed there. There are also two separate Log Servers at Site A. There are a high number of NGFW Engines at this site, producing a high volume of logs. The Log Servers also work as backup servers for each other.

Site B is a large branch office that is also designated as the disaster recovery site for the main site. The most important services are duplicated. This site has a moderate number of NGFW Engines. A separate Log Server is installed at Site B to ensure swift log browsing for the local administrators.

Site C is a small branch office that has only a few NGFW Engines. There is a single local administrator who is an infrequent user of the SMC. There are no SMC components at Site C; the local NGFW Engines send their data to the Log Servers at Site A.

## Post-installation steps for the SMC

---

After installing the SMC, you must complete some configuration tasks to guarantee the efficient management and security of the system.

The basic administration tasks you must complete after installation include the following:

- Schedule automatic **Backup Tasks** to back up the essential configuration information stored on the Management Server.
- Set up automated tasks to manage the gathered log data and prevent the Log Server storage space from filling up with logs.

We also highly recommend that you set up the following features:

- Define additional administrator accounts and delegating administrative tasks.
- Review settings for automatic updates and making sure the feature works to keep your system current.
- Define custom alerts and alert escalation policies.

To efficiently manage the system, you must also familiarize yourself with monitoring system operation.



# Deploying Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role

### Contents

- [Supported platforms for Forcepoint NGFW deployment](#) on page 55
- [Deploying NGFW Engines in the Amazon Web Services cloud](#) on page 56
- [Running NGFW Engines as Master NGFW Engines](#) on page 56
- [Hardware requirements for installing Forcepoint NGFW on third-party hardware](#) on page 57
- [Hardware for Firewall Cluster nodes](#) on page 57
- [Guidelines for deploying Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role](#) on page 58
- [Positioning Firewalls](#) on page 59
- [Post-installation steps for Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role](#) on page 62
- [Cable connection guidelines for Firewalls](#) on page 62
- [Single Firewall configuration overview](#) on page 63
- [Firewall cluster configuration overview](#) on page 66

The positioning of a firewall depends on the network environment and the function of the firewall.

## Supported platforms for Forcepoint NGFW deployment

You can run NGFW Engines on various platforms.

The following general types of platforms are available for NGFW Engines:

- Purpose-built Forcepoint NGFW appliances



**Note:** For information about supported appliance models, see Knowledge Base article [9743](#).

- The VMware ESX and KVM virtualization platforms are officially supported.
- Amazon Web Services (AWS) cloud (Firewall/VPN role only)
- Third-party hardware that meets the hardware requirements

The NGFW Engine software includes an integrated, hardened Linux operating system. The operating system eliminates the need for separate installation, configuration, and patching.

### Related concepts

- [Hardware requirements for installing Forcepoint NGFW on third-party hardware](#) on page 57
- [Configuration of Master NGFW Engines and Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 505

# Deploying NGFW Engines in the Amazon Web Services cloud

You can deploy NGFW Engines in the Amazon Web Services (AWS) cloud to provide VPN connectivity, access control, and inspection for services in the AWS cloud.

When you deploy NGFW Engines in the AWS cloud, only the Firewall/VPN role is supported. Firewall Clusters, Master NGFW Engines, and Virtual Firewalls are not supported.

For deployment instructions and supported features, see Knowledge Base article [10156](#). After deployment, you can manage NGFW Engines in the AWS cloud using the Management Client in the same way as other NGFW Engines.

Two licensing models are supported for Forcepoint NGFW in the AWS cloud. There are two engine images, depending on the licensing model:

- **Bring Your Own License** — You pay only Amazon's standard runtime fee for the engine instance. You must install a license for the engine in the SMC.
- **Hourly** (pay as you go license) — You pay Amazon's standard runtime fee for the engine instance plus an hourly license fee based on the runtime of the engine. No license installation is needed for the engine in the SMC.



**Note:** In Forcepoint NGFW versions 6.1 and 6.2, only the Bring Your Own License image is available.

The SMC automatically detects which platform the engine image is running on for features that require separate licenses.

## Running NGFW Engines as Master NGFW Engines

There are some hardware requirements and configuration limitations when you use an NGFW Engine as a Master NGFW Engine.

Running the NGFW Engine as a Master NGFW Engine does not require a third-party virtualization platform. When you run Forcepoint NGFW as a Master NGFW Engine, the Forcepoint NGFW hardware provides the virtual environment and resources for the hosted Virtual NGFW Engines. You must always install the Forcepoint NGFW software on a hardware device to run the NGFW Engine as a Master NGFW Engine.

You can run Master NGFW Engines on the following types of hardware platforms:

- Purpose-built Forcepoint NGFW appliances with 64-bit architecture
- Third-party hardware with 64-bit architecture that meets the hardware requirements

The following requirements and limitations apply when you use an NGFW Engine as a Master NGFW Engine:

- Each Master NGFW Engine must run on a separate 64-bit physical device.
- All Virtual NGFW Engines hosted by a Master NGFW Engine or Master NGFW Engine cluster must have the same role and the same Failure Mode (*fail-open* or *fail-close*).
- Master NGFW Engines can allocate VLANs or interfaces to Virtual NGFW Engines. If the Failure Mode of the Virtual IPS engines or Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls is *Normal* (fail-close) and you want to allocate VLANs to several engines, you must use the Master NGFW Engine cluster in standby mode.



**Related concepts**[Hardware requirements for installing Forcepoint NGFW on third-party hardware](#) on page 57[Configuration of Master NGFW Engines and Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 505

# Hardware requirements for installing Forcepoint NGFW on third-party hardware

There are some basic hardware requirements when you run Forcepoint NGFW on third-party hardware.



**CAUTION:** Check that the Automatic Power Management (APM) and Advanced Configuration and Power Interface (ACPI) settings are disabled in BIOS. Otherwise, the engine might not start after installation or can shut down unexpectedly.



**CAUTION:** The hardware must be dedicated to the Forcepoint NGFW. No other software can be installed on it.

The following basic hardware requirements apply:

- (Recommended for new deployments) Intel® Xeon®-based hardware from the E5-16xx product family or higher



**Note:** Legacy deployments with Intel® Core™2 are supported.

- IDE hard disk and CD drive



**Note:** IDE RAID controllers are not supported.

- Memory:
  - 4 GB RAM minimum for x86-64-small installation
  - 8 GB RAM minimum for x86-64 installation
- VGA-compatible monitor and keyboard
- One or more certified network interfaces for the Firewall/VPN role
- Two or more certified network interfaces for IPS with IDS configuration
- Three or more certified network interfaces for Inline IPS or Layer 2 Firewall

## Hardware for Firewall Cluster nodes

You can run different nodes of the same cluster on different types of hardware.

The hardware the cluster nodes run on does not need to be identical. Different types of equipment can be used as long as all nodes have enough network interfaces for your configuration. Firewall Clusters can run on a

Forcepoint NGFW appliance, on a standard server with an Intel-compatible processor, or as a virtual machine on a virtualization platform.

If equipment with different performance characteristics is clustered together, the load-balancing technology automatically distributes the load so that lower performance nodes handle less traffic than the higher performance nodes. However, when a node goes offline, the remaining nodes must be able to handle all traffic on their own to ensure High Availability. For this reason, it is usually best to cluster nodes with similar performance characteristics.

## Guidelines for deploying Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role

There are some general deployment guidelines for Firewalls, Master NGFW Engines, and the SMC.

**Table 4: Guidelines for deploying Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role**

Component	General Guidelines
Management Server	Position on a central site where it is physically accessible to the administrators responsible for maintaining its operation.
Log Servers	Place the Log Servers centrally and locally on sites as needed based on log data volume and administrative responsibilities.
Management Clients	Management Clients can be used from any location that has network access to the Management Server and the Log Servers.
Management Server	Position on a central site where it is physically accessible to the administrators responsible for maintaining its operation.
Firewalls	<p>Position Firewalls at each location so that all networks are covered. Firewalls can be clustered. Functionally, the Firewall Cluster is equal to a single high-performance Firewall. Cluster deployment sets up a heartbeat link between the Firewalls. The heartbeat link allows the devices to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Track each others' operating status.</li> <li>• Agree on the division of work.</li> <li>• Exchange information on traffic.</li> </ul>
Master NGFW Engines	<p>Position Master NGFW Engines where Virtual NGFW Engines are needed. For example, at a hosting location for MSSP services or between networks that require strict isolation. Master NGFW Engines can be clustered. A clustered Master NGFW Engine provides scalability and High Availability. In a Master NGFW Engine Cluster, the Virtual Resource is active in one Master NGFW Engine at a time. Cluster deployment sets up a heartbeat link between the Firewalls. The heartbeat link allows the devices to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Track each others' operating status.</li> <li>• Agree on the division of work.</li> <li>• Exchange information on traffic.</li> </ul>

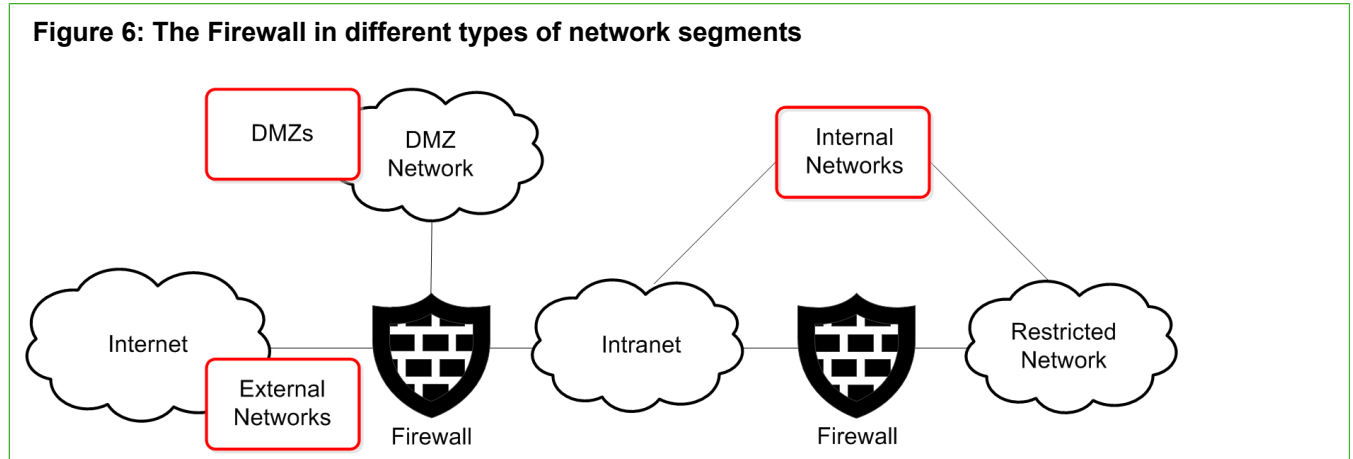
# Positioning Firewalls

The Firewall is a perimeter defense, positioned between networks with different security levels.

Firewalls generally control traffic between:

- External networks (the Internet) and your internal networks.
- External networks (the Internet) and DMZ (demilitarized zone) networks.
- Between internal networks (including DMZs).

Firewalls separate the different networks by enforcing rules that control access from one network to another.



Not all organizations necessarily have all types of networks that are shown here. One Firewall can cover all enforcement points simultaneously if it is practical in the network environment and compatible with the organization's security requirements.

## Using firewalls to separate internal and external networks

The most common and most important use for a firewall is to separate internal networks from the public Internet.

**Table 5: External network considerations for firewalls**

	Description	Implications on Firewalls
Main purpose	Connectivity between the protected and public networks.	The Firewall selects which traffic is permitted into and out of the internal networks and translates addresses between internal IP addresses and public IP addresses. The Firewall is typically also a VPN endpoint.
Hosts	Only equipment directly connected to the public network, such as routers and the Firewall.	The communicating hosts in external networks are unknown in many cases. IP address spoofing is a possibility. External hosts can be trusted if they are identified using VPN authentication mechanisms.

	Description	Implications on Firewalls
Users	Access to this network is open, but local access to the hosts is restricted to the administrative staff only.	Internal users are known and trusted. Users in public networks are unknown and untrusted. VPN authentication and encryption can be used to allow specific users access from external networks to internal resources.
Traffic volume	Varies from low to high, generally the full bandwidth of all Internet links combined.	Hardware requirements vary depending on the environment. Clustering allows flexible firewall throughput adjustments. Multi-Link allows High Availability and load balancing for outbound connections. QoS Policies can control the bandwidth use.
Traffic type	Any type of traffic can be encountered, especially in incoming traffic. Some filtering is done by the Internet service provider.	The Firewall controls which traffic is allowed into your networks. It is beyond the Firewall's control what and how much traffic it receives from the public networks. Advanced inspection checks can be activated on the Firewall and on an external content inspection server depending on the protocol.
Network security	Little or no access controls to pre-filter traffic arriving from the Internet. Ensure that the hosts in this network are security-hardened and actively patched against known vulnerabilities.	Ensure the Firewall's policy is as restrictive as possible. Generally, new connections are not allowed from the external to the internal networks (servers for external services are placed in DMZs). After use, disable SSH access to the Firewall's command line from external networks.

## Using firewalls to separate internal networks

Internal networks are mixed environments with servers and end-user computers. Firewalls restrict traffic between the different internal networks, but traffic within each network is often not secured in any significant way.

**Table 6: Internal network considerations for firewalls**

	Description	Implications on Firewalls
Main purpose	Network services and connectivity for authorized end users. Back-end servers that serve other networks and user groups.	Internal networks transfer confidential data but can be permissive for the traffic within the network. Firewalls can control access between different internal networks to enforce different security levels and prevent some types of network threats.
Hosts	Mixed environment consisting of servers, laptops, desktops, network printers, and copiers.	Network communications of the servers and the end-user computers differ in characteristics. Hosts can be actively maintained and patched to reduce some types of risks. Access between networks can be restricted based on the type of host. Firewall logs provide a record of network use and alerts can be configured for unusual connection attempts.
Users	Authorized personnel.	Users can be considered trusted, but on various levels. The Firewall authenticates users for access between internal networks that have different security levels.

	Description	Implications on Firewalls
Traffic volume	Varies from low to high. Grows highest at network choke-points in large environments.	Installation at network choke-points often requires high-performance hardware. Clustering can provide load balancing and High Availability in critical locations.
Traffic type	Diverse, with many different applications communicating within and in/ out of the network.	The Firewall policy must balance users' demands for a wide range of different services with the need to keep the internal networks safe. Advanced inspection features further inspect permitted communications.
Network security	A "trusted network" where the users and the traffic are considered to be authorized.	The Firewall establishes boundaries between networks to protect sensitive data and essential services. Availability of network services sometimes overrides security.

## Using firewalls to separate DMZ networks

DMZ networks (demilitarized zone networks, also known as perimeter networks) are isolated environments for servers that offer services mainly for external access.

**Table 7: DMZ considerations for firewalls**

	Description	Implications on Firewalls
Main purpose	DMZs provide a limited number of services, mostly for external users. The services are often business-critical and open for public access.	The Firewall selects which traffic is permitted into and out of the DMZs. The Firewall typically also translates IP addresses from public IP addresses that are routable in the external networks to private addresses used in internal networks. VPNs can be used to provide services for partner-type users.
Hosts	A uniform environment consisting mainly of servers that often provide public or semi-public services.	A limited number of services are provided to an often large number of hosts. Some types of administrative access are allowed to a few specific trusted hosts.
Users	Mostly unknown, but some services can be for specific users. Administrators have wider permissions.	Users are often unknown or authenticated by the target servers themselves. Firewall authentication can be useful for restricting administrator rights from internal networks.
Traffic volume	Low to medium, generally the full bandwidth of all Internet links combined (shared with other local networks). Traffic to other local networks can be high in volume.	Hardware requirements vary depending on the environment. Clustering allows flexible adjustments to throughput. The inbound traffic management features can balance traffic between redundant servers.
Traffic type	Rather uniform traffic, with only specific applications and servers communicating within, into, and out of the networks.	The Firewall controls which traffic is allowed access in and out of each DMZ from external and internal networks. Usually, only a few specific services have to be allowed. Advanced inspection checks can be activated on the Firewall and on an external content inspection server depending on protocol.

	Description	Implications on Firewalls
Network security	A network between the trusted and untrusted security zones allowing access for authorized and public use.	External access to services makes the servers in a DMZ a target for attacks. Connections between the DMZ networks and to other internal networks facilitate further attacks, so these connections must be strictly controlled.

## Post-installation steps for Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role

There are some steps to follow after you have completed the installation, installed a basic policy, and turned the Firewalls online.



**Note:** The configuration information is stored on the Management Server. Most changes are transferred to the engines only when you install or refresh the Firewall Policy.

The basic administration tasks you must learn or complete next include the following:

- Read and control the operating state of Firewall engines.
- Adjust the automatic tester that monitors the operation of the Firewalls and the surrounding network.
- Develop your Firewall Policies further.

The most typical customization steps include:

- Configure multiple network connections for load-balanced, highly available networking.
- Configure traffic management for incoming connections to groups of servers.
- Set up bandwidth management and traffic prioritization policies.
- Configure the firewall to use external content inspection servers.
- Configure secure connectivity between different locations and for traveling users.

## Cable connection guidelines for Firewalls

The cabling of Firewalls depends on the engine type and the installation.

Make sure that all copper cables are correctly rated (CAT 5e or CAT 6 in gigabit networks).

If you have a two-node Firewall Cluster, it is recommended to use a crossover cable without any intermediary devices between the nodes. If you use an external switch between the nodes, follow these guidelines:

- Make sure that portfast is enabled on the external switches.
- Make sure that the speed/duplex settings of the external switches and the Firewall devices are set to Auto.
- Configure the external switches to forward multicast traffic.

# Single Firewall configuration overview

A Single Firewall is a firewall that has only one firewall engine (instead of a cluster of two or more engines).

A Single Firewall can be deployed at sites where the performance benefits and high availability provided by a Firewall Cluster are not essential. High availability of network connections is still available, as Single Firewalls support Multi-Link.

Single Firewalls also support the following features that are not supported on Firewall Clusters:

- Dynamic IP addresses on their interfaces



**Note:** Dynamic IP addresses are not supported on Aggregated Link interfaces.

- Wireless links through 3G modems connected to the firewall engine's USB ports
- ADSL connections (This feature is only available on specific purpose-built Forcepoint NGFW appliances that have an ADSL network interface card.)
- Wireless connections (This feature is only available on specific purpose-built Forcepoint NGFW appliances that have a wireless network interface card.)
- Integrated switches and port groups (This feature is only available on specific purpose-built Forcepoint NGFW appliances that have an integrated switch.)

The Single Firewall engine software can run on a Forcepoint NGFW appliance, on a standard server with an Intel-compatible processor, or as a virtual machine on a virtualization platform. You can also configure anti-malware scanning and anti-spam filtering (requires separate licenses).

Firewalls are configured and managed centrally through the Management Server. The Single Firewall element represents the firewall's configuration on the Management Server. The main configuration options in the Single Firewall element are the settings related to network interfaces.

## Security strength of management connections

You can optionally use 256-bit encryption for the connection between the engines and the Management Server. This option requires both the engines and the Management Server to be version 5.5 or later. When you create and use a new Internal ECDSA Certificate Authority to sign certificates for system communication, the Management Server and the engine re-establish their trust relationship. After the Management Server and the engine re-establish their trust relationship, 256-bit encryption is enabled for the connection between the engines and the Management Server.

## Configuration workflow

The following sections provide an overview of the configuration tasks.

### Task 1: Create Single Firewall elements

To introduce new Single Firewalls to the SMC, you must define Single Firewall elements that store the configuration information related to the firewall engines. You can define Single Firewall elements one-by-one, or define several Single Firewall elements at once using the Multiple Single Firewalls Wizard.

### Task 2: Define Physical Interfaces

A Physical Interface represents an actual network port on the engine. The number of defined Physical Interfaces can be lower than the number of network ports on the engine hardware. A Normal physical interface represents a single network port on the engine. An Aggregated Link represents two or more network ports on the engine. An Aggregated Link in high availability mode provides protection against hardware failure. You can also use an Aggregated Link in load-balancing mode to increase throughput. You can combine two network ports in an Aggregated Link in high availability mode. You can combine up to eight network ports in an Aggregated Link in load-balancing mode.

By default, the Physical Interface definitions are mapped to the network ports on the engines one-to-one. If necessary, you can change the mapping using command-line tools on the engine.

### Task 3: Define VLAN Interfaces

A Virtual Local Area Network (VLAN) is a logical grouping of hosts and network devices that allows creating several separated networks on a single physical link. To allow this separation, the Firewall supports VLAN tagging as defined in the IEEE 802.1q standard. One network interface can support up to 4094 VLANs.

The defined VLAN interfaces are displayed, for example, as “5.202” for network interface 5 with VLAN 202.

### Task 4: Define Tunnel Interfaces

Tunnel Interfaces are logical interfaces that are used as endpoints for tunnels in the Route-Based VPN. Any traffic that is routed to a Tunnel Interface and allowed by the Access rules is automatically sent through the tunnel to the peer endpoint. Defining Tunnel Interfaces is optional: Tunnel Interfaces are only used in the Route-Based VPN.

You can optionally add IPv4 and IPv6 addresses to a Tunnel Interface. Adding an IP address allows you to define the source IP address of traffic sent from the engine node itself.

### Task 5: Define an ADSL Interface

You can optionally configure one ADSL Interface for ADSL connections (ANSI T1.413 issue 2n, G.dmt, G.lite, ADSL2 DMT, ADSL2 G.lite, Annex A, and Annex B are supported). ADSL Interfaces are only available on specific pre-installed Forcepoint NGFW appliances that have an ADSL network interface card. Use the number of the ADSL port on the appliance as the Interface ID of the ADSL Interface.

### Task 6: Define a Wireless Interface

You can optionally define a Wireless Interface that allows you to use the firewall as a wireless access point. Wireless Interfaces are only available on specific pre-installed Forcepoint NGFW appliances that have a wireless network interface card. Use the number of the wireless port on the appliance as the Interface ID of the Wireless Interface.

You can define several wireless LANs for the Wireless Interface. A wireless LAN is defined by adding an SSID (service set identifier) interface for the Wireless Interface.

### Task 7: Define integrated switches and port group interfaces

An integrated switch represents the switch functionality on purpose-built Forcepoint NGFW appliances. Integrated switches eliminate the need for an external switch device and reduce costs and clutter.

- You can add port group interfaces to switches. Port groups simplify port and network segment configuration.
- Integrated switches are identified with switch IDs. Port group interfaces are identified by port group IDs.
- The defined switches and port group interfaces are displayed, for example, as *0.1* for switch ID 0 with port group 1.

### Task 8: Define IP addresses

You can define several IPv4 or IPv6 addresses for the same Physical Interface, VLAN Interface, Port Group Interface, or Aggregated Link Interface. You can define several IPv4 addresses for the optional ADSL Interface. Each SSID Interface defined for the optional Wireless Interface can have a single IPv4 or IPv6 address.

To use the firewall as an IGMP proxy for multicast routing, the IP addresses for the downstream interfaces must be the lowest IP addresses among all IGMP queries in the local networks.

### Task 9: Define loopback IP addresses

You can optionally define one or more loopback IP addresses for the firewall. Loopback IP addresses allow you to assign IP addresses that do not belong to any directly connected networks to the firewall. Loopback IP addresses are not connected to any physical interface and they do not create connectivity to any network. Any IP address that is not used to route traffic on another interface can be used as a loopback IP address. The same IP address can be used as a loopback IP address and as the IP address of a Tunnel Interface.

### Task 10: Define Modem Interfaces

You can optionally define one or more Modem Interfaces on the firewall. A Modem Interface represents the settings of a 3G modem that provides a wireless link to the Internet or to the Management Server. The 3G



modem is connected to a USB port on the firewall engine. Each Modem Interface is identified with a Modem Number in the Management Client. The Modem Number is mapped to the modem's IMEI (international mobile equipment identity) number, and each modem is assigned a unique ID when you connect the modem to the firewall engine. If necessary, you can change the mapping between the modem's IMEI number and the modem ID through the engine command line.

### Task 11: Install the firewall engine

During the engine installation, you map the physical network interfaces on the engine and the modems connected to the USB ports on the engine to the interfaces defined in the Management Client:

- Physical Interfaces
- ADSL Interface
- Wireless Interface
- Modem Interface

The mapping of Tunnel Interfaces to physical network interfaces on the engine is done automatically by the engine operating system based on the routing configuration.

Integrated switches have predefined switch IDs. For example, the switch ID is 0 in Forcepoint NGFW 110 appliances. See the hardware guide for your appliance for more information.

You can optionally include a policy in the initial configuration to transfer the complete configuration to the firewall with information about all interfaces, routing, policies, and other settings. The policy is automatically activated on the engine after initial contact is established with the Management Server. Activating a policy allows the firewall to start processing traffic immediately.

You can configure the engine automatically using a configuration saved on a USB memory stick. If you use automatic configuration, the following interfaces are automatically mapped to the physical network interfaces on the engine and to the modems connected to the engine's USB ports:

- Physical Interface
- ADSL Interface
- Wireless Interface
- Modem Interface

If you configure the engine automatically through a Modem Interface, you must select the IPv4 address on Modem Interface O as the primary control IP address. You can change the Modem number mapping of the Modem Interface after the initial configuration using command-line tools on the engine.

Alternatively, you can upload the initial configuration to the Installation Server for plug-and-play configuration. In plug-and-play configuration, the appliances automatically connect to the Installation Server, and the initial configuration is transferred from the Installation Server to the appliances. Only specific appliances are compatible with plug-and-play configuration.

During the installation, a basic initial configuration is activated and an initial contact between the Management Server and the engine is initiated. During the initial contact, the engine authenticates itself to the Management Server with a one-time password. When this initial contact succeeds, the engine receives a certificate from the SMC for authenticating all subsequent communications. This means that a trust relationship between the engine and the Management Server is established. The one-time password then expires, because it is unnecessary from that point onwards.

### Task 11: Install a Firewall Policy

If you do not include a policy in the initial configuration, only the interface used for the control connection with the Management Server is configured after the engine establishes contact with the Management Server. You must install a Firewall Policy using the Management Client to transfer the complete configuration to the firewall. After the installation is done, the firewall is ready to start processing traffic.

**Related concepts**

[Configure anti-malware on engines](#) on page 666

[Getting started with outbound traffic management](#) on page 731

[Getting started with inbound traffic management](#) on page 745

**Related tasks**

[Configure anti-spam on engines](#) on page 669

## Firewall cluster configuration overview

A Firewall Cluster is a group of firewall nodes that work as a single logical entity to share the load of traffic processing and provide redundancy. Clustering guarantees the availability of network services to the users.

A Firewall Cluster consists of 2–16 nodes that function as a single entity. Clustering is a standard feature that you can activate on any Forcepoint NGFW Firewall/VPN installation if you have two or more licensed engines.

You can also configure Multi-Link on the Firewall Cluster to provide high availability for inbound and outbound connections. You can optionally also configure anti-malware scanning and anti-spam filtering (separately licensed features).

### Security Strength of Management Connections

You can optionally use 256-bit encryption for the connection between the engines and the Management Server. This option requires both the engines and the Management Server to be version 5.5 or later. When you create and use a new Internal ECDSA Certificate Authority to sign certificates for system communication, the Management Server and the engine re-establish their trust relationship. After the Management Server and the engine re-establish their trust relationship, 256-bit encryption is enabled for the connection between the engines and the Management Server.

## Configuration of Firewall Clusters

Firewalls are configured and managed centrally through the Management Server. The Firewall Cluster element represents the Firewall Cluster's configuration on the Management Server. The main configuration options in the Firewall Cluster element include the settings related to network interfaces and clustering. This chapter concentrates on those settings.

### Configuration Workflow

The following sections provide an overview of the configuration tasks.

#### Task 1: Create a Firewall Cluster Element

To introduce a new Firewall Cluster to the SMC, you must define a Firewall Cluster element that stores the configuration information related to the firewall engines.

#### Task 2: Create physical interfaces

Physical interfaces represent the network ports on the engines. The number of defined physical interfaces can be lower than the number of network ports on the hardware. In a firewall cluster, an interface of the type **None** represents a single network port on all nodes of the cluster. An aggregated link represents two or more network ports on the engine. An aggregated link in high availability mode provides protection against hardware failure. You can also use an aggregated link in load-balancing mode to increase throughput. You can combine two

network ports in an aggregated link in high availability mode. You can combine up to eight network ports in an aggregated link in load-balancing mode.

By default, the physical interface definitions are mapped to the actual network interfaces on the engines one-to-one. If necessary, you can change the mapping using command-line tools on the engine. This mapping can be done differently from node to node. However, you must make sure that the interface that represents the same network interface on each node is correctly cabled to the same network.

### Task 3: Define VLAN interfaces

A Virtual Local Area Network (VLAN) is a logical grouping of hosts and network devices that allows creating several separated networks on a single physical link. To allow this separation, the Forcepoint NGFW Firewall supports VLAN tagging as defined in the IEEE 802.1q standard. One network interface can support up to 4094 VLANs.

VLANs can also make it easier to deploy geographically distributed Firewall Clusters, for example, a cluster whose nodes are located in different buildings. Fewer physical interfaces and less cabling is needed.

When you create a VLAN interface, the CVI mode and MAC address are defined commonly for all virtual interfaces configured for the same physical interface definition. The defined VLAN interfaces are displayed, for example, as “5.202” for network interface 5 with VLAN 202.

### Task 4: Define tunnel interfaces

Tunnel interfaces are logical interfaces that are used as endpoints for tunnels in the Route-Based VPN. Any traffic that is routed to a tunnel interface and allowed by the Access rules is automatically sent through the tunnel to the peer endpoint. Defining tunnel interfaces is optional: tunnel interfaces are only used in the Route-Based VPN.

You can optionally add IPv4 and IPv6 addresses to a tunnel interface. Adding an IP address allows you to define the source IP address of traffic sent from the engine node itself.

### Task 5: Configure physical or VLAN interfaces

There are two types of IP addresses that you can define on physical interfaces or VLAN interfaces:

- A Cluster Virtual IP address (CVI) is used for traffic that is routed through the firewall for inspection. All nodes in the cluster share it.
- A Node Dedicated IP address (NDI) is used for traffic that the nodes themselves send or receive. This traffic includes communication between the nodes and the Management Server, and communication between the nodes in the cluster. Each node in the cluster has a specific IP address that is used as the Node Dedicated IP address.

You can define more than one Cluster Virtual IP address or Node Dedicated IP address for the same physical interface or VLAN interface. If the physical interface is an aggregated link, all interfaces that belong to the aggregated link share the IP address definitions.

IPv6 addresses are supported on firewall clusters with dispatch clustering mode. IPv6 and IPv4 addresses can be used together on the same firewall cluster.

Each CVI inherits the MAC address defined for the physical interface. The MAC/IP address pair always remains the same as only the location of the MAC address changes to the current dispatcher node (packet dispatch). This configuration makes the external network equipment forward traffic to the correct node for dispatching. The CVIs on different physical interfaces cannot have duplicate MAC addresses.

The NDIs are used for the following purposes:

- Node-to-node communications
- Traffic between each individual node and the Management Server and Log Server
- Communications with external components (such as authentication servers, or hosts that are probed in network connectivity tests)

When you define NDIs, you must define both node-specific properties (such as the node's IP address) and properties that all nodes in the cluster share. All nodes must have the same netmask value for their NDI.

You also need at least one Node Dedicated IP address. We recommend defining at least two NDIs (one for management connections and one for the heartbeat traffic between the nodes). Whenever the Firewall Cluster has a CVI address in a particular network segment, we recommend defining NDI addresses in the same network segment for each node. We recommend defining an NDI for all nodes on each physical interface, VLAN interface, or aggregated link interface. If there is a shortage of IP addresses, it is possible to leave some interfaces without an NDI. If there is a CVI without a corresponding NDI from the same network segment, communications that require an NDI 'borrow' an IP address. The address can be borrowed from another NDI on the same physical interface, VLAN interface, or aggregated link interface. If there is no NDI on the same physical interface, VLAN interface, or aggregated link interface, the default IP address for outgoing traffic is used. The 'borrowed' IP address can be used without issues with routers that strictly follow the ARP standard. You might need to create a static ARP entry if some routers do not strictly follow the ARP standard.

To use the firewall as an IGMP proxy for multicast routing, the IP addresses for the downstream interfaces must be the lowest IP addresses among all IGMP queriers in the local networks.

### **Task 6: Define Loopback IP addresses**

You can optionally define one or more loopback IP addresses for the firewall cluster. Loopback IP addresses allow you to assign IP addresses that do not belong to any directly connected networks to the firewall. Loopback IP addresses are not connected to any physical interface and they do not create connectivity to any network. Any IP address that is not already used as a Cluster Virtual IP addresses (CVI) or Node Dedicated IP addresses (NDI) on another interface can be used as a loopback IP address. The same IP address can be used as a loopback IP address and as the IP address of a tunnel interface.

You can define both CVI and NDI loopback IP addresses for Firewall Clusters. Whether to define a CVI or NDI loopback address depends on the traffic for which the loopback IP address is used:

- A CVI loopback IP address is used for loopback traffic that is sent to the whole cluster. All nodes in the cluster share it.
- An NDI loopback IP address is used for loopback traffic that is sent to a specific node in the cluster.

### **Task 7: Install the Firewall Engines**

During the engine installation, you map the network interfaces on the engine to the physical interface definitions created in the Management Client. The mapping of tunnel interfaces to physical network interfaces on the engine is done automatically by the engine operating system based on the routing configuration. For more information, see the *Forcepoint Next Generation Firewall Installation Guide*.

During the installation, a basic initial configuration is activated and an initial contact between the Management Server and each engine is initiated. During the initial contact, each engine authenticates itself to the Management Server with its own single-use password. When this initial contact succeeds, the engine receives a certificate from the SMC for authenticating all subsequent communications. This means that a trust relationship between that engine and the Management Server is established.

### **Task 8: Install a Firewall Policy**

The engines do not receive any clustering settings until the first time you install a policy on them and the working configuration is received from the Management Server. After the firewall engines have made initial contact with the Management Server, only the interface used for the control connection with the Management Server is configured. You must install a Firewall Policy using the Management Client to transfer the complete configuration to the firewall.

#### **Related concepts**

[Node state synchronization](#) on page 676

[Security level for state synchronization](#) on page 677

[Configure anti-malware on engines](#) on page 666

[Getting started with outbound traffic management](#) on page 731

[Getting started with inbound traffic management](#) on page 745

**Related tasks**

[Configure anti-spam on engines](#) on page 669



# Deploying Forcepoint NGFW in IPS and Layer 2 Firewall roles

### Contents

- Supported platforms for Forcepoint NGFW deployment on page 71
- Running NGFW Engines as Master NGFW Engines on page 72
- Hardware requirements for installing Forcepoint NGFW on third-party hardware on page 72
- Guidelines for deploying IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls on page 73
- Positioning IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls on page 74
- Deploying IPS engines in IDS or IPS mode on page 77
- IPS deployment examples on page 84
- Post-installation steps for Forcepoint NGFW in the IPS role on page 88
- Deploying Layer 2 Firewalls in IPS or Passive Firewall mode on page 88
- Layer 2 Firewall deployment example on page 92
- Post-installation steps for Forcepoint NGFW in the Layer 2 Firewall role on page 92
- Cable connection guidelines for IPS and Layer 2 Firewalls on page 93
- Speed and duplex settings for NGFW Engines on page 96

The positioning of an IPS engine or Layer 2 Firewall depends on the network environment and the function of the IPS engine or Layer 2 Firewall.

## Supported platforms for Forcepoint NGFW deployment

You can run NGFW Engines on various platforms.

The following general types of platforms are available for NGFW Engines:

- Purpose-built Forcepoint NGFW appliances



**Note:** For information about supported appliance models, see Knowledge Base article [9743](#).

- The VMware ESX and KVM virtualization platforms are officially supported.
- Amazon Web Services (AWS) cloud (Firewall/VPN role only)
- Third-party hardware that meets the hardware requirements

The NGFW Engine software includes an integrated, hardened Linux operating system. The operating system eliminates the need for separate installation, configuration, and patching.

# Running NGFW Engines as Master NGFW Engines

There are some hardware requirements and configuration limitations when you use an NGFW Engine as a Master NGFW Engine.

Running the NGFW Engine as a Master NGFW Engine does not require a third-party virtualization platform. When you run Forcepoint NGFW as a Master NGFW Engine, the Forcepoint NGFW hardware provides the virtual environment and resources for the hosted Virtual NGFW Engines. You must always install the Forcepoint NGFW software on a hardware device to run the NGFW Engine as a Master NGFW Engine.

You can run Master NGFW Engines on the following types of hardware platforms:

- Purpose-built Forcepoint NGFW appliances with 64-bit architecture
- Third-party hardware with 64-bit architecture that meets the hardware requirements

The following requirements and limitations apply when you use an NGFW Engine as a Master NGFW Engine:

- Each Master NGFW Engine must run on a separate 64-bit physical device.
- All Virtual NGFW Engines hosted by a Master NGFW Engine or Master NGFW Engine cluster must have the same role and the same Failure Mode (*fail-open* or *fail-close*).
- Master NGFW Engines can allocate VLANs or interfaces to Virtual NGFW Engines. If the Failure Mode of the Virtual IPS engines or Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls is *Normal* (*fail-close*) and you want to allocate VLANs to several engines, you must use the Master NGFW Engine cluster in standby mode.

## Hardware requirements for installing Forcepoint NGFW on third-party hardware

There are some basic hardware requirements when you run Forcepoint NGFW on third-party hardware.



**CAUTION:** Check that the Automatic Power Management (APM) and Advanced Configuration and Power Interface (ACPI) settings are disabled in BIOS. Otherwise, the engine might not start after installation or can shut down unexpectedly.



**CAUTION:** The hardware must be dedicated to the Forcepoint NGFW. No other software can be installed on it.

The following basic hardware requirements apply:

- (Recommended for new deployments) Intel® Xeon®-based hardware from the E5-16xx product family or higher



**Note:** Legacy deployments with Intel® Core™2 are supported.

- IDE hard disk and CD drive



**Note:** IDE RAID controllers are not supported.



- Memory:
  - 4 GB RAM minimum for x86-64-small installation
  - 8 GB RAM minimum for x86-64 installation
- VGA-compatible monitor and keyboard
- One or more certified network interfaces for the Firewall/VPN role
- Two or more certified network interfaces for IPS with IDS configuration
- Three or more certified network interfaces for Inline IPS or Layer 2 Firewall

## Guidelines for deploying IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls

There are some general deployment guidelines for IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewalls, and the Security Management Center (SMC).

Naturally, there are valid reasons to make exceptions to these general rules depending on the actual network environment.

**Table 8: General guidelines for IPS and Layer 2 Firewall deployment**

Component	General Guidelines
Management Server	Position on a central site where it is physically accessible to the administrators responsible for maintaining its operation.
Log Servers	Place the Log Servers centrally and locally on sites as needed based on log data volume and administrative responsibilities.
Management Clients	Management Clients can be used from any location that has network access to the Management Server and the Log Servers.
IPS engines	Position IPS engines at each location so that traffic in all appropriate networks can be inspected. IPS engines can be clustered. Functionally, the IPS Cluster is equal to a single high-performance IPS engine. Cluster deployments set up heartbeat links between the IPS engines. The heartbeat links allow the devices to track each others' operating status and agree on the division of work.
Layer 2 Firewalls	Position Layer 2 Firewalls at each location so that traffic in all appropriate networks can be inspected. Layer 2 Firewalls can be clustered for High Availability. Only one Layer 2 Firewall node in the Layer 2 Firewall Cluster is active at a time. If the active Layer 2 Firewall node goes offline, another Layer 2 Firewall node automatically starts processing traffic.
Master NGFW Engines	Position the Master NGFW Engines where Virtual NGFW Engines are needed. For example, at a hosting location for MSSP services or between networks that require strict isolation. Master NGFW Engines can be clustered. A clustered Master NGFW Engine provides scalability and High Availability. In a Master NGFW Engine Cluster, the Virtual Resource is active in one Master NGFW Engine at a time. Cluster deployments set up heartbeat links between the engines. The heartbeat links allow the devices to track each others' operating status, agree on the division of work, and exchange information on traffic.

# Positioning IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls

IPS and Layer 2 Firewall engines pick up passing network traffic for inspection in real time. The positioning of the engines is the most critical part of the deployment.

Each engine can inspect the network traffic of one or more network segments in IDS and IPS configurations.

The following table describes the modes for IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls.

**Table 9: Modes for IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls**

Role	Default Policy	Mode	Description
IPS	Allows everything that is not explicitly denied in the policy.	Inline	In inline (IPS) mode, an IPS engine actively filters traffic. The IPS engine is connected as a “smart cable” between two network devices, such as routers and a switch. The IPS engine itself does not route traffic: packets enter through one port, are inspected, and exit through the other port that makes up the pair of Inline Interfaces. Failover network interface cards (NICs) are recommended on the IPS engine to allow network connectivity when the IPS engine is offline. An inline IPS engine can also transparently segment networks and control network access.
		Capture	In capture (IDS) mode, an IPS engine listens to network traffic that is replicated to the IPS engine through: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Port mirroring (switch SPAN ports)</li> <li>Dedicated network TAP devices</li> </ul>
Layer 2 Firewall	Denies everything that is not explicitly allowed in the policy.	Inline	In inline (IPS) mode, a Layer 2 Firewall engine actively filters traffic. The engine is connected as a “smart cable” between two network devices, such as routers. The engine itself does not route traffic: packets enter through one port, are inspected, and exit through the other port that makes up the pair of Inline Interfaces. Fail-open network interface cards (NICs) can only be used on the Layer 2 Firewall if the Failure Mode of the pair of Inline Interfaces is Normal. An inline Layer 2 Firewall can also transparently segment networks and control network access.
		Capture (Passive Firewall)	In capture (Passive Firewall) mode, a Layer 2 Firewall listens to network traffic that is replicated to the Layer 2 Firewall through port mirroring (switch SPAN ports).
		Passive Inline	A Layer 2 Firewall installs inline between two network devices, such as routers and a switch, but does not filter traffic. An inline Layer 2 Firewall can be set to Passive Firewall mode by configuring the Layer 2 Firewall to only log connections.

The same IPS engine can be used for both IPS and IDS operation simultaneously. For example, an IPS engine can be deployed inline to examine traffic from one network to another and capture traffic that stays within each network.

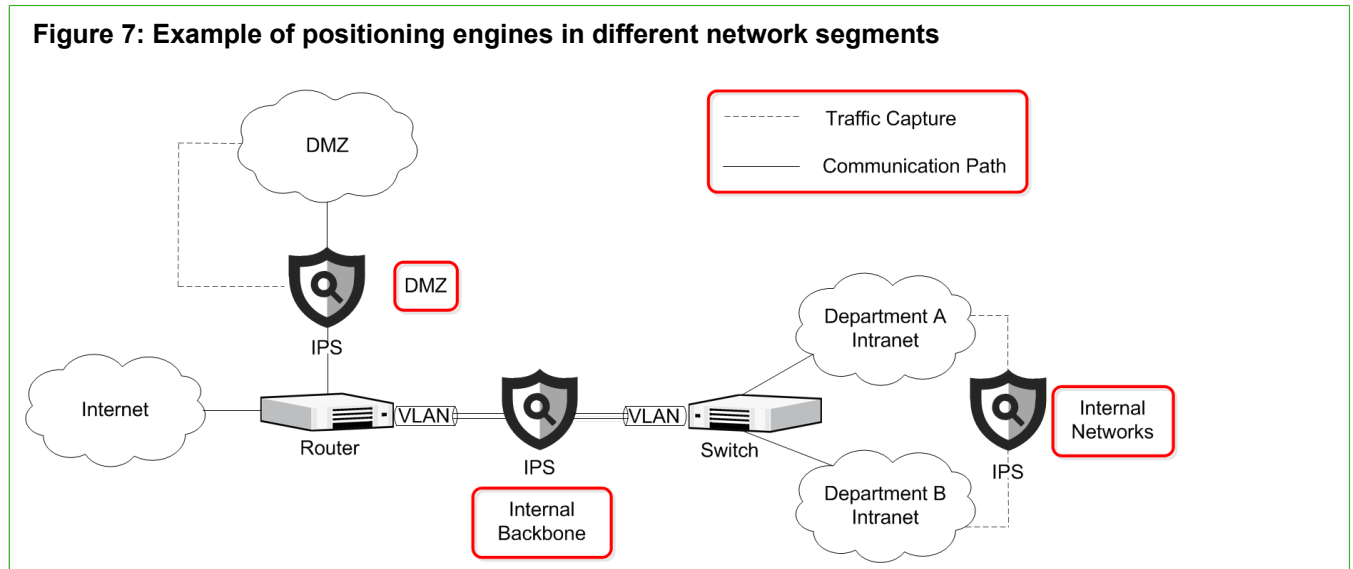
Take the following into consideration when you decide where to install the engines:

- The critical assets to be protected and the potential attack paths.

- The most suitable locations along the attack path for detecting and responding to attack attempts to protect the assets.
- The volume and profile of traffic to be inspected at each location.

Select the engine role based on the way the engine handles inspected traffic:

- Use a Layer 2 Firewall if traffic must be denied unless it is explicitly allowed.
- Use an IPS engine if traffic must be allowed unless it is denied.



The illustration outlines common deployment scenarios for IPS engines in general internal networks and in DMZ networks. Layer 2 Firewalls can be used in similar scenarios. IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls are not necessarily needed at each of these points in all environments. A single IPS engine or a single Layer 2 Firewall can also cover several or even all scenarios simultaneously if the physical setup makes it practical.

## Positioning IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls in internal networks

In internal networks, access is permissive for purely internal communications, but there are strict controls at the perimeter firewall that separates the internal network from public networks.

Inbound traffic from public networks to internal networks is forbidden with few exceptions.

**Table 10: Internal network considerations for IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls**

	Description	Considerations for IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls
Main purpose	Network services and connectivity for authorized users. Back-end servers that serve other networks and user groups.	IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls can be used within internal networks and for strengthening the perimeter defense with additional layers of inspection.
Hosts	Mixed environment consisting of servers, laptops, desktops, network printers, and copiers.	IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls can control access between internal hosts uncontrolled by other devices. Connections between internal network zones are of particular interest for inspection.

	Description	Considerations for IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls
Users	Authorized personnel. Access in and out of the network controlled by a Firewall.	End-user-controlled devices can be distinguished from other hosts to create more accurate and fine-grained rules.
Traffic volume	Varies from low to high. Grows highest at network choke-points in large environments.	Installation at network choke-points where traffic levels are high requires high-performance hardware. Clustering and load balancing can be applied to increase performance and provide High Availability in critical locations.
Traffic type	Diverse with many different applications communicating within and in/ out of the network.	A wide range of permitted applications means that the policy has a wide scope. Access control and inspection can be fine-tuned based on the security levels of the different network segments or zones. TLS inspection can be activated to inspect SSL/TLS encrypted traffic. The IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls can also detect and control Application use.
Network security	A “trusted network” where the users and the traffic are considered to be authorized.	The primary line of defense is at the perimeter. It is possible that authorized users in the trusted network become willingly or accidentally involved in a security incident.

## Positioning IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls in DMZ networks

DMZ networks (demilitarized zone networks, also known as perimeter networks) allow inbound access to a wide range of users, but are unified environments in terms of devices.

The services offered are limited in number as well and their allowed usage is often strictly defined.

**Table 11: DMZ considerations for IPS engines**

	Description	Considerations for IPS engines
Main purpose	DMZs provide a limited number of services for external users. The services are often business-critical and open for public access.	DMZs are a tempting target for attacks because of their accessibility, importance, and visibility. IPS engines provide crucial protection in DMZs, unless the DMZs are already protected by firewalls.
Hosts	Often a uniform environment consisting mainly of servers. No outbound communication is initiated from the DMZ to the public networks.	Most sources are not trusted and IP address spoofing is a possibility. Internal networks can be considered more trustworthy if there is a Firewall that prevents IP address spoofing.
Users	Most services are public, but some services might also be offered to specific users. Administrators have wider permissions.	For recognized users, allowed and forbidden activities can be specified in great detail for each type of access.

	Description	Considerations for IPS engines
Traffic volume	Low to medium, generally the full bandwidth of all Internet links combined (shared with other local networks). Traffic to other local networks can be high in volume.	Hardware requirements vary greatly depending on the environment. Clustering allows flexible adjustments to the inspection performance.
Traffic type	Rather uniform traffic, with only well-known applications and servers communicating within and into the networks.	The limited, well-defined set of protocols and applications means inspection can be tuned in great detail. If servers provide HTTPS services, decrypting the traffic for inspection might require heavy processing.
Network security	A network between the trusted and untrusted security zones allowing access for authorized and public use.	External access to services makes the servers in a DMZ a tempting target for attacks. Connections between the DMZs and other networks facilitate further attacks.

## Deploying IPS engines in IDS or IPS mode

---

IPS engines can be configured in IPS mode or IDS mode.

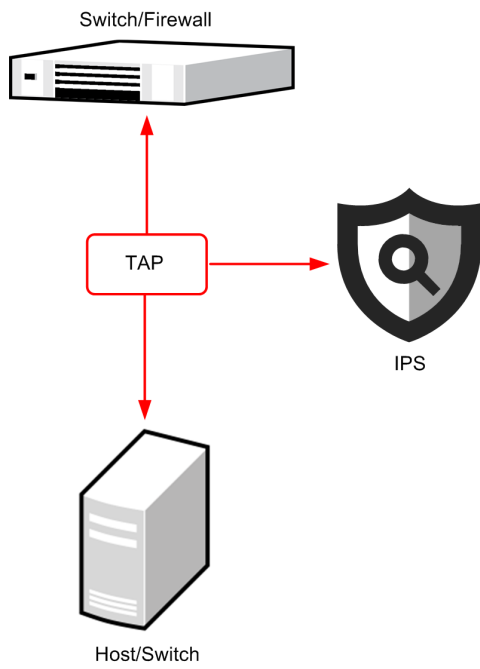
### IPS deployment in IDS mode

---

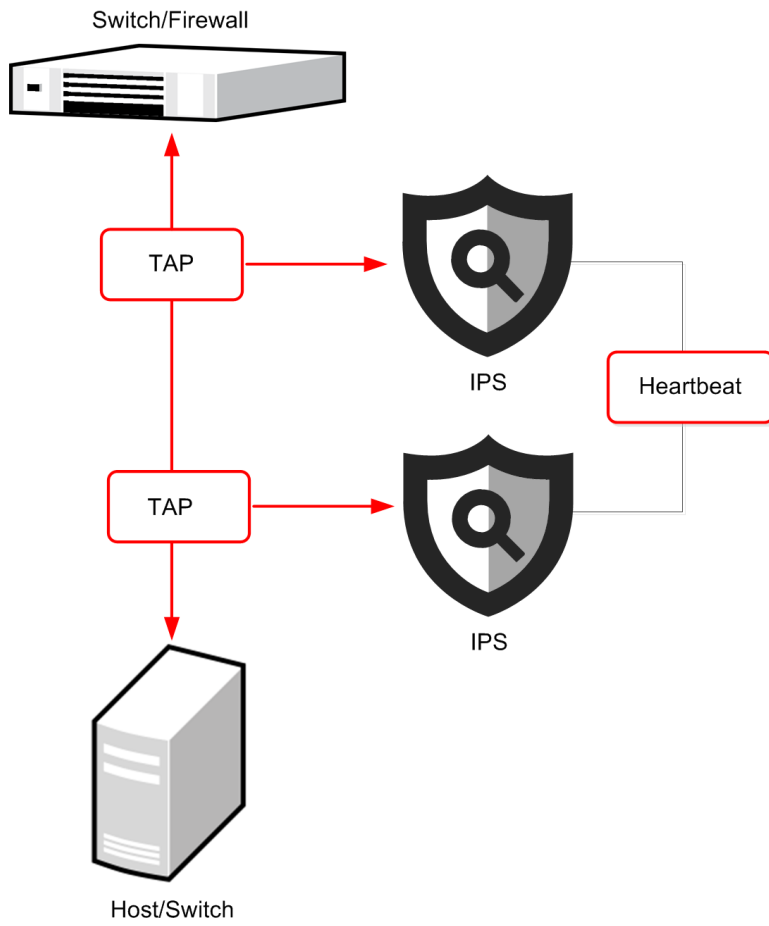
One of the options in IDS mode is to use network TAP devices that copy packets for the IPS engines.

In an IPS Cluster, all nodes must receive all packets. The nodes agree over the heartbeat link which node inspects which connections.

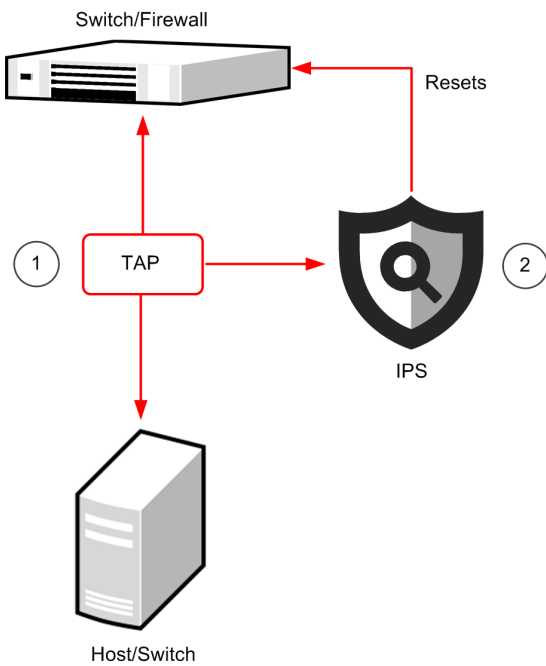
**Figure 8: Single IPS in IDS mode with a network TAP**



**Figure 9: IPS Cluster in IDS mode with network TAPs**

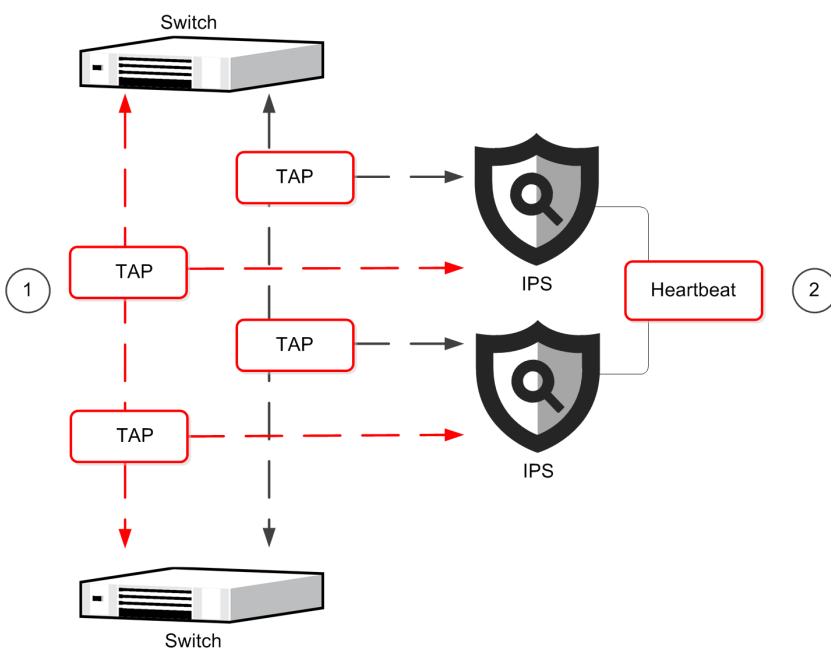


**Figure 10: Single IPS in IDS mode with a network TAP and an interface for sending resets**



- 1 A pattern in captured traffic triggers the reset.
- 2 IPS sends a reset within the same broadcast domain to each communicating host posing as the other host by using its IP address and MAC address.

**Figure 11: IPS Cluster in IDS mode with network TAPs on a redundant link**

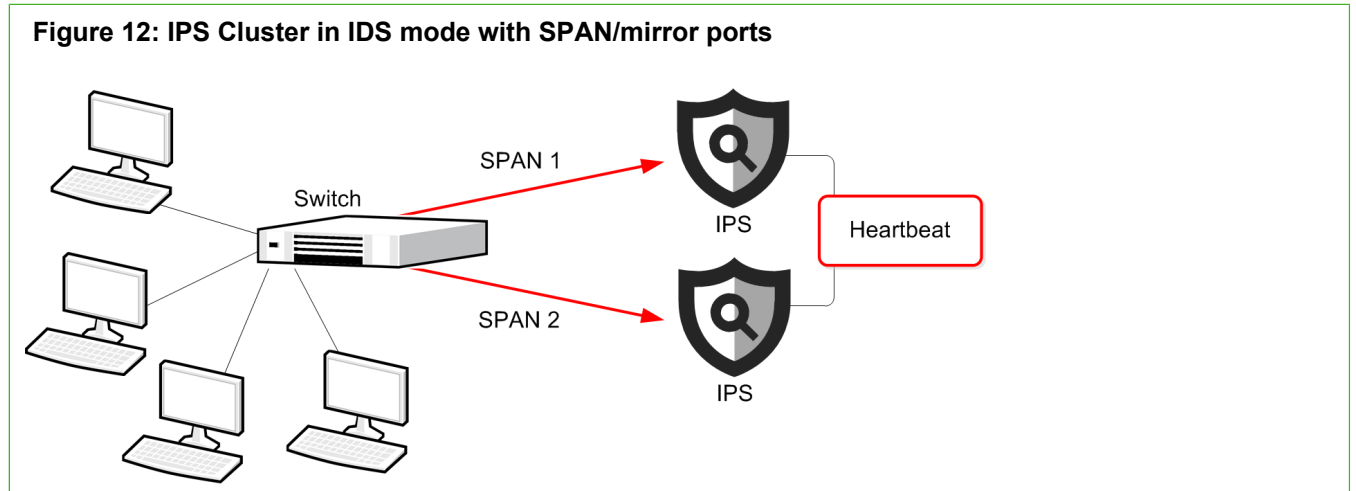


- 1 Switches balance traffic across redundant links.
- 2 Links are combined into a *Logical Interface* to inspect whole connections.



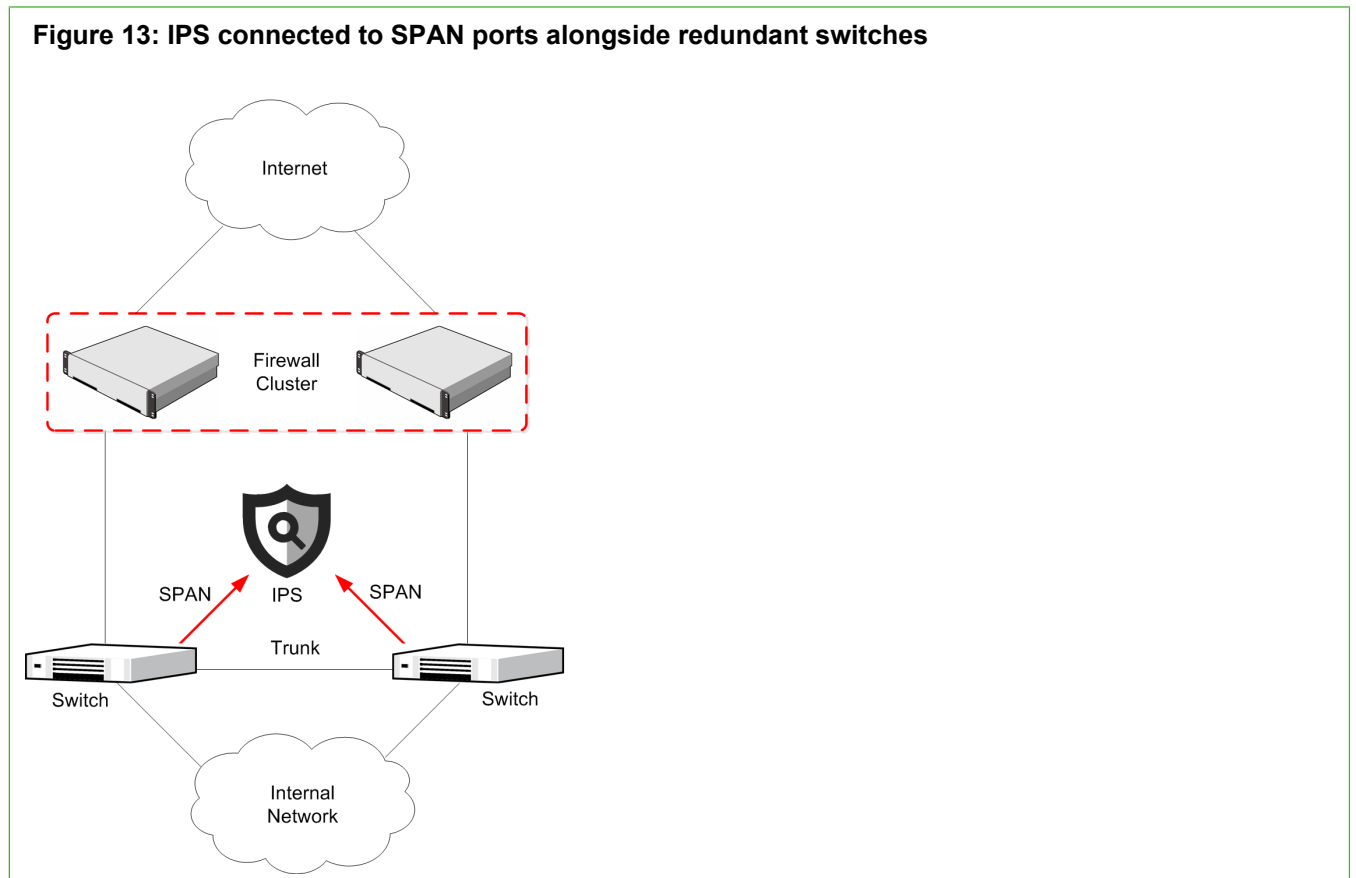
Packets can also be duplicated for inspection through a SPAN or mirror port on a switch/router. In an IPS Cluster, each node must be connected to a SPAN or mirror port of its own. Hubs are not recommended, but you can use hubs in configurations where the low performance of a hub is not an issue. For example, in a basic testing environment.

**Figure 12: IPS Cluster in IDS mode with SPAN/mirror ports**



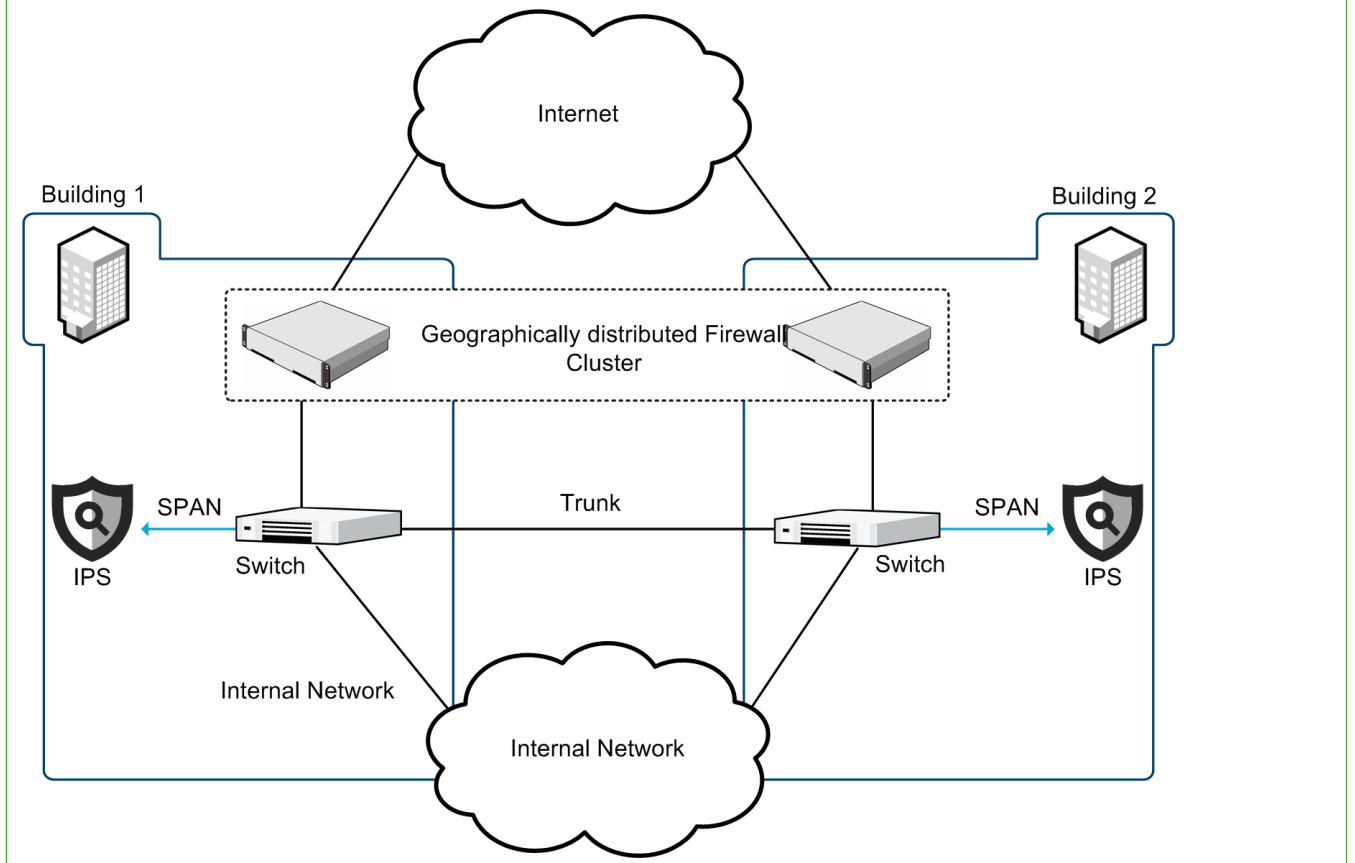
An IPS Cluster can be deployed alongside a Firewall Cluster. In this configuration, the IPS Cluster is in the same broadcast domain as the Firewall.

**Figure 13: IPS connected to SPAN ports alongside redundant switches**



In a redundant disaster-recovery setup, Firewall Cluster nodes can be far apart. The IPS engines are not clustered in this configuration, but they have identical policies.

Figure 14: Single IPS engines in a distributed disaster-recovery environment



## IPS deployment in IPS mode

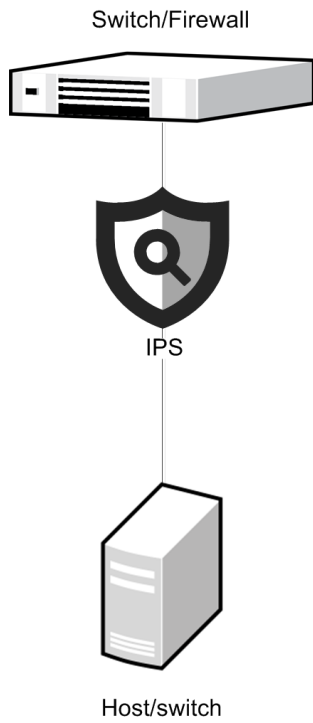
In an inline IPS configuration, the IPS engines are installed directly in the traffic path.

Fail-open network cards are recommended to allow traffic flow when the IPS engines are offline.

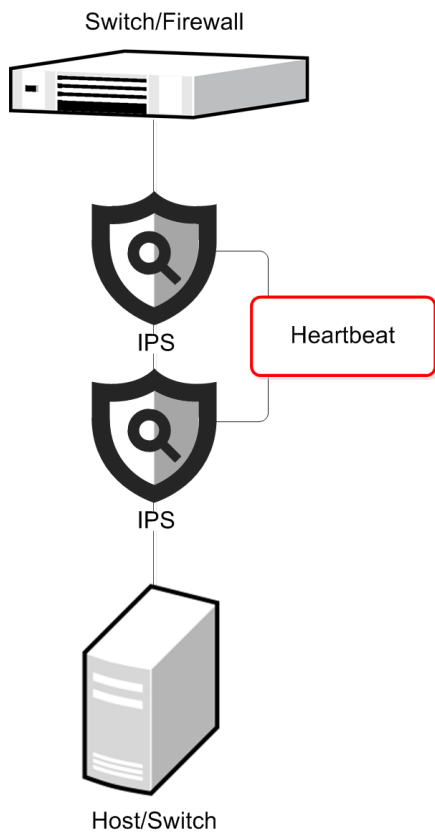


**CAUTION:** Always use standard cabling methods with an inline IPS engine. Use crossover cables to connect the appliance to hosts and straight cables to connect the appliance to switches.

**Figure 15: Single inline IPS engine**

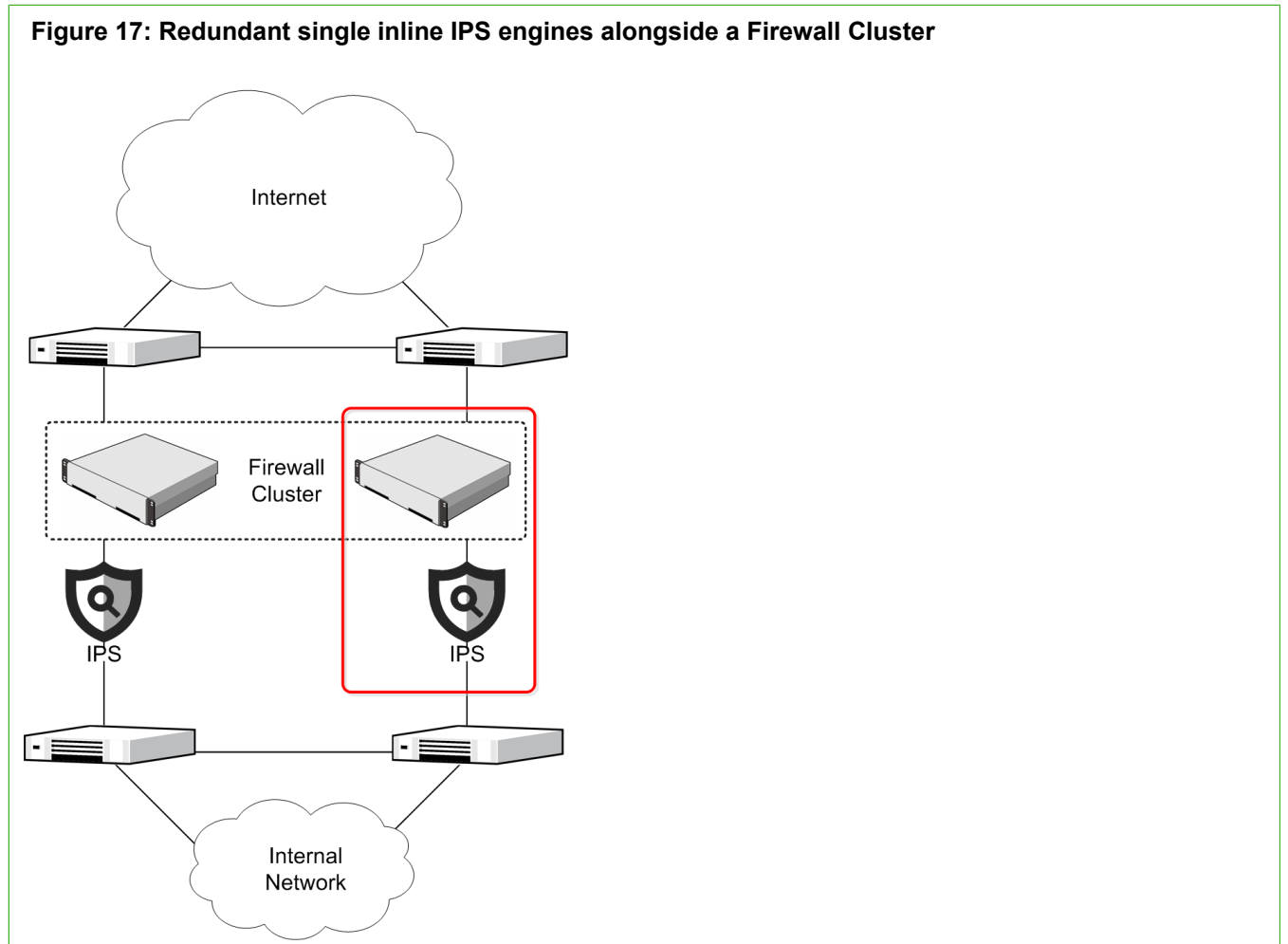


**Figure 16: Serial IPS Cluster**



The same node handles the packets within a connection.

**Figure 17: Redundant single inline IPS engines alongside a Firewall Cluster**



IPS engines are connected alongside each individual Firewall engine. The IPS engines have the same policy, but they are not clustered.



**Note:** In this deployment scenario, the Medium-Security Inspection Policy must be used on the IPS engines.

### Related concepts

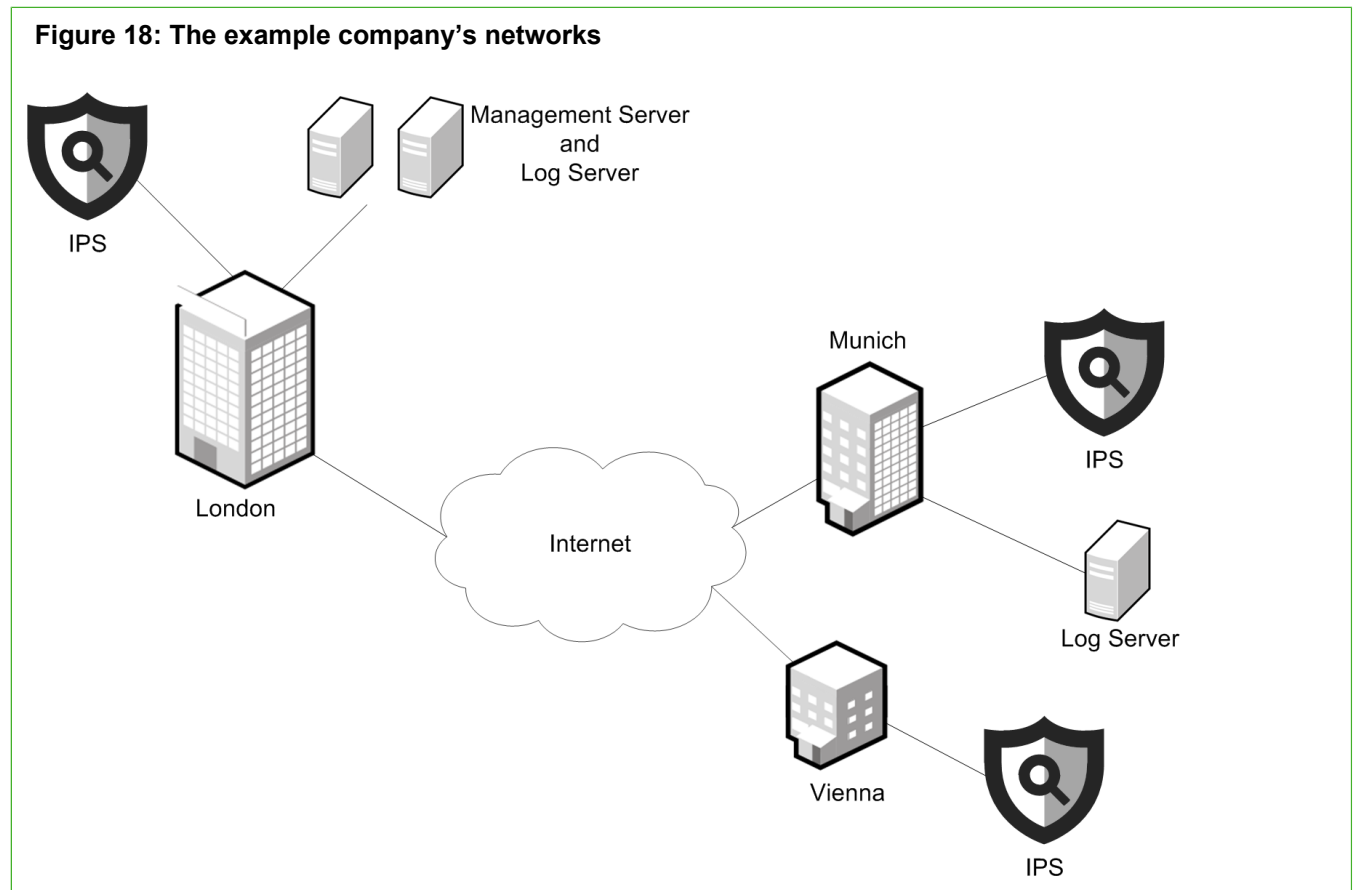
[Cable connection guidelines for IPS and Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 93

## IPS deployment examples

These examples show how to deploy Forcepoint NGFW in the IPS role in an organization.

The scenario presented here is not meant to be representative of a typical installation. The main focus here is to highlight some of the criteria that you can use when planning your deployment. The example covers considerations that affect most installations, but is not an exhaustive list of the factors you might need to consider. The IPS system could be deployed in alternative ways even in this example scenario, depending on issues that are not covered here, such as the physical layout of the individual local networks, the hardware available, and budget constraints.

This example explains the IPS deployment at a company that has three offices: headquarters in London, a branch office in Munich and a small satellite office in Vienna.



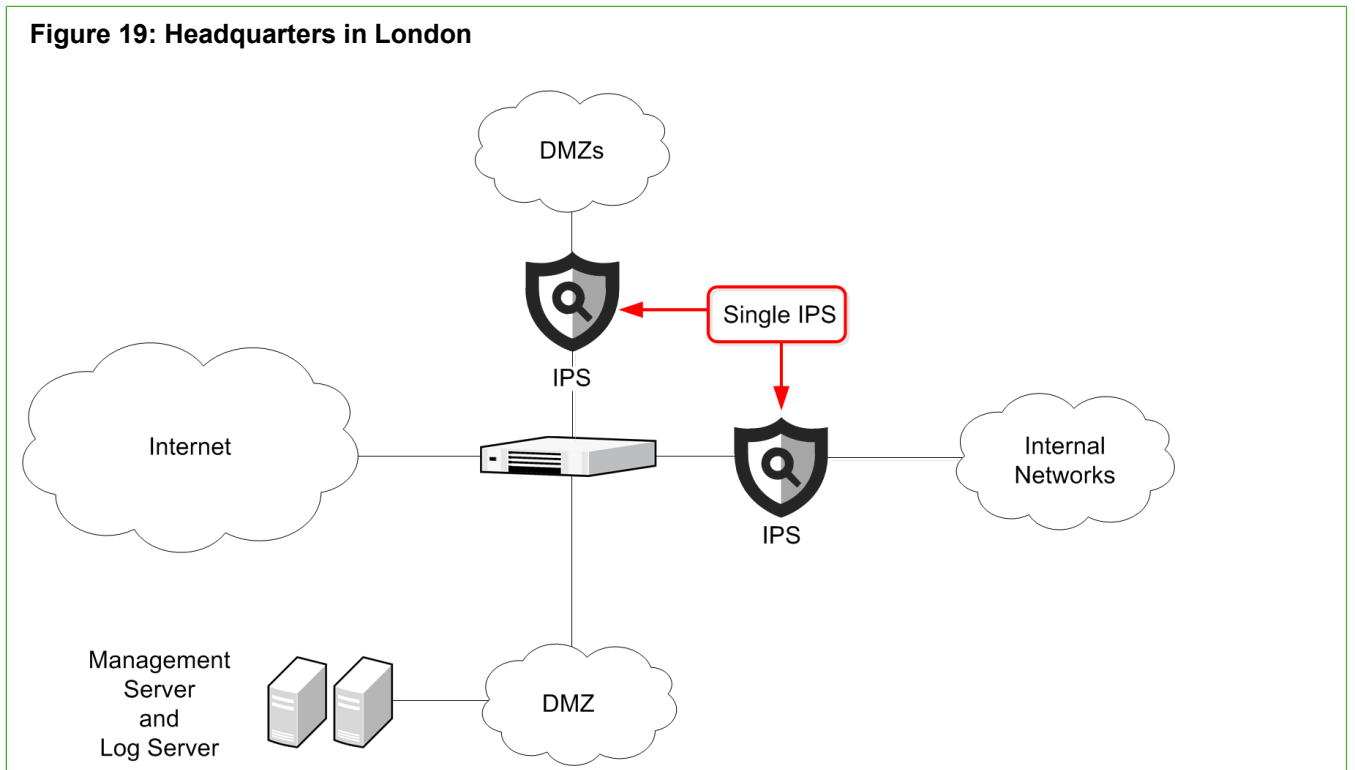
All offices have IPS components. There are also SMC components at the two larger sites. The example company has some critical assets to protect and some of the networks experience a heavy traffic load. The example company has decided on a High Availability solution for most locations and acquired the following components:

- Three IPS engines
- One Management Server
- Two Log Servers

## Example: large-scale IPS installation

The following is an example of a large-scale installation with two Single IPS engines.

The example company's main office at London has many end users and servers. The servers host nearly all company external services and receive a high volume of traffic. The large end-user base generates a high volume of network traffic as well. There are many different applications and protocols in use, resulting in a diverse traffic pattern. The most important asset that the company wants to protect at its headquarters are the web servers hosting the company's online store. The main system administrators work at the main office site.

**Figure 19: Headquarters in London**

In this case, the company has made the following decisions:

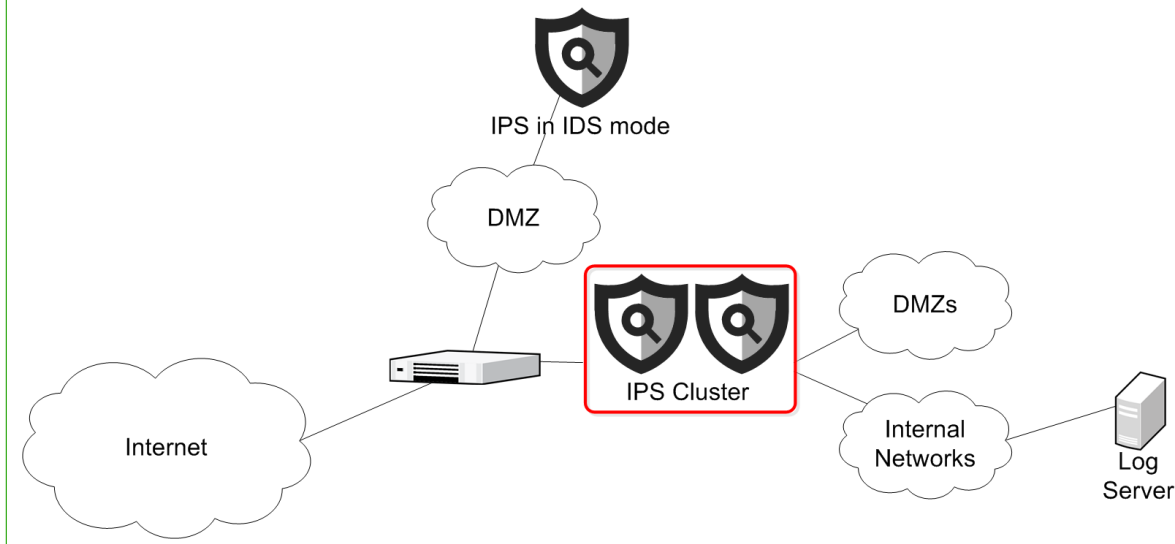
- Because most of the administrators are at this site, the Management Server that controls the whole distributed system is located here.
- There are many administrators and components, so there is also a Log Server here.
- Several DMZs for different services handle a high total volume of traffic. Part of the traffic is encrypted HTTPS, which uses significant processing power to decrypt for inspection. As the overall load is heavy, the company decided to protect the DMZs using a dedicated high-performance Forcepoint NGFW appliance.
- A separate single IPS is installed to protect the diverse high-volume communications of the internal networks.
- The Management Server and the Log Server are placed in a dedicated DMZ for security.

## Example: medium-scale IPS installation

The following is an example of a medium-scale installation with an IPS Cluster.

The example company's branch office at Munich has a moderate number of end-user clients. Some services are only offered at the London headquarters and used remotely through a VPN. There are still many local servers, but mostly for internal and partner use. Also, there are some administrators at this location who are responsible for the:

- Daily upkeep of the office infrastructure
- Small satellite office in Vienna

**Figure 20: Large branch office in Munich**

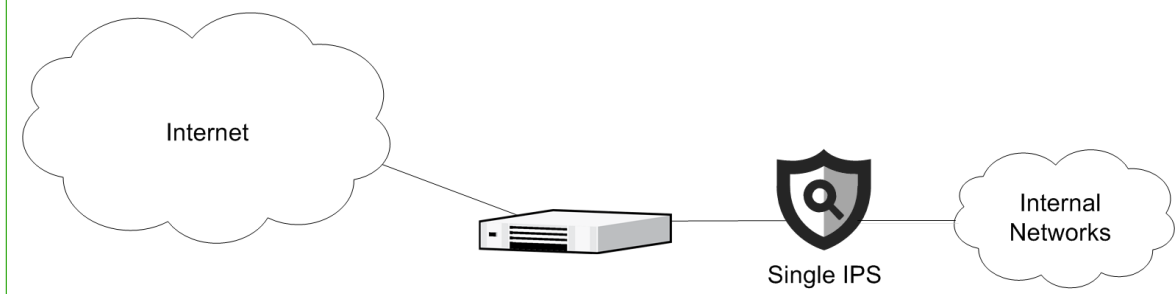
In this case, the company has made the following decisions:

- Because there are administrators who browse logs extensively at this site, there is a dedicated Log Server here.
- One IDS is installed to inspect the network traffic in a DMZ that supports partner access.
- The IPS Cluster is placed in a dedicated DMZ for security.

## Example: small-scale IPS installation

The following is an example of a small-scale installation with a Single IPS engine.

The example company's small satellite office at Vienna has a relatively low number of end-user clients, and there are no servers of any major significance. Users rely mostly on the services at the Munich office, which they access through a VPN. Also, the users have direct Internet access for general web browsing. There are no local administrators. Administrators in Munich manage the systems remotely.

**Figure 21: Small satellite office in Vienna**

To inspect the low-volume traffic that the end users' Internet and VPN-bound communications generate, the company installs a Single IPS at the office. Since there are no local administrators and the traffic volumes are low, the logs are sent to the Munich Log Server. When the logs are sent to the Munich Log Server, it is quick and easy for the responsible administrators there to view and manage the data.

# Post-installation steps for Forcepoint NGFW in the IPS role

---

There are some steps to follow after you have completed the installation, installed a basic policy, and turned the IPS engines online.



**Note:** The configuration information is stored on the Management Server. Most changes are transferred to the engines only when you install or refresh the IPS policy.

The basic administration tasks you must learn or complete next include the following:

- How to read and control the operating state of IPS engines.
- Adjusting the automatic tester that monitors the operation of the IPS engines and the surrounding network.

After you have installed your first IPS policy, your next task is gathering information about the events detected in your networks during a “tuning period”. Once you have enough information on what kind of traffic — malicious and harmless — can be seen in your network, you can edit your policies to improve the detection accuracy and to get rid of false alarms. The most typical customization steps include:

- Creating your own policy or policy template.
- Editing the Ethernet rules, Access rules, and Inspection rules.
- Creating your own custom Situations.

## Deploying Layer 2 Firewalls in IPS or Passive Firewall mode

---

Layer 2 Firewalls can be configured in IPS mode or Passive Firewall mode.

### Layer 2 Firewall deployment in IPS mode

---

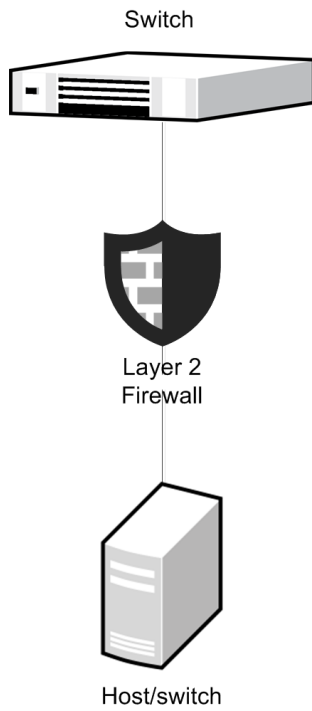
In an IPS configuration, the Layer 2 Firewalls are installed inline directly in the traffic path.

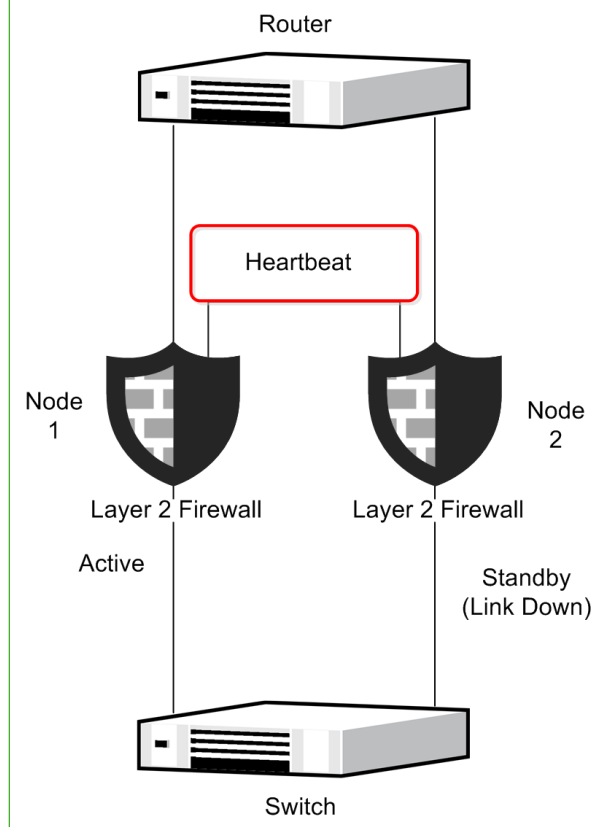


**CAUTION:** Always use standard cabling methods with an inline Layer 2 Firewall. Use crossover cables to connect the appliance to hosts and straight cables to connect the appliance to switches.



**Figure 22: Single inline Layer 2 Firewall**



**Figure 23: Active/Standby Layer 2 Firewall Cluster****Related concepts**

[Cable connection guidelines for IPS and Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 93

## Layer 2 Firewall deployment in Passive Firewall mode

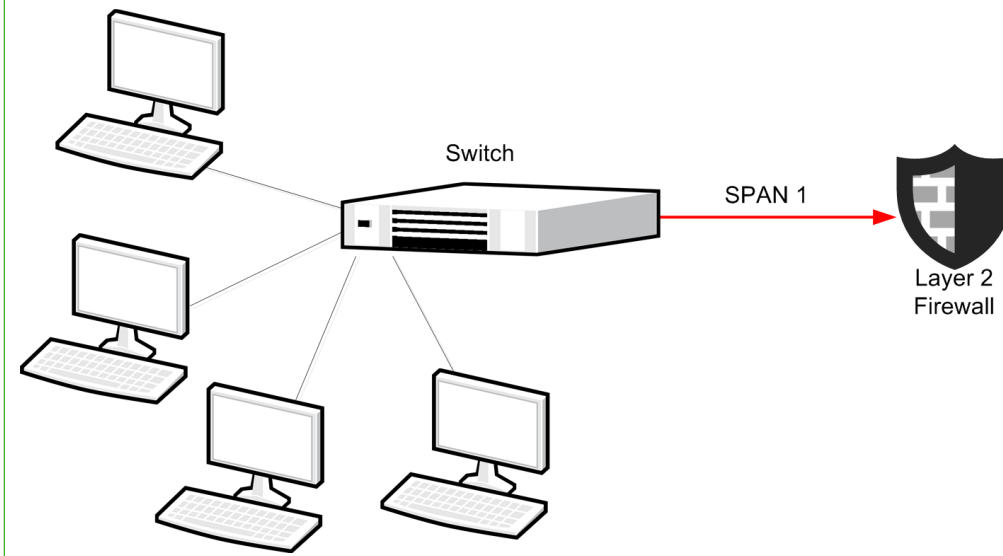
In Passive Firewall mode, a Layer 2 Firewall inspects but does not actively filter traffic.

Layer 2 Firewalls can be deployed in Passive Firewall mode in two ways:

- In capture mode to inspect packets that have been duplicated for inspection through SPAN or mirror ports.
- In passive inline mode by setting the engine to only log connections by default.

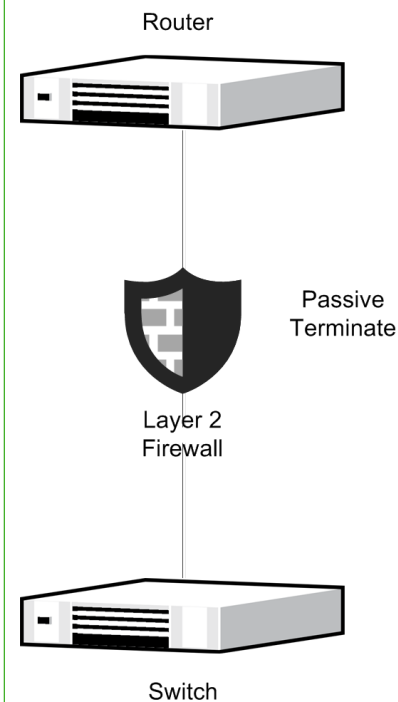
In a capture mode installation, packets are duplicated for inspection through a SPAN or mirror port on a switch/router. In a Layer 2 Firewall Cluster, each node must be connected to a SPAN or mirror port of its own.

**Figure 24: Passive Firewall: a Single Layer 2 Firewall in capture mode with SPAN/mirror ports**



When you select Only Log Connection mode for the global Default Connection Termination, you can deploy Layer 2 Firewalls in Passive Firewall mode in an inline configuration.

**Figure 25: Passive Firewall: a Single Layer 2 Firewall in passive inline mode**



# Layer 2 Firewall deployment example

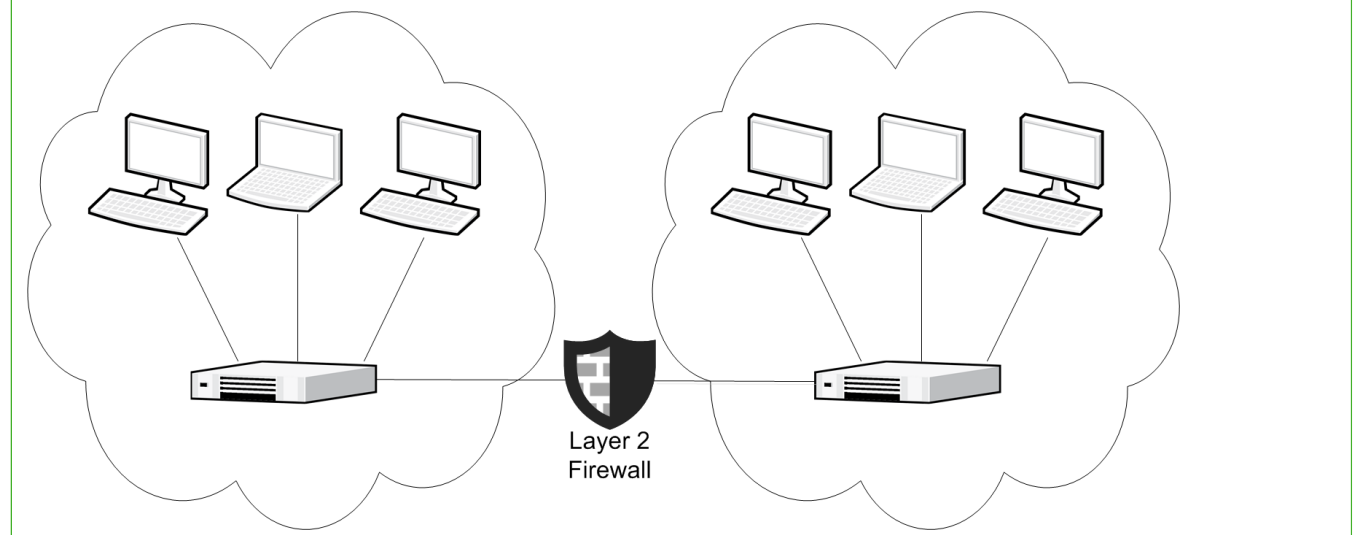
This example shows how to deploy Forcepoint NGFW in the Layer 2 Firewall role in an organization.

The scenario presented here is not meant to be representative of a typical installation. The main focus here is to highlight some of the criteria that can be used in planning deployment. The example covers considerations that affect most installations, but does not comprise an exhaustive list of all factors that you might need to consider. The Layer 2 Firewalls can be deployed in alternative ways in this example scenario. For example, depending on issues that are not covered here, such as the physical layout of the individual local networks, the hardware available, and budget constraints.

## Single Layer 2 Firewall example

This example uses a Single Layer 2 Firewall in an organization that has a large internal network. Administrators want to prevent hosts connected to different switches in the same network segment from communicating directly at the protocol level. Using the Layer 2 Firewall makes it possible to implement access control for any Ethernet protocols between switches within the same network segment. There is no need to change the network topology.

**Figure 26: Single Layer 2 Firewall in an intranet**



## Post-installation steps for Forcepoint NGFW in the Layer 2 Firewall role

There are some steps to follow after you have completed the installation, installed a basic policy, and turned the Layer 2 Firewall engines online.



**Note:** The configuration information is stored on the Management Server. Most changes are transferred to the engines only when you install or refresh the Layer 2 Firewall Policy.

The basic administration tasks you must learn or complete next include the following:

- How to read and control the operating state of Layer 2 Firewall engines.
- Adjusting the automatic tester that monitors the operation of the Layer 2 Firewalls and the surrounding network.

After you have installed your first Layer 2 Firewall Policy, your next task is gathering information about the events detected in your networks during a “tuning period”. Once you have enough information on what kind of traffic — malicious and harmless — can be seen in your network, you can edit your policies to improve the detection accuracy and to get rid of false alarms. The most typical customization steps include:

- Creating your own policy or policy template.
- Editing the Ethernet rules, Access rules, and Inspection rules.
- Creating your own custom Situations.

## Cable connection guidelines for IPS and Layer 2 Firewalls

---

The cabling of IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls depends on the engine type and the installation.

Make sure that all copper cables are correctly rated (CAT 5e or CAT 6 in gigabit networks).

Follow standard cable connections with inline IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls:

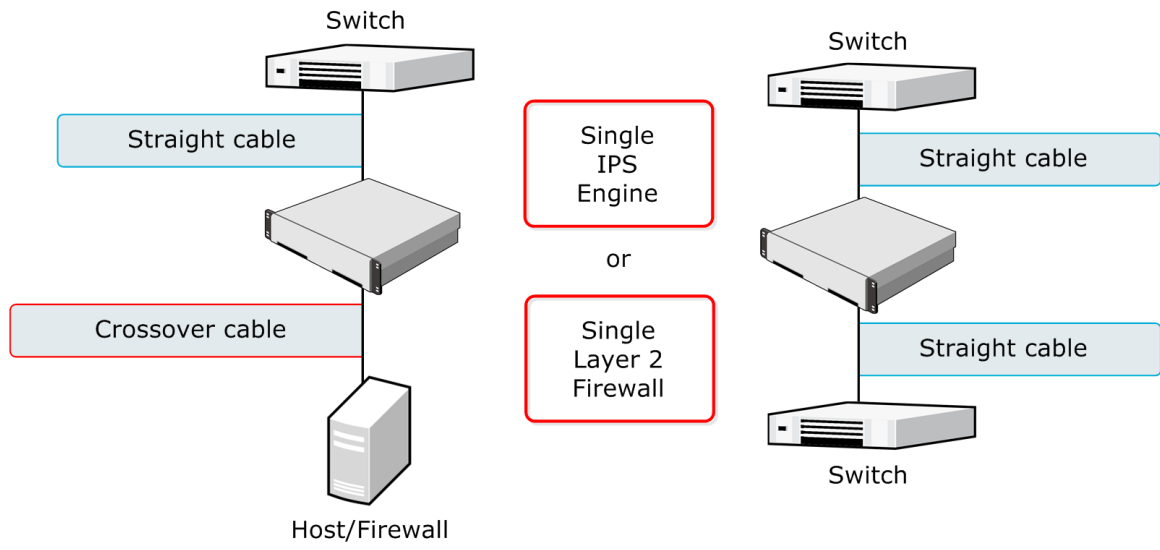
- Use straight cables to connect the IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls to external switches.
- Use crossover cables to connect the IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls to hosts (such as routers or Firewalls).



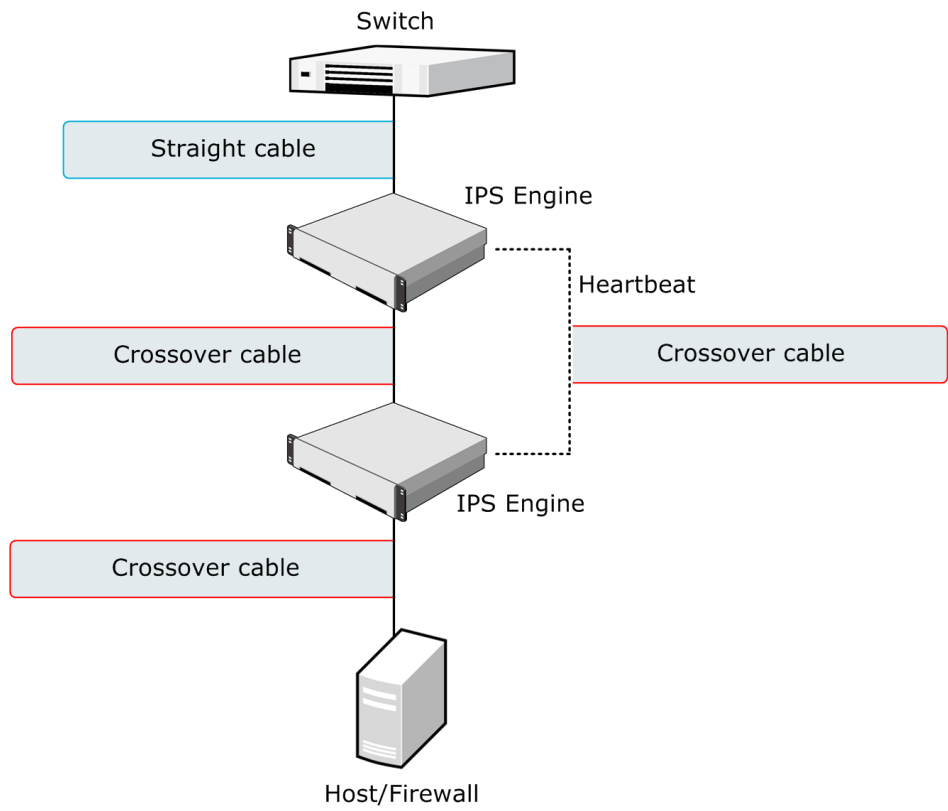
**Note:** Fail-open network interface cards support Auto-MDIX, so both crossover and straight cables might work when the IPS engine is online. However, only the correct type of cable allows traffic to flow when the IPS engine is offline and the fail-open network interface card is in bypass state. It is recommended to test the IPS deployment in offline state to make sure that the correct cables are used.

Cable connections for Master NGFW Engines that host Virtual IPS engines or Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls follow the same principles as the connections for inline IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls.

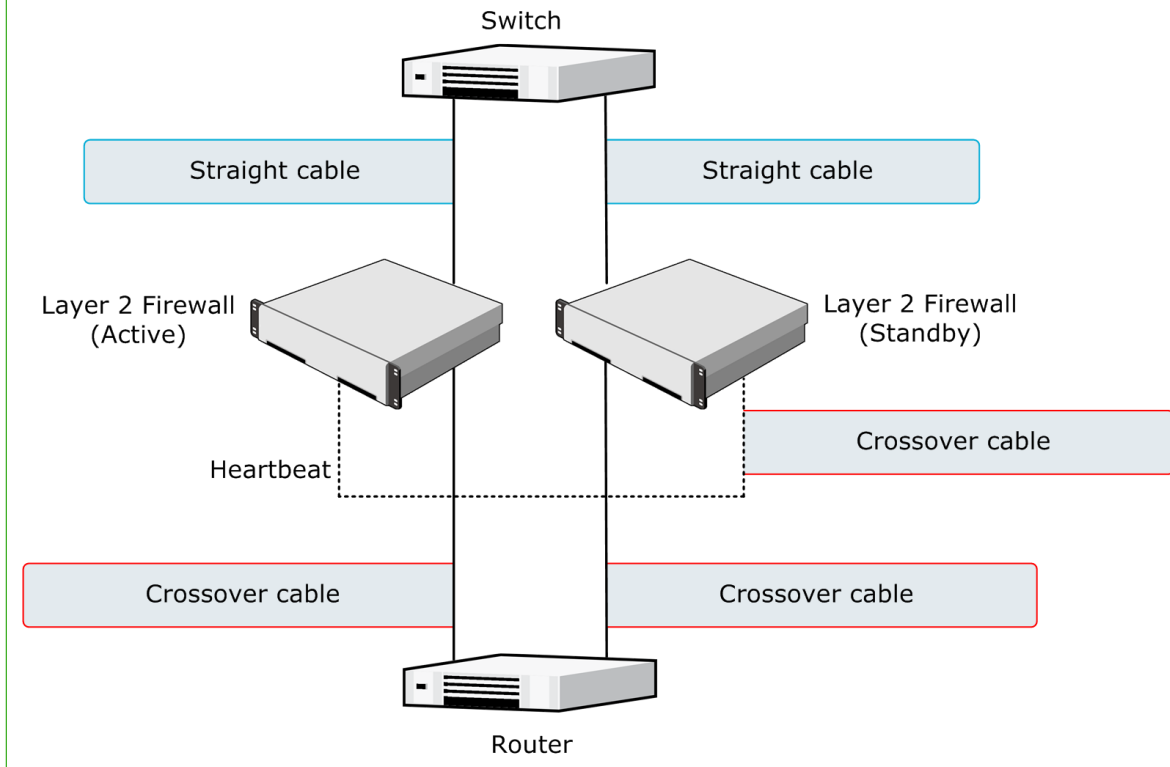
**Figure 27: Correct cable types for Single IPS engines and Single Layer 2 Firewalls**



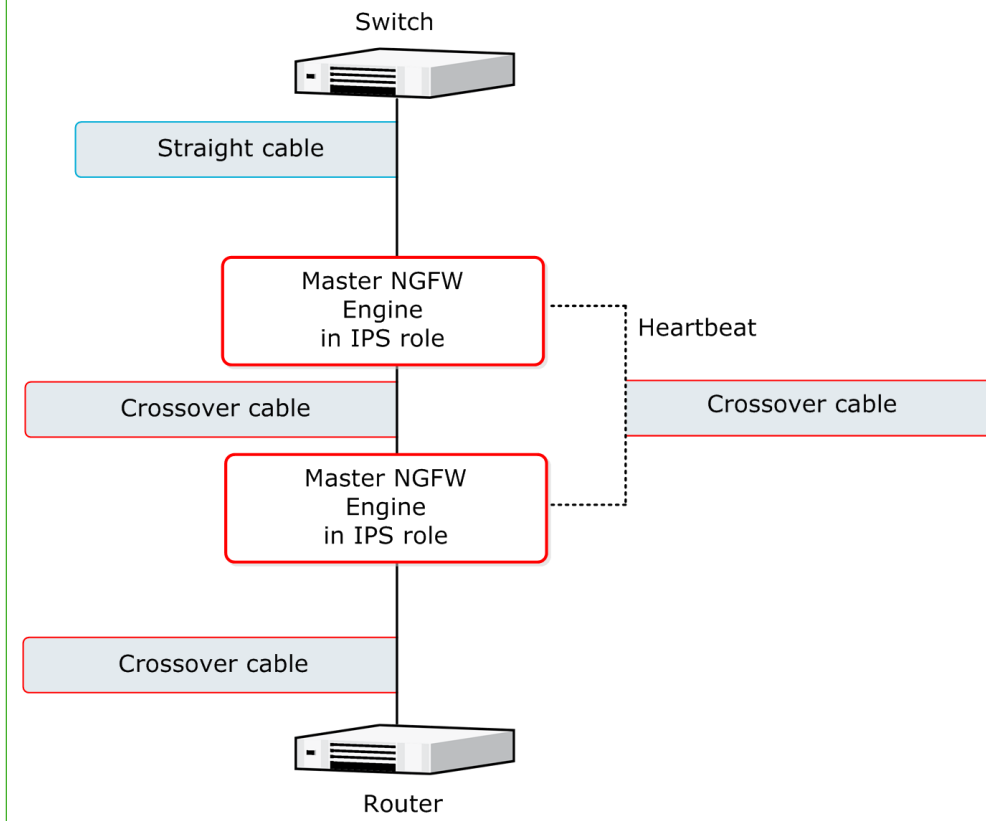
**Figure 28: Correct cable types for Serial IPS Clusters**

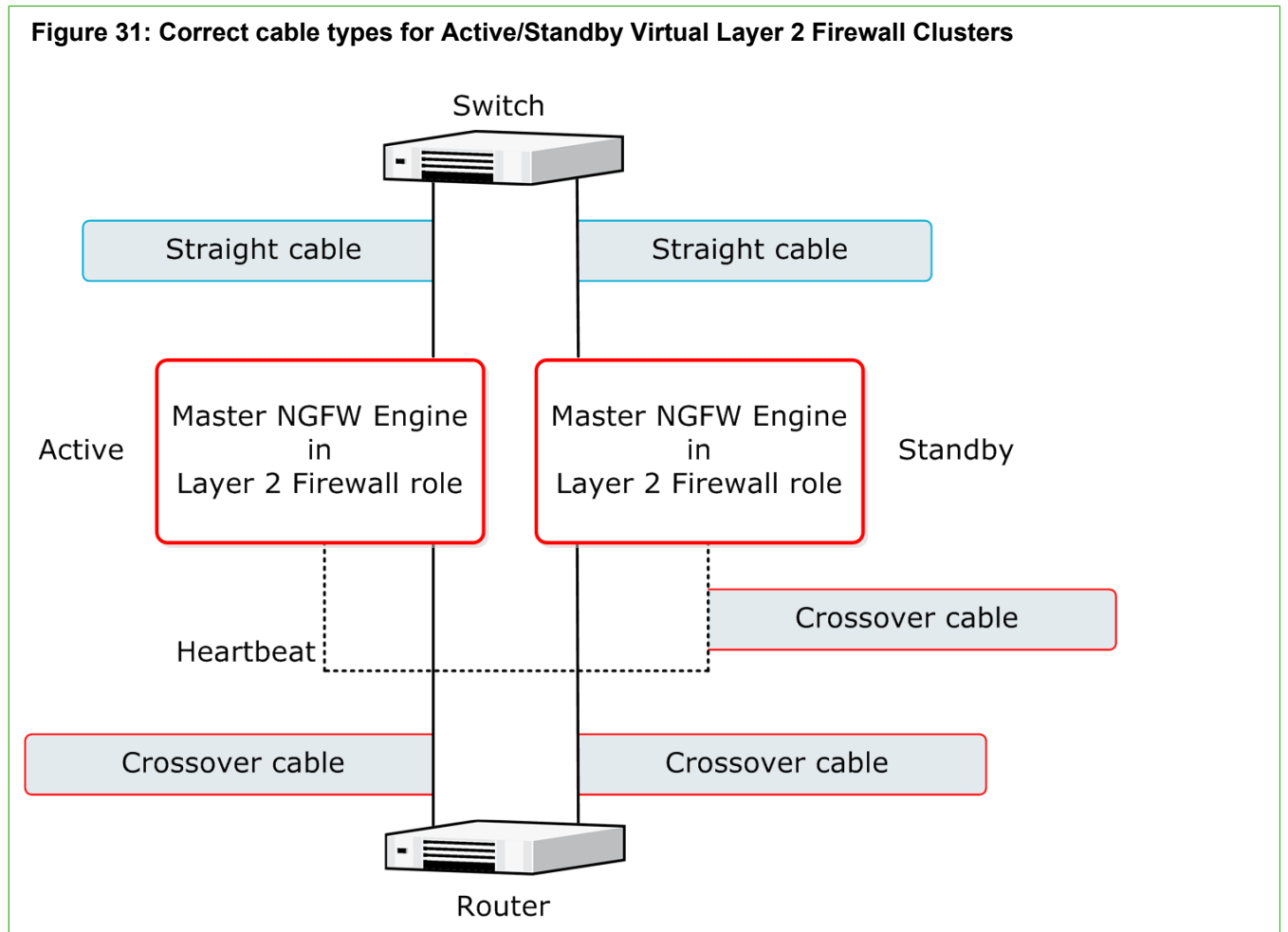


**Figure 29: Correct cable types for Active/Standby Layer 2 Firewall Clusters**



**Figure 30: Correct cable types for Serial Virtual IPS Clusters**



**Figure 31: Correct cable types for Active/Standby Virtual Layer 2 Firewall Clusters**

## Speed and duplex settings for NGFW Engines

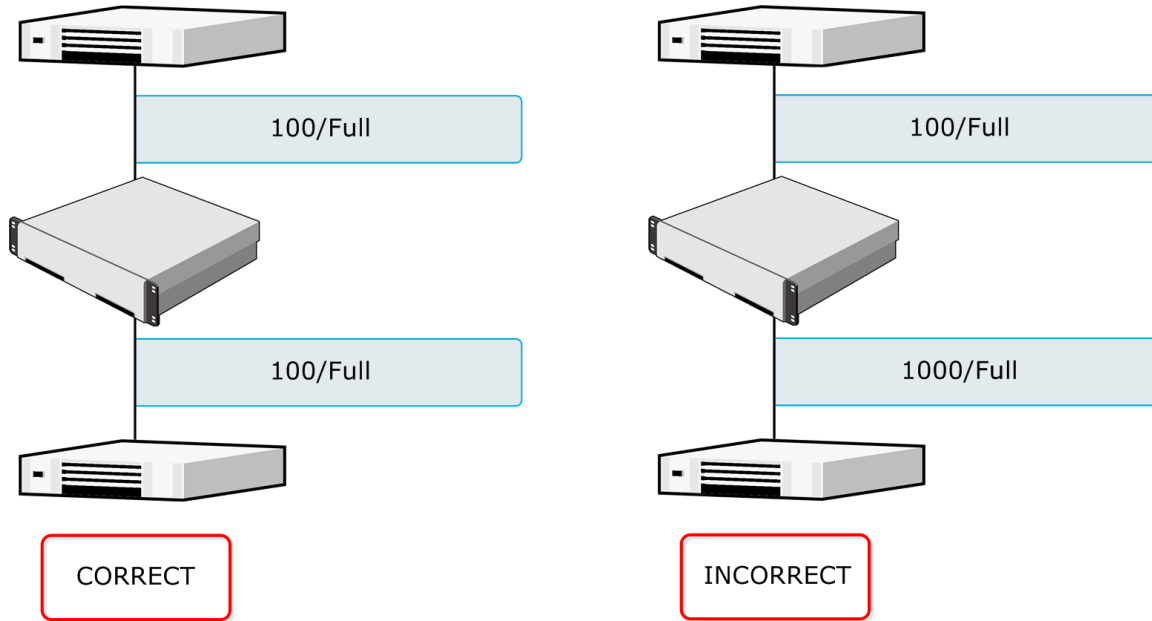
Mismatched speed and duplex settings are a frequent source of networking problems.

The basic principle for speed and duplex settings is that network cards at both ends of each cable must have identical settings. This principle also applies to the automatic negotiation setting: if one end of the cable is set to auto-negotiate, the other end must also be set to auto-negotiate and not to any fixed setting. Gigabit standards require interfaces to use auto-negotiation. Fixed settings are not allowed at gigabit speeds.

For Inline Interfaces, the settings must be identical on both links within each Inline Interface pair. Use identical settings on all four interfaces, instead of just matching settings at both ends of each cable (two + two interfaces). If one of the links has a lower maximum speed than the other link, the higher-speed link must be set to use the lower speed.



**Figure 32: Speed/duplex settings**





# PART III

## Setting up

### Contents

- [Using the Management Client](#) on page 101
- [Network address translation \(NAT\) and how it works](#) on page 123
- [Configuring system communications](#) on page 127
- [Managing elements](#) on page 139

After deploying the SMC components, you are ready to start using the Management Client and carrying out some of the first configuration tasks.



# Using the Management Client

### Contents

- [Management Client and how it works](#) on page 101
- [Log on to the SMC](#) on page 108
- [Customize the Management Client layout](#) on page 108
- [Bookmark Management Client views](#) on page 109
- [Change the logon view](#) on page 112
- [Centralized management of global system settings](#) on page 112
- [View, approve, and commit pending changes](#) on page 113
- [Create logon banners for administrators](#) on page 114
- [Change the default language of the Management Client](#) on page 115
- [Using search features](#) on page 115
- [Communicating with other administrators](#) on page 119
- [Use Tools Profile elements to add commands to elements](#) on page 120
- [Use the online Help locally](#) on page 121

The Management Client provides the user interface for setting up, managing, and monitoring all features in the SMC.

## Management Client and how it works

Use the Management Client for configuring, controlling, and monitoring the Security Management Center (SMC). You can manage the NGFW Engines in the Management Client. You can also use the Management Client to monitor third-party devices.

The Management Client offers several task-specific views. There are alternative ways to switch between the different views:

- The main menu and the toolbar shortcuts are always available.
- More links are provided, for example, in the right-click menus of elements and in the logs. You can also bookmark your most frequently visited views.

You have several options for opening a new view:

- Clicking a link or main toolbar icon replaces the current view with the new one.
- Clicking while holding the **Ctrl** key opens the new view as a new tab.
- Clicking while holding the **Shift** key opens the new view as a new window.

To open a new empty tab, click **+ New Tab** on the right of the previous tab. You can also use the keyboard shortcut **Ctrl+T**. From the list of views that opens, select the view to be shown in the new tab.

### Related concepts

[Introduction to elements](#) on page 139  
[Getting started with monitoring the system](#) on page 169  
[Overviews and how they work](#) on page 186  
[Getting started with the Logs view](#) on page 233  
[System monitoring tools in the Management Client](#) on page 170  
[What the Logs view shows](#) on page 102  
[What the Configuration view shows](#) on page 106  
[The Policy Editing view](#) on page 107  
[Reporting](#) on page 107

### Related tasks

[Change the logon view](#) on page 112

## What the Logs view shows

---

The **Logs** view can show entries generated by any SMC components and third-party components that send data to the SMC.

The logged data includes alert and audit entries (depending on administrator rights). You can filter the display by any combination of details that exist in the records. There are four different arrangements: **Records**, **Statistics**, **Details**, and **Log Analysis**.

### Records arrangement

---

The **Records** arrangement allows you to view selected details of many entries at a time. The columns in the table are fully customizable. This default view arrangement displays logs as a table. The **Query** pane allows you to select data to display.

Figure 33: The Logs view in the Records arrangement

Creation Time	Sender	Facility	Situation
2016-09-21 10:03:46	Milan FW node 1	Packet filt...	Connection_Allowed
2016-09-21 10:03:46	Atlanta FW node 1	Packet filt...	Connection_Refused
2016-09-21 10:03:47	Dubai Virtual FW 1 n...	Packet filt...	Connection_Discarded
2016-09-21 10:03:47	Paris FW node 2	Inspection	BC_Gambling
2016-09-21 10:03:47	Algiers FW node 1	Inspection	TCP_Segment-Invalid
2016-09-21 10:03:48	Beijing FW node 2	Packet filt...	Connection_Allowed
2016-09-21 10:03:48	Dubai Master FW no...	Packet filt...	Connection_Allowed
2016-09-21 10:03:48	Dubai Virtual FW 3 n...	Packet filt...	Connection_Allowed
2016-09-21 10:03:48	Helsinki FW node 2	Packet filt...	Connection_Refused
2016-09-21 10:03:48	Atlanta IPS node 1		DNS_Protocol_Violation
2016-09-21 10:03:48	Dubai Virtual FW 2 n...	Packet filt...	Connection_Refused
2016-09-21 10:03:48	Helsinki FW node 1	Packet filt...	Connection_Refused
2016-09-21 10:03:49	Dubai Virtual FW 4 n...	Packet filt...	Connection_Allowed
2016-09-21 10:03:49	Milan FW node 1	Packet filt...	Connection_Refused

0.1 Hits / second

10:03:46 10:03:47 10:03:48 10:03:49 10:03:50 10:03:51 10:03:52

Query: Security Engine

Filter: Senders: All Storage

<No Filter>

Automatic (15 min)

2016-09-21 10:03:52

Apply Cancel

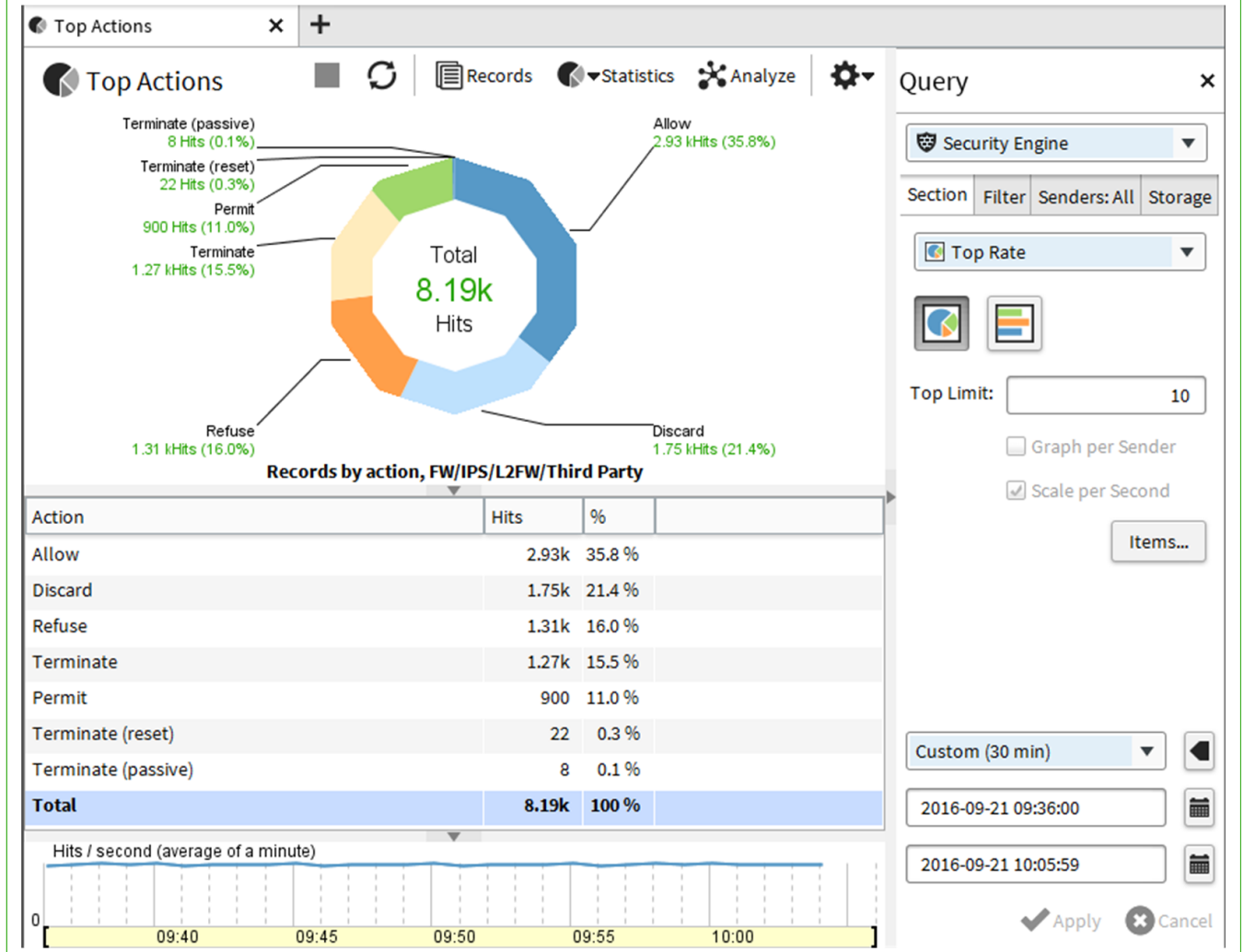
Fields

Field	Value

## Statistics arrangement

The **Statistics** arrangement allows you to generate basic summaries of the log data currently displayed in the Logs view. The basic summaries are similar to the charts in overviews, and include the ability to drill into the logs through individual chart items.

**Figure 34: Statistics arrangement**



## Details arrangement

The Details arrangement gives an overview of an individual log entry.



**Figure 35: Details arrangement**

The screenshot displays the 'Event Details' arrangement in the management client. It features several panels:

- Summary:** Shows the event title '2016-09-21 10:03:54 Connection Discarded According to Security Policy' with an 'Information' icon. Below it, a message states: 'New connection was discarded according to the access rules'.
- Event Visualization:** A diagram showing a source address (203.253.226.132) from Korea, Republic of, connecting to a destination address (255.255.255.255 Multicast). The connection is labeled 'Discard' and 'BOOTPS (UDP)'.
- References:** A list of related elements including 'Connection\_Discarded', 'BOOTPS (UDP)', 'Log Server', and 'UDP'.
- Fields:** A table listing event fields and their values:
 

Field	Value
Sender Ty...	Firewall
Sender	127.0.6.165 (...)
Dst IF	Internal
Src IF	Interface #0
Action	Discard
Dst Addrs	255.255.255....
Rule Tag	605.0
Service	BOOTPS ...
Src Addr	203.253.226...
- Query:** A panel for filtering events, currently set to 'Automatic (30 min)' and showing the timestamp '2016-09-21 10:05:59'. It includes 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons.
- Tasks:** A list of actions such as 'Filter Connections', 'New Blacklist Entry', 'View Rule', 'Terminate Connection', 'Create Alert', and 'Do Not Log Connection'.

## Log Analysis arrangement

The **Log Analysis** arrangement provides various tools to analyze and visualize log data. For example, you can combine logs by service or situation, sort logs by column type, view the data as charts or diagrams. The various tools make it easier to notice patterns and anomalies in traffic.

The screenshot displays the Log Analysis interface. At the top, it shows 'Log Analysis' with a search icon and a plus sign. Below this, there are icons for 'Aggregate', 'Statistics', and 'Visualizations'. A pink banner indicates 'Analyzing 8 368 records from 36 min ago'. The main area is a table with columns: Creation Time, Sender, Facility, Situation, and Action. The table contains 15 rows of log entries with various details like 'Milan FW node 2', 'Atlanta L2 FW no...', 'Tunis FW node 1', etc. On the right, there is a 'Query' panel with a dropdown menu set to 'Security Engine', a search filter box containing '<No Filter>', a time range selector set to 'No Limit (30 min)', and two date/time pickers. Below the query panel is a 'Fields' panel with a table structure for 'Field' and 'Value'.

Creation Time	Sender	Facility	Situation	Action
2016-09-21 10:05:56	Milan FW node 2	Packet f...	Connection_Allowed	Allow
2016-09-21 10:05:56	Atlanta L2 FW no...		DNS_Server-Resource-Reco...	Per...
2016-09-21 10:05:56	Tunis FW node 1	Packet f...	Connection_Refused	Refu...
2016-09-21 10:05:56	Helsinki FW node 3	Inspecti...	BC_Business-and-Economy	Per...
2016-09-21 10:05:56	Beijing FW node 1	Packet f...	Connection_Allowed	Allow
2016-09-21 10:05:56	Milan FW node 1	Packet f...	Connection_Allowed	Allow
2016-09-21 10:05:57	Moscow FW node 2	Packet f...	Connection_Discarded	Disc...
2016-09-21 10:05:58	Beijing FW node 2	Packet f...	Connection_Refused	Refu...
2016-09-21 10:05:58	Paris FW node 2	Packet f...	Connection_Allowed	Allow
2016-09-21 10:05:58	Moscow FW node 1	Inspecti...	MSRPC-TCP_CPS-Windows...	Ter...
2016-09-21 10:05:58	Atlanta FW node 1	Packet f...	Connection_Refused	Refu...
2016-09-21 10:05:58	Dubai Virtual FW ...	Inspecti...	BC_Gambling	Ter...
2016-09-21 10:05:58	Dubai Virtual FW ...	Packet f...	Connection_Discarded	Disc...

### Related concepts

[Getting started with the Logs view](#) on page 233

## What the Configuration view shows

The **Configuration** view allows you to view, change, and add configuration information in the system.

There are branches in the **Configuration** view for NGFW Engine, Network Element, VPN, Administration, Monitoring, and User Authentication configuration tasks.

The configurations are stored as elements, which are shown in a tree structure. Elements are created and changed through the right-click menus that open when you right-click a tree branch or an element. The main level of the branches contains the elements that change most often. Supporting and less frequently changed elements can be found under the **Other Elements** branch.

- The **NGFW** branch allows you to manage NGFW Engine elements and configure NGFW Engine policies.
- The **Network Elements** branch allows you to manage various hosts, networks, and servers.
- The **VPN** branch allows you to configure Gateways, Route-Based VPN and VPN connections.
- The **Administration** branch allows you to manage the system, including access rights, updates, licenses, administrator accounts, and alert escalation.
- The **Monitoring** branch allows you to create statistical reports, diagrams, and configure more monitoring-related features (such as third-party device monitoring).
- The **User Authentication** branch allows you to configure user authentication and directory services, and manage user accounts.

**Figure 36: NGFW branch of the Configuration view**

Name ▲	IP Address	Status
▼ Firewalls (20 elements)		
Algiers FW	172.31.9.21 (+)	<span style="color: green;">■</span> <span style="color: green;">■</span>
Atlanta FW	172.31.2.21 (+)	<span style="color: green;">■</span> <span style="color: green;">■</span>
Beijing FW	172.31.8.21 (+)	<span style="color: green;">■</span> <span style="color: green;">■</span>
Dubai Virtual FW 1	192.168.16.1 (+)	<span style="color: green;">■</span> <span style="color: green;">■</span>
Dubai Virtual FW 2	192.168.17.1 (+)	<span style="color: green;">■</span> <span style="color: green;">■</span>
Dubai Virtual FW 3	192.168.18.1 (+)	<span style="color: green;">■</span> <span style="color: green;">■</span>

**Related concepts**

[Introduction to elements](#) on page 139

## The Policy Editing view

The instructions for traffic handling are stored as rules in Policy elements. You can view and edit the rules in the **Policy Editing** view.

You can open policies in two modes. Any number of administrators can simultaneously check the rules in preview mode. When you open the policy in edit mode, the policy is locked for you exclusively.

The **Policy Editing** view has tabs for:

- Different types of rules in the policy
- Side pane for selecting and creating elements that you use in the rules

**Related concepts**

[Getting started with policies](#) on page 779

## Reporting

The reporting feature allows you to create statistical summaries based on log data and stored statistical data. The Reports can be viewed in the Management Client or exported automatically or manually.

**Related concepts**

[Getting started with reports](#) on page 261

# Log on to the SMC

The Management Client connects to the Management Server and to Log Servers.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select an existing Management Server IP address or DNS name, or click **Add Server** and enter an IP address or DNS name.  
In Demo Mode, select 127.0.0.1.
- 2) Enter the user name and password for the Administrator you defined during the Management Server or SMC Appliance installation.  
In Demo Mode, use the following credentials:
  - User name — demo
  - Password — demo
- 3) Click **Log On**.

# Customize the Management Client layout

You can select different panes and view options through the **Menu > View** menu. You can also change the size of the text in various views.

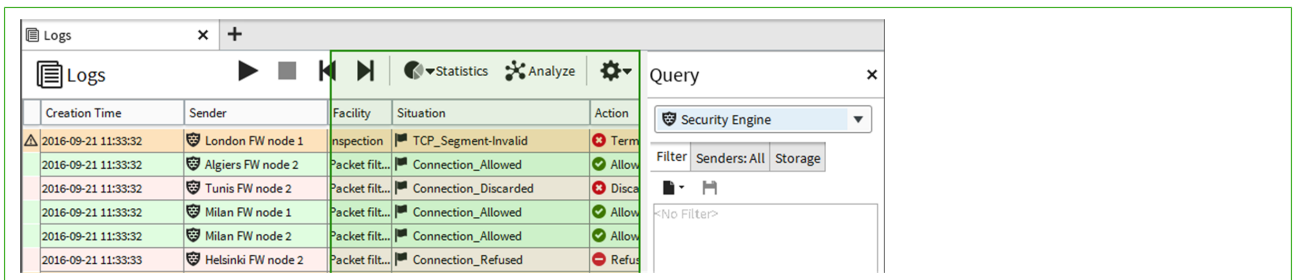
Some layout options are specific to the currently active view, and some options are global. The layout is saved as your preference for further use.



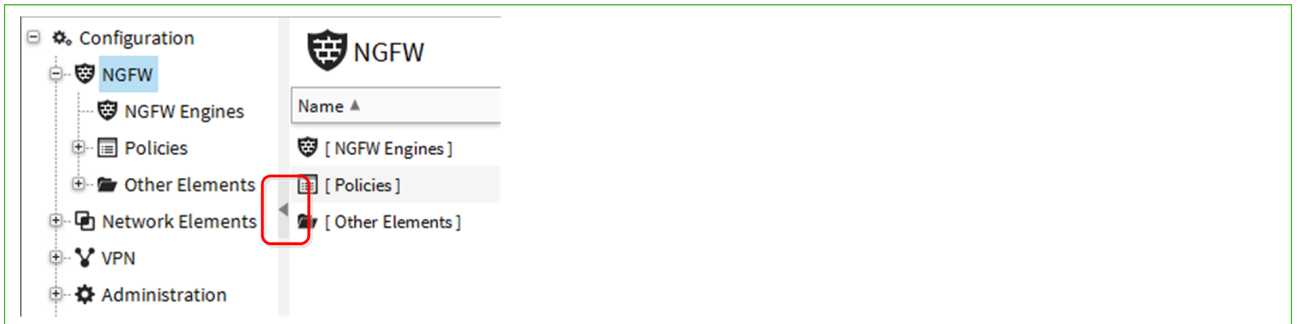
**Tip:** Bookmark alternative layouts to quickly return to a specific view and layout at any later time.

## Steps

- 1) To resize a pane, drag by the outer edge of the pane as usual when resizing.
- 2) To move a pane, drag by the title bar at the top like you would move a window.  
You can move the panes in several positions that are highlighted as you drag the pane around. Drop the pane where you prefer to have it. If the highlighted area completely covers some other pane, the second pane adds a tab.



- 3) To temporarily hide a pane, select the collapse icon on the pane border.



To expand the pane, click the icon again.

- 4) To change the size of the text in policies, Configuration views, or the **Logs** view, for example, select **Tools > Text Size**.
- 5) To restore the views to their defaults, select **Menu > View > Layout > Reset Layout**.  
The text size is not affected.

## Bookmark Management Client views

Bookmark frequently used views and arrange bookmarks into folders to more easily find them.

Bookmarks can store many of the settings you have selected in views. For example, you can bookmark a **Logs** view with particular filtering settings. Several windows and tabs can be stored behind a single click when you combine bookmarks into *Bookmark Folders*.

Bookmarks in the default **Shared Bookmarks** folder are shown to all administrators that log on to the same Management Server. Other bookmarks are private to the Management Clients of individual administrators.


## Bookmark the current view in the Management Client

You can create a bookmark for the currently active tab and other window-level elements in the configuration you select.

Some view-specific options are stored in bookmarks. For example, the:

- Currently active filter in the **Logs** view.
- Type of elements that are listed in a **Configuration** view at the time the bookmark is created.

Bookmarking is a main window action, so the properties dialog boxes for the various elements are never included in the bookmark.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Arrange the view as you would like to see it when the bookmark is opened.

- 2) Select **≡ Menu > Bookmark > Add Bookmark**.
- 3) (Optional) The default name is taken from the bookmarked view's title, but you can change the name in the **Name** field. You can also add comments for your reference in the **Comment** field.
- 4) (Optional) Next to the **In Folder** field, click **Select** and select the folder where the bookmark is placed.
  - The default **Bookmarks** creates the folder at the top level of the bookmarks tree.
  - Select the **Shared Bookmarks** folder if you want other administrators to see this bookmark. All other folders are private to your Management Client.
  - Select the **Toolbar** folder or one of its subfolders to add the bookmark folder to the toolbar. If the **Toolbar** folder is not available, activate the bookmarks toolbar.
- 5) (Optional) Deselect **Window Layout** if you prefer the bookmark to not change the layout of the window when you open it.
- 6) Click **OK**.

## Bookmark all open tabs in the Management Client

---

You can create a Bookmark Folder that contains bookmarks for all tabs you have open in the same window.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Open the tabs you want to bookmark in the same window.
- 2) Close any tabs you do not want to bookmark.
- 3) Select **≡ Menu > Bookmark > Bookmark All Tabs**.
- 4) Fill in the Bookmark Folder properties and click **OK**.

## Create bookmark folders in the Management Client

---

Bookmark folders organize bookmarks and make it easier to open several bookmarks at once.

The folders you create are also added as items under the **≡ Menu > Bookmark** menu.



**Tip:** You can bookmark all open tabs in a bookmark folder that is automatically created to contain new bookmarks.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **≡ Menu > Bookmark > Manage Bookmarks**.
- 2) Right-click **Bookmarks** in the tree, then select **New Bookmark Folder**.
- 3) Enter a name in the **Name** field. You can also add comments for your reference in the **Comment** field.
- 4) (Optional) Click **Select** next to the **In Folder** field, then select the folder where the bookmark is placed.
  - The default **Bookmarks** creates the folder at the top level of the bookmarks tree.
  - Select the **Shared Bookmarks** folder if you want other administrators to see this bookmark. All other folders are private to your Management Client.
  - Select the **Toolbar** folder or one of its subfolders to add the bookmark folder to the toolbar. If the **Toolbar** folder is not available, activate the bookmarks folder.
- 5) Click **OK**.

## Add bookmarks to the toolbar in the Management Client

---

You can add your bookmarks to the toolbar under the shortcut icons.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select **≡ Menu > View > Layout > Bookmark Toolbar**.  
The bookmark toolbar is shown under the toolbar icons.
- 2) Click the default **New Toolbar Folder** item.
- 3) Enter the name for the first folder to add to the toolbar and click **OK**.  
The first folder appears in the toolbar. The **Toolbar** folder is added to the bookmark hierarchy, allowing you to add, remove, and edit the bookmarks in the toolbar.


### Next steps

Add bookmarks to the toolbar by storing the bookmark in the **Toolbar** folder or one of its subfolders. Move existing bookmarks to the toolbar by dragging and dropping the bookmark or bookmark folder to the **Toolbar** folder in the **≡ Menu > Bookmark > Manage Bookmarks** tree.

# Change the logon view

You can choose which view opens when you log on to the Management Client, replacing the default **Home** view.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Arrange the screen with the windows, tabs, and views you want to have open at each logon.
- 2) Select  **Menu** > **Bookmark** > **Save as Startup Session**.

# Centralized management of global system settings

Use the Global System Properties dialog box to centrally manage global system settings and configure password policy settings.



**Note:** You can only change the settings when you are logged on to the Shared Domain.

The dialog box has four tabs:

- **Updates** — Contains settings related to updates, upgrades, and licenses. Only administrators with Manage Updates and Upgrades permissions can change these settings.
- **Change Management** — Contains an option for enforcing an approval workflow. Only administrators with unrestricted permissions (superusers) can change this setting.
- **Password Policy** — Contains settings for password strength, password expiration, failed logons, and actions related to temporary and long-term inactivity. Only administrators with Manage Administrator permissions can change these settings.
- **McAfee Services** — Contains an option for authorizing McAfee® Global Threat Intelligence™ (McAfee GTI) and McAfee® Threat Intelligence Exchange (TIE) usage. Only administrators with unrestricted permissions can enable McAfee GTI and Threat Intelligence Exchange.
- **Logon Banner** — Contains the settings and text entry for the message displayed to all administrators in the **Select a Management Server** logon screen.



**Note:** The text from the banner also appears in the logon window of the SMC Appliance console and Web Portal.

## Related tasks

[Configure automatic updates and upgrades](#) on page 1270



# View, approve, and commit pending changes

You can view the configuration changes that you and other administrators have made before the new configurations and policies are transferred to the NGFW Engines. If an optional approval workflow is enforced, changes must be approved before they are transferred to the engines.

## Before you begin

You must refresh the policy on the target engine or engines after an upgrade to NGFW 6.2 before you can see the pending changes in the Management Client.

Pending changes are shown by default in the **Home** view for all engines and on the engine-specific home pages.

You can view, commit, and transfer pending changes to the engines. You can use pending changes to prevent transferring configurations that are not complete. You cannot reject individual changes. If you want to override a change, edit the element or policy again, then approve both changes. If a later change overrides an earlier change, only the most recent change is transferred to the engine.

You can optionally enable an approval workflow in which an administrator must approve changes before they are committed. For example, a supervisor or senior administrator can view and approve the changes made by other administrators. Administrators with unrestricted permissions (superusers) can view the changes, approve the changes, and transfer the configurations to the engines.



**Note:** Administrators with unrestricted permissions can approve their own changes.

You can approve pending changes individually, but you must commit all of the changes at the same time. You can commit pending changes only when all changes have been approved.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) (Optional) To compare the pending changes to the engine's current policy, click **View Changes** on the home page of the engine.
- 2) (Optional) To view recent policy uploads, click **View Recent Commits**. To return to the **Pending Changes** pane, click **View Pending Changes**.
- 3) If an approval workflow is enforced, approve some or all pending changes.
  - To approve an individual pending change, click the Approval Status checkmark icon for that change.
  - To approve all changes, click **Approve All**.
- 4) To commit all pending changes and transfer them to the engine or engines, click **Commit Changes**.

## Result

The changes made to configurations and policies by all administrators are transferred to the engines.

#### Related concepts

[What the Pending Changes pane shows](#) on page 177

#### Related tasks

[Enforce an approval workflow](#) on page 354

# Create logon banners for administrators

Create a banner text showing all administrators information about the selected Management Server.

## Before you begin

You must be logged on as an administrator with unrestricted permissions on the Shared Domain to be able to create logon banners.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **≡ Menu > System Tools > Global System Properties**.
- 2) Click the **Logon Banner** tab.
- 3) Select **Show Logon Banner**.



**Note:** The logon banner is not enforced by default.

- 4) Write the text for the logon banner. You can use HTML to format the text.
- 5) Click **OK**.

# Change the default language of the Management Client

Each administrator can change the default language of the Management Client during installation or manually after installation. The options are English and Japanese.

## Before you begin

During a local installation of the SMC, you can set the default language of the Management Client to English or Japanese in the installation wizard. Each administrator can select English or Japanese in the logon dialog box when logging on to the Management Client.

## Steps

- 1) To change the language after installation, locate the `locale.properties` file in the `<user>/stonegate/user_locale` folder.
- 2) Change the `smc.locale.default` setting in the `locale.properties` file to the language you want:
  - `smc.locale.default=ja` for Japanese
  - `smc.locale.default=en` for English
- 3) Save changes to the `locale.properties` file.

## Using search features

You can search for elements, references to other elements, duplicate IP addresses, duplicate Service elements, unused elements, users, and elements in the Trash.



**Note:** Administrator permissions restrict which elements appear in the search results. Each administrator only sees elements for which they have permissions. If you use administrative Domains, the search results only show elements in the Domain that you are currently logged in to, and elements in the Shared Domain.

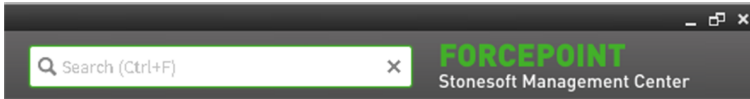
## Use the search bar

The search bar is always shown at the top of the Management Client window. You can search for elements, policies, and folders, for example.

The search results are grouped and ranked by relevance. When editing an element or a policy, you can drag-and-drop elements from the search results list. You can also perform tasks from the search results. For example, if you search for “password”, in the **Actions** category, you can change the Management Server database password. If you search for the name of an engine, you can open the Engine Editor in preview mode.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Enter a search word or phrase in the search bar.

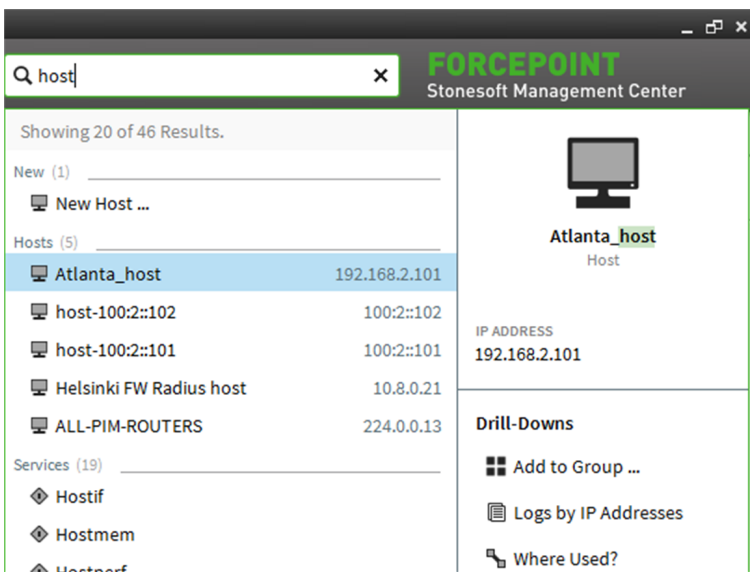


- 2) To open the properties of an element in the search results, click the element. If you click a policy or engine, the policy or engine opens in preview mode.



**Tip:** If you search for an element type, you can create a new element under the **New** category.

- 3) To preview an element in the search results list, place the cursor over the element.



**Tip:** You can also use the keyboard arrow keys to move up and down in the list.

You can see some of the properties of the element. You can also perform some drill-down actions, such as checking where an element is used.


- 4) To view a full list of search results, select **Show All Matching Elements**. The element search view opens, and your search criteria is used automatically.

## Use type-ahead search

Type-ahead search allows you to quickly filter elements.

You can use type-ahead search in most views in which element lists, tables, or trees are displayed. You can also use type-ahead search in rule cells in policies.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Activate type-ahead search in one of the following ways:
  - Select an element in a list, table, or tree.
  - Click the small  **Search** icon in any view that includes the icon.
  - In a policy editing view, click a rule cell in which elements can be used.
- 2) Type the information that you want to search for (for example, an element name, an IP address, a comment, or a TCP/UDP port number).

## Result

The Management Client filters the display to only show the elements that include what you typed.





**Note:** In policy editing views, when you have a Category Filter activated, only search results that match the Category Filter are displayed.

# Use the search tool

Use the search tool to find elements in the SMC.

**Table 12: Available search options**

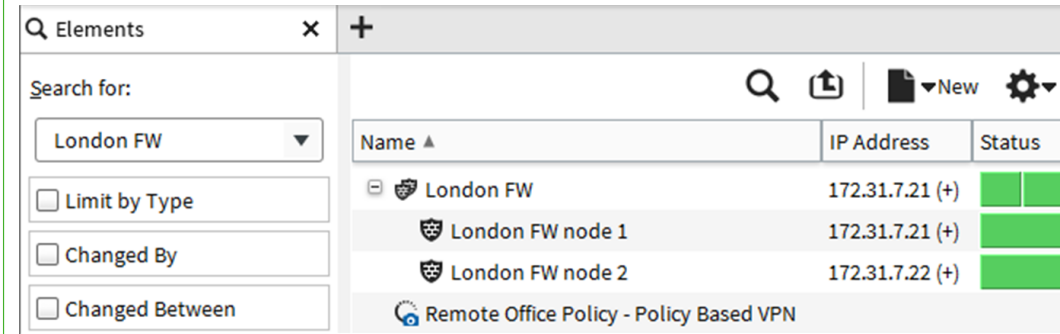
Search option	Description
Search	Search for elements based on an element property, such as a name, comment, or IP address.
Search References	Search for references to elements, to see where they are used. For example, you can find the references to elements you want to delete; referenced elements cannot be deleted until the references are removed. <div style="margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Tip:</b> You can also right-click an element, then select <b>Tools &gt; Where Used?</b> </div>
Search DNS	Search for hosts by their DNS name. The DNS search queries a DNS server, and the hosts found on the DNS server are compared to the Host elements defined in the SMC. <div style="margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> The Management Server must have Zone Transfer rights to be able to make queries on the DNS server.           </div>
Search Duplicate IPs	Search for elements that have the same IP address in the SMC.
Search Duplicate Services	Search for Service elements that have the same protocol and destination port number.
Search Unused Elements	Search for elements that are not referenced by any other element.

Search option	Description
Search Users	Search for users from an LDAP domain.
Search Trash	Search for elements that have been moved to the Trash.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Menu > Search**, then a search option.

**Figure 37: The Element Search**



- 2) Enter the search criteria.
- 3) (Optional) Select options to limit the search.
- 4) Click **Search** to start the search.  
The search results are displayed.



**Tip:** If the element you searched for does not exist, right-click the empty search results, then create a Host or Network element that has the name and IP address configured according to your search terms.

## Create Host elements from DNS search results

If the DNS search results do not find an existing Host element for a host name, you can create Host elements based on the host names and IP address found by the search.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click one or more IP addresses in the search results, then select **Create Network Element(s)**.
- 2) (Optional) If you want to add the new Host elements to a Group, select **Create in a Group**, then enter a name in the **Group Name** field.  
If the Group element does not yet exist, a new Group is automatically created.

3) Define a name for the new Host elements.

4) Click **OK**.

The **Network Element Creation** view opens in a new tab to show the progress of the element creation process. The status of each new element is displayed in the **Info** column:

- If the status is **Created**, the element was successfully created.
- If the status is **Not created (name already in use)**, an element with the selected name exists. If you want to change the Host element's name, right-click the **Name** cell, then select **Properties** to open the element properties. Change the name and click **OK** to save the changes.

5) Click **Close** to close the **Network Element Creation** tab and return to the search results.

The names of the new elements are shown in the **Network Element** column.

## Communicating with other administrators

---

The administrator messaging feature allows you to communicate with other administrators who are currently logged on to the Management Client.


For example, you can inform administrators about service breaks before upgrading the SMC. Administrator messaging is enabled by default.


## Enable or disable messaging

---

An administrator with unrestricted permissions can enable or disable administrator messaging.

If Domain elements have been configured, the setting is applied in all Domains.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.

2) Expand the **Access Rights** branch in the **Administration** tree.

3) Right-click **Administrators** and select or deselect **Administrator Messaging Enabled**.

## Send messages to other administrators

---

Administrators can send messages to all other administrators.

Only administrators who have the Manage Administrators permission can send messages to individual administrators. Each administrator must be logged on to a unique administrator account for individual messages to be sent.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Click **Send Message** in the status bar at the bottom right of the Management Client.
- 2) Select the **Administrators** to whom you want to send the message.
  - (Administrators with the Manage Administrators permission) Click **Select** to select individual administrators.
  - Click **Set All Administrators** to send the message to all administrators.
- 3) Enter your message, then click **Send**.  
The message is sent to the selected administrators.

## Use Tools Profile elements to add commands to elements

---

You can add commands (for example, tracert, SSH, or ping) to an element's right-click menu with Tools Profiles. The commands are added in the **Tools** submenu.

## Create Tools Profile elements

---

Tools Profile elements add commands to the right-click menus of other elements. You can include information dynamically from the element definition in the command.

Only one Tools Profile can be selected for each element, but each Tools Profile can include several commands.

The commands are run on the workstation that is running the Management Client. Commands are operating system-specific. You must add a separate command for each operating system. Administrators see commands according to their operating system (for example, a Linux command is not shown if the Management Client is running in Windows).

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Right-click **Tools Profile** and select **New Tools Profile**.
- 3) Enter the **Name** for the new Tools Profile. This is added as an item under the **Tools** submenu of elements that the Tools Profile is attached to.
- 4) Click **Add** and select the operating system.  
A row is added to the table.
- 5) Double-click the **Name** cell, and enter the item to add.




- 6) (Optional) To run the command in a console application, such as the command prompt in Windows or terminal in Linux, select **Run in console**.
- 7) Double-click the **Command** cell and enter the command or the full path to the application.
- 8) (Optional) Double-click the **Parameters** cell and enter the parameters for the command. In addition to static parameters, the following two variables can be used:
  - `${IP}` : the primary IP address of the element that is right-clicked.
  - `${NAME}` : the name of the element that is right-clicked.
- 9) Click **OK**.

## Attach Tools Profile elements to elements

---

You can attach a Tools Profile to elements that have a single primary IP address.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click an element and select **Properties**.
- 2) Select the Tools Profile in one of the following ways:
  - Select a Tools Profile from the list.
  - Select **Other** and browse to the Tools Profile.
  - Select **New** and create a Tools Profile.
- 3) Click **OK**.

The commands defined in the Tools Profile are added to the right-click menu of the element in the **Tools** submenu.

## Use the online Help locally

---

You can configure the Management Client to use a copy of the online Help from your own computer or from a server in the local network.

By default, the Management Client's online Help is accessed through the Internet. When you use the online Help locally, the online Help is available even when there is no Internet connectivity.



**Note:** When you use a local copy of the online Help, you must manually update the online Help when a new version is available.

### Steps

- 1) Download the online Help .zip file for your release from <http://help.stonesoft.com/onlinehelp/StoneGate/SMC/>.

- 2) Extract the .zip file to a suitable location in your local network.  
You can also extract the Help file to a share or your local intranet server.
- 3) On the computer where you use the Management Client, browse to the <user home>/stonegate/data folder.  
Example: In Windows, browse to C:\Users\<user\_name>\stonegate.



**Note:** If the Management Client is open, close it before editing the SGClientConfiguration.txt file.

- 4) Edit the SGClientConfiguration.txt file.
- 5) Add a parameter `HELP_SERVER_URL=` and enter the path to the main folder under which the online Help files are stored as the value for the parameter.
  - If you extracted the online Help on the same computer where you use the Management Client, enter `file:///` and the path.  
Example: If you extracted the online Help on your own computer to C:\help\ngfw\_620\_help\_en-us, enter `HELP_SERVER_URL=file:///C:/help/ngfw_620_help_en-us`.
- 6) Save the changes to the SGClientConfiguration.txt file.
- 7) Start the Management Client.



**Note:** Use only forward slashes (/) in the URL even if the operating system uses backslashes (\) in file paths. If the path contains spaces, replace them with %20 in the URL.

- If you extracted the online Help on a server in the local network, enter `http://` and the path.  
Example: If you extracted the online Help to a folder called ngfw\_620\_help\_en-us on an intranet server, enter `HELP_SERVER_URL=http://<intranet.server>/ngfw_620_help_en-us`.

## Result

The Management Client automatically uses the online Help from the specified location.

# Network address translation (NAT) and how it works

## Contents

- [Network address translation and how it works](#) on page 123
- [Static source translation](#) on page 124
- [Dynamic source translation](#) on page 125
- [Static destination translation](#) on page 125
- [Destination port translation](#) on page 126

*Network address translation* (NAT) means changing the IP address or port information in packets. Most often, NAT is used to allow internal hosts to communicate via networks where their actual address is not routable and to conceal the internal network structure from outsiders.

## Network address translation and how it works

---

Network address translation (NAT) changes the source or destination IP address or port for packets traversing the firewall.

NAT is most often used to hide internal networks behind a single or just a few routable IP addresses on the external network. NAT is also often used to translate an external, routable destination address into the private internal address of a server. For destination NAT, port translation (sometimes referred to as PAT) is also possible when the protocol in question uses ports. Port translation can be used to redirect a standard service, such as HTTP (port 80/TCP), to a non-standard port (for example, port 8080/TCP). The NAT rules are stored in policy elements.

NAT is applied to traffic that has been already been allowed by Access rules that have connection tracking enabled. If you have Access rules that turn off connection tracking for some traffic, you cannot use address translation with those connections.

There are five possible methods for network address translation (these methods are explained in more detail in the next sections):

- *Static source translation*, which translates each single IP address to some other single IP address (one-to-one relationship).
- *Dynamic source translation*, which translates several IP addresses to a single IP address or a small pool of IP addresses (many-to-one/many-to-some relationship) differentiated by port. This method is not supported with Multi-Link if the Loose connection tracking mode is used.
- *Static destination translation*, which translates each single IP address to some other single IP address (one-to-one relationship).
- *Destination port translation*, which translates a port to a different one (one-to-one relationship).
- Both source translation and destination translation for the same connection.

*Dynamic destination translation* is done automatically as part of the Server Pool feature.

Also, when NAT is applied, *return address translation* is needed to allow reply packets to reach the correct sender or to show the source address that the destination host expects. However, return address translation does not normally need configuration as it is applied automatically with the help of connection tracking.

### Related concepts

[Getting started with inbound traffic management](#) on page 745

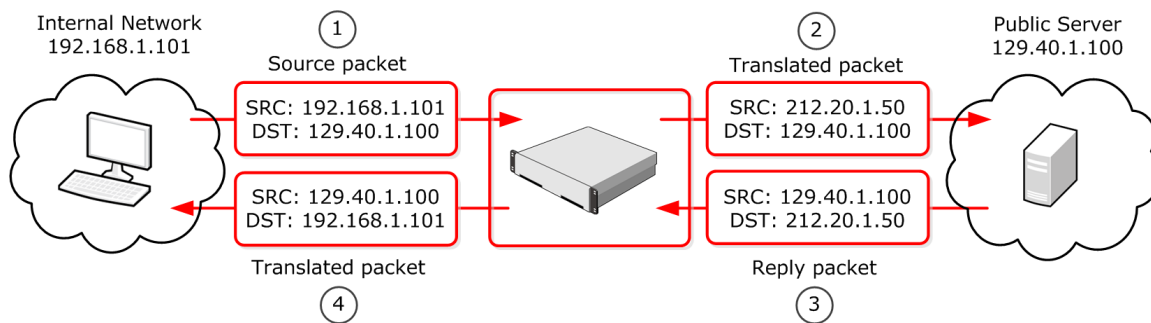
[Getting started with policies](#) on page 779

## Static source translation

In static source translation (one-to-one source translation), the source IP address of a certain host is always translated using the same specific IP address.

Static source translation provides one-to-one source translation. Often, the original source address is the actual assigned IP address for a device on an internal network or DMZ. The translation is then applied to a public IP address belonging to the public IP address range assigned by the Internet service provider (ISP).

**Figure 38: Static source translation**



- 1 The packet starts out with the original source (SRC) and destination (DST) IP addresses.
- 2 The firewall replaces the source address of the packets with a translated source IP address.
- 3 The server responds, using the translated IP address as the destination of the response.
- 4 Connection tracking information is used to automatically translate the reply packets. The firewall replaces the destination IP address in the server's response with the original address so that the responses find their way back to the host.

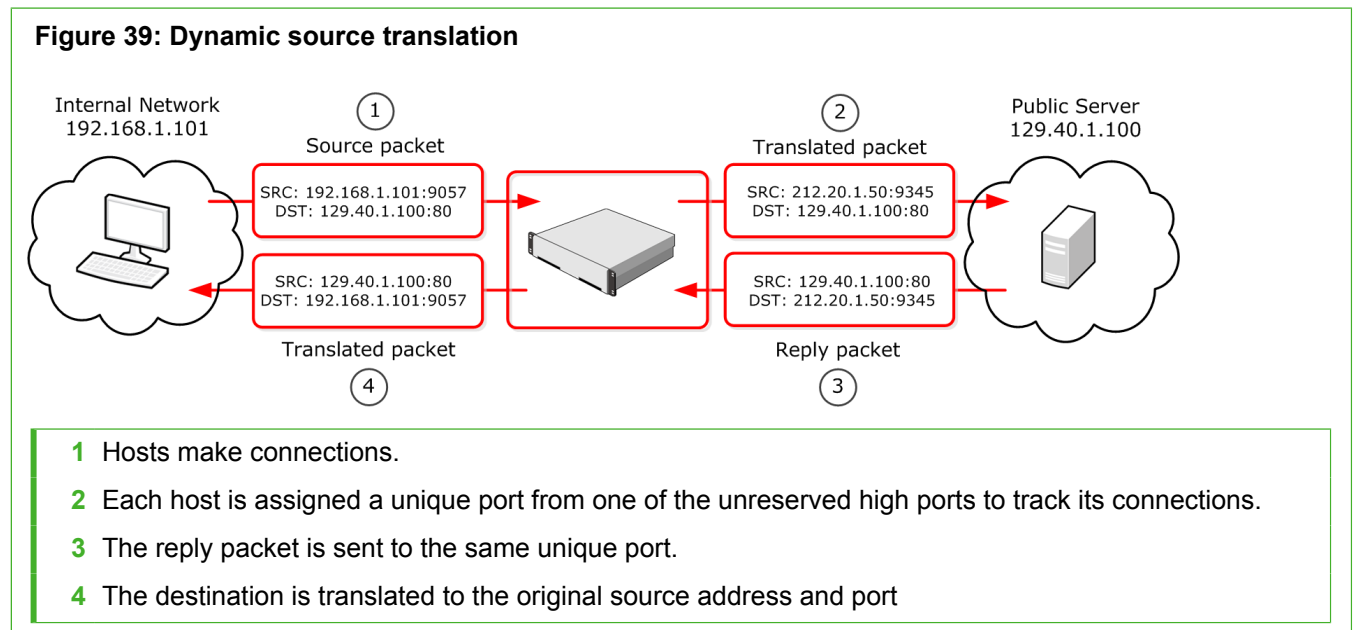
You can also define static translation using whole networks. There is still a fixed one-to-one relationship between each original and translated IP address, so the original and translated networks must be of the same size. The addresses map to their counterparts in the other network. For example, if you translate the network 192.168.10.0/24 to 212.20.1.0/24, the host 192.168.10.201 is always translated to 212.20.1.201.

# Dynamic source translation

Dynamic source translation allows translating many original IP addresses to a much smaller pool of translated addresses, even a single IP address.

Dynamic source translation, sometimes referred to as hide NAT, is often used to mask the internal networks of a company behind one or a few public, routable IP addresses provided by an ISP.

This illustration shows the process for dynamic source translation. Because dynamic source translation involves multiple hosts using the same IP address (in a many-to-one or many-to-some relationship), the firewall needs more information to differentiate the connections when the reply packets arrive. For this, the firewall uses the source port.

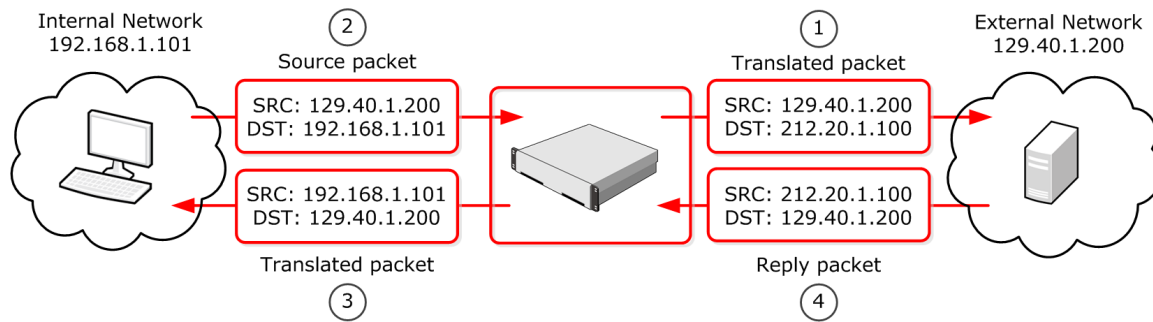


# Static destination translation

Destination translation is typically needed to translate new incoming connections from a server's public IP address to the server's private IP address.

You can use static destination translation for both IP addresses and ports.

In this illustration, a host on the Internet connects to a server on the internal network.

**Figure 40: Static destination translation**

- 1 The host connects to the external, public IP address.
- 2 The Firewall translates the destination address to the private IP address of the server on the internal network.
- 3 The server sends its response back.
- 4 The Firewall automatically translates the source address back to the external IP address.

You can also define static translation for whole same-size networks at once. This works in the same way as in static source translation.

## Destination port translation

Destination NAT can also be used to translate ports.

For example, web traffic to the corporate web servers on a DMZ would typically come in on port 80. However, an administrator might want to run the web service on a non-standard port for security or network management reasons. The original destination port can be translated using static destination port translation with or without destination address translation.

# Configuring system communications

### Contents

- [Considerations for setting up system communications](#) on page 127
- [Define contact IP addresses](#) on page 129
- [Select the Location for the Management Client](#) on page 135
- [Enable NTP on the SMC Appliance](#) on page 136
- [Configuring SSH access to the SMC Appliance](#) on page 137
- [Considerations for Multi-Link system communication](#) on page 137

System communications involve traffic between SMC components, traffic between SMC components and external components that are a part of the system configuration, and external access into the system.

## Considerations for setting up system communications

Firewalls and Layer 2 Firewalls do not automatically allow communications of other system components that pass through the engine. Make sure that all necessary traffic is allowed in the engine's policy.

The predefined **Firewall Template Policy** and **Layer 2 Firewall Template Policy** allow most types of system communications between the engine and the components it interacts with. You must create rules to allow any other communications through Firewalls or Layer 2 Firewalls.

### System communications through a NAT device

If NAT is applied between two SMC components, you must define the translated IP address as a *contact address*. In NATed communications, the contact address is contacted instead of the component's real IP address. A single component can have several contact addresses.

*Location* elements define when a contact address is used and which of the defined contact addresses is used. When NAT is applied between two communicating SMC components, you must separate them into different Locations. Components that are in the same Location use the primary IP address when communicating with each other and ignore all contact addresses. When components contact a component that belongs to a different Location, they use the defined contact address.

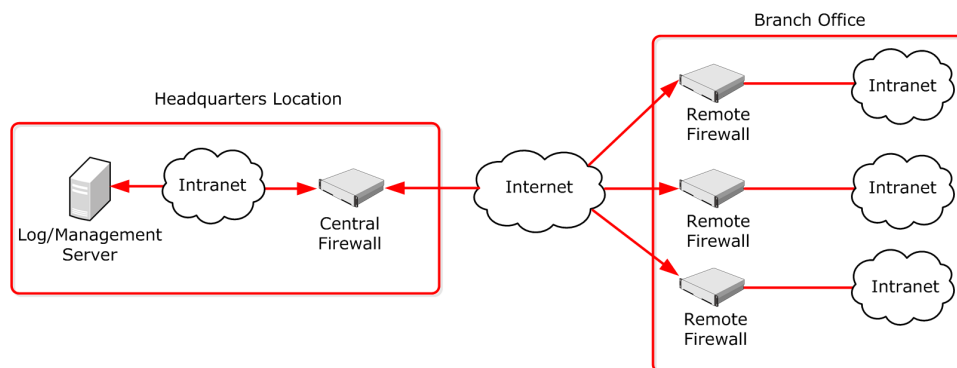
For example, when a Management Server contacts an engine node through NAT, the Management Server uses the NATed contact address, not the engine's real IP address. The NAT device between the components translates the NATed address to the engine's real IP address as usual.

There is one system element related to contact addresses, the **Default Location**. If you do not select a Location for an element that has the Location option, the element's Location is set to Default.

You can define a Default contact address for contacting a component (defined in the Properties dialog box of the element). When components that belong to another Location contact the element and the element has no contact address defined for its Location, the element's Default contact address is used.

### Example of using contact addresses and Locations

**Figure 41: Example network with Locations**



In this example scenario, a Management Server and a Log Server manage SMC components both at a company's headquarters and at three branch offices.

- The SMC servers and the Central Firewall are at the "Headquarters" Location.
- The Remote Firewalls are all at the "Branch Office" Location.

In this scenario, contact addresses are typically needed as follows:

- The Firewall at the headquarters or an external router can provide the SMC servers external IP addresses on the Internet. The components at the branch offices contact the servers through the Internet. The external addresses of the SMC servers must be defined as contact addresses for the "Branch Office" location.
- The Branch Office Firewall or an external router can provide external addresses for the SMC components at the branch office. The external IP addresses of the engines must be defined as contact addresses for the "Headquarters" Location so that the Management Server can contact the components.
- Alternatively, the external address of each component can be defined as a Default contact address without adding a specific entry for "Headquarters" or "Branch Office". The Default contact address is used when a component does not have a specific contact address definition for the contacting component's Location. The components must still be divided into separate Locations for the contact address to be used.

If there are Management Clients used at any of the branch offices, each administrator must also select "Branch Office" as their Location in the Management Client. Selecting the Management Client Location allows administrators to view logs from a remote Log Server that is behind a NAT device.

#### Related concepts

[Define contact IP addresses](#) on page 129

[Network interfaces for engines](#) on page 529

[Defining IP addresses as elements](#) on page 893

#### Related tasks

[Select the Location for the Management Client](#) on page 135



**Related reference**[Security Management Center ports](#) on page 1433[Forcepoint NGFW Engine ports](#) on page 1436

## Define contact IP addresses

Contact addresses are required when NAT is applied between SMC components. You can define contact addresses for NGFW Engines, Master NGFW Engines, and most types of server elements.

The contact addresses are defined in the element properties. The contact addresses are based on Location elements. You can also define a Default contact address that is used whenever no contact address is defined for a certain Location.


You create the Locations and add elements to the Locations based on how your network is set up. Then you define the Contact Addresses for each element for each Location in the properties of the elements. All SMC components in other Locations then use the addresses defined for their Location for contact.


**Related concepts**[Considerations for Multi-Link system communication](#) on page 137**Related tasks**[Create Location elements](#) on page 129[Define contact addresses for engines](#) on page 131[Define Management Server or Log Server contact addresses](#) on page 130[Define contact addresses for an External VPN Gateway](#) on page 135[Define endpoints for VPN Gateway elements](#) on page 1171

## Create Location elements

If network address translation (NAT) is applied between communicating SMC components, the components must be assigned to different Locations in the configuration. You create the Locations and add elements to them based on how your network is set up.

If a system has several Locations, but each component always has the same external IP address, each element only needs a Default contact address. When new system elements are added, they have to be assigned a specific Location, but they only need a Default contact address.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements** branch in the **Administration** tree.
- 3) Right-click **Locations** and select **New Location**.

- 4) Enter a **Name** and an optional **Comment**.
- 5) Browse to the type of elements you want to assign to the Location element in the **Resources** pane.
- 6) Select one or more elements and click **Add**.  
The selected elements are added to the **Content** pane.
- 7) Click **OK**.

## Define Management Server or Log Server contact addresses


If NAT is used between SMC components or if SMC servers are contacted by external servers, you can configure contact addresses for Management Servers and Log Servers.


You can configure multiple contact addresses for each type of server.

If you use Multi-Link, we recommended defining a separate contact address for each NetLink for the Management Server and the Log Server. This way, if a NetLink goes down, the engines can still be managed and can still send status and log data to the Log Server.



**Note:** If the IP addresses at which the server can be reached change, you must manually update the server contact addresses.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Network Elements**.
- 2) Browse to **Servers**.
- 3) Right-click the server element for which you want to define a contact address and select **Properties**.  
The **Properties** dialog box for that server opens.
- 4) Select the **Location** of this server.
- 5) If necessary, edit the contact addresses.
  - A default contact address is automatically entered based on the element properties.
  - If the server has multiple default contact addresses, separate the addresses with commas.
- 6) (Optional) Click **Exceptions** to define further contact addresses for contacting the server from specific Locations.
- 7) Click **Add** and select a Location.  
A new row is added to the table.

- 8) Click the **Contact Address** column and enter the IP addresses that the components belonging to this Location must use when they contact the Server.

You can enter several contact addresses per Location for Management Servers and Log Servers. Separate the contact addresses with a comma.



**Note:** Elements that belong to the same Location element always use the primary IP address (defined in the element's properties) when contacting each other. Elements that do not belong to a specific Location belong to the Default Location.

- 9) Click **OK** to close the **Exceptions** dialog box.
- 10) Click **OK** to close the **Server Properties** dialog box.

### Related tasks


[Select the Location for the Management Client](#) on page 135


[Change the Management Server IP address](#) on page 450

## Define contact addresses for engines

You must define a Location and a contact address if NAT is applied to the communications between the engine and some other component that contacts the engine.


If you use Multi-Link, add contact addresses for each NetLink.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click an engine element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 3) In the **General** pane, select the **Location** for this element.
- 4) Browse to **Interfaces** in the navigation pane on the left.
- 5) In the tree view, expand the tree and double-click the Cluster Virtual IP Address (CVI), Node Dedicated IP Address (NDI), or the IP address for which you want to define a contact address.  
On Firewall Clusters, the CVI contact address is used for VPNs and NDI contact addresses are used for other system communications.

# Define contact addresses for a single engine or a Cluster Virtual IP Address

If NAT is applied to communications between the engine and some other component that contacts the engine, define the Default contact address for the single engine or the Cluster Virtual IP Address (CVI). You can also define location-specific contact addresses.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click an engine element and select **Edit <element type>**.
- 3) In the **General** pane, select the **Location** for this element.
- 4) Browse to **Interfaces** in the navigation pane on the left.
- 5) In the tree view, expand the tree and double-click the Cluster Virtual IP Address (CVI) or the IP address for which you want to define a contact address.  
On Firewall Clusters, the CVI contact address is used for VPNs and NDI contact addresses are used for other system communications.
- 6) In the **IP Address Properties** dialog box, define the Default contact address. The Default contact address is used by default whenever a component that belongs to another Location connects to this interface.
  - If the interface has a static Default contact address, enter the Default contact address in the **Default** field.
  - If the interface has a dynamic Default contact address, select **Dynamic** (next to the **Default** field) before entering the Default contact address.
- 7) If components from some Locations cannot use the Default contact address to connect to the interface, click **Exceptions** to define Location-specific contact addresses.
- 8) Click **Add** and select the Location.
- 9) Click the **Contact Address** column and enter the IP address that the components in this Location use when they contact the interface or select **Dynamic** if the interface has a dynamic contact address.


 **Note:** Elements that belong to the same Location element always use the primary IP address (defined in the element's properties) when contacting each other. Elements that do not belong to a specific Location belong to the Default Location.
- 10) Click **OK** to close the **Exceptions** dialog box.
- 11) Click **OK** to close the **IP Address Properties** dialog box.



## Related tasks

Select the Location for the Management Client on page 135

# Define contact addresses for Node Dedicated IP Addresses

If NAT is applied to communications between the engine and some other component that contacts the engine, define the Default contact address for the Node Dedicated IP Address (NDI). You can also define location-specific contact addresses.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click an engine element and select **Edit <element type>**.
- 3) In the **General** pane, select the **Location** for this element.
- 4) Browse to **Interfaces** in the navigation pane on the left.
- 5) In the tree view, expand the tree and double-click the Node Dedicated IP Address (NDI) or the IP address for which you want to define a contact address.  
On Firewall Clusters, the CVI contact address is used for VPNs and NDI contact addresses are used for other system communications.
- 6) In the **IP Address Properties** dialog box, double-click the **Contact Address** cell and define the contact address for each node in the **Node Dedicated IP Address** section.
- 7) Enter the **Default** contact address.  
The Default contact address is used by default whenever a component that belongs to another Location connects to this interface.
- 8) If components from some Locations cannot use the Default contact address, click **Add** to define Location-specific contact addresses.
- 9) Click the **Contact Address** column and enter the IP address that the components assigned to this Location must use when they contact the node.  
 **Note:** Elements that belong to the same Location element always use the primary IP address (defined in the element's properties) when contacting each other. Elements that do not belong to a specific Location belong to the Default Location.
- 10) Click OK to close the **Exceptions** dialog box.
- 11) Once you have defined the contact addresses for each node, click **OK** to close the **IP Address Properties** dialog box.



## Related tasks

[Select the Location for the Management Client](#) on page 135

# Define contact addresses for an IPS Cluster or a Layer 2 Firewall Cluster

If NAT is applied to communications between the IPS Cluster or Layer 2 Firewall Cluster and some other component that contacts the cluster, define the Default contact address for the IPS Cluster or a Layer 2 Firewall Cluster. You can also define location-specific contact addresses.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click an engine element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 3) In the **General** pane, select the **Location** for this element.
- 4) Browse to **Interfaces** in the navigation pane on the left.
- 5) In the tree view, expand the tree and double-click the Cluster Virtual IP Address (CVI) or the IP address for which you want to define a contact address.  
On Firewall Clusters, the CVI contact address is used for VPNs and NDI contact addresses are used for other system communications.
- 6) In the **IP Address Properties** dialog box, double-click the Contact Address cell.
- 7) Enter the **Default** contact address at the top of the dialog box.  
The Default contact address is used by default whenever a component that belongs to another Location connects to this interface.
- 8) If components from some Locations cannot use the Default contact address, click **Add** to define Location-specific contact addresses.
- 9) Click the **Contact Address** column and enter the IP address that the components belonging to this Location must use when they contact the interface.  
 **Note:** Elements that belong to the same Location element always use the primary IP address (defined in the element's properties) when contacting each other. Elements that do not belong to a specific Location belong to the Default Location.
- 10) Click **OK** to close the **Exceptions** dialog box.
- 11) Click **OK** to close the **IP Address Properties** dialog box.


## Related tasks


[Select the Location for the Management Client](#) on page 135

# Define contact addresses for an External VPN Gateway

---

Define a contact address for an External VPN Gateway if the IP address for contacting the gateway is different from the IP address of the gateway's interface (for example, because of NAT).

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Browse to **Gateways**.
- 3) Right-click an External VPN Gateway element, then select **Properties**.
- 4) In the **External VPN Gateway Properties** dialog box, click the **Endpoints** tab.
- 5) Right-click an endpoint and select **Properties**.
- 6) Enter the Default contact address or select **Dynamic** if the Default contact address is dynamic.
  - The Default contact address is used by default whenever a component that belongs to another Location connects to this endpoint.
- 7) (Optional) If some components cannot use the Default contact address, click **Exceptions** to define contact addresses that the components use to connect to this endpoint.
- 8) Click **Add** and select a Location.  
A new row is added to the table.
- 9) Click the **Contact Address** column and enter the IP address that components belonging to this Location use when they contact the endpoint, or select **Dynamic**.
- 10) Click **OK** to close the **Exceptions** dialog box.
- 11) Click **OK** to close the **Endpoint Properties** dialog box.

## Select the Location for the Management Client

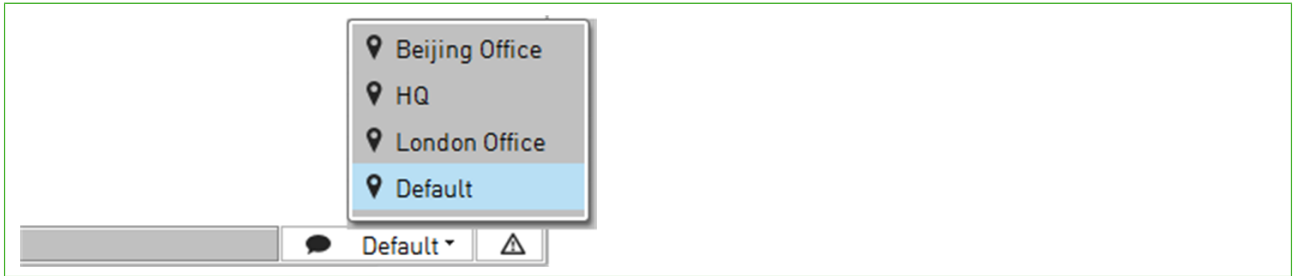
---

If NAT is applied between the Management Client and a Log Server, you might need to change the Location of the Management Client to view the logs.

The Location to select depends on the system configuration. The **Default** selection is appropriate if the Log Server has a specific Location and the Log Server's Default contact address is correct for your current network connection.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Click the **Location** name in the status bar at the bottom right corner of the Management Client window, then select the Location.



## Next steps

You might also need to add a Location and define a contact address for this specific Location in the Log Server's properties.

### Related concepts

[Define contact IP addresses](#) on page 129

### Related tasks

[Create Location elements](#) on page 129

[Define Management Server or Log Server contact addresses](#) on page 130

# Enable NTP on the SMC Appliance

The SMC Appliance can be configured to use external NTP servers so that network devices accurately log events and complete scheduled tasks.




**Note:** By default, the appliance points to the public Forcepoint NTP servers.


The Management Server and default Log Server synchronize with the SMC Appliance time. Engine times are automatically synchronized to match the time of the Management Server.



**CAUTION:** Configuring NTP synchronization from both the command line and the Management Client is not supported. Changes from the command line disable the NTP tab in the Management Server properties dialog box. Command line changes persistently override any NTP configuration made in the Management Client.



**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) From the Management Client, open the NTP tab in Management Server properties dialog box.
  - a) Select  **Home**.
  - b) Browse to **Others > Management Server**.
  - c) Right-click the Management Server, then select **Properties**.
  - d) Click the **NTP** tab.
- 2) Click **Enable NTP server Synchronization**.
- 3) To add an NTP server, click **Add**, then select the preferred NTP server.
- 4) Click **OK**.

## Configuring SSH access to the SMC Appliance

You can access the SMC Appliance command line through SSH.



**Note:** In FIPS mode, SSH access to the SMC Appliance is not allowed.

Two authentication options are available:

- **Logon and password** — All administrators with unrestricted permissions (superusers) in SMC can use their password to log on to the SMC Appliance through SSH.
- **Public and private key** — You can generate a public and private RSA key pair for each administrator or server. For more information about using an RSA key pair to authenticate to the SMC Appliance, see Knowledge Base article [12503](#).

### Related concepts

[Getting started with administrator accounts](#) on page 345

## Considerations for Multi-Link system communication

If a remotely managed Firewall has Multi-Link, we recommend adding a primary and a secondary management interface for different ISP connections. Adding a management interface for each ISP connection guarantees connectivity if one of the ISP connections fails.

Make sure that you configure these addresses consistently in the following parts of the configuration:

- For the interface address on the Firewall.
- For the external contact addresses (if applicable).
- In the NAT rules of the Firewall that protects the Security Management Center (SMC) servers (as necessary).

If there is a Multi-Link connection between a Management Server or Log Server and the components that contact them, define a contact address for each network connection. Make sure that your NAT rules translate from each external address to the correct internal address of the SMC server.

#### **Related concepts**

[Defining Multi-Link routes for firewalls](#) on page 706

#### **Related tasks**

[Select system communication roles for firewall interfaces](#) on page 553

# Managing elements

## Contents

- [Introduction to elements](#) on page 139
- [Benefits of exporting or importing elements](#) on page 148
- [Restore elements from Snapshots](#) on page 152
- [Lock elements](#) on page 155
- [Unlock elements](#) on page 155
- [How the Trash works](#) on page 156
- [How Categories help you view only certain elements](#) on page 159
- [Legacy elements](#) on page 164

Certain tasks are common to most elements. Some of these tasks are not mandatory for defining an element, but are still helpful as you get your SMC up and running.

## Introduction to elements

Apart from a few minor exceptions, all configurations are created in the SMC, where information is stored as reusable *elements*.

For example, the NGFW Engines, traffic inspection policies, IP addresses, log filters, backups, and the licenses for the system components are all displayed as elements.

Different element types are provided for different concepts. The elements in the system define information both for adjusting the traffic inspection policies and for managing the system. This chapter gives you a brief description of each type of element.

## System administration elements

You can view the types of elements used for system administration and their descriptions.

**Table 13: Types of elements for system administration**

Element Type		Explanation
Access Rights	Access Control Lists	Sets of elements that you can grant to one or more administrator accounts when assigning administrator rights.
	Administrator Roles	Sets of actions that administrators are allowed to carry out both globally and specifically on some set of elements.
	Administrators	SMC administrator accounts.
	API Clients	Accounts for the users of the SMC Application Programming Interface (API).


Element Type		Explanation
	Web Portal Users	User accounts for the Web Portal.
Alert Configuration	Alert Chains	Lists of administrators and contact methods for escalating Alerts.
	Alert Policies	Rules for choosing which Alerts are escalated using which Alert Chain.
	Alert Senders	System components that can send Alerts.
	Alerts	Labels for Alerts that help in separating different Alerts from each other in Alert escalation.
	Policy Snapshots	Saved versions of the alert configuration. Created each time you install or refresh the Alert Policy on a Domain.
Bookmarks		User-created shortcuts to views in the Management Client.
Licenses		The components' licenses (proof of purchase).
Tasks	Definition	System maintenance Tasks and Task definitions.
	History	History of running and executed Tasks both started by users and generated by the system.
Tools Profiles		Additional, user-configured commands/tools for components.
Other Elements	Backups	Management Server and Log Server backups.
	Categories	Allow filtering the view in the Management Client to a subset of elements.
	Domains	Create boundaries for managing elements and configurations based on administrator configurations.
	Engine Upgrades	Packages for remote upgrades that have been manually or automatically imported into the system.
	Geolocations	Used for illustrating the geographical location of IP addresses (for example, in logs and diagrams).
	Internal Certificate Authorities	Management Server's Internal Certificate Authority that issues all certificates that components need for system communications. A new Internal Certificate Authority is automatically generated before the old one expires.
	Internal Certificates	Certificates that are used in communications between the system components.
	Locations	Used for defining contact addresses when NAT (IP address translation) is applied to communications between system components.
	Trash	Stores elements that you have deleted. You can permanently delete elements that have been moved to the Trash.
	Trusted Update Certificates	Used to verify the digital signatures of dynamic update packages and engine upgrades. A new Trusted Update Certificate is automatically added through a dynamic update package before the old one expires.
	Updates	Dynamic update packages that update definitions in your installation. Most of the content is Situations (used in deep packet inspection).
	Web Portal Localizations	Used for translating the Web Portal between languages.

# NGFW elements

You can view the types of elements used for configuring NGFW Engines and their descriptions.

**Table 14: Types of elements in NGFW configuration**

Element Type		Explanation
NGFW Engines		Configurations particular to individual NGFW Engines, such as interface configurations.
Policies		The rules for inspecting and handling network traffic.
Network Elements		Represent IP addresses.
Other Elements	Client Applications	Client Application and Executable elements can be used for matching in Firewall IPv4 Access rules. Executable elements contain information about the applications used by endpoint clients, such as the file name and the MD5 hash.
	Ethernet Services	Definitions for protocols that can be used for traffic filtering on the Ethernet level.
	Event Bindings	Sets of log events that can be used in Correlation Situations to bind together different types of events in traffic.
	File Types	Elements that represent different types of files that can be allowed or blocked in Access rules.
	HTTPS Inspection Exceptions	Lists of domains that can be used to exclude some traffic from HTTPS decryption and inspection.
	Logical Interfaces	Interface reference that can combine several physical interfaces into one logical entity. Used for defining traffic handling rules.
	MAC Addresses	Represent MAC addresses in Ethernet-level traffic filtering.
	Network Applications	Provide a way to dynamically identify traffic patterns related to the use of a particular application.
	Policy Snapshots	Saved versions of the NGFW Engine configurations. Created each time you install or refresh a policy on an NGFW Engine.
	Protocols	Supported network protocols. Can be used to define new Services for matching traffic in policies. You cannot add, delete, or change the Protocol elements.
	QoS Classes	An identifier that can be assigned to network traffic to define QoS policies for the traffic.
	Services	Network protocols and ports.
	Situations	Patterns that deep inspection looks for in traffic.
TLS Matches	Define matching criteria for the use of the TLS (transport layer security) protocol in traffic, and specify whether TLS traffic is decrypted for inspection.	

Element Type		Explanation
	Vulnerabilities	References that link some Situations to publicly available databases of known vulnerabilities in various software.
	Dynamic Routing Elements	Elements and Access Lists used for configuring dynamic routing. For more information on elements used in configuring dynamic routing, see the chapter about dynamic routing.
Engine Properties	Anti-spam	Settings for identifying and blocking emails as spam.
	Antispoofing	Rules for preventing IP address spoofing.
	Routing	Rules for routing traffic.
	SNMP agents	Configuration information for sending SNMP traps to external components about system events related to NGFW Engines.
	User Agents	Represent integrated McAfee Logon Collector servers that associate users with IP addresses.  <div style="border: 1px solid gray; background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;">  <b>Note:</b> The legacy Stonesoft User Agent is not supported with Forcepoint NGFW 5.9.0 or higher. Use the McAfee Logon Collector instead.                 </div>
	User Authentication Pages	Define the look of the logon page, challenge page, and different status pages shown to end users who authenticate through a web browser.
	User Responses	Settings for notifying end users about different policy actions.
	Certificates	Client Protection Certificate Authorities, Server Credentials, and Trusted Certificate Authorities used in HTTPS inspection.

**Related concepts**

[Network elements](#) on page 145

[Service elements](#) on page 145

[Situation elements](#) on page 146

## User authentication elements

You can view the types of elements used for configuring user authentication and directory services and the element descriptions.

**Table 15: Types of elements in user authentication configuration**

Element Type		Explanation
Authentication Methods		Configured authentication methods for end-user and administrator authentication. Used in rules that require end-user authentication.
Servers		Active Directory Servers, LDAP Servers, RADIUS Authentication Servers, and TACACS+ Authentication Servers for end-user and administrator authentication and directory services.
Users		End users stored in the internal LDAP database or an external LDAP database. Used in rules that require end-user authentication.
Other Elements	SMTP Servers	SMTP servers that send email or SMS messages about changes to user accounts to end users. The same SMTP Servers can also be used to send Alerts to Administrators.
	Certificates	Trusted Certificate Authorities that issue certificates presented by service providers, Pending Certificate Requests, and Server Credentials.

## Monitoring elements

Use the monitoring elements to configure the monitoring features in the SMC.

**Table 16: Types of elements in monitoring**

Element Type		Explanation
Diagrams		Allow you to visualize your network environment and monitor the system graphically.
Incident Cases		Facilitate data collection during security incidents.
Overviews		Customizable views for system status monitoring, statistics, and shortcuts to configuration tools.
Reports	Design	Define how log data and statistical data from engines are processed and displayed in reports.
	History	Saved statistical presentations of network traffic and the system.
	Sections	Define statistical items that are included in a report and the way that the items are displayed.
Third-Party Devices	Logging Profiles	Define the logging characteristics for a third-party device (what data from the third-party device logs is shown).
	MIBs	Allow you to import and browse management information bases to support third-party SNMP monitoring.

Element Type		Explanation	
	Probing Profiles	Define how the Management Server tests if third-party devices are running.	
Other Elements	Data contexts	Defines the log data types shown in the Logs view or the Reports view.	
	Filters	Allow log data filtering in various tasks.	
	Geolocations	Show where Hosts (for example, attackers) are on a world map and how much traffic they create.	
	Monitoring Snapshots	Blacklist	Saved version of blacklist entries for an NGFW Engine. Created when you save a Blacklist Snapshot in the Blacklist view.
		Connections	Saved version of connection entries for an NGFW Engine. Created when you save a Connections Snapshot in the Connections view.
		Logs	Saved version of log, alert, and audit entries for an NGFW Engine. Created when you save a Logs Snapshot in the Logs view.
		Routing	Saved version of routing entries for an NGFW Engine. Created when you save a Routing Snapshot in the Routing view.
		SSL VPNs	Saved version of active SSL VPN connections. Created when you save an SSL VPN snapshot in the SSL VPN Monitoring view.
		Users	Saved version of active users for an NGFW Engine. Created when you save a User Snapshot in the Users view.
VPN SAs		Saved version of active VPN SAs for an NGFW Engine. Created when you save a VPN SA snapshot in the VPN SAs view.	
Network Elements	Represent IP addresses.		
Overview Templates	Templates that allow you to create a statistical overview with predefined information selected for the view.		

**Related concepts**

[Network elements](#) on page 145



# Network elements

Network elements represent included IP addresses in NGFW Engine configurations.

**Table 17: Types of network elements**

Element Type	Explanation
Address Ranges	Define a set of consecutive IP addresses between a start address and end address that you define.
Aliases	Context-dependent elements with no fixed value. The value is defined per engine and is determined when a policy containing the Alias is installed.
Countries	Country elements contain lists of IP addresses registered in a particular country.
Domain Names	The name of an Internet domain that is automatically resolved by an NGFW Engine to all IP addresses associated with the domain.
Expressions	Allow defining IP addresses using logical operators, which simplify the definition of complex sets of addresses.
Groups	Allow collecting together other Network Elements of any type. Represents all IP addresses defined in the included elements.
Hosts	Represent a single IP address.
IP Address Lists	Represent a list of IP addresses.
Networks	Represent a complete (sub)network of addresses.
Routers	Represent a next-hop router in configurations where required. In policies, represent a single IPv4 or IPv6 address.
NGFW Engines	Configurations particular to individual NGFW Engines, such as the interface configuration.
Servers	Represent an SMC server or an external server that provides a service to the system. In policies, represent a single IP address.
Traffic Handlers	Configure outbound and inbound traffic management features (load balancing and high availability).
Zones	Interface reference that can combine several network interfaces of NGFW Engines into one logical entity. Used for defining interface matching requirements in traffic handling rules in policies.

## Related concepts

[Introduction to expressions](#) on page 1441

# Service elements

Service elements are used in Access rules to match traffic and to set parameters for handling the traffic.

There are predefined system Service elements for official (IANA-reserved) and well-known protocols and services (such as DNS, FTP, and HTTP). You can also create your own custom Service elements to specify a port that is not predefined or to define custom options for handling some types of traffic.

**Table 18: Types of Services**

Element Type	Explanation
Group	Groups of services containing the Service elements that together fulfill a certain role (for example, the services that allow IPsec VPN connections).
ICMP	Identifies the message by the ICMP Type and Code fields.
IP-proto	Identifies the protocol by the IP address header Protocol field.
SUN-RPC	Identifies the Sun remote procedure call (RPC) service by the program identifier.
TCP	Identifies the service by the TCP header <i>Source Port</i> or <i>Destination Port</i> fields.
UDP	Identifies the service by the UDP header <i>Source Port</i> or <i>Destination Port</i> fields.
With Protocol	Default Services containing Protocols that have default parameters set to typically used values.
With Proxy	Default Services containing SSM Proxy Protocol Agents.

## Situation elements

Situation elements are used in Inspection rules to define patterns that deep packet inspection looks for in traffic.

The Situations tree is constructed differently compared to most other trees. The Situations tree contains several alternative groupings, so most Situations are shown in several places. The groupings allow you to easily find Situations that are specific to the task at hand. For example, Situations specific to the HTTP protocol (some of which are specific to particular web browsers) are stored at the following location in the Situations tree: **Situations > By Type > Traffic Identification > Browsers**.

Some branches are groupings that you can add to yourself. You can use most of these branches in Inspection rules. The Situation Type groupings are used as the basis for the tree-based Inspection rules configuration in Inspection Policy elements.

Situations and their groupings are updated in dynamic update packages. The following table lists the default branches at the time of writing this document.

**Table 19: Default groupings of Situations at the time of publishing this document**

Tree branch	Explanation	
All Situations	All Situations in the system without any grouping.	
By Context	Anti-Malware	Events triggered in the malware scan on the UTM.
	Correlations	Correlation Situations for detecting patterns in event data.
	DoS Detection	Situations for detecting DoS (denial-of-service) attacks.
	DXL	Situations related to McAfee® Threat Intelligence Exchange (TIE).
	Files	Situations based on identifying file types from traffic. Content identified based on file type fingerprints is redirected to appropriate file streams.
	Protocols	Situations that identify protocols from traffic.
	Scan Detection	Situations for detecting network scans.
	System	System-internal events.

Tree branch		Explanation
By Tag	By Hardware	Situations that detect something specific to a particular hardware platform grouped by platform (for example, x86 (32-bit) or x86-64 (64-bit)). An example of something hardware specific is an attempt to exploit a known vulnerability that only exists on a particular platform.
	By Operating System	Situations that detect something specific to a particular operating system, grouped by operating system (for example, Windows (for all Windows versions) or Windows 2000).
	By Situation Tag	Free-form grouping for some special use cases. The Recent Updates branch is especially useful. The branches dynamically list Situations that have been recently added to the system in the 1–5 most recent dynamic update packages. (This list helps in tuning your policies.)
	By Software	Situations that detect something specific to a particular software, grouped by brand or product name (for example, Adobe Acrobat or Microsoft Office).
By Type		These Situations are shown as the main Rules tree in the Inspection rules.
By Vulnerability		Situations that detect attempts to exploit known vulnerabilities grouped by vulnerability name.
Custom Situations		Custom Situations that the administrators create. Custom Situations can also appear in the other branches.

## VPN elements

You can view the types of elements used for configuring VPNs and the element descriptions.

**Table 20: Types of elements in the VPN configuration**

Element Type		Explanation
Policy-Based VPNs		Configurations particular to a VPN between two or more VPN gateways.
Route-Based VPN		Configurations particular to VPN tunnels between Firewall interfaces that are designated as tunnel endpoints.
SSL VPN Portal	SSL VPN Portals	Configurations particular to Firewalls that act as SSL VPN Portals.
	SSL VPN Portal Policies	Defines which services are available in the SSL VPN Portal and which users can access the services.
	SSL VPN Portal Services	Defines the SSL VPN Portal Services used through the SSL VPN Portal.
	SSL VPN SSO Domains	Defines the SSL VPN SSO Domain where the same username and password is valid.
	SSL VPN Portal Service Profiles	Defines the settings for SSO and cookie protection in the SSL VPN Portal Services.

Element Type			Explanation
Gateways			Configurations particular to individual VPN Gateways, such as IP address information.
Other Elements	Certificates	Gateway Certificates	Information about certificates that Firewalls use as identification in VPNs.
		VPN Certificate Authorities	Certificate issuers whose signature is accepted as proof of identity on certificates in one or more VPNs.
	Profiles	Gateway Certificates	Information about the capabilities of particular types and versions of VPN gateway devices. Allow automatic configuration validation.
		Gateway Settings	Advanced global Firewall settings related to VPN performance tuning.
		VPN Profiles	The main authentication, encryption, and integrity checking settings for VPNs.
TLS Cryptography Suite Sets		Settings that define which cryptographic algorithms are allowed to be used in the SSL VPN.	


## Benefits of exporting or importing elements

The ability to export and import most kinds of elements allows you to reuse or restore them without having to create them again.

- You can reuse elements in a different SMC.
- You can import old versions of elements or deleted elements by restoring them from a Policy Snapshot or from an Element Snapshot.
- You can restore elements that have been moved to the Trash.

You can export and import elements using the following interfaces:

- Management Client
- Command Line Interface tools (sgExport or sgImport)

You can export elements to the following file types using the  **Menu** > **File** > **Print** option:

- .html
- .pdf



**Note:** Exported files are meant for importing elements into the database of a Management Server. They are not meant to be viewed or edited in external applications.

You can import elements from the following file types:

- .csv — You can create a .csv file and import values from it.
- .tsv — You can create a .tsv file and import values from it.
- .zip — You can import elements from a .zip file of elements exported from the Management Client.



**Note:** When you export and import elements that have been moved to the Trash, all references to the elements remain valid. An element that has been exported from the Trash remains in the Trash when imported to an environment with several Management Servers.

### Related concepts

[Restore elements from Snapshots](#) on page 152

### Related tasks

[Save elements, log data, reports, and statistics](#) on page 256

[Export selected elements](#) on page 149

[Export all elements](#) on page 150

[Create .csv or .tsv files for importing elements](#) on page 150

[Restore elements from the Trash](#) on page 157

[Import user information](#) on page 1094

[Export user information](#) on page 1094

## Export selected elements

You can select and export individual elements.



**Note:** You can export most but not all kinds of elements. The elements that you cannot export contain sensitive information (for example, administrator accounts and certificates). To export an element that references an element which cannot be exported, you must first manually create a corresponding element having the same name as the referenced element. Otherwise, the export fails.


**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **≡ Menu > File > Export > Export Elements**.
- 2) Select an option:
  - Enter a file name for the export file.
  - Click **Browse** to select the location where you want to create the file.
- 3) (Optional) To view and export elements that have been moved to the Trash, select **⚙ Tools > Show Deleted Elements**.
- 4) Select the elements that you want to export and click **Add**.
- 5) When you have finished adding elements to the Content list, click **Export**.  
A new tab opens to show the progress of the export.

**Related tasks**[Import elements from a file](#) on page 151[Export user information](#) on page 1094

## Export all elements

You can select and export all elements.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select **≡ Menu > File > Export > Export All Elements**.
- 2) Select an option:
  - Enter a file name for the export file.
  - Click **Browse** to select the location where you want to create the file.
- 3) (Optional) To view and export elements that have been moved to the Trash, select **⚙ Tools > Show Deleted Elements**.
- 4) Click **Export**.  
A new tab opens to show the progress of the export.

**Related tasks**[Import elements from a file](#) on page 151[Export user information](#) on page 1094

## Create .csv or .tsv files for importing elements

You can create .csv (comma-separated value) files or .tsv (tab-separated value) files for importing elements.

In a .csv file, commas separate all values. In a .tsv file, a tab character separates all values.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Create a new .csv or .tsv file. (For example, you can use a spreadsheet application.)
- 2) In the first row of the file, specify the header as follows:
  - .csv files — Enter `ip,name,comment`.

- .tsv files — Enter `ip<tab>name<tab>comment`.



**Note:** Only the IP address is mandatory in the header row. All data entered in the file must follow the format of the header row.

- 3) Enter the IP address of the element and optionally a name and a comment on the row below the header. Use the same format as in the header.



**Note:** Only the IP address is mandatory. If you have other parameters in the header row, enter a separator (a comma or tab) even if you do not enter a name or comment in the row.

Example: If the header row is `ip,name,comment` and you want to omit the name and the comment in the .csv file, enter `10.1.1.1,,`.

Example: If the header row is `ip<tab>name<tab>comment` and you want to omit the name and the comment in the .tsv file, enter `10.1.1.1<tab><tab>`.

If you omit the name, the SMC automatically generates a name for the element based on its IP address. The SMC detects the element type based on the syntax of the IP address as follows:


- 10.10.10.10 — Specifies a Host element.
  - 10.10.10.0/24 — Specifies a Network element.
  - 10.10.10.10–20.20.20.20 — Specifies an Address Range element.
- 4) (Optional) For each element, add another row to the file.
  - 5) Save the file.

### Related tasks

[Import elements from a file](#) on page 151

## Import elements from a file

You can import elements from a .csv or .tsv file.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Menu > File > Import > Import Elements**.
- 2) Select the files you want to import, then click **Import**.  
The Management Server automatically checks if any elements in the file to be imported have the same name and XML content as any elements that exist. A new tab opens.

- 3) If any conflicts are found between elements in the import file and existing elements, select the **Action** for each conflict according to the conflict type.



**Tip:** If there is a conflict between existing elements and elements in the Policy Snapshot, the differences are shown in color in the XML format. To view the elements in XML format, select **Tools > Show XML**.

- 4) When there are no more conflicts, click **Continue** to start the import.
- 5) When the import is finished, click **Close**.

#### Related concepts

[Benefits of exporting or importing elements](#) on page 148

## Restore elements from Snapshots

You can restore all elements from a Policy Snapshot or select the elements to be restored.


#### Related tasks


[Restore all elements from Policy Snapshots](#) on page 152

[Restore selected elements from Policy Snapshots](#) on page 153

## Restore all elements from Policy Snapshots

You can restore all elements from a Policy Snapshot.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Policy Snapshots**.
- 3) To open the list of Policy Snapshots, expand the Policy Snapshot type.
- 4) Right-click the Policy Snapshot from which you want to restore elements, then select **Restore**.
- 5) If any conflicts are found between elements in the Policy Snapshot and the existing elements, resolve them by selecting the **Action**.



**Tip:** If there is a conflict between existing elements and elements in the Policy Snapshot, the differences are shown in color in the XML format. To view the elements in XML format, select **Tools > Show XML**.




- 6) When there are no more conflicts, click **Continue**.
- 7) When the restoration is finished, click **Close**.


#### Related tasks

[Restore selected elements from Policy Snapshots](#) on page 153


## Restore selected elements from Policy Snapshots

You can restore selected elements from a Policy Snapshot.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Policy Snapshots**.
- 3) Expand the branch for the Policy Snapshot Type.
- 4) Right-click the Policy Snapshot from which you want to restore elements, then select **View Policy Snapshot**.
- 5) Select one or several elements to restore, right-click, then select **Tools > Restore**.
- 6) If any conflicts are found between the elements in the Policy Snapshot and the existing elements, resolve them by selecting the **Action**.



**Tip:** If there is a conflict between existing elements and elements in the Policy Snapshot, the differences are shown in color in the XML format. To view the elements in XML format, select  **Tools > Show XML**.


- 7) When there are no more conflicts, click **Continue** to start the restoring.
- 8) When the restoration is finished, click **Close**.

#### Related tasks

[Restore all elements from Policy Snapshots](#) on page 152

# Restore elements from Element Snapshots

You can restore elements from Element Snapshots, which are stored in Audit logs.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Display Element Snapshots in the **Logs** view.
- 2) Right-click the audit entry of an element, then select **Compare to Current Element**.



**Note:** If the Element Snapshot properties differ from the properties of the existing element, a red border is displayed. You can view the red border around the Audit Log Version (snapshot) and the Current Version of the element.



**Tip:** If there is a conflict between existing elements and elements in the Policy Snapshot, the differences are shown in color in the XML format. To view the elements in XML format, select **Show: XML**.

- 3) To restore the properties of the Element Snapshot to the current element, click **Restore**.
- 4) If any conflicts are found between the elements in the Element Snapshot and existing elements, resolve them by selecting the **Action**:
  - **Import** — The element that exists is overwritten with the element in the Element Snapshot.
  - **Duplicate** — The element in the Element snapshot is renamed by adding a number to the end of the element's name and imported as a new element.
  - **Do not Import** — The element is not imported.
- 5) Click **Continue**.
- 6) When the import is done, click **Close**.

## Related concepts

[Restore elements from Snapshots](#) on page 152

## Related tasks

[View and compare Element Snapshot elements](#) on page 200

# Lock elements


An administrator who is allowed to edit an element can lock the element and add a comment to explain the reason for locking it.

## Before you begin

To lock or unlock an element, you must be logged on to the Shared Domain or the Domain in which the element is stored.



**Note:** You cannot lock predefined system elements or elements that have been sent to the Trash.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the element you want to lock, then select **Tools > Lock**.
- 2) Enter a **Comment** explaining the reason for locking the element.
- 3) Click **OK**.  
The element is now locked and a lock symbol is displayed on its icon.


# Unlock elements

Unlock an element so that you can edit or delete it.

## Before you begin

To lock or unlock an element, you must be logged on to the Shared Domain or the Domain in which the element is stored.

Locked elements are displayed with a lock symbol. Unlock a locked element before editing or deleting it. Any administrator who is allowed to edit the locked element can unlock it.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the element you want to unlock, then select **Tools > Unlock**.
- 2) In the dialog box that opens, click **Yes** to confirm the unlock.

# How the Trash works

Before deleting an element, you move it to the Trash.

In the Management Client, you can view and search for elements in the Trash. An administrator with unrestricted permissions can search for elements in the Trash in all administrative Domains.

Before working with the Trash feature, review the following considerations:

- If you want to delete an administrator account, first disable the account. Then you can delete the disabled Administrator element in the **Administration** branch of the **Configuration** view.
- Domains cannot be moved to the Trash. You can only permanently delete Domains.
- An element in the Trash is still valid in any previous configuration where the element was used before it was moved to the Trash. However, you cannot add an element that is in the Trash to any new configuration.
- When you export and import elements that have been moved to the Trash, all references to the elements remain valid. An element that has been exported from the Trash remains in the Trash when imported to an environment with several Management Servers.
- You can also restore elements that have been moved to the Trash. An element in the Trash is permanently deleted only when you delete it from the Trash or when you empty the Trash.

## Related tasks

[Delete elements from the Trash](#) on page 157


[Restore elements from the Trash](#) on page 157

[Disable administrator accounts](#) on page 361

[Delete a Domain](#) on page 397

## Move elements to the Trash

You move elements to the Trash before deleting them permanently.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the element, then select **Delete**.  
A confirmation dialog box opens.
- 2) If the element you are moving to the Trash is used in any configuration, view and remove all references to the element:
  - a) Click **Open References** to view the references.
  - b) To remove the references, right-click each element that references the element that you want to remove, select **Edit**, and remove the element from the configuration.
- 3) Click **Yes**.  
The element is moved to the Trash.

**Related tasks**

[Restore elements from the Trash](#) on page 157

[Delete elements from the Trash](#) on page 157

[Search for element references](#)


[Disable administrator accounts](#) on page 361

[Delete a Domain](#) on page 397

## Restore elements from the Trash

You restore elements from the Trash so that you can add them to new configurations.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Menu** > **View** > **Trash**.
- 2) Right-click the element that you want to restore, then select **Undelete**.



**Note:** You can view the references to the element you are restoring. In the confirmation dialog box, click **Open References**.

- 3) Click **Yes**.  
The element is restored.


**Related tasks**

[Move elements to the Trash](#) on page 156

[Delete elements from the Trash](#) on page 157

## Delete elements from the Trash

You can permanently delete an element that you moved to the Trash.


If you select  **Tools** > **Show Deleted Elements** to view the elements that have been moved to the Trash, you can delete the element from the Trash in your current view. Otherwise, you can either delete a single element from the Trash branch or delete all elements in the Trash by emptying the Trash.

To permanently delete an element:

- Administrators must have sufficient rights.
- The element must not be used in any configuration, for example, in a policy.



**CAUTION:** Deletion is permanent. There is no undo. To recover a deleted element, you must either recreate it or restore it from a previously created backup or XML export file that contains the element.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **≡ Menu > View > Trash**.
- 2) Right-click the element that you are deleting, then select **Delete**.  
A confirmation dialog box opens.
- 3) If the element you are moving to the Trash is used in any configuration, view and remove all references to the element:
  - a) Click **Open References** to view the references.
  - b) To remove the references, right-click each element that references the element that you want to remove, select **Edit**, and remove the element from the configuration.
- 4) Click **Yes**.  
The element is permanently deleted.

#### Related tasks


[Restore elements from the Trash](#) on page 157

## Empty the Trash

You can permanently delete all elements in the Trash at one time.



**CAUTION:** Deletion is permanent. There is no undo. To recover a deleted element, either recreate it or restore it from a previously created backup or XML export file that contains the element.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **≡ Menu > View > Trash**.
- 2) Select **⚙ Tools > Empty Trash**.  
A confirmation dialog box opens.
- 3) Click **Yes**.  
All elements in the Trash are permanently deleted.

#### Related tasks

[Restore elements from the Trash](#) on page 157

# How Categories help you view only certain elements

---

Categories allow you to restrict which elements are displayed in the Management Client. When you activate a Category Filter, elements that do not belong to one of the selected Categories are filtered out of your view.

Categories help you manage large networks by filtering the elements that are displayed. You can create separate Categories for elements that belong to a Firewall, IPS, or Layer 2 Firewall configuration and then select the category you want to configure. You can freely select how to assign the Categories, and quickly and flexibly change which combinations of Categories are shown according to your tasks.

In a large installation, there can be hundreds of elements, but you usually do not need to work with all elements at the same time. Category elements allow you to group related elements according to any criteria you want. Using Categories, you can quickly filter your Management Client view. Elements that do not belong to the selected Category are filtered out so that only the relevant elements are visible. Categories allow you to manage many elements more efficiently by making it easier to find the elements you need.

There are two predefined Categories:

- The *System Elements* Category is assigned to all default elements in the SMC. You can use it to display all predefined elements in the system.
- The *Not Categorized* Category contains all elements that have not yet been assigned a Category.

## Grouping Category elements with Category Tag elements

---

If you have many custom Category elements, you can group the Categories using Category Tag elements. Category Tags can also be used to filter elements in Management Client views.

After you have created a Category Tag, you can select that Category Tag for a Category. You can also arrange Category Tags into groups by selecting a parent Category Tag for Category Tag elements.

When Category Filters are available, Category tags can be used as filtering criteria in the Management Client.

## Category configuration overview

---

You can create and combine Categories in a custom Category Filter.

Follow these general steps to configure a custom Category Filter:

- 1) Create a Category.
- 2) Associate elements with the Category.
- 3) Select a Category as the active Category Filter.
- 4) Combine Categories in a custom Category Filter.

**Related tasks**[Create new Category elements](#) on page 160[Select Categories for elements](#) on page 161[Activate Category Filters](#) on page 161[Combine Category elements in custom filters](#) on page 163

## Create new Category elements

You can create as many Categories as you need, and you can base the Categories on any criteria.

For example, you can create separate Categories for elements related to different geographic locations. The same element can belong to several Categories. Categories are stored as elements and they are visible to other administrators as well.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Categories**.
- 3) Right-click **Categories**, then select **New Category**.
- 4) Give the Category a unique name.
- 5) (Optional) Enter a **Comment** for your own reference.
- 6) Click **OK**.

**Related tasks**[Select Categories for elements](#) on page 161[Activate Category Filters](#) on page 161

## Add Category elements to groups using Category Tag elements

Add Categories to groups using Category Tags for easier management of categorized elements.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.




- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Categories**.
- 3) Right-click **Categories**, then select **New > Category** to create a Category, or right-click an existing Category to open the Category properties.
- 4) Select a Category Tag for the Category.
  - a) To select a category, click **Add**.
  - b) To create a Category Tag, select **Tools > New > Category Tag**.
- 5) Click **OK**.

## Select Categories for elements

You can select any number of Categories for each element without restrictions.

There are no automatic checks to consider; elements that reference each other do not need to be in the same Category. If you are using a Category Filter, the Categories included in the Category Filter are added to new elements when you create them. You can also manually select other Categories for elements and remove the automatically added Categories.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Click **Select** next to the **Category** field in the properties of a new or existing element. The **Category Selection** dialog box for the element opens.
- 2) Add or remove Categories as needed.
- 3) Click **OK**.

### Related tasks

[Create new Category elements](#) on page 160

[Activate Category Filters](#) on page 161

## Activate Category Filters

In most views, you can select a Category Filter to restrict which elements are displayed. You can also filter by more than one Category at a time.

The Category Filters are selected in the toolbar of the Management Client. You can create a custom Category Filter containing any combination of Categories. For example, you can combine a Category for a particular geographic location and a Category for critical servers. This custom Category Filter combination only displays elements related to the critical servers at one location. The Category Filter is applied in all views.



**Note:** The selected Category Filter is applied *in all views* until you select a different Category Filter or **Category Filter Not Used**.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) If the Category Filter selection is not visible in the toolbar, select **≡ Menu > View > Layout > Category Filter Toolbar**.
- 2) Select an existing Category.
  - If the Category you want to use is not listed, select **Select**, select the Category, then click **Select**.
  - To display the elements that do not belong to any Category, select the **Not Categorized** filter.
  - To display the predefined system elements, select the **System Elements** filter.

## Result

Only the elements that belong to the selected Category are displayed. To display all elements again, select **Category Filter Not Used**.

### Related tasks

[Combine Category elements in custom filters](#) on page 163

# Activate the default Category Filters for Domain elements

When you create a Domain, you can set the default Category Filters that are automatically used when you log on to the Domain.

If you change the Category Filter, you can revert to the default Category Filter for the Domain.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) If the Category Filter selection is not visible in the toolbar, select **≡ Menu > View > Layout > Category Filter Toolbar**.  
The Category Filter selection is displayed in the toolbar.
- 2) In the Category Filter toolbar, select **Default Category Filter for Domain**.

### Related tasks


[Create new Category elements](#) on page 160

[Activate Category Filters](#) on page 161

[Create Domain elements](#) on page 391

## Filter elements by Category Tag

Use Category Tags to filter categorized elements in different Management Client views.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) If the Category Filter selection is not visible in the toolbar, select **Menu > View > Layout > Category Filter Toolbar**.
- 2) Select a Category Tag from the **Category Filter** menu to filter elements by Category Tag.




**Note:** If the Category Tag you need is not listed, select **Other** and navigate to the Category Tag.

### Result

The elements in the view are filtered to only show elements in Categories that have the selected Category Tag.

## Combine Category elements in custom filters

You can combine several Category Filters to display elements that are in any of the selected Categories.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the Category Filter toolbar, select **Define Custom Category Filter**.
- 2) Select the Categories you want to add, then click **Add**.
- 3) (Optional) If you want to view elements that do not have a Category (they belong to the Not Categorized Category), select **Show Not Categorized**.
- 4) (Optional) If you want to view elements that are predefined elements (they belong to the System Elements Category), select **Show System Elements**.
- 5) Click **OK**.  
Only the elements assigned to the selected Categories are displayed.

### Related tasks

[Create new Category elements](#) on page 160

[Activate Category Filters](#) on page 161

## Examples of Categories

---

The examples illustrate some common uses for Categories and general steps on how each scenario is configured.

### Example: Creating category elements for a firewall and an IPS configuration

---

This scenario shows an example of using categories to show only Firewall or IPS engine configurations.

Company A is a large enterprise planning a new system. The system includes several Firewall and IPS engines. Each Firewall and IPS engine has its own policy. The company's administrators are only required to manage the Firewall engines and their policies or the IPS engines and their policies at a time. To restrict which engines and policies are displayed, the following steps are taken:

- 1) The headquarters administrator creates two Categories: one for the elements that belong to the Firewall configuration and another for the elements that belong to the IPS configuration.
- 2) The headquarters administrator creates the elements that represent the Firewalls, Firewall policies, IPS engines, and IPS policies. The administrator then selects the appropriate Category for each element while defining its properties.
- 3) The administrators select the appropriate Category as the Category Filter so that only the elements in the Firewall or IPS configuration are displayed.

### Example: Combining category elements

---

This scenario shows an example of combining categories that are used at different sites.

Company B has sites in New York, Toronto, and Mexico City. The company's administrators have defined separate Categories for the elements that belong to each site, because administrators usually work with the elements of one site at a time. Today, however, Administrator A must apply the same configuration changes to the New York and Toronto sites. Administrator A does not want to create a Category for this temporary need. To be able to filter the elements belonging to both the New York and Toronto sites, Administrator A does the following:

- 1) Creates a custom Category Filter that contains the New York and Toronto Categories. The elements at both the New York and Toronto sites are displayed, and elements in the Mexico City Category are filtered out.
- 2) Makes the configuration changes to the elements in the New York and Toronto sites.
- 3) Selects the Category Filter Not Used filter to display all elements again.

## Legacy elements

---

Some elements related to features that are no longer supported are visible in the Management Client if you configured them using an earlier Forcepoint NGFW software version.

The following features are no longer supported in Forcepoint NGFW version 5.9.0 or later:

- Stonesoft Authentication Server
- Stonesoft User Agent

Elements related to these features are included only for backward compatibility with legacy Forcepoint NGFW software versions. For information about these features in earlier software versions, see the version-specific documentation.



# PART IV

## Monitoring

### Contents

- [Monitoring Forcepoint NGFW components](#) on page 169
- [Monitoring third-party devices](#) on page 213
- [Viewing and exporting logged data](#) on page 233
- [Reports](#) on page 261
- [Filtering data](#) on page 283
- [Working with Diagram elements](#) on page 297
- [Incident Case elements](#) on page 311

You can use the SMC to monitor system components and third-party devices. You can also view and filter logs, and create Reports from them.





# Monitoring Forcepoint NGFW components

### Contents

- [Getting started with monitoring the system](#) on page 169
- [System monitoring tools in the Management Client](#) on page 170
- [Overviews and how they work](#) on page 186
- [Monitoring connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs](#) on page 193
- [View and compare Element Snapshot elements](#) on page 200
- [Monitoring connections using Geolocation elements](#) on page 202
- [Monitoring configurations and policies](#) on page 205
- [Monitor administrator actions](#) on page 206
- [Monitor tasks](#) on page 206
- [Traffic captures and how they work](#) on page 207
- [Checking maintenance contract information](#) on page 209
- [Check when internal certificates or CAs expire](#) on page 211

All Forcepoint NGFW components can be monitored through the Management Client.

## Getting started with monitoring the system

---

There are several ways to monitor the system in the Management Client.

- Monitor the status of individual components and view a summary of the system status.
- Monitor the status of elements that belong to different administrative Domains.
- Create customizable overviews of the system.
- Monitor enforced blacklists, open connections, active VPN SAs, active users, routing, and SSL VPN sessions.
- View, approve, and commit pending changes made to configurations and policies of engines.
- Check which configurations and policies are currently applied in the system.
- Check which actions administrators take.
- Check the status of Tasks that schedule commands to run automatically.
- Monitor the status of the maintenance contract.
- Monitor the status of internal certificates and internal certificate authorities.

### Related concepts

[What the Home view shows](#) on page 170

[Overviews and how they work](#) on page 186

[Monitoring connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs](#) on page 193

[Monitoring connections using Geolocation elements](#) on page 202

[Monitoring configurations and policies](#) on page 205

[Checking maintenance contract information](#) on page 209

[Getting started with monitoring third-party devices](#) on page 213

[Getting started with the Logs view](#) on page 233

[Getting started with reports](#) on page 261

### Related tasks

[View, approve, and commit pending changes](#) on page 113

[Monitor administrator actions](#) on page 206

[Monitor tasks](#) on page 206

[Check when internal certificates or CAs expire](#) on page 211

## System monitoring tools in the Management Client

There are various tools and views that you can use to monitor the NGFW system.

### The Domain Overview

Domain elements allow you to group elements that belong to specific configurations (for example, elements that belong to a particular site or customer). The Domain Overview allows you to see at a glance the status of the Domains and their elements. You do not need to log on to each Domain to monitor its status.

If the configurations are divided in different administrative Domains, the **Domain Overview** displays as the first view after logon. The Domain Overview is only available to administrators who have permissions for several domains. You can then select the Domain that you want to manage.

### Related concepts

[Getting started with Domain elements](#) on page 389

### What the Home view shows

The Management Server automatically tracks the operation of the Forcepoint NGFW components. You can also monitor the status of third-party devices in the Management Client.

You can check the status of the system and individual components in the **Home** view.

There are several ways to open the **Home** view. For example:

- Select **Home**.
- Right-click an element that is monitored, then select **Monitoring > Home**.

#### Related concepts

[How the Home view is arranged](#) on page 171

[Getting started with monitoring third-party devices](#) on page 213

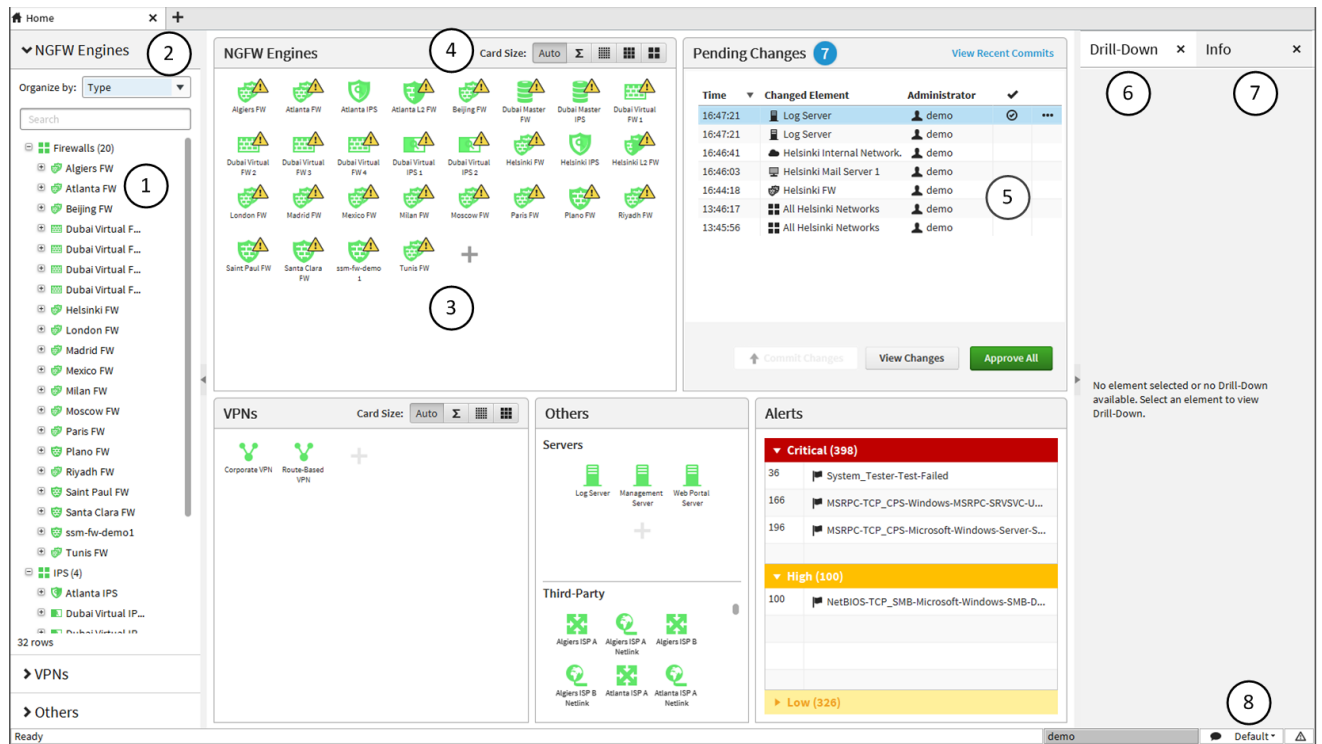
## How the Home view is arranged

---

In the **Home** view, you can view the status of NGFW components and monitored third-party devices.

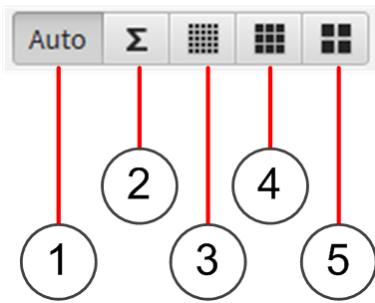
By default, when you start the Management Client, you see the **Home** view. This view provides the operating and connectivity status of SMC components and third-party components that are set up to be monitored through the SMC. The status information is stored on Log Servers. The Management Server compiles the **Home** view based on data from all Log Servers.

Figure 42: Home view



- 1 **Status tree** — Status of monitored system elements  
To see the status of a component in the Status tree, expand the tree, then place the cursor over any element. You can see the element's IP address and status in a tooltip.
- 2 **Organize by** drop-down list — Options for sorting the elements in the **Status tree**
- 3 **Status cards** for NGFW Engines, VPNs, and other monitored elements or the Home page for the selected element — Show detailed information about the status and configuration of monitored elements.  
Click the card for an element to open the element's home page.  
Click **+** **New** to add an element of the selected type
- 4 **Card Size** options — Options for changing the size of status cards and what information they show
- 5 **Pending Changes** pane — Shows configuration and policy changes that have not yet been transferred to the engines. The **Recent Commits** pane opens in the same place and shows recent policy uploads.
- 6 **Drill-downs** pane — Shortcuts to more details of the selected element. Blank if no element is selected in the **Status tree**.
- 7 **Info** pane — Details of the selected element. Blank if no element is selected in the **Status tree**.
- 8 Location for monitoring the system

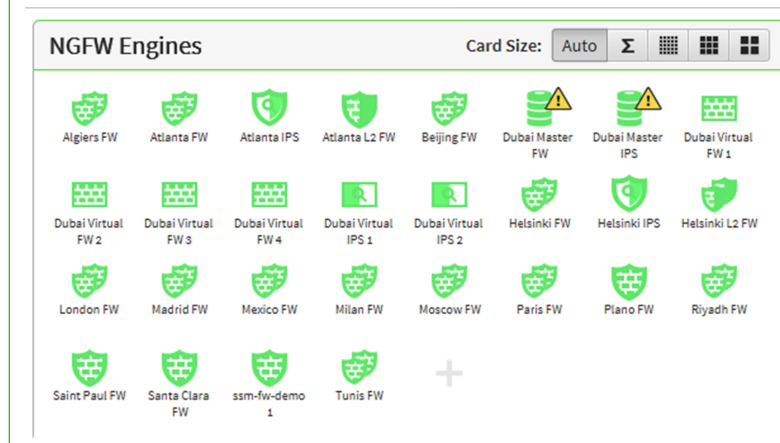
**Figure 43: Card size toolbar**



- 1 **Auto** — Selects the card size automatically based on the space available.
- 2 **Sum** — Shows the number of engines for each status. This card size is useful for large installations.
- 3 **Small card size**
- 4 **Medium card size**
- 5 **Large card size**

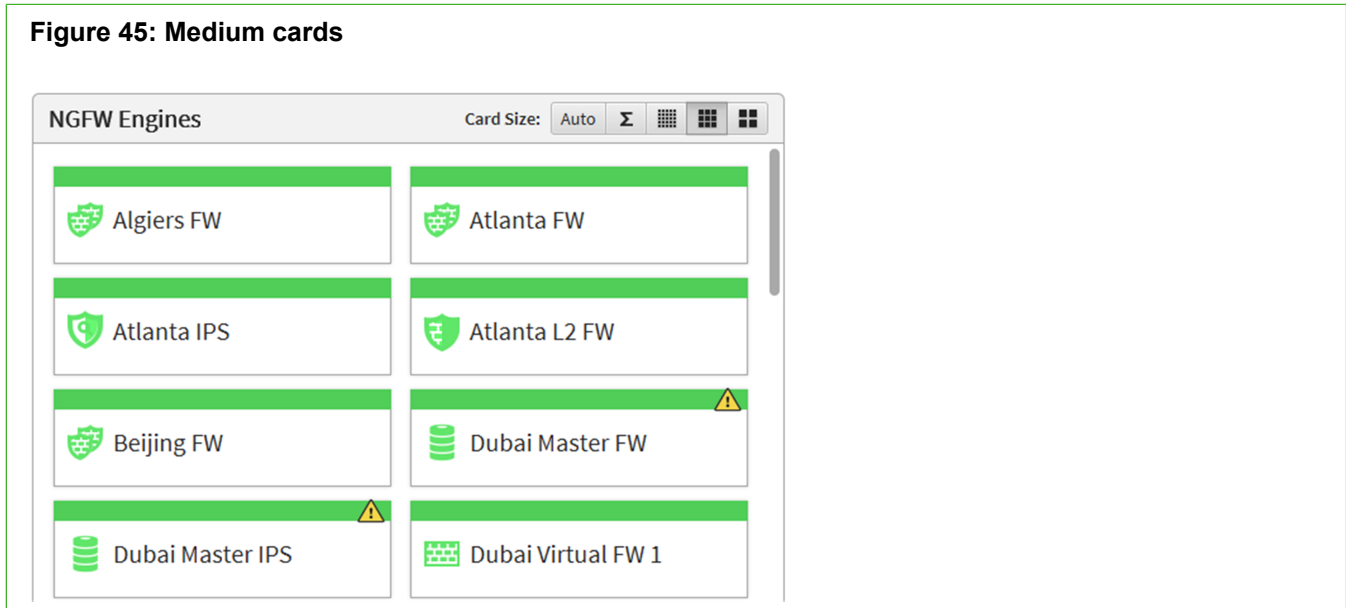
Different sizes of cards show different information.

**Figure 44: Small cards**



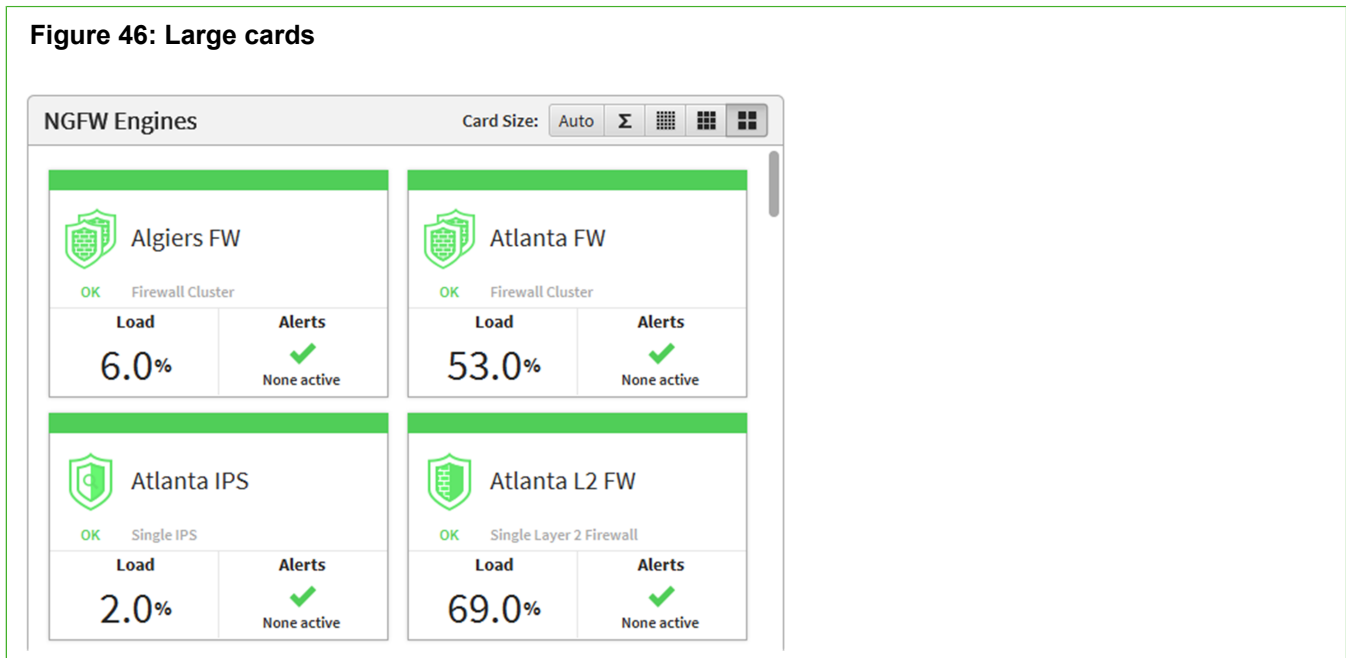
Small cards show only the status of the element.

**Figure 45: Medium cards**



Medium cards show the status of the element, when the last policy upload was made, and whether there are any active alerts for the element.

**Figure 46: Large cards**



Large cards show the status of the element, configuration information about the element, and whether there are any active alerts for the element. For engine elements, the cards also show the current load of the engine.

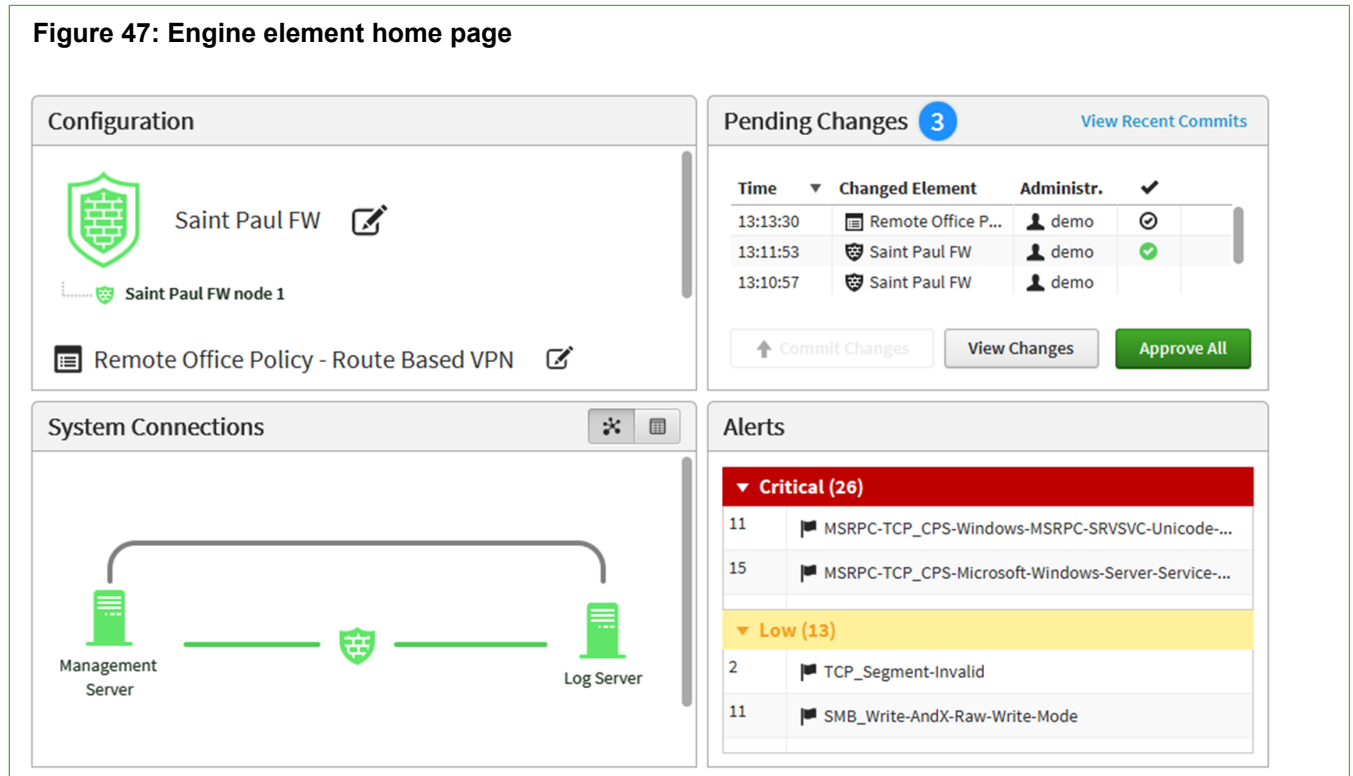
**Related concepts**

[How component statuses are indicated](#) on page 183

# What the element home pages show

Element home pages show different information depending on the type of element.

Clicking an element's status card or selecting an element in the **Status** tree opens the home page for the element.

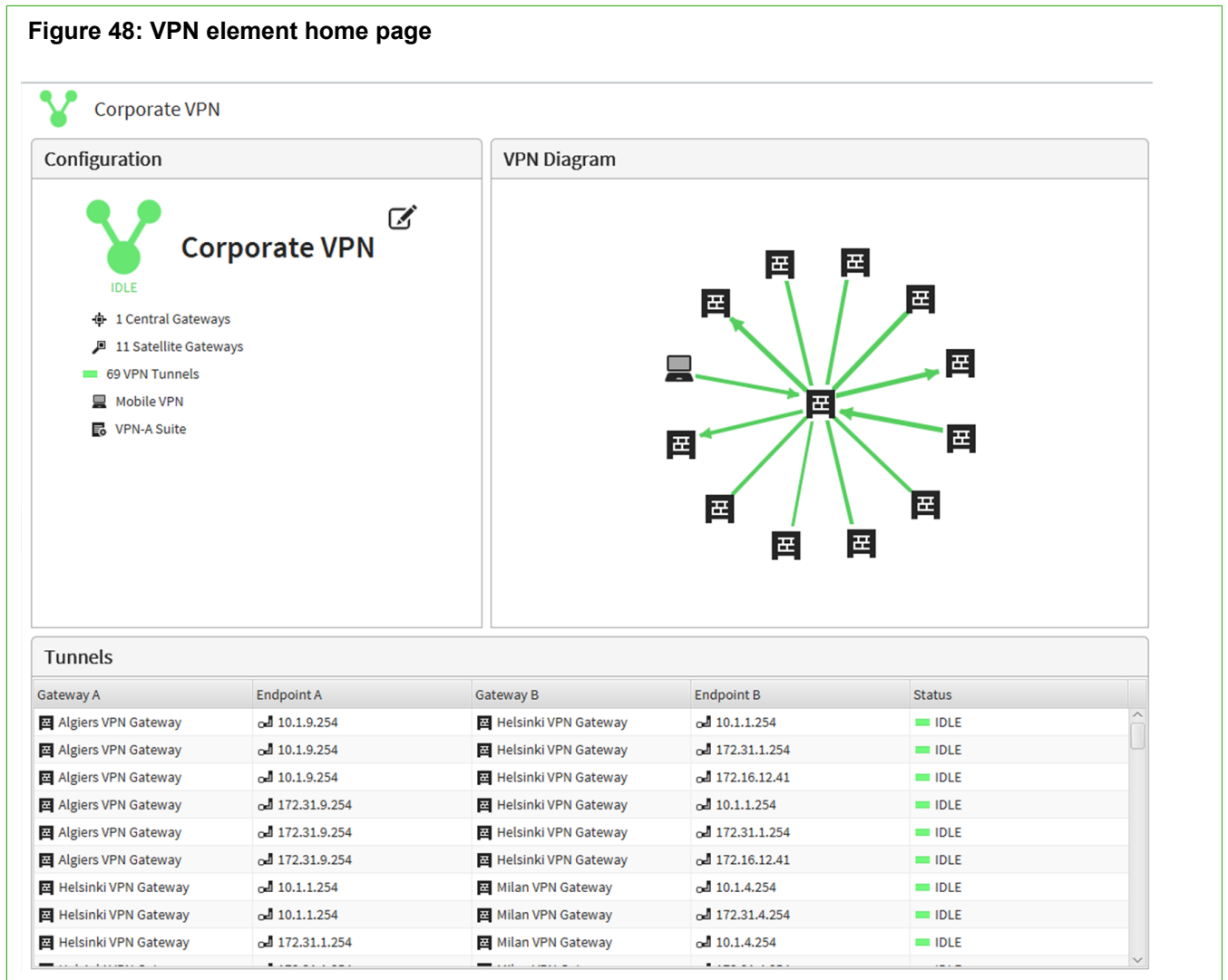


**Table 21: Panes in engine element home pages**

Pane	Description
<b>Configuration</b>	Shows information about the configuration status of the engine. To preview the properties of the engine or the engine policy, click the engine name or policy name. To edit the properties of the engine or to edit the policy, click <a href="#">Edit</a> .  If the configuration of an engine has not yet been completed, you can continue the configuration (for example, save the engine's initial configuration or upload a policy to the engine) directly from the engine's home page. The remaining configuration steps are shown on the home page.
<b>System Connections</b>	Shows the selected element's status and the status of its connections with other NGFW components.
<b>Pending Changes</b>	Shows configuration and policy changes that have not yet been transferred to the engines. Provides options for viewing, approving, and committing pending changes.
<b>Recent Commits</b>	Shows recent policy uploads. Opens in the same place as the <b>Pending Changes</b> pane.
<b>Alerts</b>	Shows active alerts for the engine.

When you select an individual engine node in the **Status** tree, the hardware diagram page for the node opens. The hardware diagram shows details about the status of network ports. More detailed information is shown in the Info pane for network interfaces and hardware (appliance) status.

**Figure 48: VPN element home page**



**Table 22: Panes in VPN element home pages**

Pane	Description
Configuration	Shows information about the configuration status of the VPN. To preview the VPN, click the name of the VPN. To edit the VPN, click <a href="#">Edit</a> .
VPN Diagram	Shows the gateways and the topology of the VPN.
Tunnels	Shows the status of the tunnels in the VPN.



# What the Pending Changes pane shows

The **Pending Changes** pane shows configuration and policy changes that have not yet been transferred to the engines. What the pane shows depends on whether an engine's home page or the **Home** view is open.

**Figure 49: Pending Changes pane for an engine on the engine's Home page**

Time	Changed Element	Administrator	✓	
16:47:21	Log Server	demo	☑	⋮
16:47:21	Log Server	demo	4	3
16:46:41	Helsinki Internal Network.	demo		
16:46:03	Helsinki Mail Server 1	demo		
16:44:18	Helsinki FW 5	demo		
13:46:17	All Helsinki Networks	demo		
13:45:56	All Helsinki Networks	demo		

Buttons: ↑ Commit Changes, View Changes, Approve All

- 1 The number of pending changes for the current engine
- 2 Opens the **Recent Commits** pane
- 3 A menu with options to view audit data and to find out where the element is used
- 4 The approval status of the pending change
- 5 The element where the change was made

**Figure 50: Pending Changes pane for all engines in the Home view**

Time	Changed Element	Administrator	Target Engines	✓	
17:41:23	London Internal Network	demo	7 NGFWs	3	
17:28:38	Plano TX FW	demo	7 NGFWs	✓	...
17:27:26	Plano TX FW	demo	7 NGFWs		4
16:47:21	Log Server	demo	6 NGFWs		
16:47:21	Log Server	demo	6 NGFWs		
16:46:41	Helsinki Internal Network.	demo	6 NGFWs		5
16:46:03	Helsinki Mail Server 1	demo	Helsinki FW		
16:44:18	Helsinki FW	demo	6 NGFWs		
13:46:17	All Helsinki Networks	demo	6 NGFWs		
13:45:56	All Helsinki Networks	demo	6 NGFWs		

↑ Commit Changes Approve All

- 1 The total number of pending changes for all engines
- 2 Opens the **Recent Commits** pane
- 3 The approval status of the pending change
- 4 A menu with options to view audit data and to find out where the element is used
- 5 The engine or engines affected by the pending change
- 6 The element where the change was made

## What the Recent Commits pane shows

The Recent Commits pane shows the list of recent policy uploads on the selected engine or all engines, depending on whether an engine's home page or the Home view showing all engines is open.

**Figure 51: Recent Commits pane for an engine on the engine's Home page**

Recent Commits		1 View Pending Changes	
Time	Comments	Administrator	
13:44:08	Blocked FTP for now	demo	...
13:37:16	Fixed VPN endpoint problem	demo	2
13:34:07		demo	

View all Policy Snapshots... 3

- 1 Opens the Pending Changes pane
- 2 Options for viewing, comparing, and restoring Policy and Element Snapshots
- 3 Opens the Policy Snapshot view for the selected engine type

**Figure 52: Recent Commits pane for an engine in the Home view**

Recent Commits		1 View Pending Changes		
Time	Comments	Administrator	Target Engine	
13:44:08	Blocked FTP for now	demo	Santa Clara FW	...
13:37:16	Fixed VPN endpoint problem	demo	Santa Clara FW	2
13:34:07		demo	Santa Clara FW	3
13:24:03		demo	Plano FW	
13:20:03		demo	Milan FW	
13:16:49	Fine-tuning HTTP rules	demo	London FW	
Yesterday		demo	Paris FW	
Yesterday		demo	Madrid FW	
2017-01-24		demo	Mexico FW	
2017-01-24		demo	Beijing FW	
2017-01-24		demo	Helsinki FW	
2016-04-06		demo	Dubai Virtual F...	
2016-01-06		demo	London FW	

View all Policy Snapshots... 4

- 1 Opens the Pending Changes pane
- 2 Options for viewing, comparing, and restoring Policy and Element Snapshots
- 3 Shows the engine or engines to which the policy was uploaded
- 4 Opens the Policy Snapshot view for the selected engine type

# What the Info pane shows

The **Info** pane is shown by default in most views. In addition to element details, the Info pane shows the most important status information for components.

The **Info** pane shows detailed information about the component that you select. The type of element determines which tabs are shown.

For example, the **Interfaces** tab shows information about the network ports of the selected engine node, such as speed and duplex. The **Status** tab shows the status of hardware and services. For example, for NGFW appliances, the Status tab shows the hardware status of the selected device. If the anti-malware feature is used, the status of the anti-malware signature database is shown.

**Figure 53: Info pane for an NGFW Engine**

**Info** (2)

**General** | Interfaces | Routing | Antispoofing | History

**NAME:** Helsinki FW

**NODES:** Helsinki FW node 1  
 Helsinki FW node 2  
 Helsinki FW node 3

**POLICY:** HQ Policy (2016-04-06 16:14:56)

**VERSION:** 6.1 (Update Package: 748)

**STATUS:** (1) OK

**CONNECTIVITY:** OK

**LOCATION:** HQ

**PLATFORM:** x86-64

**COMMENT:** HQ Site

1 Status

2 Configured interfaces

# View the status of appliance configurations

When you configure a Forcepoint NGFW appliance using the plug-and-play configuration method, you can view the status of the configuration process.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **≡ Menu > System Tools > View Appliance Configuration Status**.

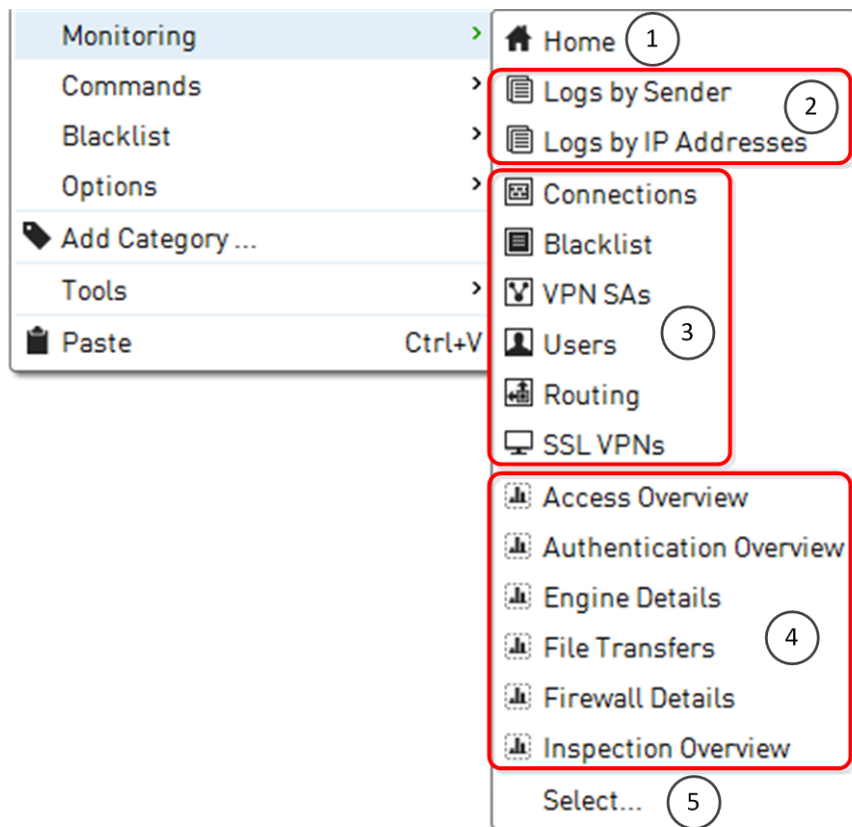
## Related concepts

[Management connections for engines and how they work](#) on page 629

# Shortcuts for monitoring different elements

Actions for monitoring a component are available in the Monitoring branch of the element's right-click menu. The available actions depend on the component type.

**Figure 54: Monitoring submenu in right-click menu for components — for Firewalls**



- 1 View component status.
- 2 View log data for component.
- 3 View the currently active connections, blacklist entries, VPN SAs, users, static and dynamic routes, and SSL VPNs.
- 4 View or edit a detailed Overview or third-party Overview.
- 5 Select an Overview that is not listed.

## Related concepts

[How component statuses are indicated](#) on page 183

[Overviews and how they work](#) on page 186

[Monitoring connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs](#) on page 193

[Getting started with the Logs view](#) on page 233

[Getting started with reports](#) on page 261

**Related tasks**[View Domain status](#) on page 396

## How component statuses are indicated

The status of NGFW components and monitored third-party components is indicated by colors in most views where the elements are displayed. The status of various system communications is indicated by colors in monitoring diagrams and in the Info pane.

In addition to element status colors, the following icons indicate status:

- Pending configuration or policy changes on an engine are indicated by a blue balloon showing the number of changes next to the engine in the **Status** tree.
- Hardware malfunctions are indicated with special icons in the **Status** tree. If any problems are indicated, always check the logs and alerts to find out what is causing the problems.



**Related reference**[Icons that indicate malfunctions](#) on page 183[Element status colors](#) on page 184[Node status colors](#) on page 184[NetLink status colors](#) on page 185[VPN status colors](#) on page 185[Connectivity status colors](#) on page 185

## Icons that indicate malfunctions

Engine hardware malfunction is indicated with an icon on top of the affected engine's icon in the Status tree and on all top-level branches of the tree.

For more information about the hardware malfunction, select the engine in the Status tree, then click the **Status** tab in the Info pane.

**Table 23: Hardware malfunction icons**

Icon	Hardware status	Description
	Warning	A predefined Warning level has been reached in hardware monitoring (for example, the remaining file system capacity is less than 15%). The system also generates a log entry.
	Alert	A predefined Alert level has been reached in hardware monitoring (for example, the remaining file system capacity is less than 5%). The system also generates an alert entry.

## Replication malfunction icon

In an environment with more than one Management Server, the configuration data is replicated to all Management Servers that are online. If the replication of configuration data among the Management Servers fails, an exclamation point on a yellow triangle is shown. You can see this icon on top of the Management Server's icon in the Status tree for each Management Server that is not synchronized with the other Management Servers.

## Element status colors

The element-level status gives an overview of the status of all engine nodes that are represented by the element (also shown for single-node components).

**Table 24: Element-level status**

Color	Element status	Description
Green	All OK	All nodes have a normal status (online or standby).
Yellow	Warning	Some nodes have an abnormal status or have been commanded offline, but are still sending status updates normally.
Red	Alert	All nodes have an abnormal status, there are one or more nodes that have not sent expected status updates, or all nodes have been commanded offline.
Gray	Unknown status	No policy has been installed on any of the nodes.
White	Not monitored	An administrator has disabled monitoring for all nodes.

## Node status colors

The node status gives more detailed information about individual engines.

**Table 25: Node-level status**

Color	Node status	Description
Green	Node or server online	The node or server is online.
Green (with slot)	Locked online	The node is locked online to prevent automatic status transitions. The node does not change state unless commanded by an administrator.
Cyan	Standby mode	Used with clustered engines when the cluster is in Standby mode. The node is in standby mode. One of the standby nodes goes online when the previous online node goes to a state in which it does not process traffic.
Purple	Node offline	The node is offline and does not process traffic.
Purple (with slot)	Locked offline	The node is locked offline to prevent automatic status transitions. The node does not change state unless commanded by an administrator.
Gray	Timeout or unknown status	The Management Server does not know the status of the node.
White	Not monitored	An administrator has disabled monitoring for the node.



Color	Node status	Description
Gray outline	Under work, no contact to SMC yet	The node is under work and has not contacted the SMC yet.
Green outline	Under work, no first policy upload yet	The node is under work, has contacted the SMC, but the first policy upload has not yet been made.

## NetLink status colors

NetLink status shows the status of the network links in a Multi-Link configuration.



**Note:** The NetLink elements are queried and the status is displayed only if Probing settings are configured in the NetLink elements and the Outbound Multi-Link element is included in the engine configuration. (To include the Outbound Multi-Link element in the engine configuration, you add an outbound balancing NAT rule to the policy.)

**Table 26: NetLink status icons**

Color	NetLink status	Description
Green	OK	The NetLink is up.
Gray	Unknown status	The Management Server does not know the status of the NetLink.
White	Not monitored	An administrator has disabled monitoring for the NetLink.

## VPN status colors

The VPN status shows the health of the VPN tunnels.

**Table 27: VPN status**

Color	Cluster status	Description
Green	Tunnels up	All tunnels have a normal status (online or standby) and there is traffic.
Yellow	Warning	An error was detected, at least for some traffic, but the tunnels are usable in principle, and some other traffic might be getting through.
Red	Error	Some or all tunnels are down.
Blue	Idle	The tunnels are valid, but there has not been recent traffic.
White	Not configured	The VPN has no valid tunnels, because the VPN configuration is not complete or does not allow any valid tunnels.

## Connectivity status colors

Element diagrams and the **Connectivity** tab in the **Info** pane show the status of the connectivity between elements.

See the tooltip for the status color for more details.

**Table 28: Connectivity status**

Color	Status	Explanation
Green	OK	The connection is active (there have been communications within the last 2 minutes) and no problems have been reported.
Red	Error	The Management Server received a report that connection attempts have failed.
Cyan	Idle	Connection between components is still open but there is a pause in communications.
Yellow	Warning	There are problems with heartbeat or state synchronization between nodes in a Firewall Cluster. Only one of the interfaces used for heartbeat or state synchronization functions properly. This warning does not affect how the cluster functions.
Blue	Closed	The connection was closed by one of the components.
Gray	Timeout, Unknown	The Management Server does not know the status of the connection. The connection might or might not be working.

**Related concepts**

[Getting started with monitoring the system](#) on page 169

## Overviews and how they work

Customizable Overviews contain information on the system's status, including shortcuts to frequently used views and statistical charts of the system's operation. An example of a frequently used view is a log filtered by criteria that you configured. Examples of statistical charts are engine load and traffic flow.

You can create new Overviews on an empty template or start your customization based on one of the default Overview templates.

**Related tasks**

[Create Overview elements](#) on page 187

[Add System Summary Sections to Overview elements](#) on page 188

[Add Statistics Sections to Overview elements](#) on page 189

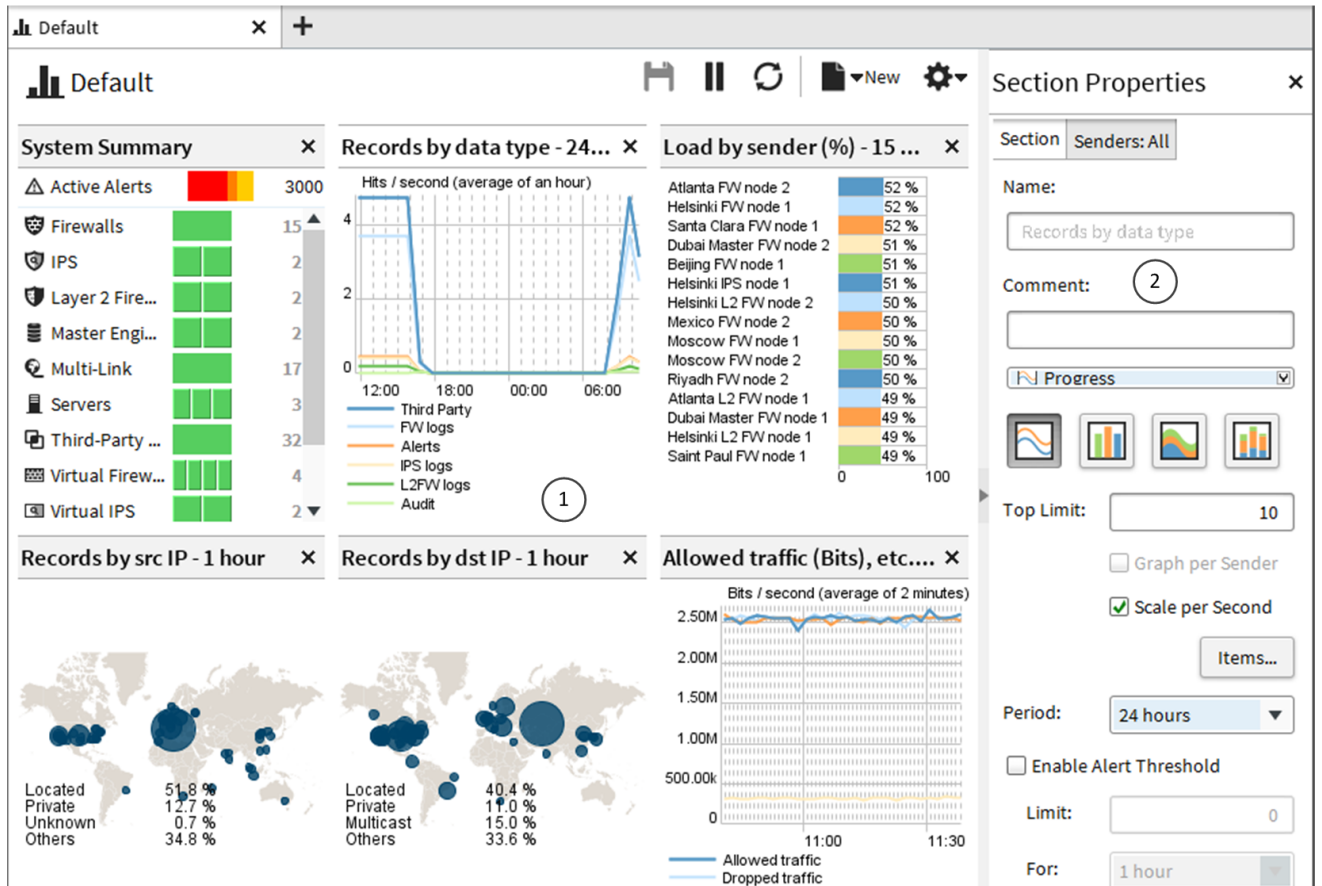
## What Overview elements show

Overviews contain high-level status and statistical information.

You can use overviews to view:

- The system status
- Bookmarks, such as logs filtered with specific criteria
- Statistical charts on system operation (such as engine load) and the traffic flow

Figure 55: Example overview



- 1 Information is displayed as resizable sections.
- 2 Use this pane to conveniently edit the content and appearance of the selected section.

You can create several different overviews for different purposes. Several default overviews are provided as templates.

In addition to status information, you can add various statistics related to the traffic and the operating state of components. You can display information in various ways, such as tables, maps, and different types of charts. Statistics can trigger an alert when the value of a monitored item reaches a limit you set.

## Create Overview elements

After you create an Overview element, you can add a summary of the system status or statistics.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Overviews > New Overview**.
- 2) Select the Overview template:
  - To add your own Overview sections to an empty grid, select **Empty Overview**, then click **OK**.

- To use one of the predefined Overview templates, select the template from the list, then click **OK**.

#### Related tasks

[Add System Summary Sections to Overview elements](#) on page 188

[Add Statistics Sections to Overview elements](#) on page 189

## Modify Overview elements





Add System Summary sections and Statistics sections to customize your Overview.

## Add System Summary Sections to Overview elements

The system summary is shown in the default start view, but you can also add it to your own Overviews.

It is possible to add more than one system summary to the same overview, but the information displayed is always the same.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Overviews** and an Overview.
- 2) Select  **New** > **System Summary Section**.
- 3) (Optional) Adjust the placement and size of the new section by dragging and dropping the section or its edges. Resizing is based on preset grid positions. For resizing to work, drag the edge until it snaps to the next position on the screen.
- 4) Click  **Save** or select  **Tools** > **Save As**.

#### Related concepts


[How the Home view is arranged](#) on page 171

#### Related tasks

[Add Statistics Sections to Overview elements](#) on page 189

# Add Statistics Sections to Overview elements

If you want to see statistical information in table or chart form, add a Statistics Section.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

1) Select  **Overviews** and an Overview.

2) Select  **New**, then select a section from the list.



**Tip:** If you cannot find an appropriate section in the list, select **Select**, then select a section in the **Select Section** dialog box.



**Tip:** If you want to add a section based on a statistical item, select **Create from Item**, then select an item from the **Select Item** dialog box.

3) Define the basic section properties in the Section Properties pane.

4) (Optional) Click the **Senders** tab, then select which elements are shown in the section.

5) (Optional) Adjust the placement and size of the new section by dragging and dropping the section or its edges.



**Note:** Resizing is based on preset grid positions. For resizing to work, drag the edge until it snaps to the next position on the screen.

6) Click  **Save** or select  **Tools** > **Save As**.

## Related concepts

[How Statistical Items help you visualize data](#) on page 190


## Related tasks

[Set thresholds for monitored items in Overview elements](#) on page 191

# Create Statistics Sections

You can save a section you have customized in one Overview as a Statistics Section. Saving allows you to create the same type of section with the same settings in other Overviews.

After you create a Statistics Section, you can add the new section to other Overviews.



**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

1) Select  **Overviews** and an Overview.

- 2) Right-click any section in the Overview, then select **Save As New Section**.
- 3) Define the basic section properties on the **General** tab of the **Section Properties** dialog box.
- 4) Select the diagram settings in the **Visualization** tab.
- 5) Select the diagram type.



**Note:** You can change this selection when you include the section in an Overview. The options available depend on the diagram settings you made in the previous step. If available, enter the number of items to be included in the **Top Limit** field. If you selected **Progress** as the diagram type, you can select **Graph per sender** or **Scale per Second**.

- 6) (Optional) Click the **Items** tab, then select or remove statistics items for the section.
- 7) (Optional) Click the **Senders** tab, then select which elements are shown in the section.
- 8) Click **OK**.
- 9) Click  **Save** or select  **Tools** > **Save As**.

#### Related concepts

[Creating and editing local filters](#) on page 287

#### Related tasks

[Add Statistics Sections to Overview elements](#) on page 189

[Add System Summary Sections to Overview elements](#) on page 188

## How Statistical Items help you visualize data

Statistics process and visualize data. They help you focus on the most relevant information in the system (for example, trends in network traffic) and find changes and anomalies in network traffic.

You can use statistics in Overviews and Reports, and when you browse Logs or Connections. Filters are available to help you find information.

Statistical items count log entries, summaries of log fields included in those entries (like traffic volumes in log data containing accounting information), or specified statistical data (counter items). The items are organized based on the component types, as the runtime data they produce is different.



**Note:** Log entries are referred to as records in the item names.

#### Related tasks

[Add Statistics Sections to Overview elements](#) on page 189

## Add Statistical Items to Overview elements

---

To see a representation of statistical data in an Overview, add a Statistical Item.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Overview** and an Overview.
- 2) In the **Section Properties** pane, click **Items**.
- 3) Click **Add**.
- 4) Select the items.
- 5) In the **Properties** dialog box, click **OK**.  
The items are added to the section and their data is displayed in the section.

## Remove Statistical Items from Overview elements

---

If you no longer find a Statistical Item useful or relevant, you can remove it.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the **Section Properties** pane, click **Items**.
- 2) From the section, select the item that you want to remove, then click **Remove**.
- 3) In the **Properties** dialog box, click **OK**.  
The item is removed from the section.


## Set thresholds for monitored items in Overview elements


---

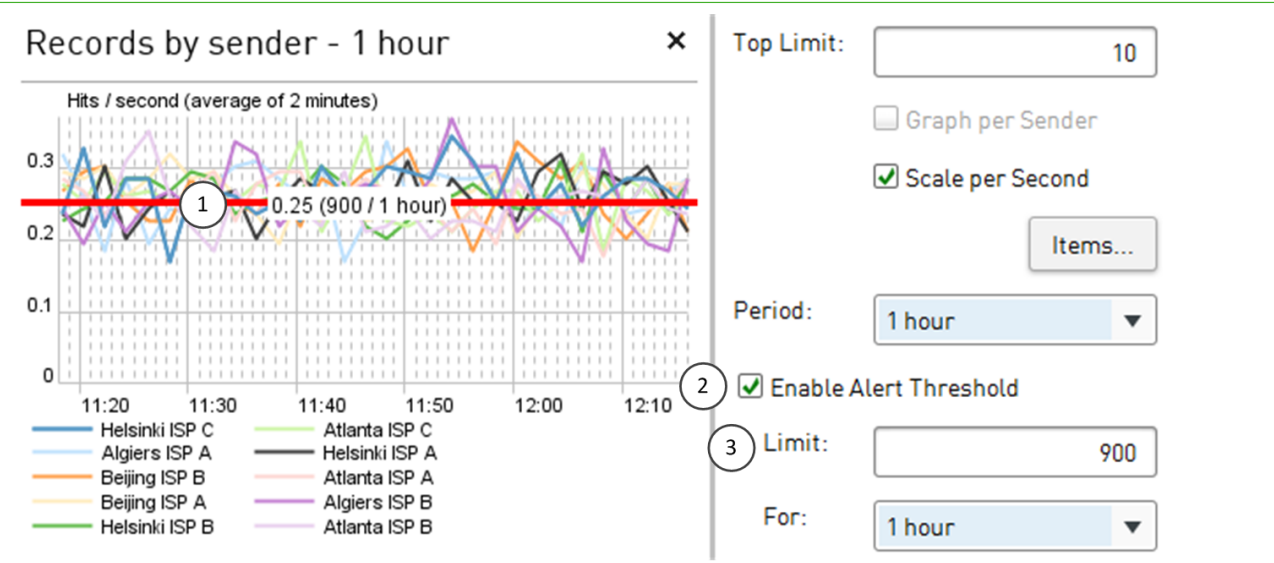
Thresholds activate automatic tracking of monitored items in Overviews. The values of the monitored items are checked once an hour.

For Progress items, the total of the values is compared to the threshold limit. The threshold is considered exceeded if the average level of the curve is above the threshold limit during the tracking period.

For Top Rate and Top Rate Curve items, the highest value is compared to the threshold limit. The threshold is considered exceeded if the highest value is above the threshold limit during the tracking period. If the threshold limit is exceeded, an alert is sent.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Overviews** and an Overview.
- 2) Select **Enable Alert Threshold**.



**Records by sender - 1 hour** ×

Hits / second (average of 2 minutes)

0.3  
0.2  
0.1  
0

11:20 11:30 11:40 11:50 12:00 12:10

Legend:

- Helsinki ISP C
- Algiers ISP A
- Beijing ISP B
- Beijing ISP A
- Helsinki ISP B
- Atlanta ISP C
- Helsinki ISP A
- Atlanta ISP A
- Algiers ISP B
- Atlanta ISP B

Top Limit:

Graph per Sender

Scale per Second



Period:  ▼

Enable Alert Threshold

3 Limit:

For:  ▼

- 1 Drag the threshold line to set the alert limit
- 2 Alert threshold option enabled
- 3 Enter the alert limit manually

- 3) Specify the threshold limit in one of the following ways:
  - Drag and drop the threshold line in the overview section.
  - Enter the **Limit** as a number in the **Section Properties** pane.
- 4) (Optional) Select the tracking period during which monitored items are compared to the threshold limit from the **For** drop-down list. By default, one hour is selected.
- 5) (Optional) Select the **Severity** of the alert that is sent when the threshold limit is exceeded. By default, **Low** is selected.
- 6) Click  **Save** or select  **Tools** > **Save As**.

#### Related tasks

[Create Overview elements](#) on page 187



# Monitoring connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs

Firewalls track allowed connections, active VPN SAs, active users, routing, and SSL VPN sessions. Firewall, Layer 2 Firewall, and IPS engines also track combinations of IP addresses, ports, and protocols that are blacklisted.



**Note:** To be able to monitor users by name, you must enable the logging of user information in the Firewall IPv4 and IPv6 Access rules.

You can monitor in the following ways:

- You can view currently open connections, enforced blacklist entries, active VPN SAs, active users, routing, and SSL VPNs.
- You can save, view and compare snapshots of currently open connections, enforced blacklist entries, active VPN SAs, active users, routing, and SSL VPN sessions.

## Related tasks

[View connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs](#) on page 193

[Save snapshots of connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs](#) on page 195

[Compare snapshots of connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs](#) on page 198


[Define logging options for Access rules](#) on page 873

## View connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs

There are several views in which you can monitor the status of the system.

The lists of connections, blacklisted entries, active VPN SAs, active users, routes, and SSL VPN sessions are automatically updated in the Current Events mode. The blacklist entries are added and removed according to their duration.

The Blacklist view does not show whether connections matching the entries are blocked by the Firewall, Layer 2 Firewall, or IPS engine. Nor does it show any history of entries that have already expired. Use the Logs view to see information about actual connections that are allowed and denied. Depending on the logging options selected in the policy, you can also use the Logs view to see past blacklist entry creation.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click an NGFW Engine, then select **Monitoring** > <view type>.



**Tip:** If the **Drill-downs** pane is open, you can also select **Monitoring** > <view type> from there.

- 2) To browse the data, select an option from the toolbar.  
You can adjust the view and the displayed data in a similar way as in the Logs view.

- 3) To filter data or open or compare snapshots, select the **Filter** tab or the **Snapshots** tab in the Query pane.
- 4) To combine entries having the same value for a given column type, right-click the heading of the corresponding column, then select **Aggregate by <column name>**.
- 5) Select one or more entries in the table, then right-click for a menu of actions you can take.
  - To view more information about related log events, select **Show Referenced Events**.
  - To blacklist connections manually, select **New Blacklist Entry** or **New Entry**.
  - To close a connection in the Connections view, select **Terminate**.
  - To remove a blacklist entry in the Blacklist view, select **Remove Entry**.
  - To force an SA to renegotiate in the VPN SAs view, select **Delete**.
  - To close the end user's session in the Users view, select **Delete**.

### Related concepts

[How Statistical Items help you visualize data](#) on page 190

[Monitoring connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs](#) on page 193

[Getting started with the Logs view](#) on page 233

[Browsing log data](#) on page 241

[Blacklisting traffic and how it works](#) on page 1069

### Related tasks

[Save snapshots of connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs](#) on page 195

[Compare snapshots of connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs](#) on page 198

[Blacklist traffic manually](#) on page 1075


## Terminate connections manually

On Firewalls and on Layer 2 Firewalls and IPS engines with Inline Interfaces, you can terminate any current connection.

For example, you can remove an inactive connection that has not been properly closed. Terminating an open connection alone does not prevent any new connection from opening again.



**Note:** This action is not available for IPS engines or Layer 2 Firewalls with Capture Interfaces.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click an NGFW Engine, then select **Monitoring > Connections**.



**Tip:** If the **Drill-downs** pane is open, you can also select **Monitoring > Connections** from there.

- 2) Select one or more connections in the table.

- 3) Right-click a selected row, then select **Terminate**.

## Save snapshots of connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs

You can save snapshots so you can later view and compare them, or restore earlier versions of elements.

The saved snapshots are stored in the following directories.

**Table 29: Snapshot storage directories**

Snapshot type	Server	Directory
Blacklist	Log Server	<installation directory>/data/storage/snapshots/blacklist/
Connection	Log Server Management Server	<installation directory>/data/storage/snapshots/connections/
VPN SA	Log Server	<installation directory>/data/storage/snapshots/VPN SAs/
User	Log Server	<installation directory>/data/storage/snapshots/users/
Routing	Log Server	<installation directory>/data/storage/snapshots/routing/
SSL VPN	Log Server	<installation directory>/data/storage/snapshots/SSL VPNs/



**Note:** If you installed the Management Server in the C:\Program Files\Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center directory in Windows, some program data might be stored in the C:\ProgramData\Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center\data directory.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click an NGFW Engine, then select **Monitoring** > <view type>.



**Tip:** If the **Drill-downs** pane is open, you can also select **Monitoring** > <view type> from there.

- 2) To select the entries for the snapshot, click **|| Pause**.  
The system automatically creates a temporary snapshot of the currently displayed entries. The name of the temporary snapshot is displayed on the **Snapshots** tab in the **Query** pane. The temporary snapshot is automatically deleted.
- 3) Click **Save**.
- 4) Enter a name for the snapshot, then click **OK**.  
The name of the snapshot is displayed on the **Snapshots** tab in the **Query** pane.

**Related tasks**


[Export snapshots of connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs on page 196](#)


[View snapshots of connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs on page 197](#)

[Compare snapshots of connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs on page 198](#)

## Export snapshots of connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs

You can export snapshots from the Monitoring view to save stored snapshots elsewhere (for example, on your local workstation).

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Monitoring Snapshots**, then browse to one of the following:
  - **Blacklist > Log Server**
  - **Connections > Log Server or Management Server**
  - **Logs > Management Server**
  - **Routing > Log Server**
  - **SSL VPNs > Log Server**
  - **Users > Log Server**
  - **VPN SAs > Log Server**
- 3) Right-click a snapshot, then select **Export**.
- 4) Select the location to save the snapshot to, then click **Select**.

**Related tasks**

[Save snapshots of connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs on page 195](#)

[View snapshots of connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs on page 197](#)

[Compare snapshots of connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs on page 198](#)

# View snapshots of connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs

The snapshots are listed in the Monitoring view. You can also open snapshots saved on your local workstation.

## Related concepts

[Monitoring connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs on page 193](#)


## Related tasks


[Save snapshots of connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs on page 195](#)

[Compare snapshots of connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs on page 198](#)

## View snapshots stored on SMC servers


You can view the snapshots you have saved.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Monitoring Snapshots**, then browse to one of the following:
  - **Blacklist > Log Server**
  - **Connections > Log Server or Management Server**
  - **Logs > Management Server**
  - **Routing > Log Server**
  - **SSL VPNs > Log Server**
  - **Users > Log Server**
  - **VPN SAs > Log Server**
- 3) Right-click a snapshot, then select **Open**.

## View snapshots stored on local workstations

If you have exported a snapshot to your local workstation, you can later view the snapshot.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Monitoring Snapshots**, right-click one of the items in the tree, then select **Open Local Snapshot**.

- 3) Select the snapshot, then click **Open**.

## Compare snapshots of connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs

You can compare snapshots of connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs with another snapshot of the same type. You can also compare a snapshot with the current blacklist, connections, VPN SAs, users, or routing entries.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Monitoring Snapshots**, then browse to one of the following:
  - **Blacklist > Log Server**
  - **Connections > Log Server or Management Server**
  - **Logs > Management Server**
  - **Routing > Log Server**
  - **SSL VPNs > Log Server**
  - **Users > Log Server**
  - **VPN SAs > Log Server**
- 3) Right-click the snapshot, then select **Open**.
- 4) In the **Query** pane, click the **Snapshots** tab.
- 5) Using one of the following methods, select the first snapshot for comparison:
  - To compare a temporary snapshot of the current entries with a saved snapshot, click **Pause** to create the temporary snapshot. The name of the temporary snapshot is displayed in the first snapshot selection field.
  - Otherwise, click **Select** next to the first snapshot selection field, then select a snapshot.
- 6) Select the **Compare with** checkbox.
- 7) Click **Select** next to the second snapshot selection field, then select a second snapshot.
- 8) Click **Apply**.  
The results of the comparison are highlighted.

**Figure 56: Snapshot comparison results**

Creation Time	Sender	Src Addr	Dst Addr	Service	IP Prot...	Src
2016-09-21 12:15:10	Atlanta FW node 2	106.22.236...	15.62.64.191	HTTP	TCP	6044
2016-09-21 12:15:11	Atlanta FW node 1	162.32.245.2	54.201.197...	IMAP	TCP	2704
2016-09-21 12:15:50	Santa Clara FW no...	3.21.190.105	123.65.58.58	SSH	TCP	1640
2016-09-21 12:15:50	Santa Clara FW no...	7.92.131.99	123.65.58.58	SSH	TCP	2282
2016-09-21 12:15:50	Santa Clara FW no...	9.109.47.159	123.65.58.58	SSH	TCP	1955

The icons in the first column signify whether the entry has changed.

Icon	Description
	Entry only exists in snapshot 1
	Entry is included in both snapshots
	Entry only exists in snapshot 2
	Aggregated entries
No icon	There are more than 100 entries that match the <b>Aggregate by &lt;column name&gt;</b> selection. No further comparison can be done.

**Figure 57: Example of snapshot comparison with entries aggregated by service**

Creation Time	Sender	Src Addr	Dst Addr	Service	IP Protocol
41 values	2 values	89 values	2 values	SMTP	TCP
37 values	2 values	84 values	2 values	HTTP	TCP
50 values	2 values	80 values	2 values	IMAP	TCP
48 values	2 values	75 values	2 values	HTTPS	TCP
43 values	2 values	72 values	2 values	SSH	TCP



**Tip:** To open a snapshot for comparison directly in the Monitoring view, right-click the snapshot, then select **Compare to Current**.

### Related concepts

[Monitoring connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs](#) on page 193

[Browsing log data](#) on page 241

### Related tasks

[Save snapshots of connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs](#) on page 195

[Export snapshots of connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs](#) on page 196

[View snapshots of connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs](#) on page 197

## View and compare Element Snapshot elements

You can view earlier configurations of an element and compare them to the current configuration with Element Snapshots. You can also restore earlier configurations of an element.

Element Snapshots are automatically generated and saved in Audit logs each time element properties are saved. An Element Snapshot contains all properties of an element saved in the **Properties** dialog box.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

1) Select **Logs**.

2) Select **Audit** from the drop-down list in the Query pane, then click **Apply**.

All Element Snapshots generated during the defined time range are displayed in the Snapshot column of the log entry table.



**Tip:** If the column is not displayed, to add it, select **Tools** > **Columns** > **Column Selection**.



Creation Time	Sender	Snapshot	Adminis...	Client IP Address	Operation Type
2016-09-19 11:47:49	Management Server		demo	127.0.0.1	stonegate.log.bro
2016-09-19 11:47:49	Management Server		demo	127.0.0.1	stonegate.log.bro
2016-09-19 12:00:26	Management Server		System	127.0.0.1	stonegate.object.i
2016-09-19 12:00:26	Management Server		System	127.0.0.1	stonegate.object.i
2016-09-19 13:07:41	Management Server	LP	demo	127.0.0.1	stonegate.object.i
2016-09-19 13:18:56	Management Server		demo	127.0.0.1	stonegate.log.bro

1 Element snapshot  
2 Snapshot column  
3 Audit selected

- To view an Element Snapshot in more detail, right-click the Audit entry, then select **View Element Snapshot**.
- To compare an Element Snapshot to the current configuration of the same element, right-click an Audit entry, then select **Compare to Current Element**.



**Note:** If the Element Snapshot properties differ from the current element properties, a red border is displayed around the Audit Log Version (snapshot) and Current Version of the element.



**Tip:** To display all values of the snapshot and the current element in XML format with differences indicated in red, select **Show: XML**.

- To close the **Compare Elements** dialog box, click **OK**.

### Related concepts

[Benefits of exporting or importing elements](#) on page 148

### Related tasks

[Restore elements from Element Snapshots](#) on page 154

[Save snapshots of connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs](#) on page 195

[Export snapshots of connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs](#) on page 196

[View snapshots of connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs](#) on page 197

[Select columns in the log entry table](#) on page 252

# Monitoring connections using Geolocation elements

Using Geolocation elements, you can define the physical locations of network elements, such as Hosts.

You can also see, for example, how much traffic the elements create.

This product includes GeoLite data created by MaxMind, available from <http://www.maxmind.com>. The location information for public IP addresses is based on the GeoLite data created by MaxMind. The IP addresses in the Geolocation database are updated when the Management Server is upgraded.

You can also create Geolocations manually in the SMC. Geolocations based on internal IP addresses must be configured manually, as these addresses cannot be found in the Geolocation database based on public IP addresses. Creating a Geolocation manually for a public IP address overrides location data found for the address in the Geolocation database.

Geolocation maps are available in Reports, Statistics, and Overviews.



**Note:** You cannot use Geolocation elements to filter network traffic. Use Country elements for that purpose.

## Related concepts

[Geolocations and IP addresses in Google Maps](#) on page 203


## Related tasks

[Create Geolocation elements](#) on page 202

[Set a Geolocation for an element](#) on page 203

## Create Geolocation elements

A Geolocation represents the physical location of a network element. When you create a Geolocation, select the elements that belong to it.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Expand **Other Elements**.
- 3) Right-click **Geolocations**, then select **New Geolocation**.
- 4) Enter the **Name** and **Address**.
- 5) To define the Coordinates, select an option:
  - To automatically resolve the Geolocation coordinates, click **Resolve from Address**.

- Enter the **Latitude** and **Longitude** in Decimal Degrees format (for example, latitude 49.5000° and longitude -123.5000°).
- 6) Click the **Content** tab, then select the elements that belong to the Geolocation.
  - 7) Click **OK**.

**Related concepts**

[Geolocations and IP addresses in Google Maps](#) on page 203

**Related tasks**

[Set a Geolocation for an element](#) on page 203

## Set a Geolocation for an element

---

You can set many elements to use the same Geolocation.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click an element, then select **Tools > Set Geolocation**.
- 2) Select a Geolocation for the element, then click **Select**.

**Related concepts**

[Geolocations and IP addresses in Google Maps](#) on page 203

**Related tasks**

[Create Geolocation elements](#) on page 202

## Geolocations and IP addresses in Google Maps

---

You can view the actual location of a Geolocation element or an IP address in more detail in Google Maps.

You can use the Show in Google Maps option in:

- Geolocation maps included in Overviews and Reports
- The Logs view
- The **Whois Information** dialog box

**Related tasks**

[Create Geolocation elements](#) on page 202

[Set a Geolocation for an element](#) on page 203


[View Geolocation element locations in Overviews and Reports](#) on page 204

[View IP address locations in the Logs view](#) on page 204

[View IP address locations from the Whois Information dialog box](#) on page 205

## View Geolocation element locations in Overviews and Reports

Geolocation elements are displayed in Google Maps based on the location data that was entered for them.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) On a Geolocation map in an Overview or Report section, right-click a location, then select **Show in Google Maps**.

The location is opened in Google Maps in your default web browser.

**Related concepts**

[Overviews and how they work](#) on page 186

[Designing reports](#) on page 264

**Related tasks**

[Create Geolocation elements](#) on page 202


[View IP address locations in the Logs view](#) on page 204


[View IP address locations from the Whois Information dialog box](#) on page 205

## View IP address locations in the Logs view

In the **Logs** view, you can see a location (for example, a city or street address) for an IP address in Google Maps.

Only IP addresses associated with a location can be displayed in Google Maps. In the **Logs** view, these IP addresses are indicated with a country flag icon next to the IP address.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Logs**.
- 2) Select a log entry with an IP address that has a flag icon associated with it.

- 3) Right-click the IP address in the **Fields** pane, then select **Show in Google Maps**.  
The location is opened in Google Maps in your default web browser.

#### Related tasks

[Create Geolocation elements](#) on page 202


[View Geolocation element locations in Overviews and Reports](#) on page 204


[View IP address locations from the Whois Information dialog box](#) on page 205

## View IP address locations from the Whois Information dialog box

When checking the Whois information for an IP address, you can see the location (for example, a city or street address) in Google Maps.

Only IP addresses associated with a location (for example, a city or street address) can be displayed in Google Maps.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Logs**.
- 2) Right-click the IP address of a log entry that has a flag icon associated with it, then select **Whois <IP address>**.
- 3) Right-click the **Whois Information** dialog box, then select **Show in Google Maps**.  
The location is opened in Google Maps in your default web browser.

#### Related tasks

[View Geolocation element locations in Overviews and Reports](#) on page 204

[View IP address locations in the Logs view](#) on page 204

## Monitoring configurations and policies

The engines receive their configuration when a policy is installed.

You can monitor the policies and configurations installed on the engines in the following ways:

- You can check which policy is being enforced and when it was last installed.
- You can quickly view the most recent version of the installed policy.
- You can view the configurations that were transferred in each past policy installation and compare them to each other or the current policy stored on the Management Server.
- You can view, approve and commit the changes to the configuration and policies of engines that have not been transferred yet.

**Related concepts**

[Getting started with policies](#) on page 779

**Related tasks**

[Check the currently installed policy](#) on page 795


[Preview the currently installed policy](#) on page 795

[View, approve, and commit pending changes](#) on page 113

## Monitor administrator actions

A record of administrator actions is maintained in the SMC.

The records can only be viewed by administrators who are allowed to view Audit logs. They can be browsed like any other logs in the **Logs** view.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Menu > System Tools > Audit**.  
The **Logs** view opens with the Audit logs selected for viewing.
- 2) Browse and filter the logs.

**Related concepts**


[Getting started with the Logs view](#) on page 233

## Monitor tasks

You can check the status of running tasks and executed tasks (for example, upgrade tasks and system tasks).



**Note:** System tasks that run automatically are not visible in the **History** branch.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Expand the **Tasks** branch.

- 3) To show Tasks that are running, select the **History** branch.  
You can see the following columns:
  - **Progress** — Shows the progress of a running Task.
  - **Info** — Shows additional details about the execution of a Task.
  - **State** — Shows the status of the Task.
- 4) To show tasks that have previously been run, right-click the **History** branch, then select **Show Executed Tasks**.

#### Related concepts

[Creating Task Definitions](#) on page 1300

#### Related tasks

[Schedule Tasks](#) on page 1305

[Start Tasks manually](#) on page 1306

[Stop running Tasks](#) on page 1308

## Traffic captures and how they work

You can capture network traffic data for network troubleshooting purposes. This data helps you to analyze network traffic to and from the engines.

It is also often useful to have this data available when contacting [Forcepoint support](#).

Traffic capture creates a .zip file that contains a tcpdump CAP file, which is compatible with standard “sniffer” tools such as tcpdump, WinDump, or Wireshark. You can select whether to include full packet information or only IP address headers in the tcpdump. You can also include a free-form description and information about your configuration and trace files in the traffic capture .zip file.

The data can be archived and analyzed later, as the traffic capture .zip file is saved on the Management Server or in a directory on your local workstation.

Traffic captures can only be taken on nodes that are online and have a policy uploaded.



**Note:** You must have permissions to send Advanced Commands to be able to take traffic captures.

You can stop or cancel a traffic capture at any point once it has been started.


- If you stop a traffic capture, all captured tcpdump data is compressed and sent to the Management Server or to your local workstation.
- If you cancel a traffic capture, all captured tcpdump data is deleted.


#### Related tasks

[Create Administrator Role elements](#) on page 350

# Take traffic captures

If you want to analyze network traffic, capture the network traffic data.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click an NGFW Engine, then select **Tools > Capture Traffic**.
- 3) Select one or more interfaces whose traffic you want to capture, then click **Select**.
- 4) (Optional) Click **Add** to add more interfaces to the traffic capture.  
You can also add interfaces from other types of engines.



**Tip:** You can create tcpdump files for several different interfaces in the same Traffic Capture task. The Traffic Capture .zip file contains a separate CAP file for each interface included in the capture.

- 5) (Optional) To limit the scope of the traffic capture, click the **Limit by** field, then enter an IPv4 or IPv6 address.  
The IP address must match either the source or destination of the packets included in the capture.
- 6) Define the other traffic capture options.
- 7) Click **Start Capture**.

## Related concepts

[Alert log messages for troubleshooting](#) on page 1347

[Log messages for troubleshooting](#) on page 1349

[Error messages for troubleshooting](#) on page 1355

## Related tasks

[Troubleshoot engines that do not go or stay online](#) on page 1365

[Troubleshoot errors when commanding engines](#) on page 1366

[Troubleshoot heartbeat and synchronization errors](#) on page 1367

[Troubleshoot contact between engines and the Management Server](#) on page 1367



# Checking maintenance contract information

You can view maintenance contract and support level information for your licenses in the Management Client by allowing your Management Server to contact Forcepoint servers.

This information is available for each license in the **Licenses > All Licenses** branch of the **Administration Configuration** view, if the Management Server can contact the servers.

To enable viewing maintenance contract and support level information permanently for your licenses, you must allow the Management Server to connect to the servers.

## Related concepts

[Getting started with automatic updates and upgrades](#) on page 1269


## Related tasks

[View current maintenance contract information](#) on page 209

[Manually fetch latest maintenance contract information](#) on page 210

## Enable or disable automatic checking of maintenance contract information


You need to allow the Management Server to connect to Forcepoint servers.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Menu > System Tools > Global System Properties**.
- 2) On the **Updates** tab, select **Enable Sending Proof-of-License Codes to FORCEPOINT Servers**.
- 3) Click **OK**.

## View current maintenance contract information

When contract checking is enabled, you can view information on your support contract.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.

- 2) Browse to **Licenses**, then browse to **All Licenses** or a component-specific branch. The licenses are shown in the table in the right pane.
- 3) Select the license that you want to view.



**Note:** If information is not available, make sure that you have enabled the automatic checking of maintenance contract information or manually fetch the latest information.

#### Related concepts


[Getting started with automatic updates and upgrades](#) on page 1269


#### Related tasks

[Manually fetch latest maintenance contract information](#) on page 210

## Manually fetch latest maintenance contract information

If you do not allow contacting Forcepoint servers automatically, you can fetch the information manually.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Browse to **Licenses**, then browse to **All Licenses** or a component-specific branch.
- 3) Right-click the selected branch, then select **Check Maintenance Contract** or **Tools > Check Maintenance Contract**.  
You are prompted to confirm that you want to send proof of license codes to Forcepoint.
- 4) Click **Yes**.  
If the Management Server can connect to Forcepoint servers, the Management Client displays the maintenance contract and support level information for the licenses. The information is available in the Management Client until the Management Server is restarted.

#### Related concepts

[Getting started with automatic updates and upgrades](#) on page 1269


#### Related tasks


[View current maintenance contract information](#) on page 209

# Check when internal certificates or CAs expire

You can check the status of internal certificates used in system communications and the status of the Internal Certificate Authority that automatically signs the internal certificates.

The Internal Certificate Authority is valid for 10 years. It is renewed automatically. The SMC does not accept certificates signed by an expired Internal Certificate Authority. All components must receive new certificates signed by the new Internal Certificate Authority before the old Internal Certificate Authority expires. By default, internal certificates are renewed automatically for engines and VPN gateways. For all other components, you must generate the certificates manually.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Internal Certificates or Other Elements > Internal Certificate Authorities**. The existing internal certificates or Internal Certificate Authorities are displayed in the right pane.



**Note:** For information about the expiration of the certificate or the Internal Certificate Authority, see the **Expiration Date** column.

- 3) To view detailed information, right-click a certificate or Internal Certificate Authority, then select **Properties**.

## Related concepts

[Problems with certificates](#) on page 1357

## Related tasks

[Check when VPN gateway certificates expire](#) on page 1244

[Check when VPN certificate authorities expire](#) on page 1245



# Monitoring third-party devices

### Contents

- [Getting started with monitoring third-party devices](#) on page 213
- [Converting logs from third-party devices](#) on page 214
- [Methods for monitoring third-party device status](#) on page 224
- [Configuring Log Servers to monitor third-party devices](#) on page 227
- [Activate monitoring of third-party devices](#) on page 228
- [Configuring third-party devices for monitoring](#) on page 229
- [Changing the ports for third-party device monitoring](#) on page 230
- [Activate or deactivate third-party device monitoring alerts](#) on page 231

The SMC can be configured to log and monitor other manufacturers' devices in much the same way as SMC components are monitored.

## Getting started with monitoring third-party devices

---

As well as SMC components, you can monitor third-party devices, with some limitations.

### What the third-party device monitoring feature does

---

You can configure Log Servers for a full range of monitoring features for third-party devices:

- Log Servers can receive a syslog stream and store the information in SMC log format. The stored logs can then be processed just like logs generated by SMC components. For example, the data can be included in reports you generate.
- Log Servers can receive SNMP statistics information and NetFlow (v5 and v9) and IPFIX data from third-party devices. You can view this information as part of your Overviews or create reports based on the received data.
- Log Servers can probe devices through several alternative methods. You can monitor the device status in the Management Client in the same way as for the SMC components.

### Limitations

---

Each Log Server can monitor a maximum of 200 third-party devices. This limit is enforced automatically.

SNMP statistics for third-party devices are limited to the amount of free and used memory, CPU load, and interface statistics.

Your Management Server license might limit the number of managed components. Each monitored third-party device is counted as a fifth of a managed unit.

# Third-party device monitoring configuration overview

The steps you follow depend on the types of third-party devices you want to monitor.

Follow these general steps to configure the monitoring of third-party devices:

- 1) (Optional, for syslog data only) If you want to receive syslog data, define the syslog reception settings for each type of third-party device.
- 2) (Optional) If you want to monitor the status of third-party devices and receive statistics from them, define the status and statistics monitoring settings for each type of device.
- 3) Activate monitoring for the third-party device by adding monitoring settings in the properties of each element that represents a third-party device. (Third-party devices are: Router, Host, Active Directory Server, LDAP Server, RADIUS Authentication Server, and TACACS+ Authentication Server.)
- 4) Depending on features used, configure the third-party device for monitoring.

## Related concepts

[Converting logs from third-party devices](#) on page 214

[Methods for monitoring third-party device status](#) on page 224

[Configuring third-party devices for monitoring](#) on page 229

[Changing the ports for third-party device monitoring](#) on page 230

[Configuring Log Servers to monitor third-party devices](#) on page 227

## Related tasks

[Activate monitoring of third-party devices](#) on page 228

[Activate or deactivate third-party device monitoring alerts](#) on page 231

# Converting logs from third-party devices

You can set up most external devices to send logs to the Log Server in syslog format.

The Log Server can convert incoming syslog entries to SMC log entries. You can use predefined Logging Profile elements or create new elements to determine how the field values are selected from a syslog entry and inserted into an SMC log entry. A Logging Profile must have at least one *logging pattern*. Logging patterns determine how the fields from syslog entry are parsed to the appropriate log fields in an SMC log entry.

You can create logging patterns in the following ways:

- **Ordered Fields** — Use when the fields in the syslog message are not separated by keywords and the type of field can only be deduced from its position. The received syslog entries are parsed in a sequence that you define in the Logging Profile. If the incoming logs vary in structure, you must define a different sequence for each type of structure. You can define several patterns in one Logging Profile.
- **Key-Value Pairs** — Use when the syslog message contains keywords that describe the type of field. The received syslog entries are parsed based on key values that you define in the Logging Profile. You can define the key values in any order. A single definition can be used even if logs vary in structure.

It is easier to configure a pattern using key-value pairs. We recommend that you use key-value pairs if a third-party device formats the relevant parts of the syslog packet as key-value pairs. Ordered fields can be used to process all syslog data regardless of its format, but it is more difficult to configure a pattern as ordered fields.

If a match is found, the system simply converts the matching syslog entry to an SMC log field. You can define Field Resolvers for more complex operations.

You can categorize incoming logs from third-party devices by selecting specific Log Data Tags for them. You can categorize logs based on the log type, or the feature or product that generates the logs. For example, you can associate the “Firewall” Log Data Tag with third-party firewall logs.

You can create categories by dividing the logging patterns in a Logging Profile in sections. Both ordered fields and key-value pairs can be divided into sections. You can select one or several Log Data Tags for each section. The selected Log Data Tags are shown for the matching log entries in the Fields pane of the Logs view if the Log Data Tags column is enabled. In addition to the Log Data Tags you define in the Logging Profile, the default “Third Party” and “Log Data” Log Data Tags are associated with all logs from third-party devices.

You can also use Log Data Tags as filtering criteria in the Logs view, in Reports, and in Local Filters for various elements. (Elements include: Administrator, Log Server, and Management Server elements and Correlation Situations).

### Related concepts

[Changing the ports for third-party device monitoring](#) on page 230

[Getting started with the Logs view](#) on page 233

[Getting started with filtering data](#) on page 283

### Related tasks

[Create Logging Profile elements](#) on page 215

[Add Field Resolvers in Logging Profile elements](#) on page 222

## Create Logging Profile elements

A syslog packet consists of three parts: <PRI>, HEADER, and MSG. In a Logging Profile element, you define patterns for converting the MSG part of the syslog packet to a SMC log entry.

A Logging Profile parses the data in a syslog message to the corresponding SMC log fields when the syslog entry is converted to an SMC log entry. The parts of the syslog packet are explained in more detail in the following table.

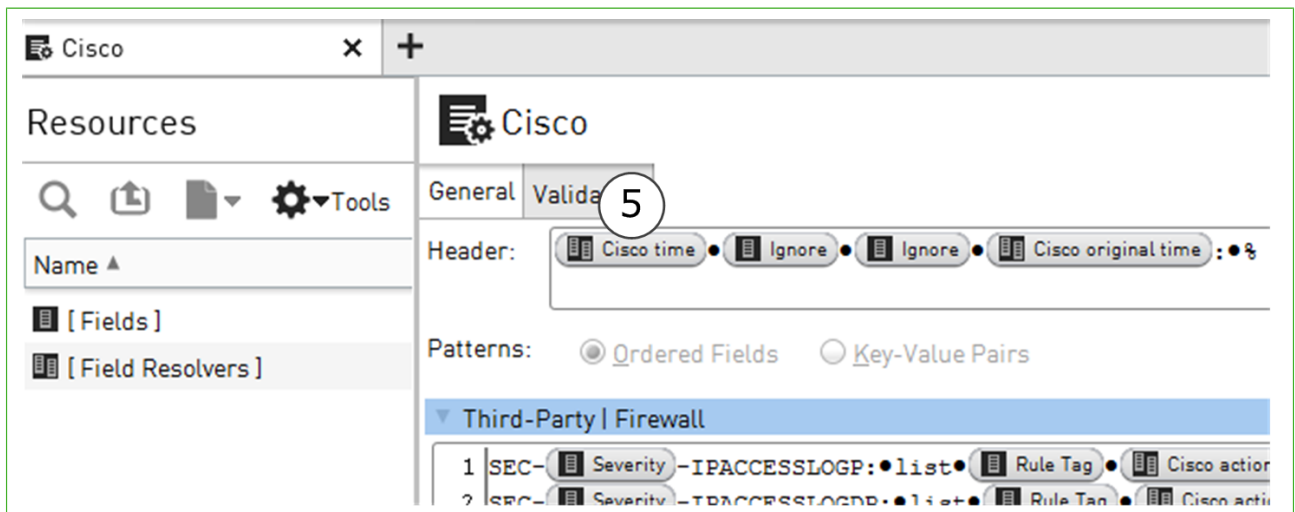
**Table 30: Parts of the syslog packet**

Section	Description
<PRI>	<p>Contains facility and priority information.</p> <p>The Log Server automatically extracts the Facility value from the &lt;PRI&gt; part and converts it to the Syslog Facility field in SMC logs. You do not define patterns for mapping this section in the Logging Profile.</p>
HEADER	<p>Contains a time stamp and the host name or IP address of a device.</p> <p>The Log Server automatically extracts the data in the HEADER part.</p> <p>This section is optional in syslog packets, so not all devices send this data.</p>

Section	Description
MSG	Contains the text of the syslog message. In the Logging Profile, you define the mapping for parsing this part of the syslog packet.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Third-Party Devices > Logging Profiles**.
- 3) Right-click **Logging Profiles**, then select **New > Logging Profile**.
- 4) Enter a name for the Logging Profile, then click **OK**.
- 5) (Optional) To insert fields, drag and drop items to the **Header** field from the **Fields** branch in the Resource pane, or use type-ahead search.



**Note:** You can add fields that are the same for all logging patterns that you define in the **Patterns** pane. To omit a portion of data, add an **Ignore** field.



**Important:** Type or copy and paste from the syslog message any tokens that appear before and after the field values. If you do not insert the appropriate tokens, the data cannot be parsed.

In the illustration, the header of the syslog entry contains the following data common for all patterns:

```
<Cisco time><space><Ignore><space><Ignore><space><Cisco original time>
```

As a result, the header contains the following data:

```
<Sep 21 04:04:56> <cisco-example.stonesoft.com> <1815452:> <Sep 21 04:04:55> %
```

Because the **Ignore** field is used for `<cisco-example.stonesoft.com>` and `<1815452:>`, the values are not converted to SMC log entry format.

- 6) Select how **Patterns** are parsed:



- **Ordered Fields** — The syslog entries are parsed in the specified order. If the incoming logs vary in structure, you must define several patterns.
- **Key-Value Pairs** — The syslog entries are parsed based on key-value pairs that you define. You can add key-value pairs in any order. You can use one pattern for all logs even if the logs vary in structure.

7) Click  Save.

#### Related concepts

[Converting logs from third-party devices](#) on page 214

#### Related tasks

[Define logging patterns as ordered fields in Logging Profile elements](#) on page 217

[Define logging patterns as key-value pairs in Logging Profile elements](#) on page 219

## Define logging patterns in Logging Profile elements

You can define logging patterns in the Logging Profile using ordered fields or key-value pairs.

### Define logging patterns as ordered fields in Logging Profile elements

The pattern that you define in a Logging Profile must be an exact match for the incoming syslog entry. If incoming logs vary in structure, you must define a different pattern for each type of entry.

If several patterns match, the system uses the pattern with the most matching entries.

Each received syslog entry is converted to an SMC log entry. The field values that match a specified pattern are copied without further processing to an SMC log field. Also, you can create Field Resolvers to convert specific values in the syslog data to specific values in SMC logs.

You can use sections in the Logging Profile to organize the logging patterns. To create categories, you can associate one or several Log Data Tags with each section. The Log Data Tags improve the way log entries can be viewed and stored. However, they do not affect the way third-party log entries are converted into SMC log entries. If you do not select specific Log Data Tags for a section, only the default “Third Party” and “Log Data” Log Data Tags are shown for the matching log entries.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the Logging Profile, select **Ordered Fields** as the **Pattern**.

- 2) (Optional) In the header row of the Patterns section, click the **Select Log Data Tags** link. Select the Log Data Tags according to the type of traffic that matches the ordered fields in the section, then click **Add**. The selected Log Data Tags are added to the Content list.



**Note:** Log Data Tags make the converted third-party log data records visible in the appropriate log data contexts. They also generate log data storage indexes, which speed up the filtering by data tags.

- 3) To insert the field values, drag and drop items from the **Fields** branch in the left pane to the empty space in the **Patterns** section. Or use type-ahead search. Alternatively, you can define a Field Resolver, then add it to the pattern instead of a log field. To omit a portion of data, add an **Ignore** field.



**Important:** Type or copy and paste from the syslog message any tokens that appear before and after the field values. If you do not insert the appropriate tokens, the data is not parsed.

- 4) (Optional) If some incoming log entries have a different structure, press **Enter** to add more rows to the Patterns section.
- 5) (Optional) To create another section in the same Logging Profile, click **Add Section**, then configure the new section.
- 6) In the **Unmatched Log Event** section, select the action for handling syslog data that does not match any defined logging patterns:
  - **Store in 'Syslog message' field** — A log entry is created and all data is inserted into the Syslog Message log field. The log entry is stored on the Log Server.
  - **Display in 'Syslog message' field (Current mode only)** — A log entry is created and all data is inserted into the Syslog Message log field. The log entry is displayed in the Current Events mode in the Logs view, but it is not stored.
  - **Ignore** — The data is discarded.

#### Related tasks

[Add Field Resolvers in Logging Profile elements](#) on page 222

[Validate Logging Profile elements](#) on page 223

[Activate monitoring of third-party devices](#) on page 228

## Define logging patterns as key-value pairs in Logging Profile elements

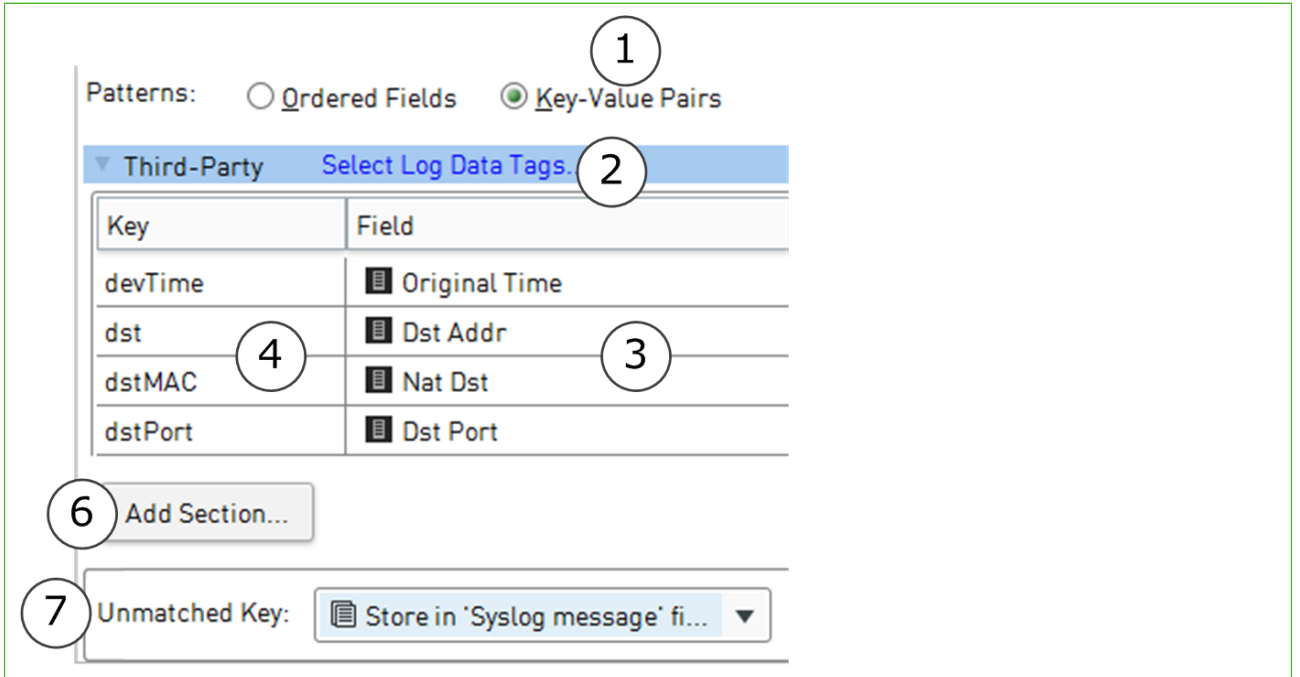
When you define key-value pairs for converting syslog data, the Log Server parses each received syslog entry data based on the defined key-value pairs.

The data in the incoming syslog message must be formatted as key-value pairs.

You can use sections in the Logging Profile to organize the logging patterns. To create categories, you can associate one or several Log Data Tags with each section. The Log Data Tags improve the way log entries can be viewed and stored. However, they do not affect the way third-party log entries are converted into SMC log entries. If you do not select specific Log Data Tags for a section, only default “Third Party” and “Log Data” Log Data Tags are shown for matching log entries.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the Logging Profile, select **Key-Value Pairs** as the **Pattern**.



- 2) (Optional) Click the **Select Log Data Tags** link in the header row of the Patterns section. Select the Log Data Tags according to the type of traffic that matches the key-value pairs in the section, then click **Add**. The selected Log Data Tags are added to the Content list.



**Note:** Log Data Tags make the converted third-party log data records visible in the appropriate log data contexts. They also generate log data storage indexes, which speed up the filtering by data tags.

- 3) Drag and drop SMC log fields from the **Fields** branch in the left pane to the **Field** column. Alternatively, you can define a Field Resolver and add it to the pattern instead of a log field. To omit a portion of data, add an **Ignore** field. By default, the **Ignore** field is added to the **Field** column in the new section.
- 4) Double-click the **Key** column for the log field that you added, then type the corresponding key value as it appears in the syslog message (for example, `devTime`).
- 5) (Optional) To add more key-value pairs to a section, right-click a row, then select **Add Row**. The key values can be added in any order. The key values are converted to SMC log entries based on the key values alone.
- 6) (Optional) To create another section in the same Logging Profile, click **Add Section**, then configure the new section.
- 7) In the **Unmatched Key** section, select the action for handling syslog data that does not match any defined logging patterns:
  - **Store in 'Syslog message' field** — A log entry is created and all data is inserted into the Syslog Message log field. The created log entry is stored on the Log Server.

- **Ignore** — The data is discarded.

#### Related concepts

[Converting logs from third-party devices](#) on page 214

#### Related tasks

[Define logging patterns as ordered fields in Logging Profile elements](#) on page 217

[Add Field Resolvers in Logging Profile elements](#) on page 222

[Validate Logging Profile elements](#) on page 223

[Activate monitoring of third-party devices](#) on page 228

## Benefits of adding Field Resolvers in Logging Profile elements

Field Resolvers convert values in incoming syslog fields to different values in SMC logs.

There are two types of Fields Resolvers: multi-value field resolvers and date field resolvers.

### Multi-valued field resolvers

You can use multi-valued field resolvers in the following case:

To convert one value to several log fields — In some cases, a single value can have several corresponding log fields in SMC logs. A Field Resolver can parse a single value into multiple SMC log fields. For example, SMC components set an Action, a Situation, and an Event for traffic filtering decisions. If the external component notifies a “permitted” action, the Field Resolver can set the corresponding SMC log values for all 3 log fields.



**Note:** You can also use multi-value field resolvers if the log data has a pre-set range of values on the external devices and in the SMC. However, the possible values are different. For example, you can map a range of alert severities in the original data to similar alert severities in SMC logs (Info/Low/High/Critical).

### Date field resolvers

You can use date field resolvers in the following case:

Converting time stamps — Different external devices use different date and time formats. A Field Resolver for each different incoming format maps the times and dates correctly to the SMC log format. The date and time syntax in Field Resolvers follows the Java standard.

# Add Field Resolvers in Logging Profile elements

For converting syslog values, add a field resolver for either multiple values or for date and time.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the Logging Profile, click the **Field Resolvers** branch in the left pane.
- 2) Drag and drop a Field Resolver to the **Header** field or to the **Patterns** pane.
- 3) If the Field Resolver you want is not listed, right-click a Field Resolver, then select **New > Field Resolver**. Define the Field Resolver for either multiple values or for date and time.

## Related tasks

[Define Field Resolvers for multiple values in Logging Profile elements](#) on page 222

[Define Field Resolvers for date and time in Logging Profile elements](#) on page 223

[Validate Logging Profile elements](#) on page 223

# Define Field Resolvers for multiple values in Logging Profile elements

You can set the Field Resolver to convert various fields to the correct format, or to combine more than one field into one.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the properties of the Field Resolver, select **Multi-valued** as the **Field Type**.
- 2) In **Fields**, click **Add**, then select the appropriate SMC log fields.  
The incoming syslog data is inserted into the log fields you select.
- 3) To add a row to the table, click **Add**.
- 4) Enter the value that is used on the third-party device in the **Value** cell.
- 5) Enter or select the value you want to use for each selected SMC log field.
- 6) Click **OK**.

**Related tasks**

[Define logging patterns as ordered fields in Logging Profile elements](#) on page 217


[Define logging patterns as key-value pairs in Logging Profile elements](#) on page 219

[Define Field Resolvers for date and time in Logging Profile elements](#) on page 223

[Validate Logging Profile elements](#) on page 223

## Define Field Resolvers for date and time in Logging Profile elements

You can set the Field Resolver to convert date and time values.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the properties of the Field Resolver, select **Date** as the **Field Type**.
- 2) Click **Select** next to **Time Field**, then select the log field for which you want to define a time stamp.
- 3) In the **Time Format** field, enter the format that the third-party device uses for the time stamp. Type the format according to Java standards. For the syntax, see:  
<http://docs.oracle.com/javase/1.5.0/docs/api/java/text/SimpleDateFormat.html>  
Example: Typing `MMM dd HH:mm:ss` maps the log time stamp as Jan 30 13:23:12.
- 4) Click **OK**.

**Related tasks**

[Define logging patterns as key-value pairs in Logging Profile elements](#) on page 219


[Define logging patterns as ordered fields in Logging Profile elements](#) on page 217


[Define Field Resolvers for multiple values in Logging Profile elements](#) on page 222

[Validate Logging Profile elements](#) on page 223

## Validate Logging Profile elements

To verify that the syslog data is converted correctly to SMC log fields, you can test a Logging Profile that you created.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Third-Party Devices > Logging Profiles**.

- 3) Right-click the Logging Profile that you want to validate, then select **Edit Logging Profile**.
- 4) Click the **Validation** tab.
- 5) To select a file with syslog data, click **Browse**.

General Validation

Log Data File: logfile.txt 5 Browse...

```

Jul 31 00:45:33 141.33.14.45 123.41.11.44 1234 5678 permit
Jul 31 00:46:12 141.33.14.45 123.41.11.44 80 8080 permit
Jul 31 00:55:33 141.33.14.45 123.41.11.44 80 8060 80 stop
Jul 31 01:45:41 170.21.31.44 123.41.11.44 1234 5678 permit
Jul 31 03:13:31 141.33.14.45 123.41.11.44 34 80 stop

```

6 Validate

Logging Pattern	Creation Time	Action	Src Addr	Dst Addr	Src Port	Dst Port
Pattern #1.1	July 31 1970 00:45:33 EET	Allow	141.33.14.45	123.41.11.44	1234	5678
Pattern #1.1	July 31 1970 00:46:12 EET	Allow	141.33.14.45	123.41.11.44	80	8080
Pattern #1.1	July 31 1970 00:55:33 EET	Allow	141.33.14.45	123.41.11.44	8060	80
Pattern #1.1	July 31 1970 01:45:41 EET	Allow	170.21.31.44	123.41.11.44	1234	5678
Pattern #1.1	July 31 1970 03:13:31 EET	Discard	141.33.14.45	123.41.11.44	34	80
Generic Logging Pattern						

- 6) Click **Validate**.

The imported data is displayed in the first pane. The validation results are displayed in the second pane. The first column of the results pane shows which logging pattern is used to convert each syslog entry.

### Related tasks

[Create Probing Profile elements for monitoring third-party devices](#) on page 226

[Activate monitoring of third-party devices](#) on page 228

## Methods for monitoring third-party device status

The Log Server can actively probe the status of third-party components using several alternative methods.

The supported methods are:

- SNMPv1
- SNMPv2c
- SNMPv3



- Pings
- TCP connection probes

When one of the SNMP status probing methods is used, you can also set up statistics reception for the device. Statistics reception relies on SNMPv1 traps sent by the third-party device.

The SMC supports statistical monitoring of the following details:

- Amount of free and used memory
- CPU load
- Interface statistics

### Related concepts

[Changing the ports for third-party device monitoring](#) on page 230

### Related tasks

[Import MIBs for monitoring third-party devices](#) on page 225

[Create Probing Profile elements for monitoring third-party devices](#) on page 226

[Activate monitoring of third-party devices](#) on page 228


## Import MIBs for monitoring third-party devices


You can import third-party MIBs (management information bases) to support third-party SNMP monitoring.

### Before you begin

You must have a MIB file for the device from the device vendor.

The OIDs (object identifiers) allow resolving the SNMP traps when they appear in log entries. If the OIDs are not resolved, they appear in the logs using a more difficult to read dotted notation. Only SNMPv1 Trap Reception is supported.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Third-Party Devices > MIBs**.
- 3) Right-click **MIBs**, then select **Import MIBs**.
- 4) Browse for the MIB file to import, then click **Import**.
- 5) (Optional) When the import is finished, click **Close**.
- 6) In the navigation pane, browse to **MIBs > All MIBs** or **MIBs > By Vendor**.


- 7) To view the contents of a MIB, right-click it, then select **Properties**.  
The **General** tab shows the contents of a MIB as is. To view information about the objects that the MIB defines, click the **OID Tree** tab. The information includes the object identifiers, their OIDs in dot notation, and possibly a description of the object.
- 8) Click **OK**.


**Related tasks**

[Create Probing Profile elements for monitoring third-party devices](#) on page 226

## Create Probing Profile elements for monitoring third-party devices

Probing Profiles define the monitoring of third-party device status (using SNMPv1/SNMPv2c/SNMPv3/Ping/TCP) and the settings for receiving statistics information from them (using SNMPv1).

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Third-Party Devices > Probing Profiles**.
- 3) Right-click **Probing Profiles**, then select **New > Probing Profile**.
- 4) Define the probing profile settings on the **General** tab.
- 5) On the **Status** tab, define the probing profile status settings.
- 6) (SNMP/SNMPv2c/SNMPv3 probing only) On the **Statistics** tab, define the settings for statistics reception using SNMPv1 traps.
- 7) Click **OK**.

**Related concepts**

[Converting logs from third-party devices](#) on page 214

**Related tasks**

[Activate monitoring of third-party devices](#) on page 228

# Configuring Log Servers to monitor third-party devices

---

Log Servers can be configured to monitor third-party devices.

You can select:

- A Probing Profile that defines how the Log Server monitors the device.
- A Logging Profile that defines how the received syslog data is converted into SMC log entries.


You can also configure Log Servers to receive SNMP traps or NetFlow (v5 or v9) or IPFIX data from third-party devices.

## Define monitoring rules on a Log Server

---

Configure the rules that send monitoring data to a Log Server.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select  **Home**.
- 2) Browse to **Others > Log Server**.
- 3) Right-click the Log Server to which you want to send monitoring data, then select **Properties**.
- 4) Switch to the **Monitoring** tab.
- 5) To create a rule, click **Add**.
- 6) Configure the monitoring rules.
- 7) To remove a rule, select the rule, then click **Remove**.
- 8) Click **OK**.

# Create Access rules allowing third-party monitoring

---

If a third-party device and the Log Server are separated by a Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall, edit the Policy to allow traffic from the device to the Log Server.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Expand **Policies**, then browse to the type of policy you want to edit.
- 3) Right-click the Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall policy, then select **Edit Firewall Policy** or **Edit Layer 2 Firewall Policy**.
- 4) Switch to the **IPv4 Access** or **IPv6 Access** tab, then add an Access rule with the following values:
  - **Source** — the third-party element.
  - **Destination** — your Log Server.
  - **Service** — ICMP Ping, SNMP (UDP), or SNMP (TCP).  
The Service depends on the probing method that is used in the Probing Profile selected in the Monitoring rule.
  - **Action** — Allow.
  - **Logging** — None.
- 5) Save and install the policy to start using the new configuration.

# Activate monitoring of third-party devices

---

You can activate status monitoring, log reception, or both for a third-party device.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Home**.
- 2) Browse to **Others > Third Party**.
- 3) Right-click a third-party device, then select **Properties**.
- 4) On the **Monitoring** tab, select the Log Server to which the logs from the third-party device are sent.

- 5) (Optional) To receive status information, select **Status Monitoring**, then select the Probing Profile.
- 6) (Optional) To receive logging information, select **Log Reception**, then select the Logging Profile.
- 7) (Optional) To receive SNMP traps from the third-party device, select **SNMP Trap Reception**.
- 8) (Optional) To receive NetFlow/IPFIX data from the third-party device, select **NetFlow Reception**.
- 9) Click **OK**.

#### Related concepts

- [Getting started with monitoring the system](#) on page 169
- [Converting logs from third-party devices](#) on page 214
- [Configuring third-party devices for monitoring](#) on page 229
- [Changing the ports for third-party device monitoring](#) on page 230
- [Getting started with the Logs view](#) on page 233
- [Configuring Log Servers to monitor third-party devices](#) on page 227
- [Defining IP addresses as elements](#) on page 893
- [Getting started with directory servers](#) on page 1079
- [Getting started with user authentication](#) on page 1099

#### Related tasks

- [Create Probing Profile elements for monitoring third-party devices](#) on page 226
- [Activate or deactivate third-party device monitoring alerts](#) on page 231
- [Create Access rules allowing third-party monitoring](#) on page 228

## Configuring third-party devices for monitoring

For any type of monitoring, confirm that the connections between the third-party device and the Log Server are allowed through any possible traffic filtering in your network. When configuring third-party devices for monitoring, be aware of some conditions.

- Ping and TCP status monitoring do not usually require additional configuration on the target device.
- SNMP-based polling usually requires that the target device is configured to respond to the Log Server's SNMP queries.
- Statistics sending (as SNMPv1 traps) must always be configured on the third-party device. For instructions on these tasks, see the documentation of the third-party device.
- NetFlow or IPFIX reception requires that the third-party device is configured to send NetFlow or IPFIX data. This configuration includes activating the service on the device and defining the reception port and IP address of the NetFlow or IPFIX collector (the Log Server).
- If necessary, you can change the ports that the Log Server uses to listen to syslog, SNMP, NetFlow, and IPFIX transmissions.

**Related concepts**

[Changing the ports for third-party device monitoring](#) on page 230

[Configuring Log Servers to monitor third-party devices](#) on page 227

**Related tasks**

[Activate monitoring of third-party devices](#) on page 228

[Activate or deactivate third-party device monitoring alerts](#) on page 231

[Create Access rules allowing third-party monitoring](#) on page 228

# Changing the ports for third-party device monitoring

It is recommended to set your third-party devices to send data to the default ports that the Log Server listens to.

The default listening ports are:

- Windows — The Log Server listens to syslog on port 514 and SNMP traps on port 162.
- Linux — The Log Server listens to syslog on port 5514 and SNMP traps on port 5162.
- Windows and Linux — The Log Server listens to NetFlow and IPFIX data on port 2055.

If necessary, you can change the ports for syslog, SNMP, NetFlow, and IPFIX reception, but the port number in Linux must always be higher than 1024.

If it is not possible to reconfigure the third-party device to send syslog data, SNMP traps, NetFlow data, or IPFIX data to the correct port, you have other options. You can redirect traffic to a different port using an intermediate network device or on the Log Server, using iptables in Linux:

```
iptables -t nat -A PREROUTING -p udp -m udp --dport 514 -j REDIRECT --to-ports 5514
```

**Related concepts**

[Configuring Log Servers to monitor third-party devices](#) on page 227

**Related tasks**

[Activate monitoring of third-party devices](#) on page 228

[Activate or deactivate third-party device monitoring alerts](#) on page 231

[Create Access rules allowing third-party monitoring](#) on page 228

[Edit Log Server configuration parameters](#) on page 424

# Activate or deactivate third-party device monitoring alerts

You can activate or deactivate the status surveillance feature, which generates an alert if a monitored component's status remains unknown for 15 minutes.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Home**.
- 2) Browse to **Others > Third Party**.
- 3) Right-click an element, then select or deselect **Options > Status Surveillance**.

## Related concepts

[Configuring Log Servers to monitor third-party devices](#) on page 227

## Related tasks

[Activate monitoring of third-party devices](#) on page 228

[Create Access rules allowing third-party monitoring](#) on page 228





# Viewing and exporting logged data

### Contents

- [Getting started with the Logs view](#) on page 233
- [Browsing log data](#) on page 241
- [Changing how log entries are displayed](#) on page 251
- [Exporting data from the Logs view](#) on page 253
- [Save data in PDF or HTML format](#) on page 256
- [Create rules from log entries](#) on page 258
- [Create Executable elements from log entries](#) on page 259

You can view log, alert, and audit entries through the log browsing views. You can view data from SMC servers, all types of engines, and from third-party components that are configured to send data to the SMC.

## Getting started with the Logs view

The **Logs** view displays all log, alert, and audit entries for the SMC.

You can view many types of entries from any number of components together or individually.


While you can view active alerts in the **Logs** view, you must acknowledge active alerts in the **Active Alerts** view.

## Open the Logs view

There are several ways to access the Logs view.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

1) To access the Logs view, select an option:

- Select  **Logs**.
- To view logs sent by a component, right-click an element that produces logs, then in the **Monitoring** submenu, select a log-related item.
- To open the Logs view with different filtering criteria, create different bookmarks.

**Related concepts**[How the Logs view is arranged](#) on page 234[Browsing log data](#) on page 241[Changing how log entries are displayed](#) on page 251[Exporting data from the Logs view](#) on page 253**Related tasks**[Create rules from log entries](#) on page 258

## How the Logs view is arranged

The default records arrangement is optimized for efficient browsing of many entries.

**Figure 58: Logs view in the records arrangement**

The screenshot displays the Logs view in the records arrangement. The main table contains the following data:

Creation Time	Sender	Facility	Situation
2016-09-21 10:03:46	Milan FW node 1	Packet filt...	Connection_Allowed
2016-09-21 10:03:46	Atlanta FW node 1	Packet filt...	Connection_Refused
2016-09-21 10:03:47	Dubai Virtual FW 1 n...	Packet filt...	Connection_Discarded
2016-09-21 10:03:47	Paris FW node 2	Inspection	BC_Gambling
2016-09-21 10:03:47	Algiers FW node 1	Inspection	TCP_Segment-Invalid
2016-09-21 10:03:48	Beijing FW node 2	Packet filt...	Connection_Allowed
2016-09-21 10:03:48	Dubai Master FW no...	Packet filt...	Connection_Allowed
2016-09-21 10:03:48	Dubai Virtual FW 3 n...	Packet filt...	Connection_Allowed
2016-09-21 10:03:48	Helsinki FW node 2	Packet filt...	Connection_Refused
2016-09-21 10:03:48	Atlanta IPS node 1		DNS_Protocol_Violation
2016-09-21 10:03:48	Dubai Virtual FW 2 n...	Packet filt...	Connection_Refused
2016-09-21 10:03:48	Helsinki FW node 1	Packet filt...	Connection_Refused
2016-09-21 10:03:49	Dubai Virtual FW 4 n...	Packet filt...	Connection_Allowed
2016-09-21 10:03:49	Moscow FW node 1	Packet filt...	Connection_Refused

The interface includes a 'Query' panel on the right with the following settings:

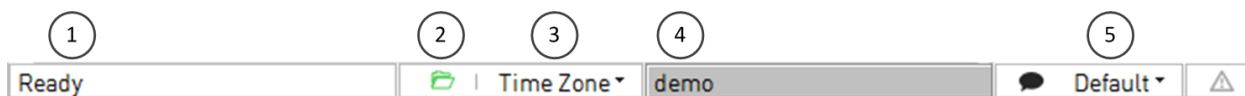
- Security Engine
- Filter: Senders: All, Storage
- <No Filter>
- Automatic (15 min)
- 2016-09-21 10:03:52
- Apply, Cancel

The 'Fields' panel on the right shows a table with columns for Field and Value.

At the bottom left, a 'Hits / second' graph shows a peak of 0.1 hits per second around 10:03:48.

**Figure 59: Toolbar in the records arrangement**

- 1 Current events mode
- 2 Stop the ongoing operation
- 3 Go to the first or last record
- 4 View graphical summaries based on the log entries
- 5 Opens the **Log Analysis** view
- 6 Opens the **Tools** menu

**Figure 60: Status bar options for log browsing**

- 1 Activity status
- 2 Server connectivity status
- 3 Set the time zone
- 4 The logged in user
- 5 The location — defines the Log Server contact address if there is NAT between the Management Client and a Log Server



**Note:** If NAT is applied between your Management Client and a Log Server, you must select the correct Location for your Management Client to see the logs.

## Logs view panes

You can select and deselect panes from **≡ Menu > View > Panels**.

The following panes are available in most arrangements:

- **Fields** pane — Provides quick access to categorized log entry details.
- **Query** pane — The most important tool in the **Logs** view. The **Query** pane allows you to filter the log entries so that you can find the information you need.
- **Task Status** pane — Only available in the records arrangement. Displays the status of log-related tasks, such as a log export that you start from the **Logs** view.
- **Hex** pane — Displays traffic recordings generated by the Excerpt logging option of an Inspection rule (other recordings are viewed using an external viewer).
- **Summary** pane — Textual explanation of the event that generated the record.
- **Event Visualization** pane — A graphic showing important information about the event.
- **Info** pane — Displays detailed information on a selected log entry.

## Log entry table (records arrangement)

The *log entry table* in the default records arrangement is the primary view for the log entries. You can freely select which details are shown and the order of the columns. Different types of entries contain different types of information, so none of the entries use all columns.

When you right-click a cell in a log entry, the menu that opens allows you to select various actions related to the log entry. The actions vary slightly depending on the information in the cell. For example, right-clicking an element adds general element-specific actions (such as viewing the properties of the element). The actions include, but are not limited to, the following:

- **Details** — Switch to the Details view of the selected record.
- **Copy** — Copy the entry details to the clipboard.
- **View Rule** — View the rule that generated the log entry (if applicable).
- **Create Rule** — Create a rule based on the entry.
- **Whois** — Look up the selected IP address in the online Whois database.
- **Export** — Export records or attach records to an Incident case.
- **Filter Connections** — Add basic details from the current selection to the **Query** pane.
- **Show Connection** — Add basic details from the selected connection to the **Query** pane.
- **Search Related Events** — Some special events are parts of a larger chain of events. This option shows other events related to the selected log entry.
- **New Blacklist Entry** — Blacklist connections that match the entry's details.
- **Add Filter** — Add the selected detail to the filter in the **Query** pane.
- **New Filter** — Create a filter based on the selected detail.

### Related concepts

[Considerations for setting up system communications](#) on page 127

[Details arrangement of the Logs view](#) on page 237

[Benefits of filtering log entries](#) on page 242

[Blacklisting traffic and how it works](#) on page 1069

### Related tasks

[Use filters for browsing log entries](#) on page 243

[Browse log entries on a timeline](#) on page 249

[Check Whois records for IP addresses in log entries](#) on page 250

[Copy log entries in CSV format](#) on page 254

[Export log entries](#) on page 254

[Export IPS traffic recordings](#) on page 255

[Create rules from log entries](#) on page 258

# Details arrangement of the Logs view

The Details arrangement of the Logs view gives an overview of an individual event.

**Figure 61: Logs view in the Details arrangement**

The screenshot displays the 'Event Details' window in the Forcepoint Next Generation Firewall interface. The window is divided into several panes:

- Summary:** Shows the event timestamp '2016-09-21 10:03:54' and the message 'Connection Discarded According to Security Policy'. It includes an 'Information' icon and a description: 'New connection was discarded according to the access rules'.
- Event Visualization:** A diagram showing a source IP '203.253.226.132' from 'Korea, Republic of' connecting to a destination IP '127.0.6.165 (1701)'. The connection is labeled 'Discard' and 'BOOTPS (UDP)'. The destination is identified as '255.255.255.255 Multicast'.
- References:** A list of elements associated with the event: 'Connection\_Discarded', 'BOOTPS (UDP)', 'Log Server', and 'UDP'.
- Fields:** A table listing key-value pairs for the event:
 

Field	Value
Sender Ty...	Firewall
Sender	127.0.6.165 (...)
Dst IF	Internal
Src IF	Interface #0
Action	Discard
Dst Addrs	255.255.255....
Rule Tag	605.0
Service	BOOTPS...
Src Addr	203.253.226...
- Query:** Shows the 'Security Engine' filter, 'Senders: All', and 'Storage' options. A date range of '2016-09-21 10:05:59' is selected, with an 'Automatic (30 min)' refresh rate. 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons are visible.
- Tasks:** A list of actions available for the selected entry: 'Filter Connections', 'New Blacklist Entry', 'View Rule', 'Terminate Connection', 'Create Alert', and 'Do Not Log Connection'.

**Figure 62: Toolbar in the Details arrangement**



- 1 Stop the ongoing operation
- 2 Previous or next record
- 3 Show the **Records** arrangement
- 4 Opens the **Tools** menu

The Details arrangement also has the following panes:

- **References** pane (shown by default) — Displays a list of elements corresponding to the details in the record and possibly more information about related records for some special records that are part of a larger event.
- **Tasks** pane — Shortcuts to configuration tasks that you can start based on the displayed entry (as in the Records arrangement in the right-click menu for entries).

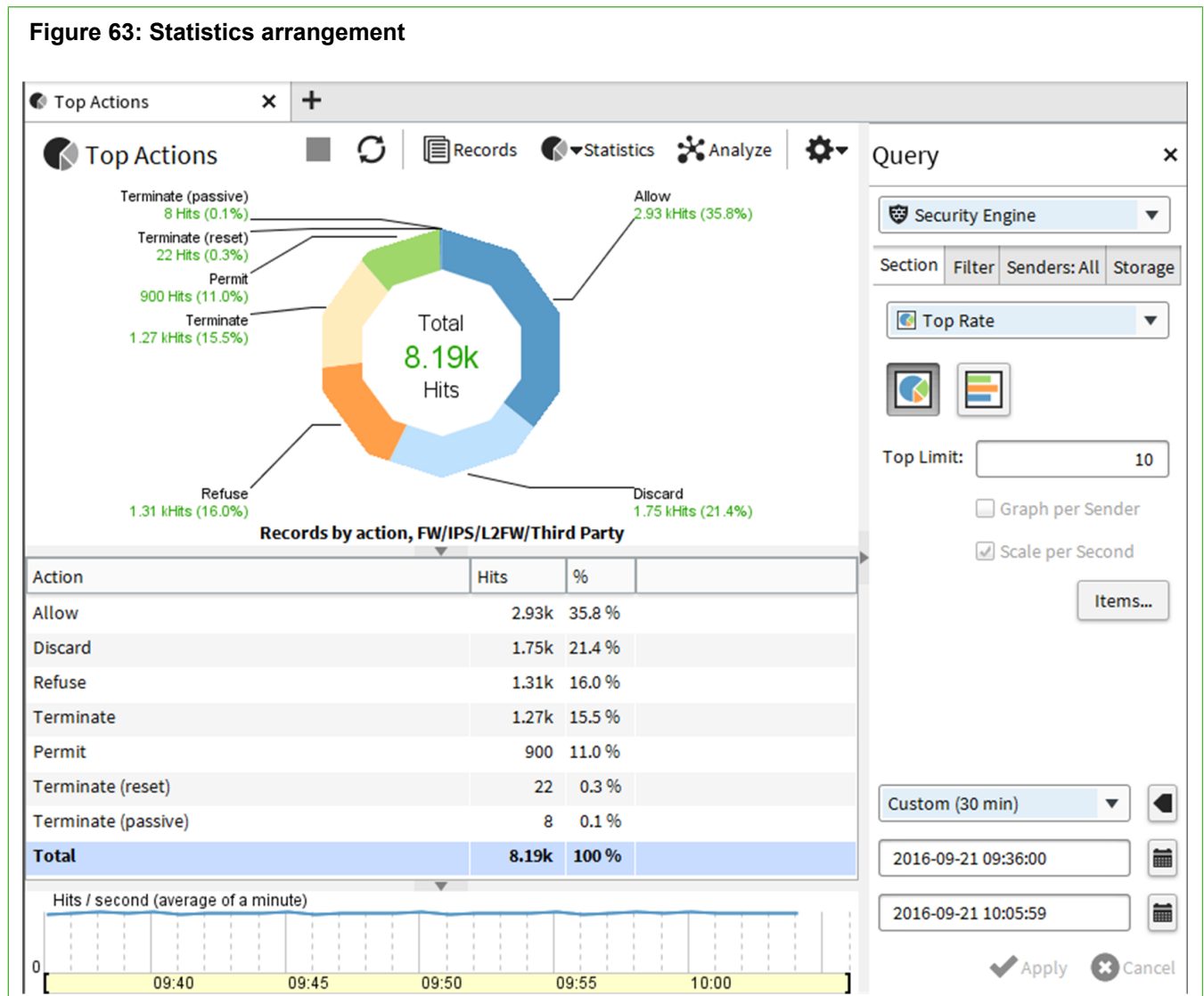
**Related concepts**

[Statistics arrangement of the Logs view on page 238](#)

## Statistics arrangement of the Logs view

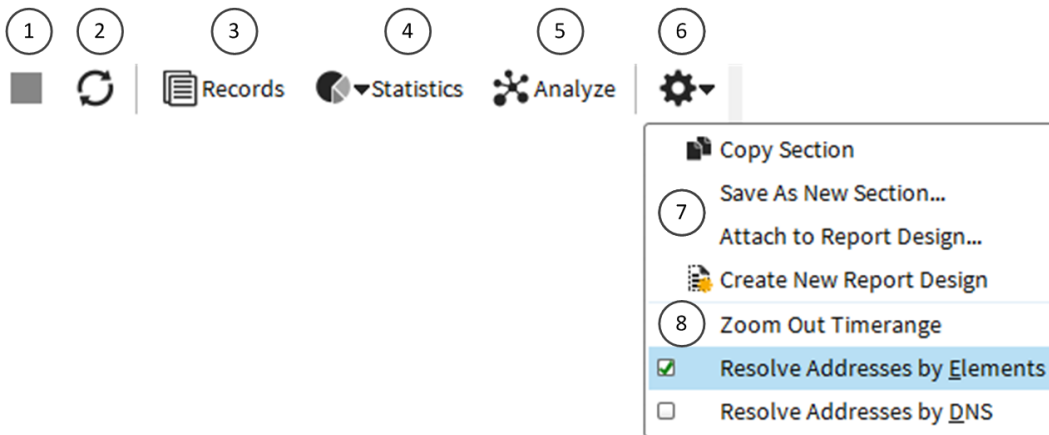
In the Statistics arrangement of the Logs view, you can view charts of multiple events interactively. You can create a quick report of the log entries that match the active Query. You can then further refine the Query by viewing log entries that correspond to a chart segment.

**Figure 63: Statistics arrangement**



**Tip:** Right-click the chart sections for options that allow you to drill-down into the details.

The **Query** pane in the Statistics arrangement includes another **Section** tab. You can use the tabs to control the statistical display. The data can also be filtered in the same way as in other arrangements.

**Figure 64: Toolbar in the Statistics arrangement**

- 1 Stop the ongoing operation
- 2 Refresh
- 3 Show the **Records** arrangement
- 4 View graphical summaries based on the log entries
- 5 Opens the **Log Analysis** view
- 6 Opens the **Tools** menu
- 7 Options for creating new sections and reports
- 8 Generate a new chart with a wider time range

The chart area in the Statistics arrangement can contain a pie chart, a bar chart, a line chart, stacked line chart, or a map chart (based on an internal geolocation database). The available options depend on the chart type that is selected:

- **Top rate** charts can be displayed as a pie chart, bar chart, or a map. A top rate chart shows the total numbers of records that match the query.
- **Progress** charts can be displayed as a line chart, stacked line chart, bar chart, or stacked bar chart. A progress chart illustrates the numbers of records plotted over time (similar to the timeline, but in more detail).

When a chart is generated, you can right-click for a menu of actions related to the section and possibly the element that the section corresponds to. The actions available vary by section. Some of the most important actions are listed as follows:

- **Show Records** — Opens the Records arrangement filtered to show the entries that comprise the chart section you right-clicked.
- **Add to Current Filter** — Allows you to use sections to filter data by adding the section in question to the Filter tab of the Query pane.
- **Statistics** item shortcuts — Drill down to create a chart from data that matches the previous chart section.

### Related concepts

[Log Analysis arrangement of the Logs view](#) on page 240

# Add statistical items to a section of the Statistics arrangement of the Logs view

You can add statistical items to a section of the Statistics view.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the Query pane, click **Items**.
- 2) Click **Add**.
- 3) Select one or more items from the list, then click **Select**.
- 4) Click **OK**.
- 5) In the Query pane, click **Apply** to update the view.

## Log Analysis arrangement of the Logs view

The Log Analysis arrangement provides various tools to analyze logs, alerts, and audit entries.

**Figure 65: Log Analysis arrangement**

Creation Time	Sender	Facility	Situation	Action
2016-09-21 10:05:56	Milan FW node 2	Packet f...	Connection_Allowed	Allow
2016-09-21 10:05:56	Atlanta L2 FW no...		DNS_Server-Resource-Reco...	Per...
2016-09-21 10:05:56	Tunis FW node 1	Packet f...	Connection_Refused	Refu...
2016-09-21 10:05:56	Helsinki FW node 3	Inspecti...	BC_Business-and-Economy	Per...
2016-09-21 10:05:56	Beijing FW node 1	Packet f...	Connection_Allowed	Allow
2016-09-21 10:05:56	Milan FW node 1	Packet f...	Connection_Allowed	Allow
2016-09-21 10:05:57	Moscow FW node 2	Packet f...	Connection_Discarded	Disc...
2016-09-21 10:05:58	Beijing FW node 2	Packet f...	Connection_Refused	Refu...
2016-09-21 10:05:58	Paris FW node 2	Packet f...	Connection_Allowed	Allow
2016-09-21 10:05:58	Moscow FW node 1	Inspecti...	MSRPC-TCP_CPS-Windows-...	Ter...
2016-09-21 10:05:58	Atlanta FW node 1	Packet f...	Connection_Refused	Refu...
2016-09-21 10:05:58	Dubai Virtual FW ...	Inspecti...	BC_Gambling	Ter...
2016-09-21 10:05:58	Dubai Virtual FW ...	Packet f...	Connection_Discarded	Disc...

- To combine logs by Service or Situation, select **Aggregate > Aggregate by Service** or **Aggregate > Aggregate by Situation**.



- To sort logs by column type, select **Aggregate > Sort by Column**, then click the heading of the corresponding column.
- To view the data as charts, click **Statistics**, then select one of the predefined statistical items. Select **Select** to select an item from a complete list of statistical items.
- To view the data as a diagram, click **Visualizations**, then select one of the visualization options.

**Table 31: Visualization options**

Option	Explanation
Attack Analysis	Displays information on Situations of the type Attack or Successful Attack. Indicates allowed and disallowed connections between users and applications.
Audit Map	Displays information on how users manipulate elements.
Application and Executable Usage	Displays users and the applications that they use or access. Indicates allowed and disallowed connections between users and applications.
Service Map	Displays access to services in the network.

You can zoom in on the data presented in the visualization diagrams with the mouse wheel. Right-clicking elements in the diagrams opens a pop-up menu with various options to further analyze the elements and add them to filters. You can also, for example, drag and drop objects from the visualization diagram to the **Query** pane to create a filter.

**Related concepts**

[Browsing log data](#) on page 241

[Changing how log entries are displayed](#) on page 251

## Browsing log data

---

You can browse, filter, and search for log data in the **Logs** view.

**Related concepts**

[Benefits of filtering log entries](#) on page 242

[Using Log Data Context elements](#) on page 245

[Viewing temporary log entries](#) on page 249

**Related tasks**

[View log entry details in the Fields pane](#) on page 242

[View log entries from specific components](#) on page 244

[Analyze log, alert, and audit entries](#) on page 247

[Sort log entries](#) on page 247

[Save snapshots of log, alert, and audit entries](#) on page 248

[View snapshots of log, alert, and audit entries](#) on page 249

[Browse log entries on a timeline](#) on page 249

[Check Whois records for IP addresses in log entries](#) on page 250

## View log entry details in the Fields pane

The Fields pane provides several alternative views to the log entry that is selected.


The pane is most useful in the Records arrangement. This arrangement shows a subset of fields and the information contained in the selected field. Using the Records arrangement, you can quickly browse the logs table for the exact details you are looking for without scrolling sideways or rearranging the columns.



The **Watchlist** item allows you to create a customized list of fields for your own use. The Watchlist is specific to each Management Client installation.

You can look up a selected IP address in the online Whois database.

If an IP address in a log entry has a country flag icon next to it, a Geolocation (for example, a street, city, or country) has been associated with it. You can view the physical location of these IP addresses in Google Maps.

To change your personal Watchlist of log fields, follow these steps:

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Logs**.
- 2) If the Fields pane is not visible, select  **Menu** > **View** > **Panels** > **Fields**.
- 3) In the list at the top of the pane, select **Watchlist**.
- 4) Change the selection to the fields you want to use:
  - To remove fields, right-click the field, then select **Remove** (to remove one field) or **Clear** (to remove all fields).
  - To add more fields, drag and drop cells from the log entry table to the Fields pane. (The value of the field is irrelevant in this case.)
  - To add a field to the Watchlist from other views in the pane, right-click the field, then select **Add to Watchlist**.

### Related tasks

[View IP address locations in the Logs view on page 204](#)

[Check Whois records for IP addresses in log entries on page 250](#)

## Benefits of filtering log entries

Efficient use of the logs requires that you filter the records displayed in the Logs view.

Filtering is done using the Query pane, which allows you to select the type of log data that it displayed. It also contains the follow tabs for filtering log data:

- **Filter** tab allows you to filter entries based on any information in the entries. The Log Data Context specifies the log data type.
- **Senders** tab allows you to filter entries according to the component that created the entry. Filtering by sender speeds up log browsing when there are many log sending components, but you are only interested in a limited set.
- **Storage** tab allows you to filter entries according to the servers on which the entries are stored.

Options on the three tabs allow you to set more filtering criteria.

### Related concepts

[Using Log Data Context elements](#) on page 245

### Related tasks

[Use filters for browsing log entries](#) on page 243

## Use filters for browsing log entries

You can quickly create local filters by dragging and dropping. You can filter logs by time, use criteria stored in Filter elements, and save a Query as a permanent filter.



**Note:** The time selection refers to the entries' creation time stamp (not the reception time at the Log Server, which is also included in many entries). Internally, the SMC and engines always use universal time (UTC). The times are displayed according to the time zone selected in your Management Client's status bar.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select **Logs**.
- 2) If the **Query** pane is not visible, select **Menu** > **View** > **Panels** > **Query**.  
You can drag and drop any field from the log entries to the **Filters** tab to create a Filter, select existing Filter elements, or add a filtering criterion. To add a criterion, use the toolbar icon and type in the detail. You can then further change and use the Filters you have created.
- 3) Select an option:
  - To change a detail manually, double-click the detail.
  - Right-click a field in the log entry table or in the **Fields** pane, then select **Add Filter: <field name>** to add the item and its value as a new filter row.
  - Right-click an item in the log entry table or in the **Fields** pane, then select **New Filter: <item name>** to define a value for the item and add it as a new filter row.
  - To add an empty row, right-click a filter row or empty space, then select **Row**.
  - To search based on a word or a string, right-click the **Query** pane, select **New > Filter: String**, then type your search string.
  - To remove a detail, right-click it, then select **Remove <detail description>**.
  - To remove a whole row, right-click something other than a detail on the row you want to remove, then select **Remove**.
  - Temporarily disable a filter row by right-clicking it, then selecting **Disable**.
  - To save the current filtering criteria as a permanent Filter element, click **Save** at the top of the **Filter** tab in the **Query** pane.
- 4) After you make changes to filters, click **Apply**.



**Related concepts**[Getting started with filtering data](#) on page 283**Related tasks**[View log entries from specific components](#) on page 244

## View log entries from specific components

You can filter logs based on the components that created the entries.

If the **Senders** tab is empty, data from all components is displayed in the **Logs** view. The **Senders** tab allows you to maintain the sender filtering independent of changes on the **Filter** tab. Restricting the included senders makes log browsing faster when there are many components in the SMC.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Logs**.
- 2) Switch to the **Senders** tab in the **Query** pane.
- 3) Click  **Select** at the top of the **Senders** tab.
- 4) Select the elements you want to use as the senders, then click **Select**.
- 5) Click **Apply**.  
The log data is refreshed, and only logs from the selected senders are displayed.


**Related tasks**[View log entries from specific servers and archive folders](#) on page 244


## View log entries from specific servers and archive folders

You can specify which servers and storage folders to include.

By default, the **Logs** view fetches data from the active log storage folder for all data storage servers, except those Log Servers that are excluded from log browsing.

You view logs from the active storage folder on specific Log Servers and Management Servers. You can also view logs from archives stored on Log Servers or archives stored locally on the computer where you are using the Management Client. In an environment with multiple Management Servers, active alerts are automatically replicated between the Management Servers. Log Servers store all logs that other components have sent to it as well as audit data for the Log Server's own operation.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Logs**.
- 2) In the **Query** pane, switch to the **Storage** tab.
- 3) In the server list, select the servers and storage folders that you want to include.
- 4) Click **Apply**.  
The log data is refreshed and filtered according to the selected servers and folders.

#### Related tasks

[Edit Log Server configuration parameters](#) on page 424

## Using Log Data Context elements

You can use Log Data Contexts to select which type of log data is displayed in the Logs view and in the Reports view.

You can select a predefined Log Data Context or create a Log Data Context. You can also define the selection of columns for each Log Data Context.



**Tip:** To view log entries for the SMC Appliance, select the **SMC Appliance** log data context in the **Query** pane.


#### Related tasks


[Create Log Data Context elements](#) on page 245

[Select log entry columns for Log Data Context elements](#) on page 246

## Create Log Data Context elements

The Log Data Context allows you to select which type of log data to display.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Logs**.
- 2) Click the Log Data Context drop-down list in the **Query** pane or in the **Log Type** section in the **Report Properties** pane, Report Section properties, or Report Item properties. Then select **New**.
- 3) Enter a **Name** for the new Log Data Context.

- 4) To add Filters to the Log Data Context, click **Select**.



**Note:** Log Data Tags index Log Data. We recommend that you select a Log Data Tag as a Filter.

- 5) Click **OK**.

### Related tasks


[Use filters for browsing log entries](#) on page 243






[Select log entry columns for Log Data Context elements](#) on page 246

## Select log entry columns for Log Data Context elements

You can edit the selection of columns that are displayed in a Log Data Context.

You can also save user-specific settings, save the updated column selection as the default settings, or reset the columns to the default settings for each Log Data Context.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select  **Logs**.
- 2) Verify that the Log Data Context is selected in the **Query** pane or Log Type section in the **Report Properties** pane, Report Section properties, or Report Item properties.
- 3) Select  **Tools** > **Columns** > **Column Selection**.
- 4) Add the columns that you want to be displayed, then click **OK**.
- 5) Save the current column selection:
  - To save the column selection as your personal settings for the Log Data Context, select  **Tools** > **Columns** > **Save Your Local Settings**.
  - (Custom Log Data Contexts only) To save the column selection as the default settings for all administrators, select  **Tools** > **Columns** > **Save Default Settings**.
  - To discard changes to the column selection and revert to the previously saved default settings, select  **Tools** > **Columns** > **Reset to Default Settings**.


### Related tasks

[Select columns in the log entry table](#) on page 252

## Edit Log Data Context elements

You can change the name and edit the filters for a Log Data Context that you have created.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select  **Logs**.
- 2) From the Log Data Context drop-down list, select **Select**.
- 3) Right-click the **Log Data Context** that you want to change, then select **Properties**.
- 4) Edit the properties, then click **OK**.


### Related tasks

[Use filters for browsing log entries](#) on page 243

## Analyze log, alert, and audit entries

The Log Analysis view provides various tools to analyze logs, alerts, and audit entries.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Logs**.
- 2) Select **Analyze**.

### Related concepts

[Log Analysis arrangement of the Logs view](#) on page 240

### Related tasks

[Save snapshots of log, alert, and audit entries](#) on page 248

[View snapshots of log, alert, and audit entries](#) on page 249

## Sort log entries

By default, log entries are sorted according to their creation time. You can alternatively sort log entries according to any other column heading.

Large numbers of logs can require significant resources to be sorted. The **Log Analysis** view can shorten your selected time range if your current Query matches too many records to be efficiently sorted.



**Note:** The **Current Events** view is always sorted according to entry creation time. Sorting can only use stored data, so any temporary data visible in the view is permanently lost if you change the sorting.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Logs**.
- 2) Select **Analyze**.
- 3) Click the column heading by which you want to sort the logs.  
Depending on the column you click, the sort can take a while.

## Save snapshots of log, alert, and audit entries

You can save snapshots of log, alert, and audit entries in the **Log Analysis** view.

The snapshots are saved on the Management Server, and are listed in the **Monitoring** view.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Logs**.
- 2) Select the entries for the snapshot.  
You can select a maximum of 100000 entries.
- 3) Select **Analyze**.
- 4) Click **Save**.
- 5) Enter a name for the snapshot, then click **OK**.

### Related concepts

[Browsing log data](#) on page 241

### Related tasks

[View snapshots of log, alert, and audit entries](#) on page 249



# View snapshots of log, alert, and audit entries

The snapshots of log, alert, and audit entries are listed in the Monitoring view.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Monitoring Snapshots > Logs > Management Server**.
- 3) Right-click a snapshot, then select **Open**.

## Browse log entries on a timeline

You can skip around logs from different time periods using the timeline.

In the Records and Details view arrangements, part of the timeline is hidden by default. You can view the full timeline by dragging its upper edge.

Depending on your selection, the timeline allows you to browse freely (the **Automatic** option) or stops when the first or last entry within the specified time range is reached.

When you are browsing within a set time range, you cannot accidentally browse out of the time range set in the **Query** pane. Square brackets are shown at each end to show the limits of the range.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Drag the arrowhead to browse.
  - The arrow also indicates the selected start position (from the beginning or the end of the time range).
  - The chart plots the number of matching entries over time.

## Viewing temporary log entries

The **Logs** view has two operating modes. One mode shows a fixed time frame, the other is a stream of current log entries, which also includes temporary entries.

In the normal mode, you can browse entries freely from any time period. When you activate the Current Events mode by clicking **Play**, the log entries update automatically to show the stream of log entries as they arrive at the Log Servers. Typically, you must filter out some entries to keep the pace of the Current Events mode slow enough that you can keep up with the entries.

The Current Events mode also displays temporary entries that are not stored on the Log Server (Transient log entries and log entries that are pruned out before permanent storing) so you might see more logs than in the normal mode. Temporary entries only exist within the current view and are permanently lost when the view is refreshed or closed. The updates in the Current Events mode are automatically deactivated when you select an entry or start browsing manually.



**Note:** Under some operating conditions, a small portion of log entries can arrive in mixed order. Because the Current Events mode attempts to maintain a logical flow of events, out-of-sequence entries are not shown. You might see a notification message if this happens.

## Check Whois records for IP addresses in log entries

To get more information about the source of traffic that triggered a log entry, you can look up the Whois record of IP addresses in log entries.

The Whois record contains registration information and related contact details provided at the time of domain registration. The contents of the Whois record vary depending on the information provided by the owner of the domain or network segment. For IP addresses used by customers of an ISP, the information shown in the Whois record is usually the ISP's information.

The Whois information is queried from the relevant Regional Internet Registry (RIR). These registries include the ARIN (American Registry for Internet Numbers), the RIPE NCC (Réseaux IP Européens Network Coordination Centre), and the APNIC (Asia Pacific Network Information Centre). More information about the main RIRs can be found at the following links:

- ARIN at a glance: [https://www.arin.net/about\\_us/overview.html](https://www.arin.net/about_us/overview.html)
- RIPE Database: <https://www.ripe.net/manage-ips-and-asns/db>
- About APNIC: <https://www.apnic.net/about-APNIC/organization>

The computer running the Management Client performs the Whois query. To be able to perform Whois queries, the security policy applied on the computer running the Management Client must meet the following criteria:

- DNS queries must be allowed so that the Management Client can resolve the relevant RIR server IP address.
- Opening TCP43 (Whois) connections must be allowed.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Logs**.
- 2) Right-click an IP address, then select **Whois**.



**Tip:** You can also view the physical location of an IP address in Google Maps.

The Whois record for the IP address is displayed.

### Related concepts

[Monitoring connections using Geolocation elements](#) on page 202

[Geolocations and IP addresses in Google Maps](#) on page 203

### Related tasks

[View IP address locations from the Whois Information dialog box](#) on page 205

# Query McAfee ePO information in log entries

Query McAfee ePO information about IP addresses to get information about the hardware and software on client computers.


## Before you begin

A McAfee® Agent must be installed on the client computers.

You can query the following information about client computers:

- Hardware details
- Information about software that is running on the client computer, such as McAfee Agent
- The status of Endpoint Protection products

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Logs**.
- 2) Right-click an IP address in a log entry, then select **ePO Information on**. Information about the client computer is displayed.

## Related tasks

[Integrate McAfee ePO with Forcepoint NGFW on page 979](#)

# Changing how log entries are displayed

There are various ways in which you can customize how entries in the Log view are displayed.

## Related concepts

[Selecting the time zone for log browsing on page 252](#)

[Exporting data from the Logs view on page 253](#)

## Related tasks

[Increase or decrease text size in log entries on page 252](#)

[Select columns in the log entry table on page 252](#)



[Customize the Logs view](#)

## Increase or decrease text size in log entries

---

You can increase, decrease, and reset the text size in the **Logs** view.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Logs**.
- 2) Select  **Tools** > **Text Size**, then select an option.

## Selecting the time zone for log browsing

---

The SMC and engines use universal time (UTC) internally. The times in the **Logs** view are changed to your selected time zone as they are displayed.

By default, this time zone is the local time zone of the computer you are using. Changing the time zone does not affect the actual time stamps of the log entries.

If the times in the log entries seem incorrect, verify that the time and time zone are set correctly in your operating system, on the Management Server, and on all Log Servers.

## Select columns in the log entry table

---



You can select which columns are shown in the **Logs** view and customize how the columns are shown. You can add and remove columns and change the order and width of columns.

You can save the column selection and their settings for each Log Data Context. You can also view subsets of column information in the **Fields** pane.

You can arrange the columns in the following ways:

- To change the order of the columns — Drag the column header to a different location.
- To expand the column to the width of its contents — Double-click the column header.
- To view a menu of actions for adjusting the column widths — Right-click a column header.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Logs**.
- 2) Select  **Tools** > **Columns** > **Column Selection**.
- 3) Select **Add** and **Remove** to include and exclude selected fields.  
The **Columns to Display** list on the right shows your selections.
- 4) To organize selected fields on the **Columns to Display** list, select **Up** or **Down**.  
Fields at the top are shown at the left of the log record table.

- 5) Click **OK**.

#### Related concepts

[Using Log Data Context elements](#) on page 245  
[Log entry fields](#) on page 1475

#### Related tasks

[View log entry details in the Fields pane](#) on page 242  
[Customize the Logs view](#)

## Tools for customizing the Logs view

To make logs easier to read, you can customize how the data is displayed in the Logs view.

The following options are available in the **Tools** menu:

- **Show Milliseconds** — Shows milliseconds in the log creation time.
- **Use Color Filters** — Enables log entry highlighting. Different colors highlight different types of logs.
- **Show Icons** — Shows the icons of the elements.

You can resolve IP addresses, protocols, and senders as DNS names or SMC elements. Resolving affects the view only and does not affect stored log data.

The following options for resolving are available in the **Tools** menu:

- **Resolve Addresses by DNS** — Enables IP address resolution using DNS.
- **Resolve Addresses by Elements** — Enables IP address resolution using element definitions.
- **Resolve Senders** — Enables the IP addresses of engines and SMC servers to be resolved using element definitions.



**Note:** IP address and port resolving works by comparing the information in the logs to internal and external information sources. If the information available is incorrect or ambiguous, the result might not reflect the actual hosts and services involved in the communications. For example, if a detail matches two elements, the first match is displayed even if the other element was used in the corresponding rule.

## Exporting data from the Logs view

You can export log entries in various ways and formats.


#### Related tasks


[Save elements, log data, reports, and statistics](#) on page 256  
[Copy log entries in CSV format](#) on page 254  
[Export log entries](#) on page 254  
[Export IPS traffic recordings](#) on page 255

# Copy log entries in CSV format

Log, alert, and audit data can be copied directly from the **Logs** view, then pasted in comma-separated values (CSV) format.

For a limited number of entries, a simple copy and paste is the quickest export method.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Logs**.
- 2) Highlight the rows you want to copy, then copy and paste them to the other application, for example a spreadsheet application.  
The entries are copied with the column titles.


# Export log entries

Log, alert, and audit data can be exported directly from the **Logs** view. Use the export command for large numbers of entries.

To schedule export tasks that are executed automatically, use the Log Data Tasks tool to export logs instead.

To export the data in a human-readable format, we recommend saving the entries in a .pdf or .html file instead. You can use this option when the exported data does not need further processing.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Logs**.
- 2) (Optional) To export only some of the entries that match your current Query, select some rows in the Records arrangement.
- 3) Right-click one of the entries, then select **Export > Export Log Events**.
- 4) From the **File Export Format** drop-down list, select the file format.
- 5) Select whether to export only the selected entries or all entries that match the filter criteria specified in the **Query** pane.
- 6) Select where to export the file.  
For the **Archive** file export format, select one of the archive directories defined in the Log Server's configuration file from the drop-down list.
- 7) (All formats except Archive) Specify what happens when a previous file with the same name exists in the same folder.
- 8) (Local Workstation exports only) To view the exported file in the operating system's default application for the file type, select **Open File After Export**.

9) Click **OK**.

The **Task Status** pane opens and shows the progress of the export.

#### Related concepts

[Log data management and how it works](#) on page 1283

#### Related tasks

[Save elements, log data, reports, and statistics](#) on page 256

[Export IPS traffic recordings](#) on page 255

[Edit Log Server configuration parameters](#) on page 424

## Export IPS traffic recordings

You can set IPS Inspection rules to record network traffic as a logging option in both the Exceptions and the Rules tree.

These recordings are stored on the Log Servers. Recordings generated by the **Excerpt** option are shown directly in the **Logs** view. Longer recordings, however, are meant to be viewed in an external application and are not directly viewable.



**Tip:** To display the **Hex** pane, select **Menu > View > Panels > Hex**.

To view the recording, you can:

- Retrieve the recording through the log entry.
- Define a Task for exporting IPS recordings.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Logs**.
- 2) Highlight the rows that are associated with recordings.



**Note:** To browse for more entries that have a recording, change the selection in the **Fields** pane to **Full Capture**. (This selection is available when an entry that has an associated recording is selected.) The **Record ID** field is displayed with an identification number for entries that are associated with a recording.

- 3) Right-click a selected entry, then select **Export > Export IPS Recordings**.
- 4) From the **File Export Format** drop-down list, select the file format.
- 5) Select where to export the file.
- 6) Specify what happens when a previous file with the same name exists in the same folder.

**7) Click OK.**

The **Task Status** pane opens and shows the progress of the export.

**Related concepts**

[Inspection Policy elements and how they work](#) on page 843

**Related tasks**

[Export log entries](#) on page 254


[Create an Export Log Task](#) on page 1293

## Save data in PDF or HTML format

You can save lists of elements, logged data, reports, statistics, and diagrams in PDF format or as HTML. You can customize the format of the PDF files.

## Save elements, log data, reports, and statistics

You can save lists of elements, logged data, reports, statistics, and diagrams in PDF format or as HTML.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

**1)** In most elements and views, select **≡ Menu > File > Print**.

## Use style templates in PDFs


You can use the background style templates when saving as PDF. You can use the templates in the Management Client and the Web Portal as permitted by account permissions and Domain boundaries.

The style template is a standard PDF file you create with some or all of the following elements:

- One or more cover pages that are attached to the printed PDF before the content pages.
- A content page background with a header and footer. The height of the header and footer can be adjusted. The same single page is used as the background for all content pages.
- One or more trailing pages that are attached to the printed PDF after the content pages.
- Your PDF template file can contain pages that you do not want to use. These pages are ignored.
- A one-page PDF file is used as a content page. Your PDF template file must contain at least two pages if you want to add cover and trailing pages.

You can create the template, for example, by creating a suitable document in a word processor and saving it as a PDF. Design separate templates for the different page sizes (A3, A4, A5, or Letter) and orientations (portrait or landscape) you anticipate using.



**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Create a PDF file that contains a template page for the content and optionally one or more cover and trailing pages.
- 2) Open the **Print to** or **Print Elements to** dialog box, for example, by right-clicking a log entry and selecting **Print**.
- 3) Under **Page Setup**, select **New** from the **Style Template** list.
- 4) Enter a unique **Name** for the new Style Template.
- 5) Click **Browse** and select the PDF file you want to use as a template.
- 6) Select how the pages are used:
  - (Optional) The **Front Pages from** are inserted before the content pages without modifications. Fill in just the first field for a single-sheet front page.
  - The **Content Page** is used as the background for all pages that have system-generated content.
  - The **Header Height** and **Footer Height** define how much space (in millimeters) is left between the top and bottom of the page, and the first or last line of content. This setting prevents the generated content from overlapping text or graphics on your content page.
  - (Optional) The **Back Pages from** are inserted after the content pages without modifications. Fill in just the first field for a single-sheet trailing page.



**Tip:** You can use the same pages for different roles. For example, you can select the same page as a content page and a back page to add an empty page at the end of the PDF. The PDF template file must have at least two pages, even if you only use one of the pages.

- 7) Click **OK**.

## Manage PDF style templates

---

You can change PDF style template settings and delete templates you no longer need.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Open the **Print to** dialog box, for example, by right-clicking a log entry and selecting **Print**.
- 2) Under **Page Setup**, select **Select** from the **Style Template** list.
- 3) Right-click a Style Template and select an action from the right-click menu. You can **Select** the selected Style Template or select **Properties** to adjust the template settings. You can also select **Copy** to copy the template name or **New Style Template** to create a new style template.


# Create rules from log entries

You can use log entry details to generate new rules.

To convert a log entry to a rule, the log entry must be created based on a rule (the entry contains a rule tag). Creating a rule this way allows you to make quick exceptions to the current policy. You can create the following types of rules:

- A rule that allows a connection from an entry that logs stopped traffic
- A rule that stops a connection from an entry that logs allowed traffic
- A rule that changes the log level or stops the logging of matching connections

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Logs**.
- 2) Highlight the rows you want to include in the operation. You can select multiple log entries to create several rules in the same operation.



**Note:**

Do not include incompatible entries in the selection:

- If you select multiple log entries, the **Sender** of all entries must be the same component.
- All selected entries must have a value in the **Rule Tag** field. (Entries must be created by rules in a policy.)

- 3) Right-click a selected log entry. Under **Create Rule**, select an option.



**Note:** The selection determines how the handling of matching connections is changed.

- 4) (Optional) Click **Select**, then change to the policy where the new rule is added. (For example, you can insert the rule in a subpolicy instead of the main policy.)
- 5) (Optional) Edit the **Comment**.  
The comment is added to the rule's Comment cell.
- 6) Select the **Action**. All actions create the displayed rules at the beginning of the first insert point in the selected policy. You can also optionally install the policy with the new rule or open the policy for editing (with the new rule highlighted for you).



**Note:** You cannot edit the rule in this dialog box. To edit the rule, select **Add Rules and Edit the Policy**.

- 7) Click **OK**.

## Related concepts

[The different parts of the policy editing view on page 853](#)

**Related tasks**[Install policies](#) on page 792

# Create Executable elements from log entries

Use log entries to create Executable elements.



**Note:** You can only create Executable elements from log entries that contain MD5 hash data.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

1) Select **Logs**.

The MD5 hash of each log entry is displayed in the **MD5 Hash** column.



**Tip:** If the column is not displayed, to add it, select **Tools > Columns > Column Selection**.

2) Right-click the log entry that you want to define as an Executable element, then select **New Executable**.

3) (Optional) Define the settings for the Executable element.

The **File Name** and **MD5 Hash** fields are automatically filled in.

4) (Optional) To categorize the Executables with an Executable Tag, select the **Tags** tab.

- To categorize by usage type, select **Add Tags > Usage**.
- To create a custom User Tag element, select **Add Tags**, then **Tools > New > User Tag**.

After selecting the Executable Tag, click **Select**.

5) Click **OK**.

**Related tasks**

[Use Client Applications, Executables, and predefined user types in IPv4 Access rules](#) on page 982



# Reports

### Contents

- [Getting started with reports](#) on page 261
- [Restricting a report's scope](#) on page 263
- [Designing reports](#) on page 264
- [Generate and view reports](#) on page 272
- [Exporting reports](#) on page 277
- [Example of reports](#) on page 282

Reports are summaries of logs and statistics that allow you to combine large amounts of data into an easily viewable form.

You can process data from logs and engine statistics and generate easy-to-read diagrams, charts, and tables. The reports you generate are based on a Report Design. A Report Design can be a predefined design, a predefined design that you modify, or a custom design that you create.

## Getting started with reports

The Management Client provides extensive reporting tools for generating reports on information stored in the SMC. The summaries that make up the reports can be illustrated with different types of charts and tables.

Reports allow you to gather and visualize data in an easy-to-read format that provides an overview of what is happening in the network and that you can customize. Reports are configured and generated in the Monitoring view. You can view reports as graphs, charts, tables, and geolocation maps.

You can generate reports based on two types of runtime data:

- **Log data** — Consists of distinct events (for example, a connection opening or closing). It contains all details about each event including the exact time when the event occurred. Log data can be filtered granularly, but running statistics from the raw logs can be slow, especially when using a long data period.
- **Counter data** — Consists of pre-processed summaries of statistics that are based on sums or averages of events or traffic units within a certain period. Counter data that is older than an hour is consolidated by the hour. Counter items produce statistics quickly, even for long periods of data, but they can only be filtered by sender.

You can create reports on log, alert, and audit entries and statistical monitoring information.

You can generate reports based on predefined Report Designs and Report Sections or on Report Designs that you have created yourself. You can use your own Style Template for PDF creation to give the reports a unified corporate look.

You can view the reports in the Management Client and in the Web Portal.

You can export reports in PDF, HTML, or plain text format, so that the files can be printed and shared. You can also directly email reports as they are generated.

Various ready-made Report Designs are provided. You can customize the existing templates or design new reports to meet your needs.

In addition to creating and generating reports based on Report Designs, you can also quickly create reports in the **Logs** view, in the Log Analysis arrangement, for example.

To provide auditing information in compliance with regulatory standards, you can generate a purpose-built System Summary report that summarizes elements, administrators, policies, and other details about system configuration and events.

### Related concepts

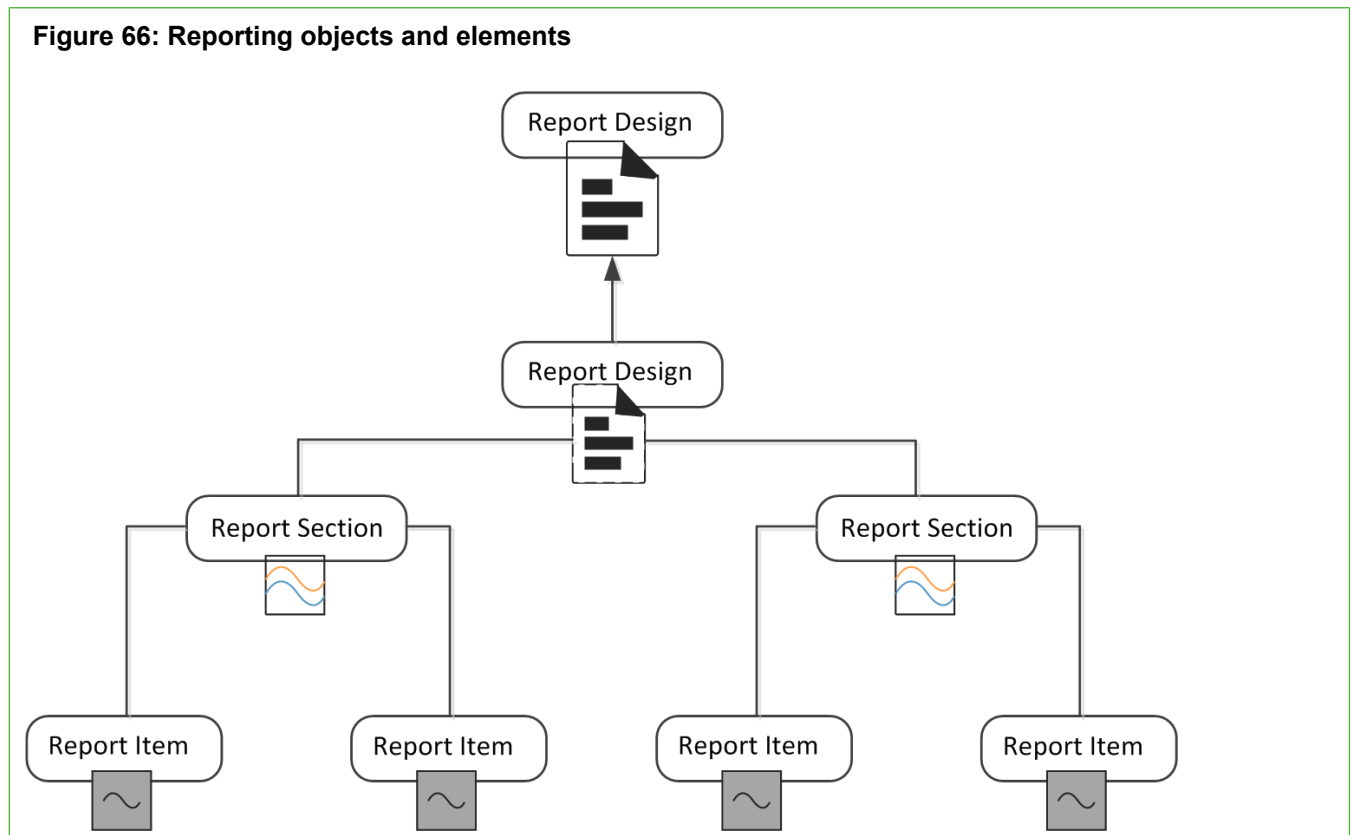
[Statistics arrangement of the Logs view](#) on page 238

## How reports are constructed

Reports are summaries of log data and statistical monitoring information. Reports consist of *Report Items*, *Report Sections*, and *Report Designs*.

The following illustration shows their relationships.

**Figure 66: Reporting objects and elements**



The Report Design is the main container for a particular type of report. The Report Designs are used as the basis for Report Tasks that generate the reports that you can view.

The Report Design consists of one or more Report Sections. A Report Section defines parameters for all items within it. It mainly defines how the information is displayed, such as the type of chart and the number of top items shown. Each Report Section in the Report Design creates a separate chart and table in the generated report.

Each Report Section contains one or more Report Items. Each Report Item represents a way to summarize the data. For example, a Report Item might summarize the total number of connections counted between the start and end times defined for the task that generates the report.

Each item adds specific information to the chart or table that the Report Section generates. For example, the items, total traffic volume, sent traffic volume, and received traffic volume, are shown as separate lines on the curve chart that the Report Section generates.

## Report configuration overview

---

Reports consist of Report Designs that include relevant sections and items.

Follow these general steps to create and generate reports:

- 1) Customize an existing Report Design or create a new Report Design.
- 2) Customize or add Report Sections or Items.
- 3) Generate the report.

### Related concepts

[Designing reports](#) on page 264

[Defining what Report Sections to use in a Report](#) on page 267

### Related tasks

[Generate and view reports](#) on page 272

## Restricting a report's scope

---

There are various tools you can use to focus the scope of your Reports.

## Data filters for reports

---

Filters are the main tool for increasing the granularity of reports.

The Report Items define some general criteria for selecting data. For example, you can produce a report of connections by source IP address. Defining general criteria is a good way to get an overview, but in many cases, you want more specific information.

For example, a general item such as the total number of logged connections can be made much more specific. To make this item more specific, apply a filter that matches a single pair of source and destination IP addresses. The filter only counts connections between these two hosts.

Only log-based raw data is suitable for log filters. Counter Statistics Data items use pre-counted statistical data instead of logs, so most log data filters cannot be used with Counter Statistics Report Items. You can only filter Counter Statistics Report Items by sender (the component that generated the statistics).

You can define a filter at one or more of the following levels:

- 1) **Report Task** — Applies to the single report produced by a particular task or to all reports produced by a task that is scheduled to run regularly.

- 2) **Report Design** — Applies to all reports produced using the Report Design.
- 3) **Report Section** — Applies to all items included in the section.
- 4) **Report Item** — Applies to that specific item only.

If filters are applied at several of these levels, all filters are applied and the log entries are filtered top-down in the order listed. Each filtering stage completely excludes non-matching log entries for the stage in which the filter is applied and all further stages. For example, select the filter, TCP destination port 80, for a Report Section. Then, all items in that section only process information in log entries that mention TCP destination port 80.

## Reports within administrative Domains

If there are administrative Domains configured, the reports are Domain-specific.

While logged on to a Domain, you can only create reports concerning the components that belong to that Domain. If you are allowed to log on to the Shared Domain and have unrestricted permissions, you can create Reports concerning components in any Domain.

The Reports created in the Shared Domain are visible to administrators in all other Domains. If the reports contain sensitive data that must not be displayed to all administrators in all Domains, create the reports in a specific Domain.

### Related concepts

[Getting started with Domain elements](#) on page 389

## Reporting on the configuration database and audit logs

While other reports are based on logs and statistics, the System Report is based on information collected from the Management Server's configuration database and audit logs.

The report includes details like administrator and Web Portal user activity, account settings, configuration of and changes to the Firewall and IPS engines, and configuration of the Management Server.

The report can help you provide the required data for auditing in compliance with regulations, such as the Payment Card Industry (PCI) Data Security Standard.

The report is generated, exported, and edited in the same way as other types of reports. The only difference is the content of the report.

## Designing reports

Report Designs determine how to process the data and how the results are displayed.

They can also determine which template is used for PDF exports and which charts appear on them. Ready-made Report Designs serve as a useful guide for constructing your own Report Designs. You can also create custom Report Designs.



Figure 67: Report Design

- 1 Report overview
- 2 Heading Section
- 3 Report Sections
- 4 Properties of the selected element

There are several ways to create Report Designs. Although you can start by defining a new empty Report Design, it is often easier to use one of the predefined Report Designs as a template. The comments in the properties of predefined Report Designs and Sections explain their general purpose.

The Report Design properties specify, for example, the time period for the report. You can define a period comparison for the Report Design. This feature allows you to compare values between two identical time periods. For example, if the time period is one week, you can compare the results for this week to the results from the previous week.


### Related tasks




[Modify Report Design elements](#) on page 266

[Create Report Design elements](#) on page 266

# Modify Report Design elements

If you have an existing Report Design, you can add or remove sections or items.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Reports > Design**.
- 3) Right-click the Report Design that you want to edit, then select **Edit Report Design**.
- 4) After making your changes, click  **Save** or select  **Tools > Save As**.


## Related tasks

[Create Report Design elements](#) on page 266

# Create Report Design elements



First you create a Report Design, then you add items to it.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Reports > Design**.
- 3) Right-click **Design**, then select **New Report Design**.
- 4) Select a template for the new Report Design, then click **OK**.
- 5) Enter a name for the new Report Design.
- 6) (Optional) Select a **Filter**.



**Note:** When you generate a report, all filters defined in the report task properties, in the Report Design, Report Sections, and individual Report Items are used to filter the data. If the filters do not intersect, empty Report Sections might be generated in the report.

- 7) Adjust the other properties as needed.
- 8) Click  **Save** or select  **Tools > Save As**.

**Related concepts**

[Using Log Data Context elements](#) on page 245

[Defining what Report Sections to use in a Report](#) on page 267

[Creating and editing local filters](#) on page 287

## Defining what Report Sections to use in a Report

A Report Design consists of one or more Report Sections, which define parameters for all Report Items. You can modify and create Report Sections in a Report Design.

Each Report Section in the Report Design creates a separate chart or table (or both) in the generated report.



**Tip:** To browse and edit predefined Report Sections, select **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring > Reports > Sections**.



**Tip:** You can create customized report sections from the Statistics arrangement of the **Logs** view.

## Customize Report Sections and Items

You can add predefined Report Sections to your Report Design and then modify their contents and properties according to your needs.



**Tip:** Use Heading Sections that contain a description to group the different Report Sections.

A Report Section represents a collection of Report Items in reports. Each Report Section adds a separate summary (chart or table) to the report. Depending on the summary type, the summary can be presented in one or more of the following ways:

- Bar chart
- Stacked bar chart
- Curve chart
- Stacked curve chart
- Pie chart
- Geolocation map
- Table

The available types of Report Section summaries are explained in the following table.

**Table 32: Summary types**

Summary type	Description	Visualization
Progress	Illustrates how events are spread out within the reporting period. This summary type is useful for finding trends in the data. Example: A line chart showing the volume of traffic during a 24-hour period.	A bar chart, stacked bar chart, curve chart, or stacked curve chart.
Top Rate	Illustrates events with the highest occurrences. This summary type is useful for highlighting the most common values in the data. Example: A bar chart showing the number of connections to the five IP addresses that have received the most connections yesterday.  The first Report Item in a top rate summary section must have a sorting criteria “by X” (for example, allowed connections by source IP address). The sorting criteria is applied to all items in the section for ranking the top rates.	A bar chart, a pie chart, or a geolocation map. A bar chart is more suitable for displaying many top rates, whereas a pie chart is better at illustrating the relative proportions. A geolocation map shows the distribution of events according to physical location.
Summary Table	A simple table for displaying the exact event counts. This summary type is useful for providing data for further processing, for example, in a spreadsheet application.	A table.
System Information	Summarizes current configuration information in the Management Server’s internal database. Example: A listing of all engines with the software versions, names of the currently installed policies, and the latest policy upload times.	A table.

A Report Item represents a value that you want counted in log data or statistical monitoring information. (Allowed traffic in bits or the number of allowed connections are examples of values that can be counted.)

The data for the Report Items is generated in the following ways:

- A simple count of how many log entries have a certain value within the reporting period. For example, the Allowed Connections Report Item counts the log entries that have the value Allowed in the Action field. A simple count is how the results for most Report Items are summed.
- A count of how many log entries have a certain value within the reporting period grouped “by X” criteria. For example, Allowed connections by source IP address presents a chart for an adjustable number of IP addresses that have the most allowed connections within the reporting period.
- Sums or averages of traffic volumes in log entries for Report Items of the “traffic” type (for example, Allowed traffic). Access rules that have the accounting option enabled in the Firewall Policy generate the data for “traffic” items. Interface statistics often provide more accurate total volumes, since accounting (and logging in general) is not active for all rules.
- Values stored in the Management Server’s database for System Information items. The statistical data is pre-summarized. It is not as detailed as the monitoring statistics displayed in the Home view and cannot be filtered in detail like the log data.

#### Related concepts




[Data filters for reports](#) on page 263

**Related tasks**[Modify Report Sections](#) on page 269[Create Report Sections](#) on page 270

# Modify Report Sections

You can add predefined Report Sections to your Report Design, then edit their contents and properties according to your needs.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Reports > Design**.
- 3) Right-click the Report Design that you want to edit, then select **Edit Report Design**.
- 4) Select the section in the Report Design.  
The section properties are displayed in the **Section Properties** pane.
- 5) Edit the section properties.
- 6) (Optional) Group Sections under a Heading Section.
  - a) Right-click a Section that you want to add to a group, then select **Move to New Heading Section**.
  - b) In the **Section Properties** pane, enter a name and optionally a description for the group of Sections.
- 7) (Optional) To change the order of the Sections or to add more Sections under a Heading Section, drag them to the order you want.
- 8) Click  **Save** or select  **Tools > Save As**.

**Related concepts**[Using Log Data Context elements](#) on page 245[Creating filters](#) on page 284**Related tasks**[Create Report Sections](#) on page 270

# Create Report Sections

You can create new Report Sections in a Report Design.



**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Reports > Design**.
- 3) Right-click the Report Design that you want to edit, then select **Edit Report Design**.
- 4) Right-click in the Report Design, then select **Add New Section**.
- 5) Select a section from the list.



**Note:** If you cannot find an appropriate section in the list, select **Select**, then select a section in the **Select Section** dialog box. If you want to add a section based on a statistical item, select **Create from Item**, then select an item from the **Select Item** dialog box.

The new section is added to the Report Design and the background of the new section is highlighted.

- 6) Modify the section properties.
- 7) Click  **Save** or select  **Tools > Save As**.

## Related tasks

[Modify Report Sections](#) on page 269

# Create and modify Report Items

You can add and edit statistical items in Report Sections.


Statistical items count the following types of data:

- Log entries (referred to as *records* in the item names)
- Summaries of some log fields included in those entries (such as traffic volumes in log data that contains accounting information)
- Gathered statistical data (counter items)
- System information to summarize current configuration information in the Management Server's internal database

# Add Report Items

You can add Items to a Report Section.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Reports > Design**.
- 3) Right-click the Report Design that you want to edit, then select **Edit Report Design**.
- 4) Select the Report Section to which you want to add Items.
- 5) In the **Section Properties** pane, click **Items**.
- 6) Select **Add > Add Item**, then select the Items to add.



**Tip:** You can add one nested Item under the first Item. Select **Add > Add Secondary Item**, then select the Item to add. The Item is nested in the generated Report.


- 7) Click **OK**.


## Related tasks

[Modify Report Items](#) on page 271

# Modify Report Items

You can modify Items that are included in a Report Section.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Reports > Design**.
- 3) Right-click the Report Design that you want to edit, then select **Edit Report Design**.
- 4) Select the Report Section in which you want to modify the Item selection.
- 5) In the **Report Properties** pane, click **Items**.
- 6) Right-click the item that you want to modify, then select **Properties**.
- 7) Modify the Item properties.

- 8) To save the changes to the Item properties, click **OK**.
- 9) (Optional) To change the order of the added Items, drag and drop them.
- 10) Click **OK**.
- 11) Click **Save** or select **Tools > Save As**.

#### Related concepts

[Using Log Data Context elements](#) on page 245

## Generate and view reports

Reports are generated from the Report Designs that are under the Reports tree of the **Monitoring Configuration** view.

When you generate a report, the Management Server sends the task to all Log Servers that are not excluded from processing. The task's progress and possible errors are shown next to the task under the selected Report Design.

Each Log Server processes the task and returns the summary data for each Report Section. The Management Server merges the data from the Log Servers into one report. If one of the selected Log Servers cannot be contacted for any reason, the execution of the task is delayed until the Log Server becomes available.

#### Related concepts

[Designing reports](#) on page 264


#### Related tasks

[Generate reports](#) on page 272

[View reports](#) on page 276

## Generate reports

After you have created your Report Design, you can set the time period that you want details about, then generate your report.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Reports > Design**.
- 3) Right-click a Report Design, then select **Start**.



- 4) Select the **Period Beginning** and **Period End** for the report and enter the date as indicated. Then, in the time of the workstation running the Management Client, enter the time using the 24-hour clock.



**Note:** The default **1 Day Period** option defines the previous day as the reporting period, beginning at 00:00:00 that day and ending exactly 24 hours later.

- 5) (Optional) In the **Start Earliest** field, enter the delay in minutes after the end date and time.



**Note:** Report generation begins after the specified delay has passed. The purpose of the delay is to make sure that the system has all relevant data available. If the **Period End** date and time are in the future, the report is generated on the specified date and time after the **Start Earliest** delay has passed.

- 6) (Optional) To restrict the data included in the report, select a **Filter**.



**Note:** When you generate a report, all filters defined in the report task properties, in the Report Design, Report Sections, and individual Report Items are used to filter the data. If the filters do not intersect, empty Report Sections might be generated in the report.

- 7) (Shared Domain only, and if more than one Domain exists) To make a report that includes information about all Domains, select **Report over All Domains**.

#### Related tasks

[Define report tasks](#) on page 273

[Cancel ongoing report tasks](#) on page 276

[View reports](#) on page 276

## Define report tasks

You can set the task to be repeated daily, and also set the output format for the task.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Reports > Design**.
- 3) Right-click a Report Design, then select **Start**.
- 4) Click the **Task** tab.
- 5) Select how often you want to **Repeat** the report generation.  
The time period selected in the Report Design determines the available choices.
- 6) (Optional) Select a **Category**.

- 7) Select one or more outputs to be produced directly.



**Note:** To view the report before deciding if you want to process it further, leave only **Store Report** selected.

- **Text Export/PDF Export/HTML Export** — The report is stored as a text, PDF, or HTML file on the Management Server in the <installation directory>/data/reports/files/<Report Design name>/ directory. The report is named according to the time range chosen.



**Note:** If you installed the Management Server in the C:\Program Files \Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center directory on Windows, some program data might be stored in the C:\ProgramData\Fortinet\Stonesoft Management Center\data directory.

- **Post Process** — The report is generated according to options chosen and then a script is started. By default, the script is SgPostProcessReport.bat, which is in the <installation directory>/data/reports/bin directory on the Management Server.

- 8) (Optional) Enter the **E-mail Address** to which the completed report is sent directly as email. Separate addresses with commas.



**Note:** The SMTP server for sending reports must be defined in the Management Server's properties.

- 9) (PDF exports only) Select a **Style Template**. If you use the default Style Template, you can select whether to create a portrait or landscape PDF. If you use a customized template, the orientation is defined in the template.

### Related concepts

[Tab-delimited text report files](#) on page 280

### Related tasks

[Use style templates in PDFs](#) on page 256

[Select data sources for reports](#) on page 275

[View reports](#) on page 276

[Modify Management Server elements](#) on page 441

## Post-processing report files

You can customize reports by post processing them as part of the Report Task.

Post-processing runs the <installation directory>/data/reports/bin/sgPostProcessReport script on the Management Server and passes command arguments to the script. The following table explains the possible command arguments.

**Table 33: Command arguments for post-processing reports**

Command argument	Explanation
-creation_time YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm:ss	The report creation time.
-filter_categ name	The category assigned to the task filter.

Command argument	Explanation
-filter_name filter	The name of the filter assigned to the task.
-html_file filename	The file name of a report exported as HTML.
-pdf_file filename	The file name of a report exported as PDF.
-period_begin YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm:ss	The begin time of the reporting period.
-period_end YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm:ss	The end time of the reporting period.
-report_categ name	The category assigned to the report (and to the report file).
-report_file_title title	The title of the report file.
-report_name name	The name of the report.
-text_file filename	The file name of a report exported as plain text.

The script parses the values from the command arguments to use the values for post-processing. Only parameters that have a defined value are forwarded to the post-processing script.


When a parameter has multiple values, each of the values is forwarded as a separate command argument.


#### Example of using multiple values

When the report has the two categories “Example Corporation” and “weekly report”, these values are forwarded to the script as `-report_categ Example Corporation` and `-report_categ weekly report`.

## Select data sources for reports

By default, the Management and Log Servers are selected as data sources, but you can select the source of your choosing.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Reports > Design**.
- 3) Right-click a Report Design, then select **Start**.
- 4) Click the **Storage** tab.
- 5) Select the data storage type:
  - **Default** — The Management Servers and Log Servers are used as the data sources.
  - **Primary archive** — Archived data is used as the data source.
  - **Custom** — A combination of archived data and data provided by the Management and Log Servers is used as the data source.
- 6) Select the Management Servers and Log Servers from which you want to include data in the report.

- 7) To start generating the report, click **OK**.

### Related tasks

[View reports](#) on page 276

## Cancel ongoing report tasks

If the report you are generating includes large amounts of data, generating the report can take a long time.

This situation might result when, for example, the time frame is wide and the data filter in use does not restrict the data sources.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select ⚙️ **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Reports > History**.
- 3) Right-click the task you want to cancel, then select **Abort** or **Delete**.
  - Aborted tasks can be edited and restarted by double-clicking them.
  - Deleted tasks are permanently removed.

## View reports

After you generate a report, it is available for viewing in the Reports view.

A report might be automatically deleted according to the expiration setting defined in the Report Design. If you want to keep a generated report permanently, we recommend exporting it.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select ⚙️ **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Reports > History**.

The created reports are automatically grouped according to their creation date.
- 3) To group reports by date or design, select ⚙️ **Tools > Organize By > By Date** or ⚙️ **Tools > Organize By > By Design**.

- 4) Double-click the report you want to view.



**Tip:** If you want to see the data of a report section in table format, right-click the section, then select **Show Table**. The table is added to the section.


The contents of the report are shown.


#### Related concepts

[Exporting reports](#) on page 277

## Change the properties of generated reports

You can change the Category and expiration time of a report.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Reports > History**.
- 3) Right-click the title of the report you want to change, then select **Properties**.
- 4) (Optional) Select a **Category**.
- 5) (Optional) To change the time when the report is automatically deleted, change the value in the **Expiration** field. To delete the report yourself, select **Never**.
- 6) Click **OK**.

#### Related concepts

[How Categories help you view only certain elements](#) on page 159

[Exporting reports](#) on page 277

#### Related tasks

[Generate and view reports](#) on page 272

## Exporting reports

You can export PDF, HTML, and text reports manually for previously generated reports or automatically when generating the report.

Automatically exported files can be automatically sent out as email or saved in the <installation directory>/data/reports/files/report\_design/ directory on the Management Server.

The report files are named according to the report's time range as follows: startdate\_starttime\_enddate\_endtime\_N, where N is a sequential number (starting from 1) that identifies files from the same time range.

#### Example report file name

20150423\_100000\_20150424\_180000\_1.txt is the first text report generated for the time range from 23 April 2015 10:00:00 to 24 April 2015 18:00:00.

#### Related tasks

[Generate and view reports](#) on page 272


## Export reports as PDF files



When you export a report file as a PDF file, a default template is automatically used for the report.

You can also import a Style Template for the report you are about to export.



**Note:** After exporting, check the result. If the report text or charts are placed on top of your template background, you might need to adjust the headers and footers in your template.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Expand the **Reports** branch, then select **History**.
- 3) Double-click the report you want to export.  
The report opens.
- 4) Select what part of the report to export:
  - To export the whole report — Select  **Menu** > **File** > **Print**.
  - To export a section of the report — Right-click the section, then select **Print section**.
- 5) Select **PDF** as the **Format**.
- 6) Select a printing option:
  - To open the PDF in your default PDF reader — Select **Print to PDF reader**.
  - To save the PDF — Select **Print to File**, then browse to the location where you want to save the file.
- 7) (Optional) Select the **Style Template**.  
If you use the default Style Template, you can select whether to create a portrait or landscape PDF. If you use a customized template, the orientation is defined in the template.

- 8) Click **OK**.  
The PDF is generated.


**Related tasks**



[Use style templates in PDFs](#) on page 256

[Generate and view reports](#) on page 272

## Export reports as HTML files

When you export a report as an HTML file, a default template is automatically used as the background for the report.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Expand the **Reports** branch, then select **History**.
- 3) Double-click the report you want to export.  
The report opens.
- 4) Select what part of the report to export:
  - To export the whole report — Select  **Menu** > **File** > **Print**.
  - To export a section of the report — Right-click the section, then select **Print section**.
- 5) Select **HTML** as the **Format**.
- 6) Click **Browse**, then select where you want to save the HTML files.
- 7) Click **OK**.  
The HTML files are saved in the defined location. The HTML report opens in your default web browser.



**Related tasks**

[Generate and view reports](#) on page 272

# Export reports as tab-delimited text files

You can export a plain text file, without any formatting.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Expand the **Reports** branch, then select **History**.
- 3) Double-click the report you want to export.
- 4) Select what part of the report to export:
  - To export the whole report — Select  **Menu** > **File** > **Print**.
  - To export a section of the report — Right-click the section, then select **Print section**.
- 5) Select **TXT** as the **Format**.
- 6) Click **Browse**, then select where you want to save the file.
- 7) Click **OK**.

## Tab-delimited text report files

Tab-delimited text files can be used for further processing.

The tab-delimited text files contain the statistics in tabulated tables. The tab characters and the operating environment-specific line endings delimit the text.

**Table 34: Structure of a tab-delimited text report file**

Line no.	File content	Description
1	<report title>, <start time> - <end time>	Start and end time define the reporting period in format YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm:ss.
2	<empty line>	
3	<section content for each section>	Each section of the report follows the format described in the following table.

Line no.	Section content	Description
1	<section name>[: <section comment>]	Optional section comment with a leading semicolon (;) might follow the section name.
2	<empty line>	
3	<section data>   “No data”	Section data follows the format described in the following table. If the section contains no data, the text “No data” is displayed instead.



Line no.	Section content	Description
Section's last line	<empty line>	

Line no.	Section data content	Description
1	<table heading>	Tab delimited column labels. Some columns might not have a label, and labels might be padded with trailing spaces.
2	<empty line>	
3	<table rows>	Tab delimited values. Value in any given column can be empty. The column values are not padded.
Section data's last line	<empty line>	

## Email reports

Reports can be emailed directly as they are generated.

### Before you begin

Define the SMTP server settings in the Management Server's properties.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the Report Design.
- 2) Click the **Task** tab, then enter the **E-mail Address**.  
To enter multiple email addresses, separate them with commas.

### Related tasks

[Modify Management Server elements](#) on page 441

# Example of reports

---

The example illustrates a common use for reports and general steps on how the scenario in question is configured.

## Example: Identifying a disruptive internal user

---

An example of administrators looking for a specific trend in network activity to identify a specific user.

Administrators at Company A notice that downloads have gone up dramatically over the past week. They suspect that there might be an individual user that is excessively downloading files from the Internet. To confirm their suspicions, the Administrators decide to run a report that shows them who has used the most bandwidth in the network.

The administrators take the following steps:

- 1) Activate Log Accounting Information for each rule that allows connections from internal hosts to the Internet and install the policy. (Incoming connections to internal workstations are not allowed.)
- 2) Wait for a full workday for the logs with accounting information to be generated.
- 3) Create a filter that matches the IP address space of regular workstations as the source address and any external IP addresses as the destination address.
- 4) Create a Report Design based on the Firewall Daily summary and attach the filter created in the previous step to the Report Design.
- 5) Increase the “Top Limit” value for the section “Traffic by src. IP” to see more results.
- 6) Generate a report for the previous day to check the traffic volumes for the top hosts.

# Filtering data

### Contents

- [Getting started with filtering data](#) on page 283
- [Creating filters](#) on page 284
- [Organizing Filter elements](#) on page 294
- [Examples of filters](#) on page 295

Filters allow you to select data based on values that it contains. Most frequently, you use filters when viewing logs, but filters can also be used for other tasks, such as exporting logs and selecting data for reports.

## Getting started with filtering data

Network traffic can generate a large amount of log data. You can use filters to select data for many operations such as viewing log entries in the **Logs** view or generating statistical reports.

### Related concepts

- [Getting started with the Logs view](#) on page 233
- [Creating filters](#) on page 284
- [Organizing Filter elements](#) on page 294

### Related tasks

- [Use filters for browsing log entries](#) on page 243

## What filters do

Filters allow you to efficiently manage the large amounts of data that the system generates. Filters select entries by comparing values defined in the Filter to each data entry included in the filtering operation. The operation can use the filter to either include or exclude matching data.

You can use filters for selecting data in the following tasks:

- Browsing logs, alerts, and audit data.
- Browsing in all session monitoring views.
- Creating reports.
- Selecting which logs administrators who have restricted accounts or Web Portal User accounts are allowed to view.
- Defining how logs are highlighted in the Logs view.
- Forwarding logs to external third-party devices.

- Forwarding audit data to external third-party devices.
- Browsing which IP addresses, ports, and protocols are on the engines' blacklists.
- Pruning log data.
- Exporting and deleting log data and alerts.
- Creating Correlation Situations to analyze engine and Log Server events.

## Filter types

---

There are two types of filters in the Management Client: local and permanent filters.

- Local filters are specific to a view or an element. You cannot use a local filter anywhere else in the Management Client.
- Permanent Filter elements, which you can use anywhere in the Management Client. There are predefined permanent Filters. You can also create new permanent Filters.

## How filters are created

---

You can create filters in four basic ways.

- Based on criteria you define — You can create a local filter or permanent Filter element, and define filtering criteria in the Filter properties.
- Based on other Filters — You can create a copy of a Filter element or copy-and-paste parts of filters to other filters.
- Based on existing log entries — You can create local filters in Monitoring views where you can view logs, then save them as permanent Filter elements.
- Based on element configuration — Some local filters are created automatically by your selections in specific views or elements.

You cannot edit the predefined Filters, but you can create editable copies. Filter elements can be imported and updated when you activate new dynamic update packages, so the selection and names of predefined filters can change.

The default Filter elements are in the System Elements Category and have the Tags *System* or *Correlation* (for filters used in Correlation Situations).

## Creating filters

---

You can create local filters that are specific to an element or view, then save them as permanent Filter elements to use globally.

### Related concepts

[Creating and editing local filters](#) on page 287

### Related tasks

[Create or edit Filter elements](#) on page 290

# Basics of constructing filters

You construct filters using fields, values of the fields, and operations.

Filters are constructed from the following parts:

- The *fields* that you want to match in the data (for example, there are separate fields for source IP address and port in logs). You can filter data according to any field.
- The *values* in those fields that you want to match (for example, the exact port number or IP address you are interested in).
- *operations* define how the fields and values are matched to data entries (especially if there are several fields included as the filtering criteria).

A filter can have one or several fields. The more fields you have in a filter, the more specific the selection of log data becomes. For example, you can use the **IP source** field in the filter and get a selection of log data that matches the source IP address you specify. To limit the selection of log data even further, you could add a field for the destination port used.

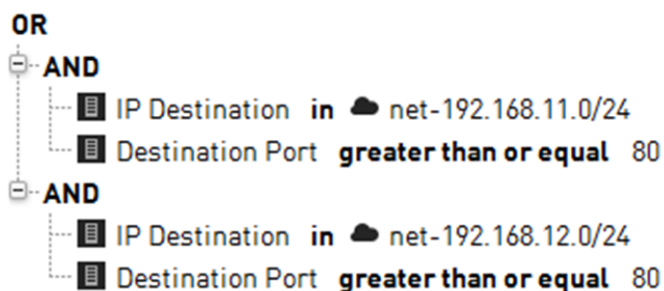
Different types of data entries contain different types of information, so the fields you add also restrict the general type of data that your filter matches. It is possible to create a filter that can never match any data if the combination of fields is not found in any single entry. However, everything depends on the general structure of the filter. It is possible to create filters that match related data in different types of entries using different fields as criteria. Depending on the field, you can define one to several values that you want to look for in the data. There are some operations (for example, Defined) for which a field value is not needed.

Operations define how field values in log data are compared to the field values defined in the filter. You can have as many operations in a filter as necessary, and you can also nest operations inside other operations. When you add two fields, you must always combine the fields with an operation. Each field in a filter is attached to one of these operations:

- Calculations (*BITWISE* and *SUM OF*)
- Comparisons (for example, *EQUAL TO*, *GREATER THAN*, *SMALLER THAN*)
- Logicals (*AND*, *NOT*, *OR*)

## Filter example

**Figure 68: Matching events with a filter**



The illustration shows a Filter with several fields and operations. This Filter matches if the destination IP address is in the 192.168.11.0/24 network AND the destination port is 80 or greater OR if the destination IP address is in the 192.168.12.0/24 network AND the destination port is 80 or greater.

A data entry of a connection to host 192.168.11.10 on port 80 matches the first AND operation in the example filter. The same connection does not match the second AND operation in the Filter. Since the two AND operations are combined with OR, the Filter as a whole is considered a match and the data is selected for the task that is being carried out.

**Filters that match a single value**

A filter that matches a single source IP address:

```
Src Addr EQUAL TO 192.168.1.101
```

Where `Src Addr` is a field, `EQUAL TO` is the operation, and the IP address is a value.

**Filters that match several values**

A filter that matches any non-empty value for destination port:

```
Dst Port IS DEFINED
```

A filter that matches all destination ports between 1024 and 49152:

```
Dst Port BETWEEN 1024 AND 49152
```

A filter that matches any of three alternative destination ports:

```
Dst Port IN 51111, 52222, 53333
```

**Complex filters that use logical operations**

You can add the logical operations NOT, AND, and OR. The NOT operation negates the criteria you set.

A filter that matches all destination ports except ports between 1024 and 49152:

```
NOT
```

```
Dst Port BETWEEN 1024 AND 49152
```

When you add more than one field to a filter, you must define how the fields are used in relation to each other. You must use either AND (all field values must be present in the same entry) or OR (a data entry matches the filter if any one field value is found).

A filter that matches if the destination port is lower than 1024 and the source is a particular IP address:

```
AND
```

```
Src Addr EQUAL TO 192.168.1.101
```

```
Dst Port SMALLER THAN 1024
```

A filter that matches either of two destination ports:

```
OR
```

```
Dst Port EQUAL TO 80
```

```
Dst Port EQUAL TO 8080
```

You can apply the AND and OR operations to other AND and OR statements to create more complex statements. You can also negate whole AND and OR sections with NOT

**Related concepts**

[Creating and editing local filters](#) on page 287

**Related tasks**

[Create or edit Filter elements](#) on page 290

# Creating and editing local filters

---

Local filters are valid only in the view or in the element in which they are created.

Local filters that you create in the following Monitoring views are temporary. They are only available until you close the view:

- Logs view.
- Connections view.
- Blacklist view.
- Users view.
- VPN SAs view.
- Routing Monitoring view.
- SSL VPNs Monitoring view.

Local filters created or edited for the following elements are saved with the element:

- Report Designs.
- Administrator elements.
- Log Server elements.
- Management Server elements.
- Correlation Situations.

You can save local filters as permanent Filter elements in all views. These Filter elements can then be used anywhere in the Management Client.

## Create local filters


---

You can create local filters in various views in the Management Client.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Open a view or element for editing.

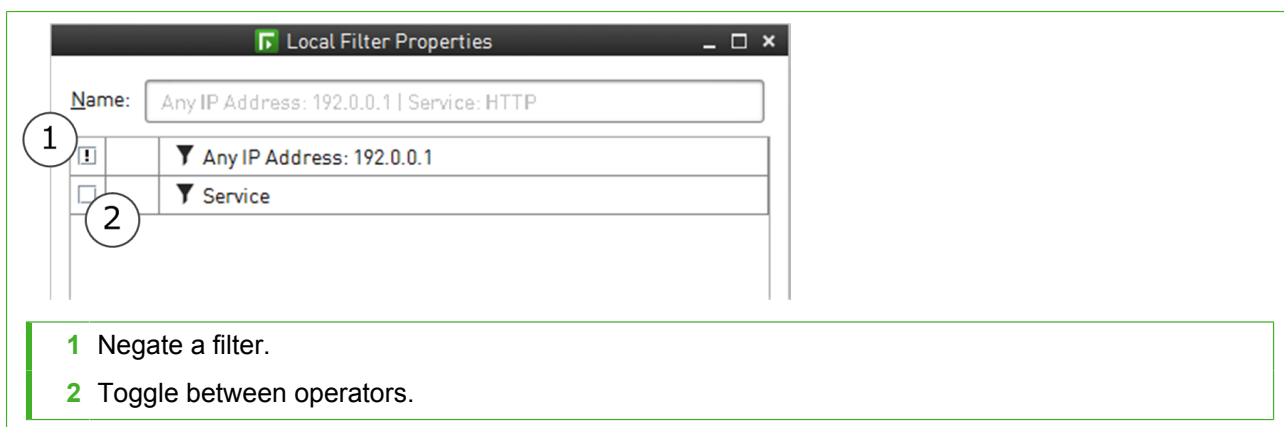
2) Depending on the view or dialog box, create the local filter in one of the following ways:

View/Dialog box		Configuration steps
Monitoring views (Logs, Connections, Blacklist, VPN SAs, Users, Routing, or SSL VPNs)		<p>On the <b>Filter</b> tab in the <b>Query</b> pane, click <b>New</b>, then select <b>New &gt; Filter</b> to create a filter from a list of available fields, or select <b>New &gt; Filter:&lt;field name&gt;</b> to create a filter based on a preselected field.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Tip:</b> You can also drag and drop log data rows onto the <b>Filter</b> tab                 </div>
Reports view	Report Design	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Select the name of the Report Design.</li> <li>2) In the <b>Report Properties</b> pane, click the <b>Select Element</b> button next to the <b>Filter</b> field.</li> </ol>
	Report Section	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Select the Report Section.</li> <li>2) In the <b>Section Properties</b> pane, click the <b>Select Element</b> button next to the <b>Filter</b> field.</li> </ol>
	Report Item	Double-click the Report Item.
Administrator Properties dialog box		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Switch to the <b>Permissions</b> tab.</li> <li>2) Click <b>Select</b> next to <b>Filter</b>. The <b>Local Filter Properties</b> dialog box opens.</li> </ol>
Log Server Properties or Management Server Properties dialog box		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) For the Log Server, switch to the <b>Log Forwarding</b> tab, then click <b>Add</b> to add a Log Forwarding rule.</li> <li>2) For the Management Server, switch to the <b>Audit Forwarding</b> tab, then click <b>Add</b> to add an Audit Forwarding rule.</li> <li>3) Double-click the <b>Filter</b> cell. The <b>Local Filter Properties</b> dialog box opens.</li> </ol>
Correlation Situation Properties dialog box		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Switch to the <b>Context</b> tab.</li> <li>2) Click <b>Select</b> next to the <b>Context</b> field, then select <b>Compress</b>, <b>Group</b>, <b>Match</b>, or <b>Sequence</b>.</li> <li>3) For <b>Compress</b> or <b>Match</b>, click <b>Select</b> next to the <b>Compress filter</b> field. The <b>Local Filter Properties</b> dialog box opens.</li> <li>4) For <b>Group</b> or <b>Sequence</b>, double-click the <b>Event Match</b> cell. The <b>Local Filter Properties</b> dialog box opens.</li> </ol>

3) (If not in a Monitoring view) Select **Add > New > Filter** to create a filter from a list of available fields or **Add > New > Filter:<field name>** to create a filter based on a preselected field.



- 4) Edit the filter in the **Filter Properties** dialog box.
  - If you are creating a filter from a list of available fields, enter an optional name in the **Name** field. Select the setting for **Undefined Value Policy**, then define the filtering criteria.
  - If you are creating a filter based on a preselected field, edit the filter properties. The available options depend on the field type.
- 5) Click **Apply**.  
The filter is added to the **Local Filter Properties** dialog box.  
In a Monitoring view, the filter is added to the **Filter** tab in the **Query** pane.
- 6) (Optional) Edit the local filter:
  - To negate a filter row, click the corresponding checkbox. This option filters out entries that match the filter.
  - If a row contains more than one item, click the operator cell to toggle between the **and** and **or** operators.



- 7) (Optional) To save a local filter as a permanent Filter element, click **Save**. In a Monitoring view, click **Save**. You can use Filter elements in any view.
- 8) Click **OK**. In a Monitoring view, click **Apply**.

### Related tasks

[Save local filters as permanent Filter elements](#) on page 289

## Save local filters as permanent Filter elements

Local filters are specific to the view or element for which they have been created. Saving local filters as permanent Filter elements allows you to apply these filters anywhere in the Management Client.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Create a local filter.
- 2) In the **Local Filter Properties** dialog box, click **Save**. In a Monitoring view, click **Save**.

- 3) Enter a name for the filter in the **Name** field, then click **OK**.

#### Related tasks

[Create local filters](#) on page 287

## Create or edit Filter elements

All the permanent Filter elements are stored and can be edited from one view.



**Tip:** An easy way to create a permanent Filter element is to create a local filter, then save it as a Filter element.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements** branch.
- 3) To create a new filter:
  - a) Right-click **Filters**.
  - b) Select **New > Filter**.
- 4) To edit an existing filter:
  - a) Browse to **Filters > All Filters**.
  - b) Right-click the filter, then select **Properties**.
- 5) Edit the filter properties, then define the filtering criteria.
- 6) Click **OK**.

#### Related concepts

[Benefits of filtering log entries](#) on page 242


#### Related tasks


[Save local filters as permanent Filter elements](#) on page 289

[Add or edit criteria in Filter elements](#) on page 291

# Add or edit criteria in Filter elements

You can add new criteria or edit the criteria of Filters that you have created.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Filters > All Filters**.
- 3) Right-click a filter you have created, then select **Properties**.



**Tip:** To edit a filter based on an existing system filter, right-click the filter, then select **New > Duplicate**.

- 4) Select the setting for **Undefined Value Policy**.  
This setting defines how data entries are matched when a field is included in the filter, but is not present in the entry. For example, a filter defines a range of destination ports, but the operation encounters a log entry from a protocol that does not use ports, such as ICMP.
- 5) If there is no logical operation (AND or OR) at the correct level, add one using the shortcut buttons above the editing pane.  
You can nest logical operations to create more complex filters. For example, you can create two AND sections under an OR condition to match either of the two sets of criteria.
- 6) To change a logical operation, right-click the operation, select **Change To**, then select the new operation.
- 7) To add a field:
  - a) Right-click the logical operation to which you want to add a field, then select **New > Select**.
  - b) Click **Fields**, then browse to the field group that contains the field you want to add, or browse to **All Fields** for a list of all available fields.
  - c) Select the field, then click **Select**.
- 8) To edit the field:
  - a) Right-click the field that was added, then select **Edit**.
  - b) Select the **Comparison**.  
The available comparison selection depends on the selected field and whether the field already contains one or more values.  
The most common comparisons are:
    - **Any Value** — Allows you to match any non-empty value in the field.
    - **Between** — Allows you to match a range (for example, a range of TCP/UDP ports).
    - **Contains** — Allows you to match any of several alternative values (for example, both an IPv4 address and an IPv6 address).
    - **In** — Allows you to match a single value (for example, an IP address or Network element).

- c) Depending on the comparison and type of field, define the values that you want the filter to match in one of the following ways:
    - Enter one or more values. For the **In** or **Contains** comparison, click **Add** to add the entered value to the value list.
    - Double-click the empty space in the value list, then select an element.
    - To edit a value that has been added to the value list, double-click the value.
    - To remove a value, right-click the value, then select **Remove**.
  - d) Click **Apply**.
- 9) To remove criteria, right-click the criteria, then select **Remove Row** or **Remove**.  
If you select **Remove Row**, all criteria nested under the row is moved up one level.  
If you select **Remove**, all criteria nested under the row is also removed.
  - 10) Click **OK**.

#### Related concepts

[Log entry fields](#) on page 1475

## How missing values are handled in Filter elements

You can adjust what happens when the Filter element is matched to data that does not contain any value for a field that the filter defines.

By default, log data matches the filter only if all fields in the filter are also found in log data.

Since there are different types of data entries, some entries might not contain any value for some field that a filter contains. For example, an Alert entry warning you that the monitoring connection from a Firewall engine has been lost does not contain any source or destination IP address information. The reason for this is that the entry is not related to traffic processing. If you apply a filter that matches an IP address in the **Logs** view, the Alert is filtered out of the view. Missing values that cannot be verified as matching or non-matching are called *undefined values* in the configuration.

To define in more detail how missing fields are handled, you have two options:

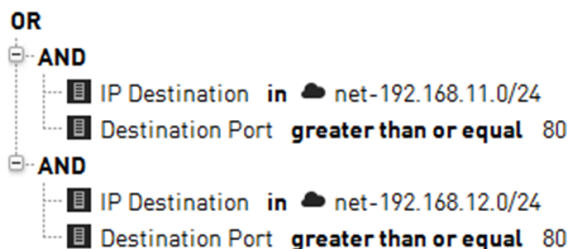
- The *Undefined value policy* setting defines whether log data matches the filter if there are missing fields.
- The *Any Value Comparison* operation allows you to define specific fields in the filter that the log data must always have. The value that the field contains is not taken into account. Data entries that do not have these fields do not match the filter.

You can use one of the four Undefined value policy settings to define how missing values are handled. The setting works differently depending on the structure of the filter. The results of logical operations (AND, OR, NOT) in the filter depend on the Undefined value policy setting. A logical operation is typically either *true* or *false*. However, if a field in the filter does not exist in a data entry, the logical operation is left *undefined*.

**Table 35: Undefined value policy settings**

Setting	Description
False by comparison	A Comparison operation is <i>false</i> if log data does not have all fields used in the filter. Depending on the structure of the filter, the log data does or does not match the Filter. For example, if the outermost operation in the filter is AND, the log data does not match the filter if any of the inner operations are <i>false</i> .
False by filter	Log data does not match the filter if the outermost operation in the filter is <i>undefined</i> because log data does not have all fields used in the filter. The filter is <i>false</i> .
True by filter	Log data matches the filter if the outermost operation in the filter is <i>undefined</i> because log data does not have all fields used in the filter. The filter is <i>true</i> .
Undefined	If the outermost operation is <i>undefined</i> because log data does not have all fields used in the filter, the <i>undefined</i> result is passed to the component that uses the filter. The handling of the <i>undefined</i> result varies according to the component that uses the filter.  In most cases, this setting works in the same way as “False by filter”. If the outermost operation is <i>undefined</i> because log data does not have all fields in the filter, the data does not usually match the filter.

### Undefined value policy settings

**Figure 69: Undefined values when matching an event**

A filter has the **IP destination** and **Destination port** fields. ICMP traffic, for example, does not have the **Destination port** field. If ICMP traffic is matched with the example filter, the filtering results vary according to the selected Undefined value policy:


- **False by comparison** — The AND operations are *false*. As a result, the OR operation is also *false*. The event does not match the filter.
- **False by filter** — The AND operations are *undefined* (neither *true* nor *false*). As a result, the OR operation is also *undefined*. The setting interprets the *undefined* result as *false*. The event does not match the filter.
- **True by filter** — The AND operations are *undefined* (neither *true* nor *false*). As a result, the OR operation is also *undefined*. The setting interprets the *undefined* result as *true*. The event matches the filter.
- **Undefined** — The AND operations are *undefined* (neither *true* nor *false*). As a result, the OR operation is also *undefined*. The Undefined setting passes the *undefined* value to the component that uses the log data. The handling of the data varies according to the component. Most components handle the data in the same way as False by filter, so that the event does not match this filter.


# Organizing Filter elements

Adding Filter Tags to permanent Filter elements that you create makes it easier to find filters when you want to use them. You can select several Filter Tags for each Filter element that you create.

## Create Filter Tag elements

Filter Tags help you organize Filter elements.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Filters**.
- 3) Right-click **Filters**, then select **New > Filter Tag**.
- 4) Enter a name in the **Name** field.
- 5) Click **OK**.

### Related tasks


[Change the Filter Tags of Filter elements](#) on page 294


## Change the Filter Tags of Filter elements

You can add Filter Tags to Filter elements, to make it easier to find a filter.



**Tip:** These steps show how to add or remove Filter Tags to multiple Filters, but you can also edit Filter Tags on the **Tags** tab in the properties of an individual Filter element.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Filters**, then select one or more Filter elements.



**Tip:** If you want to remove all references to a Filter Tag so that you can delete the Filter Tag, select all the filters in the **All Filters** branch. The selection includes filters that do not reference the Filter Tag that you want to remove.

- 3) To add a tag:
  - a) Right-click a Filter, then select **Add Tag > Filter Tag**.
  - b) Select the Filter Tag you want to add.



**Note:** We do not recommend that you assign the **System** or **Correlations** Filter Tags.

- c) Click **Select**.
- 4) To remove a tag:
  - a) Right-click a Filter, then select **Remove Tag > Remove**.
  - b) Select the Filter Tag you want to remove.



**Note:** You cannot remove the **System** or **Correlations** Filter Tags from predefined system elements.

- c) Click **Select**.

#### Related tasks

[Create Filter Tag elements](#) on page 294

## Examples of filters

These examples illustrate some common uses for filters and general steps on how the scenarios are configured.

### Example: Create a filter for log entries associated with specific users

This scenario shows an example of using filters to include logs in a report.

Company A wants a report of users who have authenticated themselves within a certain time frame. To create the report, the company's administrator needs a filter to select the logs concerning the authenticated users. The administrator:

- 1) Creates a Filter element.
- 2) Selects the **Auth. User** field to filter the user names of authenticated users.
- 3) Selects the **in operation**.
- 4) Adds the wildcard **\*** as the value to the **Auth. User** field to match all authenticated users in log data.

## Example: Create a filter for pings in a network

---

This scenario shows an example of using filters to exclude logs from a report.

Company B's administrator has noticed that the number of ping attempts (ICMP echo requests) in the internal network has increased. The administrator wants a report of all recent pings in the local network to make sure an outsider has not taken over the servers in the internal network. The administrator frequently pings from the HOST 2 workstation in the internal network. The administrator knows that pings coming from HOST 2 are legitimate, and wants to exclude pings from HOST 2 from the report.

The administrator needs a new filter for generating the report. The administrator:

- 1) Creates a Filter element in which the source IP address field in log data is compared to the internal network's addresses, and the ICMP type is compared to Echo.
- 2) Adds a condition that the IP address in the log data must not belong to the HOST 2 workstation.



# Working with Diagram elements

### Contents

- [Getting started with Diagram elements](#) on page 297
- [Using the Diagram Editor](#) on page 298
- [Create Diagram elements](#) on page 299
- [Edit the background of Diagram elements](#) on page 300
- [Create new elements in Diagram elements](#) on page 300
- [Create Diagram elements from configured elements](#) on page 301
- [Add comments to Diagram elements](#) on page 302
- [Set the layout of Diagram elements](#) on page 303
- [Connecting elements in Diagram elements](#) on page 303
- [Creating links between Diagram elements](#) on page 305
- [View diagram elements](#) on page 307

Diagrams allow you to visualize your network security environment.

## Getting started with Diagram elements

Diagrams allow you to generate a model of the elements you have already configured. You can also design a model of your network and configure Security Management Center (SMC) elements at the same time.

You can also use diagrams to view and monitor the status of the elements in your system.

### What you can do with diagrams

Diagrams allow you to:

- Maintain and understand the network structure.
- Monitor the status of your network graphically.
- Illustrate your network topology.
- Configure SMC elements and other network devices while designing your network.
- Store and print network topologies.

### What should I know before I begin

- There are three types of diagrams: *Connectivity Diagrams* show the status of the connections between elements that belong to the same configuration. *VPN Diagrams* show the status of VPN connections. *IP Diagrams* are diagrams of a network.

- In addition to creating diagrams manually, you can create diagrams automatically from elements that are monitored in the **Home** view. The **Home** view also automatically displays a Connectivity Diagram or VPN Diagram to show the connectivity status of an engine you select.

## Diagram configuration overview

---

Diagrams allow you to create models of network configurations.

Follow these overall steps to configure diagrams:

- 1) Create a diagram.
- 2) Define the diagram background color and image.
- 3) Insert elements in the diagrams either manually or automatically.
- 4) Customize the diagram layout.
- 5) Make manual or automatic connections between the elements in the diagram.
- 6) Create relationships between diagrams.

### Related tasks

[Create Diagram elements](#) on page 299

[Edit the background of Diagram elements](#) on page 300

[Create new elements in Diagram elements](#) on page 300

[Set the layout of Diagram elements](#) on page 303

[Automatically connect elements in Diagram elements](#) on page 304

[Manually connect elements in Diagram elements](#) on page 304

[Specify a parent Diagram element](#) on page 305

[Create links from one diagram element to another](#) on page 306

[View diagram elements](#) on page 307

## Using the Diagram Editor

---

Diagrams are created and edited in the Diagram Editor.

There are two methods for creating diagrams. You can create a diagram from previously configured elements or add new elements to the SMC and draw the diagram simultaneously. When you create network elements as you draw the diagram, the elements are added to the SMC configuration with the other elements. If you edit the configured elements (such as an IP address change), the changes are automatically updated in your diagram. The automatic updates to the diagrams reduce the need to update your network documentation.

Figure 70: Diagram editing toolbar in the diagram editor



- 1 Zoom
- 2 Collapse selected elements together
- 3 Arrange selected elements
- 4 Connect elements
- 5 Add text
- 6 Create new elements

## Create Diagram elements

You can create a diagram from previously configured elements or add new elements to the SMC and draw the diagram simultaneously.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Diagrams**.
- 3) Right-click **Diagrams**, then select **New > Connectivity Diagram**, **New > VPN Diagram**, or **New > IP Diagram** according to which diagram type you want to create.
- 4) Create a diagram using the various options.
- 5) Click **Save**.
- 6) Name the diagram, then add an optional comment for your own reference.
- 7) (Optional) Select a parent diagram for the new diagram.
- 8) Click **OK**.


**Related tasks**[Edit the background of Diagram elements](#) on page 300[Create new elements in Diagram elements](#) on page 300

# Edit the background of Diagram elements

Background images and colors enhance the appearance of your diagrams and make layout easier.

For example, you can use a map as the background image and arrange the elements in the diagram according to their geographical location.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Diagrams**.
- 3) Right-click the diagram, then select **Edit**.
- 4) Right-click the diagram's background, then select **Properties**.
- 5) Using the available options, define the background properties.
- 6) Click **OK**.

**Related tasks**[Create new elements in Diagram elements](#) on page 300

# Create new elements in Diagram elements

You can add new elements to the SMC and draw the diagram simultaneously.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.

- 2) Browse to **Diagrams**.
- 3) Right-click the diagram, then select **Edit**.
- 4) Select the type of element you want to create in the toolbar, then click the diagram in the place where you want to add the element.  
The new element appears grayed-out because it has not been configured yet.
- 5) Double-click the new element.
- 6) Define the element's properties.
- 7) Click **OK**.  
The newly configured element is no longer grayed-out, and it is added to the appropriate category in the **All Elements** list.

#### Related concepts

[Defining IP addresses as elements](#) on page 893

#### Related tasks

[Set the layout of Diagram elements](#) on page 303


## Create Diagram elements from configured elements


You can create a diagram from previously configured elements.


You can generate IP Diagrams, VPN Diagrams, and Connectivity Diagrams automatically from the elements that are monitored in the Security Management Center.

Automatically generated IP Diagrams and VPN Diagrams are based on routing information, so they show elements that belong to the same routing configuration. Automatically generated Connectivity Diagrams contain elements that belong to the same configuration as defined in server, Firewall, IPS engine, and Layer 2 Firewall properties.

You can edit the automatically generated diagram in the same way as any diagram. For example, you can add more elements to the diagram by dragging and dropping configured elements from the list in the **Resources** pane. Editing the automatically generated diagram can be useful for documenting your system although the elements might not belong to the same configuration.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Diagrams**.


- 3) Right-click **Diagrams**, then select **New > Connectivity Diagram**, **New > VPN Diagram**, or **New > IP Diagram**.
- 4) Browse to the type of element that you want to add to the diagram.
- 5) (In automatic diagram creation) Select an element that is monitored from the list in the **Resources** pane, then drag and drop it onto the diagram.
- 6) Add the elements to the diagram.
  - (In automatic diagram creation) Right-click the element's icon, then select **Auto Generate > Add from Configuration** or **Auto Generate > Add from Routing**. The elements that belong to the same configuration or routing configuration are added to the diagram. The links between the elements are also added automatically.
  - (In manual diagram creation) Drag the existing elements from the list in the **Resources** pane, then drop them onto the diagram.
- 7) Click  **Save**.
- 8) Name the diagram, then add an optional comment for your own reference.
- 9) (Optional) Select a parent diagram for the new diagram.
- 10) Click **OK**.



#### Related tasks

[Set the layout of Diagram elements](#) on page 303

## Add comments to Diagram elements

Text comments allow you to add notes and labels to diagrams.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Diagrams**.
- 3) Right-click the diagram, then select **Edit**.
- 4) Click  **Text Tool**.
- 5) Click the diagram in the place where you want to add the comment.
- 6) Select the font properties that you want to use, then enter the comment.
- 7) Click **OK**.

- 8) If necessary, select the comment, then drag the comment to change its position.

#### Related tasks

[Set the layout of Diagram elements](#) on page 303

## Set the layout of Diagram elements

You can set the layout of a diagram manually, or you can select one of the automatic layout options.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Diagrams**.
- 3) Right-click the diagram, then select **Edit**.
- 4) To move elements, click **Hand Tool**, then drag and drop the elements to their places.  
In addition to moving individual elements by dragging and dropping, you can also use the Hand Tool to move all elements in a diagram.
- 5) To arrange elements automatically, do the following.
  - a) Click **Select Components**, then select the elements that you want to arrange.
  - b) Select **Layout Tools**, then an option.

#### Related tasks

[Automatically connect elements in Diagram elements](#) on page 304

[Manually connect elements in Diagram elements](#) on page 304

## Connecting elements in Diagram elements

You can connect elements in diagrams automatically or manually.

The automatic connections are based on the IP addresses of the elements or on the Routing configuration.

To help you maintain the clarity of your diagrams, you can also use turning points. Turning points are useful, for example, in complex diagrams where connections would otherwise cross each other.


To create a turning point, click **Add Turning Point**. Click in the middle of the connection between the two elements, then drag the turning point to the direction of your choice to create an angle.



**Related tasks**[Automatically connect elements in Diagram elements](#) on page 304[Manually connect elements in Diagram elements](#) on page 304

## Automatically connect elements in Diagram elements

---

You can connect elements automatically either based on the routing configuration or on the IP addresses of the elements.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Diagrams**.
- 3) Right-click the diagram, then select **Edit**.
- 4) Click  **Select Components**.
- 5) Select the elements that you want to connect.
- 6) Select **Tools > Auto Connect by Routing** or **Tools > Auto Connect by Addresses** from the menu.  
The connections between the elements appear.

**Related concepts**[Creating links between Diagram elements](#) on page 305

## Manually connect elements in Diagram elements

---

You can use the **Connection Tool** to connect elements in diagrams manually.

If the connection you create has a red, crossed-out circle on it, the connection is not valid. A connection might be invalid, for example, if you connect an element to a network with an address range that does not include that element's IP address. Such connections are allowed so that you can plan a configuration change without actually editing the elements until you are finished.



**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Diagrams**.
- 3) Right-click the diagram, then select **Edit**.
- 4) Click **Connection Tool**.
- 5) Click and hold the first element to be linked.
- 6) Drag the mouse pointer to the second element, then release the mouse button.  
The elements are connected unless the connection is not allowed. You might have to insert a Network element between two elements before you can connect them.

#### Related concepts

[Creating links between Diagram elements](#) on page 305

## Creating links between Diagram elements

You can create links between related diagrams.

You can specify a parent diagram to organize the diagrams into a hierarchy. You can also create links between diagrams under the same parent diagram.

#### Related tasks

[Specify a parent Diagram element](#) on page 305

[Create links from one diagram element to another](#) on page 306

## Specify a parent Diagram element

For each diagram, you can specify another diagram as its parent diagram. Parent diagrams allow you to organize diagrams in a hierarchy.

All diagrams that have the same parent diagram are shown as branches below the parent diagram in the tree.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.

- 2) Browse to **Diagrams**.
- 3) Right-click the diagram for which you want to specify a parent diagram, then select **Properties**.
- 4) Click **Select**.
- 5) Select a parent diagram from the diagram list.
- 6) Click **OK**.  
The diagram is now displayed as a branch under the selected parent diagram in the tree.

#### Related tasks

[Create links from one diagram element to another](#) on page 306

## Create links from one diagram element to another

When you have a large network, linking allows you to use just a network icon to represent individual network segments in a top-level diagram. You can create links from them to more detailed diagrams.

### Before you begin

Before you can add a link, you must have at least two diagrams under the same parent diagram.

You can attach links to any of the elements in the diagram. When you double-click a link, another diagram opens.



**Note:** You cannot create links between two diagrams that have different parent diagrams.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Diagrams**.
- 3) Right-click the element that you want to function as a link, then select **Link To**.
- 4) Select the diagram to link to.
- 5) Click **Save**.

#### Related tasks

[Specify a parent Diagram element](#) on page 305

# View diagram elements

You can view diagrams without opening them for editing.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Diagrams**.
- 3) Right-click the diagram, then select **Preview Connectivity Diagram**, **Preview VPN Diagram**, or **Preview IP Diagram**.

## Related tasks

[Collapse element groups in Diagram elements](#) on page 307

[Expand element groups in Diagram elements](#) on page 308

[Zoom in or out in Diagram elements](#) on page 308

## Benefits of collapsing or expanding element groups in Diagram elements

Collapsing or expanding clustered engine elements makes complicated diagrams simpler, as the individual items can be viewed only when needed.

You can collapse and expand clustered engine elements, such as a Firewall Cluster, an IPS Cluster, or a Layer 2 Firewall Cluster. You can also collapse and expand groups of elements (any group of elements you select) to hide the individual nodes or elements. You can collapse and expand clusters and element groups while viewing and editing diagrams.

## Collapse element groups in Diagram elements

Collapsing clustered engine elements makes complicated diagrams simpler.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Browse to **Diagrams**.
- 3) Right-click the diagram, then select **Edit**.
- 4) Click **Select Components**, then select two or more elements, or at least one of the nodes belonging to an expanded cluster.

5) Click  **Collapse Selected Components**.

If several elements were selected, they are now shown as a single cloud with the tooltip **Collapsed Area**. Clustered elements are collapsed into an appropriate cluster icon.

#### Related tasks

[Zoom in or out in Diagram elements](#) on page 308

## Expand element groups in Diagram elements

You can expand element groups to view the individual elements.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.

2) Browse to **Diagrams**.

3) Right-click the diagram, then select **Edit**.

4) Select a clustered element or a group of collapsed elements.

5) Click  **Expand Selected Component**.


The individual nodes or elements are displayed. The nodes are shown with a yellow sign containing a minus sign to illustrate their association to an expanded cluster.

#### Related tasks

[Zoom in or out in Diagram elements](#) on page 308

## Zoom in or out in Diagram elements


You can use various methods to zoom in the diagram, such as using the Diagram Navigation tool to zoom into selected parts of the diagram.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.

2) Browse to **Diagrams**.

3) Right-click the diagram, then select **Edit**.

4) If the **Diagram Navigation** pane is not displayed, select  **Menu** > **View** > **Panels** > **Diagram Navigation** to activate the Diagram Navigation tool.

- 5) Click and drag in the area outside the black rectangle to zoom in and out.
- 6) Click inside the black rectangle to adjust which part of the diagram is shown.
- 7) Select  **Zoom** > **Default Zoom** to see the default zoom view again.



# Incident Case elements

### Contents

- [Getting started with Incident Case elements](#) on page 311
- [Create Incident Case elements](#) on page 312
- [Set a context for Incident Case elements](#) on page 313
- [Attaching data to Incident Case elements](#) on page 313
- [Add Players to Incident Case elements](#) on page 317
- [Add journal entries to Incident Case elements](#) on page 318
- [Working with existing Incident Case elements](#) on page 318
- [Example: Incident Case scenarios](#) on page 321

When suspicious activity is detected, it is important to collect information about the incident and act quickly. The Incident Case element is a tool for investigating incidents of suspicious activity.

## Getting started with Incident Case elements

The Incident Case element allows you to gather together the data, actions, system configuration information, and files related to a specific incident.

This information is useful for effective incident investigation, and also helps to provide evidence for legal action or to demonstrate compliance with operational standards.

### Limitations of Incident Cases

When you write a Memo in an incident case, text does not automatically wrap in the **Incident Memo Properties** dialog box. You must press **Enter** at the end of each line if you want your text to break to a new line.

Memos are permanently deleted when you remove them from an incident case. Other types of attachments can be added again if you remove them by mistake.

#### Related concepts

[Attaching data to Incident Case elements](#) on page 313

# Incident Case configuration overview

Incident cases can be started as needed. You can then add various types of information from the system to them, as well as your own comments.

The configuration of Incident Cases involves the following general steps:

- 1) Create an Incident Case.
- 2) Attach relevant Logs, Policy Snapshots, Memos, and files to the Incident Case.
- 3) Add the network elements involved in the incident to the Incident Case.
- 4) Add journal entries to the Incident Case.

## Related concepts

[Attaching data to Incident Case elements](#) on page 313

## Related tasks

[Create Incident Case elements](#) on page 312

[Set a context for Incident Case elements](#) on page 313


[Add Players to Incident Case elements](#) on page 317


[Add journal entries to Incident Case elements](#) on page 318

# Create Incident Case elements

The Incident Case element stores the information related to the incident.

When you create an incident case, the Data Collection, Player List, and Journal tabs are visible. The History tab is at the bottom of the view with the General tab.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Right-click **Incident Cases** and select **New Incident Case**.
- 3) Enter a unique **Name**, (optional) **Comment**, and (optional) **Priority**.
  - The priority you define is for your own categorization and does not affect the way the case is handled in the Security Management Center.
  - The **State** cannot be changed during the creation of the new incident case.
- 4) Click **OK**.

The new incident case opens for editing.




**Related concepts**[Attaching data to Incident Case elements](#) on page 313**Related tasks**[Set a context for Incident Case elements](#) on page 313[Add Players to Incident Case elements](#) on page 317[Add journal entries to Incident Case elements](#) on page 318[Change the state of Incident Case elements](#) on page 320

## Set a context for Incident Case elements

You can set a context for solving a particular Incident Case in the Management Client.

The SMC then generates a list of your actions in the Management Client and attaches the selected Incident Case in the audited actions. You can view the actions on the **History** tab of the Incident Case.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Menu > View > Layout > Incident Context Toolbar**.
- 2) Select the Incident Case to which you want to add information.  
The status bar switches to orange when an Incident Case is selected.

**Related concepts**[Attaching data to Incident Case elements](#) on page 313**Related tasks**[Add Players to Incident Case elements](#) on page 317[Add journal entries to Incident Case elements](#) on page 318

## Attaching data to Incident Case elements

You can use the Data Collection tab to attach information to provide context for investigating the incident.

The following types of data can be attached to the Incident Case:

**Table 36: Data collection**

Data Item	Explanation
Logs	Log, alert, and audit entries from Firewall or IPS engines and Log and Management Servers.
Policy Snapshot	A record of a configuration stored in the upload history. Policy Snapshots help to establish which policies were in place at the time of the incident.
Memo	A simple text file for attaching excerpts of text, for example, by copying and pasting from email, IRC or instant messaging.
File	Any type of file. For example, saved reports, text files, saved e-mail messages, packet capture files, or screenshot images.

**Related tasks**

[Attach logs and audit entries to Incident Case elements](#) on page 314

[Attach Policy Snapshots to Incident Case elements](#) on page 315


[Attach memos to Incident Case elements](#) on page 316

[Attach files to Incident Case elements](#) on page 316

## Attach logs and audit entries to Incident Case elements

There are several ways to attach logs and audit entries to an Incident Case.

You can attach selected single logs or audit entries, selected groups of logs or audit entries, or all logs or audit entries that match your query criteria. It is also possible to attach log and audit data to Incident Cases directly from the **Logs** view.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Tools > Attach > Logs** on the **Data Collection** tab of the incident case.  
The **Logs** view opens.
- 2) (Optional) To restrict the data that is displayed, specify your search criteria in the **Query** pane.
- 3) Attach a single log or a selected group of logs.
  - a) Select the logs you want to attach.
  - b) Right-click the selection and select **Export > Attach Log Events to Incident**.
- 4) To attach all logs that match your filtering criteria, right-click any log entry and select **Export > Attach Log Events to Incident**.
- 5) Enter a unique **Description** for the logs.  
The description is used as the name of the data item in the Incident Case.

- 6) Select **Other** from the **Incident Case Target** drop-down list.
- 7) Select the Incident Case that you want to attach the logs to and click **Select**.
- 8) Specify which logs you want to attach:
  - Select **Selected logs** to add only the specific log entries you selected.
  - Select **Filtered logs from** to add all log entries that match your query criteria.
- 9) (Optional) Select **Create Link Only** if you want to create a reference to the logs without duplicating the log files.
- 10) (Optional) Select **Create also Players based on the following log fields** and select the fields if you want to automatically fetch the player information related to the logs.
- 11) (Optional) Select **Time out** to automatically stop the export if it takes too long.
- 12) Click **OK**.  
The selected logs are attached to the incident case and appear in the **Data Collection** tab.

#### Related concepts

[Benefits of filtering log entries](#) on page 242

#### Related tasks

[Attach Policy Snapshots to Incident Case elements](#) on page 315

[Attach memos to Incident Case elements](#) on page 316


[Attach files to Incident Case elements](#) on page 316


[Add Players to Incident Case elements](#) on page 317

[Add journal entries to Incident Case elements](#) on page 318

## Attach Policy Snapshots to Incident Case elements

Policy Snapshots help to establish which policies were in place at the time of the incident.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Tools** > **Attach** > **Policy Snapshot** on the **Data Collection** tab.
- 2) Select the policy snapshot you want to attach and click **Select**.  
The policy snapshot is attached to the incident case and appears on the **Data Collection** tab.

**Related tasks**

[Attach memos to Incident Case elements](#) on page 316

[Attach files to Incident Case elements](#) on page 316


[Add Players to Incident Case elements](#) on page 317


[Add journal entries to Incident Case elements](#) on page 318

## Attach memos to Incident Case elements

Memos allow you to take notes about the incident.

You can copy and paste from the clipboard into a memo. Memos can be edited and deleted after they are added to the incident case. If you want to add permanent, read-only comments and notes about the incident, add journal entries instead.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Tools > Attach > Memo** on the **Data Collection** tab.
- 2) Give the memo a descriptive **Name**.  
The name is used as the name of the data item in the incident case.
- 3) Type or paste the text of the memo in the **Text** field.
- 4) Click **OK**.  
The memo is added to the **Data Collection** list.

**Related tasks**

[Attach files to Incident Case elements](#) on page 316


[Add Players to Incident Case elements](#) on page 317

[Add journal entries to Incident Case elements](#) on page 318

## Attach files to Incident Case elements

You can attach any type of files, such as saved reports, text files, saved e-mail messages, packet capture files, or screen captures to incident cases.

If you want to attach a newer version of a file, you must first remove the existing attachment from the incident case.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Tools > Attach > File** on the **Data Collection** tab.

- 2) Browse to the file you want to attach. Select the file and click **Open**.  
The file is added to the **Data Collection** list.

#### Related tasks


[Add Players to Incident Case elements](#) on page 317


[Add journal entries to Incident Case elements](#) on page 318

## Add Players to Incident Case elements

A player is any element that was involved in the incident.

The related players can be fetched automatically when attaching logs or audit entries, or you can add players manually. Alternatively, you can copy and paste elements to the **Player List** tab of an incident case. Attaching players to an incident case creates a reference to an element.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Tools** > **New Player** on the **Player List** tab.
- 2) Give the player a unique **Name**.  
This name is used in the **Player** list.
- 3) Enter the **IPv4 Address** of the player or enter the **DNS Name** of the player and click **Resolve** to resolve the DNS name to an IP address. **Elements** shows a list of player elements.
- 4) (Optional) Add a **Comment**.
- 5) Click **OK**.  
The player is added to the **Player** list.

#### Related concepts

[Attaching data to Incident Case elements](#) on page 313


#### Related tasks

[Add journal entries to Incident Case elements](#) on page 318

# Add journal entries to Incident Case elements

The journal allows you to record your observations and comments about administrator actions during the incident investigation.

Adding journal entries is especially useful when more than one administrator is investigating the same incident simultaneously. Journal entries are automatically marked with a time stamp. Once a journal entry is added, it cannot be removed, which provides an audit for incident management (for example, to be used as evidence in court).

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Type the journal entry in the **Additional Comment** field and click **Commit**.  
The journal entry is added to the list.

## Related concepts

[Attaching data to Incident Case elements](#) on page 313

## Related tasks

[Add Players to Incident Case elements](#) on page 317

# Working with existing Incident Case elements

After you have created an Incident Case element, you can edit the contents and properties of the Incident Case.

## Related tasks

[Open Incident Case elements for editing](#) on page 318

[Change the priority of Incident Case elements](#) on page 319

[Change the state of Incident Case elements](#) on page 320

[View the history of Incident Case elements](#) on page 320

## Open Incident Case elements for editing

You can edit the players and data that are attached to an Incident Case.



**Note:** You cannot edit or remove journal entries.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Monitoring**.
- 2) Select **Incident Cases** in the tree view.
- 3) Right-click the incident case and select **Edit Incident Case**.  
The **Incident Case** view opens.
- 4) Edit the Incident Case as needed.  
Changes are automatically saved when you close the Incident Case view.

#### Related concepts

[Attaching data to Incident Case elements](#) on page 313

#### Related tasks

[Add Players to Incident Case elements](#) on page 317

[Add journal entries to Incident Case elements](#) on page 318

[Change the priority of Incident Case elements](#) on page 319

[Change the state of Incident Case elements](#) on page 320

[View the history of Incident Case elements](#) on page 320

## Change the priority of Incident Case elements

As the investigation of the incident progresses, you can change the priority of the Incident Case as necessary.

The default Priority of an incident case is **Low** when an incident case is created. The priority you define is for your own categorization and does not affect the way the case is handled in the SMC.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the Incident Case you want to change the priority for and select **Properties**.
- 2) Select the new **Priority** and click **OK**.

#### Related tasks

[Change the state of Incident Case elements](#) on page 320

[View the history of Incident Case elements](#) on page 320

## Change the state of Incident Case elements

The state information is only for your own reference. As the investigation of the incident case progresses, you can change its state accordingly.

The default state of an incident case is **Open** when an incident case is created.

When the investigation is finished, you can close the incident case. The incident case stays in the system, but its state is shown as closed. It is a good idea to keep resolved incident cases as a record of past incidents or for future reference in dealing with new incidents.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the Incident Case you want to change the state for and select **Properties**.
- 2) From the available options, select the new **State**.
- 3) Click **OK**.  
The state of the incident case is changed.

### Related tasks

[View the history of Incident Case elements](#) on page 320

## View the history of Incident Case elements

The **Incident History** tab shows the logs and audit entries that track actions performed in this **Incident Case** view.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Tools > Incident History**.

### Related concepts

[Getting started with Incident Case elements](#) on page 311

### Related tasks

[Create Incident Case elements](#) on page 312



## Example: Incident Case scenarios

---

There are many ways an administrator can become aware of suspicious activity in the system. The most likely way is by noticing something unusual in the logs or audit entries, or being warned about a potential problem in an alert.

### Example: Investigation by more than one administrator

---

This scenario shows an example of incident investigation by multiple administrators.

- 1) An administrator creates an Incident Case element.
- 2) The administrator delegates work to other administrators.
- 3) Each administrator collects data and players, and attaches them to the incident case.
- 4) An administrator reacts to contain the incident, for example, by stopping an engine or changing a Firewall policy.
- 5) An administrator might try to eradicate the problem, for example, by installing software patches or updating anti-malware programs.
  - The administrator can write a new comment in the incident journal to inform the other administrators about what has been done.
- 6) When the problem is resolved, the administrator closes the incident case.

### Example: Investigation of a false positive

---

This scenario shows an example of an incident investigation of a false positive.

- 1) The administrator creates an **Incident Case** element.
- 2) While collecting data, the administrator discovers that the suspicious event was not a real problem.
- 3) The administrator closes the incident case as a false positive.

# Example: Investigation of suspected backdoor traffic

---

This scenario shows an example of incident investigation of a compromised server.

The administrator receives an IPS alert that there is active two-way backdoor traffic between a server in the organization's internal network and an unknown host in the Internet. The administrator then:

- 1) Opens an **Incident Case** to help manage this incident.
- 2) Searches for previous logs from the Firewall and IPS engines to identify the vulnerability that allowed the server to be compromised.
- 3) Attaches the relevant logs to the incident case.
- 4) Reinstalls the server, and installs patches to prevent the same vulnerability from being exploited again.
- 5) Closes the incident case.

# PART V

## Controlling engines

### Contents

- [Controlling engine operation](#) on page 325
- [Working on the engine command line](#) on page 337

You can command and set options for engines through the Management Client or on the engine command line. You can also stop traffic manually.



# Controlling engine operation

### Contents

- [Commanding engines remotely](#) on page 325
- [Set engine options](#) on page 330
- [Change a NetLink state manually](#) on page 333
- [Disable cluster nodes temporarily](#) on page 334
- [Re-enable disabled cluster nodes](#) on page 334
- [Editing engine configurations](#) on page 335

You can command and set options for Firewall engines, Layer 2 Firewall engines, IPS engines, Master NGFW Engines, Virtual Firewalls, Virtual IPS engines, and Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls through the Management Client.

## Commanding engines remotely

You can send commands to engines remotely through the Management Client.

You can control Firewalls, Layer 2 Firewalls, IPS engines, Master NGFW Engines, Virtual Firewalls, Virtual IPS engines, and Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls through each engine element's right-click menu. The commands available depend on the type of component. In a cluster, the commands that affect the operating state of the engines can only be given to the individual nodes, not to the whole cluster.

You can also give commands and set options for more than one engine at a time by Shift-selecting or Ctrl-selecting the elements.



**Note:** For abnormal situations, there are limited tools for giving some basic commands (such as go online or offline) through the engine's command line interface. Under normal circumstances, you should control the engines remotely through the Management Client.

## Turn engines online

You can turn engines in the offline state online through the right-click menu.

When engines are in the offline state, the status icon is blue and the status text reads offline. You can turn engines online if there are no configuration issues that would prevent the node or cluster from operating normally. Typical issues that can prevent a node from going online include policy issues, automatic tests failing, or heartbeat connection problems between nodes in clusters.



**Note:** You might also be able to give commands to nodes in the unknown state (gray icon), but you might not see a change of status. Because the actual operating status is not available, the node might already be online. In this case, you might receive an error if you try to command the node online.



**Note:** If the cluster is set to standby mode, only one node at a time can be online. Commanding a standby node online switches the current online node to standby.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Home**.
- 2) Browse to **Engines**, then expand the nodes of the engine that you want to turn online.
- 3) Right-click the engine node, then select **Commands > Go Online** or **Commands > Lock Online**.
- 4) (Optional) In the **Confirmation** dialog box that opens, enter an **Audit Comment**.  
The comment is included in the audit log entry that is generated.
- 5) Click **Yes**.  
The engine is turned online shortly.

#### Related tasks

[Adjust general Firewall clustering options](#) on page 677

[Adjust IPS clustering options](#) on page 680

[Adjust Layer 2 Firewall clustering options](#) on page 680

[Adjust general Master NGFW Engine clustering options](#) on page 681

[Troubleshoot engines that do not go or stay online](#) on page 1365

## Turn engines offline

In the offline state, engines stop processing traffic, but remain otherwise operational and ready to be turned online again.

Engines in the offline state can be turned on either automatically or by an administrator's command, depending on the configuration.



**CAUTION:** When you turn a node offline, it stops processing traffic. On Firewalls, Layer 2 Firewalls, and Master NGFW Engines, traffic is stopped unless other cluster nodes can take over. On Virtual Firewalls, Virtual IPS engines, and Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls, traffic is always stopped. On IPS engines, the behavior depends on the Failure Mode of the interfaces.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Home**.
- 2) Browse to **Engines**, then expand the nodes of the engine that you want to turn offline.
- 3) Right-click the node, then select **Commands > Go Offline** or **Commands > Lock Offline**.

- 4) (Optional) In the **Confirmation** dialog box that opens, enter an **Audit Comment**.  
The comment is included in the audit log entry that is generated.
- 5) Click **Yes**.  
The engine is turned offline shortly.

**Related concepts**

[Configuring interfaces for IPS engines](#) on page 558


**Related tasks**

[Turn engines online](#) on page 325

## Set nodes to standby mode

When a cluster runs in standby mode, only one node at a time processes traffic. The other running nodes are on standby.

Standby nodes monitor the traffic so that they can take over if the active node fails. Only one node at a time is in the online state, and the rest are either in the standby or offline state. When you command an online node to standby, a standby node in the cluster (if there is one) automatically goes online to take over the traffic.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Home**.
- 2) Browse to **Engines**, then expand the nodes of the engine that you want to set to standby mode.
- 3) Right-click a node, then select **Commands > Standby**.
- 4) (Optional) In the **Confirmation** dialog box that opens, enter an **Audit Comment**.  
The comment is included in the audit log entry that is generated.
- 5) Click **Yes**.  
The node is set to standby mode shortly.

**Related concepts**

[Getting started with advanced engine settings](#) on page 675

# Reboot nodes

In rare cases, you might need to reboot Forcepoint NGFW nodes.



**CAUTION:** If you are rebooting a cluster, reboot the nodes one by one to avoid breaks in service. If you command all nodes to reboot, all nodes reboot at the same time.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Home**.
- 2) Browse to **Engines**, then expand the nodes of the engine that you want to reboot.
- 3) Right-click the node, then select **Commands > Reboot**.

## Next steps

Monitor the rebooting process by following the changes in the status of the element.

# Refresh the currently installed policy on engines

You can reinstall the currently installed policy of one or more components to transfer configuration changes since the last policy installation.

Each type of NGFW Engine has its own type of policy. Inspection Policies are used by all types of NGFW Engines.



**Note:** In clusters, all nodes must be either operational or explicitly disabled for the policy installation to succeed.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click the NGFW Engine, then select **Current Policy > Refresh**.
- 3) Click **OK**.

## Related concepts

[Getting started with policies](#) on page 779




**Related tasks**

[Disable cluster nodes temporarily](#) on page 334

## Remove Virtual NGFW Engines from Master NGFW Engines

You can remove a Virtual NGFW Engine from a Master NGFW Engine if the Virtual NGFW Engine is no longer needed.

When you remove a Virtual NGFW Engine from a Master NGFW Engine, the Virtual NGFW Engine goes offline and stops processing traffic. The Virtual NGFW Engine element is kept in the Security Management Center. You can associate the Virtual NGFW Engine with a different Virtual Resource to activate the Virtual NGFW Engine on a different Master NGFW Engine. The Master NGFW Engine must host Virtual NGFW Engines in the same role as the Virtual NGFW Engine you want to activate.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click the Virtual NGFW Engine, then select **Commands > Remove Virtual Engine from Master NGFW Engine**.

A new tab opens to show the progress of the operation. The Virtual NGFW Engine is removed from the Master NGFW Engine.

**Related concepts**

[Modify Master NGFW Engines and Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 514

**Related tasks**

[Create Master NGFW Engine elements](#) on page 508

[Create Virtual Resource elements](#) on page 509

[Add Virtual Firewall elements](#) on page 510

[Add Virtual IPS elements](#) on page 512


[Add Virtual Layer 2 Firewall elements](#) on page 513


# Set engine options

You can set options for Firewalls, Layer 2 Firewalls, IPS engines, Master NGFW Engines, Virtual Firewalls, Virtual IPS engines, and Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls through the Management Client.

## Enable or disable engine status monitoring

By default, monitoring is automatically activated for all engines, but can be turned off as necessary.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click the NGFW Engine, then select **Options**.
- 3) Deselect or select **Monitored**.  
Shortly, the status changes to **Not Monitored** and the icons associated with the element turn white.

### Related concepts


[Getting started with monitoring the system](#) on page 169


## Enable or disable diagnostics on Firewalls

Diagnostics mode provides more detailed log data for troubleshooting purposes. Diagnostics are only available for Firewalls.



**Note:** Disable the diagnostics after troubleshooting to avoid overloading the Log Server with log data.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click the NGFW Engine, then select **Options > Diagnostics**.
- 3) Select or deselect the **Diagnostic** option at the top of the dialog box.
- 4) Select the diagnostic modes you want to apply to the selected Firewall or Firewall Cluster when diagnostics are enabled.
- 5) Click **OK**.  
The changes are applied immediately.

**Related concepts**[Getting started with the Logs view](#) on page 233

## Enable or disable user database replication on firewalls or Master NGFW Engines

You can enable or disable the replication of the Management Server's internal LDAP database to a Firewall engine or a Master NGFW Engine.

The Management Server's internal LDAP database stores accounts for end users for authentication purposes. Firewall engines have a local replica of the Management Server's internal LDAP database. By default, all changes are immediately replicated from the Management Server's internal LDAP database to the local replicas on Firewall engines.

Master NGFW Engines have one combined local replica of the Management Server's internal LDAP database for each Domain in which a Virtual NGFW Engine has users in the internal LDAP database. By default, changes are replicated from the Management Server's database to the local replicas on the Master NGFW Engines. The information that is replicated to Master NGFW Engines depends on the User Authentication configuration of the Virtual NGFW Engines.



**Note:** Changing the replication of the Management Server's internal LDAP database for a Master NGFW Engine also changes the replication of the Management Server's internal LDAP database for all Virtual NGFW Engines hosted by the Master NGFW Engine.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click the NGFW Engine, then select **Options**.
- 3) Select or deselect **User DB Replication**.

**Related concepts**[Getting started with directory servers](#) on page 1079

## Enable or disable status surveillance on engines

Status surveillance generates an alert when engines change to an unknown state.

By default, there is no warning to administrators if the status of the engines changes to an unknown state. You can optionally activate the status surveillance feature. The status surveillance feature generates an alert if a single engine or none of the engines in a cluster do not send a status update for 15 minutes.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click the NGFW Engine, then select **Options**.
- 3) Select or deselect **Status Surveillance**.

## Next steps

Make sure that System Alerts are escalated so that the notification is sent if status surveillance detects a failure.

### Related concepts

[Alert escalation and how it works](#) on page 367

# Enable or disable SSH access to engines

Secure remote access to the engines is provided by the SSH daemon process. This process can be started and stopped remotely.

For maximum security, we recommend disabling SSH access whenever it is not used.

Alternatively, you can enable and disable SSH access when logged on to the node.

SSH uses TCP port 22. Make sure that the connections are allowed in the policies of any Firewalls or Layer 2 Firewalls involved in the communications (including the Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall that you are trying to contact).

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Home**.
- 2) Browse to **Engines**, then expand the nodes of the engine for which you want to enable or disable SSH access.
- 3) Right-click a node, then select **Commands > Enable SSH** or **Commands > Disable SSH**.

## Result

The SSH process is started or stopped on the engine.


### Related tasks

[Configuring SSH access to the SMC Appliance](#) on page 137

[Reconfigure engine settings](#) on page 339

# Change the engine root password

The password for access to the engine command line can be changed remotely through the Management Client. The user account for accessing the command line is always root. Alternatively, if you remember the old password, you can change the password when logged on to the node.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Home**.
- 2) Browse to **Engines**, then expand the nodes of the engine for which you want to change the root password.
- 3) Right-click a node, then select **Commands > Change Password**.
- 4) Enter the new password in both fields, then click **OK**.  
The new password is effective immediately.

## Related tasks


[Reconfigure engine settings](#) on page 339

[Change your own engine password](#) on page 359

# Change a NetLink state manually

You can manually command NetLinks to the Active or Standby state.

To change a NetLink's state, it must be operational. You cannot send commands to NetLinks that have the unknown (gray) status.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Home**.
- 2) Browse to **Others > Multi-Link**.
- 3) Expand the firewall, right-click the NetLink whose state you want to change, then select a command from the **Commands** menu.

## Related tasks

[Create NetLink elements for Multi-Link configuration](#) on page 707



# Disable cluster nodes temporarily

Disabling a cluster node allows continued management of the other cluster members if one node goes out of operation.

You can disable nodes in Firewall Clusters, IPS Clusters, Layer 2 Firewall Clusters, or Master NGFW Engines. When you disable a node, you can physically remove it from the cluster without removing its definition from the system.

Disabling a node indicates to the other nodes and the Management Server that it is not necessary to try to contact it. Disabling a node prevents unnecessary communication attempts, alerts, and test failures. Disabling a node also allows policy installations on the other nodes when one node is shut down or malfunctions. No commands can be sent to a disabled node and no monitoring information is available for it.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Turn off the cluster node that you want to disable.
- 2) In the Management Client, select  **Configuration**.
- 3) Right-click the NGFW Engine, then select **Edit <element type>**.
- 4) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **General > Clustering**.
- 5) In the **Nodes** table, select **Disabled** for the nodes you want to disable.
- 6) Click  **Save and Refresh**.


## Related tasks

[Re-enable disabled cluster nodes](#) on page 334

# Re-enable disabled cluster nodes

You can re-enable nodes in a cluster that you have temporarily disabled.



When a Firewall Cluster, IPS Cluster, Layer 2 Firewall Cluster, or Master NGFW Engine node has been disabled, its configuration is typically made obsolete by policy installations done on the other cluster nodes. Having an obsolete configuration prevents the node from operating normally and might in some cases disturb the operation of the whole cluster.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) (Recommended) Before connecting the disabled node (the same physical device or a replacement), set the node to the initial configuration state using the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard (sg-reconfigure) on the engine command line.



**Note:** If you reintroduce a disabled node that has a working configuration, the node must receive the heartbeat traffic from other nodes and accept it (based on certificates). Otherwise, the node considers itself the only available cluster member and goes online. Cluster nodes that do not communicate with each other might prevent the whole cluster from processing traffic.

- 2) In the Management Client, select  **Configuration**.
- 3) Right-click the NGFW Engine, then select **Edit <element type>**.
- 4) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **General > Clustering**.
- 5) Deselect the **Disabled** option in the **Nodes** table for the nodes you want to re-enable, then click **OK**.
- 6) Click  **Save and Refresh** to ensure that all nodes have the same configuration.



**Note:** If the policy installation is unsuccessful, return the previously disabled node to the initial configuration state.

- 7) (Optional) In the **Home** view, right-click the node, then select **Commands > Go Online** or **Commands > Standby** to return the node to operation.  
The node is set to online or standby mode shortly.

#### Related tasks

[Reconfigure engine settings](#) on page 339

## Editing engine configurations

The engines can be configured in various ways.

- The network card drivers, mapping of physical interfaces on the network cards to Interface IDs, and speed/duplex settings are defined using the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard. You can use the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard on the engine command line or in a web browser.
- Other engine-specific settings are defined in the Engine Editor in the Management Client.

#### Related concepts

[Editing existing engine elements](#) on page 489

[Modify Master NGFW Engines and Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 514

[Getting started with routing](#) on page 693

### Related tasks

[Disable cluster nodes temporarily](#) on page 334

[Re-enable disabled cluster nodes](#) on page 334

[Reconfigure engine settings](#) on page 339

[Convert a Single Firewall element to a Firewall Cluster element](#) on page 492

[Convert a Single IPS element to an IPS Cluster element](#) on page 495

[Convert a Single Layer 2 Firewall element to a Layer 2 Firewall Cluster element](#) on page 497



# Working on the engine command line

## Contents

- [Considerations for working on the engine command line](#) on page 337
- [Access the engine command line](#) on page 338
- [Reconfigure engine settings](#) on page 339
- [Create engine scripts](#) on page 340
- [Manually restore configurations on engines](#) on page 341
- [Send commands to Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 342

Although the engines are managed remotely, some operations on the Linux command line on the engines are useful for troubleshooting and local maintenance operations.

## Considerations for working on the engine command line

---

Nearly all engine configuration is done through the Management Client, but some engine settings and options must be defined and configured on the command line.

### What you can do on the engine command line

---

- Reconfigure the engine's keyboard layout, time zone, network card settings, and network card to Interface ID mapping.
- Create scripts that run when the engine changes its state.
- Establish contact between the engine and the Management Server.
- Manually revert to the previous configuration.
- Run various troubleshooting tools, both general and specific to Forcepoint NGFW.

### Limitations of the engine command line

---

Changes made on the engine command line apply only to the node on which they were made. If you want to changes settings for other engines, such as all nodes in a cluster, you must make the same changes separately on the command line of each engine.

Some engine configuration options, such as network interface settings, cannot be changed through an SSH console. To be able to change these settings, you must connect using a serial cable or connect a display and keyboard directly to the engine hardware.

The Management Server contact settings that are displayed in the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard (sg-reconfigure) do not show the engine's actual working configuration (transferred whenever the engine's policy is installed or refreshed). The NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard displays the values that were set when the node was initialized.

If you are not a root user on the engine, your permissions to execute commands might be limited. This might be the case if your SMC account has been replicated on the engine and your permissions have been limited in the local sudo configuration file.

## What do I need to know before I begin?

All command-line tools that are available for single NGFW Engines are also available for Virtual NGFW Engines that have the same role. However, there is no direct access to the command line of Virtual NGFW Engines. Commands to Virtual NGFW Engines must be sent from the command line of the Master NGFW Engine that hosts the Virtual NGFW Engines.

### Related tasks

[Send commands to Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 342

[Access the engine command line](#) on page 338

[Reconfigure engine settings](#) on page 339

[Create engine scripts](#) on page 340

[Manually restore configurations on engines](#) on page 341

# Access the engine command line

There are several ways you can connect to the engine and access the engine command line.

## Steps

- 1) Connect to the engine in one of the following ways:
  - Physically using a serial cable and a terminal console program with these settings:
    - **Bits per second** — 9600 or 115,200
    - **Data bits** — 8
    - **Parity** — None
    - **Stop bits** — 1.



**Note:** The serial console port speed is 9600 bps in most NGFW appliances. The speed is 115,200 bps in the latest NGFW appliance models. See the hardware guide for your NGFW appliance model for more information.

- Physically using a monitor and keyboard connected directly to the engine hardware.
- Remotely using an SSH client. SSH access to the engine can be enabled and disabled through the Management Client.

- 2) If you have root administrator permissions, log on and enter the engine password.  
If you forget the password, you can change it in the Management Client.
- 3) If you do not have root permissions and your administrator account has been replicated on the engine, log on using your administrator user name and personal password for the engine.  
If you forget the engine-specific password, ask an SMC administrator with Manage Administrators rights to create you a new one in the Management Client.

#### Related tasks

[Enable or disable SSH access to engines](#) on page 332

[Change the engine root password](#) on page 333

[Reconfigure engine settings](#) on page 339

[Create engine scripts](#) on page 340

[Manually restore configurations on engines](#) on page 341

## Reconfigure engine settings

You can change some settings on the engine command line.

During the installation of the engine, the following settings are defined:

- The keyboard layout (for command-line use).
- The time zone (for command-line use).
- Network card settings.
- The mapping of network cards to Interface IDs.

You can change these settings using the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard on the command line.

The NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard also allows you to re-establish a trust relationship between the engine and the Management Server if the trust is lost. On engines that are fully configured, each operation can be done individually without changing the other options.

### Steps

- 1) Start the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard using one of the following commands:
  - `sg-reconfigure --no-shutdown` — The NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard starts without shutting down the engine. Network interface settings cannot be changed in this mode.
  - `sg-reconfigure` — The engine shuts down and the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard starts. All options are available if you have a local connection. If you have a remote SSH connection, you cannot change network interface settings (the engine uses the no-shutdown mode).
- 2) Use the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard to change the settings.
  - The Management Server contact details are not used by the engine after a policy has been installed from the Management Server. They are shown for your reference only.
  - If you select the **Switch to Initial Configuration** option, all configuration and policy information that has been transferred to the engine is removed. Install a policy on the engine before it can be operational again.



**CAUTION:** Do not select **Switch to Initial Configuration** on the **Prepare for Management Contact** screen unless you want to reset the engine to the post-installation

state. The post-installation state uses a policy that allows communication only between the engine and the Management Server.

- If you select **Contact Management Server** and enter a new one-time password, the Management Server and the engine re-establish their trust relationship. Select this option when you want to replace a missing or expired certificate, or if the trust relationship with the Management Server is lost for any other reason. The reason for this might be, for example, changing the Management Server's IP address.



**CAUTION:** If there is a Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall between a remote engine and the Management Server, allow the connection in the Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall Access rules. If there is a NAT device between a remote engine and the Management Server, also configure NAT rules for the connection in the Firewall Policy. Otherwise, the remote engine cannot contact the Management Server.

#### Related concepts

[Connect engines to the SMC](#) on page 631

#### Related tasks

[Access the engine command line](#) on page 338

#### Related reference

[Forcepoint NGFW Engine commands](#) on page 1424

## Create engine scripts

Engine scripts run when the engine changes its state.

The script names and locations cannot be changed. If the scripts are not found, engine operation continues as normal. If a script is found, it is executed and a log entry is created. To stop scripts from running, you must delete or move the script.



**Note:** If you want to use a script in a cluster, create or copy the script on all nodes in the cluster. Then all nodes function in the same way when their state changes.

### Steps

- 1) Create a text file with the commands you want the engine to execute (the first line of the script must be `#!/bin/sh`) in one of the following ways:
  - Create and edit the script on the engine's command line using the vi text editor.
  - Create and edit the script on a different host and transfer the file to the engine, for example, using SSH.

- Save the script in the correct folder on the engine.

**Table 37: Possible scripts on the engines**

Triggering event	Script location and name
Engine operating system boots	/data/run-at-boot
Administrator refreshes or installs the policy	/data/run-at-policy-apply
Engine enters the Online state	/data/run-at-online
Administrator issued the 'Lock Online' command	/data/run-at-locked-online
Engine enters the Offline state	/data/run-at-offline
Administrator issued the 'Lock Offline' command	/data/run-at-locked-offline
Engine enters the Standby state	/data/run-at-standby

- Make the file executable by typing the following command:

```
chmod a+x /data/<script name>
```

## Result

The script is executed whenever the engine encounters the triggering event for running the script.

### Related tasks

[Access the engine command line](#) on page 338

### Related reference

[Forcepoint NGFW Engine commands](#) on page 1424

# Manually restore configurations on engines

If the engine loses management connectivity due to a faulty configuration, you can manually restore the previous configuration on the command line.



**Note:** You must restore the configurations separately on each node of a cluster. All nodes in a cluster must have the exact same configuration (as indicated by an identification code that is generated at each policy installation).

## Steps

- Enter the following command:

```
/usr/lib/stonegate/bin/sgcfg -a -d /data/config/policy/previous apply
```

# Send commands to Virtual NGFW Engines

Commands to Virtual NGFW Engines are sent from the command line of the Master NGFW Engine that hosts the Virtual NGFW Engines.

All command-line tools that are available for single NGFW Engines are also available for Virtual NGFW Engines that have the same role.

## Steps

- 1) Connect to the command line on the Master NGFW Engine.
- 2) Enter commands in the following format:  
`se-virtual-engine [options]`

**Table 38: Options for `se-virtual-engine` Command**

Option	Description
<code>-h   --help</code>	Shows the help message for the <code>se-virtual-engine</code> command.
<code>-l   --list</code>	Lists the active Virtual NGFW Engines.
<code>-v &lt;ID&gt;   --virtual-engine=&lt;ID&gt;</code>	Specifies the ID of the Virtual NGFW Engine on which to execute the command.
<code>-e   --enter</code>	Enters the command shell for the Virtual NGFW Engine specified with the <code>-v</code> or <code>--virtual-engine</code> option. To exit the command shell, type <code>exit</code> . Using the command shell is recommended if you want to send multiple commands to the Virtual NGFW Engine.
<code>-E "&lt;command [options]&gt;"   --execute="&lt;command [options]&gt;"</code>	Executes the specified command on the Virtual NGFW Engine specified with the <code>-v</code> or <code>--virtual-engine</code> option. Executing individual commands is recommended if you only want to send a few commands to the Virtual NGFW Engine. You can also execute individual commands to send the same command to multiple Virtual NGFW Engines.

### Related tasks

[Access the engine command line on page 338](#)

### Related reference

[Forcepoint NGFW Engine commands on page 1424](#)

# PART VI

## SMC configuration

### Contents

- [Administrator accounts](#) on page 345
- [Alert escalation](#) on page 367
- [Domain elements](#) on page 389
- [Setting up the Web Portal](#) on page 401
- [Distributing Management Clients through Web Start](#) on page 413
- [Configuring the Log Server](#) on page 417
- [Configuring SMC servers for high availability](#) on page 429
- [Reconfiguring the SMC and engines](#) on page 441

Security Management Center (SMC) configuration allows you to customize how the SMC components work.





# Administrator accounts

## Contents

- [Getting started with administrator accounts](#) on page 345
- [How administrator accounts work](#) on page 346
- [Default administrator account elements](#) on page 347
- [Administrator account configuration overview](#) on page 349
- [Creating Administrator Role and Access Control List elements](#) on page 349
- [Add administrator accounts](#) on page 351
- [Enforce an approval workflow](#) on page 354
- [Restrict the log data an administrator can view](#) on page 354
- [Customize log colors for administrators](#) on page 355
- [Replicate administrator accounts on engines](#) on page 356
- [Enable and define password policy settings](#) on page 357
- [Change administrator passwords](#) on page 358
- [Authenticate administrators using RADIUS or TACACS+ methods](#) on page 360
- [Disable administrator accounts](#) on page 361
- [Delete administrator accounts](#) on page 362
- [API client accounts and how they work](#) on page 362
- [Configure SMC API](#) on page 363

Administrator accounts define administrator rights and permissions in the SMC.

## Getting started with administrator accounts

---

An administrator account specifies the actions for which the administrator has permissions, such as creating elements and browsing logs.

You can define administrator rights for each administrator. You can give different permissions to each administrator globally, for specific administrative Domains, for specific groups of elements, and even for individual elements. Depending on the element, there are different levels of access that you can grant.

The Management Server contains information about all elements to make sure that administrator actions are limited by the rights defined in the administrator account. Administrators can edit an element only if they are allowed to edit all configurations where the element is used. The Management Server also prevents administrators from deleting elements that are still used in some other configuration, from editing the same Policy element simultaneously, and from making conflicting changes to the same element.

## How administrator accounts can be configured

- An unrestricted (superuser) administrator is created during the installation of an SMC Appliance.
- Administrators can be configured in the Management Client with these steps:
  - 1) Sets of administrator permissions are defined as reusable lists.
  - 2) Each list of permissions is applied to a specific group of elements.
  - 3) Define the administrator permissions.  
Several different pairs of permissions and elements can be applied to a single administrator account. These permissions can include, for example, viewing access to some elements and editing access to other elements. You can also create unrestricted accounts for “superusers” that have permissions for any action on any element. Some maintenance tasks require an unrestricted account.

Command-line administrator rights are available for engines and for the SMC all-in-one appliance. All superusers are automatically replicated to the SMC Appliance and can execute root-level commands using the `sudo` tool. In the Management Client, administrator accounts can be configured to replicate to engines. If needed, administrator accounts can also be granted `sudo` permission to engines.

### Related tasks

[Create Web Portal User elements](#)

## How administrator accounts work

Many elements are used in the configuration of administrator accounts, including NGFW Engine, Policy, Access Control List, Administrator Role, and Filter elements.

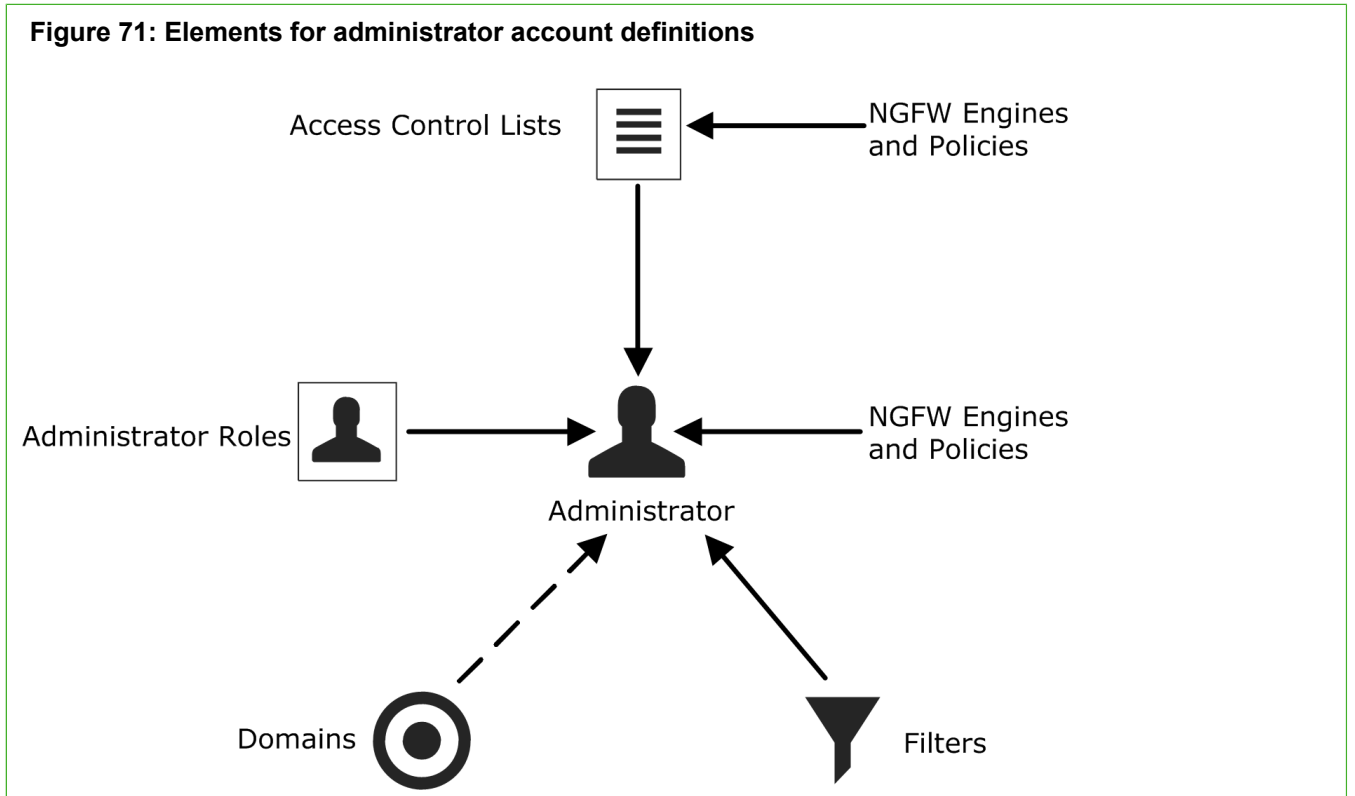
Two types of elements represent administrator accounts in the SMC:

- *Administrator* elements define accounts for administrators who are allowed to manage elements through the Management Client or on the engine and view information in the Web Portal.
- *Web Portal User* elements define accounts for users who are allowed to view information in the Web Portal. The Web Portal Server is a separately licensed component.



**Note:** Accounts that are used to log on to the Management Client can also be used to log on to the Web Portal. Web Portal User accounts that can only be used to log on to the Web Portal are created separately.

The elements used with Administrator elements:

**Figure 71: Elements for administrator account definitions**

- *Administrator Roles* define sets of allowed actions.
- *Access Control Lists* contain elements and allow you to more easily apply the *Administrator Roles* to several engines and policies. There are some default *Access Control List* elements that are automatically populated and can represent additional element types.
- If an administrator is allowed to view logs, you can use *Filters* to select which logs are displayed to the administrator.
- If you use administrative *Domains*, you can give administrators access to any number of *Domains*.

**Related tasks**

[Create Web Portal User elements](#)

## Default administrator account elements

There are several predefined *Administrator Roles* and *Access Control Lists* that help you configure *Administrator* permissions. You cannot edit the predefined elements.

The following table describes the predefined *Administrator Roles* that you can optionally use instead of or in addition to customized *Administrator Roles* you create. All permissions listed here are always applied to a specific set of elements that you define.

**Table 39: Predefined administrator roles**

Administrator role	Permissions given
Viewer	View the properties of elements.

Administrator role	Permissions given
Owner	View the properties, and edit and delete elements. When an administrator creates an element, the administrator is automatically set as an Owner of that element.
Operator	View the properties of elements, send commands to engines, refresh policies, upload policies, and browse logs and alerts (if applied to components that send logs).
Editor	Operator permissions and additional permissions to create, edit, and delete elements.

All elements automatically belong to one or several predefined Access Control List elements in addition to the Access Control Lists you create yourself.

**Table 40: Predefined Access Control List elements**

Access Control List	Description
All Elements	All elements that are defined in the system.
All Domains	All Domain elements in the system. Can be used with Administrator elements only if Domain elements have been configured.
All Administrators	All elements of the type mentioned in the name of the Access Control List.
All Firewall Policies	
All Firewalls	
All Incident Cases	
All Inspection Policies	
All IPS Policies	
All Layer 2 Firewall Policies	
All Layer 2 Firewalls	
All Third Party Devices	
All Web Portal Users	
All Sensors and Analyzers	
All SOHO Firewalls	
All SSL VPN Gateways	
All Simple Elements	All elements except elements that have a dedicated system Access Control List.

The contents of the Access Control Lists are Domain-specific if Domain elements have been configured in the system. For example, in the Shared Domain, **ALL IPS Policies** refers to all IPS Policies that belong to the Shared Domain.

# Administrator account configuration overview

You must configure an administrator account for each administrator. You can create customized task and element lists that can be used to define permissions for administrators.

Follow these general steps to configure administrator accounts:

- 1) (Optional) Define customized reusable lists of allowed tasks for accounts with restricted permissions.
- 2) (Optional) Define customized reusable lists of elements for defining access rights for restricted accounts.
- 3) Create an administrator account for each administrator.
- 4) (Optional) Configure the password policy requirements for administrator passwords.



**CAUTION:** Do not use shared accounts. Using shared accounts makes auditing difficult and can make it difficult to discover security breaches.

## Related tasks

[Create Administrator Role elements](#) on page 350

[Create Access Control List elements](#) on page 350

[Add administrator accounts](#) on page 351

[Enable and define password policy settings](#) on page 357

# Creating Administrator Role and Access Control List elements

You can use Administrator Role and Access Control List elements in accounts that define restricted administrator permissions.

You can either use the predefined Administrator Roles and Access Control Lists or create custom ones.

There are four predefined Administrator Roles:

- **Operator** — Can view the properties of selected elements. Can send commands to selected engines, refresh policies, upload policies, and browse logs and alerts from selected elements.
- **Editor** — Can create, edit, and delete selected elements. Can send commands to engines, refresh policies, upload policies, and browse logs and alerts from selected elements.
- **Owner** — Can view the properties of selected elements, and edit and delete the selected elements.
- **Viewer** — Can view the properties of selected elements.

## Related tasks

[Create Administrator Role elements](#) on page 350

[Create Access Control List elements](#) on page 350

## Create Administrator Role elements

Administrator Role elements specify a restricted set of permissions that include the right to create, edit, and delete elements.


Each administrator can have several different Administrator Roles applied to different sets of elements. There are some default Administrator Roles, but if you want to customize the permissions in any way, you must create custom Administrator Role elements. The Administrator Role contains a fixed list of permissions that you can activate.




**Important:** Select only the minimum necessary permissions for each role. Administrators who are allowed to edit administrator accounts can freely give themselves any permissions.



**CAUTION:** Changes made to an Administrator Role are applied immediately to every administrator account that uses the role (possibly including the account you are currently logged on with). Make sure that the permissions are correct before you apply changes to existing Administrator Roles.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Right-click **Access Rights** and select **New > Administrator Role** or right-click an existing Administrator Role to edit and select **Properties**.
- 3) (New Administrator Role only) In the **Name** field, enter a unique.
- 4) Select the permissions that are applied to the elements selected for the role.
- 5) Click **OK**.

### Related concepts

[Traffic captures and how they work](#) on page 207

### Related tasks

[Create Access Control List elements](#) on page 350

[Add administrator accounts](#) on page 351

## Create Access Control List elements

An Access Control List defines a group of granted elements for which an administrator has rights.

If an Administrator Role gives the rights to install policies and browse logs and alerts, you must apply the Administrator Role to NGFW Engines in the Administrator element. The Access Control Lists that you create can include engines and policies.

The predefined Access Control Lists (in **Administration > Access Rights > Access Control Lists**) allow you to give access to all elements of a certain type. When you create an element, it is automatically added to the

relevant default Access Control List. For example, a new Firewall element is automatically included both in the **ALL Elements** and **ALL Firewalls** Access Control Lists.



**Note:** You must create custom Access Control Lists if you want to give access to a limited number of elements within one type.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Right-click **Access Rights** and select **New > Access Control List** or right-click an existing Access Control List and select **Properties**.
- 3) (New Access Control List only) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.
- 4) Select the elements you want to add to the Access Control List from **Resources** and click **Add**. The selected elements are added to the **Granted Elements** list in the right pane.
- 5) Click **OK**.

#### Related tasks

[Add administrator accounts](#) on page 351

[Define administrator permissions for engines](#) on page 648

## Add administrator accounts

Administrator elements represent administrator accounts in the SMC. Administrators configure and monitor the SMC and the NGFW Engines.

An account with unrestricted permissions is automatically created during installation to guarantee that a superuser account is available in the SMC. With this first account, you can create the necessary administrator accounts for daily management tasks. For the SMC Appliance, the account created during installation is also a user for the appliance.

The administrator accounts for the users of the optional Web Portal are defined with Web Portal User elements. All other administrator accounts are defined with Administrator elements.

There are two ways to authenticate administrator logons:

- You can authenticate administrators using a password stored in the internal database of the SMC.
- You can use a RADIUS or TACACS+ authentication method provided by an external authentication server.



**Note:** We highly recommend that you define a unique administrator account for each administrator. Using shared accounts makes auditing difficult and can make it difficult to discover security breaches.


There are two general permission levels for the administrators:




- *Unrestricted permissions* give the administrators the right to manage all elements without restriction, and the right to run scripts that require the administrators to authenticate themselves.

- *Restricted permissions* allow you to define the administrator's rights in detail using the Administrator Roles with individual elements and Access Control Lists.

If you use administrative Domains, there are some more considerations:

- You must create administrator accounts with unrestricted permissions in the Shared Domain.
- You must select Domains for each administrator role.
- Restricted accounts in the Shared Domain cannot access elements from any other Domains.
- Restricted accounts in other Domains can be granted elements that belong to the Shared Domain. However, the granted elements must belong to a Domain that is allowed for the administrator role selected for the account. For example, an administrator account in another Domain has the operator role in the Shared Domain. The administrator can be granted a policy template from the Shared Domain. The administrator can view the full contents of the policy.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Right-click **Access Rights** and select **New > Administrator**.
- 3) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.  
The administrator uses this user name to log on to the Management Client.
- 4) To authenticate administrator logons locally using the Management Server, configure these options.
  - a) Select **Local Authentication**.
  - b) In the **Password** fields, enter and confirm the password, or click **Generate Password** to generate a temporary random password.  
Generated passwords are one-time passwords. The administrator is automatically prompted to enter a new password at the first logon.  
 **Note:** If you replicate administrator accounts as local accounts on engines, you must define a separate password for the local accounts.
  - c) (Optional, manually entered passwords) To require the administrator to enter a new password at the first logon, select **Require Administrator to Change Password at First Logon**.
- 5) To authenticate administrator logons using RADIUS or TACACS+ authentication by an external authentication server, configure these options.
  - a) Select **External Authentication**.
  - b) From the **Authentication Method** drop-down list, select an Authentication Method element from the list, or click **Select** to select a different Authentication Method element.
- 6) On the **Permissions** tab, define the administrator permissions.  
 **CAUTION:** Select only the minimum necessary permissions for each Administrator account.
  - a) To allow the administrator to manage all elements and perform all actions without any restrictions, select **Unrestricted Permissions (Superuser)**.



- b) To give the administrator a limited set of rights that apply only to the elements granted to the administrator, select **Restricted Permissions**.
- 7) For administrator accounts with restricted permissions, define the rights and granted elements.
- a) Click **Add Role**.  
A new Administrator Role appears in the list.
  - b) Click the **Role** cell and select the administrator role that defines the rights you want to set.
  - c) Right-click the **Granted Elements** cell for the role and select **Edit Granted Elements**.
  - d) Select the elements to which the rights granted by the administrator role apply.  
The **Set to ALL** action depends on the type of elements. For example, if you browse to **Firewalls** and click **Set to ALL**, the item **All Firewalls** is added. You can also select one or more predefined or user-created Access Control Lists. **Simple elements** includes all elements except elements that have a dedicated system Access Control List. For example, there are dedicated Access Control Lists for different types of NGFW Engines and their policies.
  - e) (Optional) If Domain elements have been configured, click the **Domains** cell to select the Domains in which the rights granted by the administrator role and the selected elements apply.
  - f) (Optional) If Domain elements have been configured, leave **Allow Login to Shared Domain** selected to allow the administrator to log on to the Shared Domain. Otherwise, the administrator is only allowed to log on to the specified Domains.
- 8) Click **OK**.

**Related concepts**

[The Domain Overview](#) on page 170

[Creating Administrator Role and Access Control List elements](#) on page 349

[Getting started with Domain elements](#) on page 389

**Related tasks**

[Enable and define password policy settings](#) on page 357

[Create Web Portal User elements](#)

[Authenticate administrators using RADIUS or TACACS+ methods](#) on page 360

# Enforce an approval workflow

You can optionally enforce an approval workflow where configuration and policy changes must be approved before they are committed and transferred to the engines.


## Before you begin


You must be logged on using an administrator account with unrestricted permissions.

Administrators with unrestricted permissions (superusers) can view the changes, approve them, and transfer the configurations to the engines.



**Note:** Administrators with unrestricted permissions can approve their own changes.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Menu** > **System Tools** > **Global System Properties**.
- 2) On the **Change Management** tab, select **Require Approval for Changes in NGFW Engine Configuration**.
- 3) Click **OK**.


## Related tasks


[View, approve, and commit pending changes](#) on page 113

# Restrict the log data an administrator can view

If an administrator is allowed to view logs and alerts, you apply local filters to the log data before it is displayed to the administrator.

The filters that you create here are specific only to the Administrator element in question, unless you save them as permanent Filter elements.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Expand the **Access Rights** branch and click **Administrators**.
- 3) Right-click the Administrator and select **Properties**.

- 4) Click the **Permissions** tab.
- 5) Under **Log Filters**, click **Select**.
- 6) Define the Local Filter's properties.
- 7) Click **OK**.

#### Related concepts

[Getting started with filtering data](#) on page 283

[Creating and editing local filters](#) on page 287

#### Related tasks

[Save local filters as permanent Filter elements](#) on page 289

[Select log browsing permissions for Web Portal users](#)


[Add administrator accounts](#) on page 351


[Customize log colors for administrators](#) on page 355

## Customize log colors for administrators

By default, certain logs are shown with a colored background in the **Logs** view. Using administrator-specific log colors makes it easier to draw the administrator's attention to particular logs.

You can customize the default log colors used by default in all administrator accounts or define administrator-specific log colors in the Administrator element's properties. To use customized colors for logs, you must also create one or more filters that match those logs. Only administrators with the right to manage administrator accounts can customize log colors.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Expand the **Access Rights** branch and click **Administrators**.
- 3) Right-click the Administrator and select **Properties**.
- 4) In the **Administrator Properties** dialog box, click the **Color Filters** tab.
- 5) Select the log type for which you want to change color filters.
- 6) (Optional) To add a new filter for a log type, click **Add** and double-click the **Filter** cell in the new color filter row.
- 7) Select the color.
  - Double-click the **Color** cell of the filter for which you want to change the color and select a color from the palette.

- Click **More Colors** to select a custom color.

The selected colors are assigned to the filters and they are used whenever logs match the filter.

- 8) Click **OK**.

#### Related concepts

[Creating and editing local filters](#) on page 287

#### Related tasks

[Disable administrator accounts](#) on page 361

[Monitor administrator actions](#) on page 206

# Replicate administrator accounts on engines

You can replicate SMC administrator accounts as local administrator accounts on selected engines. This enables several administrators to access an engine locally with the security privileges of the root user.

## Before you begin

Before replication, each administrator must have an existing SMC administrator account. However, they must not have existing accounts on the engine.

Several administrators might need to access a single engine for troubleshooting or for configuring features that are not yet available through the Management Client. It is a good security practice to create each of them a separate account with a personal password and permissions. This practice enables more granular and accurate auditing as well.

The root administrator can limit and configure the engine administrators' permissions individually in the local engine *sudo* security policy. When an administrator is allowed to use *sudo* commands to execute root-level commands on the engine, by default all commands are allowed on the engine. You can limit the commands allowed for an administrator by editing the configuration for the *sudo* package. Engine configuration files for *sudo* are in the `/data/config/sudoers.d/` directory on the engine.



**Note:** Administrator Permissions and Roles or other configurations done in the Management Client are not replicated on the engine.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Expand the **Access Rights** branch and click **Administrators**.

- 3) Right-click the Administrator and select **Properties**.
- 4) Click the **Account Replication** tab.
- 5) Select **Replicate Account on Selected Engines**.
- 6) (Optional) To allow the use of sudo commands to execute root-level commands, select **Allow executing root-level commands with the sudo tool**.
- 7) In the **Password** field, enter the password and confirm it in the **Confirm** field. You can also click **Generate Password** to generate a random 7-digit alphanumeric password.
- 8) To select the NGFW Engines elements where the accounts are replicated to, click **Add**.
- 9) Select **Access Control Lists**, **Domains**, or **NGFW Engines** and then select the element by clicking **Select**.
- 10) Click **OK**.

## Result

The administrator account is replicated on the engines if the engines are online and have a connection to the Management Server.

# Enable and define password policy settings

If you authenticate administrators or Web Portal users with internal authentication, you can enforce a password policy.

### Before you begin

You must be logged on using an administrator account with sufficient permissions to change the password policy settings. Permissions to manage Administrator elements or unrestricted permissions are required. If administrative Domains are configured, you must be logged on to the Shared Domain.

The settings in the password policy are applied to all administrator and Web Portal user accounts defined using Administrator and Web Portal User elements.

You can define the following settings in the password policy:

- Session limits and idle timeouts
- Restrictions on failed logon attempts
- Automatic disabling of inactive accounts
- Requirements for password age and expiration
- Requirements for password strength



**Note:** If you have previously changed the default password policy settings in the SGConfiguration.txt file, the settings are automatically applied on the **Password Policy** tab. Any further modifications you make to the SGConfiguration.txt file have no effect.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Menu > System Tools > Global System Properties**.
- 2) Click the **Password Policy** tab.
- 3) Select **Enforce Password Settings for All the Administrators and Web Portal Users**.



**Note:** The password policy is enforced by default.

- 4) Select the password policy settings.  
For information about the options that you must select in a Common Criteria certification environment, see the *Common Criteria Certification User's Guide*.
- 5) Click **OK**.

## Change administrator passwords

If you have not configured administrator passwords to automatically expire, we recommend that you change administrator passwords regularly.

### Related tasks

[Enable and define password policy settings](#) on page 357

## Change passwords of other administrators

An administrator who has the right to manage administrator accounts can change any other administrator's password.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Select **Access Rights > Administrators** or **Access Rights > Web Portal Users**.
- 3) Right-click the Administrator or Web Portal User element and select **Properties**.
- 4) In the **Password** field, enter and confirm the password.

- 5) Click **OK**.

## Change your own administrator password

---

All administrators can change their own passwords in the Management Client or the Web Portal.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **≡ Menu > System Tools > Password > Change Password**.
- 2) In the **Old Password** field, enter your current password.
- 3) In the **New Password** field, enter a new password.
- 4) In the **Confirm New Password** field, confirm the new password.
- 5) Click **OK**.

## Change your own engine password

---

If administrator accounts have been replicated on engines, administrators can change their own local engine passwords using the Management Client.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the Management Client, select **≡ Menu > System Tools > Password > Change Engine Password**.
- 2) In the **New Password** field, enter a new password.
- 3) In the **Confirm New Password** field, confirm the new password.
- 4) Click **OK**.

### Related tasks

[Change the engine root password](#) on page 333


# Authenticate administrators using RADIUS or TACACS+ methods

You can authenticate administrators and Web Portal users using RADIUS or TACACS+ authentication methods.

## Before you begin

You must have an external authentication server that provides RADIUS or TACACS+ authentication methods.


The Management Server's internal user database does not allow external authentication servers to query the administrator account information. To use external authentication, you must manually create an account both in the SMC for defining the permissions and in the external directory for logon authentication. The administrator's user name for the Management Server and for the directory that the external authentication server uses must match exactly.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Add one of the following types of server elements to integrate the external server:
  - Add a RADIUS Authentication Server element, then add a RADIUS Authentication Method.
  - Add a TACACS+ Authentication Server element, then add a TACACS+ Authentication Method.
  - Add an Active Directory Server element, then add a RADIUS Authentication Method.



**Note:** Define the shared secret used in the communications in the server element.

- 2) Add an Access rule that allows traffic from your Management Server to the external authentication server.
- 3) In the Management Client, select  **Home**, then browse to **Others > Management Server**.
- 4) Right-click the Management Server, then select **Properties**.
- 5) In the **RADIUS Method** or **TACACS+ Method** drop-down list, select the authentication protocol for authenticating the Management Server's communications with the external authentication server. The supported RADIUS authentication protocols are PAP, CHAP, MSCHAP, MSCHAP2, and EAP-MD5. The supported TACACS+ authentication protocols are ASCII, PAP, CHAP, and MSCHAP.



**CAUTION:** To guarantee the security of the SMC, communications between the Management Server and the external authentication server must remain confidential. We recommend transferring these connections over secure networks only.

- 6) (RADIUS Authentication Servers only) Set up the external server for use with the Management Server.
  - a) Define the Management Server as a RADIUS client on your server.
  - b) Define the same authentication method on your server as you selected in the Management Server properties in the previous step.



- 7) In the properties of each Administrator or Web Portal User account, select the Authentication Method for external authentication.

#### Related tasks

[Add administrator accounts](#) on page 351


[Create Active Directory Server elements](#) on page 1083

[Create RADIUS or TACACS+ Authentication Server elements](#) on page 1105

[Define Authentication Method elements for external servers](#) on page 1106

## Disable administrator accounts

If an administrator account is no longer needed, you can disable the administrator account to remove access for the administrator.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Expand the **Access Rights** branch and click **Administrators**.
- 3) Right-click the Administrator and select **Disable Administrator**.  
A **Confirmation** dialog box opens.
- 4) Click **Yes** to confirm that you want to disable the Administrator.  
The Administrator element is marked as **Obsolete** and all scheduled Tasks created by the Administrator are ignored.

#### Related tasks

[Add administrator accounts](#) on page 351

[Delete administrator accounts](#) on page 362

# Delete administrator accounts

When you permanently delete an administrator account, all history of changes the administrator has made to elements is also deleted permanently.


## Before you begin


You must disable the administrator account before you can delete it.

A history of the changes that an administrator makes to elements is saved in the SMC. If you delete the administrator account, all history information about the changes the administrator has made is lost. Audit entries that reference the administrator are preserved.



**Note:** There must be at least one account with unrestricted permissions in the SMC. It is not possible to delete the last remaining unrestricted account.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Expand the **Access Rights** branch and click **Administrators**.
- 3) Right-click the Administrator element and select **Delete**.  
A **Confirmation** dialog box opens.



**CAUTION:** Deletion is permanent. There is no undo. To recover a deleted administrator account, you must either recreate it or restore it from a previously created backup that contains the Administrator element.

- 4) Click **Yes**.  
The Administrator element is permanently deleted.

## Related tasks

[Disable administrator accounts](#) on page 361

[Restore elements from the Trash](#) on page 157

# API client accounts and how they work

You can use the application programming interface (API) of the SMC to run certain actions in the SMC remotely using an external application or script.

You must grant all API clients access to the SMC in the Management Client. You can define the API clients and their permissions using API Client elements. For more information on how to configure API Client elements in the Management Client, see the *Forcepoint NGFW SMC API Reference Guide*.

# Configure SMC API

The Application Programming Interface (API) of SMC allows external applications to connect with the SMC.



**Note:** If there is a firewall between SMC and the other applications, make sure that there is an Access rule to allow communication.

The SMC API can be used to run actions remotely using an external application or script. For more information about using SMC API, see the *Forcepoint NGFW SMC API Reference Guide*.

## Create TLS credentials for SMC API Clients

If you want to use encrypted connections, the SMC API Client needs TLS credentials to connect with the Management Server.



**Note:** You can import the existing private key and certificate if they are available.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Engine Properties > Certificates > Pending Certificate Requests**.
- 3) Right-click **Pending Certificate Requests**, then select **New Pending Certificate Request**.
- 4) Complete the certificate request details.
  - a) Enter a name and add "REQ" or "request" at the end.
  - b) In the **Common Name** field, enter the IP address or domain name of SMC.
  - c) Complete the remaining fields as needed.
  - d) Click **OK**.
- 5) Right-click the completed request, then select **Self Sign**.
- 6) Enter the name from the previous step, removing "REQ" or "request" from the end.
- 7) Click **OK**.
- 8) When prompted, remove the pending Certificate Request.

### Result

The TLS Credentials element is added to **Other Elements > Engine Properties > Certificates > TLS Credentials**.

# Enable SMC API

To allow other applications to connect using the SMC API, enable SMC API on the Management Server.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the Management Client, select **Home**.
- 2) Browse to **Others > Management Server**.
- 3) Right-click the Management Server, then select **Properties**.
- 4) Click the **SMC API** tab, then select **Enable**.
- 5) (Optional) In the **Host Name** field, enter the name that the SMC API service uses.



**Note:** API requests are served only if the API request is made to this host name. To allow API requests to any host name, leave this field blank.


- 6) Make sure that the listening port is set to the default of 8082 on the Management Server.
- 7) If the Management Server has several IP addresses and you want to restrict access to one, enter the IP address in the **Listen Only on Address** field.
- 8) If you want to use encrypted connections, click **Select**, then select the TLS Credentials element.
- 9) Click **OK**.

# Create an API Client element

External applications use API clients to connect to SMC.

## Before you begin

SMC API must be enabled for the Management Server.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Browse to **Access Rights**.
- 3) Right-click **Access Rights** and select **New > API Client**.

- 4) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name for the API Client.
- 5) Use the initial authentication key or click **Generate Authentication Key** to generate a new one. A random 24-character alphanumeric authentication key is automatically generated.



**Important:** This key appears only once, so be sure to record it. The API Client uses the authentication key to log on to SMC API.

- 6) Click the **Permissions** tab.
- 7) Select the permissions for actions in the SMC API.
- 8) Click **OK**.



# Alert escalation

### Contents

- [Alert escalation and how it works](#) on page 367
- [Creating Alert elements](#) on page 371
- [Configure notifications for alerts](#) on page 373
- [Alert Chain elements and how they work](#) on page 374
- [Creating Alert Policy elements](#) on page 376
- [Install Alert Policy elements](#) on page 379
- [Acknowledge active alerts](#) on page 379
- [How custom scripts for alert escalation work](#) on page 381
- [Create SMTP Server elements](#) on page 382
- [Use a script for SMS notification](#) on page 383
- [Configure SNMP access for the Management Server](#) on page 384
- [Test alerts](#) on page 385
- [Examples of alert escalation](#) on page 386

The SMC can escalate the alerts generated so that notifications are sent to the administrators through multiple channels.

## Alert escalation and how it works

---

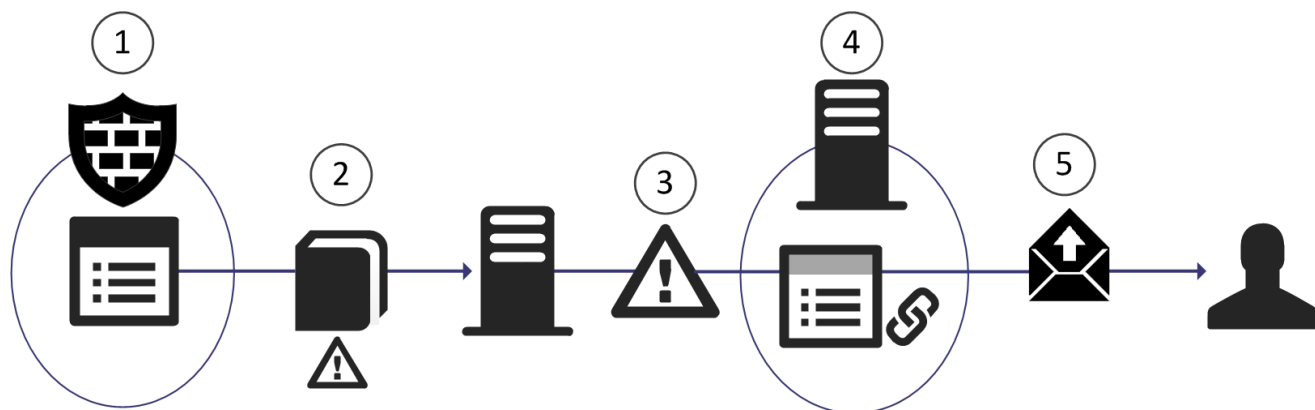
Alerts notify you if something unexpected or suspicious happens. It is important for administrators to respond to alerts to maintain the health of the SMC.

Alert entries inform the administrators when an event in the system requires their attention. For example, alerts are sent when there is a problem with the system, when a test or task fails, or when a rule that is configured to trigger an alert matches.

Active alerts are stored on the Management Server until the alerts are acknowledged. In an environment with multiple Management Servers, each active alert is stored on each Management Server. Alert entries are displayed in the **Active Alerts** view and in the **Logs** view with other types of log entries.

The Management Server can send out different types of notifications to administrators. Alert escalation stops when one of the administrators acknowledges the alert or when all configured alert notifications have been sent. When an alert entry is acknowledged, it is removed from the **Active Alerts** view and from the Management Server, and an audit entry is created.

Figure 72: Alert escalation



- 1 An event on a system component triggers an alert entry.
- 2 The alert entry is sent to the Log Server, which stores it.
- 3 The Log Server forwards the alert entry to the Management Server, where it is handled as an active alert.
- 4 The Management Server matches the alert entry to the *Alert Policy* to select the correct *Alert Chain*.
- 5 The Alert Chain triggers a series of notifications that are sent to administrators.

For example, an Alert Chain can first notify one of the administrators by email and wait for acknowledgment for 10 minutes. If the alert is not acknowledged in time, the Management Server can send another notification as an SMS text message.

## Limitations

- Only one email recipient can be configured for each notification. To send an email to several people at the same time, you must configure an email group on the mail server or configure several notifications consecutively without delays.
- Only SMC servers can send Test Alerts. Test Alerts always have default Severity and Situation information.
- By default, the maximum number of active alerts is 3000 per Domain. You can change the default number of active alerts per Domain by adjusting the `MAX_ACTIVE_ALERTS` and `CRITICAL_ACTIVE_ALERTS_EXTRA_SPACE` parameters in the `SGConfiguration.txt` file that is stored on the Management Server. The maximum number of alerts of any Severity is 2000. After 2000 alerts of any Severity have been sent, only Critical alerts are still sent until the total number of active alerts is 3000.

## Default alert escalation elements

The alert system includes some predefined elements for configuring alert escalation.

The following default alert escalation elements are included:

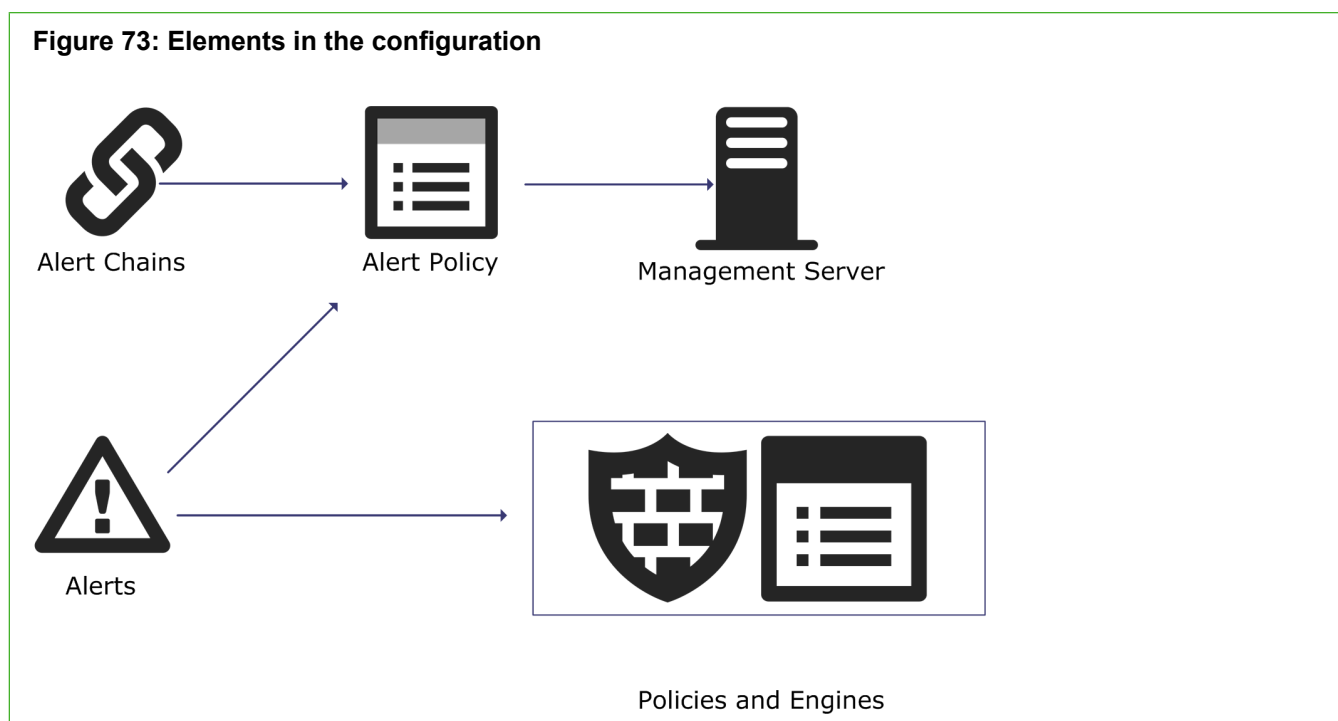
- **System Situations** — System Situations contain definitions for events in the system that trigger a System Alert. There are no configurable parameters for System Situations and you cannot adjust when these Situations are triggered.



- **System Alert** — This Alert element is used for alerts triggered by critical events in the system's internal operation (System Situations). System Alerts always require administrator action. Make sure that your Alert Policies escalate System Alerts.
- **Default Alert** — This Alert element defines the alert that is triggered if no other alert is specified. The Default Alert is used in the default Inspection Policy. You can also use it in your own custom configurations.
- **Test Alert** — This Alert element is used when you test alert handling.
- **Default Alert Chain** — This Alert Chain escalates all alerts to all administrators through user notification in the Management Client.
- **Default Alert Policy** — This Alert Policy contains a rule that escalates all alerts using the Default Alert Chain.

## Alert escalation configuration overview

Configuring how alerts are escalated involves several general steps.



The configuration consists of the following general steps:

- 1) (Optional) Create Custom Alert elements for more precise matching in the Alert Policy.
- 2) Define which events trigger alerts.
- 3) Define how alert notifications are sent to administrators.
- 4) Create lists of actions to take when an alert is escalated.
- 5) Define which alerts are matched against which Alert Chain.

**Related concepts**

[Defining what triggers an alert](#) on page 372

[Alert Chain elements and how they work](#) on page 374

[Creating Alert Policy elements](#) on page 376

**Related tasks**

[Create Custom Alert elements](#) on page 372

[Configure notifications for alerts](#) on page 373

## Information included in alert notifications

The amount of information the alert notification includes depends on the Alert Notification used.

**Table 41: Contents of escalated alerts**

Alert notification	Information included in the notification
Custom script	Depends on the script you create.
Email	Includes the full details of the alert, the full situation description, and the contents of all hex viewable fields as a hexadecimal dump and ASCII.
SMS (text message)	<p>SMS messages sent using an external script are limited to one line in length, with no character limit for that one line. SMS messages sent by SMTP and HTTP do not have this limit.</p> <p>The standard character limit for an SMS message is 160 characters. Only log fields that fit into the notification message are selected, in the following order: Situation name, Severity, source IP address, destination IP address, destination port, Sender, Logical Interface, and the creation time of the alert.</p>
SNMP	Only log fields that fit into the notification message are selected, in the following order: Situation name, Severity, source IP address, destination IP address, destination port, Sender, Logical Interface, alert creation time, traffic recording excerpt, and the application protocol.

**Related concepts**

[Custom alert scripts for alert escalation](#) on page 371

## Rule order in alert policies and alert chains

The system processes Alert Policies and Alert Chains from top down, so the order of the rules is important.

- In Alert Policies, rules must proceed from rules with the most limited scope to rules that are the most general.
- In Alert Chains, the order of the rules determines the order in which the alert notifications are sent.

## Custom alert scripts for alert escalation

You can write a script that executes custom commands for alert escalation.

To send alert notifications using Custom Alert Scripts, you must define the Root Path on the Management Server where custom alert scripts are executed. The default location is `<installation directory>/data/notification`. All custom scripts must be stored in the same root path that is defined in the properties of the Management Server that controls the Shared Domain.

The example notification script `notify.bat` in Windows and `notify.sh` in Linux can be edited for your own use. In Linux, the `sgadmin` user needs read, write, and execute permissions in the script's directory.

## SNMP for the SMC Appliance

SNMP traps and monitoring access can be configured to receive information about the health of the SMC Appliance.

Using SNMP monitoring software or an SNMP station, the appliance can be polled for information about available disk space, memory utilization, and running processes. Polling the appliance regularly helps you to identify appliance events early, such as partitions becoming full or processes running hot. SNMP Traps can be configured so that the appliance alerts the specified user or community.

Both SNMP 2c and 3 are supported. Configuring SNMP access to the SMC Appliance is done from the Management Client. The list of available Net-SNMP common MIBs can be found in the `/usr/share/snmp/mibs` directory. Visit <http://www.net-snmp.org> for MIB descriptions.



**Note:** SNMP users and communities have read-only access to the appliance.

### Related tasks

[Configure SNMP access for the Management Server](#) on page 384

### Related reference

[SNMP traps and MIBs](#) on page 1463

## Creating Alert elements

You can use one of the predefined Alert elements or define a Custom Alert element.

There are three predefined Alert elements in the SMC:

- The *System Alert* is reserved for alerts about the system operation.
- The *Default Alert* is a ready-made element that defines the alert that is triggered if no specific alert is triggered.
- The *Test Alert* is used in Alert Policies for testing Situations.

You can also define Custom Alert elements, which are useful if you want to configure different alert notifications for different types of events. You can create Custom Alerts and create specialized handling rules for them in your Alert Policy. System Events are automatically associated with the System Alert element.

**Related concepts**

[Defining what triggers an alert](#) on page 372

**Related tasks**

[Create Custom Alert elements](#) on page 372


[Test alerts](#) on page 385


## Create Custom Alert elements

You can define your own custom Alert elements for more precise matching in the Alert Policy.

Defining custom Alert elements allows you to configure different alert notifications for different types of events and write more specific alert messages. If you set up the Management Server to send SNMP traps when alerts are triggered, you can define the SNMP code for the associated alert entries.

The alerts you see in the **Active Alerts** view and the **Logs** view contain more information than you define for your custom Alert element. Alert entries are always triggered by some event, and information regarding the event is automatically included in the alert entry. How much information is included depends on the type of Alert Notification.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Right-click **Alert Configurations** and select **New > Custom Alert**.
- 3) Enter a unique **Name** for the alert.  
This is the name displayed in the **Logs** view and in the **Active Alerts** view.
- 4) (Optional) Type a **Message** for the alert.  
This is shown in logs and in the **Active Alerts** view.
- 5) (Optional) If you use SNMP traps for sending alerts, enter the **SNMP Trap Code** according to how the receiving system is set up.  
This code is included in the SNMP messages sent.
- 6) Click **OK**.
- 7) If you edited a Custom Alert that is already used in an Alert Policy, refresh the Alert Policy on the Domain or Domains.

## Defining what triggers an alert

There are several different types of events that can trigger an alert.

The following events can trigger alerts:

- A warning or error in the operation of the SMC
- A test failure
- A match to a rule
- A match to a pattern defined in a Situation element.

System Alerts and custom alerts are always triggered by an event in the system. In addition to the System Alerts triggered by internal events in the SMC, you can configure the following events to trigger alerts:

- You can configure a rule in your Firewall, Layer 2 Firewall, or IPS Policy to trigger an alert. Master NGFW Engines and Virtual Firewalls use Firewall Policies.
- You can activate Status Surveillance on engines to trigger an alert when the Management Server does not receive status updates for a while.
- You can configure the engine tester to issue an alert whenever a test fails (for example, when a network link goes down). Some tests that run on the engine by default might already be configured to issue alerts.
- Server Pool Monitoring Agents can trigger alerts when they detect problems with the servers.
- You can set thresholds for monitored items in Overviews to trigger alerts when the threshold is reached.

#### Related concepts

[Getting started with the engine tester](#) on page 639

[Getting started with inbound traffic management](#) on page 745

#### Related tasks

[Set thresholds for monitored items in Overview elements](#) on page 191

[Enable or disable engine status monitoring](#) on page 330

[Create Custom Alert elements](#) on page 372

[Configure notifications for alerts](#) on page 373

[Define logging options for Access rules](#) on page 873

## Configure notifications for alerts

Alert Notifications are ways to send notifications to administrators.

By default, alert notifications are only sent to administrators through user notification in the Management Client. You can also send alerts in the following ways:

- **E-Mail** — Alert notifications are sent as email using an SMTP server.
- **SMS** — Alert notifications are sent as an SMS text message over HTTP, using an SMTP server, or with a script that forwards the message to a third-party tool (for example, gnokii). You can add multiple SMS Channel Types. If the first SMS channel fails, the subsequent SMS channels are used in the order in which they are listed.
- **SNMP** — The SNMP Trap Code specified in the custom alert is sent using an SNMP server.
- **Custom Alert Scripts** — Alerts are sent for processing to a script you create.

SMS messages sent by script are limited to one line in length. The maximum length of the SMS messages sent by script depends on the third-party tool that is used in sending the messages. The standard character limit for SMS messages is 160 characters. To use a script, install a third-party tool that forwards the SMS messages (for example, gnokii) and the drivers for the tool on the same host. If the tool is not installed on the Management Server host, configure the script for sending the alert notifications to access the tool remotely.



**Note:** If you have installed a third-party tool, make sure that your Firewall Policy or Layer 2 Firewall Policy allows the traffic from the Management Server to the host.

If you want to send alerts in one or more of these ways, you must integrate external components, such as a GSM modem or an SMTP server. This integration is done in the properties of the Management Server element. In an environment with multiple Management Servers, you must define alert notifications for all Management Servers, even if a Management Server does not currently control any Domains.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Home**.
- 2) Browse to **Others > Management Server**.
- 3) Right-click the active Management Server, then select **Properties**.
- 4) Click the **Notifications** tab, then configure one or more notification methods.
- 5) Click **OK**.

#### Related concepts

[Custom alert scripts for alert escalation](#) on page 371

[Alert Chain elements and how they work](#) on page 374

#### Related tasks

[Create SMTP Server elements](#) on page 382

## Alert Chain elements and how they work

Alert Chain elements define which notification channels are used to send alert notifications to administrators.

Alert Chains contain rows that are read from top to bottom. Alert Chains are used in Alert Policies. The Alert Policy defines which Alerts trigger Alert Chains. You can also add delays between the notifications to give the administrators time to respond.

The Final Action row determines what happens when all Alert Channels in the Alert Chain have been tried, but none of the administrators have acknowledged the alert:


- The alert escalation can stop.
- The alert can be automatically acknowledged.
- The alert can be redirected to some other Alert Chain.
- The alert processing can return to the Alert Policy for further matching.


**Related tasks**[Configure notifications for alerts](#) on page 373[Create Alert Chain elements](#) on page 375

## Create Alert Chain elements

Alert Chain elements specify how alert notifications are sent to administrators.

You can create multiple Alert Chains.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Browse to **Alert Configurations > Alert Chains**.  
The existing Alert Chains are displayed.
- 3) Right-click an existing Alert Chain and select **Properties** or right-click the **Alert Chains** list and select **New > Alert Chain**.
- 4) (New Alert Chain only) Enter a unique name for the Alert Chain, then click **OK**.

**Related concepts**[Creating Alert Policy elements](#) on page 376**Related tasks**[Edit Alert Chain elements](#) on page 375

## Edit Alert Chain elements

Alert Chain elements are composed of rows ordered from top to bottom. Each row specifies a notification method and a recipient.


You can only enter one recipient and one notification method per row. You must add more rows in the following cases:


- You want to use the same notification method for more than one recipient.
- You want to use more than one notification method for the same recipient.

The Final Action row determines what happens when all Alert Channels in the Alert Chain have been tried, but none of the Administrators have acknowledged the alert.



**Tip:** It is not mandatory to add any rows to an Alert Chain. For example, you can use only the Final Action to automatically acknowledge or stop the escalation of alert entries that the Alert Policy directs to the chain.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the Alert Chain and select **Edit Alert Chain**.
- 2) Add a rule:
  - In an empty Alert Chain, right-click the **Final Action** row and select **Rule > Add Rule**.
  - In an Alert Chain with existing rules, right-click a rule and select **Rule > Add Rule Before** or **Rule > Add Rule After**.
- 3) Select the Alert Channel.
- 4) Specify the Destination of the alert notification.  
The destination information varies according to the selected alert channel.
- 5) (Recommended) Double-click the **Threshold to Block** cell and set a limit for how many alerts the designated recipient is sent.
- 6) (Mandatory for the Delay channel, optional for other channels) In the **Delay** cell, enter the number of minutes before the next row of the alert chain is processed.
  - The purpose of the delay is to give to the recipient of the notification enough time to acknowledge the alert before the next notification is sent.
  - If sending the notification through the selected channel fails, the delay entered here is ignored. If you want to add delays that are always valid, add a row with **Delay** as the alert channel and set the delay on that row.
- 7) Select the Final Action that the SMC takes if the last row of the Alert Chain is reached.
- 8) Click  **Save**.

#### Related concepts

[Creating Alert Policy elements](#) on page 376

[Custom alert scripts for alert escalation](#) on page 371

#### Related tasks

[Configure notifications for alerts](#) on page 373

[Create Alert Chain elements](#) on page 375

[Install Alert Policy elements](#) on page 379

## Creating Alert Policy elements

Alert Policies determine the criteria for selecting which alerts generated by various sources are escalated to which Alert Chains.

Firewalls, Layer 2 Firewalls, IPS engines, and SMC servers are possible sources for alerts. If Domain elements have been configured, you can select a Domain as a Sender in an Alert Policy in the Shared Domain.



An Alert Policy contains rules for matching incoming alert entries. Alert entries that match an Alert Policy rule are escalated to the Alert Chain defined in the rule. Make sure that your Alert Policies also escalate System Alerts. If an alert entry does not match any rule in the Alert Policy, the alert entry is not escalated.

The fields in Alert Policy rules are explained in the following table.

**Table 42: Alert Policy fields**

Option	Definition
<b>ID</b>	A unique identifier for the rule. You cannot edit the ID.
<b>Sender</b>	Allows you to limit the rule to match alerts entries generated by one or more particular components. NGFW Engines and SMC servers are possible senders for alerts. If Domain elements have been configured in your system, a Domain can also be selected as a Sender in an Alert Policy in the Shared Domain.
<b>Alert and Situation</b>	Allows you to limit the rule to match alert entries that are based on one or more particular Alert elements or Situation elements.
<b>Time</b>	Allows you to limit the time of day and day of the week when the rule is active. For example, you can send different notifications for weekends or nights.
<b>Severity</b>	Allows you to limit the rule to match alert entries that have a Severity value within a certain range. For example, you can escalate only the most critical alerts using SMS notification, and escalate the other alerts using email notification.
<b>Chain</b>	Defines the Alert Chain that is used for escalating matching alert entries.
<b>Comment</b>	An optional free-form comment for the rule.
<b>Rule Name</b>	Contains a rule tag that cannot be edited. You can optionally also add a name for the rule, which is displayed alongside the rule tag.

#### Related concepts

[Alert Chain elements and how they work](#) on page 374


#### Related tasks


[Create Alert Policy elements](#) on page 377

[Edit Alert Policy rules](#) on page 378

## Create Alert Policy elements

Alert Policies specify Alert Chains and the Alerts that trigger them.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.

- 2) Browse to **Alert Configurations > Alert Policies**.
- 3) Right-click an existing Alert Policy and select **Properties** or right-click the **Alert Policies** list and select **New > Alert Policy**.
- 4) Enter a unique name for the policy and click **OK**.

#### Related concepts


[Alert Chain elements and how they work](#) on page 374


#### Related tasks

[Edit Alert Policy rules](#) on page 378

## Edit Alert Policy rules

Alert Policy rule settings include the Alert Sender, the Alert and Situation, Time, and Severity.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the Alert Policy and select **Properties**.
- 2) Add a rule:
  - In an empty Alert Policy, right-click the rule table and select **Rule > Add Rule**.
  - In an Alert Policy with existing rules, right-click a rule ID and select **Rule > Add Rule Before** or **Rule > Add Rule After**.
- 3) (Optional) Select the Alert Sender or keep the option **Set to ANY**.
- 4) (Optional) Specify the Alert and Situation that this rule matches.
- 5) (Optional) Double-click the **Time** cell and select when you want the rule to be applied. Click **OK**.
  - If you do not specify a validity time, the rule is always applicable.
  - The time is entered as UTC (GMT) time. You must calculate the effects of the time difference on your local time. (UTC does not adjust for daylight savings time.)
- 6) (Optional) Double-click the **Severity** cell and specify the **Severity** value or the range of **Severity** values that this rule matches.
  - To define a single Severity value, select **Severity** and one of the Severity options.
  - If you want the rule to match a range of Severities, select **Severity Range** and define the range in the **From** and **To** lists.
- 7) Select which **Alert Chain** is processed when an alert event matches this rule.
- 8) Click  **Save**.

**Related concepts**

[Alert Chain elements and how they work](#) on page 374

**Related tasks**

[Create Alert Policy elements](#) on page 377


[Install Alert Policy elements](#) on page 379

## Install Alert Policy elements

Changes made to Alert Policies or the Alert Chains used by the Alert Policy take effect when you install the Alert Policy on a Domain.

You can install the same Alert Policy on multiple Domains. In this case, you must install the Alert Policy from the Shared Domain or from the Domain to which the Alert Policy belongs.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Browse to **Alert Configurations > Alert Policies**.
- 3) Right-click the Alert Policy you want to install and select **Install Policy**.
- 4) Select the Domains on which you want to install the Alert Policy and click **Add**.
- 5) Make sure that the correct Alert Policy is selected and click **OK**.

**Related concepts**

[Alert escalation configuration overview](#) on page 369

## Acknowledge active alerts

New alerts are handled as active alerts until they are acknowledged. To stop alert escalation, you acknowledge active alerts.

When an SMC component generates an alert, it sends the alert to the Log Server. The Log Server stores the alert entry. A new alert entry is handled as an active alert by the Management Server. A Domain's active alerts are visible when you are logged on to the Domain. Active alerts are stored on the Management Server until the alerts are acknowledged. In an environment with multiple Management Servers, active alerts are automatically replicated between the Management Servers.

Alert entries are displayed in the **Active Alerts** view and in the **Logs** view with other types of log entries. You can also view alert entries in the Web Portal.

You can acknowledge alert entries in the **Active Alerts** view. When an alert entry is acknowledged, it is removed from the **Active Alerts** view and from the Management Server. An audit entry is created when an alert is acknowledged. All Alert Chain processing for that alert entry is stopped. You can acknowledge alerts one by one. You can alternatively aggregate similar types of alerts as a group and acknowledge the whole group of alerts at the same time.



**Note:** When you acknowledge an alert entry, alert escalation stops for that alert entry and no new notifications are sent out from the Management Server to administrators.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Click **Active Alerts** in the bottom right corner of the Management Client.  
By default, the **Active Alerts** view opens with all active alerts aggregated by Situation.

**Figure 74: Active Alerts view**

Count	Creation ...	Sender	Situation	Action	Src Addr	Dst Addr	Severity	Service	IP Pr
15	15 values	3 values	TCP_Option-Too-Long	Terminate (passive)	15 values	15 values			
1	2016-09-19 ...	Manag...	Alert Server: Active alert qu...				Critical		
395			System_Tester-Test-Failed				Critical		
140			MSRPC-TCP_CPS-Microsoft...				Critical		
1325			MSRPC-TCP_CPS-Windows...				Critical		
474			NetBIOS-TCP_SMB-Microsoft...				High		
3	3 values	Manag...	Management Server: Updat...				Low		

- 2) Select one or more alert entries.
  - To aggregate the alert entries by time or sender, select **Tools > Aggregate > Sort by Time** or **Tools > Aggregate > Aggregate by Sender**.
  - To view the individual alerts, select **Tools > Details**.
  - The **Query** pane allows you to filter the active alert entries so that you can find the information you need.
- 3) Right-click the selected alerts, then select **Acknowledge**.

### Related concepts

[Benefits of filtering log entries](#) on page 242

# How custom scripts for alert escalation work

Before writing a custom alert script, review the following information about the command arguments and script file location.

All custom scripts must be stored in the same root path that is defined in the properties of the Management Server that controls all Domains.

The example notification script `notify.bat` in Windows and `notify.sh` in Linux can be edited for your own use. In Linux, the `sgadmin` user needs read, write, and execute permissions in the script's directory.

The alert information is given to the script as command arguments as described in the following table.

**Table 43: Arguments passed to the custom scripts**

Argument Number	Content	Description
1	Alert ID	The unique identifier for the alert.
2	Alert Name	The name defined in the alert properties.
3	Alert Originator	The IP address of the component that generated this alert.
4	Alert Date	The date when the alert was originally generated.
5	Alert Message	A short alert description.
6	Alert Severity	The Severity value of the alert from 1–10, where 1 is the least severe and 10 is the most severe. The numeric Severity value corresponds to the following Severity value in the generated alert: 1= Info, 2–4=Low, 5–7=High, and 8–10=Critical.
7	Alert Short Description	The contents of the Comment field in the alert properties.
8	Event ID	IPS only: reference to the event ID that triggered the alert.
9	Situation Description	Long description of the Situation that triggered the alert.

Alert scripts stored in the directory defined in the Management Server element's properties can be called from Alert Chains by their name.

When the alert script is executed, the output (`stdout`) is appended to the `notify.out` file in the script's directory. The error output (`stderr`) is appended to the `notify.err` file in the script's directory. The Linux script in the following illustration is an example of how to create an operating system log entry using the custom script alert notification.

### Example custom alert script

```
#!/bin/sh
# This script uses the 'logger' utility to create an operating system
# log entry of the alert notification.
PATH=/bin:/usr/bin

# Create log entry: "SMC Alert (<ALERT_ID>): Severity <SEVERITY>
#   : <ALERT_NAME> : <ALERT_DESCRIPTION>"

/usr/bin/logger "SMC Alert ($1): Severity $6 : $2 : $5"

exit 0
```

### Related concepts

[Alert escalation and how it works](#) on page 367

[Creating Alert Policy elements](#) on page 376

### Related tasks


[Configure notifications for alerts](#) on page 373


[Edit Alert Chain elements](#) on page 375

## Create SMTP Server elements

SMTP Server elements define the properties of SMTP servers that you can use, for example, to send email and SMS notifications.

You can also use SMTP Server elements as the Source or Destination in a policy. SMTP Server elements can be used in the properties Management Server elements for emailing Reports and sending alerts as email and SMS.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Network Elements > Servers**.
- 3) Right-click **Servers** and select **New > SMTP Server**.
- 4) On the **General** tab, define at least the following settings:
  - **Name**
  - **IP Address**
  - **Location**
  - **Default Sender Name**
  - **Default Sender E-mail**
  - (Recommended) **Default Host Name** — If you do not enter a value in the **Default Host Name** field, the local host name of the computer where the Management Client is running is used.

- 5) (Optional) On the **NAT** tab, configure settings for element-based NAT.
- 6) Click **OK**.

#### Related concepts

[Element-based NAT and how it works](#) on page 635

#### Related tasks

[Email reports](#) on page 281


[Configure notifications for alerts](#) on page 373

## Use a script for SMS notification

You can use a script to send alert notification SMS messages through a third-party tool that forwards the SMS messages to the administrators.

### Before you begin

If there is a Firewall or a Layer 2 Firewall between the Management Server and the host on which the tool for forwarding the SMS messages is installed, you must allow the traffic from the Management Server to the host. Do this in the Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall Policy. You must install the tool that forwards the SMS messages from the Management Server.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Install a third-party tool (for example, gnokii) to forward SMS messages and the drivers for the tool on the host.  
See the tool-specific instructions for information about configuring the tool.
- 2) In the Management Client, select **Home**.
- 3) Browse to **Others > Management Server**.
- 4) Right-click the Management Server, select **Properties**, then click the **Notifications** tab.
- 5) Select **Add > Script**.
- 6) Define the following script properties:
  - **Name** — The file name of the script.
  - **Script Path** — The full path to the script that sends the SMS, or the relative path from the execution directory.
  - **Execution Path** — The directory in which the script is executed. The execution log is stored in this directory.

- 7) (Optional) Click **Test** if you want to test that the SMS messages are sent correctly.
- 8) Click **OK**.
- 9) Click **OK** in the Management Server properties to save the changes to the notifications.

## Configure SNMP access for the Management Server

You can configure access for SNMP software or stations to gather data about the SMC Appliance.

### Before you begin


Install and configure the SNMP software or station.



**Note:** Users and communities must be used in the Monitoring or Traps section to be saved. Unused entries are lost.



**CAUTION:** Configuring SNMP access from both the command line and the Management Client is not supported. Changes from the command line disable the SNMP tab on the Management Server properties dialog box. Command line changes persistently override any SNMP configuration made in the Management Client.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Home**.
- 2) Browse to **Others > Management Server**.
- 3) Right-click the Management Server, select **Properties**, then click the **SNMP** tab.
- 4) Enter the location of the SNMP manager, then select **v2c** or **v3** as the version.
- 5) Enter the contact information for the person responsible for the appliance.
- 6) Click **Enable SNMP**.
- 7) (v3 only) Create the list of users.
  - a) Click **Add** to add a row to the table.
  - b) Type the user name in the new row.
  - c) Double-click the protocol cells as needed.



- d) Enter the password.
  - e) Retype the password to confirm.
  - f) Select the protocol.
  - g) Click **OK**.
- 8) Click **Add** in the **Monitoring** section, then enter the community string (v2c) or user name (v3).
  - 9) In the **Traps** section, enter the community string (v2c) or select the user name (v3).
  - 10) Click **Add**, then enter the trap destination and port.

**Related concepts**

[SNMP for the SMC Appliance](#) on page 371

**Related tasks**

[Configure SNMP for engines](#) on page 657

## Test alerts

You can test the correct functioning of the alerts by sending a Test Alert.

Test Alerts have a severity value of **Info** and have their own specific Situation. Firewall, Layer 2 Firewall, and IPS engines cannot send Test Alerts. The sender is always an SMC server, so it is not possible to test how alerts from other components are handled using a Test Alert.



**Note:** A Test Alert is escalated only if the Alert Policy rules match Test Alerts.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Browse to **Alert Configurations > Alerts**.
- 3) Right-click the alert to test and select **Test Alert**.
- 4) Select the server that sends the alert and click **Select**.
- 5) Verify that the alert entry appears in the **Active Alerts** view.

**Related tasks**

[Acknowledge active alerts](#) on page 379

# Examples of alert escalation

These examples show some common uses for alert escalation, and general steps on how each example is configured.

## Example: disabling alert escalations for a specific situation

You might want to disable alert escalations for a specified Situation, as shown in the following example.

The administrators at company A notice that the system issues an alert every time someone mistypes their password when logging on using the Management Client. They have set up their IPS system to detect if there are several failed logons within a short period (which could indicate malicious activity). For this reason, they decide that they do not want to receive alert notifications about failed logons.

The administrators:

- 1) Create an Alert Chain and name it Auto-acknowledge.
- 2) Set the final action for the Auto-acknowledge Alert Chain to Acknowledge without adding any new rows.
- 3) Add the following new rule at the top of the Alert Policy:

**Table 44: Alert Policy rule example**

Sender	Alert and Situation	Chain
ANY	"Management Server: Login Failed" Situation Element	"Auto-acknowledge" Alert Chain

- 4) Refresh the Alert Policy on the Shared Domain.

Alerts for failed logons are still generated and stored, but they do not trigger any alert notification and they are never shown in the **Active Alerts** view. For example, reports can still include information about failed logon attempts to highlight excessive logon failures.

## Example: escalating alerts to specific administrators and sites

You can escalate alerts to specified locations and administrators, as shown in the following example.

Company B has two sites, a branch office (BO) and a headquarters (HQ) site, which both have their own administrators. Both sites have a Firewall and a Log Server, and the shared Management Server is at the HQ site. Domains are not used, so all elements are in the Shared Domain. The administrators decide to set up alert escalation.

For the most severe alert entries, alerts are sent as an SMS text message to the shared mobile phone each site has for the administrator on duty. If the administrator at one site does not acknowledge the alert entry within 15 minutes, the alert notification is sent to the administrator at the other site.

For less severe alert entries, the alerts are only escalated to the site where the alert entry is created. At first, the less severe notifications are sent only through a User Notification in the Management Client. After an hour, the alert notification is sent as an SMS text message to the shared mobile phone of the site where the alert entry is created.

The administrators:

- 1) Create new Alert Chains for high-severity and low-severity alert entries for both the HQ and the BO sites. There are four Alert Chains in total:

- "HQ Important Alerts" contains the following rules:

**Table 45: "HQ Important Alerts" Alert Chain**

Channel	Destination	Delay
SMS	[Phone number for HQ shared mobile phone]	15 min
SMS	[Phone number for BO shared mobile phone]	

- "HQ Minor Alerts" contains the following rules:

**Table 46: "HQ Minor Alerts" Alert Chain**

Channel	Destination	Delay
User Notification	HQ Administrator A HQ Administrator B [other administrators]	60 min
SMS	[Phone number for HQ shared mobile phone]	

- The "BO Important Alerts" and "BO Minor Alerts" Alert Chains are the same as the HQ Alert Chains, but with the BO Administrators and a different phone number.

- 2) Create an Alert Policy with the following rules:

Sender	Alert and Situation	Severity	Chain
HQ Firewall HQ Log Server Management Server	ANY	High... Critical	HQ Important Alerts
HQ Firewall HQ Log Server Management Server	ANY	Info...Low	HQ Minor Alerts
BO Firewall BO Log Server	ANY	High...Critical	BO Important Alerts
BO Firewall BO Log Server	ANY	Info...Low	BO Minor Alerts

- 3) Configure SMS Notification in the Management Server's properties.
- 4) Install the new Alert Policy on the Shared Domain.



# Domain elements

### Contents

- [Getting started with Domain elements](#) on page 389
- [How Domain elements work](#) on page 390
- [Create and modify Domain elements](#) on page 391
- [Log on to a Domain](#) on page 394
- [Log off from all Domains](#) on page 394
- [Move elements between Domains](#) on page 395
- [View Domain status](#) on page 396
- [Delete a Domain](#) on page 397
- [Examples of Domain elements](#) on page 397

Domain elements allow you to restrict which elements are displayed to the administrators in the Management Client and in the optional Web Portal. They also allow you to define in which administrative Domains an administrator has permissions. Configuring Domains requires a special license.

## Getting started with Domain elements

Domain elements help you manage large networks and define administrator permissions.

In a large system, there can be different geographical sites that are managed by different administrators. Typically, most of the administrators only manage SMC components at their own site. Only a few main administrators are responsible for the overall system health across all sites. Domain elements allow you to group elements that belong to specific configurations (for example, elements that belong to a particular site or customer). The elements in different Domains are kept separate from each other.

The administrators' rights within a Domain depend on the permissions defined in the administrator accounts. You can grant access for an administrator to one or more Domains and define the permissions for each Domain in fine detail.

### How Domains can be configured

- Domain elements allow you to group elements that belong to specific configurations (for example, elements that belong to a specific customer or site).
- You can use Domains to divide responsibilities between administrators, so that administrators only have access to elements in specific Domains.
- You must have a special license to be able to configure Domain elements. The number of Domains that you can create depends on the license.
- The **ALL Domains** Access Control List is a default Access Control List that you can use in administrator accounts to grant access to all defined Domains.

- The predefined *Shared Domain* is meant for all elements that do not belong to a particular customer or site. All predefined system elements belong to the Shared Domain. If there is no Domain license in the SMC or no Domains have yet been configured, all elements belong to the Shared Domain.

## Shared Domain

- The elements in the Shared Domain are displayed to all administrators when they are logged on to any Domain in the Management Client.
- Domains, Management Servers, Log Pruning Filters, and Administrator accounts with unrestricted permissions are elements that automatically belong to the Shared Domain. You can only create these elements in the Shared Domain, and you cannot move them to any other Domain.
- Licenses and update packages always belong to the Shared Domain.
- If you have Master NGFW Engine and Virtual NGFW Engine elements, the Master NGFW Engine must either belong to the Shared Domain or to the same Domain as the Virtual NGFW Engines.

### Related concepts

[Configuration of Master NGFW Engines and Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 505

## How Domain elements work

Elements belong to one or more Domains. Administrator permissions in the Domain determine which elements administrators can manage.

When Domains are used, each element automatically belongs to a Domain. An element can only belong to one Domain at a time. By default, all elements belong to the Domain in which they are created. The Shared Domain is meant for elements that are used in several Domains, for example, high-level policy templates. All predefined system elements also automatically belong to the Shared Domain.

When administrators log on to a Domain, they can manage the elements in the Domain according to the permissions granted for that specific Domain. Administrators can also view most elements that belong to the Shared Domain even when they are not allowed to log on to the Shared Domain. However, the contents of the elements are only displayed to administrators who have permission to view those elements' contents. Elements in the Shared Domain can only be edited from within the Shared Domain.

If there are existing elements when you first start using Domains, all existing elements belong to the Shared Domain. You can move the elements to other Domains as necessary. In an environment with more than one Management Server, you can also change the active Management Server that controls all Domains.

## Using elements with administrative Domains

Each element automatically belongs to either the Domain in which it was created or to the Shared Domain. When you create elements, first log on to the correct Domain and then create the elements so that the elements belong to the right Domain.

You can freely decide to which Domain most elements belong, except for the following elements:

- Domains, Management Servers, Log Pruning Filters, and Administrator accounts with unrestricted permissions are elements that automatically belong to the Shared Domain. You can only create these elements in the Shared Domain, and you cannot move them to any other Domain.

- Licenses and update packages always belong to the Shared Domain.
- The Management Server's internal LDAP user database (the LDAP Domain element called InternalDomain). Configure external LDAP servers in the Domains to create Domain-specific accounts for end-user authentication.
- If you have Master NGFW Engine and Virtual NGFW Engine elements, the Master NGFW Engine must either belong to the Shared Domain or to the same Domain as the Virtual NGFW Engines.

In addition, there are limitations for selecting the Domain for some elements that are closely associated with other elements:

- A Log Server that is selected as the Log Server for a Management Server must belong to the Shared Domain.
- If a Log Server has a backup Log Server, both Log Servers must belong to the same Domain.
- A Log Server and the NGFW Engines that send their event data to the Log Server must be in the same Domain.
- A Task and the target of the Task (for example, an Export Log Task and the target Log Servers) must be in the same Domain. Otherwise, the Task cannot be run.
- By default, all elements used in a VPN must belong to the same Domain. You can also use some elements that belong to the Shared Domain when you configure a VPN in another Domain. These elements include the VPN Client gateway, Certificate Authorities, Gateway Certificates, Gateway Profiles, Gateway Settings, and VPN Profiles.



**Note:** The elements in the Shared Domain are displayed to all administrators when they are logged on to any Domain in the Management Client.

### Related concepts

[How Categories help you view only certain elements](#) on page 159

## Create and modify Domain elements

Create Domain elements, for example, to group elements in different configurations and restrict administrator permissions.

You can import and set a logo for each Domain.

### Create Domain elements

Only administrators that have unrestricted permissions can create Domains.

#### Before you begin

To create or manage Domains, you must log on to the active Management Server.

You can create as many Domains as you need. Your Domain license defines how many Domains you can create.

A service break for the SMC is highly recommended when introducing Domains into the system, assigning the existing elements to the correct Domains, and changing the administrator accounts.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements** branch.
- 3) Right-click **Domains** and select **New Domain**.
- 4) Give the Domain a unique **Name**.
- 5) (Optional) Enter a **Comment** for your own reference.
- 6) (Optional) Fill in the **E-mail Address** and **Phone Number** fields with information that you want to be displayed in the Domain Overview.  
You can enter, for example, the information for the contact person at your company or the administrator responsible for the Domain.
- 7) (Optional) Click **Add** and select the Categories to use in the **Default Category Filter**.
- 8) Click **OK**.

#### Related concepts

[How Categories help you view only certain elements](#) on page 159

#### Related tasks

[Set a Domain logo](#) on page 392

[Log on to a Domain](#) on page 394

[Move elements between Domains](#) on page 395

## Set a Domain logo

You can define a logo for each Domain. The Domain logo is displayed in the upper right corner of the Management Client window and next to the Domain's name in the Domain Overview. The Domain logo is also displayed in the Web Portal.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements** branch and click **Domains**.
- 3) Right-click the Domain and select **Properties**.
- 4) Click the **Logo** tab in the **Domain Properties** dialog box.



- 5) Select the logo option from the list:
  - Select **None** to remove a previously selected logo so that the Domain has no logo.
  - Select a logo from the list or select **Select** and select a logo in the dialog box that opens.
  - Select **New** to import a new logo.
- 6) Click **OK**.  
The **Logo** tab shows a preview of the selected Logo.
- 7) Click **OK**.

#### Related tasks

[Write announcements to Web Portal users](#) on page 410

[Create Domain elements](#) on page 391

[Import a Domain logo](#) on page 393


[Log on to a Domain](#) on page 394


[Move elements between Domains](#) on page 395

[View Domain status](#) on page 396

## Import a Domain logo

Before you can associate a logo with a domain, you must import it.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements** branch and click **Domains**.
- 3) Right-click the Domain and select **Properties**.
- 4) In the **Logo Properties** dialog box, enter a unique **Name** for the logo.
- 5) Click **Browse** and select the image (a .jpg, .gif, .png, .tif, .bmp, or .pnm file).
- 6) Click **OK**.  
The **Logo** tab shows a preview of the selected Logo.
- 7) Click **OK**.


#### Related tasks

[Set a Domain logo](#) on page 392

# Log on to a Domain

If you only have permissions in a single Domain, you automatically log on to the Domain when you log on to the Management Client. If you have permissions in more than one Domain, you must log on to the correct Domain before managing elements that belong to the Domain.

You can be logged on to more than one Domain at the same time.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) To log on to a Domain at the same time as you log on to the Management Client, select or enter the server's IP address in the **Server Address** field, enter a forward (/) or backward (\) slash, and the name of the Domain in the Management Client **Logon** dialog box.

For example, 192.168.200.31/Example Domain or 192.168.200.31\Example Domain.



**Tip:** Select **Remember Server Address** to avoid entering the information when logging on in future.

- 2) To log on to a Domain in the Domain Overview that opens automatically after you log on to the Management Client, right-click the Domain, then select **Login**.  
If the Domain Overview is not open, select **≡ Menu > File > New Tab**, then select **Domain Overview**.
- 3) To log on to a Domain from the **Configuration** view of the Management Client, follow these steps.
  - a) Select **⚙️ Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
  - b) Browse to **Other Elements > Domains**.
  - c) Right-click the Domain, then select **Login**.


## Related tasks

[Create Domain elements](#) on page 391

[Log off from all Domains](#) on page 394

# Log off from all Domains

If you have permissions in more than one Domain, you can log off from all Domains through the Domain Overview.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **≡ Menu > File > New Tab**, then select **Domain Overview**.
- 2) Select **File > Log out from All**.

**Related tasks**[Log on to a Domain](#) on page 394

# Move elements between Domains

You can move most elements from one Domain to another.

You can move existing elements from one Domain to another. Only administrators with unrestricted permissions can move elements between Domains. When you start moving elements from one Domain to another, the Management Server automatically searches for element references. You can then either remove the references between the elements or move the referred or referencing elements. In addition to individual elements, you can also move all elements associated with a Category. Using Categories can make moving elements easier if you need to move many elements.

The following elements always belong to the Shared Domain and cannot be moved:

- Predefined system elements
- Domains
- Management Servers
- Licenses
- Update packages
- Log Pruning Filters.
- Administrator accounts with unrestricted permissions

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Log on to the Domain from which you want to move elements.
- 2) Select the elements that you want to move to another Domain.



**Tip:** To hide elements that belong to the Shared Domain, select **Tools > Show Only Current Domain**.

- 3) Right-click one of the selected elements, then select **Tools > Move to Domain**.
- 4) Click **Select** next to the **Target Domain** field, then select a Domain.
- 5) Click **Move**.

The Management Server automatically searches for references to or from the selected elements in the current Domain.

A new view opens and shows the reference status.

- If the element you are moving references another element, you must either remove the references or move the referenced element as well.
- 6) If the **Element References** pane shows **Referring** or **Referenced Elements**, expand the branches to see the referring or referenced elements and resolve the element references:

- If more detailed information is available for an element, double-click ... in the **Details** column next to the element.
- If you also want to move the referring or referenced element, select the referring or referenced element, then click **Add**.
- If you do not want to move the referring or referenced element, right-click the element, then edit it to remove the references to the element that you are moving.

If you want to move a Host element that is used in a policy, but not the policy itself, remove the Host from the policy before moving the Host to a different Domain.

- 7) If you have resolved a reference, click **Refresh View** to update the status of element references.
  - You must resolve all element references before moving the selected elements.
  - If the **Element References** pane is empty, there are no element references.
- 8) Click **Continue** to move the elements to the selected Domain.

#### Related tasks

[Log on to a Domain](#) on page 394


## View Domain status

The Domain Overview allows you to see at a glance the status of the Domains and their elements. You do not need to log on to each Domain to monitor its status.

The Domain Overview is available only to administrators who have permissions in more than one Domain. The Domain Overview only shows information from the Domains in which the administrator has permissions. The information in the Domain Overview depends on the administrator's rights. The Domain Overview shows the statuses of the elements and the number of alerts in each Domain. The Domain Overview also shows any other information (for example, email addresses and telephone numbers) defined in the Domain properties.



**Note:** The Domain Overview automatically opens when an administrator who has permissions in more than one Domain logs on to the Management Client without specifying a Domain.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **≡ Menu > File > New Tab**, then select **Domain Overview**.

#### Related tasks

[Create Domain elements](#) on page 391


[Log on to a Domain](#) on page 394


[Log off from all Domains](#) on page 394

# Delete a Domain

If you delete a Domain, all elements that belong to the Domain are also deleted.

If there are elements that you do not want to delete, move them to another Domain before deleting the Domain. You cannot delete the predefined Shared Domain. Only administrators who have unrestricted permissions can edit and delete Domains.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements** branch and click **Domains**.
- 3) Right-click the Domain and select **Delete**.  
A **Confirmation** dialog box opens.
- 4) If the Domain you are deleting is used in any configuration, click **Open References** in the **Confirmation** dialog box to view the references. Right-click each element and select **Edit** to remove the references.
- 5) Click **Yes**.  
A **Confirmation** dialog box opens.
- 6) Type **YES** to confirm that you want to permanently delete the Domain.

## Related tasks

[Create Domain elements](#) on page 391

[Move elements between Domains](#) on page 395

# Examples of Domain elements

You might want to create a different Domain for each of your organization's customers or sites.

## Example: Create Domain elements for different customers

You can create a different Domain for each of your organization's customers, as shown in the following example.

Company A is a Managed Security Service Provider (MSSP) with many customers. The networks of different customers must be kept separate. The administrators who manage the customer networks must only be allowed to see the networks for which they are responsible. Most of the administrators only manage a single customer's network, but some of the administrators are responsible for several customers' networks.

The administrator decides to use Domain elements to group the elements belonging to each customer and to make it easier to manage the different customer networks. The administrator also decides to use Category

elements to tag the existing elements that are included in each Domain. As the user database information must not be available across Domains, the administrator decides to use an external LDAP server in each Domain for user authentication.

Company A's administrator:

- 1) Arranges a service break with the customers before introducing Domains into the system.
- 2) Logs on to the Shared Domain and creates the following elements:
  - A separate Domain element for each customer.
  - The Administrator elements (the administrator accounts) for the administrators who manage several customers' networks in several Domains.
  - A Category element for each customer's elements.
- 3) Defines a default Category Filter that includes the customer-specific Category for each customer's elements.
- 4) Logs on to each customer's Domain and creates the Administrator elements (the administrator accounts) for the administrators who manage only that particular customer's network.
- 5) While logged on to each Domain, configures the elements for using an external LDAP server for authenticating the users in the Domain and for storing the Domain's user database.
- 6) While logged on to the Shared Domain, moves all customer-specific elements from the Shared Domain to the correct customer-specific Domain.
  - To make it easier to move the elements, the administrator first selects the customer-specific Category and then all elements that belong to the Category.
- 7) When all customers' Domains and their elements have been configured and the service break is over, the administrators for each customer company log on to the Management Client.
  - The administrators who are responsible for a single customer's networks automatically log on to the Domain assigned to them when they log on to the Management Client. They only see the elements that belong to their own configuration and the elements in the Shared Domain.
  - The administrators who have permissions in several Domains must select the Domain when they have logged on to the Management Client.

## Example: Create Domain elements for different sites

---

You can create a different Domain for each of your organization's sites, as shown in the following example.

Company B is a large enterprise planning a new system. The system includes 12 different sites, each of which contains 10 networks. The administrators at each site only need to be able to see the networks at their own sites. The headquarters administrator decides to use the Management Server's internal LDAP user database for user authentication in all Domains. This means that all administrators in each Domain are able to view the user database information.

The headquarters administrator:

- 1) Logs on to the Shared Domain and creates Domains to represent each of the 12 sites.

- 2) Configures the user database and user authentication using the internal LDAP directory of the SMC while logged on to the Shared Domain.
- 3) Logs on to each Domain that represents a site's configuration and creates the elements for the Domain:
  - The Administrator elements (the administrator accounts) for the administrators of each site.
  - All other elements that belong to each Domain.

When the administrators at each site log on to the Management Client, they also automatically log on to the Domain assigned to them. They only see the elements that belong to their own site's configuration and also the elements in the Shared Domain.





# Setting up the Web Portal

### Contents

- [Getting started with the Web Portal](#) on page 401
- [Define Web Portal Server settings](#) on page 402
- [Activate HTTPS on the Web Portal Server](#) on page 403
- [Change Access rules to allow Web Portal connections](#) on page 404
- [Create Web Portal User accounts](#) on page 406
- [Customizing the Web Portal](#) on page 408
- [Write announcements to Web Portal users](#) on page 410

The Web Portal provides browser-based access to logs, reports, and Policy Snapshots for specific authorized users. The Web Portal is provided by the Web Portal Server, which is an optional component that you can purchase for your SMC.

## Getting started with the Web Portal

---

Using the Web Portal, customers of managed service providers can access information about their systems.



**Note:** You must have licenses for running a Web Portal Server and for creating Web Portal Users.

### What the Web Portal does

---

The Web Portal provides restricted clientless access to logs, reports, and Policy Snapshots. It is useful for managed service providers for providing customers information about their systems. There is no software for end users to install; they can access the information using a web browser.

### Limitations of the Web Portal

---

If Domains are configured, each Web Portal User account is always restricted to working within a single Domain. Administrators with full unrestricted accounts can select between domains after logging on to the portal if the Web Portal Server element is in the Shared Domain.

In addition to the licensed limit for the number of user accounts, each Web Portal Server has a limit for the maximum number of concurrent users.

# Web Portal configuration

---

The process of setting up a Web Portal consists of the following overall steps.

- 1) Define a Web Portal Server element.
- 2) If providing the Web Portal over HTTPS, generate a certificate for the server.
- 3) Allow the necessary connections in the Firewall Access rules.
- 4) Install the Web Portal Server. See the *Forcepoint Next Generation Firewall Installation Guide* for instructions.
  - We recommend placing the Web Portal Server in a DMZ network if you offer access to external users.
  - You must generate and install a license for the Web Portal Server.
- 5) Create Web Portal User accounts for the end users.
  - The number of Web Portal users you can configure is limited by license. You must generate and install a separate license for the Web Portal Users.
  - Management Client administrator accounts are also valid in the Web Portal.
- 6) (Optional) Make installation-specific changes to your portal.

## Define Web Portal Server settings

---

The Web Portal Server is a web server that offers end users access either through plain HTTP or through the secure HTTPS protocol.


The Web Portal Server retrieves data from other SMC servers, filters it, and presents the resulting data to the users.



**CAUTION:** Always use HTTPS unless the connections are otherwise secured.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Home**.
- 2) Browse to **Others**.
- 3) Select **Tools > New > Server > Web Portal Server**.
- 4) Enter a unique **Name** and the **IP Address** for the Web Portal Server.
- 5) Select the correct **Location** if necessary in your environment.
- 6) Select the **Log Server** to which you want the Web Portal Server to send its logs.
- 7) Switch to the **Web Portal** tab, then select **Enable** to activate the Web Portal.

- 8) (Optional) Enter the **Host Name** that the Web Portal uses.
- 9) (Optional) Change the (TCP) **Port Number** that the service listens to.  
By default, port 8080 is used.  
 **Note:** Make sure that the listening port is not already in use on the server.
- 10) (Optional) If the Web Portal Server has several addresses and you want to restrict access to one address, specify this address in **Listen Only on Address**.
- 11) (Optional) Activate HTTPS on the Web Portal Server to secure Web Portal connections.
- 12) (Optional) Select **Generate Server Logs** if you want log files to be generated on the file system when the Web Portal is accessed.
- 13) (Optional) Select **Use SSL for Session ID** to track sessions to the Web Portal Server using SSL IDs.  
Do not select the option if your network requires you to use cookies or URLs for session tracking.
- 14) (Optional) On the NAT tab, configure settings for element-based NAT.
- 15) Click **OK**.

#### Related concepts

[Considerations for setting up system communications](#) on page 127  
[Element-based NAT and how it works](#) on page 635

#### Related tasks

[Activate HTTPS on the Web Portal Server](#) on page 403

#### Related reference

[Security Management Center ports](#) on page 1433

## Activate HTTPS on the Web Portal Server

To protect the transported information from eavesdropping, you can encrypt the communications by activating HTTPS on the Web Portal Server.


If you secure the Web Portal connections using HTTPS, the Web Portal Server requires a certificate. You can either self-sign the certificate directly in the dialog box or use an externally signed certificate:

- If you self-sign the certificate directly, web browsers display a warning to the users and require them to accept the certificate. The certificate is valid for one year. Renewing is done by recreating the certificate in the same way as a new certificate is created.

- Alternatively, you can sign the certificate using an external certificate authority that the clients already trust. An example would be one of the large commercial certificate authorities or a company-internal certificate authority that all clients are configured to trust.

Certificates have a fixed validity time (from a certain date and time to a certain date and time). Make sure that the date, time, and time zone settings are correct on both the Management Server and the Web Portal Server computers. Clients also check the certificate validity, but incorrect time settings on the client computers typically do not prevent the Web Portal from being used. Instead, browsers typically display a warning that users can dismiss.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Home**.
- 2) Browse to **Others > Web Portal Server**.
- 3) Right-click the Web Portal Server, then select **Properties**.
- 4) On the **Web Portal** tab click **Select** next to the **Server Certificate** field.
- 5) Select a TLS Credentials element.
- 6) Click **OK**.

## Change Access rules to allow Web Portal connections

---

If Web Portal connections are routed through a firewall, you must change the IPv4 Access rules in your security policy to allow them. Web Portal connections include connections to the Management Server and the Log Server as well as end-user connections.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Allow the following connections in the IPv4 Access rules as needed:

**Table 47: Access rules for the Web Portal Server**

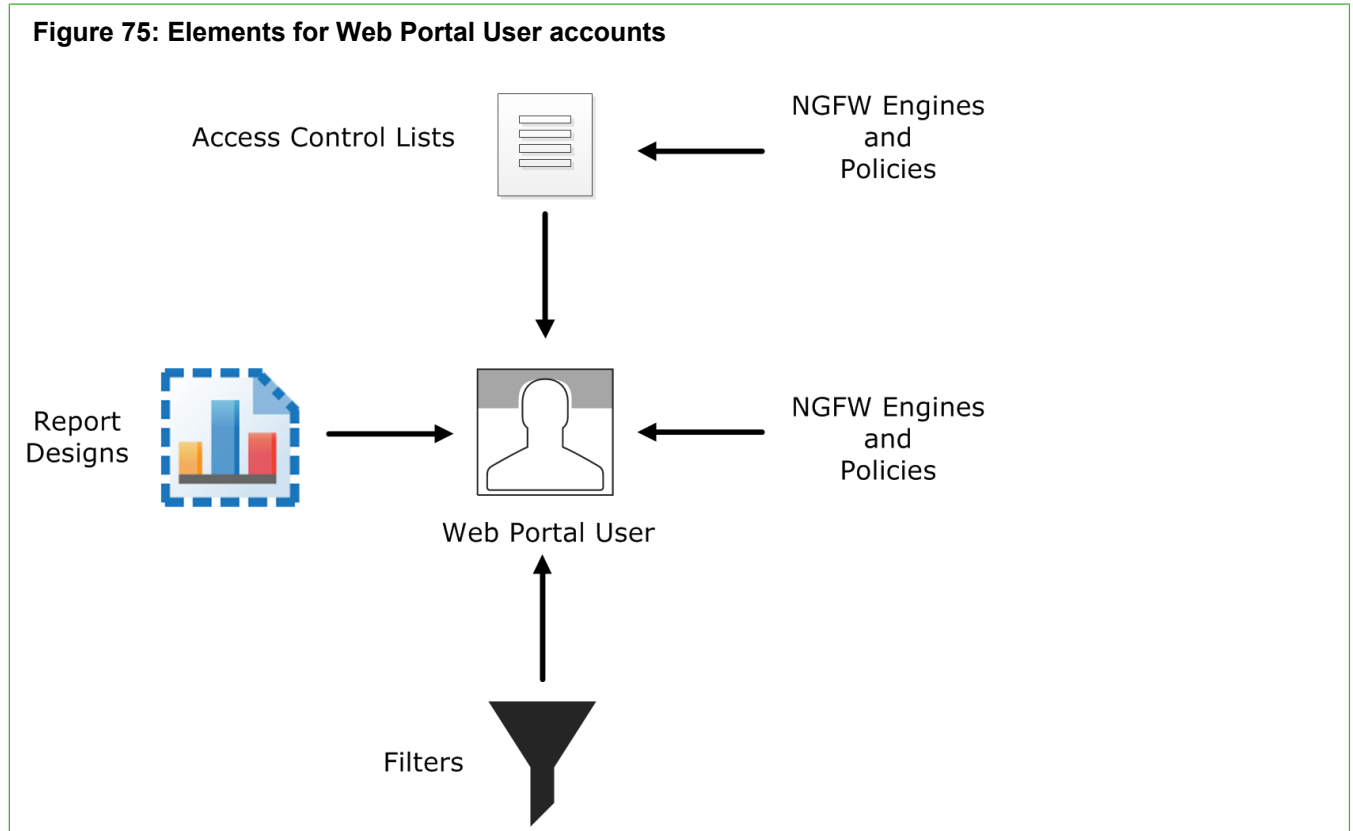
Source	Destination	Port/Service	Action
Web Portal users' networks (or hosts)	Web Portal Server	Port defined in the Web Portal Server Properties dialog box.	Allow
Web Portal Server	Management Server	SG Control (8902-8913/TCP)	Allow
Web Portal Server	Log Server	SG Data Browsing (Web Portal Server) (8916-8917/TCP)	Allow



**Note:** Remember to adjust the NAT rules as well if it is necessary in your network setup.

# Create Web Portal User accounts

The accounts for the optional Web Portal are defined with Web Portal User elements. It is highly recommended to create a unique Web Portal User account for each Web Portal User.





- Engine elements define which logs, reports, or policy snapshots are displayed.
- Policies, sub-policies, and template policies define which parts of the Policy Snapshots are displayed.
- *Report Designs* define which reports are displayed. The Web Portal user is allowed to view all generated reports that are based on the granted Report Designs.
- *Filters* define which logs are displayed. You can also add Filters that the Web Portal User can choose to apply when browsing logs.

Web Portal Users can also use internal authentication or external RADIUS authentication.

If administrative Domains are used, there are some more considerations:

- Each Web Portal User account is limited to a single Domain.
- The Web Portal User is allowed to see all information in the Policy Snapshots from the granted engines. If a policy's template is in the Shared Domain, the Web Portal User can also see the rules inherited from the template in the Policy Snapshot.
- The Web Portal Users might be allowed to view reports generated in the Shared Domain depending on their granted elements.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Right-click **Access Rights** and select **New > Web Portal User**.
- 3) In the **Name** field, enter the user name that the Web Portal user uses to log on to the Web Portal.
- 4) To authenticate the Web Portal User locally with the firewall, select **Local Authentication**, then configure the settings for local authentication.
  - a) To manually specify a password, enter and confirm the password in the **Password** field and the **Confirm Password** field.



**CAUTION:** We recommend that passwords be at least eight characters long and contain a combination of numbers, letters, and special characters. Secure passwords are never based on personal information such as names, birthdays, social ID numbers, phone numbers, street names, or registration plate numbers.

- b) To generate a random alphanumeric password, click **Generate Password**.
  - c) In the **Account Expiration** settings, define when the account expires.
- 5) To authenticate the Web Portal User with an external authentication server, select **External Authentication**, then select the authentication method from the **Authentication Method** drop-down list.
- 6) Select engines from which the Web Portal User is allowed to view logs and Policy Snapshots.
  - a) Click the **Engines** tab.
  - b) To grant all engines to the Web Portal User, select **Allow ANY**.



**Note:** If Domain elements have been configured, only the engines in the current Domain are granted to the Web Portal user.

- c) To select individual engines, click **Add**, then select the engines and click **Select**.
- 7) On the **Policies** tab, select the policies from which the Web Portal User is allowed to view Policy Snapshots.

You can only select policies that are installed on engines granted to the Web Portal User. You can define in detail which parts of the policies are shown in the Policy Snapshots.
- 8) On the **Logs** tab, select log browsing permissions for the Web Portal User.
- 9) On the **Reports** tab, select the kinds of reports that the Web Portal User can access.
- 10) Click **OK**.

# Customizing the Web Portal


---


You can customize the look of the Web Portal and change the languages in which the Web Portal is localized.

## Add Web Portal languages

---

You can add new translations of the Web Portal interface labels in addition to the default languages offered. When you edit the language files, save the file using the UTF-8 or the UTF-16 character encoding.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Web Portal Localizations**.  
A list of existing Web Portal Localizations opens.
- 3) Right-click the list and select **New Web Portal Localization**.
- 4) Click **Import** and browse to the location of the language file.  
You are prompted to confirm the change of Locale.
- 5) Click **Yes**.  
The contents of the imported language file are displayed in the dialog box.
- 6) Click **OK** to save the changes.

## Enable or disable Web Portal languages

---

Web Portal Localization languages can be enabled or disabled through the Management Client. Disabled Web Portal Localizations are marked with an icon.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Web Portal Localizations**.  
A list of existing Web Portal Localizations opens.
- 3) Right-click the Web Portal Localization and select **Enable** or **Disable**.  
The language is shown or hidden in the Web Portal language selection options.



# Customizing the look of the Web Portal

The Web Portal pages presented to the users are generated dynamically based on configuration files.

The following aspects of the presentation can be adjusted:

- If you are using Domains, the icon in the Web Portal is sourced from the icon defined for the Domain in the Management Client.
- You can add new languages.

It is possible to customize the Web Portal source files more extensively, but with some major limitations:

- Any changes to files are overwritten at upgrade.
- It might not be possible to reuse customized files after an upgrade. You might have to customize the corresponding new files after the upgrade.
- Customization requires knowledge of HTML and CSS coding.

With these issues in mind, the following local files on the Web Portal Server control how content is shown to users, and are fairly safe to edit:

- The CSS files are stored in <installation directory>/webserver/webapps/webclient/resources/css/.
- The page template files that are stored in <installation directory>/webserver/webapps/webclient/ as several .jsp files.
- The help pages that are stored in <installation directory>/webserver/webapps/webclient/help/ as several .jsp files.



**Note:** We recommend that you create backups of the files before you edit them.


## Related tasks

[Set a Domain logo](#) on page 392

[Add Web Portal languages](#) on page 408

# Write announcements to Web Portal users

You can display announcements to the administrators who log on to the Web Portal. The announcements can be used, for example, for service break notifications.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Open the properties of the correct element:
  - Announcements in the Web Portal Server element are shown for all users that connect to that Web Portal Server.
  - Announcements in the Management Server properties are shown for all users.
  - If administrative Domains have been configured, the announcements defined for the Domains are shown to the users of that specific Domain. If in the Shared Domain, all users see the announcements.
  - You can define an announcement in any combination of these elements. Each type of announcement adds a bullet point for users who can view several announcements.
- 2) Switch to the **Announcement** tab.
- 3) Select **Display Announcement to Web Portal Users**, and enter the announcement in the field below. The length is limited to 160 characters. You can add formatting to the announcement with standard HTML tags (which are also included in the character count).



**Tip:** If you deselect the **Display Announcement to Web Portal Users** option, you can later display the announcement without typing it in again.

- 4) Click **OK**.  
The announcement is displayed on the home page of the Web Portal (Services page) to affected users the next time they load the page.

## HTML code examples



**Note:** If you leave out the protocol (`HTTP://` or `HTTPS://` part) from a URL, the protocol is attached automatically based on the protocol the Web Portal Server is using. If the wrong protocol is used, it can prevent an otherwise valid link from working.

- These tags produce `<b>boldface</b>` text.
- These tags produce `<u>underlined</u>` text.
- This text is displayed in the automatically added bullet point.  
`</li><li>`But this text is displayed in a second bullet point underneath.
- Here is an internal `<a href="policies/policies.jsf">link</a>`.
- Here is an external `<a href="http://www.example.com">link</a>`.
- Here is a small image scaled to be roughly proportionate with the surrounding text:  
``





# Distributing Management Clients through Web Start

## Contents

- [Getting started with Web Start distribution](#) on page 413
- [Activate Web Start on the Management Server](#) on page 414
- [Distribute Web Start from external servers](#) on page 415
- [Access the Web Start Management Clients](#) on page 416

The Management Client can be distributed through Web Start. There is no need for each administrator to upgrade their client when the SMC is upgraded to a new version. The version of the client must always match the version of the Management Server.

## Getting started with Web Start distribution

---

Distributing Management Clients through Web Start allows users to log on to the Management Client through a web browser.

### What Web Start distribution does

---

The Management Server can be configured to serve a webpage for starting the Management Client. When the SMC is upgraded, the Web Start files are also updated, and Web Start automatically downloads the updated version when the user logs on. Alternatively, you can make the Management Clients available on some other server, with the following limitations.

### Limitations of Web Start distribution

---

The new version is available to Web Start users when the SMC is upgraded only if the Management Server is used as the Web Start Server. If the Web Start package is on another server, delete the existing files and install a new Web Start package after each upgrade. See *Distribute Web Start from external servers*.

When the Web Start package is installed on a network drive, the path must be the same for all administrators that use that version of Web Start. If the network drive paths vary, you can put the package on a web server instead, for example, in the intranet of your company.

## What do I need to know before I begin?

A current version of Java Runtime Environment (JRE) must be installed on each computer where you install the Web Start. Download the JRE for free from <http://www.java.com>.

### Related tasks

[Distribute Web Start from external servers](#) on page 415

## Web Start distribution configuration overview


The process of setting up Web Start distribution consists of the following overall steps.

- 1) Enable Web Start access in one of the following ways depending on where users access the Web Start logon:
  - Enable Web Start access on the Management Server.
  - Configure Web Start access on a separate web server or shared network drive.
- 2) Test the Web Start distribution.


## Activate Web Start on the Management Server

When you install the Management Server, the files needed for distributing the Management Clients are included in the installation. You can simply enable Web Start access to these files on the Management Server.

A webpage is activated that administrators can load using a web browser to start the Management Client.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Home**.
- 2) Browse to **Others > Management Server**.
- 3) Right-click the Management Server, then select **Properties**.
- 4) Switch to the **Web Start** tab.
- 5) Select **Enable**.
- 6) (Optional) Enter the **Host Name** that the Web Start service uses.

- 7) (Optional) Enter the (TCP) **Port Number** that the service listens to.  
By default, the standard HTTP port 80 is used on Windows and 8080 on Linux (which does not allow using reserved ports for this type of service).  
 **Note:** Make sure that the listening port is not in use on the server. For ports reserved for SMC services, see the appendix regarding Security Management Center ports.
- 8) (Optional) If the Management Server has several addresses, to restrict access to one address, specify the IP address in the **Listen Only on Address** field.
- 9) (Optional) Select **Generate Server Logs** if you want to log all file load events for further analysis with external web statistics software.
- 10) Click **OK**.

#### Related reference

[Security Management Center ports](#) on page 1433

## Distribute Web Start from external servers

You can use Web Start even if you do not want to use the Management Server as a Web Start Server. In this case, you can put the Web Start package on any web server.

The Web Start package can also be put on a shared network drive. When the Web Start package is installed on a network drive, the path must be the same for all administrators that use that version of Web Start.



**Note:** You must delete the existing files and install a new Web Start package according to these instructions each time you upgrade the SMC. Otherwise, any administrators that use Management Clients that are installed through Web Start are not able to log on.

### Steps

- 1) Browse to **Forcepoint\_SMC\_Installer > Webstart** on the installation DVD.



**CAUTION:** The Web Start installation creates an index.html file. Any existing index.html file is overwritten. We strongly recommend creating a directory for the Web Start files.

- 2) Copy all files and all directories from the Web Start directory on the installation DVD to where you want the Web Start files to be served.
- 3) On the command line, change to the directory where the Web Start files are on your server.
- 4) Run the Web Start setup script.  
Give the URL or the path of the directory where the Web Start files are on your server as the parameter.
  - Windows: `cscript webstart_setup.vbs <web start directory>`
  - Linux: `./webstart_setup.sh <web start directory>`

**Table 48: Example Web Start paths**

Installation on	Example Web Start directory
Web server	http://www.example.com/webstart/
Network drive	file://localhost/C:/support/webstart/

- 5) If necessary, change the configuration of the web server to return the appropriate MIME type for .jnlp files (application/x-java-jnlp-file).  
See the manual of your web server for instructions on how to configure the MIME type.
- 6) Delete the webstart\_setup.vbs and webstart\_setup.sh script files from the directory.  
For security reasons, do not have script files in the same directory as the generated Web Start files and other shared client files.

## Access the Web Start Management Clients

After the Web Start package is installed, or the Management Server is enabled as a Web Start Server, administrators can install the Management Client using Web Start.

### Before you begin

There must be a current version of Java Runtime Environment (JRE) installed (the required version is shown on the example logon page provided).



**Note:** If Web Start access is required through the firewall, you must allow these connections in your firewall's policy. They are not allowed by default.

### Steps

- 1) Enter the Web Start download page address in your web browser:  
`http://<server address>:<port>`  
The port is only needed if the server is configured to run on a different port from the HTTP standard port 80.
- 2) Click the link for the Web Start Management Client.  
Web Start automatically checks if the version on the server is already installed on your local computer. If not, the new client is automatically installed on your computer. This check is done each time the client is started this way, automatically upgrading your client installation without any action from you.  
The client starts and displays the logon dialog box.
- 3) Log on with your account credentials.



# Configuring the Log Server

### Contents

- [Modify Log Server elements](#) on page 417
- [Select backup Log Servers for high availability](#) on page 418
- [Forwarding log data from Log Servers to external hosts](#) on page 419
- [Edit Log Server configuration parameters](#) on page 424
- [Certify Log Servers](#) on page 426

You can modify a Log Server element, configure settings for Log Servers, and recertify Log Servers.


## Modify Log Server elements

One Log Server element is automatically created during SMC installation. You can change the settings as necessary.

You can:

- Rename the Log Server element.
- Change the Log Server's IP address.
- Change the platform on which the Log Server runs.
- Define other Log Servers that you can use as backup Log Servers.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Home**.
- 2) Browse to **Others > Log Server**.
- 3) Right-click the Log Server, then select **Properties**.
- 4) Change the Log Server properties.



**Note:** We recommend that you always use the default port 3020 if possible. To use a non-standard port, manually add Access rules to allow communications using the new port from the NGFW Engines to the Log Server.



**Note:** Be careful when excluding Log Servers from reporting. If you select this setting for a Log Server that is in use, there is no warning that generated reports are missing data.

- 5) Click **OK**.

**Related concepts**

[Define contact IP addresses](#) on page 129

[Getting started with reports](#) on page 261

[Element-based NAT and how it works](#) on page 635

**Related tasks**

[Create Location elements](#) on page 129

# Select backup Log Servers for high availability

You can select one or more backup Log Servers for each Log Server for high availability.

## Before you begin

You must already have more than one Log Server.

The same Log Server can simultaneously be the main Log Server for some components and a backup Log Server for components that primarily use another Log Server. You can also set Log Servers to be backup Log Servers for each other so that whenever one goes down, the other Log Server is used.



**Note:** The SMC Appliance does not support high availability for the Management Server or the Log Server.

If Domain elements have been configured, a Log Server and its backup Log Server or Log Servers must belong to the same Domain.



**CAUTION:** If the log volumes are high, make sure that the backup Log Server can handle the traffic load in failover situations.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Home**.
- 2) Browse to **Others > Log Server**.
- 3) Right-click the Log Server for which you want to select a backup Log Server, then select **Properties**.
- 4) Click the **High Availability** tab.
- 5) Click **Add**.

- 6) Select one or more Log Servers, then click **Select**.
- 7) Click **OK**.

**Related concepts**

[Log Servers for HA](#) on page 430

## Forwarding log data from Log Servers to external hosts


You can forward log data from Log Servers to external hosts to back up the data or to process the data in an external system.


You can define which type of log data you want to forward and in which format. You can also use Local Filter elements to specify in detail which log data is forwarded.

Log data does not need to be stored on the Log Server to be sent to the external host. If log pruning is applied, any log data that the Immediate Discard log pruning filters delete is not forwarded to the external host.

## Add log forwarding rules to Log Servers

Add log forwarding rules to the Log Server to enable log forwarding.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Home**.
- 2) Browse to **Others > Log Server**.
- 3) Right-click the Log Server from which you want to forward log data, then select **Properties**.
- 4) Click the **Log Forwarding** tab.
- 5) To create a rule, click **Add**.



**Tip:** To remove a rule, select the rule, then click **Remove**.

- 6) In the select **Target Host** cell, select the external host to which the log data is forwarded.
  - a) Double-click the **Target Host** cell.
  - b) Select a Host element.
  - c) Click **Select**.

- 7) To add a rule, click **Add**.
- 8) Configure the log forwarding rules.
- 9) Click **OK**.


## Enable TLS protection for log or audit data forwarding

You can optionally enable TLS protection for log or audit data forwarding to an external syslog server.

### Before you begin

Because there is a connection to an external system, public key infrastructure (PKI) integration, including certificate revocation list (CRL) checking, must already be configured.

Optionally, you can check the identity of the TLS server to secure the TLS-protected traffic from the Log Server or the Management Server to an external syslog server.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Home**.
- 2) Browse to **Others > Log Server** or **Others > Management Server**.
- 3) Right-click the Log Server or Management Server from which you want to forward log or audit data, then select **Properties**.
- 4) Click the **Log Forwarding** or **Audit Forwarding** tab.
- 5) To add a rule, click **Add**.
- 6) In the select **Target Host** cell, select the external host to which the log or audit data is forwarded.
  - a) Double-click the **Target Host** cell.
  - b) Select a Host element.
  - c) Click **Select**.
- 7) In the **Service** cell, select **TCP with TLS**.
- 8) In the **Port**, **Format**, **Data Type** (Log Server only), and **Filter** cells, select the settings according to your needs.


- 9) In the **TLS Profile** cell, select the TLS profile for TLS-protected log data forwarding.
  - a) Double-click the **TLS Profile** cell.
  - b) Select a TLS Profile element.
  - c) Click **Select**.
- 10) (Optional) Double-click the **TSL Server Identity** cell and define the TLS server identity in order to check the identity of the TLS server to secure the TLS-protected traffic from the Log Server or the Management Server.
- 11) Define the Log Server or Management Server TLS certificate options.


This certificate is used as the client certificate when connecting to the external syslog server.

  - To use the server's internal certificate, select **Use Internal Certificate**.
  - To use the certificate contained in a TLS Credentials element, select **Use Imported Certificate**, then click **Select**.  
Select a TLS Credentials element.
  - To leave the server's certificate unauthenticated, select **No Client Authentication**.
- 12) Click **OK**.

## Enable logging for monitored traffic

To generate log data that can be forwarded to an external host, you must enable logging for the traffic that you want to monitor.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Expand **Policies**, then browse to the type of policy you want to edit.
- 3) Right-click the policy and select **Edit <policy type>**.
- 4) Click the **IPv4 Access** or **IPv6 Access** tab, then edit the rule that allows the traffic that you want to monitor.

If there is no Access rule for the traffic that you want to monitor, create the Access rule.
- 5) Double-click the **Logging** cell.
- 6) Select **Override Collected Values Set With "Continue" Rules**.
- 7) From the **Log Level** drop-down list, select **Stored** or **Essential**.
- 8) (Optional) If you want to forward logs using the NetFlow or IPFIX format, select **Log Accounting Information** in the **Connection Closing** drop-down list.

- 9) Click **OK**.
- 10) Save and install the policy to start using the new configuration.


#### Related concepts

[Getting started with Access rules](#) on page 811

## Define general syslog settings

---

You can adjust general log forwarding settings by editing the `LogServerConfiguration.txt`. Adjusting these settings is optional.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Stop the Log Server:
  - If you run the Log Server as a service in Windows, you can stop it in the Windows Control Panel's **Services** list.
  - In Linux, run the script `<installation directory>/bin/sgStopLogSrv.sh`.
- 2) Create a text file on the Log Server that lists the fields to forward in the correct order.  
See Knowledge Base article [10010](#) for more information.



**Tip:** The `<installation directory>/data/fields/syslog_templates/` directory contains example configuration files.

- 3) Change the parameters in LogServerConfiguration.txt.  
The file is located in <installation directory>/data/.

**Table 49: Log Server configuration**

Parameter	Value	Description
SYSLOG_CONF_FILE	<File name>	Path to the file you created in Step 2, which defines the fields that are forwarded and their order.
SYSLOG_MESSAGE_PRIORITY	0-191 a	The priority of the syslog message is included at the beginning of each UDP packet (the default is 6). a) As defined in RFC 3164 ( <a href="http://www.ietf.org/rfc.html">http://www.ietf.org/rfc.html</a> ).
SYSLOG_USE_DELIMITER	ALWAYS_EXCEPT_NULL NEVER ALWAYS	Defines whether to use double quotes (") in syslog messages to delimit the field values.  The default setting "ALWAYS_EXCEPT_NULL" uses double quotes only for non-empty fields. "NEVER" does not use delimiters. "ALWAYS" uses double quotes as delimiters for all empty and non-empty field values.

- 4) Save the file and restart the Log Server.

**Related concepts**


[Log entry fields](#) on page 1475

**Related reference**

[Syslog entries](#) on page 1510

## Add Access rules allowing traffic from Log Servers to external hosts

If the external host and Log Server are separated by a Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall, you must add rules to allow traffic from the Log Server to the host.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.

- 2) Expand **Policies**, then browse to the type of policy you want to edit.
- 3) Right-click the policy, then select **Edit Firewall Policy** or **Edit Layer 2 Firewall Policy**.
- 4) Click the **IPv4 Access** or **IPv6 Access** tab, then add an Access rule with the following values:
  - **Source** — Log Server
  - **Destination** — Host element
  - **Service** — Syslog (UDP), Syslog (TCP), or NetFlow (UDP), depending on the protocol used. For TLS-protected traffic, select TCP with TLS.  
The same Service and Port that was selected in the Log Forwarding rule must be selected here.
  - **Action** — Allow
  - **Logging** — None (recommended in most cases)



**Note:** Logging the log forwarding can create a loop where the log forwarding creates a log entry each time. If you want to log the log forwarding, create a local filter in the Log Forwarding rule to exclude logs related to forwarding.

- 5) Save and install the policy to start using the new configuration.

## Edit Log Server configuration parameters

To configure the Log Server in detail, you can edit `LogServerConfiguration.txt`. Normally, it is not necessary to configure the Log Server outside of the Management Client. However, under special circumstances, you might want more control over the way the Log Server behaves.

### Steps

- 1) Stop the Log Server:
  - If you run the Log Server as a service in Windows, you can stop it in the Windows Control Panel's **Services** list.
  - In Linux, run the script `<installation directory>/bin/sgStopLogSrv.sh`.
- 2) On the Log Server, browse to `<installation directory>/data/`, then open `LogServerConfiguration.txt` in a text editor.
- 3) Change the parameter values, then save the file.
- 4) Restart the Log Server.

#### Related reference


[Log Server configuration parameters](#) on page 425






# Log Server configuration parameters

Not all parameters are included in the default configuration file. Some parameters might have to be added manually.

**Table 50: Log Server configuration parameters in LogServerConfiguration.txt**

Parameter name	Description
ARCHIVE_DIR_0	Directory that is used for storing the logs archived by the Log Data tasks. By default, ARCHIVE_DIR_0=\${SG_ROOT_DIR}/data/archive. You can define up to 32 directories: ARCHIVE_DIR_0 ... ARCHIVE_DIR_31.
AUDIT_ARCHIVE_DIR	Directory used for archiving audit logs. By default, \${SG_ROOT_DIR}/data/audit/archive.
AUDIT_DISK_LIMIT	The threshold for minimum available disk space for audit logs. If the free disk space goes below this limit, the Log Server stops storing audit logs.
AUDIT_LOG_DIR	Directory used for audit logs. By default, \${SG_ROOT_DIR}/data/audit/log.
DISK_THRESHOLD_IN_KBYTES	The threshold for minimum available disk space (in kilobytes). If the free disk space goes below this limit, the Log Server stops storing log records (100000 by default).
LOG_BACKUP_DIR	Directory used for Log Server backup files. By default, \${SG_ROOT_DIR}/backups. The backup files must be moved to a separate media after creating a backup.
LOG_EXPORT_DIR	Directory used for storing the files exported by Log Data tasks. By default, \${SG_ROOT_DIR}/data/export.
LOG_FW_PORT	Log Server port that listens for connections from the NGFW Engines (3020 by default). Changing this value requires reinstalling the Log Server software.
LOG_LOGFILE_DIR	Directory used for storing the logfile.txt that logs the task scheduler operations. By default, \${SG_ROOT_DIR}/data.
LOG_QUERY_TIMEOUT	Timeout (in milliseconds) for queries in the Logs view (30000 by default).
LOG_SCRIPT_DIR	Directory for the scripts used in Log Data tasks. By default, \${SG_ROOT_DIR}/data/script.
LOG_SERVER_ADD	IP address of the Log Server. Changing this value requires reinstalling the Log Server software.
MGT_SERVER_ADD	IP address of the Management Server. Do not change this parameter value directly to the file. Instead, use the sgChangeMgtIPOnLogSrv.bat (or .sh) script to change this parameter value.
NETFLOW_RECEPTION_PORT	The UDP port for receiving NetFlow data. If this parameter has not been defined, the default port (2055 for both Windows and Linux) is used.  <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; background-color: #f9f9f9;">  <b>Note:</b> In Linux, the value of this parameter must always be higher than 1024. </div>
PHY_LOC	Log Server database location. By default, \${SG_ROOT_DIR}/data/db/logserver.
PHY_PORT	Log Server database port that the Log Server connects to (1314 by default).
SNMP_COMMUNITY	SNMP community string used for sending SNMP messages from the Log Server (public by default).
SNMP_ENTERPRISE_OID	SNMP Enterprise Object Identifier (OID) used for SNMP messages sent from the Log Server (.1.3.6.1.4.1.1369 by default).

Parameter name	Description
SNMP_TRAP_RECEPTION_PORT	<p>Defines the port used for receiving SNMP traps. The default port is UDP 162 in Windows and UDP 5162 in Linux.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> Only the reception of SNMPv1 traps is supported.</p>
SYSLOG_CONF_FILE	<p>Configuration file for syslog data. By default, the file is stored in <code>\${SG_ROOT_DIR}/data/fields/syslog_templates</code>.</p>
SYSLOG_MESSAGE_PRIORITY	<p>The priority (0–191) of the syslog message is included at the beginning of each UDP packet (the default is 6). See RFC 3164.</p>
SYSLOG_RECEPTION_PORT	<p>The UDP port for receiving syslog. If this parameter has not been defined, the default port (514 for Windows or 5514 for Linux) is used.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> In Linux, the value of this parameter must always be higher than 1024.</p>
SYSLOG_RECEPTION_TCP_PORT	<p>The TCP port for receiving syslog. If this parameter has not been defined, the UDP default port (514 for Windows and 5514 for Linux) is used.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> In Linux, the value of this parameter must always be higher than 1024.</p>
SYSLOG_USE_DELIMITER	<p>Defines whether to use double quotes (“) in syslog messages to delimit the field values. The default setting <code>ALWAYS_EXCEPT_NULL</code> uses double quotes only for nonempty fields. <code>NEVER</code> does not use delimiters. <code>ALWAYS</code> uses double quotes as delimiters for all empty and nonempty field values.</p>

## Certify Log Servers

If the Log Server was not certified during the installation or if it needs a new certificate, certify the Log Server manually.

### Steps

- 1) Stop the Log Server:
  - If the Log Server is installed as a service in Windows, stop it in the Windows Control Panel’s **Services** list.
  - In Linux, run the script `<installation directory>/bin/sgStopLogSrv.sh`.
- 2) Request the certificate:
  - In Windows, run the script `<installation directory>/bin/sgCertifyLogSrv.bat`.
  - In Linux, run the script `<installation directory>/bin/sgCertifyLogSrv.sh`.
- 3) Enter the credentials for an administrator account with unrestricted permissions.
- 4) If administrative Domains are configured and the Log Server does not belong to the Shared Domain, enter the name of the Domain.

- 5) Wait for the certification to finish and start the Log Server again.
  - In Windows, start it in the Windows Control Panel's **Services** list.
  - In Linux, run the script <installation directory>/bin/sgStartLogSrv.sh.



# Configuring SMC servers for high availability

## Contents

- [Using additional SMC servers for high availability](#) on page 429
- [Management Server HA configuration overview](#) on page 430
- [Log Server HA configuration overview](#) on page 434
- [Manage HA Management Servers](#) on page 437

You can install several Management Servers and Log Servers to provide high availability for the SMC.



**Note:** The SMC Appliance does not support high availability for the Management Server or the Log Server.

## Using additional SMC servers for high availability

A Management Server and a Log Server are required for configuration changes to and system monitoring of engines. Although engines work independently without the SMC according to their installed configuration, configuration changes and system monitoring are not possible without a Management Server and Log Server. The Management Server in particular is a critical component, as it is the only place where the full configuration information is stored.

You can install additional Management Servers and Log Servers. The high availability (HA) solution includes automatic incremental replication of the configuration data stored on the Management Server. This way, manual intervention is minimized, and the SMC can be fully managed and monitored without manually reinstalling and restoring a backup.

## Management Servers for HA

When a Management Server is active, the Management Server has control of all Domains and can be used for configuring and managing the SMC. Only one Management Server at a time can be the active Management Server.

The changes made on the active Management Server are replicated incrementally to the other Management Servers: only the changed parts of the management database are replicated, and the replication takes place in real time.

To use additional Management Servers, you must have a special Management Server license that includes the high availability feature. The license is a combined license for all Management Servers and it must list the IP addresses of all Management Servers.

Additional Management Servers automatically replicate the configuration data on the active Management Server. If the active Management Server becomes unusable, you must manually activate another Management Server, which allows you to work normally.



**Note:** The additional Management Servers are meant for backup and disaster recovery purposes. Only one Management Server at a time can be used for configuring and managing the SMC.

## Log Servers for HA

---

Installing additional Log Servers ensures that system monitoring continues if one Log Server fails.



**CAUTION:** The logs are not copied between the Log Servers. To back up log data, set up an Archive Log Task to copy log data from the Log Server to some other location.

Alert escalation proceeds normally, new logs can be browsed, and the engine status and statistics can be examined. However, the log data is not automatically replicated between the Log Servers, so some log data is always unavailable during outages. We recommend that you select the same Log Server for all engines in the same location. If different engines send events to different Log Servers, it is not possible to correlate events, as none of the Log Servers see all events.

Any Log Server can be used both as the main Log Server for some components and as a backup Log Server for one or more other Log Servers. However, consider the load of the Log Servers before you set up a Log Server as a backup Log Server, to avoid overloading when failover occurs.

You can set up additional Log Servers with normal Log Server licenses. A separate license for each Log Server is required, even if the Log Server is used only as a backup.

You can install a new Log Server that works as a backup for another Log Server. You can also set existing Log Servers to be used as backups for another Log Server.

## Management Server HA configuration overview

---


Configuring additional Management Servers requires the following overall steps.



- 1) Create elements for the additional Management Servers.
- 2) License the additional Management Servers.
- 3) Allow communications to the new Management Servers through firewalls as necessary.
- 4) Install the Management Server software on the target servers.

# Create additional Management Server elements

Any new Management Server elements you add to an existing SMC are considered to be additional Management Servers. You can set up several additional Management Servers.

The number of additional Management Servers you can create depends on the Management Server license.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Home**.
- 2) Browse to **Others**.
- 3) Select  **Tools** > **New** > **Server** > **Management Server**.
- 4) Enter a unique **Name** and **IP Address**.
- 5) (Optional) If NAT is used to translate addresses in communications between this server and other SMC components, define the **Location** and **Contact Address**.
- 6) Select the **Log Server** to which the Management Server sends its logs.
- 7) If you use a RADIUS server for authenticating administrators, select the **RADIUS Method** that is used in the authentication.
- 8) (Optional) If you want to send alert notifications or reports from the Management Server, switch to the **Notifications** tab.
  - If you want to send alerts by email, as SMS text messages, through a custom script, or as SNMP traps, define the alert channels.
  - You can use an SMTP server to send generated reports directly from the Management Server. Select the SMTP Server or create an SMTP Server element.  
  
Enter the **Sender Address** that is shown as the email sender. Remember to allow these connections in the Firewall Policy if necessary.
- 9) Click **OK**.

## Related concepts

[Define contact IP addresses](#) on page 129

## Related tasks

[Create Location elements](#) on page 129

[Email reports](#) on page 281

[Authenticate administrators using RADIUS or TACACS+ methods](#) on page 360

[Configure notifications for alerts](#) on page 373

[Create SMTP Server elements](#) on page 382

# Install licenses for additional Management Servers

Using additional Management Servers requires a special combined license that lists the IP addresses of all Management Servers within the same SMC.

After receiving the proof-of-license (POL) code, generate the license at <https://stonesoftlicenses.forcepoint.com>.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Menu > System Tools > Install Licenses**.
- 2) Browse to the license file on your local workstation and click **Install**.
- 3) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 4) Browse to **Licenses > Unlicensed Components > Servers** and make sure that the additional Management Server is not listed there.  
If the server is listed, check that the IP address information is the same in the license and the additional Management Server element.

## Related tasks

[Generate licenses](#) on page 1312

# Access rules for additional Management Servers

The Firewall Template policy contains rules that allow connections between the Firewall and all SMC servers. If other components connect through a Firewall to additional Management Servers, add rules that allow this traffic. You might also have to add NAT rules.

The rules in the Firewall Template policy are IPv4 Access rules that allow the system communications.

## Related concepts

[Getting started with Access rules](#) on page 811

## Related reference

[Security Management Center ports](#) on page 1433

[Forcepoint NGFW Engine ports](#) on page 1436



# Install additional Management Server software

Additional Management Servers are installed using the SMC Installation Wizard.

## Before you begin

To install the software, you need the SMC installation files.

## Steps

- 1) Start the installation in one of the following ways:
  - From a .zip file: unzip the file and run setup.exe on Windows or setup.sh on Linux.
  - From a DVD: insert the installation DVD and run the setup executable from the DVD:

Operating System	Path to Executable
Windows 64-bit	\Forcepoint_SMC_Installer\Windows-x64\setup.exe
Linux 32-bit	/Forcepoint_SMC_Installer/Linux/setup.sh
Linux 64-bit	/Forcepoint_SMC_Installer/Linux-x64/setup.sh



**Note:** If the DVD is not automatically mounted in Linux, mount the DVD with the following command: `mount /dev/cdrom /mnt/cdrom`

- 2) Proceed according to instructions in the Installation Wizard until you are prompted to select which components you want to install.



**Note:** If you use C:\Program Files\Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center as the installation directory in Windows, a C:\ProgramData\Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center folder is automatically created. This folder duplicates some of the folders in the installation directory. Some of the program data is also stored in C:\ProgramData\Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center.

- 3) If you also want to install a Log Server and a local Management Client on this computer, leave **Typical** selected and click **Next**. Otherwise, select **Custom**, select the components you want to install and click **Next**.
- 4) Select the IP address of the Management Server from the list or type it in.



**Note:** This IP address must be the IP address defined for the corresponding Management Server element.

- 5) Type in the IP address of the Log Server for sending alerts.
- 6) Select **Install as an Additional Management Server for High Availability**.
- 7) Click **Next** and follow the instructions to start the installation. A logon prompt for replication opens.

- 8) Log on using an unrestricted administrator account.  
The **Management Server Selection** dialog box opens.
- 9) Select the correct Management Server from the list and click **OK**.  
The databases are synchronized.



**Note:** If the synchronization fails for some reason (such as a network connection problem), run the sgOnlineReplication script on the additional Management Server when connectivity is restored.



**Tip:** You can view replication information in the **Info** pane when you select the Management Server.

### Related tasks

[Obtain SMC installation files](#) on page 1321

## Log Server HA configuration overview

Configuring additional Log Servers requires several high-level steps.


- 1) Add an element for the additional Log Server.
- 2) License the additional Log Server.
- 3) Define the Log Server as a backup Log Server for another Log Server.
- 4) Make sure the communications between SMC components and the additional Log Server are allowed.
- 5) Install the Log Server software on the target server.




**CAUTION:** The logs are not copied between the Log Servers. To back up log data, set up an Archive Log Task to copy log data from the Log Server to some other location.

## Create additional Log Server elements

You can set up several backup Log Servers for each Log Server.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Home**.
- 2) Browse to **Others**.

- 3) Select **Tools** > **New** > **Server** > **Log Server**.
- 4) Enter a unique **Name** and **IP Address**.
- 5) (Optional) If NAT is used to translate addresses in communications between this server and other SMC components, define the **Location** and **Contact Address**.
- 6) (Optional) Change the Log Server's TCP Port number if necessary. We recommend always using the default port 3020 if possible.



**Note:** If you use a non-standard port, add rules to allow communications from the engines to the Log Server ports, even when using the Firewall Template policy.

- 7) (Optional) Select **Exclude from Log Browsing, Statistics and Reporting** if you do not want the Log Server to gather statistical information for monitoring and reports. A scenario for using this option is if the Log Server is not used for daily operations.

#### Related concepts

[Define contact IP addresses](#) on page 129

#### Related tasks

[Create Location elements](#) on page 129

## Install licenses for additional Log Servers

Each Log Server requires a separate license, even if it is only used as a backup for some other Log Server. After receiving the proof-of-license (POL) code, generate the license at <https://stonesoftlicenses.forcepoint.com>.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Menu** > **System Tools** > **Install Licenses**.
- 2) Browse to the license file on your local workstation and click **Install**.
- 3) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 4) Browse to **Licenses** > **Unlicensed Components** > **Servers** and make sure that the additional Log Server is not listed there.  
If the server is listed, check that the IP address information is the same in the license and the additional Log Server element.

#### Related tasks

[Generate licenses](#) on page 1312

## Access rules for additional Log Servers

The Firewall Template policy contains rules that allow connections between the Firewall and all SMC servers. If other components connect through a Firewall to additional Log Servers, add rules that allow this traffic.

You might also have to add NAT rules.

The rules in the Firewall Template are IPv4 Access rules that allow the system communications.

### Related concepts

[Getting started with Access rules](#) on page 811

### Related reference

[Security Management Center ports](#) on page 1433

[Forcepoint NGFW Engine ports](#) on page 1436

## Install additional Log Server software

Additional Log Servers are installed using the SMC Installation Wizard.

### Before you begin

To install the software, you need the SMC installation files.

### Steps

- 1) Start the installation in one of the following ways:
  - From a .zip file: unzip the file and run setup.exe on Windows or setup.sh on Linux.
  - From a DVD: insert the installation DVD and run the setup executable from the DVD:

Operating System	Path to Executable
Windows 64-bit	\\Forcepoint_SMC_Installer\Windows-x64\setup.exe
Linux 32-bit	/Forcepoint_SMC_Installer/Linux/setup.sh
Linux 64-bit	/Forcepoint_SMC_Installer/Linux-x64/setup.sh



#### Note:

If the DVD is not automatically mounted in Linux, mount the DVD with the following command:

```
mount /dev/cdrom /mnt/cdrom
```

- 2) Proceed according to instructions in the Installation Wizard until you are prompted to select which components you want to install.
- 3) Select **Custom**, then select **Log Server**.

- 4) Finish the installation according to instructions in the Installation Wizard.  
You must certify the Log Server before the Log Server can connect to the Management Server.

## Result

The additional Log Server is now installed and shown in green (Online) in the **Home** view.

### Related tasks

[Obtain SMC installation files](#) on page 1321

# Manage HA Management Servers

When multiple Management Servers are configured, one Management Server is defined as active. You can manually change the active Management Server.

You can also disable database replication and synchronization for selected Management Servers.

## Set the active Management Server


When a Management Server is the active Management Server, it has full control of all Domains. When you switch to a different Management Server, you must manually change the active Management Server.

Setting a Management Server to standby releases full control of all Domains. Another Management Server can take full control of all Domains and become the new active Management Server.

The engines continue to operate normally even when no Management Server is reachable, so there is no interruption to any network services.



**Note:** Changing the active Management Server is primarily meant for disaster recovery. We do not recommend switching the active Management Server unless it is necessary.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Menu** > **System Tools** > **Control Management Servers**.
- 2) Right-click an additional Management Server and select **Set Active**.
  - You can alternatively change the active Management Server using the command line.
  - If the currently active Management Server is unreachable, set a different Management Server to active in the **Control Management Servers** dialog box. You are prompted to confirm setting the Management Server to active.



**CAUTION:** If the active Management Server is unreachable when you make the switch, but might possibly recover, disconnect the active Management Server from the network. You avoid having two active Management Servers online at the same time. Set the previous active Management Server to standby and manually synchronize the databases to return to normal operation.

**Related reference**[Security Management Center commands](#) on page 1411

# Disable or enable automatic database replication from active Management Server to additional Management Servers

By default, changes in the configuration information stored on the currently active Management Server are automatically copied to all other Management Servers.

## Before you begin

There must be a route between the Management Client and the Management Servers. If there is no route between the Management Client and the Management Servers, you cannot send a command through the Control Management Servers dialog box.

Automatic management database replication is incremental and continuous; only the changed parts of the database are replicated and the replication is done in real time.



**Note:** The management database is not synchronized automatically between the Management Servers after a Management Server upgrade. You must synchronize the database manually after the upgrade.

Disabling the automatic database replication is not recommended unless you have a specific need to do so. For example, you might need to prevent excessive failed replication attempts when you know that the Management Server will be unreachable for a long time. An example scenario would be changing the Management Server's hardware or the Management Server's IP address.



**CAUTION:** Re-enable automatic database replication in the Management Server's properties when the Management Server is reachable. You must synchronize the management database manually once the Management Server is working normally.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **≡ Menu > System Tools > Control Management Servers**.
- 2) Right-click the Management Server and select **Replication > Include Server in Replication** or **Replication > Exclude Server from Replication**.  
You are prompted to confirm that you want to include or exclude the server.
- 3) Click **Yes**.  
The Management Server is included or excluded until the next full database replication.


# Synchronize databases between active Management Server and additional Management Servers

You must synchronize the configuration information manually through the Management Client after upgrading the Management Servers or after restoring a backup.

## Before you begin

There must be a route between the Management Client and the Management Servers. If there is no route between the Management Client and the Management Servers, you cannot send a command through the Control Management Servers dialog box.

Manual management database synchronization is primarily meant for resynchronizing the databases after upgrading the SMC. We do not recommend using manual database synchronization unless you have a specific need to do so.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Connect to the active Management Server using the Management Client.
- 2) Select **Menu > System Tools > Control Management Servers**.
- 3) If the Management Client is in a different network than the additional Management Server, select the **Location** from which to send the command.  
This action ensures that the command is sent to the correct Contact Address for the Management Server.
- 4) For each additional Management Server that you want to synchronize:
  - a) Right-click the Management Server and select **Replication > Full Database Replication**.  
You are prompted to confirm the replication.
  - b) Click **Yes**.  
All existing configurations on the additional Management Server are overwritten.
  - c) Click **OK** to acknowledge the completion of the synchronization and wait for the Management Server to restart.  
After the Management Server has restarted, its Replication Status is updated in the **Control Management Servers** dialog box.
- 5) Click **Close** to close the **Control Management Servers** dialog box.





# Reconfiguring the SMC and engines

### Contents

- [Modify Management Server elements](#) on page 441
- [Configure SMC API](#) on page 443
- [Forward audit data from Management Servers to external hosts](#) on page 445
- [Change the Management Server database password](#) on page 448
- [Change the Management Server or Log Server platform](#) on page 449
- [Change Management Server and Log Server IP addresses](#) on page 450
- [Create Internal ECDSA Certificate Authority elements](#) on page 454
- [Troubleshooting connecting to Management Servers](#) on page 456
- [Things to consider when changing the NGFW Engine role](#) on page 457


You can modify settings for Management Servers, change hardware platforms or the IP addresses used in system communications, change the type of certificate authority, and change the role of NGFW Engines.

## Modify Management Server elements


One Management Server element is automatically created during SMC installation. You can change the settings as necessary.



**Note:** You can rename the Management Server element freely, but you cannot delete the Management Server that the SMC is connected to.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) (Multiple Management Servers only) Select **≡ Menu > System Tools > Control Management Servers**, then temporarily exclude the Management Servers you are about to edit from database replication. Temporarily exclude the Management Servers from database replication, for example, for troubleshooting purposes, while changing the Management Server's hardware, or changing the Management Server IP address.
- 2) Select **↑ Home**.
- 3) Browse to **Others > Management Server**.
- 4) Right-click the Management Server, then select **Properties**.

- 5) (Optional) Change the **Name** of the Management Server.
  - 6) (Optional) If NAT is used to translate addresses in communications between this server and other SMC components, define the **Location** and **Contact Address**.
  - 7) Select the **Log Server** to which the Management Server sends its logs.
  - 8) If you use a RADIUS server for authenticating administrators, select the **RADIUS Method** that is used in the authentication.
  - 9) (Optional) If you want to send alert notifications or reports from the Management Server, select the **Notifications** tab.
    - If you want to send alerts by email, as SMS text messages, through a custom script, or as SNMP traps, define the alert channels.
    - You can use an SMTP server to send generated reports directly from the Management Server. Select the SMTP Server or create an SMTP Server element. Enter the **Sender Address** that is shown as the email sender. Remember to allow these connections in the Firewall Policy if necessary.
  - 10) (Optional) If the connection from the Management Server to the Forcepoint servers requires a proxy server, select the **Connection** tab and configure the **Proxy Settings**.
    - a) Select **Use Proxy Server for HTTPS Connection**, then enter the **Proxy Address** and **Proxy Port**.
    - b) If the proxy server requires user authentication, select **Authenticate to the Proxy Server**, then enter the **Proxy User Name** and **Proxy User Password**.
-  **Tip:** Deselect **Hide** if you want to view the **Proxy Password** in plain text.
- 11) If the replication status in the **Info** pane indicates a problem with database replication, synchronize the management databases manually.
  - 12) Click **OK**.

#### Related concepts

[Define contact IP addresses](#) on page 129

#### Related tasks

[Create Location elements](#) on page 129

[Email reports](#) on page 281

[Authenticate administrators using RADIUS or TACACS+ methods](#) on page 360

[Configure notifications for alerts](#) on page 373

[Create SMTP Server elements](#) on page 382

[Synchronize databases between active Management Server and additional Management Servers](#) on page 439

# Configure SMC API

The Application Programming Interface (API) of SMC allows external applications to connect with the SMC.



**Note:** If there is a firewall between SMC and the other applications, make sure that there is an Access rule to allow communication.

The SMC API can be used to run actions remotely using an external application or script. For more information about using SMC API, see the *Forcepoint NGFW SMC API Reference Guide*.

## Create TLS credentials for SMC API Clients

If you want to use encrypted connections, the SMC API Client needs TLS credentials to connect with the Management Server.



**Note:** You can import the existing private key and certificate if they are available.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Engine Properties > Certificates > Pending Certificate Requests**.
- 3) Right-click **Pending Certificate Requests**, then select **New Pending Certificate Request**.
- 4) Complete the certificate request details.
  - a) Enter a name and add "REQ" or "request" at the end.
  - b) In the **Common Name** field, enter the IP address or domain name of SMC.
  - c) Complete the remaining fields as needed.
  - d) Click **OK**.
- 5) Right-click the completed request, then select **Self Sign**.
- 6) Enter the name from the previous step, removing "REQ" or "request" from the end.
- 7) Click **OK**.
- 8) When prompted, remove the pending Certificate Request.

### Result

The TLS Credentials element is added to **Other Elements > Engine Properties > Certificates > TLS Credentials**.

## Enable SMC API

To allow other applications to connect using the SMC API, enable SMC API on the Management Server.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the Management Client, select **Home**.
- 2) Browse to **Others > Management Server**.
- 3) Right-click the Management Server, then select **Properties**.
- 4) Click the **SMC API** tab, then select **Enable**.
- 5) (Optional) In the **Host Name** field, enter the name that the SMC API service uses.



**Note:** API requests are served only if the API request is made to this host name. To allow API requests to any host name, leave this field blank.


- 6) Make sure that the listening port is set to the default of 8082 on the Management Server.
- 7) If the Management Server has several IP addresses and you want to restrict access to one, enter the IP address in the **Listen Only on Address** field.
- 8) If you want to use encrypted connections, click **Select**, then select the TLS Credentials element.
- 9) Click **OK**.

## Create an API Client element

External applications use API clients to connect to SMC.

### Before you begin

SMC API must be enabled for the Management Server.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Browse to **Access Rights**.
- 3) Right-click **Access Rights** and select **New > API Client**.

- 4) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name for the API Client.
- 5) Use the initial authentication key or click **Generate Authentication Key** to generate a new one. A random 24-character alphanumeric authentication key is automatically generated.



**Important:** This key appears only once, so be sure to record it. The API Client uses the authentication key to log on to SMC API.

- 6) Click the **Permissions** tab.
- 7) Select the permissions for actions in the SMC API.
- 8) Click **OK**.

## Forward audit data from Management Servers to external hosts


---


You can configure Management Servers to forward audit data to external hosts in CSV, XML, or McAfee ESM format. Forwarding audit data enables you to handle and process audit data with external devices.

## Add rules for forwarding audit data from Management Servers

---

Configure the rules that forward audit data from a Management Server.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select  **Home**.
- 2) Browse to **Others > Management Server**.
- 3) Right-click the Management Server from which you want to forward audit data, then select **Properties**.
- 4) Click the **Audit Forwarding** tab.
- 5) To create a rule, click **Add**.




**Tip:** To remove a rule, select the rule and click **Remove**.

- 6) In the select **Target Host** cell, select the external host to which the audit data is forwarded.
  - a) Double-click the **Target Host** cell.

- b) Select a Host element.
  - c) Click **Select**.
- 7) In the **Service** cell, select the network protocol for forwarding the audit data.
  - 8) (Optional) Double-click the **Port** cell, then enter the port that is used for audit data forwarding.

 **Note:** You might have to define an Access rule that allows traffic to the target host. In this case, make sure that the Port you select is also used as the Port in the Access rule.
  - 9) In the **Format** cell, select the audit data forwarding format.
  - 10) (Optional) Double-click the **Filter** cell, then define a Local Filter element that defines which audit data is forwarded.

 **Note:** The Local Filter is only applied to the audit data that matches the Audit Forwarding rule.
  - 11) Click **OK**.

#### Related tasks

[Enable TLS protection for log or audit data forwarding](#) on page 420


## Enable TLS protection for log or audit data forwarding


You can optionally enable TLS protection for log or audit data forwarding to an external syslog server.

### Before you begin

Because there is a connection to an external system, public key infrastructure (PKI) integration, including certificate revocation list (CRL) checking, must already be configured.

Optionally, you can check the identity of the TLS server to secure the TLS-protected traffic from the Log Server or the Management Server to an external syslog server.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Home**.
- 2) Browse to **Others > Log Server** or **Others > Management Server**.

- 3) Right-click the Log Server or Management Server from which you want to forward log or audit data, then select **Properties**.
- 4) Click the **Log Forwarding** or **Audit Forwarding** tab.
- 5) To add a rule, click **Add**.
- 6) In the select **Target Host** cell, select the external host to which the log or audit data is forwarded.
  - a) Double-click the **Target Host** cell.
  - b) Select a Host element.
  - c) Click **Select**.
- 7) In the **Service** cell, select **TCP with TLS**.
- 8) In the **Port**, **Format**, **Data Type** (Log Server only), and **Filter** cells, select the settings according to your needs.
- 9) In the **TLS Profile** cell, select the TLS profile for TLS-protected log data forwarding.
  - a) Double-click the **TLS Profile** cell.
  - b) Select a TLS Profile element.
  - c) Click **Select**.
- 10) (Optional) Double-click the **TSL Server Identity** cell and define the TLS server identity in order to check the identity of the TLS server to secure the TLS-protected traffic from the Log Server or the Management Server.
- 11) Define the Log Server or Management Server TLS certificate options.



This certificate is used as the client certificate when connecting to the external syslog server.

  - To use the server's internal certificate, select **Use Internal Certificate**.
  - To use the certificate contained in a TLS Credentials element, select **Use Imported Certificate**, then click **Select**.  
Select a TLS Credentials element.
  - To leave the server's certificate unauthenticated, select **No Client Authentication**.
- 12) Click **OK**.

# Create Access rules allowing traffic from Management Servers to external hosts

If the external host and Management Server are separated by a Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall, edit the Policy to allow traffic from the Management Server to the host.


**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Policies**
- 3) Browse to **Firewall Policies** or **Layer 2 Firewall Policies**, depending on the type of policy that you want to edit.
- 4) Right-click the Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall policy, then select **Edit Firewall Policy** or **Edit Layer 2 Firewall Policy**.
- 5) Click the **IPv4 Access** or **IPv6 Access** tab, then add an Access rule with the following values:
  - **Source**: your Management Server
  - **Destination**: the target Host element
  - **Service**: Syslog (UDP) or Syslog (TCP), depending on the protocol used. For TLS-protected traffic, select TCP with TLS. The same **Service** and **Port** that was selected in the Audit Forwarding rule must be selected here.
  - **Action**: Allow
- 6) If you have finished editing the policy, click  **Save and Install**.

# Change the Management Server database password

The Management Server contains a database for storing the configuration information. The password for the database is automatically created during the installation of the Management Server. In some rare cases, you might need this password to complete an operation. In these cases, you can change the database password.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Menu** > **System Tools** > **Password** > **Change Database Password**.
- 2) Enter the password in the **New Password** and the **Confirm New Password** fields.
- 3) Click **OK** to confirm the change.



# Change the Management Server or Log Server platform

You can change the hardware or the operating system that the Management Server or Log Server components run on.



**Note:** For any Web Portal Server, install the new Web Portal Server as a fresh installation as instructed in the *Forcepoint Next Generation Firewall Installation Guide*.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Take backups of your Management Servers and your Log Servers.



**Note:** The Web Portal Server has no information to back up.

- 2) (Multiple Management Servers only) Open the **Control Management Servers** dialog box and temporarily exclude the additional Management Servers from database replication.
- 3) Install new Management Servers and Log Servers on the new platforms.  
See the *Forcepoint Next Generation Firewall Installation Guide*.
- 4) Restore the Management Server and Log Server backups from the old environment to the new installation.
- 5) (Hardware change) Shut down and disconnect the old Management Server or Log Server hardware.
- 6) (Hardware change) Connect the new Management Server or Log Server to the network environment.
- 7) If the replication status in the **Info** pane indicates a problem with database replication, synchronize the management databases manually.

## Related concepts

[Restoring backups](#) on page 1276

## Related tasks

[Synchronize databases between active Management Server and additional Management Servers](#) on page 439

[Back up system configurations](#) on page 1275

# Change Management Server and Log Server IP addresses

You can change the IP addresses of the Management Server and Log Server without losing management connectivity. The steps to change the Management Server's IP address depend on whether the Management Server and Log Server are on separate or on the same appliance.

When you change IP addresses, other connections between the different components might be temporarily lost. Make sure that the connections return to normal after the IP address changes.

Before changing the IP address, we recommend making a backup of the Management Server and Log Server.

## Related tasks

[Change the IP address of combined Management Servers and Log Servers](#) on page 452

[Back up system configurations](#) on page 1275

## Change the Management Server IP address

When the Management Server and Log Server are installed on different appliances, you can change the IP address of the Management Server by following these steps.

Before changing the IP address, we recommend making a backup of the Management Server and the Log Server.



**Note:** If any Firewalls between the Management Server and other components do not use a policy based on the Firewall Template, check that they allow all necessary connections.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Request an IP address change for the Management Server license at <https://stonesoftlicenses.forcepoint.com>.
- 2) (Multiple Management Servers only) Open the **Control Management Servers** dialog box and temporarily exclude the Management Servers for which you are changing the IP address from database replication. For more information, see the topic that explains how to synchronize Management databases manually.
- 3) Add Firewall IPv4 Access rules (and possibly NAT rules) that allow policy upload connections from the new IP addresses to the Firewall.  
The services needed for the communications between the different components are explained in the topic that lists SMC ports.
- 4) (Firewalls with Node-Initiated contact to Management Server only) Open the Management Server Properties and add the new Management Server IP address as a Contact Address.  
The Firewall must be able to contact the Management Server at both the current Management Server IP address and the new Management Server IP address.
- 5) Refresh the Firewall Policies.

- 6) Stop the Management Server and Log Server services.
- 7) Change the IP address of the host server in the operating system.
- 8) On the Management Server, run the command  
`sgChangeMgtIPOnMgtSrv <new Management Server IP address>`
- 9) On all Log Servers, run the command  
`sgChangeMgtIPOnLogSrv <new Management Server IP address>`
- 10) Start the Management Server and Log Server services and log on using the Management Client.
- 11) Install the new Management Server license when prompted.
- 12) Remove the Firewall IPv4 Access rules that you created in Step 3 and refresh the Firewall Policies. After running the IP address change scripts, the Alias elements in the inherited rules translate to the right IP addresses.
- 13) If the replication status in the **Info** pane indicates a problem with database replication, synchronize the management databases manually.

#### Related tasks

[Define Management Server or Log Server contact addresses](#) on page 130

[Synchronize databases between active Management Server and additional Management Servers](#) on page 439

[Change the IP address of combined Management Servers and Log Servers](#) on page 452

[Back up system configurations](#) on page 1275

#### Related reference


[Security Management Center ports](#) on page 1433

## Change the Log Server IP address

When the Management Server and Log Server are installed on different appliances, you can change the IP address of the Log Server by following these steps.

When you change the Log Server's IP address, the traffic between the Log Server and the engines is interrupted and the logs are spooled on the engines. Changing the IP address might also mean that the transfer of engine status and statistics information is temporarily interrupted.

Before changing the IP address, we recommend making a backup of the Management Server and the Log Server.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Request a license binding change for the Log Server if the license is bound to the Log Server's IP address at <https://stonesoftlicenses.forcepoint.com> and install the new license.

- 2) Edit the <installation directory>/data/LogServerConfiguration.txt file on the Log Server and update the Log Server IP address.
- 3) In the Management Client, open the Log Server properties and update the Log Server IP address.
- 4) Stop and restart the Log Server service.
- 5) Refresh the policies of all engines that send data to the Log Server.

#### Related tasks

[Edit Log Server configuration parameters](#) on page 424

[Back up system configurations](#) on page 1275

## Change the IP address of combined Management Servers and Log Servers


When the Management Server and the Log Server are installed on the same system, you can change the IP address for both Servers in one procedure.

When you change the Log Server's IP address, the traffic between the Log Server and the engines is interrupted and the logs are spooled on the engines. Changing the IP address might also mean that the transfer of engine status and statistics information is temporarily interrupted.

Before changing the IP addresses, we recommend making a backup of the Management Server and the Log Server.



**Note:** If any Firewalls between the Management Server and other components do not use a policy based on the Firewall Template, check that they allow all necessary connections.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Request a license binding change to the new IP address for the Management Server license, and also the Log Server if the license is bound to an IP address.  
Make the request at <https://stonesoftlicenses.forcepoint.com>.
- 2) (Multiple Management Servers only) Open the **Control Management Servers** dialog box and temporarily exclude the Management Servers for which you are changing the IP address from database replication.  
For more information, see the topic that explains how to synchronize Management databases manually.
- 3) Add Firewall IPv4 Access rules (and possibly NAT rules) that allow policy upload connections from the new IP addresses to the Firewall.  
The services needed for the communications between the different components are explained in the topic that lists SMC ports.

- 4) (Firewalls with Node-Initiated contact to Management Server only) Open the Management Server Properties and add the new Management Server IP address as a Contact Address.  
The Firewall must be able to contact the Management Server at both the current Management Server IP address and the new Management Server IP address.
- 5) Refresh the Firewall Policies.
- 6) Stop the Management Server and Log Server services.
- 7) Change the IP address of the host server in the operating system.
- 8) Run the sgChangeMgtIPOnMgtSrv script on the Management Server.  
For more information, see the topic that explains SMC commands.
- 9) Run the sgChangeMgtIPOnLogSrv script on the Log Server.
- 10) Edit the <installation directory>/data/LogServerConfiguration.txt file on the Log Server and update the Log Server IP address.  
For more information, see the topic that explains changing Log Server configuration parameters.
- 11) Start the Management Server service and log on using the Management Client.
- 12) Install the new licenses when prompted.
- 13) Open the **Log Server** properties and update the IP address.
- 14) Start the Log Server service.
- 15) Remove the Firewall IPv4 Access rules that you created in Step 3 and refresh the Firewall Policies.  
After running the IP address change scripts, the Alias elements in the inherited rules translate to the right IP addresses.
- 16) If the replication status in the **Info** pane indicates a problem with database replication, synchronize the management databases manually.

#### Related tasks

[Edit Log Server configuration parameters](#) on page 424

[Synchronize databases between active Management Server and additional Management Servers](#) on page 439

[Change the Management Server IP address](#) on page 450

[Change the Log Server IP address](#) on page 451

[Start Tasks manually](#) on page 1306

[Back up system configurations](#) on page 1275

#### Related reference

[Security Management Center commands](#) on page 1411

[Security Management Center ports](#) on page 1433

# Create Internal ECDSA Certificate Authority elements


Switching to an internal ECDSA certificate authority enables 256-bit encryption on the Management Server for connections between the Management Server and engines.


The Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm (ECDSA) is a digital signature algorithm that uses elliptic curve cryptography. You can switch to using an Internal ECDSA certificate authority to sign the certificates that components use to identify each other in system communications.

When you create an Internal ECDSA Certificate Authority element, SMC components gradually start using the new Internal ECDSA CA to sign certificates. Initially, the new Internal ECDSA CA is in the **Created for Different Certificate Type** state. When the new Internal ECDSA CA is ready to begin signing certificates, it changes to the **Ready to Use for Different Certificate Type** state. At first, only Management Server certificates are signed by the new Internal ECDSA CA. Certificates for other components are signed by whichever Internal CA is currently used by the Management Server. In an environment with multiple Management Servers, the new ECDSA CA changes to the **Active** state when all Management Servers use the new Internal ECDSA CA.



**CAUTION:** When you start using an internal ECDSA certificate authority, you must recertify all SMC servers. You might also need to make initial contact between the engines and the Management Server. Engines with versions earlier than 5.5 cannot communicate with the SMC when 256-bit encryption is used with an internal ECDSA certificate authority. We strongly recommend creating a Management Server backup before creating an Internal ECDSA Certificate Authority element.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Internal Certificate Authorities**.
- 3) Right-click **Internal Certificate Authorities** and select **Create New Internal ECDSA Certificate Authority**.  
You are prompted to confirm that you want to create an Internal ECDSA Certificate Authority element.
- 4) Click **Yes**.
  - The Internal ECDSA Certificate Authority element creation process begins and a new tab opens to show the progress of the process.
  - When the process is finished, the progress report shows the steps that you must take next.
  - The status of the ECDSA CA is **Created for Different Certificate Type**.
- 5) Restart the Log Server and the Web Portal Server.  
For more information, see the topic that explains SMC commands.
- 6) Start the Renew Internal Certificate Authorities Task.  
For more information, see the topic that explains starting Tasks manually.  
When the Task is finished, the status of the ECDSA CA is **Ready to Use for Different Certificate Type**.

- 7) Right-click the **Renew Internal Certificate Authorities** Task in the **History** branch and select **Show Progress Report**.  
The progress report shows which steps you must take next. Follow the instructions to resolve any issues. For example, you might be prompted to check the status or connectivity of some engines.
- 8) Recertify the Management Server. For more information, see the topic that explains renewing SMC server certificates.
- 9) Start the **Renew Internal Certificate Authorities** Task again.  
When the Task is finished, the status of the ECDSA CA is **Active**.
- 10) Recertify the Log Server and the Web Portal Server.
  - If an engine cannot communicate with the Management Server, check that 256-bit encryption is enabled on the engine. Then make initial contact between the engine and the Management Server. For more information, see the topic that explains enabling 256-bit security strength for engines.
  - For other certificate-related problems, see the topic that lists certificate problems.

#### Related concepts

[Problems with certificates](#) on page 1357

#### Related tasks

[Back up system configurations](#) on page 1275

[Renew SMC server certificates](#) on page 1359

#### Related reference

[Security Management Center commands](#) on page 1411

## Enable 256-bit security strength for engines

When you start using a new internal ECDSA certificate authority, 256-bit encryption is automatically enabled on the engines. If an engine can't communicate with the Management Server, manually enable 256-bit encryption on the engine and make initial contact between the engine and the Management Server.

Both the engines and the Management Server must be version 5.5 or later.



**CAUTION:** Engines with versions earlier than 5.5 cannot communicate with the SMC when 256-bit encryption is used with an internal ECDSA certificate authority.



**Note:** When using the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard in a web browser, 256-bit encryption is automatically used. See the *Forcepoint Next Generation Firewall Installation Guide*.

### Steps

- 1) Start the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard on the command line using one of the following commands:
  - `sg-reconfigure --no-shutdown`: The NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard starts without shutting down the engine. Network interface settings cannot be changed in this mode.

- `sg-reconfigure`: The engine shuts down and the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard starts. All options are available if you have a local connection. If you have a remote SSH connection, you cannot change network interface settings (the engine uses the no-shutdown mode).
- 2) Select **Next** on each page until the **Prepare for Management Contact** page opens.
  - 3) Select **Contact** or **Contact at Reboot** and press the spacebar.
  - 4) Enter the Management Server IP address and the one-time password.



**Note:** The one-time password is engine-specific and can be used only for one initial connection to the Management Server. Once initial contact has been made, the engine receives a certificate from the SMC for identification. If the certificate is deleted or expires, repeat the initial contact using a new one-time password.

- 5) Select **256-bit Security Strength** and press the spacebar to use 256-bit encryption for the connection to the Management Server. 256-bit encryption must also be enabled for the Management Server.
- 6) (Optional) Select **Edit Fingerprint** and press **Enter**. Fill in the Management Server's certificate fingerprint (also shown when you saved the initial configuration).  
Filling in the certificate fingerprint increases the security of the communications.
- 7) Select **Finish** and press **Enter**.  
The engine now tries to make initial Management Server contact. The progress is displayed on the command line.

#### Related tasks

[Create Internal ECDSA Certificate Authority elements](#) on page 454

## Troubleshooting connecting to Management Servers

If an engine that has been changed cannot connect to the Management Server, you have several troubleshooting options.

If an engine cannot connect to the Management Server because of changes in the configuration, you can restore the contact. Generate a new initial configuration for the engine (through the engine's right-click menu), then run the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard on the command line. See the *Forcepoint Next Generation Firewall Installation Guide*.

If you suspect that the engine's configuration is out of date, select the option to return the engine to the initial configuration state. For more information, see the topic that explains reconfiguring engine settings.



**CAUTION:** Returning the engine to the initial configuration state clears the engine's configuration. Only management communications are allowed, and no traffic is allowed to pass through the engine.



**Related tasks**[Reconfigure engine settings](#) on page 339

# Things to consider when changing the NGFW Engine role

You can change the role of an NGFW Engine, converting one type of NGFW Engine to another, if you have a specific need to do so.

Consider these things when changing the role:

- You can only change the NGFW Engine role for engines that currently have Forcepoint NGFW software installed. To change the role of engines that currently have specific engine software (for example, Firewall/VPN) installed, you must reinstall the engine software. See the *Forcepoint Next Generation Firewall Installation Guide*.
- Changing the engine role is only supported on modular appliances, for engines installed on a virtualization platform, or for engines installed on your own hardware. You cannot change the engine role on small appliances.
- You must have an NGFW Engine license that is valid for all engine roles. You cannot change the role of engines that have a license for a specific type of engine.
- If using the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard on the engine command line, you must connect through a serial console or VGA console. It is not possible to change the engine's role using an SSH connection to the engine.

## Prepare for changing the NGFW Engine role

Before you change the role of an NGFW Engine from one type to another, perform these high-level steps to create an engine element for the new role.



**Note:** You cannot use the same primary control IP address in multiple elements. You must either change the primary control IP address in the engine's current interface configuration or delete the existing engine element before creating the new engine element.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Create the correct type of engine element for the new role and define the basic properties.
- 2) Configure the engine's interfaces.
- 3) Configure the routing.
  - Routes to directly connected networks are automatically added for all NGFW Engine roles.
  - For Firewalls, add a default route and any routes through next-hop gateways to networks that are not directly connected to the Firewalls.

- You might need to define a default route for IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls if the SMC components are not on a directly connected network.
- 4) Generate the initial configuration for the engine and save the configuration on a USB drive.  
For more information, see the topic that explains management contact procedure for engines.

#### Related concepts

[Getting started with engine elements](#) on page 463

[Network interfaces for engines](#) on page 529

[Connect engines to the SMC](#) on page 631

[Getting started with routing](#) on page 693

## Clear the existing engine configuration before changing the NGFW Engine role

Before you change the role of an NGFW Engine from one type to another, clear the existing engine configuration.

### Steps

- 1) Connect to the engine's command line using a monitor and keyboard or a serial cable, and log on as root.  
If you use a serial cable, use a terminal console program to connect to the NGFW appliance with these settings:
  - **Bits per second** — 9600 or 115,200
  - **Data bits** — 8
  - **Parity** — None
  - **Stop bits** — 1.



**Note:** The serial console port speed is 9600 bps in most NGFW appliances. The speed is 115,200 bps in the latest NGFW appliance models. See the hardware guide for your NGFW appliance model for more information.

- 2) Enter the command `sg-clear-all`.  
The engine restarts and you are prompted to select the system restore options.



**CAUTION:** Using the system restore options clears all configuration information from the engine. It is not possible to recover the engine's previous configuration.

- 3) Type 2 and press **Enter**.  
You are prompted to select the number of overwrites for the data partition.
- 4) Type 0 and press **Enter**.  
You are prompted to select the number of overwrites for the swap partition.
- 5) Type 0 and press **Enter**.  
You are prompted to select whether to remove the spool partition.

- 6) Type **2** and press **Enter**.  
You are prompted to select the number of overwrites for the spool partition.
- 7) Type **0** and press **Enter**.  
You are prompted to confirm that you want to clear the configuration.
- 8) Type **YES** and press **Enter**.  
The system starts clearing the engine's configuration.



**CAUTION:** Do not turn off or restart the engine while the configuration is being cleared. Doing so can cause a serious error that prevents the engine from starting.

- 9) Press **Enter** to restart the engine when prompted.  
The engine restarts and the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard starts on the command line.

## Reconfigure the engine after clearing the existing configuration

---

After you create an engine element and clear the existing engine configuration, you can change the role of an NGFW Engine from one type to another.

For details about how to make initial contact using the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard in a web browser, see the *Forcepoint Next Generation Firewall Installation Guide*.

### Steps

- 1) Select **Role** and press **Enter**.
- 2) Select the new role for the NGFW Engine and press **Enter**.  
The role-specific NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard starts.
- 3) Select one of the following configuration methods:
  - Select **Import** and press **Enter** to import a saved configuration.
  - Select **Next** and press **Enter** to manually configure the engine's settings.
- 4) (Manual configuration only) Configure the **Operating System Settings** and **Network Interfaces**.  
See the *Forcepoint Next Generation Firewall Installation Guide*.
- 5) Select **Switch Engine node to initial configuration** and fill in the Management Server information.
- 6) Select **Contact** and enter the **Management Server IP address** and the **one-time password**.



**CAUTION:** Select 256-bit Security Strength only if the engine is not able to communicate with the Management Server after you start using a new ECDSA Certificate Authority. Engines with versions earlier than 5.5 cannot communicate with the SMC when 256-bit encryption is used with an Internal ECDSA Certificate Authority.

- 7) (Optional) Select **Edit Fingerprint** and press **Enter**. Fill in the Management Server's certificate fingerprint (also shown when you saved the initial configuration).  
Filling in the certificate fingerprint increases the security of the communications.
- 8) Select **Finish** and press **Enter**.  
The engine makes initial contact with the Management Server.
- 9) Install a policy on the engine.

**Related tasks**

[Install policies](#) on page 792

# PART VII

## Engine element configuration

### Contents

- [Creating and modifying engine elements on page 463](#)
- [Creating and modifying Master NGFW Engine and Virtual NGFW Engine elements on page 505](#)
- [Network interface configuration on page 529](#)
- [Connecting engines to the SMC on page 629](#)
- [Element-based network address translation \(NAT\) on page 635](#)
- [Configuring the engine tester on page 639](#)
- [Engine permissions on page 647](#)
- [DNS Relay on page 651](#)
- [Setting up SNMP for engines on page 657](#)
- [Alias element translations for engines on page 661](#)
- [Add-on features for engines on page 665](#)
- [Advanced engine settings on page 675](#)

You can create and modify Firewalls, IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewalls, Master NGFW Engines and Virtual NGFW Engines. You can configure the engine properties, activate optional features, and configure advanced engine settings.



# Creating and modifying engine elements

### Contents

- [Getting started with engine elements](#) on page 463
- [Creating engine elements](#) on page 464
- [Editing existing engine elements](#) on page 489
- [Configure global contact policy settings for node-initiated contact to the Management Server](#) on page 502
- [Synchronizing engine times](#) on page 503

Engine elements contain the configuration information that is directly related to the Firewalls, IPS engines, and Layer 2 Firewalls. The configuration information includes interface definitions, cluster mode selection, tester settings, and other engine-specific options.

## Getting started with engine elements

Engine elements are used for the configuration and management of your Firewalls, IPS engines, and Layer 2 Firewalls.

Engine elements contain settings that cannot be reused in the configuration of other components, such as the network interface configuration. Engine elements also determine which reusable elements are included in the configuration of a particular component. (For example, a component can send its log data to the Log Server, which is a reusable element.) All engines are centrally configured and controlled through the Management Server.

If you are configuring new engine elements for the first time, follow the instructions in the *Forcepoint Next Generation Firewall Installation Guide*.

## Engine configuration overview

Configuring Firewalls, IPS engines, and Layer 2 Firewalls consists of several general procedures.

- 1) Install a license for the engine.
- 2) Create an engine element and define the basic properties.
- 3) Configure the engine's interfaces.
- 4) Configure the routing.

- 5) Generate the initial configuration for the engine and use it to establish a connection between the engine and the Management Server.
- 6) Install a policy on the engine.

#### Related concepts

- [Creating engine elements](#) on page 464
- [Network interfaces for engines](#) on page 529
- [Configuration of Master NGFW Engines and Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 505
- [Connect engines to the SMC](#) on page 631
- [Getting started with routing](#) on page 693
- [Getting Started with licenses](#) on page 1309

#### Related tasks

- [Install policies](#) on page 792

## Engine Editor and how it works

The Engine Editor combines all engine configuration information into one view that is easy to access and navigate. You can quickly save and validate all changes using the Engine Editor toolbar.

You can use the Engine Editor to configure the following settings:

- **General** — General engine settings
- **Interfaces** — Interface configuration
- **Routing** — Routing and antispoofing configuration
- **Add-Ons** — Settings related to engine add-ons. Also contains settings for McAfee GTI and McAfee TIE file reputation, the McAfee Advanced Threat Defense server, Sidewinder Proxy, and ThreatSeeker.
- **Policies** — Information about the Security Policy used on the engine and settings related to element-based NAT and Aliases; also contains settings for Automatic rules
- **VPN (Firewalls only)** — Settings related to the engine's VPN configuration and SSL VPN configuration
- **Advanced Settings** — Advanced engine settings (Traffic Handling, SYN Rate Limits, Log Handling, Scan Detection, DoS Protection, Idle Timeouts, and Tunneling)

You can use the Engine Editor to edit or view an engine configuration:

- Edit an engine configuration by right-clicking an engine element and selecting **Edit**.
- View an engine configuration by right-clicking an engine element and selecting **Preview**. Double-clicking an engine also opens the engine configuration in preview mode.

## Creating engine elements

You can either create an element or copy and edit an existing element.

Before you define an engine element, make sure that you have a license for it. The element can be configured without a license, but you must have a license to make the engine operational.

You can create engine elements in these ways:



- Single Firewall and Firewall Cluster elements one by one
- Several new Single Firewall and Firewall Cluster elements at the same time with a wizard
- IPS and Layer 2 Firewall elements one by one

### Related concepts

[Configuration of Master NGFW Engines and Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 505

### Related tasks

[Create Single Firewall elements](#) on page 465

[Create multiple Single Firewall elements using the Create Multiple Single Firewalls wizard](#) on page 466

[Create Firewall Cluster elements](#) on page 478

[Create multiple Firewall Cluster elements using the Create Multiple Firewall Clusters wizard](#) on page 479

[Create Single IPS elements](#) on page 484

[Create IPS Cluster elements](#) on page 485

[Create Single Layer 2 Firewall elements](#) on page 486

[Create Layer 2 Firewall Cluster elements](#) on page 487

[Duplicate existing engine elements](#) on page 488

## Create Single Firewall elements

Single Firewall elements represent firewalls that consist of one physical device.



**Note:** Single Firewall elements can be converted to Firewall Cluster elements. You can also create several Single Firewall elements at the same time using the Create Multiple Single Firewalls wizard.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click **NGFW Engines** and select **New > Firewall > Single Firewall**.
- 3) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.
- 4) Select the **Log Server** to which the Firewall sends its event data.
- 5) (Optional) In **DNS IP Addresses** field, add one or more DNS IP addresses.  
DNS IP addresses are IP addresses of external DNS servers. Firewalls use these DNS servers to resolve Domain names to IP addresses. Firewalls need DNS resolution to contact services that are defined using URLs or domain names, and to resolve fully qualified domain names (FQDNs) used in policies. When DNS relay is configured, these DNS servers are used unless domain-specific DNS servers are specified in a DNS Relay Profile element.



**Note:** If you have defined NetLink-specific DNS IP addresses, adding DNS IP addresses overrides the NetLink-specific DNS IP addresses.

- To enter a single IP address manually, click **Add** and select **IP Address**. Enter the IP address in the dialog box that opens.
  - To define an IP address using a network element, click **Add** and select **Network Element**.
- 6) If there is a NAT device between this Firewall and other SMC components, select the **Location** for this engine.
  - 7) (Optional, appliances only) Enter the **Proof-of-Serial** (POS) code delivered with the appliance if you want to configure the engine using plug-and-play configuration.
  - 8) (Optional) If you want to include the Firewalls in predefined categories, select the appropriate **Categories**.
  - 9) (Optional) If you want to add custom commands to the Firewall's right-click menu, add a **Tools Profile**.

### Related concepts

[Defining Host elements](#) on page 896

[Configuring interfaces for Firewalls](#) on page 531

### Related tasks

[Attach Tools Profile elements to elements](#) on page 121

[Create Location elements](#) on page 129

[Select Categories for elements](#) on page 161

[Create multiple Single Firewall elements using the Create Multiple Single Firewalls wizard](#) on page 466

[Activate the SNMP agent on engines](#) on page 660

[Define External DNS Server elements](#) on page 772

## Create multiple Single Firewall elements using the Create Multiple Single Firewalls wizard

You can create multiple Single Firewall elements at the same time using the Create Multiple Single Firewalls wizard.

Use the wizard to create firewalls for plug-and-play configuration, where the appliances configure themselves automatically after they are plugged in and connected to the network. Only specific Forcepoint NGFW appliances can use plug-and-play configuration.

Using the Create Multiple Single Firewalls wizard offers several benefits:

- It is easy to create several Firewall elements at the same time.
- You can select IP addresses as Endpoints for the VPN Gateway elements that represent the Firewalls in VPNs.
- You can define a policy that is automatically installed on the Firewalls when they make initial contact to the Management Server.
- (Plug-and-play configuration only) You can upload Firewall configurations to the Installation Server. This way, you can avoid uploading the configurations one by one or transferring the initial configurations to the appliances manually.

You can create a specific number (1–1000) of Single Firewall elements. Or you can use the Proof-of-Serial (POS) codes delivered with the Forcepoint NGFW appliances to create the Single Firewall elements. When you use POS codes in the wizard, all appliances must be the same model. If you have POS codes for different types of appliances, you must run the wizard separately for each appliance model to create the elements. Before you create Firewall elements, note the serial numbers and geographical locations of the appliances.



**Note:** The Firewall properties you define in the Create Multiple Single Firewalls wizard are common to all Firewalls created with the wizard. Consider carefully which properties all Firewalls share and which properties must be defined separately for each Firewall.

Once you have created the Firewalls through the wizard, you can change the properties of each individual Firewall.

### Related concepts

[Defining Host elements](#) on page 896

### Related tasks

[Create Location elements](#) on page 129

[Select Categories for elements](#) on page 161

[Create Single Firewall elements](#) on page 465


[Edit several engines at once](#) on page 490


[Activate the SNMP agent on engines](#) on page 660

[Define External DNS Server elements](#) on page 772

## Start the Create Multiple Single Firewalls wizard

Start the Create Multiple Single Firewalls wizard to create multiple Single Firewall elements at the same time. Define general settings for the Single Firewall elements.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click **NGFW Engines** and select **New > Firewall > Multiple Single Firewalls**.  
The **Create Multiple Single Firewalls** wizard opens.
- 3) To create multiple Single Firewall elements based on POS codes, follow these steps to start the configuration.
  - a) In the **Proof-of-Serial Codes** field, enter the POS codes.
  - b) (Optional) Select a Firewall on which you want to base the Firewalls' configuration from the **Base Configuration On** list.
  - c) Click **Next**.  
The **Proof-of-Serial Code Information** page opens.

- d) Make sure that the details on the **Proof-of-Serial Code Information** page are correct and click **Next**. The **Define Basic Firewall Information** page opens.
- 4) If you do not have POS codes, follow these steps to start the configuration.
  - a) Enter the **Number of Single Firewalls** (1-1000).
  - b) (Optional) Select a Firewall on which you want to base the Firewalls' configuration from the **Base Configuration On** list.
  - c) Click **Next**. The **Define Basic Firewall Information** page opens.
- 5) Enter a common **Name Prefix**. The system adds either a running number or the serial number of the appliance to the name prefix to generate a unique name for each individual Firewall.
- 6) Select the **Log Server** to which the Firewall sends its event data.



**Note:** **Name Prefix** and **Log Server** are the only mandatory properties you must define at this stage. Review the other properties carefully to see which ones to define as the shared properties for all Firewalls created with the wizard.

- 7) (Optional) In **DNS IP Addresses** field, add one or more DNS IP addresses.

DNS IP addresses are IP addresses of external DNS servers. Firewalls use these DNS servers to resolve Domain names to IP addresses. Firewalls need DNS resolution to contact services that are defined using URLs or domain names, and to resolve fully qualified domain names (FQDNs) used in policies. When DNS relay is configured, these DNS servers are used unless domain-specific DNS servers are specified in a DNS Relay Profile element.



**Note:** If you have defined NetLink-specific DNS IP addresses, adding DNS IP addresses overrides the NetLink-specific DNS IP addresses.

- To enter a single IP address manually, click **Add** and select **IP Address**. Enter the IP address in the dialog box that opens.
  - To define an IP address using a network element, click **Add** and select **Network Element**. Select an existing element, or click **New** and add an element.
- 8) Select the **Location** for the Firewalls if there is a NAT device between these Firewalls and other SMC components.



**Note:** Select a **Location** only if all Firewalls you create with the wizard belong to the same Location element.

- 9) Define other settings according to your environment:
  - If you have a Forcepoint NGFW appliance, enter the **Proof-of-Serial (POS)** code delivered with the appliance.
  - If you want to include the Firewalls in predefined categories, select the appropriate **Categories**.
  - If you want to add custom commands to the Firewalls' right-click menu, add a **Tools Profile**.

- 10) Click **Next**.  
The **Review and Edit Names and Comments** page opens.
- 11) Review the names of the Firewalls. If necessary, right-click the name and select **Edit Name**.



**Note:** We recommend giving each Firewall a unique, descriptive name after the common **Name Prefix**, such as the geographical location where the particular Firewall engine will be used.

- 12) Click **Next**.  
The **Define Interfaces for the Firewalls** page opens.


## Define interfaces for multiple Single Firewalls

You must define at least one Physical Interface and one IPv4 address for the Firewalls.

When you define interfaces for multiple Single Firewalls, the same interface properties are available in the Properties dialog box of every Firewall element. However, we recommend that you configure all shared interface properties in the wizard. After you exit the wizard, you must configure the properties separately for each Firewall.

The interface properties you define for the first Firewall are used to automatically create the corresponding properties for the rest of the Firewalls. These properties also include the IP addresses, which are automatically generated in numeric order. Make sure that the IP addresses that are assigned to the Firewalls are not used by any other components.

To use a physical interface for communication with the Management Server, begin by defining a Physical Interface with a dynamic IP address. This way, the Physical Interface is assigned Interface ID 0. When connecting the cables to the appliance, connect the cable for the control connection to Ethernet port 0. See the relevant *Hardware Guide* for detailed information about mapping the Interface IDs with specific ports on the appliances.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) On the **Define Interfaces for the Firewalls** page of the Create Multiple Single Firewalls wizard, click **Add** and select the type of interface that you want to add. Add the required number of network interfaces in the following order:
  - a) Define Physical Interfaces.
  - b) Define integrated ADSL modems.
  - c) Define integrated 3G modems.
  - d) Define Tunnel Interfaces.
  - e) Define integrated wireless modems.
  - f) Define SSID Interfaces.
  - g) Define integrated switches and Port Group Interfaces.
- 2) (Optional, Physical Interfaces only) Add the required number of VLANs.

- 3) (Not applicable to Modem interfaces) Configure the IP address settings for the first one of the Firewalls.
- 4) (Optional) Click **Options** to configure Loopback IP addresses.
- 5) (Recommended) Click **Options** to define which IP addresses are used in particular roles in system communications.
- 6) (Optional) Configure more routing settings:
  - Add static **ARP entries**.
  - Configure **Multicast Routing**.
- 7) Click **Next**.  
The **Review and Edit Firewall Interfaces** page opens.
- 8) Review the interfaces and edit them, if necessary. Properties of the Modem Interfaces cannot be edited.
- 9) Click **Next**.  
The **Define Routing for the Multiple Single Firewall Elements** page opens.

#### Related concepts

- [IP addresses for Single Firewall interfaces](#) on page 544
- [Loopback IP addresses for firewalls](#) on page 554

#### Related tasks

- [Create Single Firewall elements](#) on page 465
- [Add Physical Interfaces for firewalls](#) on page 531
- [Add VLAN Interfaces for firewalls](#) on page 533
- [Add ADSL Interfaces for Single Firewalls](#) on page 534
- [Add Wireless Interfaces for Single Firewalls](#) on page 534
- [Add SSID Interfaces for Single Firewalls](#) on page 535
- [Add Modem Interfaces for Single Firewalls](#) on page 538
- [Add tunnel interfaces for firewalls](#) on page 540
- [Select system communication roles for firewall interfaces](#) on page 553
- [Activate the internal DHCP server on a firewall interface](#) on page 556
- [Configure advanced properties for firewall interfaces](#) on page 542
- [Add manual ARP entries to NGFW Engines](#) on page 614

## Define routing for multiple Single Firewalls

Routes to directly connected networks are automatically added. You must add a default route and any routes through next-hop gateways to networks that are not directly connected to the firewalls.

### Steps

- 1) On the **Define Routing for the Multiple Single Firewall Elements** page of the Create Multiple Single Firewalls wizard, drag and drop the appropriate Router and Network elements under the correct interfaces in the right pane.

- 2) Click **Next**.  
The **Review and Edit Routing for the Multiple Single Firewall Elements** page opens.
- 3) Review the routing and edit, if necessary.
- 4) Click **Next**.  
The **Define NAT Definitions for the Firewalls** page opens.

#### Related tasks


[Add routes for firewalls](#) on page 701

[Create multiple Single Firewall elements using the Create Multiple Single Firewalls wizard](#) on page 466

## Add NAT definitions for multiple Single Firewalls

On the **Define NAT Definitions for the Firewalls** page, you can define how the Single Firewalls translate network IP addresses.

NAT rules are automatically generated and organized in the Firewall Policy based on the NAT definitions created in the Firewall properties.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) If you do not want to configure NAT definitions, click **Next** on the **Define NAT Definitions for the Firewalls** page of the Create Multiple Single Firewalls wizard. Otherwise, continue to the next step.
- 2) (Optional) If no more-specific NAT definitions match the traffic, select **Use Default NAT Address for Traffic from Internal Networks**. This setting uses the default NAT address as the Public IP Address.
- 3) (Optional) Click **Show Details** to view the Default NAT Address properties.
- 4) Add or change the NAT definitions.
- 5) Click **Next**.  
The **Select Additional Configuration Options** page opens.

#### Related tasks

[Create multiple Single Firewall elements using the Create Multiple Single Firewalls wizard](#) on page 466

[Add NAT definitions for element-based NAT](#) on page 636

[Edit or remove NAT definitions for element-based NAT](#) on page 637

# Select additional configuration options for multiple Single Firewalls

On the **Select Additional Configuration Options** page, define optional properties for the Firewalls.

After defining the interfaces and routing, you have configured all mandatory properties for the Firewalls. We recommend that you define all shared properties of the Firewalls in the wizard.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) If you do not want to configure additional options, click **Next** on the **Select Additional Configuration Options** page of the Create Multiple Single Firewalls wizard. Otherwise, continue to the next step.
- 2) To define tester settings, engine permissions, add-ons (settings for TLS inspection, access control by user, anti-malware, or anti-spam), or advanced settings for the Firewalls, select **Define Additional Firewall Properties**.
- 3) Click **Next**.

# Define Tester settings for multiple Single Firewalls

On the **Define Tester Settings for the Firewalls** page, you can set periodic self-tests for the Firewalls to ensure that they function properly.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) On the **Define Tester Settings for the Firewalls** page of the Create Multiple Single Firewalls wizard, in the **Global Settings** section, specify settings that are common to all tests.
- 2) Add test entries.
- 3) Click **Next**.  
The **Define Permissions for the Firewalls** page opens.

## Related concepts

[Getting started with the engine tester](#) on page 639

## Related tasks

[Select additional configuration options for multiple Single Firewalls](#) on page 472

[Specify global engine tester settings](#) on page 640

[Add engine tests](#) on page 640



# Define permissions for multiple Single Firewalls

You can define which access control lists the Firewalls belong to, what permissions individual administrators have, and which policies are allowed for the Firewalls.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) On the **Define Permissions for the Firewalls** page of the Create Multiple Single Firewalls wizard, define administrator permissions on the Firewalls.
- 2) Select the permitted policies for the Firewalls.
- 3) Click **Next**.  
The **Define Add-Ons for the Firewalls** page opens.

## Related concepts

[Getting started with administrator accounts](#) on page 345

[Getting started with engine permissions](#) on page 647

## Related tasks

[Select additional configuration options for multiple Single Firewalls](#) on page 472

[Define administrator permissions for engines](#) on page 648

[Select allowed policies for engines](#) on page 649

# Define Add-Ons for multiple Single Firewalls

On the **Define Add-Ons for the Firewalls** page, you can define settings for TLS inspection, Access Control by User, browser-based user authentication, anti-malware, and anti-spam for the Firewalls.

Anti-malware and anti-spam are available as separately licensed features on selected platforms.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) (Optional) On the **Define Add-Ons for the Firewalls** page of the Create Multiple Single Firewalls wizard, select the appropriate **Client Protection Certificate Authority** element for TLS Inspection.
- 2) (Optional) Click **Add** and select the **Server Protection Credentials** element. The selected elements are added to the list.
- 3) (Optional) Select the **Logon Collector** element that the Firewall communicates with for Access Control by User.
- 4) (Optional) Click **User Authentication** to enable browser-based user authentication.
- 5) (Optional) Select **Anti-Malware** to configure the anti-malware settings.

- 6) (Optional) Select the appropriate **Anti-Spam Settings**.
- 7) Click **Next**.  
The **Define Advanced Settings for the Firewalls** page opens.

#### Related concepts

[Configure anti-malware on engines](#) on page 666  
[TLS inspection and how it works](#) on page 1035  
[Enabling access control by user](#) on page 1087

#### Related tasks


[Select additional configuration options for multiple Single Firewalls](#) on page 472  
[Configure anti-spam on engines](#) on page 669  
[Configure TLS inspection for server protection](#) on page 1040  
[Configure TLS inspection for client protection](#) on page 1042  
[Enable browser-based user authentication](#) on page 1108

## Define advanced settings for multiple Single Firewalls

On the **Define Advanced Settings for the Firewalls** page, you can define various system parameters and traffic handling parameters for the Firewalls.



**CAUTION:** Improper adjustments to some of the advanced settings can seriously degrade the performance of the system.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) If you do not want to configure advanced settings, click **Next** on the **Define Advanced Settings for the Firewalls** page of the Create Multiple Single Firewalls wizard, then select IP addresses as VPN endpoints for multiple Single Firewalls.
- 2) Otherwise, adjust the advanced settings.
  - a) Adjust the system parameters of the Firewalls.
  - b) Adjust the traffic handling parameters of the Firewalls.
- 3) Click **Next**.
- 4) Continue the configuration in the next relevant topic.
  - If you are creating the Firewall elements using POS codes, upload the multiple Single Firewall initial configuration to the Installation Server.
  - Otherwise, select IP addresses as VPN endpoints for multiple Single Firewalls.

**Related tasks**

Select additional configuration options for multiple Single Firewalls on page 472


Upload the multiple Single Firewall initial configuration to the Installation Server on page 476

Select a Firewall Policy for multiple Single Firewalls on page 477

## Select IP addresses as VPN Gateway endpoints for multiple Single Firewalls

On the **Define End-Points for the Internal VPN Gateways** page, you can define VPN endpoints (IP addresses) for the Firewalls.

The endpoints are used when the Firewall acts as a gateway in a VPN. The same endpoint cannot be used in both a Policy-Based VPN and the Route-Based VPN. Each IP address can only be used once.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) If you do not want to configure VPN gateway endpoints using the Create Multiple Single Firewalls wizard, continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - If you are creating the Firewall elements using POS codes, click **Next** twice, then upload the multiple Single Firewall initial configuration to the Installation Server.
  - Otherwise, click **Next** twice and select a Firewall Policy for multiple Single Firewalls.
- 2) Otherwise, on the **Define End-Points for the Internal VPN Gateways** page of the Create Multiple Single Firewalls wizard, select the IPv4/IPv6 addresses that you want to use as endpoints.

Typically, these IP addresses belong to interfaces toward the Internet, which are selected by default. Both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses can be used as endpoints in IPsec VPN tunnels. Only IPv4 addresses are supported as endpoints in SSL VPN tunnels or for access to the SSL VPN Portal. If you have more than one Internet connection, select an IP address from each ISP to make Multi-Link load balancing and failover possible.
- 3) To change the properties of an endpoint, right-click the name and select **Properties**.
  - a) (Optional) In the **Name** field, enter a name for the endpoint.
  - b) (Optional) In the **Mode** list, select a mode to define how the endpoint is used in a Multi-Link configuration. You can override the mode settings in each individual VPN.
  - c) (Optional) To activate encapsulation for NAT traversal in site-to-site VPNs, select a NAT-T option. NAT device traversal might be needed at the local or remote gateway end.

The gateway always allows VPN clients to use NAT-T regardless of these settings. NAT-T always uses the standard UDP port 4500.



**Note:** The **TCP Tunneling** option is included for backward compatibility with legacy Forcepoint NGFW software versions. Selecting this option has no effect on Forcepoint NGFW version 5.9.0 or later.

- d) (Optional) Review the phase-1 properties of the endpoints and change them, if necessary.

- e) (Optional) To restrict the types of VPN configurations that the endpoints can be used in, select **Selected types only** and select one or more of the following options:
- **IPsec VPN** — The endpoints can be used in IPsec tunnels in policy-based VPNs or the Route-Based VPN.
  - **SSL VPN Tunnel** — The endpoints can be used in SSL VPN tunnels.
  - **SSL VPN Portal** — The endpoints provide access to the SSL VPN Portal.



**Note:** Only endpoints that have an IPv4 address can be used in SSL VPN tunnels or to provide access to the SSL VPN Portal.

- 4) Click **OK** to close the **Properties** dialog box.
- 5) Click **Next**.  
The **Review and Edit Internal VPN Gateway End-Points** page opens.
- 6) Review the endpoint details and change them, if necessary.
- 7) Click **Next**.
- 8) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - If you are creating the Firewall elements using POS codes, upload the multiple Single Firewall initial configuration to the Installation Server.
  - Otherwise, select a Firewall Policy for multiple Single Firewalls.

#### Related concepts


[Defining VPN gateways](#) on page 1170

#### Related tasks

[Select a Firewall Policy for multiple Single Firewalls](#) on page 477

## Upload the multiple Single Firewall initial configuration to the Installation Server

Uploading the initial configuration to the Installation Server makes the configuration available for use in plug-and-play installations.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Make sure that **Upload Initial Configuration** is selected.
- 2) (Optional) Select **Enable SSH Daemon** to allow remote access to the engine command line. SSH access can be helpful in remote troubleshooting.
  - After management contact is established, you can enable and disable remote command-line access to the engine at any time through the right-click menu of the engine. We recommend disabling SSH access

whenever it is not needed and making sure that your Access rules allow SSH access to the engines from the administrators' IP addresses only.

- While the Firewall Template does not allow these connections, the temporary policy activated right after the engine's initial configuration does allow SSH access from the Management Server's IP address. (The temporary policy is in effect until you install the working policy.) Alternatively, you can upload a working policy to be installed on the Firewalls after they have contacted the Management Server.



**CAUTION:** If you enable SSH, set the password for command-line access after the initial configuration either through the Management Client or by logging on to the command line. When the password is not set, anyone with SSH access to the engine can set the password.


- 3) Select the **Local Time Zone** and the **Keyboard Layout** for use on the command line. The time zone setting is only for displaying the time on the local console; the engines always use UTC (GMT) time internally. The clock is automatically synchronized to match the Management Server's time.
- 4) Click **Next**. The **Review and Edit Local Time Zones** page opens.
- 5) Review the local time zones of the Firewalls and change them, if necessary.
- 6) Click **Next**.  
The **Select a Policy to Install on the Firewalls** page opens.

#### Related tasks

Select additional configuration options for multiple Single Firewalls on page 472

## Select a Firewall Policy for multiple Single Firewalls

On the **Select a Policy to Install on the Firewalls** page, you can select a predefined policy to install on the Firewalls after the Firewalls have contacted the Management Server for the first time.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the Create Multiple Single Firewalls wizard, navigate to the **Select a Policy to Install on the Firewalls** page.
- 2) If you do not want to select a policy to be installed on the Firewalls, click **Next** and proceed to the Summary page. Click **Finish** to finish the creation of multiple Single Firewall elements.
- 3) Otherwise, click **Select** and select the Policy from the list.
- 4) Click **Next**.  
The **Summary** page opens.

- 5) Review the details of the Firewalls you are about to create. To change a detail, click **Previous** to navigate back to the correct wizard page, then click **Next** to navigate forward to the **Summary** page.



**Note:** If you go back to the **Define Interfaces for the Multiple Single Firewall Elements** page or an earlier page, you must redefine the interfaces that the Firewalls use for connecting to the Internet.

- 6) Click **Finish**.  
The multiple Single Firewall elements are created.

### Related tasks

[Select additional configuration options for multiple Single Firewalls](#) on page 472

## Create Firewall Cluster elements

Firewall Cluster elements consist of 2–16 physical firewall devices that work together as a single entity.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click **NGFW Engines** and select **New > Firewall > Firewall Cluster**.
- 3) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.
- 4) Select the **Log Server** to which the Firewall Cluster sends its event data.
- 5) (Optional) In **DNS IP Addresses** field, add one or more DNS IP addresses.  
DNS IP addresses are IP addresses of external DNS servers. Firewall Clusters use these DNS servers to resolve Domain names to IP addresses. Firewall Clusters need DNS resolution to contact services that are defined using URLs or domain names, and to resolve fully qualified domain names (FQDNs) used in policies. When DNS relay is configured, these DNS servers are used unless domain-specific DNS servers are specified in a DNS Relay Profile element.



**Note:** If you have defined NetLink-specific DNS IP addresses, adding DNS IP addresses overrides the NetLink-specific DNS IP addresses.

- To enter a single IP address manually, click **Add** and select **IP Address**. Enter the IP address in the dialog box that opens.
  - To define an IP address using a network element, click **Add** and select **Network Element**.
- 6) Select the **Location** for this engine if there is a NAT device between this Firewall Cluster and other SMC components.
  - 7) (Optional) If you want to include the Firewall Clusters in predefined categories, select the appropriate **Categories**.

- 8) (Optional) If you want to add custom commands to the Firewall Cluster's right-click menu, add a **Tools Profile**.

#### Related concepts

[Defining Host elements](#) on page 896

[Configuring interfaces for Firewalls](#) on page 531

#### Related tasks

[Attach Tools Profile elements to elements](#) on page 121

[Create Location elements](#) on page 129

[Select Categories for elements](#) on page 161

[Activate the SNMP agent on engines](#) on page 660

[Define External DNS Server elements](#) on page 772

## Create multiple Firewall Cluster elements using the Create Multiple Firewall Clusters wizard

You can create multiple Firewall Cluster elements at the same time using the **Create Multiple Firewall Clusters** wizard.

Once you have created the Firewall Clusters through the wizard, you can change the properties of each cluster. You can also change some shared properties of several Firewall Clusters at the same time. It is not possible to use plug-and-play configuration with multiple Firewall Clusters.

#### Related concepts

[Defining Host elements](#) on page 896

#### Related tasks

[Attach Tools Profile elements to elements](#) on page 121

[Create Location elements](#) on page 129

[Select Categories for elements](#) on page 161

[Add nodes to clusters](#) on page 499

[Activate the SNMP agent on engines](#) on page 660


[Define External DNS Server elements](#) on page 772


# Start the Create Multiple Firewall Clusters wizard

Start the Create Multiple Firewall Clusters wizard and define general settings for the Firewall Cluster elements.

## Before you begin

You must have an existing Firewall Cluster element on which to base the configuration.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click **NGFW Engines** and select **New Firewall > Multiple Firewall Clusters**. The **Create Multiple Firewall Clusters** wizard opens.
- 3) Enter the **Number** of Firewall Cluster elements (1-1000).
- 4) Select a Firewall Cluster on which you want to base the Firewall Clusters' configuration from the **Base Configuration on** list and click **Next**. The **Define Basic Firewall Information** page opens.
- 5) Enter a common **Name Prefix**. The SMC adds a running number to the name prefix to generate a unique name for each Firewall Cluster.
- 6) Select a **Log Server** to which the Firewall Clusters send their event data.



**Note:** **Name Prefix** and **Log Server** are the only mandatory properties you must define at this stage. Review the other properties carefully to see which ones to define as shared properties for all Firewall Clusters created with the wizard.

- 7) (Optional) In **DNS IP Addresses** field, add one or more DNS IP addresses. DNS IP addresses are IP addresses of external DNS servers. Firewall Clusters use these DNS servers to resolve Domain names to IP addresses. Firewall Clusters need DNS resolution to contact services that are defined using URLs or domain names, and to resolve fully qualified domain names (FQDNs) used in policies. When DNS relay is configured, these DNS servers are used unless domain-specific DNS servers are specified in a DNS Relay Profile element.



**Note:** If you have defined NetLink-specific DNS IP addresses, adding DNS IP addresses overrides the NetLink-specific DNS IP addresses.

- To enter a single IP address manually, click **Add** and select **IP Address**. Enter the IP address in the dialog box that opens.
- To define an IP address using a network element, click **Add** and select **Network Element**.



- 8) Select the **Location** for this Firewall Cluster if there is a NAT device between this Firewall Cluster and other SMC components.



**Note:** Select a **Location** only if all Firewall Clusters you create with the wizard belong to the same Location element.

- 9) Define other settings according to your environment:
  - If you want to include the Firewall Clusters in predefined categories, select the appropriate **Categories**.
  - If you want to add custom commands to the Firewall Clusters' right-click menu, add a **Tools Profile**.
  - Add, change, or remove nodes as needed.
- 10) Click **Next**.  
The **Review and Edit Names and Comments** page opens.
- 11) Review the names of the Firewall Clusters. If necessary, right-click the name or comment and select **Edit Name** or **Edit Comment**.
- 12) Click **Next**.  
The **Define Interfaces for the Multiple Firewall Elements** page opens.

## Define interfaces for multiple Firewall Clusters

You must define at least one physical interface and one IPv4 address for the Firewall Clusters.

The following interface types are available:

- Physical interface for Ethernet connections
- VLAN interface for dividing a single physical network link into several virtual links
- Tunnel interface that defines a tunnel endpoint in Route-Based VPN


The same interface properties are available in the Properties dialog box of every Firewall Cluster element. However, we recommend that you configure all shared interface properties in the wizard. After you exit the wizard, you must configure the properties separately for each Firewall Cluster.

The interface properties you define for the first Firewall Cluster are used to automatically create the corresponding properties for the rest of the Firewall Clusters. These properties include the IP addresses, which are automatically generated in numeric order. Make sure that the IP addresses assigned to the Firewall Clusters are not used by any other components.

To use a physical interface for communication with the Management Server, begin by defining a physical interface with an IP address. This way, the physical interface is assigned interface ID 0. When connecting the cables to the appliance, connect the cable for the control connection to Ethernet port 0. See the *Forcepoint Next Generation Firewall Installation Guide* for detailed information about mapping the interface IDs with specific ports on the appliances.



**Note:** On Firewall Clusters, the routing information is configured simultaneously for all cluster nodes and all nodes always have identical routing tables.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Click **Add** and select the type of interface. Add the required number of network interfaces in the following order:

- Define physical interfaces.
  - Define tunnel interfaces.
- 2) (Optional, physical interfaces only) Add the required number of VLANs.
  - 3) Configure the IP address settings for the first one of the Firewall Clusters.
  - 4) (Optional) Click **Options** to configure Loopback IP addresses.
  - 5) (Recommended) Click **Options** to define which IP addresses are used in particular roles in system communications.
  - 6) (Optional) Configure more routing settings:
    - Add static **ARP entries**.
    - Configure **Multicast Routing**.
  - 7) Click **Next**.  
The **Review and Edit Firewall Interfaces** page opens.
  - 8) Review the interfaces and edit them, if necessary. Click **Next**.
  - 9) Define and review the routing. Click **Next**.
  - 10) Click **Next**.  
The **Define NAT Definitions for the Firewalls** page opens.

#### Related concepts

[Loopback IP addresses for firewalls](#) on page 554

#### Related tasks

[Define routing for multiple Single Firewalls](#) on page 470

[Add Physical Interfaces for firewalls](#) on page 531

[Add VLAN Interfaces for firewalls](#) on page 533

[Add tunnel interfaces for firewalls](#) on page 540

[Select system communication roles for firewall interfaces](#) on page 553

[Activate the internal DHCP server on a firewall interface](#) on page 556

[Configure advanced properties for firewall interfaces](#) on page 542

[Add manual ARP entries to NGFW Engines](#) on page 614

## Add NAT definitions for multiple Firewall Clusters

On the **Define NAT Definitions for the Firewalls** page, you can define how the Firewall Clusters translate network addresses.

NAT rules are automatically generated and organized in the Firewall Policy based on the NAT definitions created in the Firewall properties.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) If you do not want to configure NAT definitions, click **Next**.
- 2) (Optional) To use the default NAT address as the Public IP Address, select **Use Default NAT Address for Traffic from Internal Networks**. Select this option when there is not a more specific NAT definition matching the traffic.
- 3) (Optional) Click **Show Details** to view the Default NAT Address properties.
- 4) Add or edit the NAT definitions.
- 5) Click **Next**.

## Next steps

You are now ready to select additional configuration options for multiple Firewall Clusters.

### Related tasks

[Add NAT definitions for element-based NAT](#) on page 636

[Edit or remove NAT definitions for element-based NAT](#) on page 637

# Select additional configuration options for multiple Firewall Clusters

You can define more properties for the Firewall Clusters on the **Select Additional Configuration Options** page. We recommend that you define all shared properties of the Firewall Clusters in the wizard.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) If you do not want to configure additional options, click **Next**. Otherwise, continue to the next step.
- 2) To define tester settings, engine permissions, add-ons (settings for TLS inspection, access control by user, anti-malware, or anti-spam), or advanced settings for the Firewalls, select **Define Additional Firewall Properties**.
  - a) (Optional) Define tester settings.
  - b) (Optional) Define permissions.
  - c) (Optional) Define advanced settings.
- 3) On the **Summary** page, review the details of the Firewall Clusters you are about to create.



**Tip:** To edit a detail, click **Previous** to navigate back to the correct wizard page, then click **Next** to navigate forward to the **Summary** page.

- 4) Click **Finish** to add multiple Firewall Cluster elements to your system.


#### Related tasks

- [Define Tester settings for multiple Single Firewalls](#) on page 472
- [Define permissions for multiple Single Firewalls](#) on page 473
- [Define advanced settings for multiple Single Firewalls](#) on page 474

## Create Single IPS elements

Single IPS elements represent IPS engines that consist of one physical IPS device.

Single IPS elements can be later converted to IPS clusters.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click **NGFW Engines** and select **New > IPS > Single IPS**.
- 3) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.
- 4) Select the **Log Server** to which the IPS engine sends its event data.
- 5) (Optional) In **DNS IP Addresses** field, add one or more DNS IP addresses.  
DNS IP addresses are IP addresses of external DNS servers. IPS engines use these DNS servers to resolve Domain names to IP addresses. IPS engines need DNS resolution to contact services that are defined using URLs or domain names, and to resolve fully qualified domain names (FQDNs) used in policies.
  - To enter a single IP address manually, click **Add** and select **IP Address**. Enter the IP address in the dialog box that opens.
  - To define an IP address using a network element, click **Add** and select **Network Element**.
- 6) Select the **Location** for this engine if there is a NAT device between this IPS engine and other SMC components.
- 7) (Optional) If you want to include the IPS engine in predefined categories, select the appropriate **Categories**.
- 8) (Optional) If you want to add custom commands to the IPS engine's right-click menu, add a **Tools Profile**.

### Next steps

You are now ready to configure interfaces for the Single IPS.

#### Related concepts

- [Defining Host elements](#) on page 896
- [Configuring interfaces for IPS engines](#) on page 558

**Related tasks**

[Attach Tools Profile elements to elements](#) on page 121

[Create Location elements](#) on page 129

[Select Categories for elements](#) on page 161


[Convert a Single IPS element to an IPS Cluster element](#) on page 495


[Activate the SNMP agent on engines](#) on page 660

[Define External DNS Server elements](#) on page 772

## Create IPS Cluster elements

IPS Cluster elements combine 2–16 physical IPS devices into a single entity.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click **NGFW Engines** and select **New > IPS > IPS Cluster**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 3) Give the element a unique **Name**.
- 4) Select the **Log Server** to which the IPS Cluster sends its event data.
- 5) (Optional) In **DNS IP Addresses** field, add one or more DNS IP addresses.  
DNS IP addresses are IP addresses of external DNS servers. IPS Clusters use these DNS servers to resolve Domain names to IP addresses. IPS engines need DNS resolution to contact services that are defined using URLs or domain names, and to resolve fully qualified domain names (FQDNs) used in policies.
  - To enter a single IP address manually, click **Add** and select **IP Address**. Enter the IP address in the dialog box that opens.
  - To define an IP address using a network element, click **Add** and select **Network Element**.
- 6) Select the **Location** for this engine if there is a NAT device between this IPS Cluster and other SMC components.
- 7) (Optional) If you want to include the IPS Clusters in predefined categories, select the appropriate **Categories**.
- 8) (Optional) If you want to add custom commands to the IPS Cluster's right-click menu, add a **Tools Profile**.

### Next steps

You are now ready to configure interfaces for the IPS Cluster.

**Related concepts**

[Defining Host elements](#) on page 896

[Configuring interfaces for IPS engines](#) on page 558

**Related tasks**

[Attach Tools Profile elements to elements](#) on page 121

[Create Location elements](#) on page 129

[Select Categories for elements](#) on page 161


[Activate the SNMP agent on engines](#) on page 660


[Define External DNS Server elements](#) on page 772

## Create Single Layer 2 Firewall elements

Single Layer 2 Firewall elements represent Layer 2 Firewalls that consist of one physical device.

Single Layer 2 Firewall elements can be later converted to Layer 2 Firewall Clusters.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click **NGFW Engines** and select **New > Layer 2 Firewall > Single Layer 2 Firewall**.
- 3) Give the element a unique **Name**.
- 4) Select the **Log Server** to which the Layer 2 Firewall engine sends its event data.
- 5) (Optional) In **DNS IP Addresses** field, add one or more DNS IP addresses.  
DNS IP addresses are IP addresses of external DNS servers. Layer 2 Firewalls use these DNS servers to resolve Domain names to IP addresses. Layer 2 Firewalls need DNS resolution to contact services that are defined using URLs or domain names, and to resolve fully qualified domain names (FQDNs) used in policies.
  - To enter a single IP address manually, click **Add** and select **IP Address**. Enter the IP address in the dialog box that opens.
  - To define an IP address using a network element, click **Add** and select **Network Element**.
- 6) (Optional) Define one or more **DNS IP Addresses**. The Layer 2 Firewall engine uses the IP addresses of DNS servers to resolve domain names and URL filtering categorization services (defined as URLs). There are two ways to define IP addresses.
  - To enter a single IP address manually, click **Add** and select **IP Address**. Enter the IP address in the dialog box that opens.
  - To define an IP address using a network element, click **Add** and select **Network Element**.
- 7) Select the **Location** for this engine if there is a NAT device between this Layer 2 Firewall engine and other SMC components.

- 8) (Optional) If you want to include the Layer 2 Firewall engine in predefined categories, select the appropriate **Categories**.
- 9) (Optional) If you want to add custom commands to the Layer 2 Firewall engine's right-click menu, add a **Tools Profile**.

## Next steps

You are now ready to configure interfaces for the Single Layer 2 Firewall.

### Related concepts

[Defining Host elements](#) on page 896

[Configuring interfaces for Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 573

### Related tasks

[Attach Tools Profile elements to elements](#) on page 121

[Create Location elements](#) on page 129


[Select Categories for elements](#) on page 161


[Activate the SNMP agent on engines](#) on page 660

[Define External DNS Server elements](#) on page 772

# Create Layer 2 Firewall Cluster elements

Layer 2 Firewall Cluster elements combine 2–16 physical Layer 2 Firewall devices into a single entity.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click **NGFW Engines** and select **New > Layer 2 Firewall > Layer 2 Firewall Cluster**. The Engine Editor opens.
- 3) Give the element a unique **Name**.
- 4) Select the **Log Server** to which the Layer 2 Firewall Cluster sends its event data.
- 5) (Optional) In **DNS IP Addresses** field, add one or more DNS IP addresses.  
DNS IP addresses are IP addresses of external DNS servers. Layer 2 Firewall Clusters use these DNS servers to resolve Domain names to IP addresses. Layer 2 Firewall Clusters need DNS resolution to contact services that are defined using URLs or domain names, and to resolve fully qualified domain names (FQDNs) used in policies.
  - To enter a single IP address manually, click **Add** and select **IP Address**. Enter the IP address in the dialog box that opens.
  - To define an IP address using a network element, click **Add** and select **Network Element**.

- 6) Select the **Location** for this engine if there is a NAT device between this Layer 2 Firewall Cluster and other SMC components.
- 7) (Optional) If you want to include the Layer 2 Firewall Clusters in predefined categories, select the appropriate **Categories**.
- 8) (Optional) If you want to add custom commands to the Layer 2 Firewall Cluster's right-click menu, add a **Tools Profile**.

## Next steps

You are now ready to configure interfaces for the Layer 2 Firewall Cluster.

### Related concepts

[Defining Host elements](#) on page 896

[Configuring interfaces for Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 573

### Related tasks

[Attach Tools Profile elements to elements](#) on page 121

[Create Location elements](#) on page 129

[Select Categories for elements](#) on page 161

[Activate the SNMP agent on engines](#) on page 660

[Define External DNS Server elements](#) on page 772

# Duplicate existing engine elements

If you have similar configurations at several sites, you can duplicate an existing engine element to reduce the need for manual configuration.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the existing engine element and select **New > Duplicate**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) Give the engine element a unique **Name**.
- 3) Adjust the rest of the properties as needed.  
Change at least the IP address used for communication with the Management Server. (Or configure the duplicated element to use a different control IP address.) The control IP address must be unique for each engine.
- 4) Click **OK**.  
The new engine element is added to the element tree.



**Related concepts**

[Network interfaces for engines](#) on page 529

**Related tasks**

[Edit individual engine elements](#) on page 489

## Editing existing engine elements

You can change the properties of an individual engine element or the common properties shared by several engine elements.

Existing engine elements are shown in the **Home** view under engine-specific branches. Firewall, IPS, and Layer 2 Firewall elements are shown in the **Configuration** view under the **NGFW Engines** branch. Changing the common properties of several engine elements restricts you to actions and values that are applicable to all engine elements at the same time. You can also convert a Single Firewall, a Single IPS engine, or a Single Layer 2 Firewall into a cluster.

**Related concepts**

[Changing control IP addresses for engines](#) on page 500

[Configuration of Master NGFW Engines and Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 505

**Related tasks**

[Edit several engines at once](#) on page 490


[Convert a Single IPS element to an IPS Cluster element](#) on page 495


[Convert a Single Layer 2 Firewall element to a Layer 2 Firewall Cluster element](#) on page 497

[Add nodes to clusters](#) on page 499

## Edit individual engine elements

You can change the properties specific to one individual engine element, such as IP address definitions, by editing the engine element.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click an engine, then select **Edit <element type>**.
- 3) Use the navigation pane on the left to find the settings that you want to edit.
- 4) Edit the configuration information as required.

5) Select from the following:

- To validate the changes, select **Tools > Validate**.
- To validate and save the changes, click **Save**.
- To validate and save the changes and refresh the security policy on the engine, click **Save and Refresh**.



**Note:** Validation issues are displayed in the **Issues** pane. Double-click an issue to return to the section in which the issue can be fixed.


## Edit several engines at once

---

You can select several engine elements and change the properties common to all engine.

The following limitations apply when you change the properties of several engines at once:

- Properties specific to one individual engine element, such as IP address definitions, are never available in the common properties.
- If you select both single and clustered engine elements, the cluster-specific options are not available.
- If you select elements of different types, you can only set the Log Server, Location, SNMP Agent, and Comment options and some system parameters.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) **Shift-select** or **Ctrl-select** the engine elements you want to change.
- 2) Right-click one of the selected items and select **Common Properties**.
- 3) Select the options you want to set for all selected engines.  
The options you see depend on how similar in type the selected engines are
- 4) Click **OK**.  
All selected engines now use the same settings for the options that you changed.

## Convert Single Firewall elements to Firewall Cluster elements

---

You can use a conversion tool to change an existing Single Firewall engine into a Firewall Cluster.

The conversion tool maintains the relationship of the engine element with other configurations in the system, allows you to maintain some existing interface configurations, and minimizes service interruptions. VPNs are an example of other configurations in the system. VLANs defined on interfaces are an example of existing interface configurations. The conversion requires you to select one Single Firewall element to convert to a cluster.

Make sure that enough IP addresses are available, especially if the Single Firewall is managed remotely. Each clustered engine node needs at least one dedicated IP address for its management communications. Also, the traffic that the nodes inspect requires at least one dedicated IP address per cluster.

The following limitations apply when you convert Single Firewall elements to Firewall Cluster elements:

- It is not possible to combine two Single Firewall elements into a Firewall Cluster.
- A Single Firewall engine can only be converted to a two-node Firewall Cluster. If you want to add more nodes to the cluster, you must add the nodes separately after the conversion.
- Due to differences in the supported configurations, there are some configurations that prevent you from converting from a Single Firewall to a Firewall Cluster. These configurations are listed in the following table.

**Table 51: Unsupported configurations on Firewall Clusters**

Configuration	Notes
ADSL interfaces	Firewall clusters do not support integrated ADSL modems. To convert to a cluster, you must switch to an external ADSL modem that the firewall engines access through an Ethernet connection.
Wireless interfaces	Firewall clusters do not support wireless interfaces.
Internal DHCP Server on older engine versions	Clustered firewalls support an internal DHCP server starting from software version 5.2. Upgrade the engine as necessary before conversion.
Dynamic IP addresses	Firewall clusters can only have static IP addresses. Clusters cannot use a dynamically assigned (DHCP or PPPoE) IP address.
Modem interfaces	Firewall clusters do not support integrated 3G modems. You must switch to a configuration that uses an external 3G modem through an Ethernet connection to convert to a cluster.
Integrated switch	Firewall clusters do not support integrated switches. To convert to a cluster, you must change to a configuration that uses an external switch that the firewall engines access through an Ethernet connection.



**CAUTION:** If you change the control IP address of the existing node in this process, the connection between the engine and the SMC is lost.

## Prepare to convert a Single Firewall element to a Firewall Cluster element

You must change the configuration of the Single Firewall element before you can convert it to a Firewall Cluster element.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) If you are not using identical hardware, make sure that the performance levels match your needs. Equipment with different performance levels can be used for balancing the load between the clustered engines. For high availability when one engine is offline, the other engine must be able to handle all traffic alone.

- 2) Make sure that both firewall engines have their own license.  
Firewall Clusters are licensed in the same way as two Single Firewall engines. All current firewall engine licenses allow clustering the nodes, so no license changes are required to activate clustering.
- 3) Make sure that the engines are running software versions that are compatible with the Security Management Center, and preferably that both engines are running the same version.  
Although the cluster can be installed with engines running different software versions (unless otherwise stated in the [Release Notes](#)), long-term use with mismatched versions is not supported.
- 4) If the firewall engine you are adding to the cluster already has a working configuration from previous use, return it to the initial configuration state. You can set up the initial configuration state in the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard (sg-reconfigure) on the command line.  
Do not establish a connection with the Management Server before the Firewall Cluster element is ready.



**CAUTION:** If the Firewall engine has a working configuration, it goes online and processes traffic when you power it on to configure it for the Firewall Cluster.

- 5) Connect the network cables to the new firewall engine and power it on.

#### Related concepts

[Considerations for working on the engine command line](#) on page 337

[Getting Started with licenses](#) on page 1309

#### Related tasks

[Upgrade engines remotely](#) on page 1328

## Convert a Single Firewall element to a Firewall Cluster element

Converting a Single Firewall to a Firewall Cluster requires you to convert the IP addresses used for these roles to the correct types.

Firewall Clusters have more IP addressing requirements than Single Firewalls. The requirements are due to the two types of IP addresses that clusters must have to function:


- An NDI (Node Dedicated IP Address) is used for communications between the engine itself and some other host in the network. Other hosts can be other nodes in the cluster, the Management Server, or hosts you ping from the engine's command line.
- A CVI (Cluster Virtual IP Address) is used for handling traffic that the cluster examines. If other network devices select the firewall's IP address, converting the IP address to a CVI allows those external configurations to remain the same. (Examples of other network devices are a default gateway or VPN endpoint.)

You must change the IP address that is used for a particular role if the new interface type is not compatible with that role.

The IP address requirements and related important considerations are listed in the following table.

**Table 52: Interface type requirements by role on Firewall Clusters**

Role	Type Required	Notes
Control interface (Management connections)	NDI	Each node requires its own NDI address. Often, the same IP address on a Single Firewall is used for both the engine's own communications and the traffic that the engine processes. In these cases, you can convert the IP address that processes the traffic to a CVI. With the conversion, you can avoid reconfiguring external equipment and you can add new NDI addresses for the nodes. Make sure that there are enough IP addresses available, especially if the firewall is managed remotely.
DHCP relay	CVI	Configured in the physical interface properties.
DHCP relay for VPN clients	NDI	Configured in the VPN settings in the Engine Editor.
Heartbeat interface	NDI	Heartbeat and state synchronization communications between clustered engines. We recommend using a dedicated interface for the heartbeat, as reliable transmissions are critical to the operation of the cluster. If the heartbeat traffic passes through a switch, make sure that the switch does not throttle or block multicast traffic between the clustered engines.
Routing	CVI	Traffic that is sent to an NDI address is not routed to any other destinations. Surrounding network devices that use the firewall as a default gateway must use a CVI address.  If the internal DHCP server is used and configured to assign the firewall as the default gateway for clients, the default gateway IP address must be a CVI. (Configure the CVI in the physical interface properties.)
VPN endpoints	CVI	Configured in the VPN settings in the Engine Editor.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) If you plan to convert the current IP address for management connections to a CVI:
  - a) Add the new NDI IP address as a Backup Control IP address in the Single Firewall element.
  - b) Adjust the Access and NAT rules of any firewalls on the communications path so that both current and new control IP addresses can be used. Then refresh the policies of these firewalls.
  - c) Refresh the policy of the Single Firewall you plan to convert.
  - d) Deselect the Backup Control IP address option and configure the new NDI control IP address as the Primary Control IP address.



**Note:** We recommend that you do not use the IP address of an Aggregated Link interface as the primary or secondary control IP address of the engine.

- 2) Add any new IP addresses that are required for the selected interface roles and configure the settings to use those IP addresses.

- 3) If configured, remove dynamic IP addresses, Modem Interfaces, ADSL Interfaces, integrated Switches, and Port Group Interfaces. These configurations are not supported on clusters.
- 4) Right-click the Single Firewall element and select **Configuration > Upgrade to Cluster**.  
An interface mapping dialog box opens.
- 5) Click the **Upgrade to** cell for each interface and select the IP address types for the interfaces.
  - You can select both a CVI and an NDI to be created for the same physical interface. This working configuration is recommended for all interfaces. However, it might not be appropriate at this stage, because you cannot select which role the current IP address takes. More IP addresses are generated automatically to create the CVIs and NDIs.
  - Each selection is validated and you might not be able to select a type if it is incompatible with the selected role of the interface. See the preceding table for a summary of requirements.
- 6) Click **OK**.  
The **Cluster Properties** dialog box for the new Firewall Cluster element opens.
- 7) Switch to the Interfaces tab.
- 8) In addition to the Physical interfaces and IP addresses used on the Single Firewall, add the interfaces and addresses needed for the cluster. Check that the IP addresses on all interfaces are unique and unassigned, and change them if necessary.
- 9) Select **Packet Dispatch** as the CVI mode and enter the related unicast MAC address in the properties of all Physical Interfaces that have CVI definitions.
- 10) Click **Options** and define which IP addresses are used in particular roles in system communications as explained in Setting Interface Options for Firewalls (page 489).
- 11) If the internal DHCP server is used and configured to assign the firewall as the default gateway for clients, verify that the default gateway IP address is a CVI. (See Physical Interface properties on the **DHCP** tab.)
- 12) Click **OK**.  
You can still click **Cancel** to return to the previous configuration and undo the conversion.  
The Single Firewall element is converted to a Firewall Cluster.

**Related concepts**


[Network interfaces for engines](#) on page 529

**Related tasks**

[Select system communication roles for firewall interfaces](#) on page 553

# Activate the engine configuration after converting a Single Firewall element to a Firewall Cluster element

You must activate the new configuration to finish converting a Single Firewall element to a Firewall Cluster element.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) If any external device uses the firewall as a default gateway or VPN endpoint and the previously used IP address is converted to an NDI, reconfigure the external equipment to reference a CVI address.
- 2) Run the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard on the command line (sg-reconfigure) or in a web browser.
- 3) Make sure the interface IDs are mapped correctly to network ports according to the engine's cabling.
- 4) Make initial contact between the engine node and the Management Server.  
Install and configure any new engine nodes as part of the cluster as in a new installation.
- 5) Install the policy on the cluster.  
To refresh the policy of the existing node before the new nodes are initialized, set the inactive nodes in the cluster element's properties to disabled. (See the **Cluster** tab.) Otherwise, the policy installation fails due to a lack of connectivity to all nodes.

If there are problems with the clustered configuration, you can return to single-node operation. To do so, command one node offline through the right-click menu or through the command line.

## Related concepts

[Connect engines to the SMC](#) on page 631

# Convert a Single IPS element to an IPS Cluster element

You can convert an existing Single IPS element to an IPS Cluster element.


Converting a Single IPS element to an IPS Cluster element maintains the relationship of the engine element with other configurations in the system. The conversion requires you to select one Single IPS element to convert to an IPS Cluster.

The following limitations apply when you convert a Single IPS to an IPS Cluster:

- It is not possible to combine two Single IPS elements into an IPS Cluster element.
- A Single IPS engine can only be converted to a two-node IPS Cluster. If you want to add more nodes to the cluster, you must add the nodes separately after the conversion.




**CAUTION:** If you change the control IP address of the existing node in this process, the connection between the engine and the SMC is lost.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Make sure that both engines are licensed.  
The licensing of clustered engine nodes is done in the same way as the licensing of two Single IPS engines. All current IPS engine licenses allow clustering the nodes, so no license changes are required to activate the feature.
- 2) Make sure that the engines are running software versions that are compatible with the Security Management Center, and preferably that both engines are running the same version.  
Although the cluster can be installed with the engines running different software versions (unless otherwise stated in the [Release Notes](#)), long-term use with mismatched versions is not supported.
- 3) If the new IPS engine you want to add to the IPS Cluster already has a working configuration from previous use, return it to the initial configuration state.  
You can do so in the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard (sg-reconfigure) on the command line.



**Note:** Do not establish a connection with the Management Server before the IPS Cluster element is ready.

- 4) Connect the network cables to the new node and power it on.
- 5) Right-click the Single IPS element that you want to upgrade to an IPS Cluster and select **Configuration > Upgrade to Cluster**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 6) Browse to **Interfaces > Interface Options** in the navigation pane on the left.
- 7) Define which IP addresses are used in particular roles in system communications.
- 8) Click  **Save**.



**Note:** You can still close the Engine Editor without saving the changes to return to the previous configuration and undo the conversion.

The Single IPS engine is converted to an IPS Cluster element.

- 9) Make initial contact between each node and the Management Server.  
Install and configure any new engine nodes as part of the cluster as in a new installation.
- 10) Install the policy on the IPS Cluster.  
To refresh the policy of the existing node before the new nodes are initialized, disable the inactive nodes on the **Clustering** pane in the Engine Editor. Otherwise, the policy installation fails due to a lack of connectivity to all nodes.



**Related concepts**

[Considerations for working on the engine command line](#) on page 337

[Changing control IP addresses for engines](#) on page 500

[Connect engines to the SMC](#) on page 631

[Getting Started with licenses](#) on page 1309

[Getting started with upgrading NGFW Engines](#) on page 1325

**Related tasks**

[Add nodes to clusters](#) on page 499

[Select system communication roles for IPS interfaces](#) on page 571

## Convert a Single Layer 2 Firewall element to a Layer 2 Firewall Cluster element

You can use a conversion tool to convert an existing Single Layer 2 Firewall to a Layer 2 Firewall Cluster.

Using the conversion tool maintains the relationship of the Single Layer 2 Firewall element and other configurations in the system. The conversion requires you to select one Single Layer 2 Firewall element to convert to a Layer 2 Firewall Cluster.

The following limitations apply when you convert a Single Layer 2 Firewall to a Layer 2 Firewall Cluster:

- It is not possible to combine two Single Layer 2 Firewall elements into a Layer 2 Firewall Cluster element.
- A Single Layer 2 Firewall can only be converted to a two-node Layer 2 Firewall Cluster. To add more nodes to the cluster, add the nodes separately after the conversion.



**CAUTION:** If you change the control IP address of the existing node in this process, the connection between the engine and the SMC is lost.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) **Make sure that both engines are licensed.**  
The licensing of clustered engine nodes is done in the same way as the licensing of two Single Layer 2 Firewall engines. All current Layer 2 Firewall engine licenses allow clustering the nodes, so no license changes are required to activate the feature.
- 2) **Make sure that the engines are running software versions that are compatible with the SMC, and preferably that both engines are running the same version.**  
Although the cluster can be installed with the engines running different software versions (unless otherwise stated in the [Release Notes](#)), long-term use with mismatched versions is not supported.

- 3) If the new Layer 2 Firewall engine has a working configuration from previous use, return it to the initial configuration state.

You can do so in the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard (sg-reconfigure) on the command line.



**Note:** Do not establish a connection with the Management Server before the Layer 2 Firewall Cluster element is ready.

- 4) Connect the network cables to the new node and power it on.
- 5) Right-click the Single Layer 2 Firewall element that you want to upgrade to a Layer 2 Firewall Cluster and select **Configuration > Upgrade to Cluster**.

The Engine Editor opens.

- 6) Browse to **Interfaces > Interface Options** in the navigation pane on the left.

- 7) Define which IP addresses are used in particular roles in system communications.

- 8) Click  **Save**.



**Note:** You can still close the Engine Editor without saving the changes to return to the previous configuration and undo the conversion.

The Single Layer 2 Firewall engine is converted to a Layer 2 Firewall Cluster element.

- 9) Make initial contact between each node and the Management Server.  
Install and configure any new engine nodes as part of the cluster as in a new installation.
- 10) Install the policy on the Layer 2 Firewall Cluster.  
To refresh the policy of the existing node before the new nodes are initialized, disable the inactive nodes on the **Clustering** pane in the Engine Editor. Otherwise, the policy installation fails due to a lack of connectivity to all nodes.

#### Related concepts

[Considerations for working on the engine command line](#) on page 337

[Changing control IP addresses for engines](#) on page 500

[Connect engines to the SMC](#) on page 631

[Getting Started with licenses](#) on page 1309

[Getting started with upgrading NGFW Engines](#) on page 1325

#### Related tasks

[Select system communication roles for Layer 2 Firewall interfaces](#) on page 585


# Add nodes to clusters


By default, the Engine Editor displays two nodes in the **Clustering** pane. You can add new nodes to the cluster.

## Before you begin

Before adding a node to the configuration, install the physical engine device and connect the cables. At a minimum, connect the cables for the interfaces that enable communication with the Management Server and between the clustered engines.

If the device has a working configuration from previous use, use the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard (sg-reconfigure) on the command line to return the device to the initial configuration state. Set up the initial configuration state before connecting the device to the network. Do not make initial contact with the Management Server.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the cluster and select **Edit <element type>**.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **General > Clustering**.
- 3) Click **Add Node**.
- 4) Give the node a unique **Name**.
- 5) In the **Nodes** table, review and update the information in the **IP Address**, **Contact IP Address**, and **Comment** columns for each NDI. (Double-click the value you want to change.)  
Firewall CVI details are identical between the nodes, so adding a node to a Firewall Cluster does not require changing the CVI configuration in any way.
- 6) Click **OK**.
- 7) Click  **Save**.
- 8) Save the initial configuration for the new engine node to create a one-time password.
- 9) Make initial contact between the new engine and the Management Server.
- 10) Refresh the policy of the cluster to transfer the changes to the engines.  
To refresh the policy of the existing node before the new nodes are initialized, disable the inactive nodes on the **Clustering** pane in the Engine Editor. Otherwise, the policy installation fails due to a lack of connectivity to all nodes.

### Related concepts

[Connect engines to the SMC](#) on page 631

# Changing control IP addresses for engines

You can change an engine's control IP address without losing management connectivity.

When you change IP addressing, other connections between the different components might be temporarily lost. You must make sure that the connections return to normal after the IP address changes.



**Note:** We recommend that you do not use the IP address of an Aggregated Link interface as the primary or secondary control IP address of the engine.

## Related tasks

[Change engine control IP addresses within the same network](#) on page 500

[Change engine control IP addresses to a different network](#) on page 501

## Change engine control IP addresses within the same network

You can change the control IP address of an engine to a new address that belongs to the same network as the old address.

The new control IP addresses of IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls must always belong to the same network as the existing control IP addresses. If management connectivity is no longer needed, change the control IP address in the SMC and reinitialize the engine through the command line using a new one-time password.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) If you have an IP-address-bound license for the engine, request a new Management Server POL code bound license at <https://stonesoftlicenses.forcepoint.com>.  
This change is required, because IP-address-bound licenses are no longer supported.
- 2) Install and bind the new license to the engine.
- 3) In the Engine Editor, create an interface for the new IP address and set the address as the backup control IP address.
- 4) Install the policy on the engine.  
From this point on, you can start using the new address in the network.
- 5) In the Engine Editor, set the old and new control IP addresses as the backup and primary control IP addresses, respectively.



**Note:** If your engine cannot use the old and new control IP addresses simultaneously, remove the old control IP address from the **Interfaces** pane in the Engine Editor. Also remove the corresponding network from the **Routing** pane in the Engine Editor.

- 6) Click **Save and Refresh**.
- 7) Remove the old control IP address from the **Interfaces** pane and the **Routing** pane in the Engine Editor.

- 8) Click  **Save and Refresh** again.



**Note:** If the connection with the Management Server is lost while you try to change IP addressing, run the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard (sg-reconfigure) on the engine command line. This action returns the engine to the initial configuration state and re-establishes initial contact between the engine and the Management Server.

### Related concepts

[Network interfaces for engines](#) on page 529

[Management connections for engines and how they work](#) on page 629

[Connect engines to the SMC](#) on page 631

[Getting started with routing](#) on page 693


[Getting Started with licenses](#) on page 1309

## Change engine control IP addresses to a different network

You can change the control IP address of a Firewall to a new IP address in a different network than the old one.

Because these steps require the configuration of Outbound Multi-Link, you can only change the control IP address of Firewalls to a different network. For all other engine roles, you must change the IP address within the same network.

If management connectivity is no longer needed, change the control IP address in the SMC and reinitialize the engine through the command line using a new one-time password.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) If you have an IP-address-bound license for the engine, request a new Management Server POL code bound license at <https://stonesoftlicenses.forcepoint.com>.  
This change is required, because IP-address-bound licenses are no longer supported.
- 2) Install and bind the new license to the engine.
- 3) Edit the Single Firewall or Firewall Cluster element in the Engine Editor and add an interface.
  - Define the new primary control address as the backup control IP address.
  - If your firewall is a cluster and you do not want to lose any connections, also define a new CVI for the cluster.
- 4) Configure Outbound Multi-Link.  
Create two NetLinks: one for the old control IP address and one for the new control IP address.
- 5) Install the policy on the engine.  
From this point on, you can start using the new address in the network.

- 6) To set the new and old control IP addresses as the primary and backup IP addresses, respectively, edit the Single Firewall or Firewall Cluster element in the Engine Editor.



**Note:** If your engine cannot use the old and new control IP addresses simultaneously, remove the interface with the old control IP address from the **Interfaces** pane in the Engine Editor. Also remove the elements and rules you created for the Multi-Link configuration.

- 7) Click **Save and Refresh**.
- 8) Remove the interface with the old control IP address from the **Interfaces** pane in the Engine Editor.
- 9) Remove the elements and rules you created for the Multi-Link configuration.
- 10) Click **Save and Refresh** again.



**Note:** If the connection with the Management Server is lost while you try to change IP addressing, run the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard (sg-reconfigure) on the engine command line. This command returns the engine to the initial configuration state and re-establishes initial contact between the engine and the Management Server.

### Related concepts

[Editing existing engine elements](#) on page 489

[Network interfaces for engines](#) on page 529

[Management connections for engines and how they work](#) on page 629

[Connect engines to the SMC](#) on page 631

[Getting started with outbound traffic management](#) on page 731

[Getting Started with licenses](#) on page 1309

# Configure global contact policy settings for node-initiated contact to the Management Server

Communication between the Management Server and a Single Firewall, Single IPS, or Single Layer 2 Firewall can be reversed. In this case, the engine opens a connection to the Management Server and keeps it open to wait for any commands.

## Before you begin

A Single Firewall, Single IPS, or Single Layer 2 Firewall with a dynamic Control IP Address has been configured.

Reversing communication might be necessary in the following cases:

- The engine does not have a static IP address that the Management Server can contact. (Instead of a static IP address, the engine has a dynamic IP address on the interface or intermediate dynamic NAT.)

- The Management Server's connections are blocked because of a traffic filtering device between the components.

The settings for communication between the Management Server and the engines are set in the SGConfiguration.txt file stored on the Management Server. You can either use the default values for each setting or change the settings by adding parameters and values to the SGConfiguration.txt file.

## Steps

- 1) On the Management Server computer, browse to the <installation directory>/data directory.



**Note:** If you installed the Management Server in the C:\Program Files\Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center directory in Windows, some program data might be stored in the C:\ProgramData\Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center\data directory.

- 2) Edit the SGConfiguration.txt file and add the following parameters as needed.

**Table 53: SGConfiguration parameters**

Parameter name	Description
DCP_INITIAL_DELAY	Time (in seconds) to wait after initialization before the first connection attempt to the Management Server. The default value is 5 seconds.
DCP_CONNECTION_INTERVAL	Time (in seconds) to wait before connecting again to the Management Server after a successful connection. The default value is 25 seconds.
DCP_RETRY_INTERVAL	Time (in seconds) to wait before connecting again to the Management Server after a failed connection attempt. The default value is 25 seconds.
DCP_IDLE_TIMEOUT	Time (in seconds) before an idle connection is closed. The default value is 1800 seconds (30 minutes).

- 3) Save and close the file.
- 4) Refresh the policies of the engines to transfer the changes.

### Related tasks

[Select system communication roles for firewall interfaces](#) on page 553

[Select system communication roles for IPS interfaces](#) on page 571

[Select system communication roles for Layer 2 Firewall interfaces](#) on page 585

# Synchronizing engine times

Engine times are automatically synchronized to match the time of the Management Server. You can optionally use an NTP server to synchronize engine times.

When using an NTP server to synchronize engine times, set the computer on which the Management Server is installed to synchronize its time with the NTP server. If the Log Server runs on a different computer, set it to use the same NTP server.

If the Management Server, Log Server, and the engines do not have the same time, there might be problems with logging and monitoring. Also make sure that the computer you are using for Management Client access has the

time and time zone set correctly. Correct settings prevent time synchronization problems when you view statistics or logs, generate reports, or schedule automatic maintenance tasks.

**Related tasks**

[Enable NTP on the SMC Appliance](#) on page 136



# Creating and modifying Master NGFW Engine and Virtual NGFW Engine elements

## Contents

- [Configuration of Master NGFW Engines and Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 505
- [Create Master NGFW Engine elements](#) on page 508
- [Create Virtual Resource elements](#) on page 509
- [Create Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 510
- [Modify Master NGFW Engines and Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 514
- [Convert Firewalls to Master NGFW Engines and Virtual Firewall elements](#) on page 516
- [Example: deploying Virtual Firewalls for MSSP customers](#) on page 525

Virtual NGFW Engines are logically separate engines that run as virtual instances on a physical engine device. A Master NGFW Engine is a physical engine device that provides resources for Virtual NGFW Engines.

## Configuration of Master NGFW Engines and Virtual NGFW Engines

Master NGFW Engines are physical devices that provide resources for multiple Virtual NGFW Engines.

Using Virtual NGFW Engines allows the same physical engine device to support multiple policies or routing tables, or policies that involve overlapping IP addresses. This is especially useful in a Managed Security Service Provider (MSSP) environment, or in a network environment that requires strict isolation between networks.

- *Virtual Firewall* is a Virtual NGFW Engine in the Firewall role.
- *Virtual IPS engine* is a Virtual NGFW Engine in the IPS role.
- *Virtual Layer 2 Firewall* is a Virtual NGFW Engine in the Layer 2 Firewall role.

Any NGFW Engine that has a license that allows the creation of Virtual Resources can be used as a Master NGFW Engine.

One physical Master NGFW Engine can host multiple Virtual NGFW Engines. A *Virtual Resource* element defines the set of resources on the Master NGFW Engine that are allocated to a Virtual NGFW Engine. Virtual Resource elements associate Virtual NGFW Engines with Physical Interfaces or VLAN Interfaces on the Master NGFW Engine.

Before you define a new Master NGFW Engine element, make sure that you have an NGFW Engine license for each Master NGFW Engine node. Virtual NGFW Engines do not require individual licenses. Instead, the NGFW Engine license for the Master NGFW Engine defines how many Virtual Resources can be created. The number

of Virtual Resources limits the number of Virtual NGFW Engines: one Virtual NGFW Engine at a time can be associated with each Virtual Resource.

The following limitations apply to Master NGFW Engines and Virtual NGFW Engines:

- To use more than one Virtual NGFW Engine role, you must create a separate Master NGFW Engine for each Virtual NGFW Engine role. Each Master NGFW Engine must be on a separate physical Master NGFW Engine device.
- Master NGFW Engines can only be installed on hardware with 64-bit processors.
- Virtual Firewalls do not support anti-spam, dynamic IP addresses, or Wireless Interfaces.
- If there are multiple administrative Domains, the Master NGFW Engine must either belong to the Shared Domain or to the same Domain as the Virtual NGFW Engines.
- Virtual NGFW Engines handle only the traffic routed through the Virtual NGFW Engine for inspection. All other traffic, including communication between the Virtual NGFW Engines and the SMC components, is proxied by the Master NGFW Engine. Virtual NGFW Engines do not communicate directly with other Virtual NGFW Engines.

### Related concepts

[Getting started with Domain elements](#) on page 389

## Master NGFW Engine and Virtual NGFW Engine configuration overview

Master NGFW Engine and Virtual NGFW Engine configuration consists of creating Master NGFW Engines and associating Virtual NGFW Engines with the Master NGFW Engines.

The configuration consists of the following general steps:

- 1) Generate and install NGFW Engine licenses for the Master NGFW Engine.
- 2) Create a Master NGFW Engine element.
- 3) Create a Virtual Resource element.
- 4) Configure Physical or VLAN Interfaces for the Master NGFW Engine and assign Virtual Resources to the interfaces.
- 5) Create Virtual NGFW Engine elements.
- 6) Configure Physical, VLAN, or Tunnel Interfaces for the Virtual NGFW Engines.
- 7) Configure routing for the Master NGFW Engine and for Virtual Firewalls.



**Note:** You cannot configure routing for Virtual IPS engines or Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls.

- 8) Install or refresh the policy on the Master NGFW Engine to transfer changes to the Master NGFW Engine's Physical/VLAN Interfaces and the mapping of Virtual NGFW Engines to Master NGFW Engine Interfaces.
- 9) Install or refresh the policy on the Virtual NGFW Engines.

**Related concepts**

- [Create Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 510
- [Configuring Virtual Firewall interfaces](#) on page 603
- [Getting Started with licenses](#) on page 1309
- [Adding routes for Master NGFW Engines](#) on page 706
- [Adding routes for Virtual Firewalls](#) on page 706

**Related tasks**

- [Create Virtual Resource elements](#) on page 509

## Engine Editor and how it works

The Engine Editor combines all engine configuration information into one view that is easy to access and navigate. You can quickly save and validate all changes using the Engine Editor toolbar.

You can use the Engine Editor to configure the following settings:

- **General** — General engine settings
- **Interfaces** — Interface configuration
- **Routing** — Routing and antispoofing configuration
- **Add-Ons** — Settings related to engine add-ons. Also contains settings for McAfee GTI and McAfee TIE file reputation, the McAfee Advanced Threat Defense server, Sidewinder Proxy, and ThreatSeeker.
- **Policies** — Information about the Security Policy used on the engine and settings related to element-based NAT and Aliases; also contains settings for Automatic rules
- **VPN (Firewalls only)** — Settings related to the engine's VPN configuration and SSL VPN configuration
- **Advanced Settings** — Advanced engine settings (Traffic Handling, SYN Rate Limits, Log Handling, Scan Detection, DoS Protection, Idle Timeouts, and Tunneling)

You can use the Engine Editor to edit or view an engine configuration:

- Edit an engine configuration by right-clicking an engine element and selecting **Edit**.
- View an engine configuration by right-clicking an engine element and selecting **Preview**. Double-clicking an engine also opens the engine configuration in preview mode.

## Using Master NGFW Engines and Virtual NGFW Engines with Domains

Virtual NGFW Engines associated with the same Master NGFW Engine can belong to different administrative Domains.

However, the Master NGFW Engine must either belong to the Shared Domain or to the same Domain as the associated Virtual NGFW Engines. For example, the Master NGFW Engine can belong to the Shared Domain, while each associated Virtual NGFW Engine belongs to a different Domain.


# Create Master NGFW Engine elements



A Master NGFW Engine is a physical engine device that provides the resources for Virtual NGFW Engines. One physical Master NGFW Engine can support multiple Virtual NGFW Engines.

## Before you begin

Before creating Master NGFW Engine elements, generate and install NGFW Engine licenses for the Master NGFW Engines.

By default, a Master NGFW Engine element has placeholders for two nodes when the element is created. A Master NGFW Engine can have 1–16 nodes. If you do not need to use clustering on the Master NGFW Engine, you can remove one of the automatically created nodes.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click **NGFW Engines** and select **New > Master NGFW Engine**.  
You are prompted to select the role for the Virtual NGFW Engines that this Master NGFW Engine hosts.  
 **Note:** You cannot change the role of the Virtual NGFW Engines that the Master NGFW Engine hosts after you create the Master NGFW Engine element.
- 3) Select the role for the Virtual NGFW Engines that this Master NGFW Engine will host and click **OK**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 4) Give the element a unique **Name**.
- 5) Select the **Log Server** to which the Master NGFW Engine sends its log data.  
The Master NGFW Engine also sends log data from the Virtual NGFW Engines to the same Log Server.
- 6) (Optional) In **DNS IP Addresses** field, add one or more DNS IP addresses.  
DNS IP addresses are IP addresses of external DNS servers. Master NGFW Engines use these DNS servers to resolve Domain names to IP addresses. Master NGFW Engines need DNS resolution to contact services that are defined using URLs or domain names, and to resolve fully qualified domain names (FQDNs) used in policies.
  - To enter a single IP address manually, click **Add** and select **IP Address**. Enter the IP address.
  - To define an IP address using a network element, click **Add** and select **Network Element**.
- 7) Select the **Location** for this Master NGFW Engine if there is a NAT device between this Master NGFW Engine and other SMC components.
- 8) (Optional) If you want to include the Master NGFW Engine in predefined categories, select the appropriate **Categories**.

- 9) (Optional) If you want to add custom commands to the Master NGFW Engine's right-click menu, add a **Tools Profile**.
- 10) (Optional) If you do not need to use clustering on the Master NGFW Engine, select one of the nodes and click **Remove Node**.  
You are prompted to confirm that you want to delete the selected node. Click **Yes**.

## Next steps

You are now ready to create **Virtual Resource** elements.

### Related concepts

[Defining Host elements](#) on page 896

### Related tasks

[Attach Tools Profile elements to elements](#) on page 121

[Create Location elements](#) on page 129

[Select Categories for elements](#) on page 161

[Add nodes to Master NGFW Engine elements](#) on page 514


[Activate the SNMP agent on engines](#) on page 660


[Define External DNS Server elements](#) on page 772


# Create Virtual Resource elements

Virtual Resources associate Virtual NGFW Engines with Physical Interfaces or VLAN Interfaces on the Master NGFW Engine.

When you select the same Virtual Resource for a Physical Interface or VLAN Interface on the Master NGFW Engine and for a Virtual NGFW Engine, the Virtual NGFW Engine is automatically associated with the Master NGFW Engine. Create one Virtual Resource for each Virtual NGFW Engine that you plan to add.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click the Master NGFW Engine element and select **Edit Master NGFW Engine**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 3) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Interfaces > Virtual Resources** in the navigation pane on the left.
- 4) Click **Add**.  
The **Virtual Resource Properties** dialog box opens.
- 5) Enter a unique **Name** for the Virtual Resource.

- 6) Select the **Domain** to which the Virtual Resource belongs.
- 7) (Optional) Enter the **Concurrent Connection Limit** to set a limit for the total number of connections that are allowed for the Virtual NGFW Engine associated with the Virtual Resource.  
When the set number of connections is reached, the engine blocks the next connection attempts until a previously open connection is closed.
- 8) (Optional) Select **Show Master Interface IDs in Virtual Engine** if you want the Physical Interface IDs of the Master NGFW Engine to be shown in the Interface properties of the Virtual NGFW Engine.
- 9) Click **OK**.
- 10) Click  **Save**.

## Next steps

Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:

- If you are creating a Master NGFW Engine, configure Master NGFW Engine interfaces.
- Associate the Virtual Resource with a Master NGFW Engine interface and with a Virtual NGFW Engine.

### Related concepts

[Master NGFW Engine interface configuration overview](#) on page 590

[Create Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 510

### Related tasks

[Add Master NGFW Engine Physical Interfaces for hosted Virtual Firewalls](#) on page 593

[Add Master NGFW Engine Physical Interfaces for hosted Virtual IPS engines](#) on page 594

[Add Master NGFW Engine Physical Interfaces for hosted Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 595

# Create Virtual NGFW Engines

Virtual NGFW Engine elements store the configuration information related to the Virtual NGFW Engines.





**Note:** All Virtual NGFW Engines on the same Master NGFW Engine must have the same Virtual NGFW Engine role (Firewall/VPN, IPS, or Layer 2 Firewall). To use more than one Virtual NGFW Engine role, you must create a separate Master NGFW Engine for each Virtual NGFW Engine role. Each Master NGFW Engine must be on a separate physical Master NGFW Engine device.

## Add Virtual Firewall elements

Virtual Firewall elements store the configuration information related to the Virtual Firewalls.

Selecting a Virtual Resource for the Virtual Firewall automatically adds the Virtual Firewall to the Master NGFW Engine where the Virtual Resource is used.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click **NGFW Engines** and select **New > Firewall > Virtual Firewall**.
- 3) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.
- 4) Next to the **Virtual Resource** field, click **Select** and select a Virtual Resource on the Master NGFW Engine to which you want to add the Virtual Firewall.

- 5) (Optional) In the **DNS IP Addresses** field, add one or more IP addresses.

DNS IP addresses are IP addresses of external DNS servers. Virtual Firewalls use these DNS servers to resolve Domain names to IP addresses. Virtual Firewalls need DNS resolution to contact services that are defined using URLs or domain names, and to resolve fully qualified domain names (FQDNs) used in policies. When DNS relay is configured, these DNS servers are used unless domain-specific DNS servers are specified in a DNS Relay Profile element.



**Note:** If you have defined NetLink-specific DNS IP addresses, adding DNS IP addresses overrides the NetLink-specific DNS IP addresses.

- To enter a single IP address manually, click **Add** and select **IP Address**. Enter the IP address in the dialog box that opens.
- To define an IP address using a network element, click **Add** and select **Network Element**.

- 6) (Optional) Next to the **Category** field, click **Select** and select one or more categories.

- 7) Click  **Save**.

Do not close the Engine Editor.

## Next steps

Configure interfaces for the Virtual Firewall.

### Related concepts

[Configuring interfaces for Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 602

[Defining Host elements](#) on page 896

### Related tasks


[Select Categories for elements](#) on page 161



[Define External DNS Server elements](#) on page 772

# Add Virtual IPS elements

Virtual IPS elements store the configuration information related to the Virtual IPS engines.

Selecting a Virtual Resource for the Virtual IPS element automatically adds the Virtual IPS element to the Master NGFW Engine where the Virtual Resource is used.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click **NGFW Engines** and select **New > IPS > Virtual IPS**.
- 3) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.
- 4) Next to the **Virtual Resource** field, click **Select** and select a Virtual Resource on the Master NGFW Engine to which you want to add the Virtual IPS.
- 5) (Optional) In the **DNS IP Addresses** field, add one or more IP addresses.  
DNS IP addresses are IP addresses of external DNS servers. Virtual IPS engines use these DNS servers to resolve Domain names to IP addresses. Virtual IPS engines need DNS resolution to contact services that are defined using URLs or domain names, and to resolve fully qualified domain names (FQDNs) used in policies.
  - To enter a single IP address manually, click **Add** and select **IP Address**. Enter the IP address in the dialog box that opens.
  - To define an IP address using a network element, click **Add** and select **Network Element**.
- 6) (Optional) Next to the **Category** field, click **Select** and select one or more categories.
- 7) Click  **Save**.  
Do not close the Engine Editor.

## Next steps

Configure interfaces for the Virtual IPS engine.

### Related concepts

[Configuring interfaces for Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 602

[Defining Host elements](#) on page 896

### Related tasks

[Select Categories for elements](#) on page 161


[Define External DNS Server elements](#) on page 772





# Add Virtual Layer 2 Firewall elements

Virtual Layer 2 Firewall elements store the configuration information related to the Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls.

Selecting a Virtual Resource for the Virtual Layer 2 Firewall automatically adds the Virtual Layer 2 Firewall to the Master NGFW Engine where the Virtual Resource is used.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click **NGFW Engines** and select **New > Layer 2 Firewall > Virtual Layer 2 Firewall**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 3) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.
- 4) Next to the **Virtual Resource** field, click **Select** and select a Virtual Resource on the Master NGFW Engine to which you want to add the Virtual Firewall.
- 5) (Optional) In the **DNS IP Addresses** field, add one or more IP addresses.  
DNS IP addresses are IP addresses of external DNS servers. Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls use these DNS servers to resolve Domain names to IP addresses. Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls need DNS resolution to contact services that are defined using URLs or domain names, and to resolve fully qualified domain names (FQDNs) used in policies.
  - To enter a single IP address manually, click **Add** and select **IP Address**. Enter the IP address in the dialog box that opens.
  - To define an IP address using a network element, click **Add** and select **Network Element**.
- 6) (Optional) Next to the **Category** field, click **Select** and select one or more categories.
- 7) Click  **Save**.  
Do not close the Engine Editor.

## Next steps

You are now ready to configure interfaces for the Virtual Layer 2 Firewall.

### Related concepts

[Configuring interfaces for Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 602

[Defining Host elements](#) on page 896

### Related tasks

[Select Categories for elements](#) on page 161

[Define External DNS Server elements](#) on page 772

# Moving a Virtual NGFW Engine to a different Master NGFW Engine

The Virtual Resource selected in the properties of a Virtual NGFW Engine determines the Master NGFW Engine to which the Virtual NGFW Engine belongs.

To move a Virtual NGFW Engine to a different Master NGFW Engine, you select a Virtual Resource that is associated with a different Master NGFW Engine in the Virtual NGFW Engine's properties. The move becomes effective when you refresh the policy on the Master NGFW Engine.

## Modify Master NGFW Engines and Virtual NGFW Engines

You can edit Master NGFW Engine, Virtual Firewall, Virtual IPS engine, and Virtual Layer 2 Firewall elements. You can also convert an existing Single Firewall or Firewall Cluster into a Master NGFW Engine and Virtual Firewalls.


Existing Master NGFW Engine, Virtual Firewall, Virtual IPS engine, and Virtual Layer 2 Firewall elements are shown in the **Engines** branch of the **Home** view in their own branches, and in the **NGFW > NGFW Engines** branch of the **Configuration** view.


## Add nodes to Master NGFW Engine elements


By default, the Master NGFW Engine element has two nodes on the **Clustering** pane of the Engine Editor. You can add new nodes to the Master NGFW Engine element. Each Master NGFW Engine supports up to 16 nodes.

### Before you begin

Install the additional physical engine device. Connect the cables for at least the interface for communication with the Management Server and the interface for communications between the clustered engines. If the device already has a working configuration from previous use, return it to the initial configuration state in the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard on the command line before connecting it to the network. Do not make initial contact with the Management Server before you add the node to the Master NGFW Engine configuration in the Management Client.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click the Master NGFW Engine and select **Edit Master NGFW Engine**.
- 3) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **General > Clustering**.
- 4) Click **Add Node**.

- 5) Give the node a unique **Name**.
- 6) In the **Nodes** table, review and update the information in the **IP Address**, **Contact IP Address**, and **Comment** columns for each NDI. (Double-click the value you want to change.)
- 7) Click **OK**.
- 8) Click  **Save**.
- 9) Save the initial configuration for the new Master NGFW Engine node to create a one-time password.
- 10) Make initial contact between the new engine and the Management Server.
- 11) Refresh the policy of the Master NGFW Engine to transfer the changes to the engines.

#### Related concepts


[Connect engines to the SMC](#) on page 631


#### Related tasks

[Reconfigure engine settings](#) on page 339

## Change the properties of Virtual Resources

Editing Virtual Resources allows you to change which Domain is associated with each Virtual Resource and edit other settings in the Virtual Resource properties.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click the Master NGFW Engine and select **Edit Master NGFW Engine**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 3) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Interfaces > Virtual Resources**.
- 4) Select a **Virtual Resource** and click **Edit**.
- 5) (Optional) Select a **Domain** to change the Domain to which the Virtual Resource belongs.



**Note:** If the Virtual Resource is already associated with a Virtual NGFW Engine, you cannot change the Domain here. Instead, move the Virtual NGFW Engine to another Domain using the Move to Domain tool in the Virtual NGFW Engine's right-click menu. Moving the Virtual NGFW Engine to another Domain automatically moves the Virtual Resource to the same Domain.

- 6) (Optional) Enter the **Concurrent Connection Limit** to set a limit for the total number of connections that are allowed for the Virtual NGFW Engine associated with the Virtual Resource.  
When the set number of connections is reached, the engine blocks the next connection attempts until a previously open connection is closed.
- 7) (Optional) Select **Show Master Interface IDs in Virtual Engine** to show the Physical Interface IDs of the Master NGFW Engine in the Interface properties of the Virtual NGFW Engine.
- 8) Click **OK**.
- 9) Click **Save**.
- 10) Refresh the policy of the Master NGFW Engine to transfer the changes to the engines.

#### Related tasks

[Create Virtual Resource elements](#) on page 509

## Convert Firewalls to Master NGFW Engines and Virtual Firewall elements

You can use a conversion tool to change a Single Firewall or Firewall Cluster element to a Master NGFW Engine and Virtual Firewall elements.

The Master NGFW Engine must always be based on a Firewall. The Virtual NGFW Engines can only be in the Virtual Firewall role. Only Single Firewalls or Firewall Clusters that are running on 64-bit hardware can be converted to Master NGFW Engines and Virtual Firewalls.

Single Firewalls and Firewall Clusters with the following configurations cannot be converted to Master NGFW Engines and Virtual Firewalls:

- Firewall Clusters that use a CVI as the Control IP address
- Firewall Clusters that have only a CVI on the Heartbeat Interface
- Single Firewalls that have ADSL Interfaces
- Single Firewalls that have Wireless Interfaces
- Single Firewalls that have a dynamic IP address
- Single Firewalls or Firewall Clusters that have a dynamic Contact Address
- Single Firewalls or Firewall Clusters that have DHCP settings on the interface for communication with the Management Server

#### Related concepts


[Defining Host elements](#) on page 896


**Related tasks**

- [Attach Tools Profile elements to elements](#) on page 121
- [Create Location elements](#) on page 129
- [Select Categories for elements](#) on page 161
- [Add nodes to Master NGFW Engine elements](#) on page 514
- [Activate the SNMP agent on engines](#) on page 660
- [Define External DNS Server elements](#) on page 772

## Start the Convert Engine to Master NGFW Engine and Virtual NGFW Engines wizard

Start the conversion tool and define general properties for the Master NGFW Engine and Virtual NGFW Engines.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click a Single Firewall or Firewall Cluster and select **Configuration > Convert to Master NGFW Engine and Virtual NGFW Engine(s)**.  
The **Convert Engine to Master NGFW Engine and Virtual NGFW Engines** wizard starts.
- 3) (Optional) Select a Firewall on which to base the configuration from the **Base Configuration On** list.
- 4) Enter the **Number of Virtual Engines** to create.  
The specified number of Virtual Resources are added to the table, and a Virtual Engine is associated with each Virtual Resource.
- 5) (Recommended) Double-click the **Virtual Resource Name** field and edit the automatically generated Virtual Resource Name for each Virtual NGFW Engine.
- 6) (Recommended) Double-click the **Virtual NGFW Engine Name** field and edit the automatically generated Virtual NGFW Engine Name for each Virtual NGFW Engine.
- 7) Click **Next**.  
The **Define Basic Information for the Master NGFW Engine** page opens.
- 8) Enter a **Name** for the Master NGFW Engine.  
The name is also used to automatically generate the names of the nodes.
- 9) Select the **Log Server** to which the Master NGFW Engine sends its log data.

- 10) (Optional) In **DNS IP Addresses** field, add one or more DNS IP addresses.  
DNS IP addresses are IP addresses of external DNS servers. Master NGFW Engines use these DNS servers to resolve Domain names to IP addresses. Master NGFW Engines need DNS resolution to contact services that are defined using URLs or domain names, and to resolve fully qualified domain names (FQDNs) used in policies.
  - To enter a single IP address manually, click **Add** and select **IP Address**. Enter the IP address.
  - To define an IP address using a network element, click **Add** and select **Network Element**.
- 11) Select the **Location** for this Master NGFW Engine if there is a NAT device between this Master NGFW Engine and other SMC components.
- 12) Define other settings according to your environment:
  - To include the Master NGFW Engine in predefined categories, select the appropriate **Categories**.
  - To add custom commands to the Master NGFW Engine's right-click menu, add a **Tools Profile**.
  - Add, edit, or remove nodes.
- 13) Click **Next**.  
The **Define Interfaces for the Master NGFW Engine** page opens.

## Define interfaces for converted Master NGFW Engine elements

All Master NGFW Engine interfaces must either have Interface Options defined or be associated with a Virtual Resource.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) If you want to use a Physical Interface to host a Virtual NGFW Engine, right-click a Physical Interface and select **Edit Physical Interface**.



**CAUTION:** The Control Interface is used for Master NGFW Engine communications. Do not add a Virtual Resource to the Physical Interface that is used as the Control Interface.

- 2) Select the **Virtual Resource** to associate with the interface.
- 3) (Optional) Select **Allow VLAN Definition in Virtual Engine** to allow VLAN Interfaces to be added to the automatically created Physical Interfaces in the Virtual NGFW Engine that is associated with this interface.
- 4) Select the **Virtual Engine Interface ID**.  
This is the Physical Interface ID of the Virtual NGFW Engine that is associated with this interface.
- 5) Click **OK** to close the **Physical Interface Properties** dialog box.
- 6) (Optional) Click **Options** to select which IP addresses are used in particular roles in system communications.

- 7) (Optional) Add **ARP Entries**.
- 8) (Optional) Click **Virtual Resources** if you want to edit the name of the Virtual Resources.
- 9) Click **Next** and continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - If Tunnel Interfaces are defined for the Single Firewall or Firewall Cluster on which the configuration is based, the **Distribute Tunnel Interfaces to Virtual NGFW Engines** page opens. Move the Tunnel Interfaces into the interface configuration for the Virtual NGFW Engines.
  - If the Single Firewall or Firewall Cluster on which the configuration is based is associated with a VPN Gateway element, the **Review Distribution of Internal Gateways to Virtual NGFW Engines** page opens. Move the VPN Gateway elements into the configuration for the Virtual NGFW Engines.
  - Otherwise, the **Define Routing for the Master NGFW Engine** page opens. Define routing for the converted Master NGFW Engines.

#### Related tasks

[Distribute VPN gateways to converted Virtual Firewall elements](#) on page 520

[Define routing for converted Master NGFW Engine elements](#) on page 520


[Select system communication roles for Master NGFW Engine interfaces](#) on page 600

[Add manual ARP entries to NGFW Engines](#) on page 614

## Distribute Tunnel Interfaces to converted Virtual Firewall elements

If Tunnel Interfaces are defined for the Single Firewall or Firewall Cluster element on which the configuration is based, you must move the Tunnel Interfaces into the interface configuration for the Virtual Firewall elements.

Master NGFW Engines cannot use Tunnel Interfaces.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Review the distribution of Tunnel Interfaces to Virtual NGFW Engines.
- 2) (Optional) If you want to change how the Tunnel Interfaces are distributed to Virtual NGFW Engines, click the **Virtual Engine** field for a Tunnel Interface and select the correct Virtual NGFW Engine from the list.
- 3) Click **Next** and continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - If the Single Firewall or Firewall Cluster on which the configuration is based is associated with a VPN Gateway element, the **Review Distribution of Internal Gateways to Virtual NGFW Engines** page opens. Move the VPN Gateway elements into the configuration for the Virtual NGFW Engines.
  - Otherwise, the **Define Routing for the Master NGFW Engine** page opens. Define routing for the converted Master NGFW Engines.


#### Related tasks

[Define routing for converted Master NGFW Engine elements](#) on page 520

## Distribute VPN gateways to converted Virtual Firewall elements

---

If the Single Firewall or Firewall Cluster element on which the configuration is based is associated with a VPN Gateway element, you must move the VPN Gateway configuration to the Virtual NGFW Engines.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Review the distribution of VPN Gateways to Virtual NGFW Engines.
- 2) (Optional) If you want to change how the VPN Gateways are distributed to Virtual NGFW Engines, click the **Virtual Engine** field for a VPN Gateway. Then select the correct Virtual NGFW Engine from the list.
- 3) Click **Next**.

## Define routing for converted Master NGFW Engine elements

---

Routes to directly connected networks are automatically added. You must add a default route and any routes through next-hop gateways to networks that are not directly connected to the Master NGFW Engine.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Review and edit the routing.
- 2) Click **Next**.  
The **Select Additional Configuration Options** page opens.

### Related concepts

[Adding routes for Master NGFW Engines](#) on page 706



# Select additional configuration options for converted Master NGFW Engine elements

You can define additional properties for the Master NGFW Engine on the **Select Additional Configuration Options** page.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Define Additional Master NGFW Engine Properties** and click **Next**.  
The **Define Tester Settings for the Master NGFW Engine** page opens.
- 2) (Optional) Define tester settings.
- 3) Click **Next**.  
The **Define Permissions for the Master NGFW Engine** page opens.
- 4) (Optional) Define permissions.
- 5) Click **Next**.  
The **Define Advanced Settings for the Master NGFW Engine** page opens.
- 6) (Optional) Define advanced settings.
- 7) Click **Next**.  
The **Review Basic Information for Virtual NGFW Engines** page opens.

## Related concepts

[Getting started with the engine tester](#) on page 639

[Getting started with engine permissions](#) on page 647


[Adjust Master NGFW Engine clustering options](#) on page 681

## Related tasks

[Adjust general Master NGFW Engine clustering options](#) on page 681

# Change the basic properties of converted Virtual Firewall elements

Most of the basic settings for the Virtual NGFW Engine elements are inherited from the Master NGFW Engine. Some settings can be adjusted.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select a Virtual NGFW Engine to review or edit its properties.
- 2) In the **Name** field, edit the name for the Virtual NGFW Engine.
- 3) (Optional) In **DNS IP Addresses** field, add one or more DNS IP addresses.  
These addresses are the IP addresses of the DNS servers that the Master NGFW Engine with which the Virtual NGFW Engine is associated uses to resolve domain names. Virtual Firewalls need DNS resolution to contact services that are defined using URLs or domain names, and to resolve fully qualified domain names (FQDNs) used in policies. When DNS relay is configured, these DNS servers are used unless domain-specific DNS servers are specified in a DNS Relay Profile element.



**Note:** If you have defined NetLink-specific DNS IP addresses, adding DNS IP addresses overrides the NetLink-specific DNS IP addresses.

- To enter a single IP address manually, click **Add** and select **IP Address**. Enter the IP address.
  - To define an IP address using a network element, click **Add** and select **Network Element**.
- 4) Select the appropriate **Categories**.
  - 5) Click **Next**.  
The **Review Interfaces for Virtual NGFW Engines** page opens.

## Related concepts

[Defining Host elements](#) on page 896


## Related tasks

[Select Categories for elements](#) on page 161

[Define External DNS Server elements](#) on page 772

# Change the interfaces and routing for converted Virtual Firewall elements

The Virtual NGFW Engine interface configuration is automatically generated based on the Master NGFW Engine interface configuration. Some settings can be adjusted.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Click **Options** to select which IP addresses are used in particular roles in system communications.
- 2) (Optional) Add ARP Entries.
- 3) (Optional) Click **Multicast Routing** to define static multicast or IGMP-based multicast forwarding (IGMP proxying).
- 4) Click **Next**.  
The **Review and Edit Routing for Virtual Security Engines** page opens.
- 5) Review and edit the routing.
- 6) Click **Next**.  
The **Review NAT Definitions for Virtual Security Engines** page opens.
- 7) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - If you want to add NAT definitions, review the NAT definitions for the converted Virtual Firewall elements.
  - Otherwise, click **Next**. The **Select Additional Configuration Options** page opens.

## Related concepts

[Adding routes for Virtual Firewalls](#) on page 706

## Related tasks

[Select additional options for Virtual Firewall interfaces](#) on page 612

[Add manual ARP entries to NGFW Engines](#) on page 614

# Add NAT definitions for converted Virtual Firewall elements

On the **Define NAT Definitions for Virtual Security Engines** page, you can define how Virtual Firewalls translate network addresses.

NAT rules are automatically generated and organized in the Firewall Policy based on the NAT definitions created in the Firewall properties.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) To use the default NAT address as the Public IP Address if there is not a more specific NAT definition that matches the traffic, select **Use Default NAT Address for Traffic from Internal Networks**.
- 2) To view the Default NAT Address properties, click **Show Details**.
- 3) In the **NAT Definitions** for list, select the Virtual Firewall for which you want to add NAT definitions .
- 4) Add or edit the NAT definitions.
- 5) Click **Next**.  
The **Select Additional Configuration Options** page opens.
- 6) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - If you want to define additional options, select additional configuration options for the converted Virtual Firewall elements.
  - Otherwise, Click **Next**. The **Summary** page opens.

#### Related tasks

[Add NAT definitions for element-based NAT](#) on page 636

[Edit or remove NAT definitions for element-based NAT](#) on page 637

## Select additional configuration options for converted Virtual Firewall elements

You can define additional properties for the Virtual Firewall elements on the **Select Additional Configuration Options** page.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) (Optional) Select **Define Additional Properties for Virtual Security Engines** and click **Next**.  
The **Review Permissions for Virtual Security Engines** page opens.
- 2) (Optional) Select the Virtual NGFW Engine for which you want to define permissions and configure the permissions.
- 3) Click **Next**.  
The **Review Add-Ons for Virtual Security Engines** page opens.
- 4) (Optional) Select the Virtual NGFW Engine for which you want to define add-ons and configure the add-ons.

- 5) Click **Next**.  
The **Review Advanced Settings for Virtual Security Engines** page opens.
- 6) (Optional) Select the Virtual NGFW Engine for which you want to define advanced engine properties and define the advanced properties.
- 7) Click **Next**.  
The **Summary** page opens.

#### Related concepts

[Getting started with engine permissions](#) on page 647

[Enabling access control by user](#) on page 1087


#### Related tasks

[Activate TLS inspection on engines](#) on page 1051

[Enable browser-based user authentication](#) on page 1108

## Finish converting Firewalls to Master NGFW Engines and Virtual Firewall elements

When you have finished configuring the Master NGFW Engine and Virtual Firewall elements, you must finalize the conversion.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Click **Finish**.  
A new tab opens to show the progress of the conversion.
- 2) Click **Close** to close the tab when the conversion is complete.
- 3) Install or refresh the policy on the Master NGFW Engine.
- 4) Install a policy on the Virtual NGFW Engines.

## Example: deploying Virtual Firewalls for MSSP customers

An example of configuring Master NGFW Engines and Virtual Firewalls in an MSSP environment.

Company A is an MSSP (Managed Security Services Provider). Customer 1 and Customer 2 are customers of Company A. The customers each want one Virtual Firewall with two Physical Interfaces. The administrators at

Company A decide to use their existing NGFW appliance as a Master NGFW Engine to host Virtual Firewalls for Customer 1 and Customer 2. Separate administrative Domains have already been configured for each customer. The engine already has a license that allows the creation of Virtual Resources.

The administrators at Company A:

- 1) Create a Master NGFW Engine element in the Shared Domain.
- 2) Create one Virtual Resource element for each customer's Virtual Firewall and select the appropriate Domain for each Virtual Resource:

**Table 54: Virtual resources details**

Virtual resource name	Domain
Customer 1 Virtual Resource	Customer 1 Domain
Customer 2 Virtual Resource	Customer 2 Domain

- 3) Create the following Physical Interfaces on the Master NGFW Engine:

**Table 55: Physical interfaces details**

Interface ID	Description
0	Physical Interface for the Master NGFW Engine's own traffic
1	Physical Interface for hosted Virtual Firewall traffic

- 4) Add an IPv4 address for each Master NGFW Engine node to Physical Interface 0.
- 5) Add the following VLAN Interfaces to Physical Interface 1 and select the appropriate Virtual Resource for each VLAN Interface:

**Table 56: VLAN interfaces details**

Interface ID	Virtual resource	Description
VLAN 1.1	Customer 1 Virtual Resource	VLAN Interface for the first Physical Interface on the Virtual Firewall for Customer 1
VLAN 1.2	Customer 1 Virtual Resource	VLAN Interface for the second Physical Interface on the Virtual Firewall for Customer 1
VLAN 1.3	Customer 2 Virtual Resource	VLAN Interface for the first Physical Interface on the Virtual Firewall for Customer
VLAN 1.4	Customer 2 Virtual Resource	VLAN Interface for the second Physical Interface on the Virtual Firewall for Customer 2

- 6) Create a Virtual Firewall element for each customer and select the appropriate Virtual Resource for each Virtual Firewall:

**Table 57: Virtual firewall details**

Virtual firewall	Virtual resource
Customer 1 Virtual Firewall	Customer 1 Virtual Resource

Virtual firewall	Virtual resource
Customer 2 Virtual Firewall	Customer 2 Virtual Resource

- 7) Add IP addresses to the Physical Interfaces on the Virtual Firewalls.
- 8) Refresh the policy on the Master NGFW Engine.
- 9) Refresh the policy on the Virtual Firewalls.





# Network interface configuration

## Contents

- [Network interfaces for engines](#) on page 529
- [Configuring interfaces for Firewalls](#) on page 531
- [Configuring interfaces for IPS engines](#) on page 558
- [Configuring interfaces for Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 573
- [Configuring interfaces for Master NGFW Engines](#) on page 587
- [Configuring interfaces for Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 602
- [Add manual ARP entries to NGFW Engines](#) on page 614
- [Examples of Single Firewall interface configuration](#) on page 615
- [Examples of Firewall Cluster interface configuration](#) on page 617
- [Examples of IPS engine interface configuration](#) on page 619
- [Examples of Layer 2 Firewall interface configuration](#) on page 624

The network interface configuration for all NGFW Engines is stored on the Management Server in the properties of Single Firewall, Firewall Cluster, Single IPS, IPS Cluster, Single Layer 2 Firewall, Layer 2 Firewall Cluster, Master NGFW Engine, and Virtual NGFW Engine elements.

## Network interfaces for engines

The network interface configuration stored on the Management Server contains most of the settings related to the supported types of network interfaces.

The interface configuration is done using the Management Client. The interface configuration stored on the Management Server does not contain:

- The network card driver selection
- The mapping of the operating system port numbers to the numbers used in the Management Client
- The network card speed/duplex settings



**Note:** If you use automatic configuration for appliances, the Interface IDs that you select in the Management Client must match the port numbers on the physical appliances. Check the port numbers in the relevant hardware guide.



**Note:** The configuration transferred from the Management Server overwrites the settings that can be defined through the engine command line. The settings contain the details for initial contact with the Management Server to establish a trusted communications channel.

The following limitations apply to network interface configuration:

- Firewall Clusters, IPS Clusters, Layer 2 Firewall Clusters, Master NGFW Engines, and Virtual NGFW Engines cannot have dynamic IP addresses.

- You cannot add both VLAN Interfaces and IP addresses directly to a Physical Interface. If an IP address is already configured for a Physical Interface, adding a VLAN Interface replaces the IP address. If you plan to use VLAN Interfaces, configure the VLAN Interfaces first and then add IP addresses to the VLAN Interfaces.
- You cannot add VLAN Interfaces on top of other VLAN Interfaces (nested VLANs).
- You cannot create valid VLAN Interfaces in a Virtual NGFW Engine if the Master NGFW Engine interface that hosts the Virtual NGFW Engine is a VLAN Interface.
- Only IPv4 addresses are supported in the following interface configurations:
  - In Manual ARP Entries
  - For DHCP relay
  - For VRRP
- An ADSL Interface is only supported on Single Firewall engines that run on specific Forcepoint NGFW appliances that have an ADSL network interface card.
- A Modem Interface is only supported on Single Firewall engines that run on specific Forcepoint NGFW appliances.
- A Wireless Interface is only supported on Single Firewall engines that run on specific Forcepoint NGFW appliances that have a wireless network interface card.
- Modem Interfaces, ADSL Interfaces, Tunnel Interfaces, and the integrated switch do not support VLAN tagging.
- Tunnel Interfaces are only supported on Firewalls and Virtual Firewalls.
- Tunnel Interfaces can only have static IP addresses.
- The switch functionality is only supported on Single Firewall engines that run on specific Forcepoint NGFW appliances that have an integrated switch.

## Network interface configuration overview

The network interface configuration process depends on the Forcepoint NGFW role.

The interface configuration proceeds as follows:

- 1) Define the interfaces and IP addresses according to the engine role.
- 2) Configure additional related settings depending on the features you want to use.

### Related concepts

[Configuring interfaces for Firewalls](#) on page 531

[Configuring interfaces for IPS engines](#) on page 558

[Configuring interfaces for Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 573

[Master NGFW Engine interface configuration overview](#) on page 590

[Configuring interfaces for Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 602

### Related tasks

[Add manual ARP entries to NGFW Engines](#) on page 614

[Activate the internal DHCP server on a firewall interface](#) on page 556

[Add integrated switches for Single Firewalls](#) on page 541

# Configuring interfaces for Firewalls

The interface configuration process for Single Firewalls and Firewall Clusters consists of several general steps.

The configuration proceeds as follows:

- 1) Add the required number of network connections:
  - Add physical interfaces.
  - (Single Firewalls only) Add ADSL interfaces for integrated ADSL modems.
  - (Single Firewalls only) Add wireless interfaces for integrated wireless routers.
  - (Single Firewalls only) Add modem interfaces for 3G modem connections.
  - (Single Firewalls only) Add a switch and port group interfaces for the integrated switch.
- 2) (Physical interfaces only) Add VLAN interfaces to physical interfaces.
- 3) (Optional) Add tunnel interfaces for the Route-Based VPN.
- 4) (Not applicable to modem interfaces) Configure the IP address settings.
- 5) (Optional) Add loopback IP addresses to assign IP addresses that do not belong to any directly connected networks to the firewall.
- 6) Select the interfaces that are used for system communications.

## Related concepts

[IP addresses for Single Firewall interfaces](#) on page 544

[Loopback IP addresses for firewalls](#) on page 554

## Related tasks

[Add Physical Interfaces for firewalls](#) on page 531

[Add VLAN Interfaces for firewalls](#) on page 533

[Add ADSL Interfaces for Single Firewalls](#) on page 534

[Add Wireless Interfaces for Single Firewalls](#) on page 534

[Add Modem Interfaces for Single Firewalls](#) on page 538

[Add tunnel interfaces for firewalls](#) on page 540

[Add integrated switches for Single Firewalls](#) on page 541

[Select system communication roles for firewall interfaces](#) on page 553

## Add Physical Interfaces for firewalls

A Physical Interface represents an actual network port on the engine.

Physical Interfaces correspond to network ports on the Firewall. The number of defined Physical Interfaces can be lower than the number of network ports on the hardware.

By default, the numbering of the Physical Interfaces in the Management Client corresponds to the operating system interface numbering on the engine. For example, Interface ID 0 is mapped to eth0 and ID 1 to eth1.

However, the mapping is not fixed and you can change it through the engine command line. See the relevant *Hardware Guide* for details about which Interface IDs to map with which network ports. On Firewall Clusters, this mapping can be done differently from node to node. You must take care that the interface that represents the same network interface on each node is correctly cabled to the same network.

An interface of the type **None** represents a single network port on the engine. An *Aggregated Link* represents two or more network ports on the engine. An Aggregated Link in high-availability mode provides protection against hardware failure. You can also use an Aggregated Link in load-balancing mode to increase throughput. You can combine two network ports in an Aggregated Link in high-availability mode. You can combine up to eight network ports in an Aggregated Link in load-balancing mode.



**Note:** We recommend that you do not use the IP address of an Aggregated Link interface as the primary or secondary control IP address of the engine.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single Firewall or Firewall Cluster and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click the empty space and select **New > Physical Interface**.
- 4) Define the Physical Interface properties.
- 5) Click **OK**.  
The Physical Interface is added to the interface list.
- 6) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - If you want to use VLANs, add the VLANs before adding IP addresses.
  - Otherwise, add IP addresses directly to the Physical Interfaces.

#### Related concepts

[IP addresses for Single Firewall interfaces](#) on page 544

[Defining Zone elements](#) on page 897

[Quality of Service \(QoS\) and how it works](#) on page 947

#### Related tasks

[Configure advanced properties for firewall interfaces](#) on page 542

[Activate the internal DHCP server on a firewall interface](#) on page 556

# Add VLAN Interfaces for firewalls

VLANs divide a single physical network link into several virtual links. You can define VLANs for both Single Firewalls and Firewall Clusters.


A Virtual Local Area Network (VLAN) is a logical grouping of hosts and network devices that allows creating several separated networks on a single physical link. To allow this separation, the Firewall supports VLAN tagging as defined in the IEEE 802.1q standard.

VLANs also make it easier to deploy geographically distributed Firewall Clusters (for example, a cluster whose nodes are located in different buildings). Fewer physical interfaces and less cabling is needed. When you create a VLAN interface, the CVI mode and MAC address are defined commonly for all virtual interfaces configured for the same Physical interface definition.

One network interface can support up to 4094 VLANs. The defined VLAN interfaces are displayed, for example, as “5.202” for network interface 5 with VLAN 202. The VLANs must also be defined in the configuration of the switch or router to which the interface is connected.



**Note:** If an IP address is already configured for a Firewall Physical Interface, adding a VLAN Interface replaces the IP address. If you plan to use VLAN Interfaces, configure the VLAN Interfaces first and then add IP addresses to the VLAN Interfaces.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single Firewall or Firewall Cluster and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click a Physical Interface and select **New > VLAN Interface**.
- 4) Define the VLAN Interface properties.
- 5) Click **OK**.  
The specified VLAN ID is added to the Physical Interface.
- 6) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - Add ADSL Interfaces, Wireless Interfaces, Modem Interfaces, Tunnel Interfaces, or integrated Switches.
  - Add IP addresses to the Physical Interfaces or VLAN Interfaces.

## Related concepts

[IP addresses for Single Firewall interfaces](#) on page 544

[Defining Zone elements](#) on page 897

[Quality of Service \(QoS\) and how it works](#) on page 947

## Related tasks

[Configure advanced properties for firewall interfaces](#) on page 542


[Activate the internal DHCP server on a firewall interface](#) on page 556

# Add ADSL Interfaces for Single Firewalls

You can configure one ADSL Interface on each Single Firewall.

The supported ADSL standards are ANSI T1.413 issue 2n, G.dmt, G.lite, ADSL2 DMT, ADSL2 G.lite, Annex A, and Annex B. ADSL is only supported on specific Forcepoint NGFW appliances that have an integrated ADSL network interface card. ADSL Interfaces are not supported on Firewall Clusters.

Use the number of the ADSL port on the appliance as the Interface ID of the ADSL Interface. For information about mapping the ADSL port on the appliance, see the relevant *Hardware Guide*.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single Firewall and select **Edit Single Firewall**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click the empty space and select **New > ADSL Interface**.
- 4) Define the ADSL Interface properties.
- 5) Click **OK**.  
The ADSL Interface is added to the interface list.

## Next steps

You are now ready to add IP addresses for the Single Firewall.

### Related concepts

[IP addresses for Single Firewall interfaces](#) on page 544

[Defining Zone elements](#) on page 897

[Quality of Service \(QoS\) and how it works](#) on page 947

### Related tasks

[Configure advanced properties for firewall interfaces](#) on page 542

# Add Wireless Interfaces for Single Firewalls

You can define a Wireless Interface to use a Single Firewall as a wireless access point.

You can configure one Wireless Interface on a Single Firewall. Wireless Interfaces are only supported on specific Forcepoint NGFW appliances that have an integrated wireless network interface card. Wireless Interfaces are not supported on Firewall Clusters.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single Firewall and select **Edit Single Firewall**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click the empty space and select **New > Wireless Interface**.
- 4) Define the Wireless Interface properties.



**Note:** Use the number of the wireless port on the appliance as the **Interface ID** of the Wireless Interface.

- 5) Click **OK**.  
The Wireless Interface is added to the interface list.

## Next steps

You are now ready to define SSID interfaces for the Single Firewall.

### Related tasks

- [Add SSID Interfaces for Single Firewalls](#) on page 535
- [Configure security settings for Single Firewall SSID Interfaces](#) on page 536
- [Configure advanced properties for firewall interfaces](#) on page 542

# Add SSID Interfaces for Single Firewalls

You can define several SSID Interfaces for the Wireless Interface.

An SSID (service set identifier) interface represents an 802.11 wireless LAN. You can define several SSID Interfaces for the Wireless Interface.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single Firewall and select **Edit Single Firewall**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click the Wireless Interface, then select **New SSID Interface**.
- 4) Define the SSID Interface properties.

- 5) If you want to configure additional settings for the SSID Interface, continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - Configure security settings for the wireless connections.
  - Filter wireless connections based on the clients' MAC addresses.
  - Activate the internal DHCP server on the SSID Interface.
  - Add an IPv4 address to the interface.
- 6) Otherwise, save the changes to the SSID Interface.
  - a) Click **OK** to close the **SSID Interface Properties** dialog box.
  - b) Click **Save and Refresh**.

#### Related concepts

[Defining Zone elements](#) on page 897

[Quality of Service \(QoS\) and how it works](#) on page 947

#### Related tasks

[Configure security settings for Single Firewall SSID Interfaces](#) on page 536


[Configure MAC filtering for Single Firewall SSID Interfaces](#) on page 537

[Activate the internal DHCP server on a firewall interface](#) on page 556

[Add IPv4 addresses to Single Firewall interfaces](#) on page 546

## Configure security settings for Single Firewall SSID Interfaces

You can configure different security modes for SSID Interfaces.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) On the **Security** tab of the **SSID Interface Properties** dialog box, select the **Security Mode** settings.
- 2) Fill in the following options depending on the selected security mode:

Security mode	Option
WEP Open System	Select an option from the <b>Key Length</b> and <b>Default Key</b> lists, then enter 1 to 4 encryption keys.
WPA Personal	Select an option from the <b>WPA Mode</b> list, then fill in <b>Pre-Shared Key</b> field.
WPA Enterprise	Select an option from the <b>WPA Mode</b> list, then fill in the <b>Authentication Method</b> field.

- 3) If you want to configure additional settings for the SSID Interface, continue the configuration in one of the following ways:



- Filter wireless connections based on the clients' MAC addresses.
  - Activate the internal DHCP server on the SSID Interface.
  - Add an IPv4 address to the interface.
- 4) Otherwise, save the changes to the SSID Interface.
    - a) Click **OK** to close the **SSID Interface Properties** dialog box.
    - b) Click **Save and Refresh**.

#### Related concepts

[Integrating external authentication services](#) on page 1102

#### Related tasks


[Add IPv4 addresses to Single Firewall interfaces](#) on page 546

[Configure MAC filtering for Single Firewall SSID Interfaces](#) on page 537

[Activate the internal DHCP server on a firewall interface](#) on page 556

## Configure MAC filtering for Single Firewall SSID Interfaces

MAC filtering allows you to restrict which clients can connect to the SSID Interface based on the clients' MAC address.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) On the **MAC Filtering** tab of the **SSID Interface Properties** dialog box, select an option from the **MAC Filtering Mode** list.
- 2) Define the MAC filtering settings.
- 3) If you want to configure additional settings for the SSID Interface, continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - Activate the internal DHCP server on the SSID Interface.
  - Add an IPv4 address to the interface.
- 4) Otherwise, save the changes to the SSID Interface.
  - a) Click **OK** to close the **SSID Interface Properties** dialog box.
  - b) Click **Save and Refresh**.

**Related tasks**

[Add IPv4 addresses to Single Firewall interfaces](#) on page 546


[Activate the internal DHCP server on a firewall interface](#) on page 556


## Add Modem Interfaces for Single Firewalls

A Modem Interface defines the settings of a 3G modem that provides a wireless outbound link for a Single Firewall.

You can define one or more Modem Interfaces on a Single Firewall. The 3G modem is connected to a USB port on the firewall engine.

The numbering of a Modem Interface in the Management Client (the modem number) is mapped to the modem's IMEI (international mobile equipment identity) number. Each modem is assigned a unique ID when you connect the modem to the engine. You can change the mapping between the modem's IMEI number and the modem ID through the engine command line, if necessary.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single Firewall and select **Edit Single Firewall**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click the empty space, then select **New > Modem Interface**.
- 4) Define the basic Modem Interface properties.
- 5) Enter the rest of the information (**Access Point Name**, **Username** and **Password**, and **Service Name**) according to the instructions that you have received from your service provider.
- 6) If necessary, define the contact address information.  
If components from some Locations cannot use the Default contact address, click **Exceptions** to define Location-specific contact addresses.
- 7) Click **OK**.
- 8) If you are configuring a new Single Firewall, or if you want to change the roles the different interfaces have in the configuration, select system communication roles for firewall interfaces.
- 9) Otherwise, update the routing configuration and transfer the changes to the firewall.
  - a) Select **Routing** in the navigation pane on the left.
  - b) Adjust the routing configuration as necessary.
  - c) Click  **Save and Refresh**.

**Related concepts**

[Defining Zone elements](#) on page 897

**Related tasks**

[Define contact addresses for a single engine or a Cluster Virtual IP Address](#) on page 132

[Change or remove the PIN codes of Single Firewall Modem Interfaces](#) on page 539

[Select system communication roles for firewall interfaces](#) on page 553

[Add manual ARP entries to NGFW Engines](#) on page 614


## Change or remove the PIN codes of Single Firewall Modem Interfaces

In some cases, you might need to change or remove your PIN code.

If you change the SIM card of a 3G modem that is connected to a Single Firewall and the PIN code is enabled on the new SIM card, you must change the PIN code information about the related Modem Interface. You must remove the PIN code if a PIN code was enabled on the old SIM card but a PIN code is not enabled on the new SIM card.

You must also change the PIN code if you have received the message “PIN code differs from initial contact settings” at policy installation after you have finished configuring the Firewall. This message means that the PIN code in the Modem Interface properties does not match the PIN code that you have entered for the 3G modem in the engine’s command-line interface. If there are other problems with the PIN code, you can check through the engine’s command line interface which PIN code was used in the initial configuration. You can then change the PIN code information if necessary.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) On the engine command line, enter the `sg-reconfigure` command to start the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard and change the 3G modem’s PIN code information.
- 2) In the Management Client, right-click the Single Firewall and select **Edit Single Firewall**.
- 3) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.
- 4) Right-click the Modem Interface, then select **Properties**.
- 5) Change the PIN code information, then click **OK**.
- 6) Click  **Save and Refresh**.

**Related tasks**

[Add Modem Interfaces for Single Firewalls](#) on page 538


# Add tunnel interfaces for firewalls

Tunnel interfaces are logical interfaces that are used as endpoints for tunnels in the Route-Based VPN.

Any traffic that is routed to a tunnel interface and allowed by the Firewall Access rules is automatically sent through the tunnel to the peer endpoint defined in the Route-Based VPN. Defining tunnel interfaces is optional: tunnel interfaces are only used in the Route-Based VPN.

You can optionally add IPv4 or IPv6 addresses to a tunnel interface. Tunnel interfaces can only have static IP addresses. Any IP address can be added to a tunnel interface, even if the same IP address is used on another interface or as a loopback IP address. Adding an IP address to a tunnel interface allows you to define the source IP address of traffic sent from the engine node itself. For example, an IP address is recommended to provide a source IP address for dynamic routing daemons, for IGMP proxy, and for Protocol Independent Multicast - Sparse-Mode (PIM-SM) configuration. If no IP address is added to the tunnel interface, the source IP address for traffic sent from the engine node is automatically selected. The selection is done according to the **Bypass Default IP Address** setting in the interface options for the firewall.

The mapping of tunnel interfaces to physical network interfaces on the engine is done automatically by the engine operating system based on the routing configuration.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single Firewall or Firewall Cluster and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click the empty space and select **New > Tunnel Interface**.
- 4) From the **Tunnel Interface ID** drop-down list, select the ID number for the tunnel interface.
- 5) (Optional) From the **QoS Mode** drop-down list, select how QoS is applied to the interface.
- 6) (**Full QoS** or **DSCP Handling and Throttling** modes only) Select the **QoS Policy** for the link on the interface.
- 7) (**Full QoS** mode only) Enter the **Throughput** as kilobits per second (for example, 2048) for the link on this interface.



**CAUTION:** Make sure that you set the interface speed correctly. When the bandwidth is set, the engine always scales the total amount of traffic on this interface to the bandwidth you defined. This happens even if there are no bandwidth limits or guarantees defined for any traffic.

- 8) Click **OK**.
- 9) If you want to add a source IP address for traffic sent from the engine node, continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - Add IPv4 addresses to Single Firewall interfaces.

- Add IPv6 addresses to Single Firewall interfaces.
  - Add IPv4 addresses to Firewall Cluster interfaces.
  - Add IPv6 addresses to Firewall Cluster interfaces.
- 10) If you do not want to add IP addresses, select system communication roles for firewall interfaces to define how the source IP address for traffic sent from the engine node is selected.
  - 11) Otherwise, click  **Save and Refresh**.

### Related concepts

[Quality of Service \(QoS\) and how it works](#) on page 947

[VPNs and how they work](#) on page 1125

### Related tasks

[Add tunnel interfaces for Virtual Firewalls](#) on page 607

[Configure advanced properties for firewall interfaces](#) on page 542

[Select system communication roles for firewall interfaces](#) on page 553

[Add IPv4 addresses to Single Firewall interfaces](#) on page 546


[Add IPv6 addresses to Single Firewall interfaces](#) on page 549

[Add IPv4 and IPv6 addresses to Firewall Cluster interfaces](#) on page 550

## Add integrated switches for Single Firewalls

An integrated switch represents the switch functionality on a purpose-built Forcepoint NGFW appliance. You can add port group interfaces to switches.

- You can configure one integrated switch on a Single Firewall.
- The switch functionality is only supported on specific Forcepoint NGFW appliances that have an integrated switch.
- The switch functionality is not supported on Firewall Clusters.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single Firewall and select **Edit Single Firewall**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.
- 3) In the right pane, right-click the empty space and select **New Switch**.
- 4) In the **Switch Properties** dialog box, define the switch properties.
- 5) Click **OK**.  
The switch is added to the interface list.

## Next steps

You are now ready to add port group interfaces to the switch.

# Add Port Group Interfaces for Single Firewalls

You can define one or more port group interfaces for an integrated switch. Port group interfaces provide a flexible way to group and configure ports and network segments.

- You have to add the switch before you can add port group interfaces.
- Port group interfaces are identified by port group IDs.
- Traffic inside a port group is not inspected.
- The traffic between port groups is inspected by the firewall in the normal manner.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single Firewall and select **Edit Single Firewall**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.
- 3) In the right pane, right-click the switch and select **New Port Group Interface**.
- 4) In the **Port Group Interface Properties** dialog box, define the port group interface properties.
- 5) Click **OK**.

The port group interface is added to the interface list. The defined switches and port group interfaces are displayed, for example, as *0.1* for switch ID 0 with port group 1.

## Next steps

You are now ready to add IP addresses to the port group interface.

# Configure advanced properties for firewall interfaces

Advanced settings for firewall interfaces allow you to configure SYN Rate Limits, Log Compression, and IPv6 Router Advertisements.

SYN Rate Limits are applied to TCP connections. Each TCP connection starts with a SYN packet. If the SYN Rate Limits defined for the Firewall are reached, the Firewall drops new TCP connections.

Log Compression is useful when the routing configuration generates a large volume of antispoofing logs or the number of Discard logs becomes high (for example, as a result of a SYN flood attack).

Router advertisements are packets that contain network layer configuration parameters. Enabling IPv6 Router Advertisements in the Physical Interface properties or Port Group Interface properties of an integrated Switch allows devices that connect to the same IPv6 network as the Firewall to acquire IP addresses automatically. The

Router Advertisement messages specify what configuration information the Firewall offers to devices that connect to the same network as the firewall.




**Note:** The SYN Rate Limits and Log Compression settings in the interface properties override the general SYN Rate Limits and Log Compression settings. These settings are defined in the Engine Editor.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single Firewall or Firewall Cluster and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click a Physical Interface, a VLAN Interface, an ADSL Interface, a Tunnel Interface, Wireless Interface, or a Port Group Interface of an integrated Switch and select **Edit Physical Interface**, **Edit VLAN Interface**, **Edit ADSL Interface**, **Edit Tunnel Interface**, **Edit Wireless Interface**, or **Edit Port Group Interface**.  
The properties dialog box for the interface opens.
- 4) Switch to the **Advanced** tab.
- 5) Select **Override Engine's Default Settings**.  
The options for SYN Rate Limits and Log Compression are enabled.
- 6) (Optional) Define the **SYN Rate Limits**.



**CAUTION:** The recommended values for the SYN Rate Limits depend on your network environment. If the Custom settings are not carefully configured, the capacity of the Firewall engine might suffer or SYN Rate Limits might not work correctly.

- 7) (Optional) Enable **Log Compression** and enter values for the Antispoofing entries and (optionally) for Discard entries.
  - Do not enable **Log Compression** if you want all the antispoofing and Discard entries to be logged as separate log entries (for example, for reporting purposes or for Firewall statistics).
  - By default, each generated Antispoofing and Discard log entry is logged separately and displayed as a separate entry in the Logs view. Log Compression settings allow you to define the maximum number of separately logged entries. When the defined limit is reached, a single antispoofing log entry or Discard log entry is logged. The single entry contains information about the total number of the generated Antispoofing log entries or Discard log entries. After this, the logging returns to normal and all generated entries are once more logged and displayed separately.
- 8) (Physical Interfaces or Port Group Interfaces of an integrated Switch only) Select **Send IPv6 Router Advertisements** and specify what configuration information is offered in the Router Advertisement messages to devices that connect to the same network as the firewall.
- 9) Click **OK**.
- 10) Click  **Save and Refresh**.

**Related tasks**

- [Add Physical Interfaces for firewalls](#) on page 531
- [Add VLAN Interfaces for firewalls](#) on page 533
- [Add ADSL Interfaces for Single Firewalls](#) on page 534
- [Add Wireless Interfaces for Single Firewalls](#) on page 534
- [Add tunnel interfaces for firewalls](#) on page 540
- [Configure SYN rate limits for engines](#) on page 685
- [Configure log handling settings for engines](#) on page 686
- [Add integrated switches for Single Firewalls](#) on page 541

## IP addresses for Single Firewall interfaces

You can define several types of IP addresses for the Single Firewall's interfaces.

A Single Firewall's interfaces can have the following types of IP addresses:

- Each Physical Interface can have one or more static or dynamic IP addresses. A Physical Interface can have multiple dynamic IP addresses only if you add VLAN Interfaces on the Physical Interface and the VLAN Interfaces each have a dynamic IP address. Otherwise, a Physical Interface can only have a single dynamic IP address. The same interface can have both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.
- Each Aggregated Link interface can have one or more static IP addresses. The same interface can have both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.
- Each VLAN Interface can have one or more static IP addresses or a single dynamic IP address. The same interface can have both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.
- An ADSL Interface can have one or more static IPv4 addresses or a single dynamic IPv4 address.
- Each SSID Interface defined for the optional Wireless Interface can have a single IPv4 or IPv6 address.
- A Tunnel Interface can have one or more static IP addresses.
- A Port Group Interface of an integrated Switch can have one or more static IP addresses or a single dynamic IP address. The same interface can have both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

You might need to define a contact address if you enter a private static address and NAT is used to translate it to a different external IP address. The external IP address must be configured as the contact address if other SMC components must use the external IP address to contact this Firewall or if the IP address is used as a VPN endpoint.

If you want to configure multicast routing by using the firewall as an IGMP proxy, the IP addresses that you define for the downstream interfaces must be the lowest IP addresses among all the IGMP queries in the local networks.

**Related concepts**

- [Define contact IP addresses](#) on page 129



# Dynamic IP addresses for Single Firewall interfaces and how they work

Single Firewalls support the use of DHCP, PPPoA, PPPoE, and SLAAC to assign dynamic IPv4 or IPv6 addresses on the firewall's network interfaces. PPP is only supported for IPv4 addresses.

Typically, a dynamic IP address is used in smaller sites with xDSL connections that have no static IP address available for the firewall. Modem Interfaces always have dynamic IP addresses that are provided through PPP.

Instead of an IP address, each interface with a dynamic IP address is identified in the SMC by a DHCP Index. This is a number that is used to distinguish different interfaces with dynamic IP addresses from one another.

When a firewall has a fixed IP address, the Management Server can contact the firewall whenever there is need. When the firewall has a dynamic IP address, the Management Server does not have a fixed IP address to contact, so the firewall contacts the Management Server instead. You can also define that a firewall that has a fixed IP address contacts the Management Server. The frequency of these contacts can be adjusted as necessary. If the contact is lost (for example, the Internet connection goes down), the Management Server queues the commands you have made to the firewall and executes them when contact is re-established.

If the address the engine uses for system communications is dynamic, the engine opens a communications channel to the Management Server and the Management Server never attempts to contact the engine outside this connection. If the management traffic flows through an interface that has a dynamic address, you can adjust timeouts and other settings related to these communications.

Dynamic IP addresses also affect policy-based VPNs: other VPN gateways cannot open VPN connections to the gateway if the address is dynamic. Instead, the gateway with the dynamic endpoint must always initiate the VPN. After the VPN tunnel is established, connections can be made in both directions as usual. VPN client connections can be forwarded through a site-to-site VPN from some gateway that has a static IP address (VPN hub configuration).

Because the dynamic IP address assignment includes the next-hop gateway address, the routing for interfaces with a dynamic address is defined using special dynamic Router and NetLink elements.

There are default Alias elements that can be used in the Firewall's policy to represent its own dynamic addresses. For each dynamic address interface there are four Alias elements distinguished by the DHCP index number:

- **\$\$ DHCP Interface X.ip**: The current dynamic IP address allocated to this interface
- **\$\$ DHCP Interface X.gateways**: The received IP address for the default router
- **\$\$ DHCP Interface X.dns**: The received IP address of the DNS server
- **\$\$ DHCP Interface X.net**: The network behind the interface with a dynamic IP address



**Note:** These Aliases are meant for use in the policies of the Firewall that has the dynamic IP address. They are translated to the values of the Firewall the policy is installed on, so they cannot be used in the policies of other components.

## Related tasks


[Configure global contact policy settings for node-initiated contact to the Management Server](#) on page 502

[Add Modem Interfaces for Single Firewalls](#) on page 538


# Add IPv4 addresses to Single Firewall interfaces

You can add IPv4 addresses to physical interfaces, VLAN interfaces, ADSL interfaces, SSID interfaces, tunnel interfaces, and port group interfaces of an integrated switch.

Dynamic IPv4 addresses are supported on physical interfaces, VLAN interfaces, ADSL interfaces, and port group interfaces. Dynamic IP addresses are not supported on Aggregated Link interfaces.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single Firewall and select **Edit Single Firewall**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click a physical interface, VLAN interface, SSID interface, tunnel interface, or port group interface and select **New > IPv4 Address**, or right-click an ADSL interface and select **New IPv4 Address**.
- 4) Configure the IP address information in one of the following ways:
  - Select **Static** and enter the **IPv4 Address**. The Network Settings are automatically entered.

 **Tip:** To resolve the IP address from a DNS name, right-click the field, then select **Resolve From DNS Name**.
  - (Physical, VLAN, ADSL, and port group interfaces only) Select **Dynamic** and select the DHCP index from the **Dynamic Index** drop-down list. The index is used for identification in other parts of the configuration (such as Firewall Policies) to represent the possibly changing IP address.
- 5) (Physical, ADSL, SSID, VLAN, and port group interfaces only) If necessary, define the contact address information.
  - Enter the **Default** contact address or select **Dynamic** (next to the **Default** field) if the interface has a dynamic contact address. The Default contact address is used by default whenever a component that belongs to another Location connects to this interface.
  - If components from some Locations cannot use the Default contact address, click **Exceptions** to define Location-specific contact addresses.
  - Dynamic contact addresses are not supported on SSID interfaces.
- 6) (Static IPv4 addresses only) Check the automatically filled-in **Netmask** and adjust it as necessary.
- 7) (Optional) Configure additional features for this interface:
  - (Static IPv4 addresses only) If you want to use VRRP on the physical interface, VLAN interface, or port group interface of an integrated switch, add virtual routers to Single Firewall interfaces.
  - (Dynamic IPv4 addresses only) If the interface requires PPPoE or PPPoA support, add point-to-point protocol clients to Single Firewall interfaces.
  - (Dynamic IPv4 addresses only) If you do not want a default route to be created through the interface, deselect **Automatic Default Route**.

- 8) Click **OK**.
- 9) Click **Save**.
- 10) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - Add IPv6 addresses to a physical interface, VLAN interface, SSID interface, tunnel interface, or port group interface.
  - Add modem interfaces.
  - If you are creating a Firewall, or if you want to change the roles the different interfaces have in the configuration, select system communication roles for firewall interfaces.
  - If you added IP addresses to tunnel interfaces, define routing for the Route-Based VPN.

#### Related concepts

[Dynamic IP addresses for Single Firewall interfaces and how they work](#) on page 545

#### Related tasks

[Define contact addresses for a single engine or a Cluster Virtual IP Address](#) on page 132

[Add Modem Interfaces for Single Firewalls](#) on page 538

[Add virtual routers to Single Firewall interfaces](#) on page 547

[Add point-to-point protocol clients to Single Firewall interfaces](#) on page 548

[Add IPv6 addresses to Single Firewall interfaces](#) on page 549

[Select system communication roles for firewall interfaces](#) on page 553


[Add loopback IP addresses for Single Firewalls](#) on page 554

[Add manual ARP entries to NGFW Engines](#) on page 614


## Add virtual routers to Single Firewall interfaces

Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) allows high-availability router configurations.

VRRP support is only available on Physical Interfaces, VLAN Interfaces, or Port Group Interfaces of Single Firewalls. One virtual router can be configured for each Physical Interface or VLAN Interface. The virtual router can have either backup or active status. The virtual router configured for one interface does not take into account the status of possible virtual routers configured on other interfaces. VRRP is only supported for static IPv4 addresses.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the IP Address properties, click **VRRP Settings**.
- 2) Select **Enable VRRP**.
- 3) Enter the **ID**, **Priority**, and **IPv4 Address** according to the configuration of the virtual router.
- 4) Click **OK** to close the **VRRP Settings** dialog box.

- 5) Click **OK** to close the **IP Address Properties** dialog box.
- 6) If you are creating a Firewall, or if you want to change the roles the different interfaces have in the configuration, select system communication roles for firewall interfaces.
- 7) Otherwise, click  **Save and Refresh**.

#### Related tasks

[Add Modem Interfaces for Single Firewalls](#) on page 538

[Add IPv4 addresses to Single Firewall interfaces](#) on page 546


[Add IPv6 addresses to Single Firewall interfaces](#) on page 549

[Select system communication roles for firewall interfaces](#) on page 553

## Add point-to-point protocol clients to Single Firewall interfaces

You can use PPPoE or PPPoA clients to connect the Firewall to an external ADSL modem without configuring routing and NAT settings on the ADSL modem.

Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet (PPPoE) and Point-to-Point Protocol over ATM (PPPoA) clients on the Firewall simplify the installation of an appliance when PPPoE or PPPoA is used by the network link connected to the interface. Activating the PPPoE or PPPoA client on the Firewall allows you to connect the Firewall to an external ADSL modem in transparent bridge mode. You must also activate the PPPoE or PPPoA client on the Firewall if you have a specific appliance that has an ADSL port and the ISP for the ADSL connection requires PPPoE or PPPoA. The PPPoE client is supported only for dynamic IPv4 addresses on Single Firewalls.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the IP Address properties, click **PPP Settings**.
- 2) Select the **Mode** that the ADSL modem connected to the interface supports:
  - **PPPoE**: can be used with Physical Interfaces, ADSL Interfaces, and Port Group Interfaces.
  - **PPPoA**: can be used with ADSL interfaces only.
- 3) Enter the **User Name** and **Password**, and optionally the **Service Name**, according to the local PPPoE or PPPoA configuration.



**Tip:** Deselect **Hide** if you want to view the Password in plain text in the dialog box.

- 4) Click **OK** to close the **PPP Settings** dialog box.
- 5) Click **OK** to close the **IP Address Properties** dialog box.
- 6) If you are creating a Firewall, or if you want to change the roles the different interfaces have in the configuration, select system communication roles for firewall interfaces.

- 7) Otherwise, click  **Save and Refresh**.

### Related tasks

- [Add Modem Interfaces for Single Firewalls](#) on page 538
- [Add IPv4 addresses to Single Firewall interfaces](#) on page 546
- [Add IPv6 addresses to Single Firewall interfaces](#) on page 549
- [Select system communication roles for firewall interfaces](#) on page 553


## Add IPv6 addresses to Single Firewall interfaces

You can add IPv6 addresses to physical interfaces, VLAN interfaces, SSID interfaces, tunnel interfaces, and port group interfaces of an integrated switch on Single Firewalls.


Dynamic IPv6 addresses are supported on physical interfaces, VLAN interfaces, and port group interfaces. Dynamic IP addresses are not supported on Aggregated Link interfaces.



**Note:** If you have added VLAN interfaces to physical interfaces, you must add the IPv6 Addresses to the VLAN interfaces.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single Firewall and select **Edit Single Firewall**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click a physical interface, VLAN interface, SSID interface, tunnel interface, or port group interface and select **New > IPv6 Address**.
- 4) Configure the IP address information in one of the following ways:
  - Select **Static** and enter the IPv6 Address. The Network Settings are automatically entered.



**Tip:** To resolve the IP address from a DNS name, right-click the field, then select **Resolve From DNS Name**.

  - (Physical, VLAN, and port group interfaces only) Select **Dynamic** and select the DHCP index from the **Dynamic Index** drop-down list. The index is used for identification in other parts of the configuration (such as Firewall Policies) to represent the possibly changing IP address.
- 5) (Dynamic IPv6 addresses only) If necessary, define the contact address information.
  - Enter the **Default** contact address or select **Dynamic** (next to the **Default** field) if the interface has a dynamic contact address. The Default contact address is used by default whenever a component that belongs to another Location connects to this interface.
  - If components from some Locations cannot use the Default contact address, click **Exceptions** to define Location-specific contact addresses.

- Dynamic contact addresses are not supported on SSID interfaces.
- 6) (Static IPv6 addresses only) Check the automatically filled-in **Prefix Length** and adjust it if necessary.
  - 7) (Optional) Configure additional features for this interface:
    - (Dynamic IPv6 addresses only) If you do not want a default route to be created through the interface, deselect **Automatic Default Route**.
    - (Dynamic IPv6 addresses only) If you want to use DHCPv6 to get the IPv6 address, select **Use DHCPv6 to get IPv6 Address**.
  - 8) Click **OK**.
  - 9) Click **Save**.
  - 10) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
    - Define Modem interfaces.
    - If you are creating a Firewall, or if you want to change the roles the different interfaces have in the configuration, select system communication roles for firewall interfaces.
    - If you added IP addresses to tunnel interfaces, define routing for the Route-Based VPN.

#### Related tasks

[Add Modem Interfaces for Single Firewalls](#) on page 538

[Add IPv4 addresses to Single Firewall interfaces](#) on page 546

[Select system communication roles for firewall interfaces](#) on page 553

[Add loopback IP addresses for Single Firewalls](#) on page 554

## Add IPv4 and IPv6 addresses to Firewall Cluster interfaces

You can add IPv4 and IPv6 addresses to physical interfaces, VLAN interfaces, and tunnel interfaces on Firewall Clusters.

Firewall Clusters can have two types of IP addresses.

**Table 58: Types of IP addresses for Firewall Clusters**

Interface type	Description	When to use it
Cluster Virtual IP address (CVI)	<p>An IP address that is used to handle traffic routed through the cluster for inspection. All nodes in a cluster share this IP address.</p> <p>Allows other devices to communicate with the Firewall Cluster as a single entity.</p>	Define a CVI for the interface if traffic that the firewall inspects is routed to or from the interface.


Interface type	Description	When to use it
Node Dedicated IP address (NDI)	<p>An IP address that is used for traffic to or from an individual node in a cluster. Each node in the cluster has a specific IP address that is used as the NDI.</p> <p>Used for the heartbeat connections between the engines in a cluster, for control connections from the Management Server, and other traffic to or from individual nodes.</p>	<p>Define at least 2 NDIs: one for management connections and one for the heartbeat traffic between the nodes.</p> <p>We recommend that you define an NDI for each interface that has a CVI, if practical. Some features might not work reliably without an NDI.</p>

You can define several CVIs and NDIs on the same physical interface or VLAN interface. A physical interface or a VLAN interface can have only a CVI or only an NDI.

IPv6 addresses are supported on Firewall Clusters with dispatch clustering mode. IPv6 and IPv4 addresses can be used together on the same Firewall Cluster.

You might also need to define a contact address if the CVI or NDI is private and NAT is used to translate the IP address to a different external IP address. The external IP address must be configured as the contact address in the following cases:

- Other SMC components must use the external IP address to contact this Firewall (NDI).
- This IP address is a VPN endpoint (CVI).

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Firewall Cluster and select **Edit Firewall Cluster**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.
- 3) Right-click a physical interface, VLAN interface, or tunnel interface and add the IP address in one of the following ways:
  - To add an IPv4 address, select **New > IPv4 Address**
  - To add an IPv6 address, select **New > IPv6 Address**



**Note:** If you have added VLAN interfaces to a physical interface, add the IP addresses to the VLAN interfaces.

- 4) (Optional) If this interface does not receive or send IPv6 traffic that the Firewall examines, deselect **Cluster Virtual IP Address**.



**Note:** By default, both **Cluster Virtual IP Address** and **Node Dedicated IP Address** are selected.

- 5) To add a CVI address, enter the IP address in the **IPv4 Address** or **IPv6 Address** field.



**Tip:** To resolve the IP address from a DNS name, right-click the field, then select **Resolve From DNS Name**.

- 6) (IPv4 addresses only) If necessary, define the contact address for the Firewall Cluster.

- In the **Default** field, enter the default contact address. The default contact address is used by default whenever a component that belongs to another Location connects to this interface.
  - If components from some Locations cannot use the default contact address, click **Exceptions** to define Location-specific contact addresses.
- 7) To add NDI addresses for the nodes, click the **IPv4 Address** or **IPv6 Address** cell in the table and enter the IP address for each node.



**Tip:** To resolve the IP address from a DNS name, right-click the field, then select **Resolve From DNS Name**.

- 8) (IPv4 addresses only) If necessary, double-click the **Contact Address** cell in the table and define the contact address for each node.
- In the **Default** field at the top of the dialog box, enter the default contact address.
  - If components from some Locations cannot use the default contact address, click **Add** to define Location-specific contact addresses.
- 9) (IPv4 addresses only) Check the automatically filled-in **Netmask** and adjust it as necessary.
- 10) (IPv6 addresses only) Check the automatically filled-in **Prefix Length** and adjust it as necessary.
- 11) Click **OK**.
- 12) Click **Save**.
- 13) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
- If you are creating a Firewall Cluster, or if you want to change the roles the different interfaces have in the configuration, select system communication roles for firewall interfaces.
  - If you added IP addresses to tunnel interfaces, define routing for the Route-Based VPN.
  - Otherwise, refresh the policy to transfer the changes.

#### Related concepts

[IP addresses for Single Firewall interfaces](#) on page 544

#### Related tasks

[Define contact addresses for a single engine or a Cluster Virtual IP Address](#) on page 132

[Define contact addresses for Node Dedicated IP Addresses](#) on page 133

[Select system communication roles for firewall interfaces](#) on page 553


[Add loopback IP addresses for Firewall Clusters](#) on page 555

[Add manual ARP entries to NGFW Engines](#) on page 614



# Select system communication roles for firewall interfaces

You can select which IP addresses are used for particular roles in system communications (for example, in communications between the Firewall and the Management Server).

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single Firewall or Firewall Cluster and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces > Interface Options**.
- 3) In the **Interface Options** pane on the right:
  - a) From the **Primary** control IP address drop-down list, select the primary control IP address for communications with the Management Server.




**Note:** We recommend that you do not use the IP address of an Aggregated Link interface as the primary or secondary control IP address of the engine.

- b) (Optional, recommended) From the **Backup** control IP address drop-down list, select a backup control IP address for Management Server contact (used if the primary fails).
- c) Select **Node-Initiated contact to Management Server** if the engine is behind a device that applies dynamic NAT to the inbound management connections or blocks them. When this option is selected, the engine opens a connection to the Management Server and maintains connectivity.
- d) (Firewall Clusters only) Select the primary Heartbeat Interface for communications between the nodes. We recommend that you use a Physical Interface, not a VLAN Interface. We strongly recommend that you do not direct any other traffic through this interface. A dedicated network helps ensure reliable and secure operation.



**CAUTION:** Primary and Backup Heartbeat networks exchange confidential information. If dedicated networks are not possible, configure the cluster to encrypt the exchanged information.

- e) (Firewall Clusters only) Select a backup Heartbeat Interface that is used if the Primary Heartbeat Interface is unavailable.  
It is not mandatory to configure a backup Heartbeat Interface, but we strongly recommend it. If heartbeat traffic is not delivered, the cluster cannot operate and traffic is disturbed. We strongly recommend that you use a dedicated interface for the backup heartbeat as well.
  - f) In the **Default IP Address for Outgoing Traffic** field, select the IP address that the nodes use if they have to initiate connections through an interface that has no Node Dedicated IP Address.
- 4) Click **OK**.
  - 5) Click  **Save and Refresh**.

## Next steps

You are now ready to configure routing.

- If this is a new Firewall, add routes for Firewalls.
- If you are configuring Tunnel Interfaces for the Route-Based VPN, define routing for the Route-Based VPN.

### Related concepts

[Loopback IP addresses for firewalls](#) on page 554

### Related tasks

[Save the initial configuration details or upload them to Installation Server](#) on page 632

[Adjust general Firewall clustering options](#) on page 677

# Loopback IP addresses for firewalls

You can use Loopback IP addresses to assign IP addresses that do not belong to any directly connected networks to the firewall.

Loopback IP addresses are not connected to any physical interface and they do not create connectivity to any network.

- You can add several loopback IP addresses to each Firewall.
- Any IP address that is not already used as a Cluster Virtual IP Addresses (CVI) or Node Dedicated IP Addresses (NDI) on another interface can be used as a loopback IP address.
- The same IP address can be used as a loopback IP address and as the IP address of a Tunnel Interface.
- Loopback IP addresses can be used as the Identity for Authentication Requests, the Source for Authentication Requests, and the Default IP Address for Outgoing Traffic.
- Loopback IP addresses cannot be used as Control IP addresses for communication with the Management Server or as Heartbeat Interfaces.


### Related tasks

[Add loopback IP addresses for Firewall Clusters](#) on page 555

# Add loopback IP addresses for Single Firewalls

You can optionally define one or more loopback IP addresses for the firewall.

Any IP address that is not used to route traffic on another interface can be used as a loopback IP address. The same IP address can be used as a loopback IP address and as the IP address of a Tunnel Interface.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single Firewall and select **Edit Single Firewall**.  
The Engine Editor opens.

- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Interfaces > Loopback**.  
The **Loopback** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Click **Add**.  
A row is added to the table.
- 4) Click the **Loopback Address** cell and enter the loopback IP address.



**Note:** If the IP address you want to use as a loopback IP address is already used as a Cluster Virtual IP Addresses (CVI) or Node Dedicated IP Addresses (NDI) on another interface, you must remove the IP address from the interface configuration before using it as a loopback IP address.

- 5) Click **OK**.
- 6) Click **Save and Refresh**.

## Add loopback IP addresses for Firewall Clusters

You can optionally define one or more loopback IP addresses for the Firewall Cluster.

Any IP address that is not already used as a Cluster Virtual IP Addresses (CVI) or Node Dedicated IP Addresses (NDI) on another interface can be used as a loopback IP address. The same IP address can be used as a loopback IP address and as the IP address of a Tunnel Interface.

Whether to define a CVI or NDI loopback address depends on the traffic for which the loopback IP address is used:

- A CVI loopback IP address is used for loopback traffic that is sent to the whole cluster. All the nodes in the cluster share it.
- An NDI loopback IP address is used for loopback traffic that is sent to a specific node in the cluster. NDI loopback IP addresses must be unique for each node.




**Note:** If the IP address you want to use as a loopback IP address is already used as a CVI or NDI on another interface, you must remove the IP address from the interface configuration before using it as a loopback IP address.

If you use NDI Loopback IP addresses, you must define an NDI loopback IP address for all nodes.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Firewall Cluster and select **Edit Firewall Cluster**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Interfaces > Loopback**.  
The **Loopback** pane opens on the right.

- 3) Click **Add** below the table to which you want to add a loopback IP address.  
A row is added to the table.
- 4) (CVI only) Click the **CVI Address** cell and enter the loopback IP address for the cluster.
- 5) (NDI only) Click the **NDI Address** cell for each node and enter the node-specific loopback IP address.
- 6) Click **OK**.
- 7) Click  **Save and Refresh**.

## Interface mapping for firewalls

---

During the engine installation, you map the physical network interfaces and the modems connected to the USB ports on the engine to the interfaces IDs that you defined in the Management Client.

The mapping of Tunnel Interfaces to physical network interfaces on the engine is done automatically by the engine operating system based on the routing configuration.

Integrated switches have predefined switch IDs. For example, the switch ID is 0 in Forcepoint NGFW 110 appliances.

## Activate the internal DHCP server on a firewall interface

---


You can use the internal DHCP server in a Single Firewall or Firewall Cluster to assign IPv4 addresses to hosts in the protected network.

This solution is meant for small installations. It might be more practical to assign the IP addresses using the firewall rather than relay the DHCP requests from a separately maintained local DHCP server or from some other site's DHCP server through a VPN.

The internal DHCP server can be set up independently on several Physical Interfaces, VLAN Interfaces, and Port Group Interfaces of an integrated Switch. When VLAN or Port Group Interfaces are configured, the DHCP server must be set up separately for each VLAN or Port Group. Only IPv4 addresses are supported. To use this feature, the Firewall interface must have at least one IPv4 address.



**Note:** You can use the internal DHCP server to provide IP addresses to the VPN client Virtual Adapter only if you use Single Firewalls as VPN gateways.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single Firewall or Firewall Cluster element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.

- 3) Right-click a Physical Interface, VLAN Interface, SSID Interface, or Port Group Interface and select **Edit Physical Interface**, **Edit VLAN Interface**, **Edit SSID Interface**, or **Edit Port Group Interface**.  
The properties dialog box for the interface opens.
- 4) Switch to the **DHCP** tab.
- 5) Select **DHCP Server** as the **DHCP Mode**.  
The DHCP Server options are displayed.
- 6) Define the **DHCP Address Range** that the Firewall assigns to clients in one of the following ways:
  - Click **Select** and select an Address Range element.
  - Click **Address** and enter a single IP address or an IP address range.



**Note:** The DHCP address range must be in the same network space defined for the Physical Interface. The DHCP address range must not contain the Firewall's NDI or CVI addresses or broadcast IP addresses of networks behind the Firewall. On Firewall Clusters, the DHCP Address range is automatically divided between the nodes.

- 7) (Optional) In the **Primary DNS Server** and **Secondary DNS Server** fields, enter the IP addresses of the external DNS servers that clients use to resolve domain names.  
If there is a listening IP address for DNS Relay on the same interface, clients use the DNS services provided by the firewall by default. If you want clients to use a different external DNS server, enter the IP address of the external DNS server in the **Primary DNS Server** field.
- 8) (Optional) Enter the **Primary WINS Server** and **Secondary WINS Server** IP address that clients use to resolve NetBIOS computer names.
- 9) Enter the IP address of the **Default Gateway** through which traffic from clients is routed.
- 10) (Optional) Enter the **Default Lease Time** after which IP addresses assigned to clients must be renewed.
- 11) (Optional) Enter a comma-separated **Domain Name Search List** to configure DNS search suffixes.
- 12) (Optional, clusters only) Select **Override DHCP Ranges per Node** and enter the **DHCP Address Range** for each node
  - ⚠ **CAUTION:** Enter unique ranges for each node. Overlapping ranges can cause IP address duplication.
- 13) Allow the DHCP-related traffic in the Firewall's IPv4 Access rules:
  - Allow DHCP broadcast messages. Use the **BOOTPS (UDP)** Service element.
  - Allow messages from the DHCP address range defined in step 6 to the IP addresses that the Firewall uses toward the clients. Use the **BOOTPS (UDP)** Service element.
  - Allow messages from the IP addresses that the Firewall uses toward the clients to the DHCP address range defined in step 6. Use the **BOOTPS (UDP)** Service element
- 14) Click  **Save and Refresh** to transfer the new configuration to the engines.

**Related concepts**[Getting started with Access rules](#) on page 811

## Configuring interfaces for IPS engines

The interface configuration for Single IPS engines and IPS Clusters consists of several main steps.

Follow these general steps to configure IPS interfaces:

- 1) Define the required number of Physical Interfaces.
- 2) Add the required number of VLANs.
- 3) Add IP addresses or a traffic inspection role to the interface.
  - IP addresses are required for interfaces that are used for system communications.
  - Interfaces that have a traffic inspection role work transparently in the network and do not have IP addresses.
- 4) Select the interfaces that are used for system communications.

**Related concepts**[Configuring interfaces for Firewalls](#) on page 531[IP addresses for IPS engines](#) on page 562[Types of traffic inspection interfaces for IPS engines](#) on page 565[Configuring interfaces for Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 573**Related tasks**[Add system communication interfaces for IPS engines](#) on page 559[Add VLAN Interfaces for IPS engines](#) on page 560[Select system communication roles for IPS interfaces](#) on page 571[Add manual ARP entries to NGFW Engines](#) on page 614

## Network interfaces for IPS engines

Depending on whether you are configuring a Single IPS or an IPS Cluster, you can configure different types of interfaces for each Interface ID in use.

**Table 59: IPS engine interface types**

Interface Type	Description
Capture Interface	Capture Interfaces are used for listening to traffic that does not flow through the IPS engine. They are dedicated for capturing network traffic, and cannot be used for other purposes.

Interface Type	Description
Inline Interface	Inline Interfaces handle traffic that flows through an IPS engine that is in inline mode. These Inline Interfaces cannot be simultaneously used for other purposes.
Normal Interface	Normal Interfaces are used for Management communications, sending log event information to the Log Server, and sending TCP Reset responses, as well as all communications in node-initiated connections. On IPS Clusters, Normal Interfaces are also used for the heartbeat between the nodes.

## Heartbeat network for IPS Clusters

The nodes in an IPS cluster exchange status information through a heartbeat network using multicast transmissions.

If an IPS node becomes unavailable, the other nodes of the cluster immediately notice this, and connections are reallocated to the available nodes. A dedicated network is recommended for at least the primary heartbeat communications.

## Add system communication interfaces for IPS engines

Normal Interfaces are used for communication between the IPS engine and the Management Server.

Physical Interfaces correspond to network ports on the IPS engine. In an IPS Cluster, each physical interface definition represents a network interface on all nodes of the cluster. By default, the numbering of the Physical Interfaces in the Management Client corresponds to the operating system interface numbering on the engine. For example, Interface ID 0 is mapped to eth0, and Interface ID 1 is mapped to eth1. However, the mapping is not fixed and you can change it through the engine command line. This mapping can be done differently from node to node as long as you take care that the same interface on each node is correctly cabled to the same network.

In a Single IPS, Normal Interfaces are used for:


- Communication between the IPS engine and the Management Server.
- Sending event information and traffic recordings to Log Servers.
- As the Reset Interface for sending TCP Reset responses.

In an IPS Cluster, Normal Interfaces handle all traffic for which the end-point of the communication is a node itself. Normal Interfaces are used for:

- Heartbeat communication between the nodes.
- Communication between each individual node and the Management Server.
- Sending event information and traffic recordings to Log Servers.
- For any other traffic between the node itself and some other host.

Normal Interfaces in an IPS Cluster are also used as the Reset Interface for sending TCP Reset responses.

Each Single IPS engine or node in an IPS Cluster needs at least one Normal interface for communicating with other SMC components. You can define more than one system communication interface if it is necessary in your network environment. It is recommended to create a separate Normal Interface that is used for communication with the Management Server rather than using the same Normal Interface for sending event information and traffic recordings to Log Servers, and for communication with the Management Server.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single IPS or IPS Cluster and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click the empty space and select **New Physical Interface**.
- 4) Define the Physical Interface properties.  
Select **Normal Interface** as the **Type**.



**CAUTION:** Make sure that you set the interface speed correctly. When the bandwidth is set, the IPS engine always scales the total amount of traffic on this interface to the bandwidth you defined. This scaling happens even if there are no bandwidth limits or guarantees defined for any traffic.

- 5) Click **OK**. The Physical Interface is added to the interface list.
- 6) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - Add VLAN interfaces to the Physical Interface.
  - Add IP addresses to the system communication interfaces.

#### Related concepts

[IP addresses for IPS engines](#) on page 562

[Defining Zone elements](#) on page 897

[Quality of Service \(QoS\) and how it works](#) on page 947

#### Related tasks

[Configure advanced properties for IPS interfaces](#) on page 570

## Add VLAN Interfaces for IPS engines

VLANs divide one physical network link into several virtual links.

A *Virtual Local Area Network* (VLAN) is a logical grouping of hosts and network devices that appear as a single network segment regardless of the physical topology. IPS engines support VLAN tagging as defined in the IEEE 802.1q standard. One physical interface can support up to 4094 VLANs.

VLAN tagging can be used:

- To inspect VLAN tagged traffic (no VLAN Interface configuration required on the IPS engine).
- To define different inspection rules for different VLANs (requires defining VLAN Interfaces for the IPS engine).
- For sending the IPS engine's management and logging connections through a directly connected VLAN segment.



Traffic picked up from a VLAN tagged interface can be inspected without configuring VLAN tagging on the IPS engine. However, you must configure the VLANs on the IPS engine if you want to create different traffic inspection rules for different VLANs. Even then, not all VLANs necessarily have to be specified on the IPS engine. The traffic inspection is customized for the VLANs by defining different Logical Interfaces for the different VLAN Capture Interfaces. The Logical Interface elements are then used in the IPS Policy rules to define which rules are used for which VLANs.


When you use VLAN Inline Interfaces, the interface numbers must be different and the VLAN identifier must be identical in both of the Inline Interfaces. For example, 3.101 and 4.101 would be a valid pair of VLAN Inline Interfaces. Also, when a VLAN Interface is used for an Inline Interface, it cannot be simultaneously used for any other types of interfaces. The VLAN identifiers you configure on the IPS engine must match the switch or router configuration.

When you use VLAN with Capture Interfaces, the network interface used as the *Reset Interface* for sending TCP Reset responses must be defined in the Capture Interface's properties. The reset is automatically tagged for the same VLAN that triggers a reset. The Reset Interface must be connected to the same VLAN/Broadcast domain as the Capture Interface to reach the communicating hosts.

If the IPS engine encounters unknown VLANs, it might or might not inspect the traffic. This is controlled by the **Inspect Unspecified VLANs** option in the Inline and Capture Interface definitions (by default, the option is set so that all traffic is inspected).



**CAUTION:** Do not add any manual VLAN definitions to an interface you want to use for sending resets. Adding VLANs prevents selecting the interface as a Reset Interface and also removes the Reset Interface from any existing selections. The IPS engine automatically uses the correct VLAN when sending resets.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single IPS or IPS Cluster and select **Edit <element type>**.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.
- 3) Right-click a Physical Interface and select **New > VLAN Interface**.
- 4) Define the VLAN Interface properties.




**CAUTION:** The throughput for each VLAN Interface must not be higher than the throughput for the Physical Interface to which the VLAN Interface belongs.



**CAUTION:** Make sure that you set the interface speed correctly. When the bandwidth is set, the IPS engine always scales the total amount of traffic on this interface to the bandwidth you defined. This scaling happens even if there are no bandwidth limits or guarantees defined for any traffic.



**CAUTION:** The MTU for each VLAN Interface must not be higher than the MTU for the Physical Interface to which the VLAN Interface belongs.

- 5) Click **OK**.
- 6) Click  **Save and Refresh**.

## Result

The VLAN Interface is now ready. The VLAN Interface is identified as Interface-ID.VLAN-ID, for example 2.100 for Interface ID 2 and VLAN ID 100.

### Related concepts

[IP addresses for IPS engines](#) on page 562

[Defining Zone elements](#) on page 897

[Quality of Service \(QoS\) and how it works](#) on page 947

### Related tasks

[Configure advanced properties for IPS interfaces](#) on page 570

## IP addresses for IPS engines

You can add IP addresses to system communication interfaces on IPS engines.

An IPS engine's system communication interfaces (Normal interfaces) can have the following types of IP addresses:

- A Physical Interface can have one or more static or dynamic IP addresses. A Physical Interface can have multiple dynamic IP addresses only if you add VLAN Interfaces on the Physical Interface and the VLAN Interfaces each have a dynamic IP address. Otherwise, a Physical Interface can only have a single dynamic IP address.
- A VLAN Interface can have one or more static IP addresses or a single dynamic IP address.

When a Normal Interface is used for communication with the Management Server, as the Heartbeat Interface in an IPS Cluster, or for communication with the Log Server, an IP Address is needed. When the same Normal Interface that is used for communication with the Management Server and Log Server is also used as a Reset Interface for sending TCP Reset responses, it can have an IP address. When a Normal Interface is used only as a Reset Interface, it must not have an IP address.

All nodes in an IPS Cluster must have the same netmask value for the IP address of their respective Normal Interfaces. The IP addresses specified for each node are used whenever the nodes need to be contacted individually.

You might need to define a contact address if you enter a private static address and NAT is used to translate it to a different external IP address. The external IP address must be configured as the contact address if other SMC components need to use the external IP address to contact the engine.

### Related concepts

[Define contact IP addresses](#) on page 129

### Related tasks


[Add IPv4 and IPv6 addresses to IPS Cluster interfaces](#) on page 564

# Add IPv4 and IPv6 addresses to Single IPS interfaces

You can add IPv4 and IPv6 addresses to system communication interfaces on Single IPS engines.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single IPS element and select **Edit Single IPS**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click a Physical Interface or VLAN Interface and select **New > IPv4 Address** or **New > IPv6 Address**.
- 4) Configure the IPv4 or IPv6 address settings in one of the following ways:
  - Select **Static** and enter the IPv4 Address or IPv6 Address. The Network Settings are automatically entered.

 **Tip:** To resolve the IP address from a DNS name, right-click the field, then select **Resolve From DNS Name**.

  - Select **Dynamic** and select the DHCP index from the **Dynamic Index** drop-down list if the interface gets its IP address from a DHCP server. The DHCP Index is a number for your own reference to identify the DHCP interface.
- 5) (IPv4 addresses and dynamic IPv6 addresses only) If necessary, define the contact address information.
  - Enter the **Default** contact address or select **Dynamic** (next to the **Default** field) if the interface has a dynamic contact address. The Default contact address is used by default whenever a component that belongs to another Location connects to this interface.
  - If components from some Locations cannot use the Default contact address, click **Exceptions** to define Location-specific contact addresses.
- 6) (Static IPv4 addresses only) Check the automatically filled-in **Netmask** and adjust it as necessary.
- 7) (Static IPv6 addresses only) Check the automatically filled-in **Prefix Length** and adjust it as necessary.
- 8) (Optional) Configure additional features for this interface:
  - (Dynamic IPv4 or IPv6 addresses only) If you do not want a default route to be created through the interface, deselect **Automatic Default Route**.
  - (Dynamic IPv6 addresses only) If you want to use DHCPv6 to get the IPv6 address, select **Use DHCPv6 to get IPv6 Address**.
- 9) Click **OK**.
- 10) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - If you are creating a new IPS element, add traffic inspection interfaces.

- If you are editing an existing IPS element, select system communication roles for IPS interfaces.

### Related concepts

[Types of traffic inspection interfaces for IPS engines](#) on page 565


### Related tasks

[Define contact addresses for a single engine or a Cluster Virtual IP Address](#) on page 132

[Select system communication roles for IPS interfaces](#) on page 571

## Add IPv4 and IPv6 addresses to IPS Cluster interfaces


You can add IPv4 and IPv6 addresses to system communication interfaces on IPS engines.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click an IPS Cluster and select **Edit IPS Cluster**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.
- 3) Right-click a physical interface or a VLAN interface and add the IP address in one of the following ways:
  - To add an IPv4 address, select **New > IPv4 Address**
  - To add an IPv6 address, select **New > IPv6 Address**
- 4) Click the **IPv4 Address** or **IPv6 Address** cell in the table and enter the IP address for each node.



**Tip:** To resolve the IP address from a DNS name, right-click the field, then select **Resolve From DNS Name**.

- 5) (IPv4 addresses only) If necessary, double-click the **Contact Address** cell in the table and define the contact address for each node.
  - In the **Default** field at the top of the dialog box, enter the default contact address. The default contact address is used by default whenever a component that belongs to another Location connects to this interface.
  - If components from some Locations cannot use the default contact address, click **Add** to define Location-specific contact addresses.
- 6) (IPv4 addresses only) Check the automatically filled-in **Netmask** and adjust it as necessary.
- 7) (IPv6 addresses only) Check the automatically filled-in **Prefix Length** and adjust it as necessary.
- 8) Click **OK**.
- 9) Click  **Save**.

- 10) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - If you are creating a new IPS element, add traffic inspection interfaces.
  - If you are editing an existing IPS element, select system communication roles for IPS interfaces.

#### Related concepts

[Types of traffic inspection interfaces for IPS engines](#) on page 565

#### Related tasks

[Define contact addresses for an IPS Cluster or a Layer 2 Firewall Cluster](#) on page 134

[Select system communication roles for IPS interfaces](#) on page 571

## Types of traffic inspection interfaces for IPS engines

Capture Interfaces and Inline Interfaces on IPS engines pick up traffic for inspection.

IPS engines pick up traffic from the network for inspection. There are two ways to install the IPS engines:

- In an IDS-like configuration in which the traffic is only captured for inspection.
- In a full IPS configuration where the IPS engine is installed inline, directly on the traffic path so that traffic must always pass through the IPS engine to reach its destination. Only traffic that attempts to pass through Inline Interfaces can be actively filtered.

Connections picked up through *Capture Interfaces* can be reset through specially set up *Reset Interfaces*. To define a Capture Interface, you must define a Reset Interface for it. Capture Interfaces and *Inline Interfaces* can be defined on the same IPS engine and used simultaneously.

*Logical Interface* elements allow you to group interfaces together according to network segment and interface type. You can then use the Logical Interface elements as matching criteria when you edit the rules in your IPS policies. There is one predefined Logical Interface element (called **default\_eth**) that can be used in interface configurations. If you want to create both Capture and Inline Interfaces on the same IPS engine, you must add at least one more Logical Interface.

#### Related tasks

[Add Reset Interfaces for IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 566

[Add Capture Interfaces for IPS engines](#) on page 567

[Add Inline Interfaces for IPS engines](#) on page 569

## Add Logical Interfaces for IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls


A Logical Interface is used in IPS Policies and Layer 2 Firewall Policies and in traffic inspection to represent a network segment.


A Logical Interface is used in the Inline Interface and Capture Interface configuration to represent one or more network interfaces. The same Logical Interface cannot be used to represent both Capture Interfaces and Inline

Interfaces on the same engine. Otherwise, a Logical Interface can represent any number or combination of physical interfaces or VLAN Interfaces.

Logical Interfaces represent a network segment. Logical Interfaces help limit the scope of your rules. Logical Interfaces can be used in IPS and Layer 2 Firewall Policies to create rules that match based on which interface the traffic was picked up from. For example, you can create a different Logical Interface for each VLAN and use them to create rules that apply only to traffic from a specific VLAN.

A Logical Interface element called **System Communications** is automatically assigned to interfaces that have an IP address that is used as the primary or backup Control IP address. You can use the **System Communications** Logical Interface to represent all Control IP addresses in IPS and Layer 2 Firewall Policies.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements** branch.
- 3) Right-click **Logical Interfaces** and select **New Logical Interface**.
- 4) Enter a **Name** and an optional **Comment** for the new element.
- 5) (Optional) To prevent the engine from seeing a single connection as multiple connections when a switch passes traffic between different VLANs, select the **View Interface as One LAN** option.
- 6) Click **OK**.
- 7) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - Add Reset Interfaces
  - Add Capture Interfaces
  - Add Inline Interfaces

#### Related tasks

[Add Capture Interfaces for IPS engines on page 567](#)

[Add Inline Interfaces for IPS engines on page 569](#)

[Add Capture Interfaces for Layer 2 Firewalls on page 582](#)

[Add Inline Interfaces for Layer 2 Firewalls on page 583](#)

## Add Reset Interfaces for IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls


Reset Interfaces interrupt communications picked up through Capture Interfaces when the traffic matches a rule that terminates connections.

Reset Interfaces can deliver TCP resets and ICMP “destination unreachable” messages to interrupt communications picked up through Capture Interfaces when the traffic matches a rule that terminates connections.

The resets are sent using the source and destination addresses and MAC addresses of the communicating hosts, so an IP address is not mandatory for a Reset Interface. You can optionally add an IP address if you also want to use this interface for system communications.

VLANs are supported for sending resets, but the correct VLAN is selected automatically. The interface you want to use as the Reset Interface must not have any manually added VLAN configuration.

You can also use a system communications interface for sending resets if the resets are routed through that interface and there are no VLANs on the interface.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click an IPS engine or Layer 2 Firewall and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click the empty space and select **New Physical Interface**.
- 4) Select an **Interface ID**.  
The Interface ID is mapped to a physical network port of the same number during the initial configuration of the engine.
- 5) Select **Normal Interface** as the interface **Type**.
- 6) Click **OK**.  
The Physical Interface is added to the interface list.



**Note:** When you set up the physical network, make sure that the Reset Interface connects to the same networks as the Capture Interfaces.

## Next steps

You are now ready to set up the Capture Interfaces that use this Reset Interface.

### Related tasks

[Add system communication interfaces for IPS engines](#) on page 559

[Add system communication interfaces for Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 574

[Add Capture Interfaces for Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 582

# Add Capture Interfaces for IPS engines

Capture Interfaces listen to traffic that is not routed through the IPS engine.


You must define Capture Interfaces if you want to use the IPS engine to inspect traffic that does not flow through the IPS engine. You can have as many Capture Interfaces as there are available physical ports on the IPS engine. External equipment must be set up to mirror traffic to the Capture Interface.

Capture Interfaces have definitions for the corresponding Logical Interface that the interface belongs to. The Logical Interface represents one or more network interfaces that capture the traffic for inspection:

- When a Capture Interface is connected to a switch SPAN port, each Capture Interface is bound to one Logical Interface. More than one Capture Interface can optionally be bound to the same Logical Interface.
- When a network TAP device is used, two Capture Interfaces are bound to the same Logical Interface. The monitored traffic going to different directions is captured through these two related network interfaces and is then combined into a complete traffic flow on the Logical Interface.

You cannot select the same Logical Interface for a Capture Interface and an Inline Interface on the same IPS engine.


A Reset Interface can be selected for a Capture Interface to send TCP Reset responses for the traffic captured from the interface. The Reset Interface is a Normal Interface that can reach the communicating components with the TCP Reset (for example, a Normal Interface connected to the monitored network).

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single IPS or IPS Cluster and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click the empty space, then select **New Physical Interface**.
- 4) Define the interface properties.



**Note:** Select **Capture Interface** as the interface **Type**.

- 5) Click **OK** to save the interface settings.
- 6) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - If you are creating a IPS element, select system communication roles for IPS interfaces.
  - Otherwise, click  **Save and Refresh** to activate the new interface configuration.

### Related concepts

[Defining Zone elements](#) on page 897

### Related tasks

[Add VLAN Interfaces for IPS engines](#) on page 560

[Add Logical Interfaces for IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 565

[Add Reset Interfaces for IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 566

[Configure advanced properties for IPS interfaces](#) on page 570

[Select system communication roles for IPS interfaces](#) on page 571



# Add Inline Interfaces for IPS engines

Define Inline Interfaces if you want to position a Single IPS or Inline IPS Cluster directly in the traffic path so that any traffic that is to be inspected goes through the IPS engine.

Inline Interfaces allow traffic to flow through the IPS engine, so that traffic that is deemed harmful can be actively filtered out. An Inline Interface is configured with two Interface IDs, representing two physical interfaces or two VLANs. The IPS engine can inspect the traffic coming from one interface and either stop the traffic or send it out through the other interface. The two interfaces are equal in the configuration. Traffic that is allowed through is always forwarded from one interface to the other (there is no routing decision involved). Inline Interfaces do not have an IP address or a MAC address visible to the network.



**Note:** Some Forcepoint NGFW appliances use a fail-open network card. Fail-open network cards have fixed pairs of ports. Take particular care to map these ports correctly. Otherwise, the network cards do not correctly fail open when the IPS engine is offline.

In addition to the Interface IDs, Inline Interfaces also have definitions for the corresponding Logical Interface that the interface belongs to. A single Logical Interface can represent one or more pairs of Inline Interfaces. The Logical Interface element can be used to represent the interfaces in the IPS Policy. You cannot select the same Logical Interface for a Capture Interface and an Inline Interface on the same IPS engine.

The number of Inline Interfaces you can configure is limited by the IPS engine's license.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

1) Right-click a Single IPS or IPS Cluster and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.

2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.

3) Right-click the empty space, then select **New Physical Interface**.

4) Define the interface properties.



**Note:** Select **Inline Interface** as the interface **Type**.



**CAUTION:** Using **Bypass** as the **Failure Mode** requires the IPS appliance to have a fail-open network interface card. If the ports that represent the pair of Inline Interfaces on the appliance cannot fail open, the policy installation fails on the IPS engine. **Bypass** mode is not compatible with VLAN retagging. In network environments where VLAN retagging is used, **Normal** mode is automatically enforced.

5) Click **OK** to save the interface settings.

6) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:

- If you are creating a new IPS element, select system communication roles for IPS interfaces.
- Otherwise, click **Save and Refresh** to activate the new interface configuration.

**Related concepts**

[Defining Zone elements](#) on page 897

[Quality of Service \(QoS\) and how it works](#) on page 947

**Related tasks**

[Add VLAN Interfaces for IPS engines](#) on page 560

[Add Logical Interfaces for IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 565

[Select system communication roles for IPS interfaces](#) on page 571

## Configure advanced properties for IPS interfaces

Advanced settings allow you to configure SYN Rate Limits and Log Compression on the IPS engine's interfaces.

SYN Rate Limits are applied to TCP connections. Each TCP connection starts with a SYN packet. If the SYN Rate Limits defined for the IPS engine are reached, the IPS engine drops new TCP connections.

Log Compression is useful when the number of Discard logs becomes high (for example, as a result of a SYN flood attack).



**Note:** The SYN Rate Limits and Log Compression settings in the interface properties override the general SYN Rate Limits and Log Compression settings. These settings are defined in the Engine Editor.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single IPS or IPS Cluster and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click a Physical Interface or a VLAN Interface and select **Edit Physical Interface** or **Edit VLAN Interface**.  
The properties dialog box for the interface opens.
- 4) Switch to the **Advanced** tab.
- 5) Select **Override Engine's Default Settings**.  
The options for SYN Rate Limits and Log Compression are enabled.

6) (Optional) Define the **SYN Rate Limits**.



**CAUTION:** The recommended values for the SYN Rate Limits depend on your network environment. If the Custom settings are not carefully configured, the capacity of the engine might suffer or SYN Rate Limits might not work correctly.

7) (Optional) Enable **Log Compression** and enter values for the Discard entries.

Do not enable **Log Compression** if you want all Discard entries to be logged as separate log entries (for example, for reporting purposes or for engine statistics).

By default, each generated Discard log entry is logged separately and displayed as a separate entry in the Logs view. Log Compression settings allow you to define the maximum number of separately logged entries. When the defined limit is reached, a single Discard log entry is logged. The single entry contains information about the total number of the generated Discard log entries. After this, the logging returns to normal and all generated entries are once more logged and displayed separately.

8) Click **OK**.

9) Click **Save and Refresh** to transfer the configuration changes.

#### Related concepts

[Types of traffic inspection interfaces for IPS engines](#) on page 565

#### Related tasks

[Add system communication interfaces for IPS engines](#) on page 559

[Add VLAN Interfaces for IPS engines](#) on page 560

[Configure SYN rate limits for engines](#) on page 685

[Configure log handling settings for engines](#) on page 686

## Select system communication roles for IPS interfaces

You can optionally change which interfaces are used for which types of system communications.


The Interface Options allow you to define:

- Which IP addresses are used as the primary and backup Control IP address
- Which interfaces are used as the primary and backup Heartbeat Interface (IPS Clusters only)
- The default IP address for outgoing traffic


By default, the first IP address you add to a Normal Interface is automatically selected as:

- The primary Control IP address
- The primary Heartbeat Interface (IPS Clusters only)
- The default IP address for outgoing traffic

You can optionally change which interface is used for each of these purposes, and define a backup Control IP address and backup Heartbeat Interface (IPS Clusters only).

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single IPS or IPS Cluster and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces > Interface Options**.
- 3) In the **Interface Options** pane on the right:
  - a) Select the Primary Control IP address for Management Server contact.
  - b) (Optional) Select a Backup Control IP address that is used if the Primary Control IP address is not available.
  - c) Select **Node-Initiated contact to Management Server** if the engine is behind a device that applies dynamic NAT to the inbound management connections or blocks them. When this option is selected, the engine opens a connection to the Management Server and maintains connectivity.
  - d) (IPS Clusters only) Select the **Primary Heartbeat Interface** for communications between the nodes.  
We recommend that you use a Physical Interface, not a VLAN Interface. We strongly recommend that you do not direct any other traffic through this interface. A dedicated network helps ensure reliable and secure operation.  



**CAUTION:** Primary and Backup Heartbeat networks exchange confidential information. If dedicated networks are not possible, configure the cluster to encrypt the exchanged information.

#### Related concepts

[Connect engines to the SMC](#) on page 631

#### Related tasks

[Adjust IPS clustering options](#) on page 680

[Add routes for IPS engines or Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 710

# Configuring interfaces for Layer 2 Firewalls

The interface configuration for Single Layer 2 Firewalls and Layer 2 Firewall Clusters consists of several main steps.

- 1) Add the required number of Physical Interfaces.
- 2) Add the required number of VLAN Interfaces.
- 3) Add IP addresses or a traffic inspection role to the interfaces.
  - IP addresses are required for interfaces that are used for system communications.
  - Interfaces that have a traffic inspection role work transparently in the network and do not have IP addresses.
- 4) Select the interfaces that are used for system communications.

## Related concepts

[Configuring interfaces for Firewalls](#) on page 531

[Configuring interfaces for IPS engines](#) on page 558

[IP addresses for Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 577

[Types of traffic inspection interfaces for Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 580

## Related tasks

[Select system communication roles for Layer 2 Firewall interfaces](#) on page 585

[Add system communication interfaces for Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 574

[Add VLAN interfaces for Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 575

[Add manual ARP entries to NGFW Engines](#) on page 614

## Network interfaces for Layer 2 Firewalls

Depending on whether you are configuring a Single Layer 2 Firewall or a Layer 2 Firewall Cluster, you can configure different types of interfaces for each Interface ID in use.

The network interfaces of a Layer 2 Firewall are identified by Interface IDs. During the configuration in the Management Client, you define the network interfaces of the Layer 2 Firewall. During the engine configuration on the command line, the Interface IDs are mapped to the engine's physical interfaces. You must specify a unique Interface ID for each physical network interface.

You can configure the following types of physical interfaces for each Interface ID in use:

**Table 60: Layer 2 Firewall Interface Types**

Interface Type	Description
Capture Interface	Capture Interfaces are used for listening to traffic that does not flow through the Layer 2 Firewall. They can only be used for capturing network traffic and cannot be used for other purposes.
Inline Interface	Inline Interfaces handle traffic that flows through a Layer 2 Firewall that is in inline mode. They cannot be used for other purposes.
Normal Interface	Normal Interfaces are used for Management communications, sending log event information to the Log Server, and sending TCP Reset responses, as well as for all communications in node-initiated connections. On Layer 2 Firewall Clusters, Normal Interfaces are also used for the heartbeat between the nodes.

## Network interfaces for using Layer 2 Firewalls in Passive Firewall mode

You can configure Layer 2 Firewalls in Passive Firewall mode. In Passive Firewall mode, the engine captures network traffic for inspection but does not actively filter traffic.

The most common way to configure a Layer 2 Firewall in Passive Firewall mode is to define Capture Interfaces for listening to network traffic that does not flow through the Layer 2 Firewall. If you configure only Capture Interfaces, the engine always functions in Passive Firewall mode. You can also use a Layer 2 Firewall that has Inline Interfaces in Passive Firewall mode. To do this, you configure the engine to only log connections.

## Add system communication interfaces for Layer 2 Firewalls

Normal Interfaces are used for communication between the Layer 2 Firewall and the Management Server.

A Physical Interface element corresponds to a network port on the Layer 2 Firewall. By default, the numbering of the Physical Interfaces in the Management Client corresponds to the operating system interface numbering on the engine. For example, Interface ID 0 is mapped to eth0, and Interface ID 1 is mapped to eth1. However, the mapping is not fixed and you can change it through the engine command line.

In a Single Layer 2 Firewall, Normal Interfaces are used for the following types of communication:

- Communication between the Layer 2 Firewall and the Management Server.
- For sending event information and traffic recordings to Log Servers.

In a Layer 2 Firewall Cluster, Normal Interfaces handle all traffic for which the endpoint of the communication is a node itself. Normal Interfaces are used for the following types of communication:

- The Heartbeat communication between the nodes.
- Communication between each individual node and the Management Server.
- For sending event information and traffic recordings to Log Servers.
- For any other traffic between the node itself and some other host.

Each Layer 2 Firewall needs at least one interface for communicating with other SMC components. You can define more than one system communication interface if it is necessary in your network environment. Multiple

Normal Interfaces can be configured for the same physical network interface. It is recommended to create a separate Normal Interface for each of the following uses:

- For communication with the Management Server.
- For sending event information and traffic recordings to Log Servers.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single Layer 2 Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall Cluster and select **Edit <element type>**. The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.
- 3) In the **Interfaces** pane on the right, right-click the empty space and select **New Physical Interface**.
- 4) Define the Physical Interface properties. Select **Normal Interface** as the **Type**.



**CAUTION:** Make sure that you set the Interface speed correctly if you enter a Throughput value for QoS. When the bandwidth is set, the Layer 2 Firewall always scales the total amount of traffic on this interface to the bandwidth you defined. The bandwidth is scaled even if there are no bandwidth limits or guarantees defined for any traffic.

- 5) Click **OK**. The Physical Interface is added to the interface list.
- 6) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - If the system communications must use a particular VLAN on the directly connected network segment, add VLAN interfaces.
  - Otherwise, add IP addresses to the system communication interfaces.

#### Related concepts

[Creating engine elements](#) on page 464

[Editing existing engine elements](#) on page 489

[IP addresses for Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 577

[Defining Zone elements](#) on page 897

[Quality of Service \(QoS\) and how it works](#) on page 947

#### Related tasks

[Configure advanced properties for Layer 2 Firewall interfaces](#) on page 584

## Add VLAN interfaces for Layer 2 Firewalls

VLANs divide a single physical network link into several virtual links.

VLANs divide a single physical network link into several virtual links. VLANs can be defined for both single and clustered Layer 2 Firewalls. The maximum number of VLANs for a single Physical Interface or Inline Interface


is 4094. The VLANs must also be defined in the configuration of the switch or router to which the interface is connected.

Traffic picked up from a VLAN tagged interface can be inspected without configuring VLAN tagging on the Layer 2 Firewall. However, you must configure VLANs on the Layer 2 Firewall if you want to create different traffic inspection rules for different VLANs. Even then, not all VLANs necessarily have to be specified on the Layer 2 Firewall. VLANs can optionally also be used for sending the Layer 2 Firewall's management and logging connections through a directly connected VLAN segment.

By default, all VLAN traffic is inspected in the same way as non-VLAN traffic. Configure VLAN Interfaces for the physical interfaces if you want to customize traffic inspection for the different VLANs. The traffic inspection is customized for the VLANs by defining different Logical Interfaces for the different VLAN Interfaces. The Logical Interface elements are then used in the Layer 2 Firewall Policy rules to define which rules are used for which VLANs.

If the Layer 2 Firewall encounters unknown VLANs, it might or might not inspect the traffic. The **Inspect Unspecified VLANs** option in the Inline Interface definitions defines whether the Layer 2 Firewall inspects the traffic. By default, the option is set so that all traffic is inspected.

When you use VLANs with Inline Interfaces, the interface numbers must be different and the VLAN identifier must be identical in both of the Inline Interfaces. For example, 3.101 and 4.101 would be a valid pair of VLAN Inline Interfaces. Also, when a VLAN Interface is used for an Inline Interface, it cannot be simultaneously used for any other types of interfaces.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single Layer 2 Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall Cluster and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click a Physical Interface and select **New > VLAN Interface**.
- 4) Define the VLAN Interface properties.



**CAUTION:** The throughput for each VLAN Interface must not be higher than the throughput for the Physical Interface to which the VLAN Interface belongs.



**CAUTION:** Make sure that you set the interface speed correctly. When the bandwidth is set, the Layer 2 Firewall always scales the total amount of traffic on this interface to the bandwidth you defined. The bandwidth is scaled even if there are no bandwidth limits or guarantees defined for any traffic.



**CAUTION:** The MTU for each VLAN Interface must not be higher than the MTU for the Physical Interface to which the VLAN Interface belongs.

- 5) Click **OK**.  
The specified VLAN ID is added to the Physical Interface.
- 6) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - If you added a VLAN Interface to a Normal interface, add IP addresses to the VLAN Interface.



- If you added a VLAN Interface to an Inline Interface, the Inline Interface is ready to use. Click **Save and Install** to activate the new interface configuration.

#### Related concepts

[IP addresses for Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 577

[Types of traffic inspection interfaces for Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 580

[Defining Zone elements](#) on page 897

[Quality of Service \(QoS\) and how it works](#) on page 947

#### Related tasks

[Add system communication interfaces for Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 574

[Configure advanced properties for Layer 2 Firewall interfaces](#) on page 584

## IP addresses for Layer 2 Firewalls

You can add IP addresses to system communication interfaces on Layer 2 Firewalls.

A Layer 2 Firewall's system communication interfaces (Normal interfaces) can have the following types of IP addresses:

- A Physical Interface can have one or more static or dynamic IP addresses. A Physical Interface can have multiple dynamic IP addresses only if you add VLAN Interfaces on the Physical Interface and the VLAN Interfaces have dynamic IP addresses. Otherwise, a Physical Interface can only have a single dynamic IP address.
- A VLAN Interface can have one or more static IP addresses or a single dynamic IP address.

You might need to define a contact address if you enter a private static address and NAT is used to translate it to a different external IP address. The external IP address must be configured as the contact address if other SMC components need to use the external IP address to contact the engine.

#### Related concepts

[Define contact IP addresses](#) on page 129


#### Related tasks

[Add IPv4 and IPv6 addresses to Single Layer 2 Firewall interfaces](#) on page 578


[Add IPv4 and IPv6 addresses to Layer 2 Firewall Cluster interfaces](#) on page 579

# Add IPv4 and IPv6 addresses to Single Layer 2 Firewall interfaces

You can add IPv4 and IPv6 addresses to system communication interfaces on Single Layer 2 Firewalls.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single Layer 2 Firewall and select **Edit Single Layer 2 Firewall**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click a Physical Interface or a VLAN Interface and select **New > IPv4 Address** or **New > IPv6 Address**.
- 4) Configure the IPv4 or IPv6 address settings in one of the following ways:
  - Select **Static** and enter the IPv4 Address or IPv6 Address. The Network Settings are automatically entered.

 **Tip:** To resolve the IP address from a DNS name, right-click the field, then select **Resolve From DNS Name**.

  - Select **Dynamic** and select the DHCP index from the **Dynamic Index** drop-down list if the interface gets its IP address from a DHCP server. The DHCP Index is a number for your own reference to identify the DHCP interface.
- 5) (IPv4 addresses and dynamic IPv6 addresses only) If necessary, define the contact address information.
  - Enter the default contact address or select **Dynamic** (next to the **Default** field) if the interface has a dynamic contact address. The default contact address is used by default whenever a component that belongs to another Location connects to this interface.
  - If components from some Locations cannot use the default contact address, click **Exceptions** to define Location-specific contact addresses.
- 6) (Static IPv4 addresses only) The **Netmask** field is automatically populated. Adjust it as necessary.
- 7) (Static IPv6 addresses only) The **Prefix Length** field is automatically populated. Adjust it as necessary.
- 8) (Optional) Configure additional features for this interface:
  - (Dynamic IPv4 or IPv6 addresses only) If you do not want a default route to be created through the interface, deselect **Automatic Default Route**.
  - (Dynamic IPv6 addresses only) If you want to use DHCPv6 to get the IPv6 address, select **Use DHCPv6 to get IPv6 Address**.
- 9) Click **OK**.
- 10) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - If you are defining a new Layer 2 Firewall element, add traffic inspection interfaces.

- If you are editing an existing Layer 2 Firewall element, select system communication roles for Layer 2 Firewall interfaces.

### Related concepts

[Types of traffic inspection interfaces for Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 580


### Related tasks

[Define contact addresses for a single engine or a Cluster Virtual IP Address](#) on page 132

[Select system communication roles for Layer 2 Firewall interfaces](#) on page 585

## Add IPv4 and IPv6 addresses to Layer 2 Firewall Cluster interfaces

You can add IPv4 and IPv6 addresses to system communication interfaces on Layer 2 Firewall Clusters.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Layer 2 Firewall Cluster and select **Edit Layer 2 Firewall Cluster**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.
- 3) Right-click a physical interface or a VLAN interface and add the IP address in one of the following ways:
  - To add an IPv4 address, select **New > IPv4 Address**
  - To add an IPv6 address, select **New > IPv6 Address**
- 4) Click the **IPv4 Address** or **IPv6 Address** cell in the table and enter the IP address for each node.



**Tip:** To resolve the IP address from a DNS name, right-click the field, then select **Resolve From DNS Name**.

- 5) (IPv4 addresses only) If necessary, double-click the **Contact Address** cell in the table and define the contact address for each node.
  - In the **Default** field at the top of the dialog box, enter the default contact address. The default contact address is used by default whenever a component that belongs to another Location connects to this interface.
  - If components from some Locations cannot use the default contact address, click **Add** to define Location-specific contact addresses.
- 6) (IPv4 addresses only) Check the automatically filled-in **Netmask** and adjust it as necessary.
- 7) (IPv6 addresses only) Check the automatically filled-in **Prefix Length** and adjust it as necessary.
- 8) Click **OK**.

- 9) Click  Save.
- 10) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - If you are creating a new Layer 2 Firewall Cluster element, add traffic inspection interfaces.
  - If you are editing an existing Layer 2 Firewall Cluster element, select system communication roles for IPS interfaces.

#### Related tasks

[Define contact addresses for an IPS Cluster or a Layer 2 Firewall Cluster](#) on page 134

[Select system communication roles for Layer 2 Firewall interfaces](#) on page 585

## Types of traffic inspection interfaces for Layer 2 Firewalls

Capture Interfaces and Inline Interfaces on Layer 2 Firewalls pick up traffic for inspection.

Layer 2 Firewalls inspect network traffic. Layer 2 Firewalls are typically installed inline, directly on the traffic path so that traffic must always pass through the Layer 2 Firewall engine to reach its destination. Only traffic that attempts to pass through *Inline Interfaces* can be actively filtered.

You can also configure a Layer 2 Firewall in Passive Firewall mode. In Passive Firewall mode, a Layer 2 Firewall has *Capture Interfaces* defined for inspections that listen to and log network traffic.

Connections picked up through *Capture Interfaces* can be reset through specially set-up Reset Interfaces. Capture Interfaces and Inline Interfaces can be defined on the same Layer 2 Firewall and used simultaneously.

*Logical Interface* elements allow you to group interfaces together according to network segment. You can then use the Logical Interface elements as matching criteria when you edit the rules in your Layer 2 Firewall policies.

#### Related tasks

[Add Logical Interfaces for IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 565

[Add Capture Interfaces for IPS engines](#) on page 567

[Add Inline Interfaces for IPS engines](#) on page 569

## Add Logical Interfaces for IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls


A Logical Interface is used in IPS Policies and Layer 2 Firewall Policies and in traffic inspection to represent a network segment.

A Logical Interface is used in the Inline Interface and Capture Interface configuration to represent one or more network interfaces. The same Logical Interface cannot be used to represent both Capture Interfaces and Inline Interfaces on the same engine. Otherwise, a Logical Interface can represent any number or combination of physical interfaces or VLAN Interfaces.

Logical Interfaces represent a network segment. Logical Interfaces help limit the scope of your rules. Logical Interfaces can be used in IPS and Layer 2 Firewall Policies to create rules that match based on which interface the traffic was picked up from. For example, you can create a different Logical Interface for each VLAN and use them to create rules that apply only to traffic from a specific VLAN.

A Logical Interface element called **System Communications** is automatically assigned to interfaces that have an IP address that is used as the primary or backup Control IP address. You can use the **System Communications** Logical Interface to represent all Control IP addresses in IPS and Layer 2 Firewall Policies.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements** branch.
- 3) Right-click **Logical Interfaces** and select **New Logical Interface**.
- 4) Enter a **Name** and an optional **Comment** for the new element.
- 5) (Optional) To prevent the engine from seeing a single connection as multiple connections when a switch passes traffic between different VLANs, select the **View Interface as One LAN** option.
- 6) Click **OK**.
- 7) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - Add Reset Interfaces
  - Add Capture Interfaces
  - Add Inline Interfaces

## Add Reset Interfaces for IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls


Reset Interfaces interrupt communications picked up through Capture Interfaces when the traffic matches a rule that terminates connections.

Reset Interfaces can deliver TCP resets and ICMP “destination unreachable” messages to interrupt communications picked up through Capture Interfaces when the traffic matches a rule that terminates connections.

The resets are sent using the source and destination addresses and MAC addresses of the communicating hosts, so an IP address is not mandatory for a Reset Interface. You can optionally add an IP address if you also want to use this interface for system communications.

VLANs are supported for sending resets, but the correct VLAN is selected automatically. The interface you want to use as the Reset Interface must not have any manually added VLAN configuration.

You can also use a system communications interface for sending resets if the resets are routed through that interface and there are no VLANs on the interface.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click an IPS engine or Layer 2 Firewall and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.

- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click the empty space and select **New Physical Interface**.
- 4) Select an **Interface ID**.  
The Interface ID is mapped to a physical network port of the same number during the initial configuration of the engine.
- 5) Select **Normal Interface** as the interface **Type**.
- 6) Click **OK**.  
The Physical Interface is added to the interface list.



**Note:** When you set up the physical network, make sure that the Reset Interface connects to the same networks as the Capture Interfaces.

## Next steps

You are now ready to set up the Capture Interfaces that use this Reset Interface.

# Add Capture Interfaces for Layer 2 Firewalls

Capture Interfaces listen to traffic that is not routed through the Layer 2 Firewall.


You can have as many Capture Interfaces as there are available physical ports on the Layer 2 Firewall engine. External equipment must be set up to mirror traffic to the Capture Interface.

Capture Interfaces are used to configure a Layer 2 Firewall in Passive Firewall mode. In Passive Firewall mode, the Layer 2 Firewall only listens to traffic that does not flow through it.

Capture Interfaces have definitions for the corresponding Logical Interface that the interface belongs to. The Logical Interface represents one or more network interfaces that capture the traffic for inspection. Each Capture Interface is bound to one Logical Interface. More than one Capture Interface can optionally be bound to the same Logical Interface.

You cannot select the same Logical Interface for a Capture Interface and an Inline Interface on the same Layer 2 Firewall.

A Reset Interface can be selected for a Capture Interface to send TCP Reset responses for the traffic captured from the interface. The Reset Interface is a Normal Interface that can reach the communicating components with a TCP Reset (for example, a Normal Interface connected to the monitored network).

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single Layer 2 Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall Cluster and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click the empty space and select **New Physical Interface**.

- 4) Define the interface properties.



**Note:** Select **Capture Interface** as the interface **Type**.

- 5) Click **OK** to save the interface settings.
- 6) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - If you are creating a new Layer 2 Firewall element, select system communication roles for Layer 2 Firewall interfaces.
  - If you added an interface to an existing Layer 2 Firewall element, click **Save and Refresh** to activate the new interface configuration.

### Related concepts

[Defining Zone elements](#) on page 897

### Related tasks

[Add VLAN interfaces for Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 575

[Add Logical Interfaces for IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 565

[Add Reset Interfaces for IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 566

[Configure advanced properties for Layer 2 Firewall interfaces](#) on page 584

[Select system communication roles for Layer 2 Firewall interfaces](#) on page 585

## Add Inline Interfaces for Layer 2 Firewalls


Inline Interfaces allow traffic to flow through the Layer 2 Firewall, so that traffic that is harmful can be actively filtered out.

An Inline Interface consists of two physical interfaces or two VLANs. This way, the Layer 2 Firewall can inspect the traffic coming from one interface and either stop the traffic or send it out through the other interface. Traffic that is allowed through is always forwarded from one interface to the other (there is no routing decision involved in the interface selection).

In addition to the Interface IDs, Inline Interfaces also have definitions for the corresponding Logical Interface that this interface belongs to. A single Logical Interface can represent one or more pairs of Inline Interfaces. The Logical Interface element can be used to represent the interfaces in the Layer 2 Firewall Policy. You cannot select the same Logical Interface for a Capture Interface and an Inline Interface on the same Layer 2 Firewall.

Some Forcepoint NGFW appliances have a fail-open network card, so the Inline Interfaces must be configured for those specific ports. Inline Interfaces do not have an IP address or a MAC address visible to the network.

The number of Inline Interfaces you can configure is limited by the Layer 2 Firewall's license.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single Layer 2 Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall Cluster and select **Edit <element type>**. The Engine Editor opens.

- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click the empty space and select **New Physical Interface**.
- 4) Define the interface properties.



**Note:** Select **Inline Interface** as the interface **Type**.

- 5) Click **OK** to save the interface settings.
- 6) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - If you are creating a new Layer 2 Firewall element, select system communication roles for Layer 2 Firewall interfaces.
  - If you added an interface to an existing Layer 2 Firewall element, click **Save and Refresh** to activate the new interface configuration.

#### Related concepts

[Defining Zone elements](#) on page 897

[Quality of Service \(QoS\) and how it works](#) on page 947

#### Related tasks

[Add VLAN interfaces for Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 575

[Add Logical Interfaces for IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 565

[Select system communication roles for Layer 2 Firewall interfaces](#) on page 585

## Configure advanced properties for Layer 2 Firewall interfaces

Advanced settings allow you to configure SYN Rate Limits and Log Compression on the Layer 2 Firewall's interfaces.


SYN Rate Limits are applied to TCP connections. Each TCP connection starts with a SYN packet. If the SYN Rate Limits defined for the Layer 2 Firewall are reached the Layer 2 Firewall drops new TCP connections.

Log Compression is useful when the number of Discard logs becomes high (for example, as a result of a SYN flood attack).



**Note:** The SYN Rate Limits and Log Compression settings in the interface properties override the Layer 2 Firewall's general SYN Rate Limits and Log Compression settings that are defined on the **Advanced** tab in the Layer 2 Firewall and Layer 2 Firewall Cluster properties.




**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Layer 2 Firewall and select **Edit Layer 2 Firewall**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click a Physical Interface or a VLAN Interface and select **Edit Physical Interface** or **Edit VLAN Interface**.  
The properties dialog box for the interface opens.
- 4) Switch to the **Advanced** tab.
- 5) Select **Override Engine's Default Settings**.  
The options for SYN Rate Limits and Log Compression are enabled.
- 6) (Optional) Define the **SYN Rate Limits**.



**CAUTION:** The recommended values for the SYN Rate Limits depend on your network environment. If the Custom settings are not carefully configured, the capacity of the engine might suffer or SYN Rate Limits might not work correctly.

- 7) (Optional) Enable **Log Compression** and enter values for the Discard entries.  
Do not enable **Log Compression** if you want all the Discard entries to be logged as separate log entries (for example, for reporting purposes or for engine statistics).  
  
By default, each generated Discard log entry is logged separately and displayed as a separate entry in the Logs view. Log Compression settings allow you to define the maximum number of separately logged entries. When the defined limit is reached, a single Discard log entry is logged. The single entry contains information on the total number of the generated Discard log entries. After this, the logging returns to normal and all the generated entries are once more logged and displayed separately.
- 8) Click **OK**.
- 9) Click  **Save and Refresh** to transfer the configuration changes.

#### Related tasks

[Configure SYN rate limits for engines](#) on page 685

[Configure log handling settings for engines](#) on page 686

## Select system communication roles for Layer 2 Firewall interfaces

Interface options allow you to select which interfaces are used for which types of system communications.


You can define the following settings for system communication:

- Which IP addresses are used as the primary and backup Control IP address
- Which interfaces are used as the primary and backup Heartbeat Interface (Layer 2 Firewall Clusters only)
- The default IP address for outgoing traffic

By default, the first IP address you add to a Normal Interface is automatically selected for the following roles:

- As the primary Control IP address
- As the primary Heartbeat Interface (Layer 2 Firewall Clusters only)
- As the default IP address for outgoing traffic

You can optionally change which physical interface is used for each of these purposes. You can also define a backup Control IP address and backup Heartbeat Interface (Layer 2 Firewall Clusters only).

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single Layer 2 Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall Cluster and select **Edit <element type>**. The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces > Interface Options**.
- 3) In the **Interface Options** pane on the right:
  - a) Select the Primary Control IP address for Management Server contact.
  - b) (Optional) Select a Backup Control IP address that is used if the Primary Control IP address is not available.
  - c) If the engine is behind a device that applies dynamic NAT to the inbound management connections or blocks them, select **Node-Initiated contact to Management Server**. When this option is selected, the engine opens a connection to the Management Server and maintains connectivity.
  - d) (Layer 2 Firewall Clusters only) Select the primary Heartbeat Interface for communications between the nodes.

We recommend that you use a Physical Interface, not a VLAN Interface. We strongly recommend that you do not direct any other traffic through this interface. A dedicated network helps guarantee reliable and secure operation.



**CAUTION:** Primary and Backup Heartbeat networks exchange confidential information. If dedicated networks are not possible, configure the cluster to encrypt the exchanged information.

- e) (Layer 2 Firewall Clusters only) Select a backup Heartbeat Interface that is used if the Primary Heartbeat Interface is unavailable.

It is not mandatory to configure a backup Heartbeat Interface, but we strongly recommend it. If heartbeat traffic is not delivered, the cluster cannot operate and traffic is disturbed. We strongly recommend that you use a dedicated interface for the backup heartbeat as well.
  - f) In the **Default IP Address for Outgoing Traffic** field, select the IP address that the nodes use if they initiate connections through an interface that has no Node Dedicated IP Address.
- 4) Click **OK**.
  - 5) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:

- If you are creating a new Layer 2 Firewall element, configure the routing.
- Otherwise, click **Save and Refresh** to transfer the configuration changes.

**Related concepts**

[Connect engines to the SMC on page 631](#)

**Related tasks**

[Adjust Layer 2 Firewall clustering options on page 680](#)

[Add routes for IPS engines or Layer 2 Firewalls on page 710](#)

# Configuring interfaces for Master NGFW Engines

Master NGFW Engines can have two types of interfaces: interfaces for the Master NGFW Engine's own traffic, and interfaces that are used by the Virtual NGFW Engines hosted on the Master NGFW Engine.

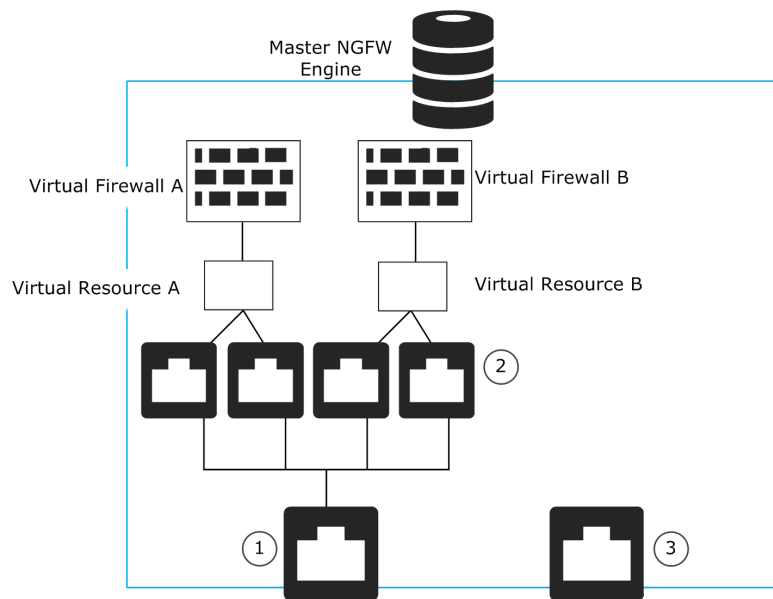
You can add Physical Interfaces and VLAN Interfaces to a Master NGFW Engine. If you want to use a Physical Interface or VLAN Interface to host a Virtual NGFW Engine, you must select a Virtual Resource for the interface. The same Virtual Resource can be used on more than one Master NGFW Engine interface to allocate multiple interfaces to the same Virtual NGFW Engine. If you want the Virtual NGFW Engine to have multiple interfaces, you must use the same Virtual Resource on more than one Master NGFW Engine interface.

If you want to use a Physical Interface or VLAN Interface for the Master NGFW Engine's own traffic, you must not select a Virtual Resource for the interface. You can configure several IPv4 addresses on each Physical Interface or VLAN Interface that does not have a Virtual Resource associated with it. The interfaces for the Master NGFW Engine's own traffic are only used for system communications.

By default, the Physical Interface definitions for the Master NGFW Engine are mapped to the actual network interfaces on the Master NGFW Engine hardware in numerical order. If necessary, you can change the mapping using command-line tools on the Master NGFW Engine. This mapping can be done differently from one Master NGFW Engine node to another. Make sure that the interface that represents the same network interface on each Master NGFW Engine node is correctly cabled to the same network.

## Interfaces for Master NGFW Engines and Virtual Firewalls

**Figure 76: Master NGFW Engine and Virtual Firewall architecture**

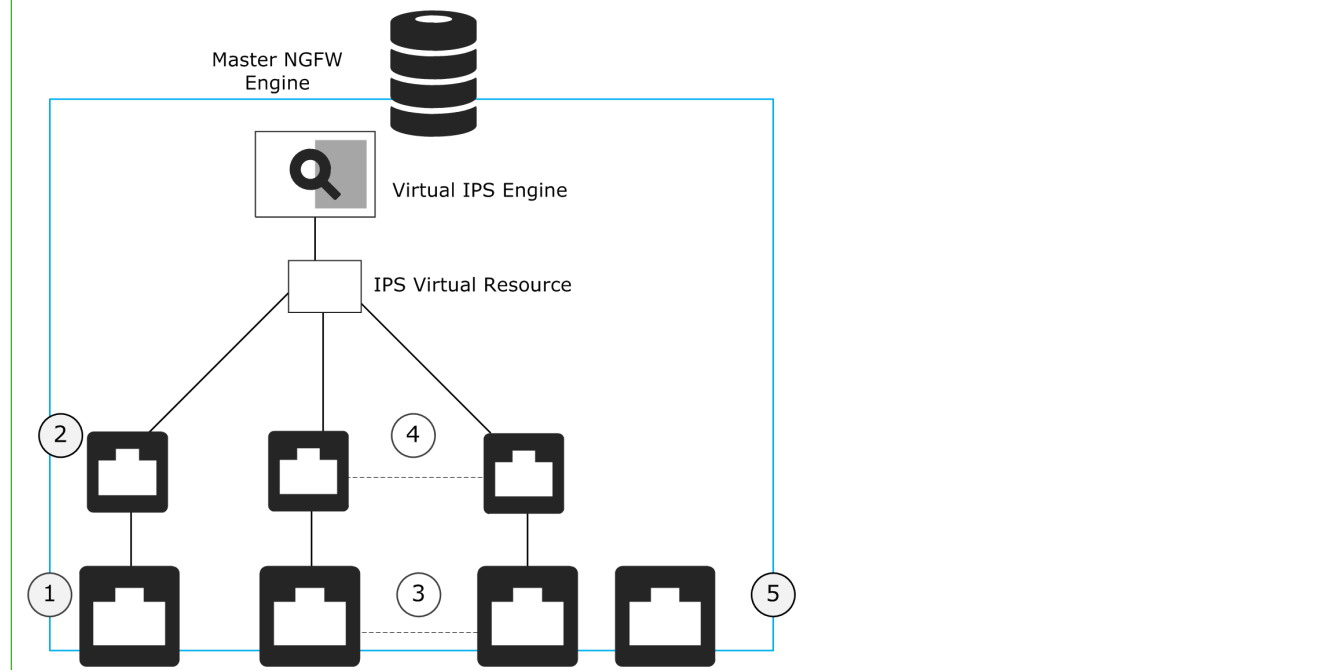


In this example, the Master NGFW Engine has the following kinds of interfaces:

- 1) Physical Interface for hosted Virtual Firewall traffic.
- 2) VLAN Interfaces for hosted Virtual Firewall traffic.
- 3) Physical Interface for the Master NGFW Engine's own traffic.

## Interfaces for Master NGFW Engines and Virtual IPS engines

Figure 77: Master NGFW Engine and Virtual IPS engine architecture

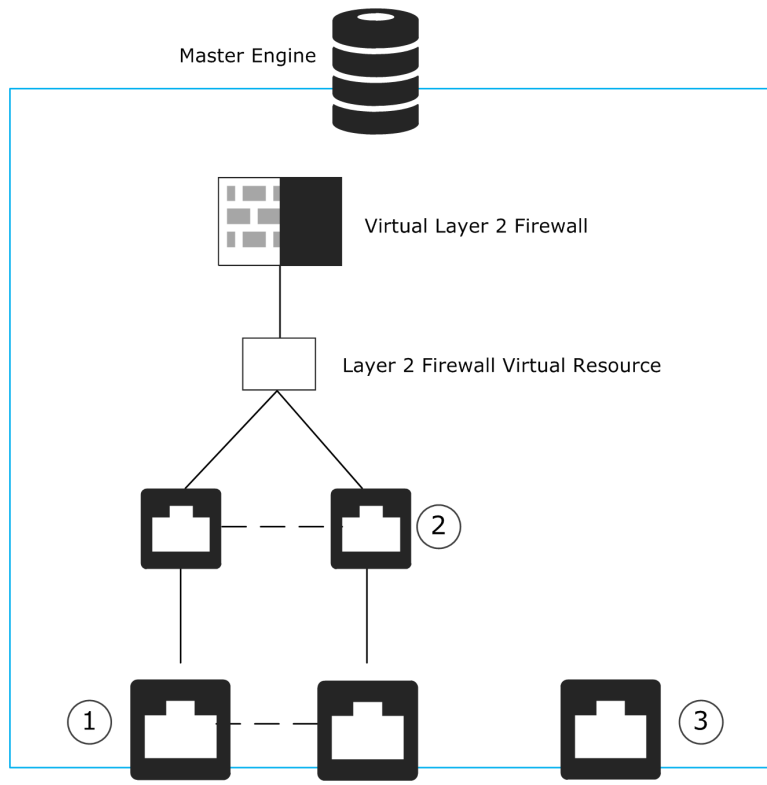


In this example, the Master NGFW Engine has the following kinds of interfaces:

- 1) Capture Interface for hosted Virtual IPS engine traffic.
- 2) VLAN Interface for hosted Virtual IPS engine traffic.
- 3) Inline Interface pair for hosted Virtual IPS engine traffic.
- 4) Inline VLAN Interface pair for hosted Virtual IPS engine traffic.
- 5) Normal Interface for the Master NGFW Engine's own traffic.

## Interfaces for Master NGFW Engines and Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls

Figure 78: Master NGFW Engine and Virtual Layer 2 Firewall architecture



In this example, the Master NGFW Engine has the following kinds of interfaces:

- 1) Inline Interface for hosted Virtual Layer 2 Firewall traffic.
- 2) Inline VLAN Interface for hosted Virtual Layer 2 Firewall traffic.
- 3) Normal Interface for the Master NGFW Engine's own traffic.

## Master NGFW Engine interface configuration overview

The interface configuration for Master NGFW Engines consists of several main steps.

Follow these general steps to configure Master NGFW Engine interfaces:

- 1) Define the required number of Physical Interfaces.
- 2) (Optional) Add the required number of VLANs.
- 3) Add IP addresses to the System Communication interfaces.
  - IP addresses are required for interfaces that are used for system communications.

- You cannot add both an IP address and a Virtual Resource to the same Physical Interface or VLAN Interface.

4) Select which interfaces are used for different types of system communications.

### Related concepts

[Configuring interfaces for Firewalls](#) on page 531

[Configuring interfaces for IPS engines](#) on page 558

[Configuring interfaces for Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 573

[Configuring interfaces for Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 602

### Related tasks

[Add VLAN interfaces to Master NGFW Engines](#) on page 596

[Add IPv4 and IPv6 addresses to Master NGFW Engine interfaces](#) on page 598

[Select system communication roles for Master NGFW Engine interfaces](#) on page 600

[Add manual ARP entries to NGFW Engines](#) on page 614

## Add system communication interfaces for Master NGFW Engines

You must add at least one Physical Interface for the Master NGFW Engine's own communications.

*Physical Interfaces* correspond to network ports on the Master NGFW Engine. By default, the numbering of the Physical Interfaces in the Management Client corresponds to the operating system interface numbering on the engine. For example, Interface ID 0 is mapped to eth0, and Interface ID 1 is mapped to eth1. However, the mapping is not fixed and you can change it through the engine command line.

The types of Physical Interfaces that you can define for the Master NGFW Engine's own communications depend on the role of the hosted Virtual NGFW Engines:

**Table 61: Master NGFW Engine interface types for system communication**

Hosted Virtual NGFW Engine Role	Master NGFW Engine Interface Type	Explanation
Virtual Firewall	None	Corresponds to a single network interface on the Master NGFW Engine appliance.
	Aggregated Link in High Availability Mode	Represents two interfaces on the Master NGFW Engine appliance. Only the first interface in the aggregated link is actively used. The second interface becomes active only if the first interface fails.  If you configure an Aggregated Link in High Availability mode, connect the first interface to one switch and the second interface to another switch.

Hosted Virtual NGFW Engine Role	Master NGFW Engine Interface Type	Explanation
	Aggregated Link in Load Balancing Mode	Represents up to eight interfaces on the Master NGFW Engine appliance. All interfaces in the aggregated link are actively used and connections are automatically balanced between the interfaces.  Link aggregation in the Load Balancing Mode is implemented based on the IEEE 802.3ad Link Aggregation standard. If you configure an Aggregated Link in Load Balancing Mode, connect all interfaces to a single switch. Make sure that the switch supports the Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) and that LACP is configured on the switch.
Virtual IPS	Normal Interface	Corresponds to a single network interface on the Master NGFW Engine appliance. Only Normal Interfaces can be used for Master NGFW Engine system communications when the hosted Virtual NGFW Engines are in the Virtual IPS role.
Virtual Layer 2 Firewall	Normal Interface	Corresponds to a single network interface on the Master NGFW Engine appliance. Only Normal Interfaces can be used for Master NGFW Engine system communications when the hosted Virtual NGFW Engines are in the Virtual Layer 2 Firewall role.


If the Master NGFW Engine is a cluster, it is recommended to add at least two Physical Interfaces for the Master NGFW Engine:

- An interface for communications between the Management Server and the Master NGFW Engine.



**Note:** We recommend that you do not use the IP address of an Aggregated Link interface as the primary or secondary control IP address of the engine.

- An interface for the heartbeat communications between the Master NGFW Engine nodes. The heartbeat traffic is critical to the functioning of the cluster, so it is highly recommended to have a dedicated heartbeat interface.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Master NGFW Engine and select **Edit Master NGFW Engine**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.
- 3) In the **Interfaces** pane on the right, right-click the empty space, then select **New Physical Interface**.
- 4) From the **Type** drop-down list, select the interface type according to the role of the Virtual NGFW Engines that the Master NGFW Engine hosts.



5) Define the Physical Interface properties.

Do not select a Virtual Resource for an interface that is used for the Master NGFW Engine's own communications.



**CAUTION:** Make sure that you set the Interface speed correctly. When the bandwidth is set, the Master NGFW Engine always scales the total amount of traffic on this interface to the bandwidth you defined. The bandwidth is scaled even if there are no bandwidth limits or guarantees defined for any traffic.

6) Click **OK**. The Physical Interface is added to the interface list.

7) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:

- If you want to use VLANs on this Physical Interface, add the VLANs before adding IP addresses.
- Otherwise, add IP addresses directly to the Physical Interfaces for Master NGFW Engine system communications.

#### Related concepts

[Master NGFW Engine Physical Interfaces for hosted Virtual NGFW Engine communications](#) on page 593

[Defining Zone elements](#) on page 897

[Quality of Service \(QoS\) and how it works](#) on page 947

#### Related tasks

[Add VLAN interfaces to Master NGFW Engines](#) on page 596

[Add IPv4 and IPv6 addresses to Master NGFW Engine interfaces](#) on page 598

[Configure advanced properties for Master NGFW Engine interfaces](#) on page 599

## Master NGFW Engine Physical Interfaces for hosted Virtual NGFW Engine communications

The types of Physical Interfaces that you can configure for the Master NGFW Engine depend on the role of the Virtual NGFW Engines that the Master NGFW Engine hosts.


#### Related tasks

[Add Master NGFW Engine Physical Interfaces for hosted Virtual IPS engines](#) on page 594

[Add Master NGFW Engine Physical Interfaces for hosted Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 595

## Add Master NGFW Engine Physical Interfaces for hosted Virtual Firewalls

Master NGFW Engine Physical Interfaces that are used for hosted Virtual Firewall communications can correspond to one or more network ports on the engine.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Master NGFW Engine and select **Edit Master NGFW Engine**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click the empty space and select **New Physical Interface**.
- 4) In the **Type** drop-down list, select **None**, **Aggregated Link in High Availability Mode**, or **Aggregated Link in Load Balancing Mode**.
- 5) Define the Physical Interface properties.



**CAUTION:** Make sure that you set the Interface speed correctly. When the bandwidth is set, the Master NGFW Engine always scales the total amount of traffic on this interface to the bandwidth you defined. The bandwidth is scaled even if there are no bandwidth limits or guarantees defined for any traffic.

- 6) Click **OK**. The Physical Interface is added to the interface list.

#### Related concepts

[Create Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 510


#### Related tasks

[Add IPv4 and IPv6 addresses to Master NGFW Engine interfaces](#) on page 598

[Select Virtual Resources for multiple Master NGFW Engine interfaces](#) on page 601

## Add Master NGFW Engine Physical Interfaces for hosted Virtual IPS engines

Master NGFW Engine Physical Interfaces that are used for hosted Virtual IPS communications can be Capture Interfaces or Inline Interfaces.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Master NGFW Engine and select **Edit Master NGFW Engine**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click the empty space, then select **New Physical Interface**.

- 4) In the **Type** drop-down list, select **Capture Interface** or **Inline Interface**.
- 5) Define the Physical Interface properties.



**Note:** If there are VLAN Interfaces under the Inline Interface, select **Bypass** as the **Failure Mode**.



**CAUTION:** Using Bypass as the Failure Mode requires the Master NGFW Engine appliance to have a fail open network interface card. If the ports that represent the pair of Inline Interface on the appliance cannot fail open, the policy installation fails on the Virtual IPS engine. Bypass mode is not compatible with VLAN retagging. In network environments where VLAN retagging is used, Normal mode is automatically enforced.



**CAUTION:** Make sure that you set the Interface speed correctly. When the bandwidth is set, the Master NGFW Engine always scales the total amount of traffic on this interface to the bandwidth you defined. The bandwidth is scaled even if there are no bandwidth limits or guarantees defined for any traffic.

- 6) Click **OK**. The Physical Interface is added to the interface list.

#### Related concepts

[Create Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 510


#### Related tasks

[Add IPv4 and IPv6 addresses to Master NGFW Engine interfaces](#) on page 598

[Select Virtual Resources for multiple Master NGFW Engine interfaces](#) on page 601

## Add Master NGFW Engine Physical Interfaces for hosted Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls

Master NGFW Engine Physical Interfaces that are used for hosted Virtual Layer 2 Firewall communications can be Capture Interfaces or Inline Interfaces.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Master NGFW Engine and select **Edit Master NGFW Engine**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click the empty space and select **New Physical Interface**.
- 4) In the **Type** drop-down list, select **Capture Interface** or **Inline Interface**.

- 5) Define the Physical Interface properties.



**CAUTION:** Make sure that you set the Interface speed correctly. When the bandwidth is set, the Master NGFW Engine always scales the total amount of traffic on this interface to the bandwidth you defined. The bandwidth is scaled even if there are no bandwidth limits or guarantees defined for any traffic.

- 6) Click **OK**. The Physical Interface is added to the interface list.

#### Related concepts

[Create Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 510

#### Related tasks

[Add IPv4 and IPv6 addresses to Master NGFW Engine interfaces](#) on page 598


[Select Virtual Resources for multiple Master NGFW Engine interfaces](#) on page 601

## Add VLAN interfaces to Master NGFW Engines

Master NGFW Engines can have two types of VLAN interfaces: VLAN interfaces for the Master NGFW Engine's own traffic, and VLAN interfaces that are used by the Virtual NGFW Engines hosted on the Master NGFW Engine.

The maximum number of VLANs for a single physical interface is 4094. The VLANs must also be defined in the configuration of the external switch or router to which the interface is connected.

On Master NGFW Engines that host Virtual IPS engines or Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls, the Virtual NGFW Engines can inspect traffic from VLAN interfaces without configuring VLAN tagging.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Master NGFW Engine and select **Edit Master NGFW Engine**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.
- 3) Right-click a physical interface and select **New > VLAN Interface**.
- 4) To associate the VLAN interface with a Virtual NGFW Engine, select a Virtual Resource from the **Virtual Resource** drop-down list.



**Note:** Do not select a Virtual Resource for a VLAN interface that is used for the Master NGFW Engine's own communications.

5) Define the VLAN interface properties.



**CAUTION:** The throughput for each VLAN interface must not be higher than the throughput for the physical interface to which the VLAN interface belongs.



**CAUTION:** Make sure that you set the interface speed correctly. When the bandwidth is set, the Master NGFW Engine always scales the total amount of traffic on this interface to the bandwidth you defined. The bandwidth is scaled even if there are no bandwidth limits or guarantees defined for any traffic.



**CAUTION:** The MTU for each VLAN interface must not be higher than the MTU for the physical interface to which the VLAN interface belongs.

6) Click **OK**.

The specified VLAN ID is added to the physical interface.

7) Click **Save**.

Do not close the Engine Editor.

## Next steps

Add IP addresses to the physical interfaces or VLAN interfaces for Master NGFW Engine system communications.

### Related concepts

[Defining Zone elements](#) on page 897

[Create Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 510

[Master NGFW Engine Physical Interfaces for hosted Virtual NGFW Engine communications](#) on page 593

[Quality of Service \(QoS\) and how it works](#) on page 947

### Related tasks


[Add IPv4 and IPv6 addresses to Master NGFW Engine interfaces](#) on page 598

[Select Virtual Resources for multiple Master NGFW Engine interfaces](#) on page 601

[Configure advanced properties for Master NGFW Engine interfaces](#) on page 599

# Add IPv4 and IPv6 addresses to Master NGFW Engine interfaces

You can add several IPv4 addresses to each Physical Interface or VLAN Interface that does not have a Virtual Resource associated with it.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Master NGFW Engine and select **Edit Master NGFW Engine**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.
- 3) Right-click a physical interface or a VLAN interface and add the IP address in one of the following ways:
  - To add an IPv4 address, select **New > IPv4 Address**
  - To add an IPv6 address, select **New > IPv6 Address**

- 4) Click the **IPv4 Address** or **IPv6 Address** cell in the table and enter the IP address for each node.



**Tip:** To resolve the IP address from a DNS name, right-click the field, then select **Resolve From DNS Name**.

- 5) (IPv4 addresses only) If necessary, double-click the **Contact Address** cell in the table and define the contact address for each node.
  - In the **Default** field at the top of the dialog box, enter the default contact address. The default contact address is used by default whenever a component that belongs to another Location connects to this interface.
  - If components from some Locations cannot use the default contact address, click **Add** to define Location-specific contact addresses.
- 6) (IPv4 addresses only) Check the automatically filled-in **Netmask** and adjust it as necessary.
- 7) (IPv6 addresses only) Check the automatically filled-in **Prefix Length** and adjust it as necessary.
- 8) Click **OK**.
- 9) Click  **Save**.
- 10) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - If you are configuring a new Master NGFW Engine, or if you want to change the roles the different interfaces have in the configuration, select system communication roles for Master NGFW Engine interfaces.
  - Otherwise, refresh the policy to transfer the configuration changes.

## Related concepts

[Define contact IP addresses](#) on page 129

**Related tasks**

Select system communication roles for Master NGFW Engine interfaces on page 600

## Configure advanced properties for Master NGFW Engine interfaces

Advanced settings allow you to configure SYN Rate Limits and Log Compression for interfaces that are used for the Master NGFW Engine's own traffic.

Advanced settings are not available for interfaces that are associated with a Virtual Resource.

SYN Rate Limits are applied to TCP connections. Each TCP connection starts with a SYN packet. If the SYN Rate Limits defined for the Master NGFW Engine are reached, the Master NGFW Engine drops new TCP connections.

By default, each generated Antispoofing and Discard log entry is logged separately and displayed as a separate entry in the Logs view. Log Compression settings allow you to define the maximum number of separately logged entries. When the defined limit is reached, a single antispoofing log entry or Discard log entry is logged. The single entry contains information about the total number of the generated Antispoofing log entries or Discard log entries. After this log entry, the logging returns to normal and all generated entries are once more logged and displayed separately. Log Compression is useful when the routing configuration generates a large volume of antispoofing logs or the number of Discard logs becomes high.



**Note:** The SYN Rate Limits and Log Compression settings in the interface properties override the general SYN Rate Limits and Log Compression settings. These settings are defined in the Engine Editor.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Master NGFW Engine and select **Edit Master NGFW Engine**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click a Physical Interface or a VLAN Interface and select **Edit Physical Interface** or **Edit VLAN Interface**.  
The properties dialog box for the interface opens.
- 4) Switch to the **Advanced** tab.
- 5) Select **Override Engine's Default Settings**.  
The options for SYN Rate Limits and Log Compression are enabled.

6) (Optional) Define the **SYN Rate Limits**.

**CAUTION:** The recommended values for the SYN Rate Limits depend on your network environment. If the Custom settings are not carefully configured, the capacity of the Master NGFW Engine might suffer or SYN Rate Limits might not work correctly.

7) (Optional) Enable **Log Compression** and enter values for the Antispoofing (Master NGFW Engines that host Virtual Firewalls only) entries and for Discard entries.

**Note:** Do not enable Log Compression if you want all Antispoofing and Discard entries to be logged as separate log entries.

8) Click **OK**.

## 9) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:


- If you are configuring a new Master NGFW Engine, or if you want to change the roles the interfaces have in the configuration, select system communication roles for Master NGFW Engine interfaces.
- Otherwise, click **Save and Refresh** to transfer the configuration changes.

**Related tasks**

[Select system communication roles for Master NGFW Engine interfaces](#) on page 600

## Select system communication roles for Master NGFW Engine interfaces

Select which Master NGFW Engine interfaces are used for particular roles in system communications.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

1) Right-click a Master NGFW Engine and select **Edit Master NGFW Engine**.

The Engine Editor opens.

2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces > Interface Options**.3) In the **Interface Options** pane that opens on the right:

- a) From the **Primary** control IP address drop-down list, select the primary control IP address for communications with the Management Server.



**Note:** We recommend that you do not use the IP address of an Aggregated Link interface as the primary or secondary control IP address of the engine.

- b) (Optional, recommended) From the **Backup** control IP address drop-down list, select a backup control IP address for Management Server contact (used if the primary fails).



- c) (Master NGFW Engine Cluster Only) From the **Primary** heartbeat drop-down list, select the primary interface for communications between the nodes.
- We recommend using a physical interface, not a VLAN interface. We strongly recommend that you do not direct any other traffic through this interface. A dedicated network helps guarantee reliable and secure operation.



**CAUTION:** Primary and backup heartbeat networks exchange confidential information. If dedicated networks are not possible, configure the cluster to encrypt the exchanged information.

- d) (Master NGFW Engine Cluster Only) From the **Backup** heartbeat drop-down list, select the backup heartbeat interface that is used if the primary heartbeat interface is unavailable.
- It is not mandatory to configure a backup heartbeat interface, but we strongly recommend it. If heartbeat traffic is not delivered, the cluster cannot operate and traffic is disturbed. We strongly recommend that you use a dedicated interface for the backup heartbeat as well.
- e) In the **Default IP Address for Outgoing Traffic** field, select the IP address that the nodes use if they have to initiate connections through an interface that has no Node Dedicated IP address.

- 4) Click **OK**.
- 5) Click **Save and Refresh**, then close the Engine Editor.

## Next steps

Bind licenses to Master NGFW Engine elements.

### Related concepts

[Create Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 510

[Adjust Master NGFW Engine clustering options](#) on page 681


# Select Virtual Resources for multiple Master NGFW Engine interfaces


You can select the same Virtual Resource for multiple existing Physical Interfaces or VLAN Interfaces on a Master NGFW Engine.

This is especially useful if you want to associate a large number of Master NGFW Engine interfaces with the same Virtual Resource.



**Note:** You cannot select a Virtual Resource for a Physical Interface or VLAN Interface that already has an IP address.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Master NGFW Engine and select **Edit Master NGFW Engine**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Ctrl-select or shift-select multiple Physical Interfaces or VLAN Interfaces.
- 4) Right-click the selected interfaces and select **Select Virtual Resource**.
- 5) Select the Virtual Resource to associate with the interfaces and click **OK**.
- 6) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - If you are configuring a new Master NGFW Engine as part of the configuration process for Virtual NGFW Engines, create the Virtual NGFW Engine elements.
  - Otherwise, click  **Save and Refresh** to transfer the configuration changes.

#### Related concepts

[Create Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 510

[Configuring interfaces for Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 602

# Configuring interfaces for Virtual NGFW Engines

Physical interfaces in the properties of a Virtual NGFW Engine represent interfaces allocated to the Virtual NGFW Engine in the Master NGFW Engine.

All communication between Virtual NGFW Engine and the SMC is proxied by the Master NGFW Engine.

Physical interfaces for Virtual NGFW Engines are automatically created based on the interface configuration in the Master NGFW Engine properties. The number of physical interfaces depends on the number of interfaces allocated to the Virtual NGFW Engine in the Master NGFW Engine. You can optionally edit the automatically created physical interfaces.

You can add VLAN interfaces if the creation of VLAN interfaces for Virtual NGFW Engines is enabled in the Master NGFW Engine properties. On Virtual Firewalls, you can also optionally add tunnel interfaces for the Route-Based VPN.

By default, the interface definitions for the Virtual NGFW Engine are mapped to interfaces on the Master NGFW Engine in the order in which the interfaces are created on the Master NGFW Engine.

The interface configuration for Virtual NGFW Engines consists of the following main steps:

- 1) Edit the automatically created physical interfaces.
- 2) (Optional) Add the required number of VLANs.

- 3) (Optional, Virtual Firewalls only) Define tunnel interfaces for the Route-Based VPN.
- 4) (Virtual Firewalls only) Configure the IP address settings.
- 5) (Optional, Virtual Firewalls only) Define Loopback IP addresses to assign IP addresses that do not belong to any directly connected networks to the virtual firewall.
- 6) (Virtual Firewalls only) Select the interfaces that are used in particular roles.

### Related concepts

[Configuring interfaces for Firewalls](#) on page 531

[Configuring interfaces for IPS engines](#) on page 558

[Configuring interfaces for Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 573

[Master NGFW Engine interface configuration overview](#) on page 590

### Related tasks

[Add IP addresses to Virtual Firewall interfaces](#) on page 608

[Add VLAN interfaces to Virtual NGFW Engine interfaces](#) on page 606

[Add tunnel interfaces for Virtual Firewalls](#) on page 607

[Select additional options for Virtual Firewall interfaces](#) on page 612

[Add loopback IP addresses for Virtual Firewalls](#) on page 613

[Add manual ARP entries to NGFW Engines](#) on page 614

## Configuring Virtual Firewall interfaces

Physical interfaces in the properties of a Virtual Firewall represent interfaces allocated to the Virtual Firewall in the Master NGFW Engine.

All communication between Virtual Firewalls and the SMC is proxied by the Master NGFW Engine. Physical interfaces for the Virtual Firewall are automatically created based on the interface configuration in the Master NGFW Engine properties. The number of physical interfaces depends on the number of interfaces allocated to the Virtual Firewall in the Master NGFW Engine. You can optionally edit the automatically created physical interfaces.

In addition to the automatically created physical interfaces, you can add the following types of interfaces to Virtual Firewalls:

- You can add VLAN interfaces if the creation of VLAN interfaces for Virtual Firewalls is enabled in the Master NGFW Engine Properties.
- You can optionally add tunnel interfaces for the Route-Based VPN.

Both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported on Virtual Firewalls. You can define one or more static IP addresses for Virtual Firewall interfaces.

You can optionally add loopback IP addresses to the Virtual Firewall. Loopback IP addresses allow you to assign IP addresses that do not belong to any directly connected networks to the Virtual Firewall. Loopback IP addresses are not connected to any physical interface and they do not create connectivity to any network. Any IP address that is not already used on another physical or VLAN interface in the same Virtual Firewall can be used as a loopback IP address. The same IP address can be used as a loopback IP address and as the IP address of a tunnel interface. Loopback IP addresses can be used as the Identity for Authentication Requests, the Source for Authentication Requests, and the Default IP Address for Outgoing Traffic.

By default, the interface definitions for the Virtual Firewall are mapped to interfaces on the Master NGFW Engine in the order in which the interfaces are created on the Master NGFW Engine.

## Configuring Virtual IPS interfaces

---

Physical Interfaces in the properties of a Virtual IPS engine represent interfaces allocated to the Virtual IPS in the Master NGFW Engine.

All communication between Virtual IPS engines and the SMC is proxied by the Master NGFW Engine. Physical Interfaces for the Virtual IPS engine are automatically created based on the interface configuration in the Master NGFW Engine properties. The number of Physical Interfaces depends on the number of interfaces allocated to the Virtual IPS engine in the Master NGFW Engine. You can optionally edit the automatically created Physical Interfaces. In addition to the automatically created Physical Interfaces, you can add VLAN Interfaces if the creation of VLAN Interfaces for Virtual IPS engines is enabled in the Master NGFW Engine properties. By default, the interface definitions for the Virtual IPS engine are mapped to interfaces on the Master NGFW Engine in the order in which the interfaces are created on the Master NGFW Engine.

## Configuring Virtual Layer 2 Firewall interfaces

---

Physical Interfaces in the properties of a Virtual Layer 2 Firewall represent interfaces allocated to the Virtual Layer 2 Firewall in the Master NGFW Engine.


All communication between Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls and the SMC is proxied by the Master NGFW Engine. Physical Interfaces for the Virtual Layer 2 Firewall are automatically created based on the interface configuration in the Master NGFW Engine properties. The number of Physical Interfaces depends on the number of interfaces allocated to the Virtual Layer 2 Firewall in the Master NGFW Engine. You can optionally edit the automatically created Physical Interfaces. In addition to the automatically created Physical Interfaces, you can add VLAN Interfaces to Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls if the creation of VLAN Interfaces for Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls is enabled in the Master NGFW Engine Properties. The interface definitions for the Virtual Layer 2 Firewall are mapped to interfaces on the Master NGFW Engine in the order in which the interfaces are created on the Master NGFW Engine.

## Change the properties of physical interfaces for Virtual NGFW Engines

---

Physical interfaces for Virtual NGFW Engines are automatically created based on the interface configuration of the Master NGFW Engine.

The number of physical interfaces depends on the number of interfaces allocated to the Virtual NGFW Engine in the Master NGFW Engine. It is not recommended to add physical interfaces to Virtual NGFW Engines, as the interfaces might not be valid. You can change the automatically created physical interfaces.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Virtual Firewall, Virtual IPS engine, or Virtual Layer 2 Firewall and select **Edit <element type>**. The Engine Editor opens.

- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click a physical interface and select **Edit Physical Interface**.
- 4) Define the physical interface properties.



**Note:** You cannot use the same logical interface element for both inline and capture interfaces on the same Virtual IPS engine or Virtual Layer 2 Firewall.



**CAUTION:** The throughput for the Virtual Firewall physical interface must not be higher than the throughput for the Master NGFW Engine interface that hosts the Virtual Firewall. Contact the administrator of the Master NGFW Engine before changing this setting.



**CAUTION:** Make sure that you set the interface speed correctly. When the bandwidth is set, the Virtual NGFW Engine always scales the total amount of traffic on this interface to the bandwidth you defined. The bandwidth is scaled even if there are no bandwidth limits or guarantees defined for any traffic.

- 5) Click **OK**.
- 6) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - If you want to use VLANs, add the VLANs before adding IP addresses.
  - (Virtual Firewall only) If you want to use the Route-Based VPN, add tunnel interfaces.
  - (Virtual Firewall only) Otherwise, add IP addresses directly to the physical interfaces.
  - Otherwise, click **Save and Refresh** to transfer the configuration changes.

### Related concepts

[Create Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 510  
[Adding routes for Master NGFW Engines](#) on page 706  
[Defining Zone elements](#) on page 897  
[Quality of Service \(QoS\) and how it works](#) on page 947

### Related tasks

[Add Logical Interfaces for IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 565  
[Add VLAN interfaces to Virtual NGFW Engine interfaces](#) on page 606  
[Add tunnel interfaces for Virtual Firewalls](#) on page 607  
[Add IPv4 addresses to Virtual Firewall interfaces](#) on page 609  
[Configure advanced properties for Virtual NGFW Engine interfaces](#) on page 611

# Add VLAN interfaces to Virtual NGFW Engine interfaces

VLANs divide a single physical network link into several virtual links.

VLAN interfaces can only be added for Virtual NGFW Engines if the creation of VLAN interfaces for Virtual Firewalls is enabled in the Master NGFW Engine Properties. The maximum number of VLANs for a single physical interface is 4094. The VLANs must also be defined in the configuration of the external switch or router to which the interface is connected.



**Note:** You cannot add VLAN interfaces on top of other VLAN interfaces. Depending on the configuration of the Master NGFW Engine, you might not be able to create valid VLAN interfaces for the Virtual NGFW Engine. Contact the administrator who configured the Master NGFW Engine.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Virtual Firewall, Virtual IPS engine, or Virtual Layer 2 Firewall and select **Edit <element type>**. The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**. The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click a physical interface and select **New > VLAN Interface**.
- 4) Define the VLAN interface properties.



**CAUTION:** The throughput for the Virtual Firewall physical interface must not be higher than the throughput for the Master NGFW Engine interface that hosts the Virtual Firewall. Contact the administrator of the Master NGFW Engine before changing this setting.



**CAUTION:** Make sure that you set the interface speed correctly. When the bandwidth is set, the Virtual NGFW Engine always scales the total amount of traffic on this interface to the bandwidth you defined. The bandwidth is scaled even if there are no bandwidth limits or guarantees defined for any traffic.

- 5) Click **OK**. The specified VLAN ID is added to the physical interface.
- 6) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - (Virtual Firewall only) If you do not want to add tunnel interfaces for the Route-Based VPN, add IP addresses directly to the physical interfaces.
  - Otherwise, click **Save and Refresh** to transfer the configuration changes.

## Related concepts

[Adding routes for Master NGFW Engines](#) on page 706

[Defining Zone elements](#) on page 897

[Quality of Service \(QoS\) and how it works](#) on page 947

**Related tasks**

[Add Logical Interfaces for IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 565

[Add tunnel interfaces for Virtual Firewalls](#) on page 607

[Add IPv4 addresses to Virtual Firewall interfaces](#) on page 609


[Configure advanced properties for Virtual NGFW Engine interfaces](#) on page 611


## Add tunnel interfaces for Virtual Firewalls

Tunnel interfaces define endpoints for tunnels in the Route-Based VPN.

Any traffic that is routed to a tunnel interface and allowed by the Firewall Access rules is sent into the tunnel.

You can optionally add IPv4 or IPv6 addresses to a tunnel interface. Tunnel interfaces can only have static IP addresses. Any IP address can be added to a tunnel interface, even if the same IP address is used on another interface or as a loopback IP address. Adding an IP address to a tunnel interface allows you to define the source IP address of traffic sent from the engine node itself. For example, an IP address is recommended to provide a source IP address for dynamic routing daemons, for IGMP proxy, and for Protocol Independent Multicast - Sparse-Mode (PIM-SM) configuration. If no IP address is added to the tunnel interface, the source IP address for traffic sent from the engine node is automatically selected. The selection is done according to the **Bypass Default IP Address** setting in the interface Options for the Virtual Firewall.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Virtual Firewall and select **Edit Virtual Firewall**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Click **Add** and select **Tunnel Interface**.
- 4) From the **Tunnel Interface ID** drop-down list, select an ID number.
- 5) Select the network zone to which the tunnel interface belongs from the list or select **Other** to select another Zone. To create a Zone element, select  **Tools > New > Zone**.
- 6) (Optional) From the **QoS Mode** drop-down list, select how QoS is applied to the interface.
- 7) (Full QoS or DSCP Handling and Throttling modes only) Select a QoS Policy for the link on the interface.

- 8) (Full QoS mode only) In the **Throughput** field, enter the throughput for the link on this interface. Enter the throughput as kilobits per second (for example, 2048)



**CAUTION:** The throughput for the Virtual Firewall physical interface must not be higher than the throughput for the Master NGFW Engine interface that hosts the Virtual Firewall. Contact the administrator of the Master NGFW Engine before changing this setting

The throughput is for uplink speed (outgoing traffic) and typically must correspond to the speed of an Internet link (such as an ADSL line), or the combined speeds of several such links when they are connected to a single interface.



**CAUTION:** Make sure that you set the interface speed correctly. When the bandwidth is set, the Virtual NGFW Engine always scales the total amount of traffic on this interface to the bandwidth you defined. The bandwidth is scaled even if there are no bandwidth limits or guarantees defined for any traffic.

- 9) Click **OK**.
- 10) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
- If you are configuring a new Virtual Firewall, add IP addresses directly to the physical interfaces.
  - Otherwise, click **Save and Refresh** to transfer the configuration changes.

#### Related concepts

[Adding routes for Master NGFW Engines](#) on page 706  
[Defining Zone elements](#) on page 897  
[Quality of Service \(QoS\) and how it works](#) on page 947  
[VPNs and how they work](#) on page 1125

#### Related tasks

[Add tunnel interfaces for firewalls](#) on page 540  
[Change the properties of physical interfaces for Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 604  
[Add IPv4 addresses to Virtual Firewall interfaces](#) on page 609  
[Configure advanced properties for Virtual NGFW Engine interfaces](#) on page 611  
[Select additional options for Virtual Firewall interfaces](#) on page 612

## Add IP addresses to Virtual Firewall interfaces

You can add one or more static IP addresses for each Physical Interface, VLAN Interface, or Tunnel Interface on a Virtual Firewall.

Both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported on Virtual Firewalls.

You can optionally add loopback IP addresses to the Virtual Firewall. Loopback IP addresses allow you to assign IP addresses that do not belong to any directly connected networks to the Virtual Firewall. Loopback IP addresses are not connected to any physical interface and they do not create connectivity to any network. Any IP address that is not already used on another Physical or VLAN interface in the same Virtual Firewall can be used as a loopback IP address. The same IP address can be used as a loopback IP address and as the IP address of a Tunnel Interface. Loopback IP addresses can be used as the Identity for Authentication Requests, the Source for Authentication Requests, and the Default IP Address for Outgoing Traffic.



You might need to define a contact address if you enter a private static address and NAT is used to translate it to a different external IP address. The external IP address must be configured as the contact address if the IP address is used as a VPN endpoint.

#### Related concepts

[Define contact IP addresses](#) on page 129


#### Related tasks

[Add IPv4 addresses to Virtual Firewall interfaces](#) on page 609

[Add IPv6 addresses to Virtual Firewall interfaces](#) on page 610

## Add IPv4 addresses to Virtual Firewall interfaces

You can add one or more static IPv4 addresses for Virtual Firewall interfaces.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Virtual Firewall and select **Edit Virtual Firewall**.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.
- 3) Right-click a Physical Interface, VLAN Interface, or Tunnel Interface and select **New > IPv4 Address**.



**Note:** If you have added VLAN Interfaces to Physical Interfaces, add the IPv4 Addresses to the VLAN Interfaces.

- 4) Enter the **IPv4 Address**.



**Tip:** To resolve the IP address from a DNS name, right-click the field, then select **Resolve From DNS Name**.

- 5) If necessary, define the contact address information.
  - Enter the **Default** contact address. The default contact address is used by default whenever a component that belongs to another Location connects to this interface.
  - If components from some Locations cannot use the Default contact address, click **Exceptions** to define Location-specific contact addresses.
- 6) Check the automatically filled-in **Netmask** and adjust it as necessary.
- 7) Click **OK**.
- 8) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - Add IPv6 addresses.
  - If you are creating a new Virtual Firewall, or if you want to change the roles the different interfaces have in the configuration, select interface options for Virtual Firewall interfaces.

- Otherwise, click  **Save and Refresh** to transfer the configuration changes.

### Related concepts


[Define contact IP addresses](#) on page 129

### Related tasks

[Select additional options for Virtual Firewall interfaces](#) on page 612

## Add IPv6 addresses to Virtual Firewall interfaces

You can add one or more static IPv6 addresses for Virtual Firewall interfaces.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Virtual Firewall and select **Edit Virtual Firewall**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click a Physical interface and select **New > IPv6 Address** or right-click a VLAN Interface and select **New IPv6 Address**.  
The **IP Address Properties** dialog box opens.



**Note:** If you have added VLAN Interfaces to Physical Interfaces, add the IPv6 Addresses to the VLAN Interfaces.

- 4) Enter the **IPv6 Address**.




**Tip:** To resolve the IP address from a DNS name, right-click the field, then select **Resolve From DNS Name**.

- 5) Check the automatically filled-in **Prefix Length** and adjust it if necessary by entering a value between 0-128.  
The Network Address is automatically generated.
- 6) Click **OK**.

### Next steps

Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:

- If you are creating a new Virtual Firewall, or if you want to change the roles the different interfaces have in the configuration, select interface options for Virtual Firewall interfaces.
- Otherwise, click  **Save and Refresh** to transfer the configuration changes.

**Related tasks**

Select additional options for Virtual Firewall interfaces on page 612

## Configure advanced properties for Virtual NGFW Engine interfaces

Advanced settings allow you to configure SYN Rate Limits and Log Compression on the interfaces of a Virtual NGFW Engine. You can also configure IPv6 Router Advertisements on a Virtual Firewall's interfaces.


SYN Rate Limits are applied to TCP connections. Each TCP connection starts with a SYN packet. If the SYN Rate Limits defined for the Virtual NGFW Engine are reached, the Virtual NGFW Engine drops new TCP connections.

By default, each generated Antispoofing (Virtual Firewalls only) and Discard log entry is logged separately and displayed as a separate entry in the Logs view. Log Compression settings allow you to define the maximum number of separately logged entries. When the defined limit is reached, a single antispoofing log entry or Discard log entry is logged. The single entry contains information about the total number of the generated Antispoofing log entries or Discard log entries. After this log entry, the logging returns to normal and all generated entries are once more logged and displayed separately. Log Compression is useful when the routing configuration generates a large volume of antispoofing logs or the number of Discard logs becomes high.

Router advertisements are packets that contain network layer configuration parameters. Enabling IPv6 Router Advertisements allows devices that connect to the same IPv6 network as the Virtual Firewall to acquire IP addresses automatically. The Router Advertisement messages specify what configuration information the Virtual Firewall has available



**Note:** The SYN Rate Limits and Log Compression settings in the interface properties override the general SYN Rate Limits and Log Compression settings. These settings are defined in the Engine Editor.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Virtual Firewall, Virtual IPS engine, or Virtual Layer 2 Firewall and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click a Physical Interface or a VLAN Interface and select **Edit Physical Interface** or **Edit VLAN Interface**.  
The properties dialog box for the interface opens.
- 4) Switch to the **Advanced** tab.
- 5) Select **Override Engine's Default Settings**.  
The options for SYN Rate Limits, Log Compression, and IPv6 Router Advertisements are enabled.

- 6) (Optional) Define the **SYN Rate Limits**.



**CAUTION:** The recommended values for the SYN Rate Limits depend on your network environment. If the Custom settings are not carefully configured, the capacity of the engine might suffer or SYN Rate Limits might not work correctly.

- 7) (Optional) Enable **Log Compression** and enter values for the Antispoofing entries (Virtual Firewalls only) and for Discard entries.



**Note:** Do not enable Log Compression if you want all Antispoofing and Discard entries to be logged as separate log entries (for example, for reporting purposes).

- 8) (Optional, Virtual Firewalls only) Select **Send IPv6 Router Advertisements** and specify what configuration information is offered in the Router Advertisement messages.

- 9) Click **OK**.

- 10) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:

- If you are creating a new Virtual Firewall, or if you want to change the roles the different interfaces have in the configuration, select interface options for Virtual Firewall interfaces.
- Otherwise, click **Save and Refresh** to transfer the configuration changes.

#### Related tasks

[Change the properties of physical interfaces for Virtual NGFW Engines](#) on page 604

[Add VLAN interfaces to Virtual NGFW Engine interfaces](#) on page 606

[Add tunnel interfaces for Virtual Firewalls](#) on page 607

[Configure SYN rate limits for engines](#) on page 685

[Configure log handling settings for engines](#) on page 686

## Select additional options for Virtual Firewall interfaces

In the Virtual Firewall's interface options, you can select which IP addresses are used in particular roles. Interface Options can only be configured for Virtual Firewalls.

All communication between Virtual Firewalls and the SMC is proxied by the Master NGFW Engine. Virtual Firewalls do not have any interfaces for system communication.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Virtual Firewall, then select **Edit Virtual Firewall**.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Interfaces > Interface Options**.
- 3) Select the interface options.

- 4) Click **OK**.

## Next steps

Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:

- Add loopback IP addresses for the Virtual Firewall.
- If you are configuring a new Virtual NGFW Engine, click **Save**, close the Engine Editor, then add routes for the Master NGFW Engine.
- Otherwise, click **Save and Refresh** to transfer the configuration changes.

### Related concepts


[Adding routes for Master NGFW Engines](#) on page 706

# Add loopback IP addresses for Virtual Firewalls

Loopback IP addresses allow you to assign IP addresses that do not belong to any directly-connected networks to the Virtual Firewall.

Loopback IP addresses are not connected to any physical interface and they do not create connectivity to any network.

- You can add several loopback IP addresses to each Virtual Firewall.
- Any IP address that is not already used on another Physical or VLAN Interface in the same Virtual Firewall can be used as a loopback IP address.
- The same IP address can be used as a loopback IP address and as the IP address of a Tunnel Interface.
- Loopback IP addresses can be used as the Identity for Authentication Requests, the Source for Authentication Requests, and the Default IP Address for Outgoing Traffic.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Virtual Firewall, then select **Edit Virtual Firewall**.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Interfaces > Loopback**.
- 3) Click **Add**.  
A row is added to the table.
- 4) Click the **Loopback Address** cell, then enter the loopback IP address.



**Note:** If the IP address you want to use as a loopback IP address is already used on another Physical or VLAN interface, you must remove the IP address from the interface configuration before using it as a loopback IP address.

- 5) Click **OK**.

- 6) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - If you are configuring a new Virtual NGFW Engine, click **Save**, close the Engine Editor, then add routes for the Master NGFW Engine.
  - Otherwise, click **Save and Refresh**.

#### Related concepts

[Adding routes for Master NGFW Engines](#) on page 706

## Add manual ARP entries to NGFW Engines

You can add manual ARP entries for IPv4 and neighbor discover entries for IPv6 in the Engine Editor.


ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) entries and neighbor discovery entries are normally managed automatically based on the routing configuration. It is not necessary to add manual ARP entries or neighbor discovery entries unless there are problems with the automatic entries, such as devices that do not respond to gratuitous ARP requests, or that impose a significant delay on such operations.

The manual ARP entries and neighbor discovery entries are generated by the engines regardless of the policy installed on the nodes.

You can configure two kinds of ARP entries:

- A **Static** ARP entry gives the engine a permanent reference to an IP address/MAC address pair.
- A **Proxy** ARP entry gives a Firewall engine a reference to an IP address/MAC address pair for which the Firewall provides proxy ARP. Proxy ARP is possible only for hosts located in networks directly connected to the Firewall.

Firewalls support both static and proxy ARP entries defined with IPv4 and IPv6 addresses. IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewalls, Master NGFW Engines, and Virtual NGFW Engines support only static ARP entries defined with IPv4 addresses.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click an engine element and select **Edit <element type>**.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Interfaces > ARP Entries**.
- 3) To add an ARP entry, click **Add ARP Entry**.
- 4) In the **Type** cell, select the type of ARP entry you want to add.
- 5) In the **Interface ID** cell, select the interface on which you want to apply this ARP entry.
- 6) Double-click the **IP Address** cell, then enter an IPv4 or IPv6 address.
- 7) Double-click the **MAC Address** cell, then enter the MAC Address.

- 8) Click  **Save and Refresh** to transfer the new configuration to the engines.

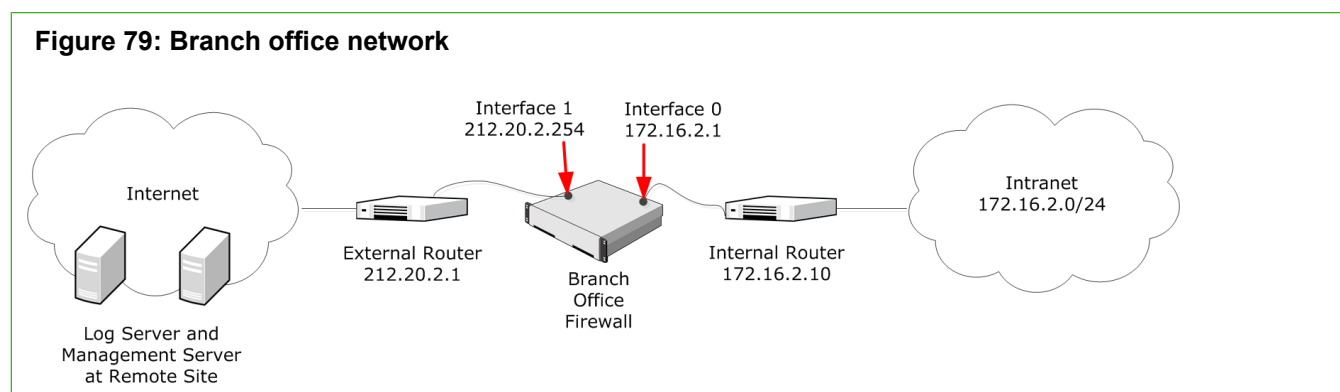
## Examples of Single Firewall interface configuration

These examples illustrate common configurations for a Single Firewall and general overviews of the steps for how each example is configured.

### Example: setting up a Single Firewall

An example of creating a new Single Firewall and configuring the interfaces.

Company A has opened a new branch office. The administrator at the branch office is setting up a Single Firewall in the branch office network.



The Branch Office Firewall has two interfaces with internal and external routers:

- The internal router is connected to Interface ID 0.
- The external router is connected to Interface ID 1.

The SMC has already been installed at the remote site, and the branch office administrator is now ready to install and configure the Single Firewall. The administrator:

- 1) Creates a Single Firewall element (Branch Office Firewall) and defines the Log Server at the remote site as its Log Server.
- 2) Creates an interface for connecting to the internal router and gives it the following properties:
  - Interface ID: 0.
  - IP Address: 172.16.2.1.
- 3) Creates an interface for connecting to the external router and gives it the following properties:
  - Interface ID: 1.
  - IP Address: 212.20.2.254.

- 4) Saves the initial configuration of the Branch Office Firewall on a USB drive.
- 5) Installs the firewall engine in the server room.
- 6) Inserts the USB drive in the firewall, turns it on, and waits until the Management Client shows that contact is established between the engine and the Management Server.
- 7) Checks the routing configuration and adds the first few rules for allowing traffic through the firewall.
- 8) Installs a Firewall Policy using the Management Client to transfer the first working configuration to the firewall.

## Adding a new interface to an existing Single Firewall element

---

An example of adding an interface to a Single Firewall.

In the previous example, the administrator initially configured the firewall at the company's new branch office with just two interfaces. Now the administrator decides to add a physically separated DMZ network for access to/from that office's mail server to properly control both internal and external traffic with this publicly exposed server. The administrator:

- 1) Creates an interface for the DMZ and gives it the following properties:
  - Interface ID: 2
  - IP Address: 192.168.2.1.
- 2) Creates new rules in the firewall's policy to allow traffic to/from the DMZ and NAT rules to translate between the private and public IP address of the mail server.
- 3) Connects the new DMZ router to the firewall.
- 4) Installs a Firewall Policy using the Management Client to transfer the new working configuration to the Firewall.



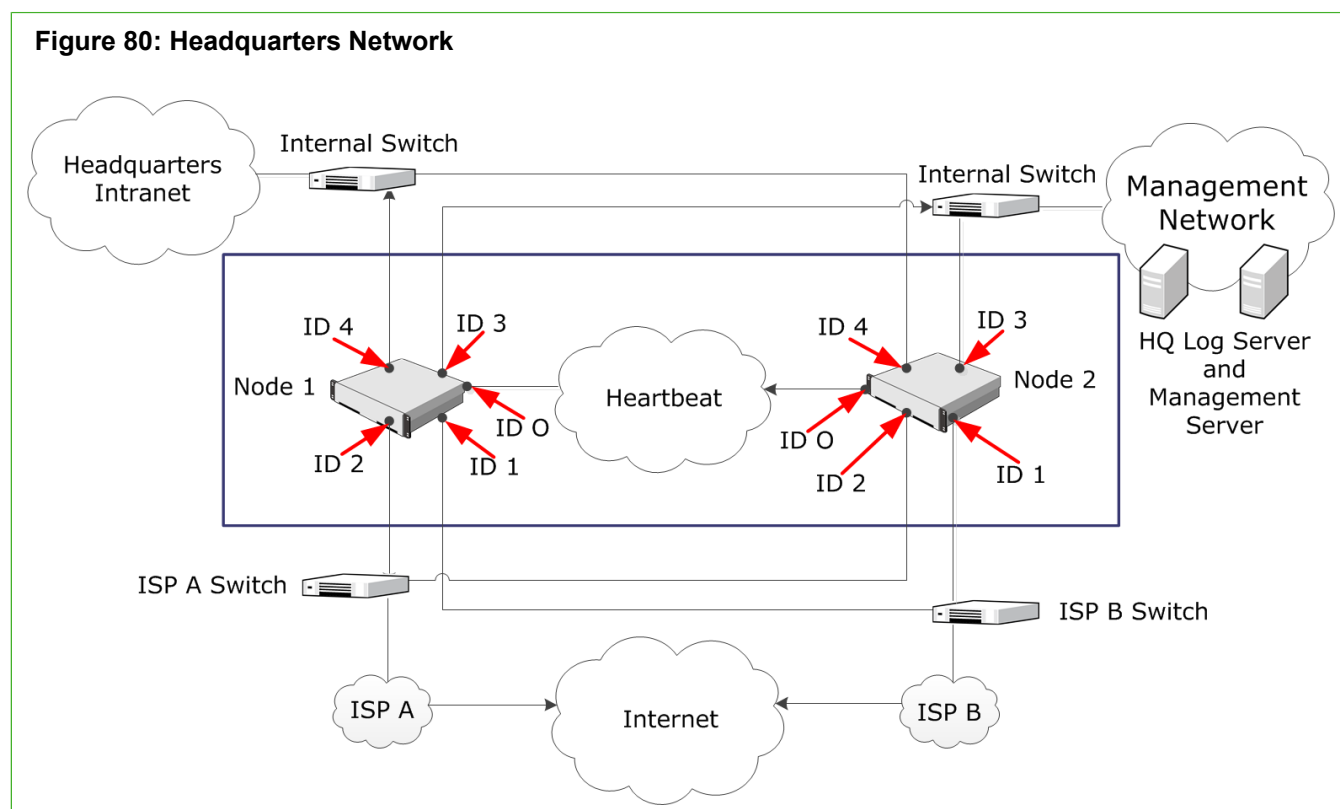
# Examples of Firewall Cluster interface configuration

These examples illustrate the configuration of a Firewall Cluster with general steps for how each example is configured.

## Example: setting up a Firewall Cluster element

An example of creating a Firewall Cluster element and configuring the interfaces.

The administrators at the headquarters of Company A want to set up a Firewall Cluster. The cluster consists of two cluster nodes: Node 1 and Node 2. The HQ Cluster Firewall has a dedicated heartbeat network (10.42.1.0/24), and it is connected to two internal networks: Headquarters Intranet (172.16.1.0/24) and Management Network (192.168.10.0/24). It uses Multi-Link to ISP A and ISP B for its connection to the Internet.



The administrators:

- 1) Create a Firewall Cluster element (HQ Cluster) and define HQ Log as its Log Server.
- 2) Define the physical interfaces 0–4.
- 3) Define the CVIs and NDIs for the physical interfaces. Except for the IP addresses, the node-specific properties for Node 1 and Node 2 are the same.

**Table 62: Cluster Interfaces**

Interface ID	Type	IP Address	Comment
0	NDI for Node1	10.42.1.1	Heartbeat
0	NDI for Node2	10.42.1.2	Heartbeat
1	CVI	129.40.1.254	ISP B
1	NDI for Node1	129.40.1.21	ISP B
1	NDI for Node2	129.40.1.22	ISP B
2	CVI	212.20.1.254	ISP A
2	NDI for Node1	212.20.1.21	ISP A
2	NDI for Node2	212.20.1.22	ISP A
3	CVI	192.168.10.1	Management Network
3	NDI for Node1	192.168.10.21	Management Network
3	NDI for Node2	192.168.10.22	Management Network
4	CVI	172.16.1.1	Headquarters Intranet
4	NDI for Node1	172.16.1.21	Headquarters Intranet
4	NDI for Node2	172.16.1.22	Headquarters Intranet

- 4) Save the initial configuration of the engines in the Management Client.
- 5) Map the interface identifiers in the configuration to the physical interfaces on each engine's command line and establish contact between each engine and the Management Server.
- 6) Install a Firewall Policy on the Firewall Cluster in the Management Client to transfer the working configuration to the firewall engines. The nodes exchange authentication information and begin to work as a cluster.

## Example: adding a node to a Firewall Cluster element

An example of adding a node to an existing Firewall Cluster element and configuring the interfaces.

Company A's Firewall currently consists of two nodes. However, the load on the Firewall is exceptionally high, so the administrator has decided to add another node to ensure continuity of network services even when one of the nodes is offline. The administrator does the following:

- 1) Adds a third node in the Firewall Cluster element's properties.
- 2) Defines the node-specific IP addresses for the NDI interfaces of the new node.
  - The cluster-level interface configuration does not need adjustments, since it is shared by all nodes.
- 3) Installs the new engine and performs the initial configuration.

- 4) Refreshes the security policy of the Firewall Cluster.

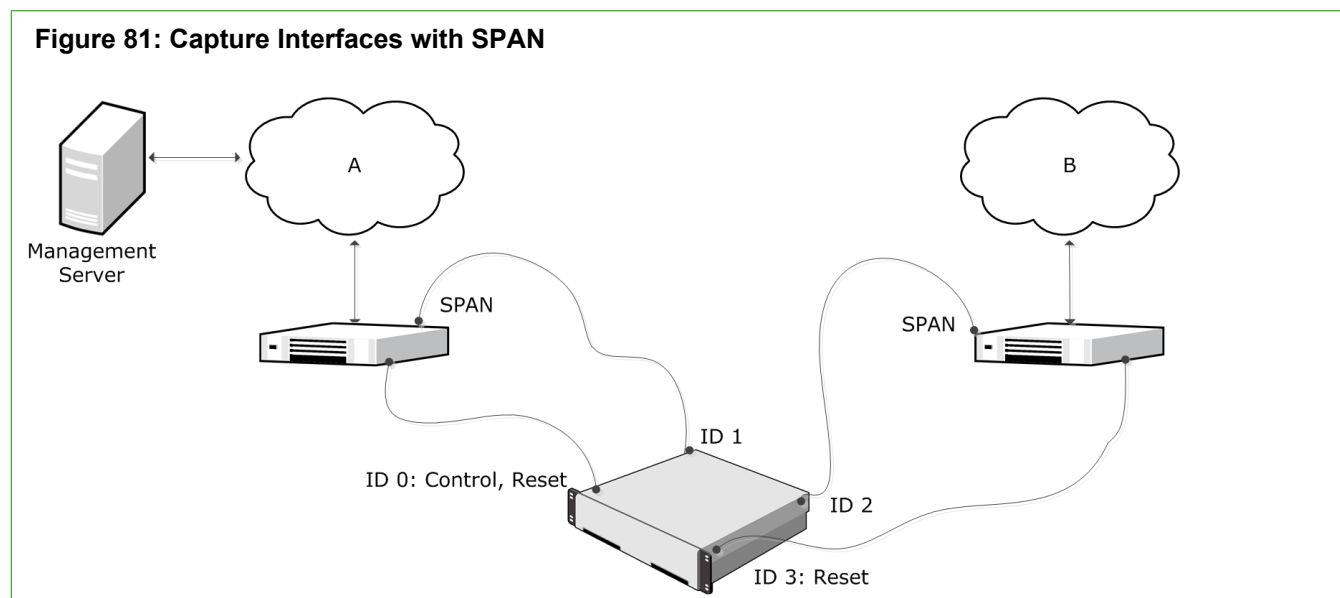
## Examples of IPS engine interface configuration

These examples illustrate some common uses for IPS engines and general steps for how each example is configured.

### Example: IPS Capture Interface configuration with SPAN

An example of using SPAN ports on switches to duplicate packets for inspection.

The administrator at company A wants to set up a Single IPS engine and deploy it in IDS configuration using SPAN ports on the switches to duplicate packets for inspection. The following illustration shows the interfaces of the IPS engine in IDS configuration.



In this example, Interface ID 0 is a Normal Interface used for management connections, and sending TCP Reset responses for network segment A. Interface ID 1 is a Capture Interface for capturing network traffic from the network segment A switch for inspection. Interface ID 2 is a Capture Interface for capturing network traffic from the network segment B switch for inspection. Interface ID 3 is a Normal Interface used for sending TCP Reset responses for network segment B.

The administrator does the following:

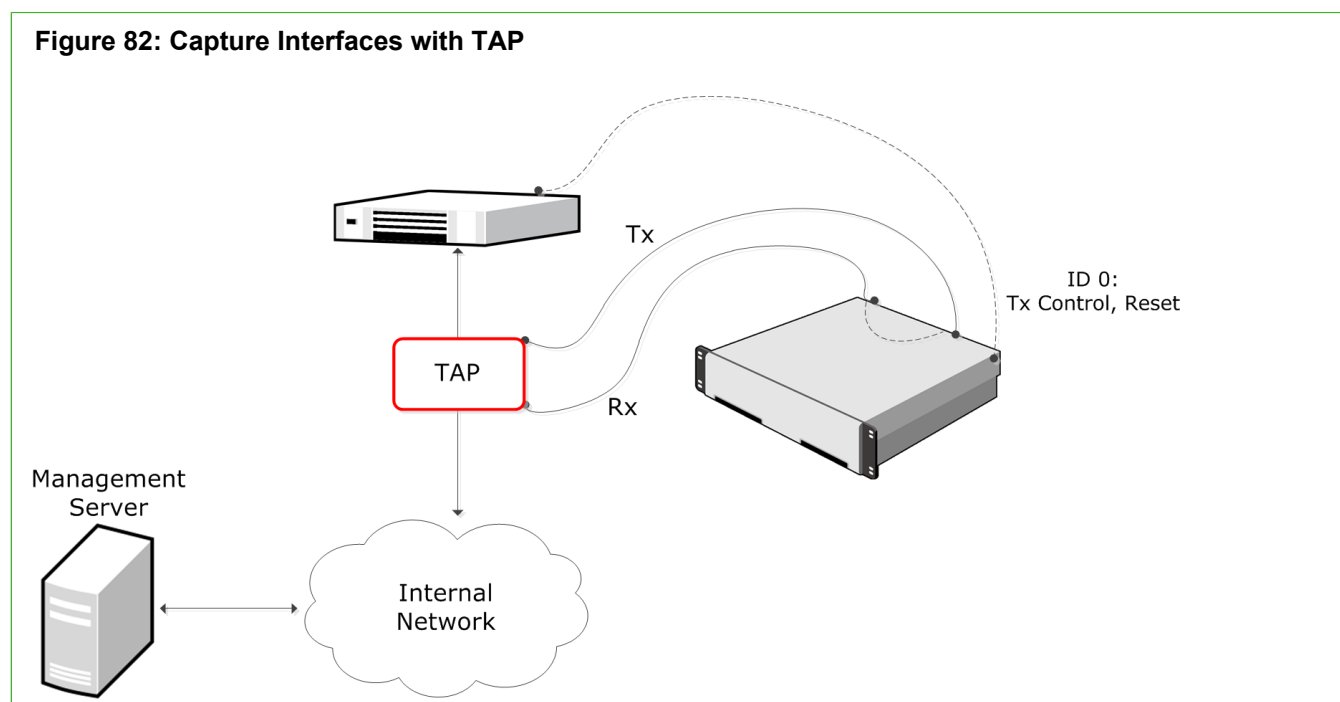
- 1) Creates a Single IPS element and selects the Log Server to which it sends log data and the traffic recordings.
- 2) Defines Interface ID 0 as a Normal Interface and adds an IP address to it.

- The IP address on Interface ID 0 is automatically selected as the Primary Control IP address because Interface ID 0 is the first Normal Interface with an IP address.
- 3) Defines Interface ID 3 as a Normal Interface without an IP address.
    - Because Interface ID 3 is used only as a Reset Interface, it must not have an IP address.
  - 4) Defines Interface ID 1 as a Capture Interface and selects Interface ID 0 as the Reset Interface.
  - 5) Defines Interface ID 2 as a Capture Interface and selects Interface ID 3 as the Reset Interface.
  - 6) Saves the initial configuration of the engine in the Management Client.
  - 7) Maps the interface IDs to the physical interfaces in the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard and makes initial contact with the Management Server.
  - 8) Installs an IPS Policy in the Management Client to transfer the configuration to the engine.

## Example: IPS Capture Interface configuration with TAP

An example of using a network TAP device to forward packets for inspection.

The administrator at company B wants to set up a Single IPS engine and deploy it in IDS configuration using a network TAP device. WireTAP copies transmitted (Tx) and received (Rx) packets from the monitored cable and forwards them to separate links for further analysis in the Single IPS engine. The following illustration shows the interfaces of the Single IPS engine in IDS configuration.



In this example, Interface ID 0 is a Normal Interface used for management connections, and sending TCP Reset responses. Interface ID 1 is a Capture Interface that listens to the received (Rx) packets from the network TAP. Interface ID 2 is a Capture Interface that listens to transmitted (Tx) packets from the network TAP. Interface IDs 1 and 2 share the Logical Interface, which combines the traffic from both physical interfaces so that it can be inspected as a complete traffic flow.

The administrator does the following:

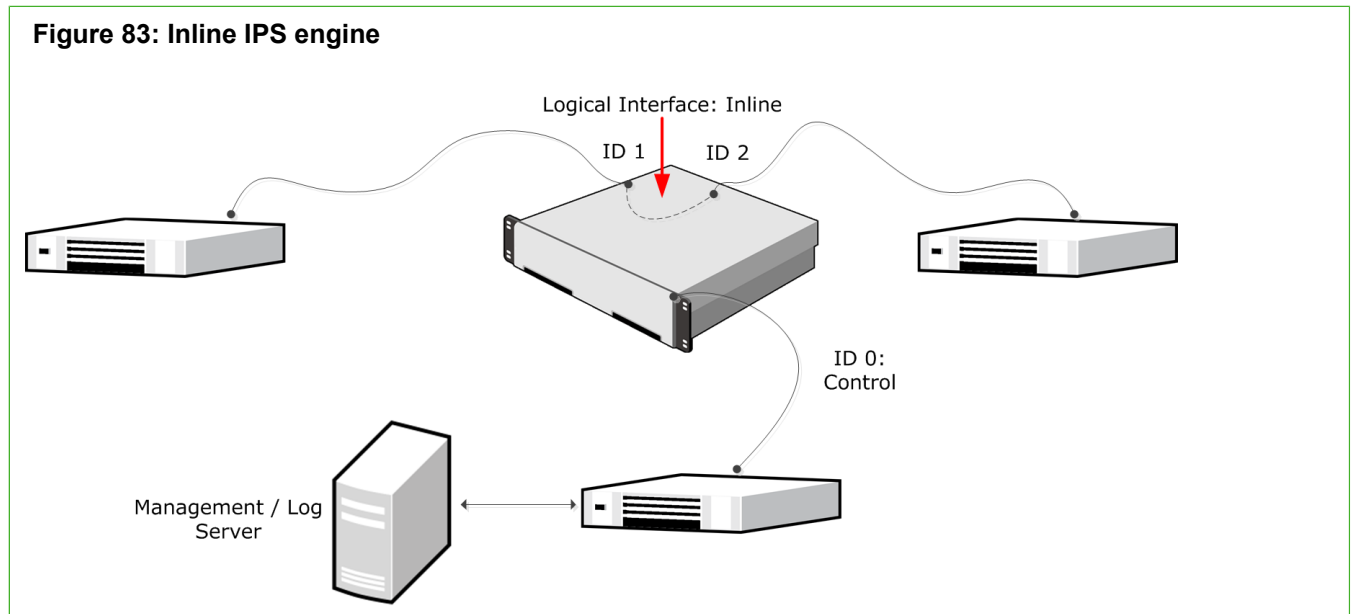
- 1) Creates a Single IPS element and selects the Log Server to which it sends log data and the traffic recordings.
- 2) Creates a Logical Interface called Capture for the two Capture Interfaces.
- 3) Defines Interface ID 0 as a Normal Interface and adds an IP address to it.
- 4) Defines Interface ID 1 and Interface ID 2 as Capture Interfaces, selects Interface ID 0 as the Reset Interface, and selects the Logical Interface called Capture for both.
- 5) Saves the initial configuration of the engine in the Management Client.
- 6) Connects the network cables to the appropriate NICs.
- 7) Maps the interface IDs to the physical interfaces in the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard and makes initial contact with the Management Server.
- 8) Installs an IPS Policy in the Management Client to transfer the configuration to the engine.

## Example: IPS Inline Interface configuration

---

An example of deploying a Single IPS in the traffic path.

The administrator at Company C wants to set up a Single IPS engine and deploy it in the traffic path. The following illustration shows the interfaces of the inline Single IPS engine.



In this example, the IP address on Interface ID 0 is configured as the Control IP address for management connections. Interface ID 1 and Interface ID 2 are an Inline Interface pair that share the Logical Interface, called Inline. Traffic comes in through Interface ID 1. Any traffic that is allowed by the IPS engine leaves through Interface ID 2.

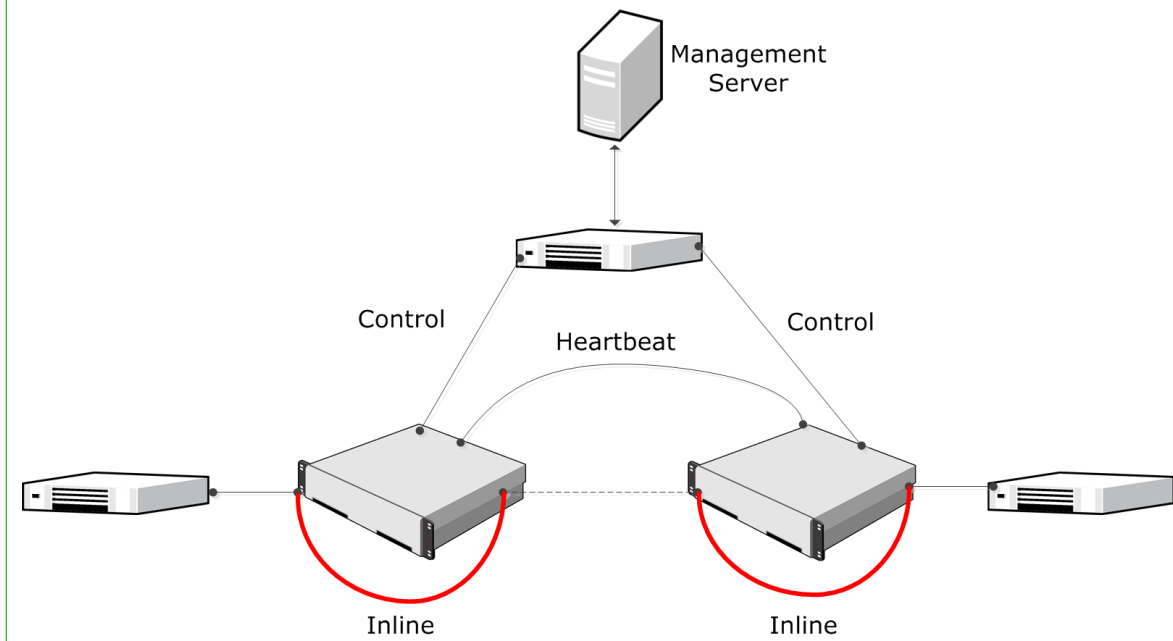
The administrator does the following:

- 1) Creates a Single IPS element and selects the Log Server to which it sends log data and the traffic recordings.
- 2) Creates a Logical Interface called Inline for the Inline Interface pair.
- 3) Defines Interface ID 0 as a normal interface and adds an IP address to it.
- 4) Defines Interface IDs 1 and 2 as an Inline Interface pair and selects the Logical Interface called Inline for the pair.
- 5) Saves the initial configuration of the engine in the Management Client.
- 6) Connects the network cables to the appropriate NICs.
- 7) Maps the interface IDs to the physical interfaces in the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard and makes initial contact with the Management Server.
- 8) Installs an IPS Policy in the Management Client to transfer the configuration to the engine.

## Example: IPS Cluster serial inline deployment

This scenario shows an example of an IPS Cluster in a serial inline deployment.

The following illustration shows the interfaces of the inline IPS Cluster.

**Figure 84: Inline serial IPS cluster**

In this example, the IPS Cluster consists of two nodes. Interface ID 0 is a Normal Interface used for the heartbeat communication between the nodes. Interface ID 1 is a Normal Interface used for communication with the Management Server. Interface ID 2 and Interface ID 3 are an Inline Interface pair that share one Logical Interface, called Inline. Traffic enters each IPS node through Interface ID 2 and leaves through Interface ID 3.

The administrators:

- 1) Create an IPS Cluster element and select the Log Server to which the IPS Cluster sends event data and traffic recordings.
- 2) Define Interface ID 0 as a Normal Interface and add IP addresses for each of the nodes. The IP address on Interface ID 0 is automatically selected as the Primary Control IP address, the Primary Heartbeat Interface, and the Log communication source IP Address.
- 3) Define Interface ID 1 as a Normal Interface and add IP addresses for each of the nodes.
- 4) Define Interface IDs 2 and 3 as an Inline Interface pair and select the Logical Interface called Inline for the pair.
- 5) Select Interface ID 0 as the Primary Heartbeat Interface and select the IP address on Interface ID 1 as the Primary Control IP address in the Interface Options.
- 6) Save the initial configuration of the engine in the Management Client.
- 7) Connect the Heartbeat and Inline Interfaces between the nodes with crossover cables, and the rest of the interfaces with straight cables.
- 8) Map the interface IDs to the physical interfaces in the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard and make initial contact with the Management Server.

- 9) Install an IPS Policy on each of the nodes in the Management Client to transfer the configuration to the IPS Cluster.

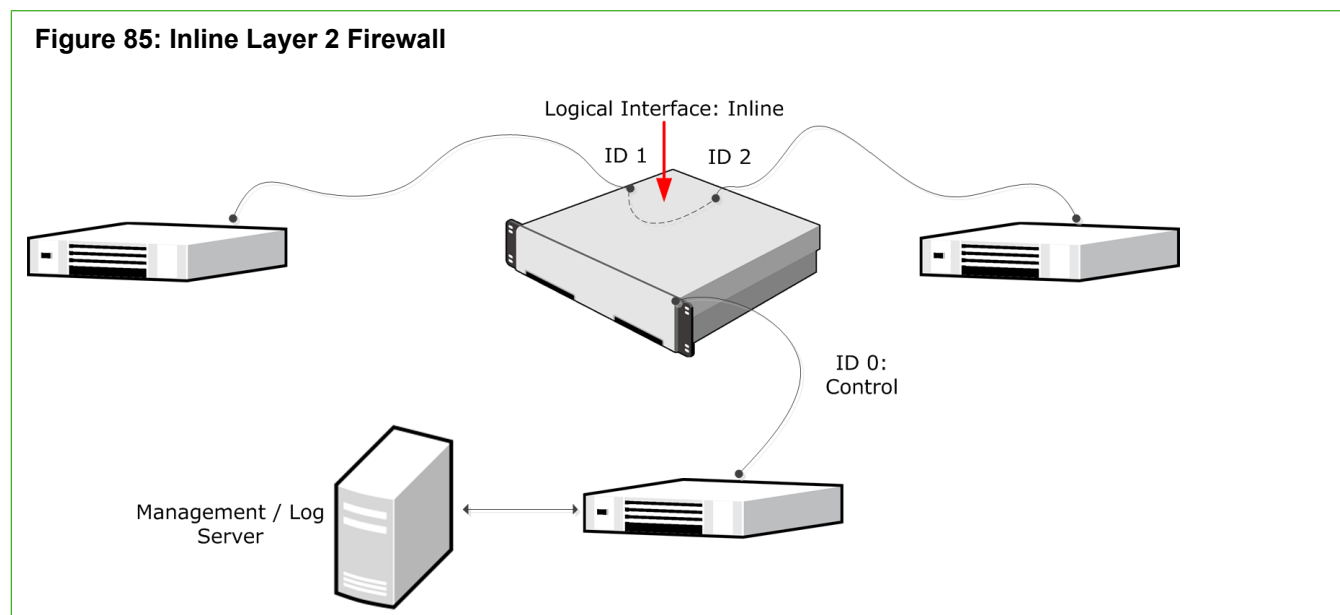
## Examples of Layer 2 Firewall interface configuration

These examples illustrate some common uses for Layer 2 Firewalls and general steps for how each example is configured.

### Example: Layer 2 Firewall Inline Interfaces in inline mode

An example of deploying a Layer 2 Firewall in the traffic path in inline mode.

The following illustration shows the interfaces of the inline Layer 2 Firewall.



In this example, the IP address on Interface ID 0 is configured as the Control IP address for management connections. Interface ID 1 and Interface ID 2 are an inline interface pair that share the Logical Interface, called Inline. Traffic comes in through Interface ID 1. Any traffic that is the Layer 2 Firewall allows leaves through Interface ID 2.

The administrator does the following:

- 1) Creates a Single Layer 2 Firewall element and selects the Log Server to which the Layer 2 Firewall engine sends its log data.
- 2) Creates a Logical Interface called Inline for the Inline Interface pair.
- 3) Defines Interface ID 0 as a normal interface and adds an IP address to it.

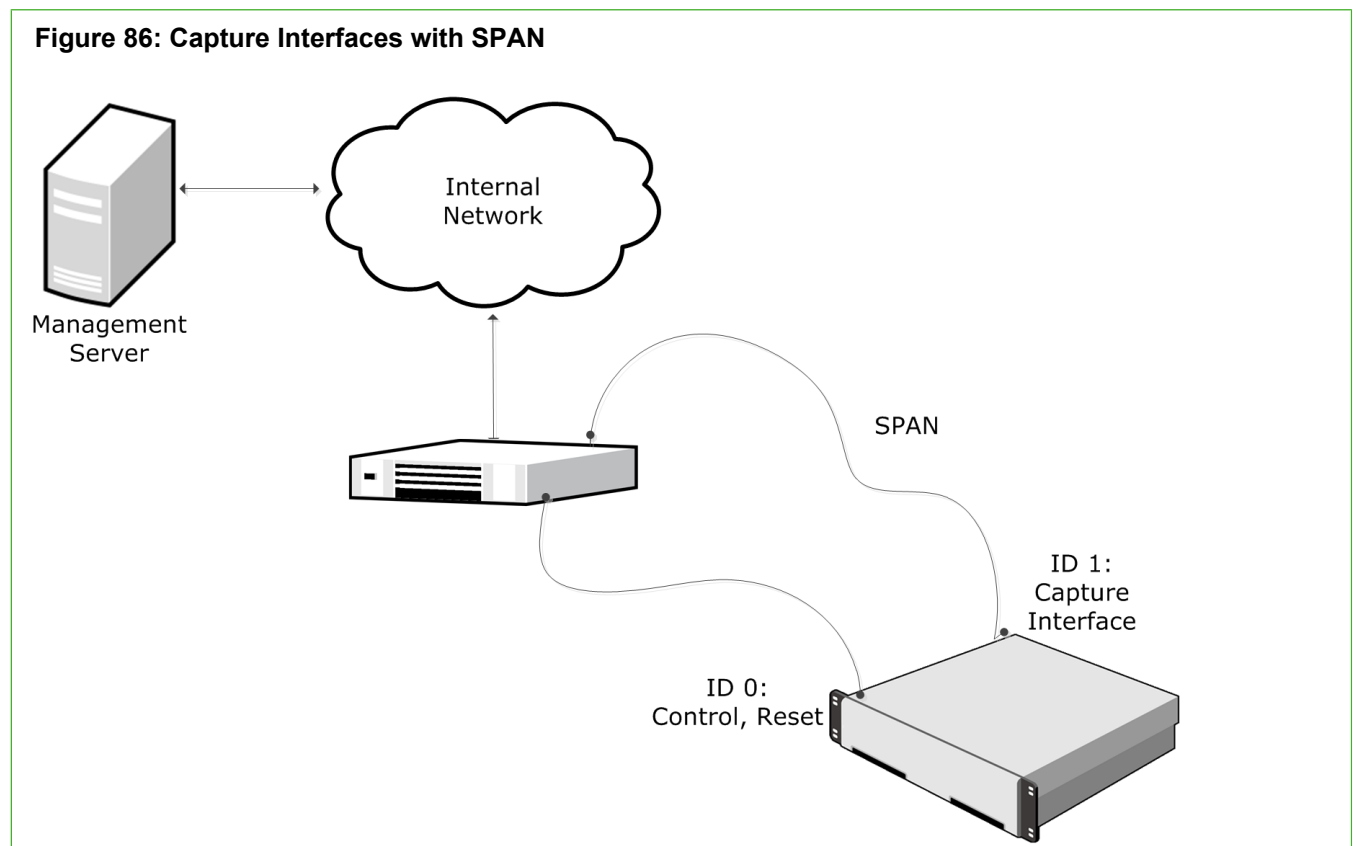


- 4) Defines Interface IDs 1 and 2 as an inline interface pair and selects the Logical Interface called Inline for the pair.
- 5) Saves the initial configuration of the engine in the Management Client.
- 6) Connects the network cables to the appropriate physical interfaces on the engine.
- 7) Maps the interface IDs to the physical interfaces in the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard and makes initial contact with the Management Server.
- 8) Installs a Layer 2 Firewall Policy in the Management Client to transfer the configuration to the engine.

## Example: Layer 2 Firewall Capture Interfaces in Passive Firewall mode

An example of deploying a Layer 2 Firewall in Passive Firewall mode.

The administrator at company B wants to set up a Single Layer 2 Firewall and deploy it in Passive Firewall mode using SPAN ports on the switch to duplicate packets for inspection. The following illustration shows the interfaces of the Layer 2 Firewall in Passive Firewall mode with Capture Interfaces.



In this example, Interface ID 0 is a Normal Interface used for management connections and sending TCP Reset responses. Interface ID 1 is a Capture Interface used for capturing network traffic from the network switch for inspection.

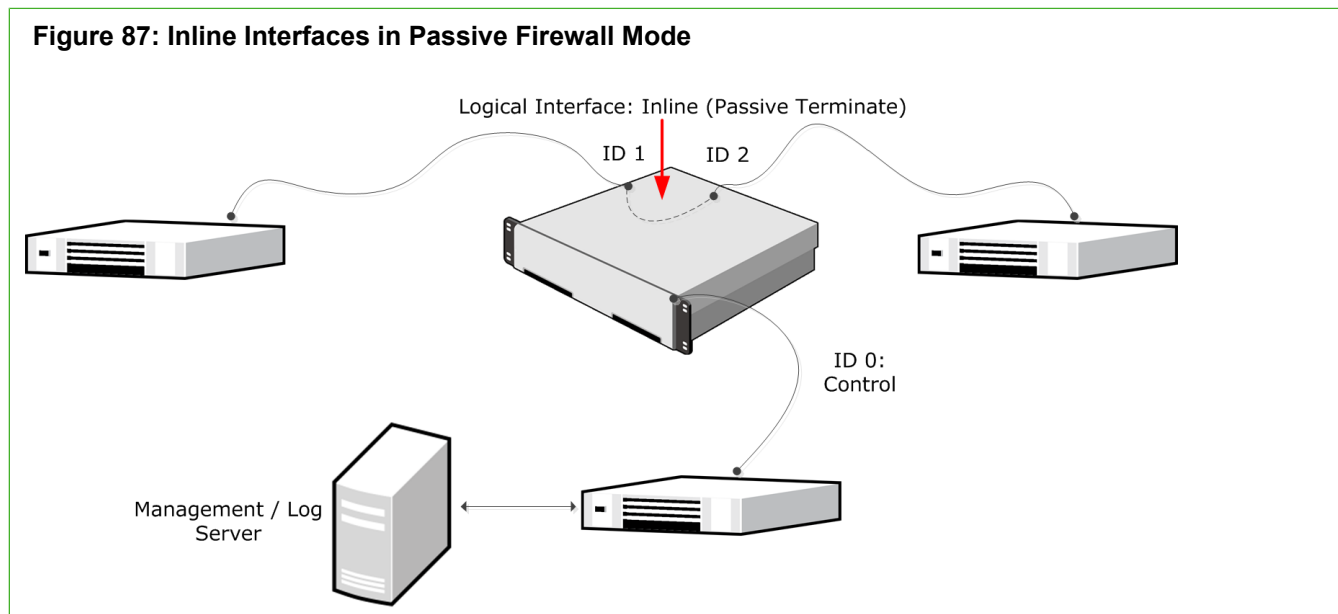
The administrator does the following:

- 1) Creates a Single Layer 2 Firewall element and selects the Log Server to which the Layer 2 Firewall engine sends its log data.
- 2) Defines Interface ID 0 as a Normal Interface and adds an IP address to it.
  - The IP address on Interface ID 0 is automatically selected as the Primary Control IP address because Interface ID 0 is the first Normal Interface with an IP address.
- 3) Defines Interface ID 1 as a Capture Interface and selects Interface ID 0 as the Reset Interface.
- 4) Saves the initial configuration of the engine in the Management Client.
- 5) Maps the interface IDs to the physical interfaces in the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard and makes initial contact with the Management Server.
- 6) Installs a Layer 2 Firewall Policy in the Management Client to transfer the configuration to the engine.

## Example: Layer 2 Firewall Inline Interfaces in Passive Firewall mode

An example of deploying a Layer 2 Firewall in Passive Firewall mode in the traffic path.

The administrator at company C wants to set up a Single Layer 2 Firewall and deploy it in Passive Firewall mode in an inline configuration. The following illustration shows the interfaces of the Single Layer 2 Firewall in Passive Firewall mode with Inline Interfaces.



In this example, the IP address on Interface ID 0 is configured as the Control IP address for management connections. Interface ID 1 and Interface ID 2 are an inline interface pair that share the Logical Interface, called Inline (Passive Terminate). Traffic comes in through Interface ID 1 and leaves through Interface ID 2.

The administrator does the following:

- 1) Creates a Single Layer 2 Firewall element and selects the Log Server to which the Layer 2 Firewall engine sends its log data.
- 2) Creates a Logical Interface called Inline (Passive Terminate) for the Inline Interface pair.
- 3) Defines Interface ID 0 as a Normal Interface and adds an IP address to it.
- 4) Defines Interface IDs 1 and 2 as an inline interface pair and selects the Logical Interface called Inline for the pair.
- 5) Configures the Layer 2 Firewall engine to only create Terminate (passive) log entries:
  - For all connections that match the Access rules with the Discard action in the Layer 2 Firewall Policy.
  - All Inspection rules with the Terminate action in the Inspection Policy.
- 6) Saves the initial configuration of the engine in the Management Client.
- 7) Connects the network cables to the appropriate physical interfaces on the engine.
- 8) Maps the interface IDs to the physical interfaces in the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard and makes initial contact with the Management Server.
- 9) Installs a Layer 2 Firewall Policy in the Management Client to transfer the configuration to the engine.



# Connecting engines to the SMC

### Contents

- [Management connections for engines and how they work](#) on page 629
- [Connect engines to the SMC](#) on page 631

To maintain the security of your system, the engines establish an authenticated and encrypted connection with Log Servers and Management Servers.

## Management connections for engines and how they work

---

When you connect the engines to the SMC, the engines make initial contact with the Management Server and receive a certificate.

The certificate allows the engine to authenticate itself to other components in all further communications. When components contact each other, they check if the other component's certificate is signed by the same Internal Certificate Authority as their own certificate. The certificate authority runs on the Management Server, but is separate from the Management Server itself. The initial contact procedure is secured using a one-time password.

If the engines are Forcepoint NGFW appliances, you can connect them to the SMC using the plug-and-play configuration method. In plug-and-play configuration, you upload the initial configuration to the Installation Server. When the engines are turned on with all cables connected, they download the initial configuration from the Installation Server. After this, the engines automatically install the initial configuration and make initial contact with the Management Server. You can also specify a predefined policy to be installed on the engines when they make initial contact with the Management Server.

### Limitations

---

- The plug-and-play configuration method is only available for Forcepoint NGFW appliances. You must have a valid proof-of-serial (POS) code for each appliance you want to configure using the plug-and-play configuration method.
- Virtual NGFW Engines do not communicate directly with the SMC. All communication between Virtual NGFW Engines and the SMC is proxied by the Master NGFW Engine.

### What should I know before I begin?

---

- Engine certificates expire in three years from the date that they are issued. If the automatic certificate renewal option is active for the engine, the certificate is renewed automatically before it expires.
- If the certificate of the engine is lost or expires, the initial contact procedure must be repeated to reconnect the engine to the other components.

- The internal certificate authority that signs the engine certificates is valid for ten years. The internal certificate authority is automatically renewed six months before the expiration date and new certificates signed by the new internal certificate authority are automatically created for the engines. If the automatic certificate renewal fails, you must again make initial contact with the Management Server so that the engine receives a new certificate.
- When a new Internal Certificate Authority is created, its initial status is Ready to Use and it is not yet Active. A new Internal Certificate Authority in a Ready to Use state only signs Management Server certificates. Certificates for other SMC components are signed by the Internal Certificate Authority that is used by the Management Server. In an environment with multiple Management Servers, the new Internal Certificate Authority reaches Active status when all the Management Servers are using the new Internal Certificate Authority.
- You must install a policy using the Management Client to transfer the complete configuration to the engine.

**Related tasks**

[View the status of appliance configurations](#) on page 181

## Configuration overview of connecting engines to the SMC

Configuring management connections for engines consists of these main steps.

- 1) Configure the engine in the Management Client.
- 2) Save an initial configuration for the engine on the Management Server. This triggers the creation of a one-time password that the engine uses to connect to the Management Server.
- 3) Install the engine to make the engine contact the Management Server.
- 4) Install a policy on the engine to transfer the full working configuration from the Management Server to the engine.

**Related concepts**

[Connect engines to the SMC](#) on page 631

**Related tasks**

[Reconfigure engine settings](#) on page 339

[Install policies](#) on page 792

# Connect engines to the SMC

Save the initial configuration to enable the engines to connect to the SMC. Install a policy on the engines to complete the engine configuration.

Saving an initial configuration allows you to establish a management connection for new Firewall engines, IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewall engines, and Master NGFW Engines for the first time. If you are installing a new engine or want to replace the engine's previous working configuration, this operation also allows you to save relevant parts of the configuration on a USB drive and import it during the engine installation.

Saving an initial configuration also allows you to reconnect previously configured engines that have lost the connection. This might be because of a missing or expired certificate or because the internal certificate authority that signs the engine certificates has been renewed and the engines have not yet received a new certificate signed by the new internal certificate authority.



**Note:** All communication between Virtual NGFW Engines and the SMC is proxied by the Master NGFW Engine. You cannot save an initial configuration for a Virtual NGFW Engine.

When you save the initial configuration, a one-time password is created. This password is required if you use the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard to configure engines.

## Save the initial configuration and generate the one-time password

Save the initial configuration to establish a management connection for Firewall engines, IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewall engines, and Master NGFW Engines. Saving the initial configuration generates the one-time password required for manual engine configuration using the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard.



**Note:** All communication between Virtual NGFW Engines and the SMC is proxied by the Master NGFW Engine. You cannot create a one-time password for a Virtual NGFW Engine.

The one-time password that is created is specific to each engine. Keep track of which engine has which password. If you mix them up or lose them, you can repeat the procedure and create new initial configurations for those engines.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

1) Save the initial configuration information:

- For an individual engine: right-click the bottom-level node element, then select **Save Initial Configuration**.
- For all engines in a cluster: right-click the top-level cluster element, then select **Configuration > Save Initial Configuration**.



**Note:** If there is a Firewall between the engine and the Management Server, allow the connection in the Firewall's IPv4 Access rules. If there is a NAT device between the engine and the Management Server, also configure NAT rules for the connection. Otherwise, the engine cannot contact the Management Server.

- 2) (Optional) If you want to manually enter details in the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard or if the engine already has the correct configuration, select **View Details**, then write down the one-time password. The password is mandatory and is used to authenticate the engine to the Management Server. The fingerprint can also be optionally used to make the engine verify the identity of the Management Server.

## Next steps

To use plug-and-play configuration or automatic configuration, continue by uploading the initial configuration details to the Installation Server or saving them on a USB drive.

# Save the initial configuration details or upload them to Installation Server

Save the initial configuration details to complete the management contact. You can upload the configuration details to the Installation Server or save them, for example, on a USB drive.


Uploading the initial configuration details to the Installation Server is the simplest configuration method. However, this method can only be used with Forcepoint NGFW appliances that support plug-and-play configuration. The method is only available for Single Firewalls that have a dynamic control IP address.

Saving the initial configuration details on a USB drive allows automatic configuration by booting the appliance with the USB drive inserted. Alternatively, you can import the configuration details from a USB drive in the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard.

You can also save the initial configuration details in some other suitable location or on the clipboard. You can then copy and paste them or enter them manually in the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard.



**CAUTION:** The information must be handled securely when saving the initial configuration details on a USB drive or in some other location. The initial configuration files include the one-time password for establishing the trust relationship between the Management Server and the engine.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) (Optional) If you already have a policy you want to use for the engine, click **Select**, then select a policy as the initial security policy.
- 2) (Optional) Select the **Local Time Zone** and the **Keyboard Layout** for use on the command line. The time zone setting is only for displaying the time on the local console; the engines always use UTC (GMT) time internally. The clock is automatically synchronized to match the Management Server's time.



- 3) (Optional) In the **Save or Upload Initial Configuration** dialog box, select **Enable SSH Daemon** to allow remote access to the engine command line. SSH access can be helpful for remote troubleshooting.
  - You can enable and disable remote command-line access to the engine at any time after management contact is established through the right-click menu of the engine. We recommend that you disable SSH access whenever it is not needed. Make sure that your Access rules allow SSH access to the engines from the administrators' IP addresses only.
  - The Firewall Template, IPS Template, and Layer 2 Template policies do not allow these connections. However, the temporary policy activated right after the engine's initial configuration (in force until you install the working policy) allows SSH access from the Management Server's IP address. Alternatively, you can upload a working policy to be installed on the engine after it has contacted the Management Server.



**CAUTION:** If you enable SSH, set the password for command-line access after the initial configuration either through the Management Client or by logging on to the command line. When the password is not set, anyone with SSH access to the engine can set the password.

- 4) Save the initial configuration or upload it to the Installation Server:
  - If you are using the automatic configuration method, click **Save As** in the **USB Drive Installation** section, then click **Save** to save the initial configuration file on a USB drive.
  - (Single Firewalls that have a dynamic control IP address) If you are using the plug-and-play configuration method, select **Upload** in the **Installation Cloud** section to upload the initial configuration automatically to the Installation Server.
  - If you want to copy and paste the initial configuration details in the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard or in some other location, click **Copy to Clipboard** in the **Manual Installation** section.
  - If you want to enter the initial configuration details manually in the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard, click **Save as** in the **Manual Installation** section, then click **Save** to save the details in a suitable location.
- 5) Click **Close**.
- 6) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - If you selected to upload the initial configuration to the Installation Server, connect the cables, then turn on the appliance. The appliance contacts the Installation Server and downloads the initial configuration.
  - To configure the appliance automatically using a USB drive, turn on the appliance with a USB drive inserted.
  - Otherwise, turn on the appliance and import the configuration to the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard.

For more information, see the *Forcepoint Next Generation Firewall Installation Guide*.

#### Related tasks

[View the status of appliance configurations](#) on page 181

[Reconfigure engine settings](#) on page 339

## Installing policies on engine elements

---

Install a policy using the Management Client to transfer the complete configuration from the Management Server to an engine.

After the installation, the engine is ready to start processing traffic. The engines do not receive any clustering settings until the first time you install a policy on them and the working configuration is received from the Management Server.

If you do not include a policy in the initial configuration, only the interface used for the control connection with the Management Server is configured after the engine establishes contact with the Management Server.

# Element-based network address translation (NAT)

### Contents

- [Element-based NAT and how it works](#) on page 635
- [Add NAT definitions for element-based NAT](#) on page 636
- [Edit or remove NAT definitions for element-based NAT](#) on page 637

Element-based NAT allows you to define NAT addresses in the properties of an element. The NAT definitions define how firewalls translate network IP addresses.

## Element-based NAT and how it works

With element-based NAT, you select which elements have their own NAT address and define the NAT addresses for those elements.



**Note:** Element-based NAT is not intended for complex network environments. In more complex network environments, we recommend adding NAT rules to the Firewall policy.

### What element-based NAT does

You can add NAT definitions to the following types of elements:

- NGFW Engines — Single Firewalls, Firewall Clusters, Master NGFW Engines, and Virtual Firewalls
- Servers — Active Directory Servers, CIS Servers, DHCP Servers, External DNS Servers, LDAP Servers, Log Servers, Management Servers, SMTP Servers, TACACS+ Servers, Web Portal Servers
- Some elements in the **Network Elements** branch of the **Configuration** view, for example, Address Ranges, Groups, Hosts, Networks, and Routers.

In addition to using element-based NAT, you can manually add NAT rules to the Firewall Policy if you want to configure NAT in more detail. Remember, however, that a more specific manually created NAT rule might prevent traffic from matching NAT rules that are automatically generated from NAT definitions. For more information about manually adding NAT rules, see the topic that explains how firewall NAT rules work.

You can also use a default NAT address for all internal networks to automatically translate traffic from internal networks to the public IP address of the external interface. This can be useful, for example, in simple network environments. Default NAT can only be selected in the engine properties.



**Note:** When several IP addresses from the same network are available, the SMC automatically selects the smallest IPv4 address as the default NAT address.

An internal element that has a static NAT definition can be used in the **Destination** cell of an Access rule. Traffic also matches the destination IP address that corresponds to the element's public IP address in the NAT definition.

## What do I need to know before I begin?

- NAT rules are automatically generated and organized in the Firewall Policy based on the NAT definitions created in the element properties.
- NAT rules generated from NAT definitions are not visible in the Firewall Policy, and are applied after the NAT rules that you have added manually to the policy.
- The SMC automatically generates both the source and destination NAT rules from the NAT definitions.

### Related concepts

[Getting started with NAT rules](#) on page 831

# Add NAT definitions for element-based NAT

NAT definitions define the NAT addresses for elements.

When you add a NAT definition to an engine, the NAT definition is also added to the elements that are included in the engine's NAT configuration. You primarily configure NAT definitions in the Engine Editor. It is also possible to configure NAT definitions in a network element's properties, depending on your permissions in the Domain to which the elements belong.

NAT definitions are automatically arranged in order from most specific to least specific: manually added NAT rules, then NAT definitions, and finally default NAT. If there is not a more specific match after the NAT rules, and the NAT definitions are checked, default NAT is used. This means that NAT rules that are generated from NAT definitions and from using the Default NAT Address do not override the rules that you have manually added to the Firewall Policy.



**Note:** You must refresh the Firewall policy on the engine after you have edited the NAT definition of any element to transfer the changes.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click an engine element and select **Edit <element type>**.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Policies > Element-based NAT**.

- (Optional) Select **Use Default NAT Address for Traffic from Internal Networks** to use the default NAT address as the **Public IP Address** if there is not a more specific NAT definition that matches the traffic. When you select this option, a NAT rule is generated at the end of the NAT rules in the Firewall Policy. If no NAT rule matches the traffic, no NAT is applied unless you enable the Default NAT Address.



**Note:** Rules generated from NAT definitions are not displayed in the Firewall Policy.

- (Optional) Click **Show Details** to view the Default NAT Address properties.
- Click **Add NAT Definition**.
- Select **Static** or **Dynamic** as the **Translation Type**.
- Select an element as the **Private IP Address**.



**Note:** Only Host, Server, or Network elements are allowed with static NAT.

- Select one of the following as the **Public IP Address**.
  - Default NAT Address**
  - Element**
  - Interface**
  - IP Address**
- (Optional) Click **Add** to add elements as **Port Filters**.
- Click **OK** to save the NAT definition.

NAT rules for element-based NAT are generated automatically, and are added to the Firewall Policy of the engine that uses the NAT definition in its configuration.
- Click **Save and Refresh**.

#### Related concepts

[Getting started with NAT rules](#) on page 831

#### Related tasks

[Edit or remove NAT definitions for element-based NAT](#) on page 637

## Edit or remove NAT definitions for element-based NAT

Edit outdated NAT definitions or remove unnecessary NAT definitions.



**Note:** You must refresh the Firewall policy on the engine after you have edited the NAT definition of any element to transfer the changes.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click an engine element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Policies > Element-based NAT**
- 3) Select the NAT definition and click **Edit NAT Definition** or **Remove NAT Definition**.
  - If you selected **Edit NAT Definition**, edit the NAT definition settings and click **OK**.
  - If you selected **Remove NAT Definition**, click **Yes** in the confirmation dialog box that opens.
- 4) Click **Save and Refresh**.

#### Related tasks

[Add NAT definitions for element-based NAT on page 636](#)

# Configuring the engine tester

### Contents

- [Getting started with the engine tester](#) on page 639
- [Specify global engine tester settings](#) on page 640
- [Add engine tests](#) on page 640
- [Configuring additional test-specific settings for engine tests](#) on page 641
- [View configured engine tests](#) on page 645
- [Remove engine tests](#) on page 645
- [Disable or enable engine tests](#) on page 646

The tester runs various checks on the engines and initiates responses based on the success or failure of these tests.

## Getting started with the engine tester

The engines can be configured with periodical self-tests to make sure that each Firewall engine, IPS engine, Layer 2 Firewall engine, and Master NGFW Engine is functioning correctly.

### What the tester does

The tester runs checks at certain intervals, depending on the state of the engine (online, offline, or standby). Depending on the result, the tester can turn the engine online or offline, send alerts, and send SNMP traps.

### Limitations

- The tester also runs internal system tests that cannot be edited or disabled. These tests are meant for recognizing certain configuration problems and internal error conditions, such as nodes in the cluster having different policies.
- Tests cannot be run on Virtual NGFW Engines.

#### Related concepts

[Creating engine elements](#) on page 464

[Editing existing engine elements](#) on page 489

## Engine tester configuration overview

---

You can define the settings to run tests on NGFW Engines.

- 1) Configure the global tester settings that are common to all tests.
- 2) Configure the settings for running individual tests.

### Related concepts

[Disable or enable engine tests](#) on page 646

[Configuring additional test-specific settings for engine tests](#) on page 641


### Related tasks

[Remove engine tests](#) on page 645

## Specify global engine tester settings

---

The global settings of the tester have default values that you can override to meet your needs.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Firewall, IPS engine, Layer 2 Firewall, or Master NGFW Engine element, and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **General > Tester**.  
The **Tester** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Configure the global settings.

## Add engine tests

---

As well as test-specific settings, some tests share common settings.

You can receive notification of test failures as Alerts or as SNMP traps. A test can switch also nodes offline or online based on the result.



**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Firewall, IPS engine, Layer 2 Firewall, or Master NGFW Engine element, and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **General > Tester**.  
The **Tester** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Under the test entry table, click **Add** and select the test type.
- 4) Configure the common settings.
- 5) Click **OK**.
- 6) Click **Save and Refresh** to transfer the new configuration to the engines.

#### Related concepts

[Getting started with SNMP configuration for engines](#) on page 657

## Configuring additional test-specific settings for engine tests

The settings available to you vary according to the test you select. Some of the tests have additional, test-specific settings.

### Configure settings for the External engine test

For the tester to run External tests, configure the available settings.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the **Retry Count** field, enter the number of times the tester tries to execute the test  
We recommend always setting the retry count to more than 1 to avoid creating overly sensitive tests that burden the system unnecessarily.
- 2) In the **Test Timeout** field, enter the timeout in milliseconds.
  - If the test being run does not return a response in the specified time, the test is considered to have failed.
  - We recommend a timeout of 500–1000 milliseconds, depending on the external test script.
- 3) In the **Command Line** field, enter the script path.

*Example:* /data/home/root/connectivity.sh

- 4) Click **OK**.




**Note:** The external script must return an exit code of 0 (zero) if it succeeds. Any non-zero return value is a failure.

- 5) Click **Save and Refresh** to transfer the new configuration to the engines.

## Configure settings for the File System Space engine test

---

For the tester to run File System Space tests, configure the available settings.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Specify the partition in the **Partition** field.
- 2) Enter the minimum amount of **Free Space** in kilobytes.  
When the amount of free space drops below this amount, the engine executes the chosen action.
- 3) Click **OK**.
- 4) Click **Save and Refresh** to transfer the new configuration to the engines.

## Configure settings for the Free Swap engine test

---

For the tester to run Free Swap tests, configure the available settings.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Enter the minimum amount of **Free Space** in kilobytes.  
When the amount of free space drops below this amount, the engine executes the chosen action.
- 2) Click **OK**.
- 3) Click **Save and Refresh** to transfer the new configuration to the engines.

# Configure settings for the Inline Pair Link Speed engine test

---

For the tester to run Inline Pair Link Speed tests, configure the available settings.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Enter the **Test Timeout** in milliseconds.  
If the test being run does not return a response in the specified time, the test is considered to have failed. Avoid overly short timeout values.
- 2) Click **OK**.
- 3) Click  **Save and Refresh** to transfer the new configuration to the engines.

# Configure settings for the Link Status engine test

---


For the tester to run Link Status tests, configure the available settings.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select the **Interface** on which the test is run:
  - **ALL** Physical Interfaces, Modem Interfaces (Single Firewalls only), ADSL Interfaces (Single Firewalls only), and Wireless Interfaces (Single Firewalls only).
  - (Clusters only) **ALL with CVI**.
  - A single Physical Interface, a Modem Interface (Single Firewalls only), an ADSL Interface (Single Firewalls only), or a Wireless Interface (Single Firewalls only).




**Note:** On Firewalls, only the first interface that belongs to an Aggregated Link is shown in the list of interfaces. However, the Link Status test checks the status of all interfaces in the Aggregated Link.

- 2) (Aggregated link in load-balancing mode only) Select the percentage of aggregated links that must be down for the test to be considered failed.
- 3) Click **OK**.
- 4) Click  **Save and Refresh** to save the changes to the configuration and refresh the policy on the engine.

# Configure settings for the Multiping engine test


For the tester to run Multiping tests, configure the available settings.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the **Retry Count** field, enter the number of times the tester tries to execute the test.  
We recommend always setting the retry count to more than 1 to avoid creating overly sensitive tests that burden the system unnecessarily.
- 2) In the **Test Timeout** field, enter the timeout value in milliseconds.  
If the test being run does not return a response in the specified time, the test is considered to have failed. Avoid timeout values that are too short.
- 3) In the **Source Address** drop-down list, select the source address for the test:
  - **DEFAULT** — The source IP address is selected automatically based on the routing configuration.  
In a cluster, if the physical interface that routes the ping packet out has an NDI (Node Dedicated IP address), this address is used as the source address. Otherwise, the NDI selected as **Default IP for Outgoing Traffic** is used.
  - A single physical interface, a VLAN interface, a modem interface (Single Firewalls only), an ADSL interface (Single Firewalls only), an SSID interface (Single Firewalls only), or a port group interface (Single Firewalls only). If the **Node ID** selection is **ALL**, each node uses the IP address of the selected interface as the source IP address for the test. If a single node is selected in **Node ID** in a cluster, the source address and the multiping test itself apply to that node only.
- 4) Specify the target addresses of ICMP echo requests.



**Note:** The test is considered to have failed if none of the target addresses respond.

- a) To add a row to the **Target Addresses** table, click **Add**.
  - b) Enter an IPv4 or IPv6 address.
- 5) Click **OK**.
  - 6) Click  **Save and Refresh** to transfer the new configuration to the engines.

# Configure settings for the Policy test

The Policy test is no longer supported in Forcepoint NGFW version 6.1 and later.

# View configured engine tests

---

The test entries that you have configured are displayed in the **Tester** pane of the Engine Editor.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Firewall, IPS engine, Layer 2 Firewall, or Master NGFW Engine element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **General > Tester**.  
The **Tester** pane opens on the right. All configured test entries are displayed in a table. The selected states, actions, and parameters for the tests are shown.

# Remove engine tests

---

Removing a test permanently removes the test settings from the selected NGFW Engine.

Alternatively, you can also stop a test from running without removing it

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Firewall, IPS engine, Layer 2 Firewall, or Master NGFW Engine element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **General > Tester**.  
The **Tester** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Select the test entry that you want to remove.
- 4) Click **Remove**.  
A **Confirmation** dialog box opens.
- 5) Click **Yes** to confirm that you want to remove the test.  
The test is permanently removed.
- 6) Click **Save and Refresh** to transfer the new configuration to the engines.

# Disable or enable engine tests

---


You can disable or enable any individual test or all tests that are run on a specified node.


You do not have to enable test entries that you configure to activate them. All test entries that you configure are automatically activated and available to the tester after a policy refresh or install.

## Disable or enable individual engine tests

---

Temporarily disable individual unused engine tests, or enable the individual tests you want to run.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Right-click a Firewall, IPS engine, Layer 2 Firewall, or Master NGFW Engine element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **General > Tester**.  
The **Tester** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Deselect or select the option in the **Active** column of the test.
- 4) Click  **Save and Refresh** to transfer the new configuration to the engines.

## Disable or enable all custom tests on engines

---

Temporarily disable all custom tests on a node, or enable all custom tests you want to run on a node.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Firewall, IPS engine, Layer 2 Firewall, or Master NGFW Engine element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **General > Tester**.  
The **Tester** pane opens on the right.
- 3) In the **Global Settings** section, deselect or select the option in the **Active** column of one or more nodes.
- 4) Click  **Save and Refresh** to transfer the new configuration to the engines.

# Engine permissions

### Contents

- [Getting started with engine permissions](#) on page 647
- [Define administrator permissions for engines](#) on page 648
- [Select allowed policies for engines](#) on page 649

You can set permissions to control the administration of the engines.

## Getting started with engine permissions

You can define the permissions that enable or restrict administrators to edit and view an engine's properties.

### What engine permission control does

Engine permissions control can be used in two ways:

- To prevent some administrators from editing and viewing an engine's properties to prevent unauthorized modifications and protect confidential details.
- To restrict the policies that can be installed on the engine to prevent service outages caused by the wrong policy being installed on the engine by accident.



**Note:** Engine permission control does not affect the local permissions to execute command-line commands on the engine. You can replicate administrator accounts on engines and then configure permissions to execute commands using the sudo tool. The Local Administrators section in the Administrator Permissions pane shows the local administrators defined, if any.

### What do I need to know before I begin?

- Your administrator account must have editing permissions for the engine element.
- Permissions for Master NGFW Engines and Virtual NGFW Engines are configured separately. Otherwise, engine permissions are configured for Master NGFW Engines and Virtual NGFW Engines in the same way as for other types of engines.
- Access control in the Security Management Center.

#### Related concepts

[Getting started with administrator accounts](#) on page 345

# Engine permissions configuration overview

You can define the permissions that permit users to edit and view engine elements, and allow policies to install on the engine.

Configuring engine permission involves the following general steps:

- 1) Define which administrators are allowed to edit and view the element.
- 2) Define which policies can be installed on the engine.

## Define administrator permissions for engines


Define the administrator permissions that permit users to access and view engine options.

### Before you begin

Your administrator account must have editing permissions to the engine element.

You can either add an Access Control List or an individual Administrator-Administrator Role pair as permitted on the engine. The rights that the Access Control List grants to the administrators are defined in the properties of the administrator accounts (defined with Administrator elements).

Administrators with restricted permissions can refresh or upload an engine's policy only if the administrator is a permitted administrator for both the engine and the policy. The engines might not accept all policies.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Open the element for editing in one of the following ways depending on the element type:

Element type	Description
Engine element	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Right-click an engine element and select <b>Edit &lt;element type&gt;</b>. The Engine Editor opens.</li> <li>2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to <b>General &gt; Permissions</b>.</li> </ol>
Policy element	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Right-click the policy and select <b>Properties</b>.</li> <li>2) Click the <b>Permissions</b> tab.</li> </ol>

- 2) Click **Add** for the **Access Control Lists** and select one or more Access Control Lists to which you want the engine to belong.

To create an Access Control List, select  **Tools > New > Access Control List**.



- 3) To add a permission, click **Add Permission** under **Permissions**.  
A new row appears on the administrator list.
- 4) Click the **Administrator** cell and select the Administrator.
- 5) Right-click the **Administrator Role** cell and select **Edit Administrator Role**.
- 6) Select a role and click **Add**.
- 7) Click **OK** to close the **Select Elements** dialog box.
- 8) Save the changes in one of the following ways depending on the element type:

Element type	Description
Engine element	Click <b>Save</b> .
Policy element	Click <b>OK</b> to close the dialog box.



**Note:** Changes to administrator permissions are immediately distributed and taken into account in all related elements.

#### Related concepts

[Creating Administrator Role and Access Control List elements](#) on page 349

#### Related tasks

[Create Access Control List elements](#) on page 350

## Select allowed policies for engines

Assign Policy or Template Policy permissions for engines.

### Before you begin

Your administrator account must have editing permissions to the engine element.

By default, any policy can be installed on any engine as long as the policy is of appropriate type for the type of engine. To prevent accidental installations of the wrong policy, you can select the allowed policy for each engine in the engine element's properties. The policy selection is enforced regardless of the administrator permissions that the installing administrator has.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click an engine element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.

- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **General > Permissions**.  
The **Permissions** pane opens on the right.
- 3) In the **Policies** section at the bottom, select the **Policy**:
  - To allow the installation of any policy, click **Set to Any**.
  - Otherwise, click **Add**.
- 4) Select the correct Policy or Template Policy.  
If you select a Template Policy, any policy based on the template can be installed.
- 5) Click **Save and Refresh**.

# DNS Relay

## Contents

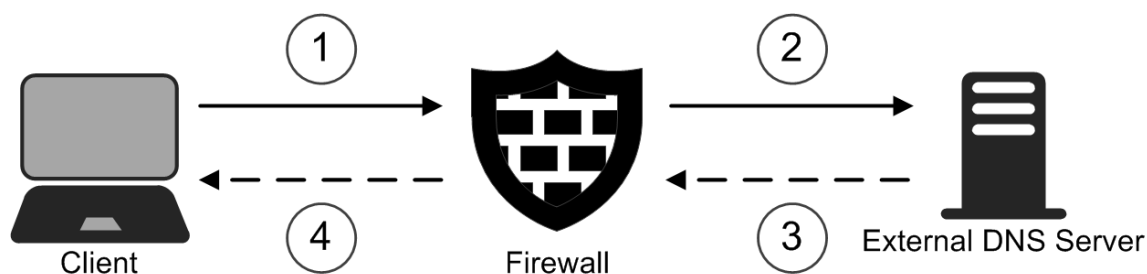
- [Getting started with DNS relay](#) on page 651
- [Enable DNS relay](#) on page 654

DNS relay allows the firewall to provide DNS services for clients in internal networks.

## Getting started with DNS relay

In DNS relay, clients send DNS requests to a DNS resolver, which forwards the requests to a remote DNS server. In Forcepoint NGFW, the firewall can act as a local DNS resolver for clients in the internal network.

**Figure 88: How DNS relay works**



- 1 Clients in the internal network send DNS requests to the firewall.
- 2 The firewall forwards the DNS requests to remote DNS servers.
- 3 Remote DNS servers send DNS responses to the firewall.
- 4 The firewall provides the responses to the clients in the internal network.

The firewall temporarily stores the results of DNS requests in its cache until the time limit specified in the time to live (TTL) value for the DNS entry is reached. When a client makes a DNS request for a domain that has recently been requested, the firewall provides the IP address from the cache. Caching reduces the load on upstream DNS servers and improves performance.

In addition to providing DNS services for clients in the internal network, the firewall can also optionally do the following:

- Return fixed DNS results for specific hosts or domains.
- Forward DNS requests to different DNS servers depending on the domain in the DNS request.
- Translate IPv4 addresses resolved by external DNS servers to IPv4 addresses in the internal network.

You can configure DNS relay on Single Firewalls, Firewall Clusters, and Virtual Firewalls.

# DNS relay configuration overview

To use DNS relay, you must configure settings for the firewall in the Management Client, and configure clients in your network environment.

Follow these general steps to set up DNS relay:

- 1) (Optional) Create a DNS Relay Profile element.
- 2) Define DNS IP addresses for the firewall in the Engine Editor.
- 3) Configure DNS Relay options for the firewall in the Engine Editor.
- 4) In your internal network environment, configure devices to use the selected listening IP addresses on the firewall as a DNS resolver.

## Fixed DNS results

You can optionally configure the firewall to return fixed DNS results for specific hosts or domains without relaying the request to any DNS server.

You can define fixed DNS results in two ways.

**Table 63: Ways to define fixed DNS results**

Option for fixed DNS results	Description
Host name mappings	<p>You statically map host names and aliases for host names to IPv4 or IPv6 addresses. When a client requests DNS resolution for a host name that is included in the fixed mappings, the firewall resolves the IP address based on the mappings. Host name mappings simplify the configuration when you only need to resolve a small number of host names in internal networks to static IP addresses.</p> <p>You define host name mappings as pairs of IP addresses and host names in the <b>Host Name Mappings</b> section of DNS Relay Profile elements.</p>
Fixed domain answers	<p>The firewall replies to requests for specific domain names with IPv4 addresses, IPv6 addresses, domain names, or empty DNS replies. When the firewall provides an empty DNS reply, the client receives the same response as for domains for which no DNS record is found.</p> <p>Fixed domain answers are useful if you always want to direct requests for specific domains to specific destinations. For example, you can reply to all requests for the domain of an advertising network with an empty reply to block unwanted ads on web pages.</p> <p>You define fixed domain answers as pairs of domains names and values that the firewall returns in the <b>Fixed Domain Answers</b> section of DNS Relay Profile elements.</p>

## Domain-specific DNS servers

The firewall can use domain-specific DNS servers to forward DNS requests to different DNS servers depending on the requested domain.

For example, the firewall can forward queries for internal domains to remote internal DNS servers, and forward other queries to a public DNS server, such as a DNS server maintained by your Internet Service Provider (ISP).

When you forward queries for external domains to public DNS servers, users get the DNS result that is geographically closest to them. Using the geographically closest IP address improves the quality of services that use DNS load balancing, such as cloud services that have regionally distributed data centers.

You define domain-specific DNS servers in DNS Relay Profile elements as pairs of domain names and DNS IP addresses in the **Domain-Specific DNS Servers** section of DNS Relay Profile elements.

In the Engine Editor, you specify the IP addresses that are used as source IP addresses when the firewall makes domain-specific DNS queries. If you send DNS queries through a VPN tunnel, you must select source IP addresses. In other configurations, selecting source IP addresses is optional. If you do not select a source IP address, the source IP address is automatically selected based on the route to the external DNS server.

An automatic rule allows traffic from the firewall to domain-specific DNS Servers. If you send the DNS queries through a VPN tunnel, you must disable the automatic rule.

### Related concepts

[Rules for DNS relay](#) on page 653

## DNS answer translations

DNS answer translations guarantee that DNS replies for users in internal networks always contain internal IP addresses even if a public DNS server returns an external IP address for the same domain.

DNS answer translations map IPv4 addresses resolved by external DNS servers to IPv4 addresses in the internal network. When an IPv4 address in a DNS result matches one of the specified DNS answer translations, the firewall modifies the DNS result so that users in internal networks receive the internal IP address.

You define DNS answer translations in DNS Relay Profile elements as pairs of original IPv4 addresses and translated IPv4 addresses in the **DNS Answer Translations** section of DNS Relay Profile elements.

## Rules for DNS relay

Traffic for DNS Relay is allowed by automatic rules by default. We recommend using automatic rules.

The automatic rules allow the following traffic for DNS relay:

**Table 64: Automatic rules for DNS relay**

Automatic rule	Traffic allowed
Allow Traffic from Listening IP Addresses to DNS Relay Port	Traffic from the listening IP addresses of the firewall to port 53/TCP and port 53/UDP for DNS relay.

Automatic rule	Traffic allowed
Allow Connections to Domain-Specific DNS Servers	Traffic from the firewall to domain-specific DNS Servers. If you want to send the DNS traffic through a policy-based VPN, you must disable this automatic rule. If you disable this automatic rule, you must add IPv4 or IPv6 Access rules to allow traffic from the firewall to the DNS servers. You must also add IPv4 or IPv6 NAT rules if you want to apply NAT or port translation to the DNS traffic.

If you create Access or NAT rules to match specific DNS traffic, use one or more of the following elements:

- **DNS Service Group** — Matches both TCP and UDP traffic on port 53
- **DNS (TCP) Service** — Matches TCP traffic on port 53
- **DNS (UDP)** — Matches UDP traffic on port 53


## Enable DNS relay


To enable DNS relay, you must configure DNS Relay settings for the firewall. You can optionally create custom DNS Relay Profile elements.

## Create DNS Relay Profile elements

DNS Relay Profile elements contain the host name mappings, domain-specific DNS servers, fixed domain answers, and DNS answer translations that the firewall uses when it provides DNS services to the internal network.

If you do not want to define custom settings, you can use the predefined **Cache Only** DNS Relay Profile element.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Engine Properties > DNS Relay Profiles**.
- 3) Right-click **DNS Relay Profiles**, then select **New DNS Relay Profile**.
- 4) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.
- 5) Configure options in one or more of the following sections:
  - **Host Name Mappings** — Statically map host names, aliases for host names, and unqualified names (a host name without the domain suffix) to IPv4 or IPv6 addresses.
  - **Domain-Specific DNS Servers** — Forward DNS requests to different DNS servers depending on the requested domain.
  - **Fixed Domain Answers** — Direct requests for specific domains to IPv4 addresses, IPv6 addresses, fully qualified domain names (FQDNs), or empty DNS replies.

- **DNS Answer Translations** — Map IPv4 addresses resolved by external DNS servers to IPv4 addresses in the internal network.




**Note:** You can add a maximum of 50 rows to the DNS Relay Profile element.


- 6) Click OK.

## Configure DNS Relay settings in the Engine Editor

---

To enable DNS relay, configure DNS Relay settings for the firewall in the Engine Editor.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click a Single Firewall, Firewall Cluster, or Virtual Firewall element and select **Edit <element type>**.
- 3) In the **DNS IP Addresses** field, add the IP addresses of one or more external DNS servers to which the firewall forwards DNS requests from clients in the internal network.
  - To enter a single IP address manually, click **Add** and select **IP Address**. Enter the IP address in the dialog box that opens.
  - To define an IP address using a network element, click **Add** and select **Network Element**.
- 4) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **General > DNS Relay**.
- 5) From the **DNS Relay Profile** drop-down list, select a DNS Relay Profile element.
  - If you created a custom DNS Relay Profile element, select your custom element.
  - To enable DNS relay without defining custom settings, select the predefined **Cache Only DNS Relay Profile** element.
- 6) In the **Listening IP Addresses** field, add one or more IP addresses.  
Clients in the internal network can use all of the specified IP addresses to send DNS requests to the firewall.
- 7) (Optional) From the **Source for Domain-Specific DNS Queries** drop-down list, select the interface that is used as the source IP address when the firewall forwards DNS requests to domain-specific DNS servers.  
When **According to Routing** is selected, the source IP address is automatically selected based on the route to the external DNS server.

### Next steps

Configure devices in the internal network to use the selected listening IP addresses on the firewall as a DNS resolver.





# Setting up SNMP for engines

## Contents

- [Getting started with SNMP configuration for engines](#) on page 657
- [Configure SNMP for engines](#) on page 657

SNMP is a standard protocol that different equipment can use to send network management-related information to each other. You can configure engines to send SNMP traps to external equipment.

## Getting started with SNMP configuration for engines

Engines can send SNMP traps on system events, such as when a test fails to a central network monitoring system.

An SNMP Agent element defines the settings according to which the engines send SNMP trap messages to compatible external software. A single SNMP Agent can be used on multiple engines.

### What do I need to know before I begin?

The SNMP Agent supports SNMPv1 (RFC1157), SNMPv2c (RFCs 1901 and 3416), and SNMPv3 (RFC 3414). See the documentation of the receiving software for information on which version to use.

The MIBs are included in the Security Management Center installation files.

#### Related reference

[SNMP traps and MIBs](#) on page 1463

## Configure SNMP for engines

To configure SNMP for engines, you must configure SNMP agent for SNMPv1, SNMPv2c, or SNMPv3. You must also define what triggers SNMP traps and activate the SNMP agent on the engines.

#### Related tasks

[Configure SNMP access for the Management Server](#) on page 384

## Configure SNMP version 1 or 2c for engines

---

You configure an SNMP agent for version 1 or 2c of the software, so that SMC engines can share network management information using the SNMP protocol.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Engine Properties > SNMP Agents**.
- 3) Right-click **SNMP Agents** and select **New SNMP Agent**.
- 4) Enter a unique **Name** for the SNMP Agent and select **v1** or **v2c** as the **Version**.
- 5) (Optional) Click **Add** in the **Monitoring** section and enter the community string in the dialog box that opens. The community string is used for authentication in monitoring.
- 6) (Optional) Enter the **UDP Listening Port** number that the SNMP agent listens to. The default port is 161.
- 7) Enter the **Contact** information for the person responsible for the engines. This string is returned to queries from the SNMPv2-MIB object.

## Configure SNMP version 3 for engines

---

You configure an SNMP agent for version 3 of the software, so that SMC engines can share network management information using the SNMP protocol.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Engine Properties > SNMP Agents**.
- 3) Right-click **SNMP Agents**, then select **New SNMP Agent**.
- 4) Enter a unique **Name** for the SNMP Agent and select **v3** as the **Version**.
- 5) Click **Add** in the **User Names** section.
- 6) Enter the **User Name**, select the **Authentication** and **Privacy** options, and click **OK**.
- 7) Click **Add** in the **Monitoring** section and select the user for monitoring in the dialog box that opens.

- 8) (Optional) Enter the **UDP Listening Port** number that the SNMP agent listens to.  
The default port is 161.
- 9) Enter the **Contact** information for the person responsible for the engines.  
This string is returned to queries from the SNMPv2-MIB sysContact object.

## Configure what triggers SNMP traps on engines

---

The trap parameters control where and how SNMP traps are sent.



**Note:** If the **Destinations** field is left empty, no traps are sent, and the other trap parameters are ignored. If the **Destinations** field has a value, the rest of the trap parameters must also have a value.

In addition to the general events, the tester on each engine can send SNMP traps when a test fails.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Engine Properties > SNMP Agents**.
- 3) Right-click **SNMP Agents** and select **New SNMP Agent**, or right-click an existing SNMP Agent element and select **Properties**.
- 4) In the **Traps** section, specify the sender of the SNMP trap.
  - (SNMPv1 or SNMPv2c) In the **Community** field, enter a community string.
  - (SNMPv3) From the **User Name** drop-down list, select a user name.
- 5) Click **Add** and enter the IP address and UDP port where the traps are sent.  
The default port is 162.
- 6) In the **Active Traps** section, select the events for which you want to set a trap.
- 7) Click **OK**.

# Activate the SNMP agent on engines

The SNMP Agent is responsible for SNMP-related tasks on the engines.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click an engine element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **General > SNMP**.
- 3) From the **SNMP Agent** drop-down list, select the SNMP Agent that you want to activate.
- 4) In the **SNMP Location** field, enter the string that is returned on queries to the SNMPv2-MIB or SNMPv2-MIB-sysLocation object.
- 5) In the **Listening IP Addresses** field, add one or more IP addresses.
- 6) Click **Save and Refresh** to transfer the changes.

## Related tasks

[Add engine tests](#) on page 640

# Alias element translations for engines

### Contents

- [Getting started with Alias element translations](#) on page 661
- [Add Alias element translation values](#) on page 662
- [Remove Alias element translation values](#) on page 663

Alias elements can be used to represent other network elements in configurations. The value an Alias takes in a configuration can be different on each engine where the Alias is used.

## Getting started with Alias element translations

Alias element translation values are set for each engine. You can change the translation values through the engine properties or in the properties of the Alias element itself.

### What Alias elements do

Use Alias elements in your policies to represent IP addresses. Aliases differ from Group elements in that they do not represent all elements at once. The Alias elements do not contain any IP address information themselves. The values that the Aliases receive in a policy depend on the translation value you set for each Alias in the engine elements' properties. This way, the same policy can be used on several engines. The IP address information is filled in correctly according to the translation values for each engine. Alias elements are especially useful in policy templates and sub-policies.

### What do I need to know before I begin?

Aliases are configured for NGFW Engines. The NGFW Engines use the translated values in the data they send to the Log Server.

If you use Master NGFW Engines and Virtual NGFW Engines, you must configure Aliases separately for the Master NGFW Engines and for the Virtual NGFW Engines.

There are some predefined Aliases in the SMC. Reserved Aliases cannot be edited. The names of reserved Aliases start with two \$\$ symbols. Reserved Aliases receive their translation values automatically based on the engine's configuration. You can also create Aliases. User-created Aliases and predefined Aliases that you can edit start with one \$ symbol. Predefined Aliases that you can edit do not receive their translation values automatically.



**Related concepts**[Creating engine elements](#) on page 464[Editing existing engine elements](#) on page 489

# Add Alias element translation values

To use Alias elements to represent other network elements in a policy, define the translation values of the Alias elements for each engine that uses the policy. The same Alias element can have different translation values on different engines.

Add Alias element translation values through the engine properties or in the properties of the Alias element itself.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Click **NGFW Engines**.
- 3) Right-click an engine element and select **Edit <element type>**.
- 4) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Policies > Aliases**.
- 5) Select the Alias element whose value you want to edit.
- 6) Define the value for the Alias:
  - If you want the Alias to match any IP address on this engine, right-click the **Value** cell for the Alias and select **Set to Any**. Skip to Step 8.
  - Otherwise, right-click the **Value** cell and select **Edit Value**.
- 7) Browse in the **Resources** pane for an element you want to use as the translation value on this engine. If the element does not exist, you can create one through the right-click menu for the correct element type.
- 8) Select the elements and click **Add**.  
The elements are added to the **Alias Value** pane.
- 9) Click **OK** to close the **Alias Value Properties** dialog box.
- 10) Click  **Save and Refresh**.

# Remove Alias element translation values

When you no longer need Alias element translation values, remove them from the engine element properties.

If there are no translation values for a particular Alias element for an engine, the Translation Value is **None**. If Aliases with the value **None** are used alone as matching criteria in a rule in a policy, the rule never matches any traffic.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click an engine element and select **Edit <element type>**.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Policies > Aliases**.
- 3) Right-click the **Value** cell of the Alias and select **Edit Value**.
- 4) Remove the elements.
  - To remove selected elements, select the elements in the **Alias Value** pane and click **Remove**.
  - To remove all elements, click **Remove All**.
- 5) Click **OK** to close the **Alias Value Properties** dialog box.
- 6) Click  **Save and Refresh**.





# Add-on features for engines

## Contents

- [Getting started with add-on features for engines](#) on page 665
- [Edit add-on settings for engines](#) on page 666
- [Configure anti-malware on engines](#) on page 666
- [Configure anti-spam on engines](#) on page 669

There are several engine element add-on features that you can use on Firewalls, IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewalls, Virtual Firewalls, Virtual IPS engines, and Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls.

## Getting started with add-on features for engines

In the Add-Ons pane in the Engine Editor, you can enable several optional add-ons for engines, such as TLS inspection, browser-based user authentication, anti-malware, anti-spam, and file reputation checks.

Most add-ons are separately licensed features.

**Table 65: Supported roles for add-on features**

Add-on	Supported on
TLS Inspection	Firewalls, IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewalls, Virtual Firewalls, Virtual IPS engines, Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls
EIA Settings	Firewalls, Virtual Firewalls, Single IPS engines, Single Layer 2 Firewalls
User Authentication	Firewalls, Virtual Firewalls
User Agent or Logon Collector	Firewalls, IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewalls, Virtual Firewalls, Virtual IPS engines, Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls
Anti-Malware	Firewalls, IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewalls, Master NGFW Engines
Advanced Threat Defense	Firewalls, IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewalls, Master NGFW Engines
File Reputation	Firewalls, IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewalls, Master NGFW Engines
Anti-Spam	Firewalls, IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewalls
Sidewinder Proxy	Firewalls
ThreatSeeker	Firewalls, IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewalls, Virtual Firewalls, Virtual IPS engines, Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls
OPC UA Inspection	Firewalls, IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewalls

**Related concepts**


[TLS inspection and how it works](#) on page 1035  
[Enabling access control by user](#) on page 1087  
[Configure anti-malware on engines](#) on page 666  
[Creating engine elements](#) on page 464  
[Editing existing engine elements](#) on page 489


**Related tasks**

[Enable browser-based user authentication](#) on page 1108  
[Configure anti-spam on engines](#) on page 669

## Edit add-on settings for engines

You can edit add-on settings in the Engine Editor.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click an engine element, then select **Edit <element type>**.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, expand the **Add-Ons** branch.
- 3) Browse to the add-on settings that you want to edit, then adjust the settings.
- 4) Click  **Save and Refresh** to save the changes to the configuration and refresh the policy on the engine.

**Related concepts**

[TLS inspection and how it works](#) on page 1035  
[Enabling access control by user](#) on page 1087  
[Configure anti-malware on engines](#) on page 666

**Related tasks**

[Configure anti-spam on engines](#) on page 669

## Configure anti-malware on engines

You can enable anti-malware in the engine properties. The File Filtering Policy used in the engine policy determines which traffic is inspected for malware.

The supported protocols in anti-malware inspection are FTP, HTTP, HTTPS, IMAP, POP3, and SMTP.

The anti-malware solution depends on the NGFW Engine version:

- If the engine version is 5.6 or earlier, the anti-malware solution is provided by ClamAV and the anti-malware database is updated with new malware definitions every hour.

Anti-malware is only supported on Firewalls.

- If the engine version is 5.7 or later, the anti-malware solution is provided by McAfee and there are more options for the anti-malware database update frequency. You can also use an HTTP proxy to connect to anti-malware database update mirrors.

In version 5.7, anti-malware is supported only on Firewalls. In version 5.8 or later, it is supported on all Single and Clustered NGFW Engines and Virtual NGFW Engines (configured on the Master NGFW Engine).

When you upgrade the engine, the anti-malware engine and anti-malware database mirror URL are updated automatically. If you downgrade the engine, you must manually revert the mirror URL.

If the engine version is 5.5.5 or later, you can update the anti-malware database manually. If you upgrade the anti-malware database manually before upgrading the engine, the engine starts inspecting the traffic for malware when it goes online.

### Related tasks

[Add Access rules](#) on page 865

## Manually update the anti-malware database on engines

If you want the engine to have an up-to-date anti-malware database before you upgrade the engine, you can manually update the anti-malware database on an NGFW Engine or individual nodes of an NGFW Engine Cluster.

The update command in the Management Client uses the default anti-malware database mirror URL.



**Note:** You must update the anti-malware database by running the `avdbfetch` script on the engine command line in the following cases:

- To use an alternative mirror
- To use an HTTP proxy
- To update the anti-malware database by copying the database to the engine from a USB memory stick

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Home**.
- 2) Browse to **Engines**, then expand the nodes of the engine for which you want to update the anti-malware database.
- 3) Right-click an engine node, then select **Commands > Update Anti-Malware Database**.


### Result


The anti-malware database update begins. The update can take a while.

**Related concepts**[Getting started with upgrading NGFW Engines](#) on page 1325**Related reference**[Forcepoint NGFW Engine commands](#) on page 1424

## View the status of the anti-malware database on engines


You can view the progress of the anti-malware database update or check when the anti-malware database was last updated.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Home**.
- 2) Browse to **Engines**, then expand the nodes of the engine which you want to view the status of.
- 3) In the **Info** pane, click the **Status** tab. Expand the **Anti-Malware** branch to view the details.

## Enable the anti-malware feature on engines

To use anti-malware, you must enable the anti-malware feature in the Engine Editor.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click an NGFW Engine, then select **Edit <element type>**.
- 3) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Add-Ons > Anti-Malware**.
- 4) Select **Enable**.
- 5) Select the log level from the **Malware Log Level** drop-down list.
  - The log levels are the same as used in Access rules.
  - If you selected **Alert** in the **Malware Log Level** drop-down list, select the **Alert** element from the list.

- 6) In the **Malware Signature Update Settings** section, select how often the engine checks for updates to the anti-malware database.



**Note:** The engine queries DNS servers to resolve the anti-malware database URLs. Define at least one DNS IP address on the **General** branch of the Engine Editor.

- 7) Enter the URL of the anti-malware database mirror in the **Mirror(s)** field.  
The engines contact the mirror to update the anti-malware database. Separate multiple addresses with commas.
- 8) (Optional, engine version 5.7 or later) To use an HTTP proxy to connect to the anti-malware database mirrors, select **Use HTTP Proxy**, then enter the host and port. You might also need to enter a user name and password to connect to the proxy server.
- 9) Continue the configuration in one of the following ways:
  - If you have not yet defined when to use anti-malware inspection, edit the rules in the File Filtering Policy.
  - Otherwise, click **Save and Refresh** to transfer the changes.

#### Related tasks

[Define logging options for Access rules](#) on page 873

[Add Access rules](#) on page 865

## Configure anti-spam on engines

The anti-spam feature allows the engine to filter incoming spam emails. The IPv4 Access rules in the engine policy determine which traffic is filtered for spam.

Anti-spam is available as a separately licensed feature. Only IPv4 traffic can be filtered for spam. SMTP is the only protocol supported in anti-spam inspection.

It is not recommended to use spam filtering between your own mail servers. Configure the IPV4 Access rules to exclude traffic between your mail servers from spam filtering.



**Note:** Anti-spam is not supported on Master NGFW Engines or Virtual NGFW Engines.


#### Related tasks

[Add Access rules](#) on page 865

# Enable the anti-spam feature on engines

To use anti-spam, you must enable the anti-spam feature in the Engine Editor.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click an engine element, then select **Edit <element type>**.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Add-Ons > Anti-Spam**.
- 3) From the **Anti-Spam Settings** drop-down list, select an element.
  - If the element is not in the list, select **Select**.
  - To create a new element, select **New**.
- 4) Click  **Save**.
- 5) Edit the IPv4 Access rules in the Firewall Policy.

# Define general anti-spam settings on engines


Define an Anti-Spam Settings element that determines how engines filter spam emails.


General anti-spam settings include antispoofting and anti-relay settings, honeypot address settings, and settings for SPF (Sender Policy Framework) and MX (Mail Exchanger) record matching.

To enable antispoofting settings, you must specify your local network domains. If the header of an external email contains your local domain information, it is flagged as spam.



**Note:** The changes you make to an Anti-Spam Settings element apply to all engines that use the Anti-Spam Settings element.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Engine Properties > Anti-Spam > Anti-Spam Settings**.
- 3) Right-click **Anti-Spam Settings**, then select **New Anti-Spam Settings**, or right-click the Anti-Spam Settings element that you want to edit, then select **Properties**.
- 4) In the **Anti-Spam Settings Properties** dialog box, enter a name in the **Name** field.
- 5) Click **Add**, then enter your local domain (for example, example.com). The domain is added to the **Local Domains** list.

- 6) From the **From Field Verification** drop-down list, select an action to apply to incoming emails that contains your local domain information.
- 7) Click **Add**, then enter a **Honeypot Address** (for example, honeypot@example.com). IP addresses of all clients that send emails to honeypot addresses are blacklisted. If **Automatic Blacklisting** is enabled on the **Advanced** tab, all emails that come to honeypot addresses are blacklisted for the specified **Blacklist Time**.
- 8) Select the **SPF/MX Record Matching** settings.
  - An SPF record is an entry in the DNS that specifies which hosts are allowed to send emails from certain domains. Mail exchangers use SPF records to verify whether an email is sent from a legitimate host.
  - An MX record specifies hosts that are responsible for handling emails for a certain domain.
  - If SPF/MX record matching is enabled, the credibility of the messages that pass SPF/MX verification is increased. The credibility of the messages that do not pass the verification is decreased.
- 9) If you have finished defining anti-spam settings and have not yet defined which traffic is filtered for spam, edit the IPv4 Access rules in the engine policy.
- 10) Click **OK**, then refresh the policy to transfer the changes.

#### Related tasks

[Add Access rules](#) on page 865

## Define scoring settings for anti-spam on engines

Each incoming email is assigned a spam score to determine the likelihood of its being spam. You can change the default scoring settings.

By default, a spam label is added to the headers of all emails with a score of 2 and above. All emails with a score of 8 and above are rejected. You can adjust the scoring settings to determine the score of emails that are flagged as spam or that are rejected. You can fine-tune spam scoring in the individual spam rules.



**Note:** The changes you make to an Anti-Spam Settings element apply to all engines that use the Anti-Spam Settings element.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Engine Properties > Anti-Spam > Anti-Spam Settings**.
- 3) Right-click the Anti-Spam Settings element that you want to edit, then click **Properties**.
- 4) In the **Anti-Spam Settings Properties** dialog box, click the **Scoring** tab.

- 5) Drag the score markers to define when emails are flagged as spam or rejected, or click **Set to Default** to apply the default settings.
- 6) (Optional) In the **Spam Label** field, change the default spam label that is added to the subject header of an email that is flagged as spam.
- 7) If you have finished defining anti-spam settings and have not yet defined which traffic is filtered for spam, edit the IPv4 Access rules in the engine policy.
- 8) Click **OK**, then refresh the policy to transfer the changes.

### Related tasks

[Add Access rules](#) on page 865

## Define spam filtering rules for engines

You can define specific rules for checking the content of spam messages. Specific rules eliminate the need for further processing and prevent unnecessary use of resources.



**Note:** The changes you make to an Anti-Spam Settings element apply to all engines that use the Anti-Spam Settings element.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Other Elements > Engine Properties > Anti-Spam > Anti-Spam Settings**.
- 3) Right-click the Anti-Spam Settings element you want to edit and click **Properties**.
- 4) In the **Anti-Spam Settings Properties** dialog box, click the **Rules** tab.
- 5) Click **Add** and select the type of rule.
- 6) (Envelope and header rules only) Click **<Select Field>** to select the envelope or header fields that the rule is applied to.  
If the header field that you want to select is not listed, select **New** and enter a name in the dialog box that opens.



**Note:** An **E-mail Content Rule** is automatically applied to the content in the body of an email.

- 7) Double-click the **Value** cell for the rule.
- 8) Select **Plain Text** or **Regular Expression**, then enter the value.



- 9) Click **<Select Action>**, then select the action.
- 10) Click **OK** and refresh the engine policy to transfer the changes.

#### Related tasks

[Add Access rules](#) on page 865


## Define DNSBL settings for engines


DNS-based Blackhole Lists (DNSBLs) are used for publishing IP addresses and networks that are suspected of sending spam.

You can configure the engine to reject messages sent from domain names and IP addresses that appear on DNSBLs.



**Note:** The changes you make to an Anti-Spam Settings element apply to all engines that use the Anti-Spam Settings element.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Engine Properties > Anti-Spam > Anti-Spam Settings**.
- 3) Right-click the Anti-Spam Settings element that you want to edit, then click **Properties**.
- 4) In the **Anti-Spam Settings Properties** dialog box, click the **DNSBL** tab.
- 5) Click **Add** below the list that you want to edit.
- 6) Double-click the empty field in the **URL** column, then enter the URL of the RBL or DNSBL.
- 7) Select the weight for the defined URL:
  - The weight values indicate how credible the list is.
  - The weight values are used to determine whether the message reaches the threshold value. The threshold value is a median of all responses received from the active lists. The messages that reach the threshold value are rejected.
- 8) If you have finished defining anti-spam settings and have not yet defined which traffic is filtered for spam, edit the IPv4 Access rules in the engine policy.
- 9) Click **OK**, then refresh the policy to transfer the changes.

#### Related tasks

[Add Access rules](#) on page 865

# Edit advanced anti-spam settings for engines

In the advanced anti-spam settings, you can fine-tune graylisting and blacklisting options. You can also enable automatic graylisting and blacklisting, and enforcement of the SMTP protocol.



**Note:** The changes you make to an Anti-Spam Settings element apply to all engines that use the Anti-Spam Settings element.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Engine Properties > Anti-Spam > Anti-Spam Settings**.
- 3) Right-click the Anti-Spam Settings element that you want to edit, then click **Properties**.
- 4) In the **Anti-Spam Settings Properties** dialog box, click the **Advanced** tab.
- 5) (Optional) Edit the **Global Delay Settings**.
- 6) Enable or disable **Enforce SMTP** to enforce SMTP protocol checks for traffic. If SMTP protocol violations are detected, the message is given a spam score.
- 7) Enable or disable **Automatic Graylisting**.
  - If the option is enabled, the engine automatically graylists all messages that pass anti-spam checks and that are not whitelisted, graylisted, blacklisted, or rejected.
  - The length of time for which the emails are graylisted is defined in the **Graylist Delay** field in the Global Delay Settings.
- 8) Enable or disable **Automatic Blacklisting**.
  - If the option is enabled, the IP addresses of senders of all discarded messages are automatically blacklisted.
  - The length of time for which the IP addresses are blacklisted is defined in the **Blacklist Time** field in the Global Delay Settings.
- 9) If you have finished defining anti-spam settings and have not yet defined which traffic is filtered for spam, edit the IPv4 Access rules in the engine policy.
- 10) Click **OK**, then refresh the policy to transfer the changes.

## Related tasks

[Add Access rules](#) on page 865

# Advanced engine settings

## Contents

- [Getting started with advanced engine settings](#) on page 675
- [Open the advanced settings](#) on page 676
- [Adjusting Firewall clustering options](#) on page 676
- [Adjust IPS clustering options](#) on page 680
- [Adjust Layer 2 Firewall clustering options](#) on page 680
- [Adjust Master NGFW Engine clustering options](#) on page 681
- [Configure inspection of tunneled traffic](#) on page 684
- [Set connection timeouts](#) on page 684
- [Configure SYN rate limits for engines](#) on page 685
- [Configure log handling settings for engines](#) on page 686
- [Configure DoS protection settings for engines](#) on page 687
- [Configure scan detection settings for engines](#) on page 688

Advanced settings cover various system parameters related to different features.

## Getting started with advanced engine settings

Advanced settings system parameters generally have default values that are appropriate for most installations without any need for adjustments. Some values can be overridden in policies rule-by-rule when exceptions are needed.



**CAUTION:** Improper adjustments to some of the advanced settings can seriously degrade the performance of the system. Do not adjust the advanced settings unless you have a specific need to do so.

### Related concepts

[Creating engine elements](#) on page 464

# Open the advanced settings

To adjust advanced settings, you must open an engine element in the Engine Editor.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click an engine element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, expand the **Advanced Settings** branch.
- 3) Browse to the advanced settings that you want to edit and adjust the settings.

## Adjusting Firewall clustering options

You can check and adjust some of the settings related to how the Firewall Cluster behaves and exchanges information from node to node.

If you are an advanced user, it is also possible to tune settings related to how the traffic load is balanced between several online nodes. However, we strongly discourage you from changing the load-balancing settings unless [Forcepoint support](#) instructs you to make particular changes.

### Related concepts

[Getting started with advanced engine settings](#) on page 675

## Node state synchronization

The nodes of a Firewall Cluster periodically exchange synchronization messages to synchronize state data.

State synchronization is essential for the following features:

- Dynamic load balancing
- Transparent switchover of nodes in case of failure or maintenance
- Handling of related connections when a service (for example, FTP) opens multiple connections

Regular, timer-launched synchronization events are needed to synchronize state data and to avoid cutting connections in case of node failure. Timed synchronization events are divided into full and incremental sync messages.

**Table 66: Sync messages**

Type	Explanation
Full Sync Messages	Contain all connection data about the traffic handled by a node at the time when the message was sent. When new data is received, it replaces the existing data. Full sync requires more bandwidth and processing time.

Type	Explanation
Incremental Sync Messages	Contain only data on connections that were created or changed since the last full or incremental sync message. Incremental sync needs less bandwidth and processing time. Since the incremental changes are sent only once, the system might lose connections if the data is lost. While able to produce accurate data with frequent updates, incremental sync requires full sync to provide reliable synchronization data.

By default, a combination of full and incremental sync messages is exchanged between nodes. This way, frequent updates on incremental changes and recurrent reports on existing connections are combined.

In cases where synchronization of connection information between nodes is causing a disturbance to specific traffic, you can disable synchronization for the traffic using rule options in the Policy. Disabling synchronization reduces the traffic volume on the active heartbeat interface, but it also prevents transparent failover of connections to other nodes.

## Security level for state synchronization

Because synchronization controls the inter-node traffic within a heartbeat network, you must ensure the security of the heartbeat and synchronization data.

Traffic between nodes can be authenticated, or both authenticated and encrypted. Traffic between nodes can also optionally be sent without authentication or encryption. However, this makes it possible to both sniff synchronization data and send fraudulent messages to open connections.



**Note:** Independent of the security level, all critical information such as passwords and encryption keys are protected. They are never sent in plaintext.

## Adjust general Firewall clustering options

To tune the settings that relate to how the traffic load is balanced between several online nodes, adjust the Firewall clustering options.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Firewall Cluster element and select **Edit Firewall Cluster**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **General > Clustering**.
- 3) Configure the settings.



**Note:** Do not adjust the settings in the **Advanced Cluster Settings** dialog box unless you are certain it is necessary.

- 4) Click **Save and Refresh** to transfer the changes.

**Related concepts**[Creating engine elements](#) on page 464**Related tasks**[Defining Access rule Action options](#) on page 867


## Manually tune the Firewall load-balancing filter

The Firewall Cluster's load-balancing filter can be manually edited if there is a specific need for modifications.



**CAUTION:** Do not manually tune the load-balancing filter unless you are certain it is necessary. Normally, there is no need to tune the load-balancing filter, because the configuration generates all required entries automatically. Unnecessary tuning can adversely affect the operation of the filter.

Any edited load-balancing parameters are combined with the automatically created filtering entries. However, editing the load-balancing parameters of the Firewall Cluster without careful consideration can cause conflicts in filtering decisions.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Firewall Cluster element and select **Edit Firewall Cluster**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **General > Clustering**.
- 3) In the **Clustering Mode** section, click **Clustering**.
- 4) On the **Manual LB Filters** tab of the **Advanced Cluster Settings** dialog box, select an option from the **Filter Mode** drop-down list to define how traffic is balanced between the nodes.
- 5) (Optional) Select **Load-Balancing Filter Uses Ports** to include a port value for selecting between all nodes. This setting decreases the granularity of VPN load balancing, and increases the granularity of other traffic load balancing. In typical networks, traffic is balanced based on IP address information only. If there is a dominating pair of communication IP addresses, apply the **Use Ports** option in the load-balancing filter entry only to their traffic.



**CAUTION:** Enabling the **Load-Balancing Filter Uses Ports** option is not compatible with some features, such as mobile VPNs.

- 6) Click **OK**.
- 7) Click  **Save and Refresh** to transfer the changes.

**Related concepts**[Creating engine elements](#) on page 464


## Add Firewall load-balancing filter entries

You can manually add IP addresses to the Firewall Cluster's load-balancing filter.



**CAUTION:** Do not manually tune the load-balancing filter unless you are certain it is necessary. Normally, there is no need to tune the load-balancing filter, because the configuration generates all required entries automatically. Unnecessary tuning can adversely affect the operation of the filter.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Right-click a Firewall Cluster element and select **Edit Firewall Cluster**.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **General > Clustering**.
- 3) In the **Clustering Mode** section, click **Clustering**.
- 4) Click the **Manual LB Filters** tab.
- 5) Click **Add** to generate a new filter entry row.
- 6) Double-click the **IP Address** field.
- 7) Select whether you want to filter an **IPv4 Network**, an **IPv6 Network**, or a **Range** of IP addresses.
- 8) Enter the IPv4 address and netmask, the IPv6 address and prefix, or the address range, and click **OK**.
- 9) Click the **Action** cell and select an action.
- 10) If you selected **Replace** by as the action, click the **Replacement IP** field and enter the replacement IP address.
- 11) (Optional) Select any additional options.
- 12) Click **OK**.
- 13) Click  **Save and Refresh** to transfer the changes.

# Adjust IPS clustering options

IPS Clusters operate by default in load-balancing mode. This means that all configured nodes in an IPS Cluster are online simultaneously and the traffic is distributed among the operational nodes. The load balancing aims to keep the traffic load as evenly distributed as possible.

Alternatively, the IPS Cluster can run in *standby* mode. In that case, only one IPS node at a time is online and processing traffic, while the others are in standby mode. Only if the online node fails, one of the standby nodes goes online to take over the connections being handled by the failed node.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Right-click an IPS Cluster element and select **Edit IPS Cluster**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **General > Clustering**.  
The **Clustering** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Configure the settings.
- 4) Click  **Save and Refresh** to transfer the changes.

## Related concepts

[Creating engine elements](#) on page 464

# Adjust Layer 2 Firewall clustering options

Layer 2 Firewall Clusters operate in active-standby mode. Only one Layer 2 Firewall node at a time is online and processing traffic, while the others are standby. Only if the online node fails, one of the standby nodes goes online to take over the connections being handled by the failed node.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Layer 2 Firewall Cluster element and select **Edit Layer 2 Firewall Cluster**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **General > Clustering**.  
The **Clustering** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Configure the settings.



- 4) Click  **Save and Refresh** to transfer the changes.

#### Related concepts

[Creating engine elements](#) on page 464

#### Related tasks

[Defining Access rule Action options](#) on page 867

## Adjust Master NGFW Engine clustering options

You can check and adjust some of the settings related to how the Master NGFW Engine behaves and exchanges information from node to node.

If you are an advanced user, it is also possible to tune settings related to how the traffic load is balanced between several online nodes. However, we strongly discourage you from changing the load-balancing settings unless [Forcepoint support](#) instructs you to make particular changes.


#### Related concepts

[Creating engine elements](#) on page 464

[Getting started with advanced engine settings](#) on page 675

## Adjust general Master NGFW Engine clustering options

To tune the settings that relate to how the traffic load is balanced between several online nodes, use the Master NGFW Engine Clustering options.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Master NGFW Engine element and select **Edit Master NGFW Engine**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **General > Clustering**.
- 3) Configure the settings.



**Note:** Do not adjust the settings in the **Advanced Cluster Settings** dialog box unless you are certain it is necessary.

- 4) Click  **Save and Refresh** to transfer the changes.

### Related tasks

[Defining Access rule Action options](#) on page 867


## Manually tune the Master NGFW Engine load-balancing filter

The Master NGFW Engine's load-balancing filter can be manually edited if there is a specific need for modifications.



**CAUTION:** Do not manually tune the load-balancing filter unless you are certain it is necessary. Normally, there is no need to tune the load-balancing filter, because the configuration generates all required entries automatically. Unnecessary tuning can adversely affect the operation of the filter.

Any edited load-balancing parameters are combined with the automatically created filtering entries. However, editing the load-balancing parameters of the Master NGFW Engine without careful consideration can cause conflicts in filtering decisions.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Master NGFW Engine and select **Edit Master NGFW Engine**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **General > Clustering**.
- 3) In the Clustering Mode section, click **Clustering**.
- 4) On the **Manual LB Filters** tab, select an option from the **Filter Mode** drop-down list to define how traffic is balanced between the nodes.
- 5) (Optional) Select **Load-Balancing Filter Uses Ports** to include a port value for selecting between all nodes. This setting decreases the granularity of VPN load balancing, and increases the granularity of other traffic load balancing. In typical networks, traffic is balanced based on IP address information only. If there is a dominating pair of communication IP addresses, apply the **Use Ports** option in the load-balancing filter entry only to their traffic.



**CAUTION:** Enabling the **Load-Balancing Filter Uses Ports** option is not compatible with some features, such as mobile VPNs.

- 6) Click **OK**.
- 7) Click  **Save and Refresh** to transfer the changes.

**Related concepts**[Creating engine elements](#) on page 464


# Add Master NGFW Engine load-balancing filter entries

You can manually add IP addresses to the Master NGFW Engine's load-balancing filter.



**CAUTION:** Do not manually tune the load-balancing filter unless you are certain it is necessary. Normally, there is no need to tune the load-balancing filter, because the configuration generates all required entries automatically. Unnecessary tuning can adversely affect the operation of the filter.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Right-click a Master NGFW Engine element and select **Edit Master NGFW Engine**. The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **General > Clustering**. The **Clustering** pane opens on the right.
- 3) In the **Clustering Mode** section, click **Clustering**.
- 4) Click the **Manual LB Filters** tab.
- 5) Click **Add** to generate a new filter entry row.
- 6) Double-click the **IP Address** field.
- 7) Select whether you want to filter an **IPv4 Network**, an **IPv6 Network**, or a **Range** of IP addresses.
- 8) Enter the IPv4 address and netmask, the IPv6 address and prefix, or the address range, and click **OK**.
- 9) Click the **Action** cell and select an action.
- 10) If you selected **Replace** by as the action, click the **Replacement IP** field and enter the replacement IP address.
- 11) (Optional) Select any additional options.
- 12) Click **OK**.
- 13) Click  **Save and Refresh** to transfer the changes.

# Configure inspection of tunneled traffic

You can define in the Advanced Settings how the IPS engine or Layer 2 Firewall inspects tunneled traffic.

If traffic is tunneled using IP-in-IP or Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE), the payload of the tunneling packet can be checked against the Access rules several times.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click an IPS or Layer 2 Firewall element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Advanced Settings > Tunneling**.  
The **Tunneling** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Define the settings.
- 4) Click  **Save and Refresh** to transfer the configuration changes.

## Related concepts

[Getting started with advanced engine settings](#) on page 675

# Set connection timeouts

You can define general timeouts for removing idle connections from the state table, including non-TCP communications that are handled like connections.


The timeout prevents wasting engine resources on storing information about abandoned connections. Timeouts are a normal way to clear traffic information with protocols that have no closing mechanism. The communicating client and server also have timeouts for closing inactive connections.

You can set timeouts by protocol and by TCP connection state. Idle timeouts set in Access rules override these global settings.


Timeouts do not affect active connections. The connections are kept in the state table as long as the interval of packets within a connection is shorter than the timeouts set.



**CAUTION:** Setting excessive timeouts for many connections consumes resources excessively and can disturb the operation of the engine.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Firewall, IPS, or Layer 2 Firewall element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Advanced Settings > Idle Timeouts**.

- 3) Click the **Timeout(s)** column and enter the timeout value for the protocol in seconds.
- 4) (Optional) Click **Add** to add a protocol to the list and enter the timeout for the protocol.
- 5) Click  **Save and Refresh** to transfer the configuration changes.

#### Related concepts

[Creating engine elements](#) on page 464

## Configure SYN rate limits for engines

You can configure SYN rate limits to reduce the risk of SYN flood attacks against the Firewall, IPS engine, Layer 2 Firewall, Master NGFW Engine, or Virtual NGFW Engine.

SYN rate limits are applied to TCP connections. Each TCP connection starts with a SYN packet. If the SYN rate limits defined for the engine are reached, the engine drops new TCP connections.

The global SYN rate limits that you define in the NGFW Engine properties are applied as default settings on all interfaces. You can also define SYN rate limits that override the global settings in each interface's properties.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click an engine element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Advanced Settings > SYN Rate Limits**.  
The **SYN Rate Limits** pane opens on the right.
- 3) In the **SYN Rate Limits Mode**, select **Automatic** or **Custom**.




**CAUTION:** The recommended values for the SYN rate limits depend on your network environment. If the custom settings are not carefully configured, the capacity of the engine might suffer or SYN rate limits might not work correctly.

- 4) (Custom only) In the **Allowed SYNs per Second** field, enter the number of allowed SYN packets per second.
- 5) (Custom only) In the **Burst Size** field, enter the number of allowed SYNs before the engine starts limiting the SYN rate.



**CAUTION:** We recommend setting the **Burst Size** value to at least one tenth of the **Allowed SYNs per Second** value. If the burst size is too small, SYN rate limits do not work. For example, if the value for **Allowed SYNs per Second** is 10000, the **Burst Size** value must be at least 1000.

- 6) Click  **Save and Refresh** to transfer the configuration changes.

**Related concepts**

[Creating engine elements](#) on page 464

**Related tasks**

[Configure advanced properties for firewall interfaces](#) on page 542

[Configure advanced properties for IPS interfaces](#) on page 570

[Configure advanced properties for Layer 2 Firewall interfaces](#) on page 584

[Configure advanced properties for Master NGFW Engine interfaces](#) on page 599

[Configure advanced properties for Virtual NGFW Engine interfaces](#) on page 611


# Configure log handling settings for engines

Log Handling settings allow you to adjust logging when the log spool on the Firewall, IPS, Layer 2 Firewall, or Master NGFW Engine fills up.


Logs are spooled locally when the Log Server is not available. The Master NGFW Engine spools its own logs and the logs sent by the Virtual NGFW Engines that the Master NGFW Engine hosts.

You can also configure Log Compression to save resources on the engine. By default, each generated Antispoofing and Discard log entry is logged separately and displayed as a separate entry in the **Logs** view. Log Compression allows you to define the maximum number of separately logged entries. When the defined limit is reached, a single Antispoofing log entry or Discard log entry is logged. The single entry contains information on the total number of the generated Antispoofing log entries or Discard log entries. After this, logging returns to normal and all generated entries are once more logged and displayed separately.

The general Log Compression settings you define in the Engine Editor are applied as default settings on all interfaces. You can also define Log Compression and override the global settings in each interface's properties.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Firewall, IPS, Layer 2 Firewall, or Master NGFW Engine element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Advanced Settings > Log Handling**.  
The **Log Handling** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Select the **Log Spooling Policy** to define what happens when the engine's log spool becomes full.
- 4) (Optional) In the **Log Compression** table, enter values for Antispoofing entries (Firewall only) and for Discard entries.  
Do not enable Log Compression if you want all Antispoofing and Discard entries to be logged as separate log entries (for example, for reporting or statistics).

- 5) Click  **Save and Refresh** to transfer the configuration changes.

#### Related concepts

[Creating engine elements](#) on page 464

#### Related tasks

[Configure advanced properties for firewall interfaces](#) on page 542

[Configure advanced properties for IPS interfaces](#) on page 570

[Configure advanced properties for Layer 2 Firewall interfaces](#) on page 584

#### Related reference

[Log fields controlled by the Additional Payload option](#) on page 1510

## Configure DoS protection settings for engines

You can configure three forms of protection that can help prevent Denial of Service (DoS) attacks: SYN flood protection and slow HTTP request protection against rate-based DoS attacks, and TCP reset protection against TCP reset attacks.


The following settings can be configured when the Rate-Based DoS Protection Mode is enabled:

- SYN flood protection: In a SYN flood attack, an attacker sends many TCP SYN packets to a server without any intention of completing the TCP handshake. The SYN packets are often sent with forged source IP addresses. If the rate of unanswered SYN-ACK packets exceeds the threshold set in the DoS protection options, the engine acts as a SYN proxy. The engine completes the TCP handshake with the client, and only initiates the connection with the server after the client has completed the TCP handshake.
- Slow HTTP request protection: When the engine receives an HTTP request, it analyzes the data transfer rate and length of time it takes to read the header fields of the HTTP request. If the sender of the request tries to keep the connection open for an unreasonable length of time, consuming excessive resources, the engine blacklists the sender's IP address for a specified length of time.

In addition, you can configure protection against DoS attacks that are based on TCP resets:

- TCP reset protection: In a TCP reset attack, an attacker sends forged TCP segments with an RST flag in an attempt to make the engine drop TCP connections. The engine detects the sequence numbers of the TCP RST segments to determine whether it is under a TCP Reset attack. If the segment's sequence number is in the current receive window but does not exactly match the expected sequence number, the engine might send back a challenge ACK message. The connection is dropped only if the original sender responds to the challenge ACK with a new TCP reset that contains the correct sequence number.


You can enable all forms of DoS protection on all NGFW Engine and Virtual NGFW Engine types. If Rate-Based DoS Protection Mode is enabled or set to Off in the Engine Editor, you can override the rate-based DoS protection mode in Access rules. If rate-based DoS protection is disabled in the engine properties, you cannot enable rate-based DoS protection in an Access rule. You cannot override the TCP reset protection setting in Access rules.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click an engine element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Advanced Settings > DoS Protection**.
- 3) (Optional) From the **Rate-Based DoS Protection Mode** drop-down list, select **On (Can Be Overridden in Policy)** or **Off (Can Be Overridden in Policy)**.



**Note:** You can override these settings in individual Access rules.

- 4) From the **SYN Flood Sensitivity** drop-down list, select the sensitivity for detecting SYN flood attacks.
- 5) From the **Slow HTTP Request Sensitivity** drop-down list, select the sensitivity for detecting slow HTTP request attacks.
- 6) (Optional) From the **TCP Reset Sensitivity** drop-down list, select the sensitivity for detecting TCP reset attacks.
- 7) Click  **Save and Refresh** to transfer the configuration changes.

#### Related concepts

[Creating engine elements](#) on page 464


#### Related tasks

[Defining Access rule Action options](#) on page 867

## Configure scan detection settings for engines

Before an attack, attackers might scan the network for open ports. When you enable scan detection on an engine, the number of connections or connection attempts within a time window is counted. If the number of events reaches the threshold set in the scan detection options, an alert is generated.

If scan detection is enabled or set to Off in the Engine Editor, you can override the scan detection mode in Access rules. If scan detection is set to Disabled in the Engine Editor, you cannot enable scan detection in an Access rule.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click an engine element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.



- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Advanced Settings > Scan Detection**.  
The **Scan Detection** pane opens on the right.
- 3) (Optional) Select the **Scan Detection Mode**.
- 4) (If Scan Detection is **On** or **Off**) Enter the number of TCP, UDP, and ICMP events and the time window for detecting the events before an alert is generated.
- 5) Click **Save and Refresh** to transfer the configuration changes.

#### Related concepts

[Creating engine elements](#) on page 464

#### Related tasks

[Defining Access rule Action options](#) on page 867



# PART VIII

## Routing

### Contents

- [Configuring routing and antispoofing on page 693](#)
- [Configuring dynamic routing on page 717](#)
- [Outbound traffic management on page 731](#)
- [Inbound traffic management on page 745](#)

Use the Management Client to configure static or dynamic routing, and use a Multi-Link configuration to manage and distribute inbound and outbound connections.



# Configuring routing and antispoofing

## Contents

- [Getting started with routing](#) on page 693
- [Using routing and antispoofing](#) on page 695
- [Routing configuration overview](#) on page 698
- [View and add default routes](#) on page 699
- [Add single-link routes](#) on page 700
- [Add routes for firewalls](#) on page 701
- [Adding routes for Master NGFW Engines](#) on page 706
- [Adding routes for Virtual Firewalls](#) on page 706
- [Defining Multi-Link routes for firewalls](#) on page 706
- [Define routing for the Route-Based VPN](#) on page 710
- [Add routes for IPS engines or Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 710
- [Remove routes](#) on page 711
- [Modify antispoofing](#) on page 712
- [Check routes with a Route Query](#) on page 714
- [Examples of routing configuration](#) on page 715

Routing is the process of defining through which network interface the engine forwards traffic from a source address to a destination address. Antispoofing is the process of defining which addresses are considered valid source addresses for the networks connected to each interface.

## Getting started with routing

Routing information is used for deciding which network interface is used to reach any given destination address. The SMC automates most of the routing and antispoofing configuration. Much of the configuration is generated automatically based on the IP addresses of the network interfaces.

It is only necessary to change routing and antispoofing for IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewalls, and Master NGFW Engines if other SMC components are not located indirectly connected networks. IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewalls, and Master NGFW Engines that host Virtual IPS engines or Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls do not forward traffic from one network to another.

The routing and antispoofing information is displayed and configured graphically in interface-based trees in the **Routing** pane and **Antispoofing** pane in the Engine Editor. The routing information is stored on the Management Server. The information is transferred to the engines when the policies are installed or refreshed.

In addition to the routing information that is automatically generated, you must manually add any networks that are not directly connected to the engine to the routing tree. If the **Automatic Default Route** option is selected

for an interface, a default route is automatically created through the interface. You must add a default route for packets whose destination IP address is not included anywhere else in the routing tree.

IP address *spoofing* is an attack where the source IP address in a packet is changed to gain unauthorized access or to cause a *denial-of-service* (DoS). Such attacks can be prevented with antispoofing rules. The antispoofing configuration is generated automatically based on the routing tree. Antispoofing is always enforced on all interfaces. You can change the antispoofing configuration, but in most environments, there is no need to do so.

New Networks are automatically added to routing when you change the engine's interface properties. However, none of the Networks are automatically removed, so you must check your **Routing** pane in the Engine Editor for obsolete entries and remove them manually. This behavior prevents the system from removing currently unused routes that you might want to use again later. All additions and deletions in the **Routing** pane are automatically reflected in the **Antispoofing** pane in the Engine Editor. Manual definitions in the **Antispoofing** pane in the Engine Editor are preserved regardless of routing changes.

Changes to the routing or antispoofing configuration are only transferred to the engine when you refresh the policy. When you change the routing or antispoofing for a Master NGFW Engine, you must refresh the policy on the Master NGFW Engine. When you change the routing or antispoofing for a Virtual NGFW Engine, you must refresh the policy on the Virtual NGFW Engine.

## How routing works

Basic routing information for directly connected networks is added automatically to both routing and antispoofing based on IP addresses you have defined for the engines' interfaces. You must manually define routing for firewall Tunnel Interfaces used in the Route-Based VPN. IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls do not route traffic. You might need to define a default route for IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls if other SMC components are not on a directly connected network.

Antispoofing is used on Firewalls, IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewalls, Master NGFW Engines, and Virtual Firewalls. Antispoofing configuration is added and updated automatically based on the routing configuration. Firewalls, IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewalls, Master NGFW Engines, and Virtual Firewalls always enforce antispoofing. By default a connection is allowed to originate only from the interface that has a routing entry for the connection's source IP address.

## Limitations

- Routing and antispoofing can only be configured for interfaces that have IP addresses. It is not possible to define routing or antispoofing for the following types of interfaces because they do not have IP addresses:
  - Capture Interfaces and Inline Interfaces on IPS engines or Layer 2 Firewalls, or on Master NGFW Engines that host Virtual IPS engines or Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls.
  - All interfaces on Virtual IPS engines and Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls.
- The basic routing configuration does not determine which traffic is routed through policy-based VPNs. Routing is checked after policy-based VPN traffic is encapsulated inside encrypted packets with different source and destination IP address information.
- Only IPv4 addresses are supported in DHCP relay and multicast routing.
- Multicast routing is not supported on Wireless Interfaces.
- IGMP Proxy mode for multicast routing is not supported on Tunnel Interfaces.

### Related tasks

[Edit the Quagga configuration file](#) on page 729

# Using routing and antispoofing

---

Using policy routing, you can override the configuration defined in the Routing pane in the Engine Editor.

## Policy routing

---

With *policy routing*, you can route traffic through a selected gateway. Policy routing can be used in cases where the same IP address is used by different hosts in different networks and it is not possible to resolve the IP addresses in any other way. These policy routing entries override other routing configuration defined in the **Routing** pane in the Engine Editor.

A policy routing entry includes the following information:

- Source IP address
- Destination IP address
- Netmasks or prefixes for the source and destination addresses
- The IP address of the selected gateway

Antispoofing configuration might need to be changed accordingly when using manual policy routing entries.

## Multicast routing

---

IP multicasting is the transmission of an IP datagram to all hosts in a multicast host group, which is identified by a single destination IP address. You can configure *static multicast* and *IGMP-based multicast* forwarding of IPv4 traffic. You can also configure *dynamic multicast* routing using the Quagga Routing Suite on the engine command line.

Static multicast does not rely on IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol) messaging. Because of the static nature of the configuration, static multicast is suitable for enduring configurations, such as mutually agreed multicast traffic between organizations.

In IGMP-based multicast forwarding (IGMP proxying), the firewall maintains a list of subscriptions to the multicast host group and forwards multicast traffic to the subscribed hosts. The firewall periodically queries the downstream networks for hosts that want to join the multicast host group. The firewall also processes unsolicited IGMP join/leave requests received from downstream networks. As multicast traffic is only sent to the currently subscribed hosts, IGMP-based multicast forwarding can save bandwidth and provide faster service. IGMP-based multicast forwarding is only supported in tree topology networks. See RFC 4605 for more information.

If you use Multi-Link together with IGMP-based multicast forwarding, make sure that you do not create routing loops. If you add a NetLink to an engine's upstream interface, do not add a NetLink to any of the engine's downstream interfaces.

## Changing antispoofing definitions

---

In rare cases, you might need to change the default antispoofing definitions to make exceptions to the antispoofing rules (for example, if you have defined policy routing manually). You can also disable antispoofing for an interface, if necessary.

## Monitoring routing

---

You can monitor the currently active routing configuration of an engine in the **Routing Monitoring** view. The routing configuration can be viewed as a table or diagram. You can also save versions of the routing configurations as snapshots in the **Routing Monitoring** view.

### Related concepts

[Multicasting vs. unicasting or broadcasting](#) on page 1517

### Related reference

[Forcepoint NGFW Engine commands](#) on page 1424

## Default elements for routing and antispoofing

---

Networks that correspond to the IP addresses of each interface are automatically added to the routing and antispoofing configurations of IPS, Firewall, Layer 2 Firewall, Master NGFW Engine, and Virtual Firewall elements.

## Firewalls

---

The system includes a default network element called *Any network*, which is needed to define the default route. The system also includes a Host element for Bootp/DHCP clients in the **Antispoofing** pane of the Engine Editor for Firewall, Master NGFW Engine, and Virtual Firewall elements.

## IPS and Layer 2 Firewalls

---

The system includes a default network element called *Any network*, which is needed to define the default route for IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewalls, and Master NGFW Engines.

## Routing and antispoofing tree view and how it works

---

To understand how the engine reads routing definitions, look at the network interfaces in the Routing or Antispoofing tree view.

The **Routing** pane in the Engine Editor automatically displays the interfaces and a Network element for each network that is directly connected to the engine. The Network is created based on the IP addresses that you define for each interface. Interfaces that belong to an aggregated link always share routing information. Only the first interface that belongs to the aggregated link is displayed in the **Routing** pane and **Antispoofing** pane in the Engine Editor.

The **Routing** pane has two display modes:

- Traditional tree view
- Simple table view (IPv4 and IPv6 routes are shown in separate tables.)



You can switch between the display modes using the **Display Mode** menu at the top of the view.

The **Routing Tools** pane at the bottom of the **Routing** pane has three tabs:

- **Default Route** — View and create default routes.
- **Add Route** — Create new routes.
- **Query Route** — Search for routes.

When the engine reads routing definitions, it selects the most specific route and antispoofing definition it finds for each packet. The engine first checks if there is a route defined for the specific destination IP address of the packet (a Host element). Then the engine checks routes to the defined networks (a Network element), and finally uses the default route (the Any Network element) if none of the other routes match the packet's destination address. If there are overlapping definitions, the more specific one is considered first.

### The more specific destination is considered first in routing

Interface 1 has a Host element for 192.168.0.202, and Interface 2 has a Network element for 192.168.0.0/24. A packet to 192.168.0.202 is routed through Interface 1, and the Interface 2 definition is not considered for those packets at all.



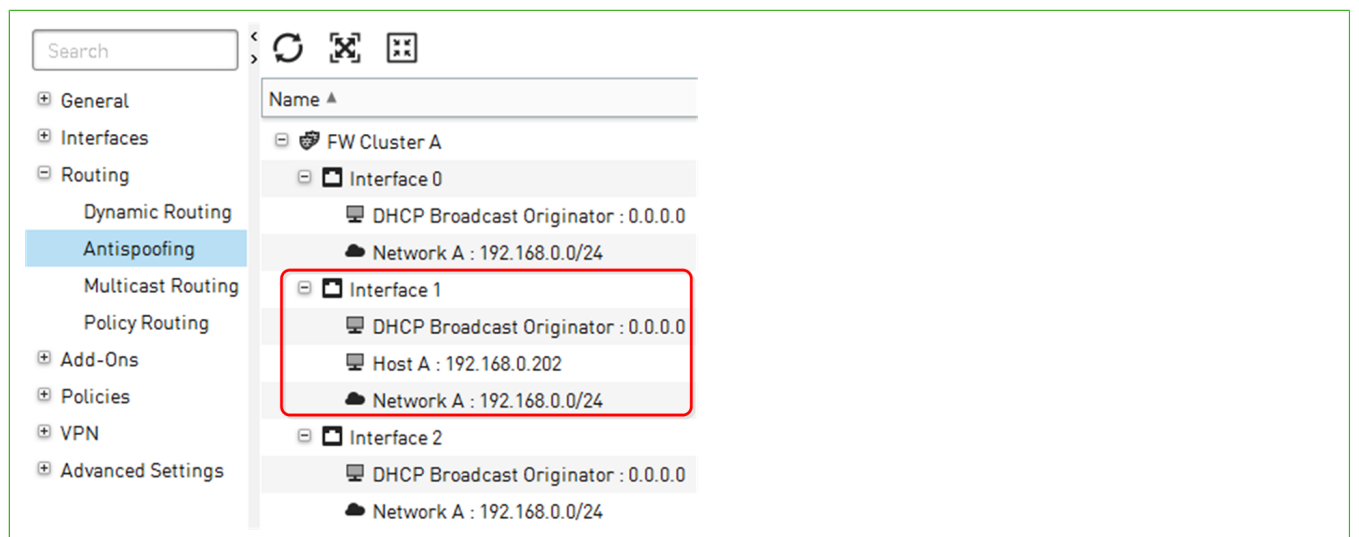
Interface 1 is always used for a destination of 192.168.0.202 because it has a Host element with the most specific address under it.

The **Antispoofing** pane in the Engine Editor defines the source addresses of traffic that are considered valid (not spoofed) for each interface. If an interface receives a packet with a source address that is not a valid address for the networks connected to that interface, the packet is discarded. This is the case, for example, when an external interface receives a packet with an internal source. The engine selects the most specific antispoofing definition it finds for each packet.

### Only the most specific destination is considered valid in antispoofing

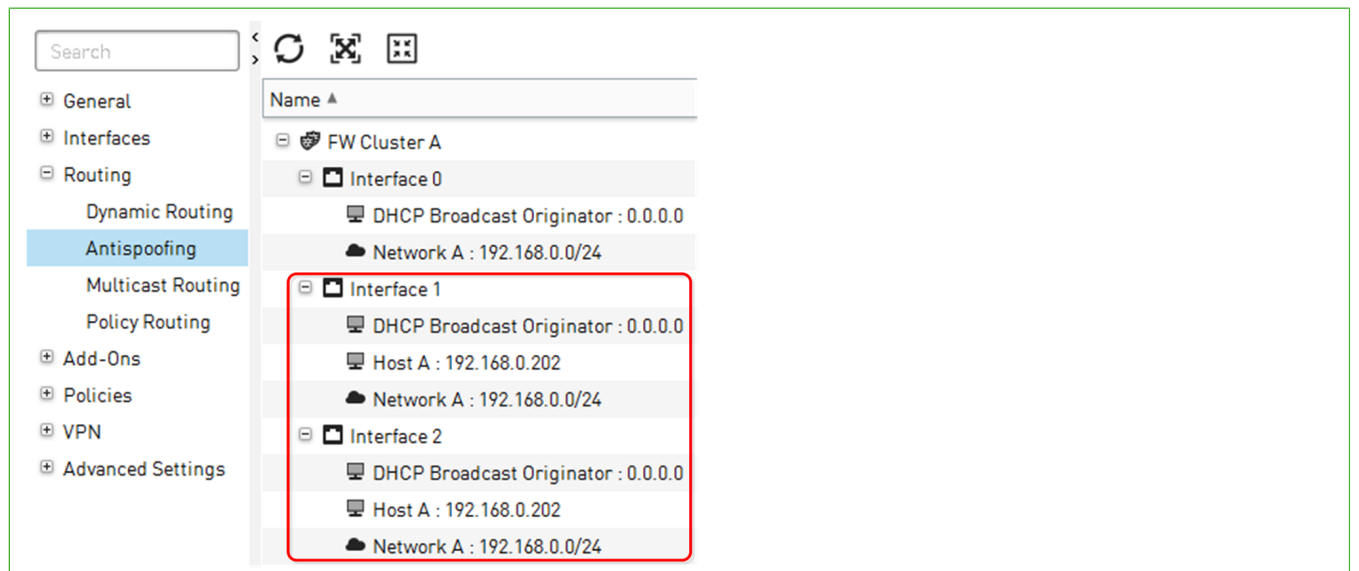
In the Antispoofing tree automatically generated based on the previous routing example, antispoofing discards any traffic with the address 192.168.0.202 if it originates from Interface 2, because it has the less specific definition for that address (the Network 192.168.0.0/24).

Packets from Host A (192.168.0.202) are only considered valid if they originate from Interface 1, because it has the most specific route to the host's address.



### Both interfaces are considered valid

To allow the traffic to originate from both interfaces, you would also have to add the Host element for 192.168.0.202 under Interface 2, so that the definitions are equally specific (both interfaces contain the Host element) and therefore both definitions are valid at the same time.



Both Interface 1 and Interface 2 are considered valid routes to Host A (192.168.0.202) because the Host element is included under both interfaces.

## Routing configuration overview

Routing configuration involves adding a default route, adding routes to networks that are not directly connected, and adding routes to networks that can be reached using the Route-Based VPN.

- 1) Add the default route.

- 2) Add routes to networks that are not directly connected, but require a next-hop gateway.
- 3) Add routes to networks that are reachable through the Tunnel Interfaces used in the Route-Based VPN.

In addition to examining packets, Firewalls, Master NGFW Engines, and Virtual Firewalls must determine how to route packets. The SMC automates most of the routing and antispoofing configuration. Much of the configuration is generated automatically based on the IP addresses of the network interfaces.

- Routing and antispoofing for Master NGFW Engines are configured in the same way as routing and antispoofing for Firewall Clusters.
- Routing and antispoofing for Virtual Firewalls are configured in the same way as routing and antispoofing for Single Firewalls.

Usually, only a default route is needed for the IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewalls, and Master NGFW Engines. Default routes are used when the engines open connections to some network other than the directly connected networks. No routes have to be defined if an IPS engine, Layer 2 Firewall, or Master NGFW Engine communicates only in its local IP network.

Routing and antispoofing can only be configured for interfaces that have IP addresses. Capture Interfaces and Inline Interfaces cannot have IP addresses. For this reason, it is not possible to configure routing or antispoofing for these types of interfaces. Capture Interfaces and Inline Interfaces are the only type of interfaces that you can define for Virtual IPS engines and Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls. Because of this, it is not possible to configure routing or antispoofing for Virtual IPS engines or Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls. On Master NGFW Engines, routing and antispoofing can only be configured for the Master NGFW Engine's system communications interfaces.

## View and add default routes

Use the **Routing Tools** pane to view and add default routes.

### View the default route

Use the **Show Default Route** function to quickly check which route is currently set as the default route.



**Note:** The **Automatic Default Route** setting enables the automatic creation of default routes for interfaces with dynamic IP addresses on single engines. The **Automatic Default Route** option is selected by default for new interfaces with dynamic IP addresses. Only Single Firewalls, Single IPS engines, and Single Layer 2 Firewalls can have dynamic IP addresses.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click an engine, then select **Edit <element type>**.
- 3) Browse to **Routing**.
- 4) In the **Routing Tools** pane, click the **Default Route** tab, then click **Show Default Route**.



## Result

The current default route or default routes for the engine are shown. The default routes are highlighted.

## Add a default route

If you want to change the automatically created default route, use the **Default Route** tab of the **Routing Tools** pane to define a new default route.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click an engine, then select **Edit <element type>**.
- 3) Browse to **Routing**.
- 4) In the **Routing Tools** pane, click the **Default Route** tab.
- 5) In the **Gateway** field, enter an IP address. You can also double-click the field and select a gateway device for the route.
- 6) Click **Add**.  
The default route is added to the configuration.
- 7) Click  **Save**.


## Add single-link routes


Use the **Routing Tools** pane to add a static route to a particular network.



**Note:** If there are two or more alternative routes to the same destination, create a Multi-Link route instead.

Routing decisions are made for each packet by matching from the most specific route definition to the most general. However, any policy routing entries you define override the other routing information. For packets subject to address translation, routing is always done after NAT using the translated addresses.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click a Firewall, Virtual Firewall, or Master NGFW Engine, then select **Edit <element type>**.

- 3) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Routing**.
- 4) In the **Routing Tools** pane at the bottom of the **Routing** pane, click the **Add Route** tab.
- 5) In the **Destination** field, enter an IP address.  
You can also double-click the field, then select a destination device.
- 6) In the **Gateway** field, enter an IP address.  
You can also double-click the field, then select a gateway device.
- 7) Click **Add**.  
The route is added to the configuration.
- 8) Click **Save**.

---

## Add routes for firewalls

---

Firewalls route network traffic. You must add a default route if the **Automatic Default Route** option is not selected for any interfaces. You must also add any routes through next-hop gateways to networks that are not directly connected to the firewalls.

On firewall clusters, the routing information is configured simultaneously for all cluster nodes and all nodes always have identical routing tables. If you are configuring the Route-Based VPN, you must manually define the routing for the Tunnel Interfaces.

---

## Configure DHCP message routing on firewalls

---

The firewall can relay DHCP messages. If DHCP messages are routed through the firewall (from a network segment to some other, isolated segment), you must enable DHCP relay on the firewall interface properties for the interface where the DHCP requests are originating from (client's network).

Only IPv4 addresses are supported in DHCP relay. You can enable DHCP relay only on firewall interfaces that have at least one IPv4 address.

This DHCP relay configuration does not relay DHCP messages from VPN Clients.


---

## Define a DHCP Server

---

A DHCP Server dynamically assigns IP addresses.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Expand the **Network Elements** tree.
- 3) Right-click **Servers** and select **New > DHCP Server**.

- 4) Enter a unique **Name** and **IP Address**.



**Note:** Only IPv4 addresses are supported for DHCP relay in the SMC.

- 5) A **Location** and **Contact Address** is needed if there is a NAT device between a firewall and the server, so that the firewall cannot connect directly to the IP address defined for the interface.
- 6) Click **OK** to apply the changes to the DHCP Server properties.

### Related concepts


[Define contact IP addresses](#) on page 129



### Related tasks

[Create Location elements](#) on page 129

## Enable DHCP relay on firewalls

You must select which firewall interfaces perform DHCP relay. Activate the relay on the interface toward the DHCP clients.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single Firewall or Firewall Cluster element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Interfaces**.  
The **Interfaces** pane opens.
- 3) Right-click a physical, VLAN, or Port Group interface and select **Edit <interface type>**.
  - When configuring VLAN interfaces, set the DHCP relay separately for each VLAN.
  - When configuring Port Group interfaces, set the DHCP relay separately for each Port Group.
- 4) Click the **DHCP** tab, and select **DHCP Relay** as the **DHCP Mode**.
- 5) Select the DHCP server from the list of servers on the left and click **Add**.  
To create a DHCP Server element, select  **Tools** > **New** > **DHCP Server**.
- 6) Adjust the maximum allowed packet size if you have a specific need to do so.
- 7) (Optional) Select the CVI or IP address you want to use for **DHCP Relay**.
- 8) Click **OK**.
- 9) Click  **Save** to save and validate changes.

# Configure multicast traffic routing on firewalls

The Firewall supports static multicast, IGMP-based multicast forwarding (IGMP proxying), and multicast routing using protocol-independent multicast (PIM).

Static multicast is suitable for enduring configurations, while IGMP-based forwarding and PIM can save bandwidth and provide faster service.

Static multicast allows you to configure static routes for multicast traffic between a source IP address and firewall interface pair, and a destination (multicast) IP address and firewall interface pair. Static multicast is often used for enduring configurations, such as mutually agreed multicast traffic between organizations (for example, multicast news feeds and video conferences).

IGMP-based multicast forwarding is only supported in tree topology networks. Only IPv4 addresses are supported in multicast routing.

In IGMP-based multicast forwarding, the firewall maintains a list of hosts that are subscribed to the multicast host group. It forwards the traffic sent to the multicast IP address only to the currently subscribed hosts.



**Note:** In addition to configuring the firewall, routers and other network devices must be configured to allow IP multicasting along the path to the client machines.

Three variants of PIM are supported: PIM sparse mode (PIM-SM), PIM dense mode (PIM-DM), and PIM source-specific multicast (PIM-SSM), and the mode can be set separately for different multicast groups.

## Related tasks

[Configure PIM](#) on page 726

## Define static multicast on firewalls

You can configure static routes for multicast traffic between a source IP address and firewall interface pair and a destination (multicast) IP address and firewall interface pair.




**Note:** Make sure your IPv4 Access rules allow the static multicast traffic to pass through the firewall.



**Note:** Wireless Interfaces cannot be used in multicast routing.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single Firewall or Firewall Cluster element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Routing > Multicast Routing**.  
The **Multicast Routing** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Select **Static** as the **Multicast Routing Mode**.  
The options for the mode are enabled.

- 4) Click **Add**.  
A new entry appears in the table.
- 5) Configure the values for the entry.
- 6) Click  **Save and Refresh** to transfer the changed configuration.

### Related concepts

[Getting started with Access rules](#) on page 811

## Define IGMP-based multicast forwarding on firewalls


You can configure IGMP-based multicast forwarding for a specified Firewall element.

IGMP-based multicast forwarding (IGMP proxying) is implemented on the Firewall based on RFC 4605. IGMP-based multicast forwarding is only supported in tree topology networks. RFC 4605 includes support for source-specific multicast (SSM) with IGMP version 3. SSM is not supported with IGMP-based multicast forwarding. However, you can configure Access rules that filter multicast traffic based on the source.

The firewall maintains a membership database of the subscriptions from the downstream networks and sends unsolicited reports or leaves on the upstream interface when the subscription database changes. It also sends IGMP membership reports when queried on the upstream interface.



**Note:** Make sure your IPv4 Access rules allow this traffic to pass through the firewall.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single Firewall or Firewall Cluster element, then select **Edit <element type>**.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Routing > Multicast Routing**.
- 3) Select **IGMP Proxy** as the **Multicast Routing Mode**.
- 4) (Optional) Select the **Upstream Interface** and the **IGMP Querier Settings** for it.
  - If the multicast servers and the hosts are in the local networks, or if you want to limit the multicast to the local networks, it is not necessary to define the Upstream Interface. In that case, leave **Not Set** selected for **Upstream Interface**.
  - (Firewall Clusters only) You can only select as the **Upstream Interface** an interface that has a Cluster Virtual IP Address (CVI). You cannot select a Heartbeat Interface as the **Upstream Interface**.
  - You might need to select a specific IGMP Querier Settings element, for example, to troubleshoot multicast accessibility on hosts, or if some hosts use an earlier IGMP version.
- 5) Click **Add** to define **Downstream Interfaces**.  
The firewall periodically queries the downstream networks for hosts that want to join or leave the multicast host group.  
A new entry appears in the table.



- 6) Click the **Interface** cell and select the Downstream Interface from the list.
  - You can use each interface only once in the IGMP proxy configuration.
  - (Firewall Clusters only) The interface that you select as a Downstream Interface must have Node Dedicated IP Addresses (NDIs). It cannot be a Heartbeat Interface. It is recommended that the Node Dedicated IP Addresses increase in the same order on each node: for example, 192.168.1.10 and 192.168.2.10 for node A, and 192.168.1.11 and 192.168.2.11 for node B.



**Note:** The downstream interfaces must have the lowest IP addresses among all IGMP queries in the local networks.

- 7) Click the **IGMP Querier Settings** cell, then select the IGMP Querier Settings element that uses the IGMP version for the downstream interface.

You might need to select a specific IGMP Querier Settings element, for example, to troubleshoot multicast accessibility on hosts, or if some hosts use an earlier IGMP version.

- 8) Click **Save and Refresh** to transfer the changed configuration.

### Related concepts

[Getting started with Access rules](#) on page 811

## Configure policy routing on firewalls

Policy routing is used to resolve duplicate IP addressing issues.

Policy routing allows you to route traffic based on both source and destination IP address. Policy routing is useful if the same IP address is in use on more than one physical host in different networks and it is not possible to resolve the situation by changing IP address or by using NAT. Usually, there is no need to add any policy routing entries.



**Note:** Policy routing is only used if duplicate IP addresses are used in different networks. To configure alternative routes to the same destination, use Multi-Link routing.

Policy routing entries are applied before the regular routes defined in the **Routing** tree (overriding those configurations if matches are found). They are processed exactly in the order specified in the **Policy Routing** window; the first matching policy routing entry is applied to a connection and any further entries are ignored.

Policy routing entries are not automatically added to the **Antispoofing** pane, so you might need to update the antispoofing information manually.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single Firewall or Firewall Cluster element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Routing > Policy Routing**.  
The **Policy Routing** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Click **Add**.

- 4) Click the cells and enter the required routing information.



**Note:** Routing is done after NAT.

- 5) Click **Save and Refresh** to transfer the changed configuration.

#### Related concepts

[Using routing and antispoofing](#) on page 695

[Defining Multi-Link routes for firewalls](#) on page 706

## Adding routes for Master NGFW Engines

Routing information for directly connected networks is added automatically. For networks that are not directly connected to the Master NGFW Engine, you must add the routing information.

Basic routing information for directly connected networks is added automatically to both routing and antispoofing based on IP addresses you have defined for the engines' interfaces. You must add a default route and any routes through next-hop gateways to networks that are not directly connected to the Master NGFW Engine.

## Adding routes for Virtual Firewalls

Routing information for directly connected networks is added automatically. For networks that are not directly connected to the Virtual Firewall, you must add the routing information.

Basic routing information for directly connected networks is added automatically to both routing and antispoofing based on IP addresses you have defined for the engines' interfaces. You must add a default route and any routes through next-hop gateways to networks that are not directly connected to the Virtual Firewall. If you are configuring the Route-Based VPN, you must manually define the routing for the Tunnel Interfaces.



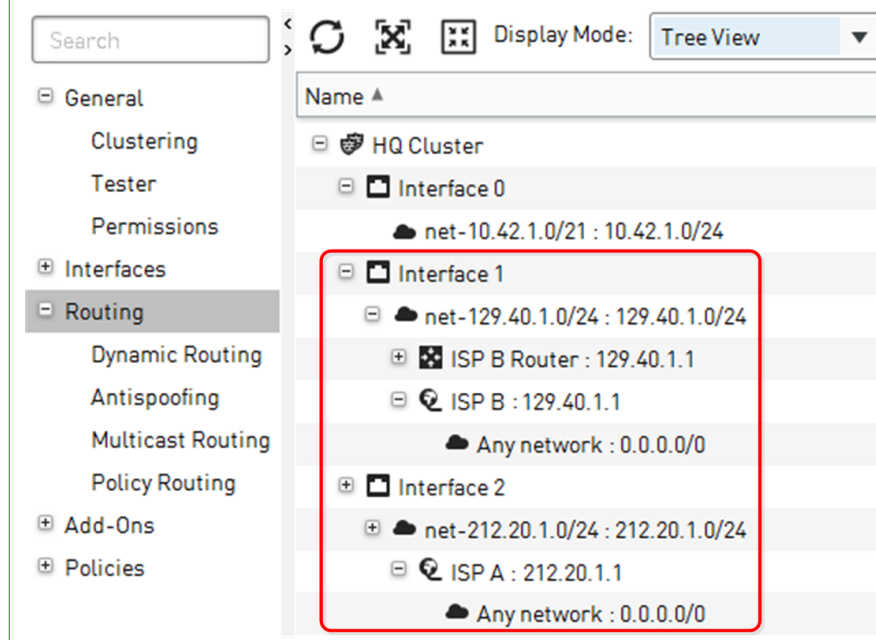
**Note:** You cannot configure routing for Virtual IPS engines and Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls.

## Defining Multi-Link routes for firewalls

When you use Multi-Link routing, traffic is routed through different network connections (*NetLinks*) according to traffic conditions, the availability of the different links, and explicitly configured preferences you set.

Most often, Multi-Link is used for Internet connections, but Multi-Link can be used to provide alternative routes to any other network as well. You can define a Multi-Link route for firewalls and Virtual Firewalls.

Multi-Link uses multiple NetLinks to balance the load of outbound traffic and ensure High Availability of Internet connectivity. With each new outbound connection, the system selects the fastest route for the connection from the available NetLinks. Multi-Link routing can be used for both IPv4 and IPv6 traffic.

**Figure 89: NetLinks in the Routing tree view**

In this illustration, a Multi-Link configuration is used to define a default route to the Internet (to “Any network”) through the ISP A and ISP B NetLinks. Separate network interfaces can be used for each NetLink, which is recommended for the Multi-Link configuration. It is also possible to configure multiple NetLinks for a single network interface. However, this is not recommended, as configuring multiple networks on the same interface introduces a single point of failure.

For each NetLink, a range of IP addresses is defined for NATing the source IP address of an outbound connection that goes through the NetLink. A NAT rule in the Firewall Policy defines the Outbound Multi-Link element that is used for Multi-Link outbound connections.

## Multi-Link route configuration overview

- 1) Create a NetLink for each alternative route.
- 2) Add Networks under the NetLinks in the Routing tree to define a route.

## Create NetLink elements for Multi-Link configuration

NetLink elements are used to represent alternative routes that lead to the same destination IP addresses.

NetLinks usually represent Internet connections, but can be used for other communications links as well.

Although the Management Client might not require all settings to be filled in at this point, we recommend that you fill in all settings as instructed here to achieve a fully functional configuration and to avoid having to readjust the settings later. To monitor the status of the network links, you must define the *probe IP addresses* in the NetLink properties.

A Router or a NetLink element represents a next-hop gateway that forwards packets to networks that are not directly connected to the engine.

You can use a single Router if a single route is enough for routing traffic to a network through an interface or an aggregated link. If you want to create separate routes for traffic to a network through two or more interfaces, you must use NetLinks.

Tunnel interfaces for the Route-Based VPN do not use Router or NetLink elements. Instead, networks that are reachable through the VPN tunnel are added directly to the tunnel interface as if they were directly connected networks.



**Note:** Only NetLinks that are used in an Outbound Multi-Link element are probed. Status monitoring is not available for NetLinks that are only used in Routing.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click an engine, then select **Edit <element type>**.
- 3) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Routing**.
- 4) Expand the tree under the interface under which you want to create the NetLink.
- 5) Right-click the network to which the NetLink belongs, then select **Add**.
- 6) Select **Traffic Handlers**.
- 7) Select **Tools** > **New** > **Static NetLink** or **Tools** > **New** > **Dynamic NetLink**.
- 8) Give the NetLink a unique **Name**.
- 9) (Static NetLink only) Select the next-hop **Gateway** the NetLink uses.
  - Selecting **Select** opens a dialog box that allows you to create a new element if needed.
  - The Gateway is usually added as a Router element, but you can also choose another Firewall according to your network configuration.
- 10) (Static NetLink only) Click **Select** next to the **Network** field, then define the address space that the ISP has assigned to your organization.

Do not select the Any Network element for the NetLink. Select or create Network elements that represent the specific public IP addresses assigned by your ISP and routed to the Internet provider's router.
- 11) (Optional) Enter the **Provider Name** of your ISP.
- 12) (Optional) Enter or adjust the **Probing settings**.



**Note:** Select IP addresses that give reliable results of end-to-end connectivity to destinations that need to be reached through the link (such as a remote server across the Internet instead of an internal router or server of your ISP in the case of an Internet connection).

- 13) (Optional) If you plan to use the ratio-based load-balancing method, fill in the **Input Speed** and **Output Speed** based on the real-life bandwidth this network connection provides. These values are used to calculate how much traffic each link receives in relation to the other links.
- 14) Click **OK**.

### Related concepts

[Getting started with outbound traffic management](#) on page 731

## Add Multi-Link routes for firewalls

You can add a Multi-Link route for a Firewall or Virtual Firewall.



**Note:** A Network element represents the IP addresses of a network or a subnetwork to which the router or the NetLink forwards the traffic, or the IP addresses of a network that is reachable through the VPN tunnel of the Route-Based VPN.



**Note:** The network interfaces for the NetLinks must have a node dedicated IP address (NDI) defined for all nodes in clusters. Otherwise, the IP address of the interface marked as the default IP address for outgoing connections is used, which can lead to incorrect load balancing.



**CAUTION:** If you use Multi-Link with IGMP proxy multicast routing, make sure that you do not create routing loops. If you add a NetLink to the upstream interface, do not add a NetLink to any downstream interface.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Firewall or Virtual Firewall element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) From the navigation pane on the left, select **Routing**.
- 3) In the routing tree, browse to the NetLink through which you want to route traffic.
- 4) Add the element that contains the IP addresses that are routed through this interface:
  - To add a default route, right-click the NetLink element and select **Set As Default Route**.  
This inserts the default element **Any Network** under the NetLink in the routing tree.
  - To add a route using a Host or Network element, right-click the NetLink element and select **Add**, then select an existing element or create an element.
- 5) Click **Save and Install**.



**Note:** If you are configuring routing for Master NGFW Engines, install or refresh the policy on the Master NGFW Engine and the Virtual NGFW Engines to transfer the changed configuration.


# Define routing for the Route-Based VPN


To configure routing for the Route-Based VPN, you add remote networks that can be reached through the VPN tunnel to the tunnel interfaces.

In the Route-Based VPN, the routing defines which traffic is sent through the VPN tunnel. The routing configuration also determines the physical network interfaces on the engine to which the tunnel interfaces are automatically mapped.

Routing for the Route-Based VPN does not use Router or NetLink elements. Instead, you add the remote networks that are reachable through the VPN tunnel directly to the tunnel interfaces as if they were directly connected networks. Routes to local networks that are directly connected to the tunnel interface are automatically added if the tunnel interface has an IP address with a netmask other than the /32 host netmask.

Example: A tunnel interface has the following IP address and netmask: 10.1.1.1/24. An automatic route to the 10.1.1.0/24 network is added for the tunnel interface.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Firewall or Virtual Firewall element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) From the navigation pane on the left, select **Routing**.
- 3) In the routing tree, browse to the tunnel interface through which you want to route traffic.
- 4) Right-click the tunnel interface and select **Add**, then select an existing Network element or create a Network element.
- 5) Click  **Save and Install**.

## Add routes for IPS engines or Layer 2 Firewalls

IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls do not route traffic. You can only add routes through interfaces that have IP addresses.


Capture Interfaces and Inline Interfaces on IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls do not have IP addresses. It is not possible to configure routing for these interfaces.


You might need to define a default route through a Normal Interface if SMC components are not on a directly connected network. You might need to add other routes if one or more SMC components are not directly connected and cannot be reached through the default gateway.

A Router element represents the next-hop gateway device that forwards packets to the networks you define.



**Note:** Virtual IPS engines and Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls do not communicate directly with other SMC components. You cannot configure routing for Virtual IPS engines and Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click an IPS or Layer 2 Firewall element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Routing**.  
The **Routing** pane opens.
- 3) In the **Routing Tools** pane at the bottom of the **Routing** pane, click the **Add Route** tab.
- 4) In the **Destination** field, enter an IP address. You can also double-click the field and select a destination device.
- 5) In the **Gateway** field, enter an IP address. You can also double-click the field and select a gateway device.
- 6) Click **Add**.  
The route is added to the configuration.
- 7) Click  **Save** to save and validate changes.

## Adding networks for IPS and Layer 2 Firewall routing and antispoofing

---

The Network element represents the IP addresses of a network or a subnetwork to which the Router forwards traffic.

- To add a default route, add the default Any network element to the Router you created.
- If you have to forward traffic to a network that is not directly connected and it cannot be reached through the default gateway, you must define a Network element for this network and add it under the Router.

## Remove routes


---


You can remove any element you have added to the **Routing** tree yourself at any time.

You cannot remove elements that are added automatically based on the IP addresses of the interfaces while they are still in use. Use the Access rules to control access to or from these addresses.

Automatically added elements corresponding to a previous configuration are not automatically removed when the IP address of an interface is changed. Instead, the elements that belong to the old configuration are shown as invalid, and you must remove the obsolete elements manually.

Removing elements from routing does not delete the elements from the SMC.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click an engine element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **Routing**.  
The **Routing** pane opens.
- 3) Right-click the element in the **Routing** tree and select **Remove**.  
The element is removed from routing.
- 4) Click  **Save and Refresh** to transfer the changed configuration.

### Related concepts

[Getting started with Access rules](#) on page 811

## Modify antispoofing

Antispoofing is an important security measure. Antispoofing is intended to prevent malicious attempts to use a legitimate internal IP address to gain access from lower-security networks to higher-security networks.

Antispoofing determines which addresses are valid source addresses for the networks connected to each interface. If an interface receives a packet with a source address that is not a valid source address for the networks that are connected to that interface, the packet is considered to come from a spoofed IP address.

Firewalls, IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewalls, Master NGFW Engines, and Virtual Firewalls automatically determine antispoofing rules based on the routing configuration for interfaces that have IP addresses. Antispoofing cannot be configured for the following types of interfaces because they do not have IP addresses:

- Capture Interfaces and Inline Interfaces on IPS engines or Layer 2 Firewalls, or on Master NGFW Engines that host Virtual IPS engines or Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls.
- All interfaces on Virtual IPS engines and Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls.

In most cases, there is no need to change the antispoofing configuration in any way.

## Deactivate antispoofing for an IP address interface pair

In rare cases, you might need to change the default antispoofing definitions to make exceptions to antispoofing (for example, if you have defined policy routing manually).

Manually changed entries are marked with a plus sign (+) (active entries) or a minus sign (–) (disabled entries) in the Antispoofing pane.




**Note:** Errors in the routing configuration (in the Management Client or in the surrounding network) can cause legitimate packets to be incorrectly identified as coming from a spoofed IP address. Always make sure that the routing is configured correctly before changing antispoofing. For




example, routing loops generate log messages about spoofed packets. You cannot remove routing loops by changing antispoofing.

By default, the engine interprets the antispoofing tree by selecting the most specific entry defined in the view. For example, a definition of a single IP address is selected over a definition of a whole network. If an IP address must be allowed access through two or more interfaces, the definition for each interface must be at the same level of detail for the IP address.

Example: Interface A contains a Host element for 192.168.10.101 and Interface B contains a Network element for 192.168.10.0/24. Connections from 192.168.10.101 are considered spoofed if they enter through Interface B, even though the address is included in the Network element. The antispoofing configuration must be changed to allow the address from Interface B.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click an engine, then select **Edit <element type>**.
- 3) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Routing > Antispoofing**.
- 4) Right-click the interface, select **Add**, then select a Host or Network element.
- 5) (Optional) If you want to allow all connections from a network through a specific interface, right-click the network under the correct interface, then select **Absolute**.



**CAUTION:** Never mark the Any Network element as Absolute. Disabling antispoofing in this way is a security risk. Resolve large-scale antispoofing conflicts with specific antispoofing definitions or by changing routing.

All IP addresses that belong to that network are now allowed for the interface. More specific antispoofing definitions for some addresses in the network can be defined for other interfaces.

- 6) Click  **Save and Refresh** to transfer the configuration.

## Activate antispoofing for routable IP addresses

In rare cases, you might need to disable or remove an allowed IP address for an engine element.

The **Antispoofing** pane shows the allowed addresses for each interface. Only the first interface selected for an aggregated link is shown. Manually changed entries are marked with a plus sign (+) (active entries) or a minus sign (-) (disabled entries), to distinguish them from the automatically generated antispoofing entries.

There is rarely any need to change the automatically added entries. The preferred way of preventing routing for IP addresses is to change the **Routing** view instead.



**Note:** Disabling or removing elements in the **Antispoofing** pane prevents access. The IP addresses a disabled or removed element represents are considered spoofed addresses.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click an engine element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Routing > Antispoofing**.  
The **Antispoofing** pane opens.
- 3) Right-click the element and select **Remove** or **Disable**.  
If you disabled the element, you can re-enable the element in the same way when needed.
- 4) Click **Save and Refresh** to transfer the configuration.

## Check routes with a Route Query

---

The Route Query tool allows you to check where packets with a certain IP address are routed according to the current definitions.

The tool helps you check that the routing is correct and to quickly find a particular branch in the **Routing** tree.

Policy routing is not considered in this query. The route query uses the configuration that is stored on the Management Server (shown in the Management Client). You must refresh the policy of the affected engines after completing the configuration to transfer the changed routing information.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click an engine element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Routing**.
- 3) In the **Routing Tools** pane, click the **Query Route** tab.
- 4) (Optional, NetLinks only) In the **Source** field, enter an IP address. You can also double-click the field to select a source device.
- 5) In the **Destination** field, enter an IP address. You can also double-click the field to select the destination device.
- 6) Click **Query**.

### Result

The route that matches the search criteria is shown.

# Examples of routing configuration

---

The SMC provides features, such as Multi-Link routing, that allow you to manage many routing scenarios.

## Example: Routing traffic with two firewall interfaces

---

To route traffic to two interfaces, add a router for each interface.

Company A needs to route traffic to the Internet as well as to the internal Network B, which is not directly connected to the company's Branch Office Firewall. The company's administrators decide to create a separate route to the internal Network B and a default route for traffic to the Internet. They:

- 1) Edit the Branch Office Firewall and browse to the **Routing** pane.
- 2) Add a Router and Network B under Interface 0.
- 3) Add a Router under Interface 1 and set it as the default route.
- 4) Refresh the Firewall Policy on the Branch Office Firewall.

## Example: Routing Internet traffic with Multi-Link for a firewall

---

This scenario shows an example of using Multi-Link routing for High Availability.

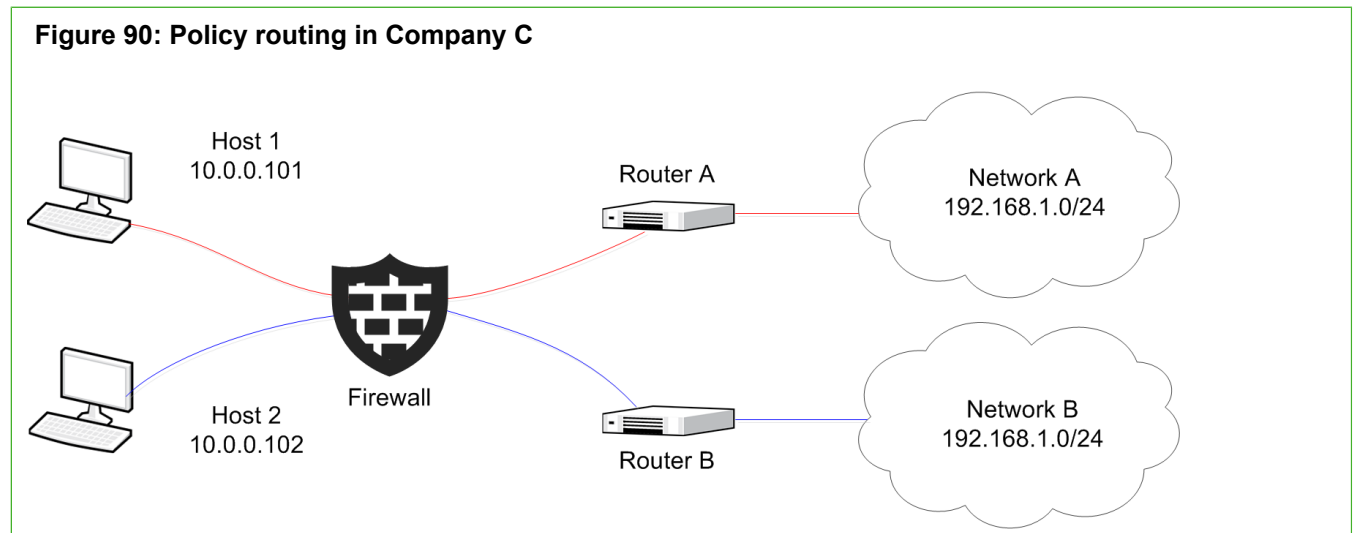
Company B wants to guarantee High Availability of Internet connections through the company's firewall. The company's administrators decide to use Multi-Link routing with two NetLinks to balance Internet connections. They:

- 1) Create two NetLinks.
- 2) Combine the NetLinks into an Outbound Multi-Link element to balance the connections.
- 3) Open the Engine Editor and browse to the **Routing** pane.
- 4) Add one of the NetLinks under Interface 1 and the other NetLink under Interface 2 in the **Routing** tree.
- 5) Add the default route "Any network" under the NetLinks.
- 6) Add a NAT rule to the Firewall Policy to balance the connections between the NetLinks.
- 7) Refresh the Firewall Policy.

# Example: Using policy routing on a firewall to route traffic to networks that use the same address space

To manage traffic to networks that share the same address space, create a policy routing entry for each host.

Company C's network is connected to two partners: Network A and Network B. The Network A and the Network B partners use the same address space in their internal networks.



There are two hosts in Company C's network. Host 1 works only with the Network A partner and Host 2 only with the Network B partner. The administrators at Company C decide to use policy routing to route the traffic between Company C's network and the two partner sites. They:

- 1) Create policy routing entries for Host 1 and Host 2 on the Firewall HQ Cluster.

**Figure 91: Policy routing entries for Host 1 and Host 2**

The screenshot shows the configuration interface for IPv4 Policy Routes. On the left, a navigation menu is visible with 'Policy Routing' selected. The main area displays a table of policy routing entries.

Source IP Address	Source Netmask	Destination IP Address	Destination Netmask	Gateway IP Address
10.0.0.101	255.255.255.255	190.168.1.0	255.255.255.255	190.168.3.1
10.0.0.102	255.255.255.255	190.168.1.0	255.255.255.255	172.16.1.1

- 2) Change the antispoofing rules so that they take into account the routing defined with the policy routing entries.
- 3) Refresh the Firewall Policy on the Firewall HQ Cluster.

# Configuring dynamic routing

### Contents

- [Getting started with dynamic routing](#) on page 717
- [Dynamic routing configuration overview](#) on page 718
- [Creating elements for dynamic routing](#) on page 718
- [Configure BGP](#) on page 722
- [Configure OSPFv2](#) on page 724
- [Configure PIM](#) on page 726
- [Preview the dynamic routing configuration in Quagga syntax](#) on page 727
- [Using the command line to configure dynamic routing](#) on page 728
- [Restart dynamic routing processing](#) on page 730

With dynamic routing, firewalls automatically change their routing when the network topology changes. The firewalls can also exchange information about appropriate routing paths.

## Getting started with dynamic routing

You can configure dynamic routing in the Management Client or on the engine command line.



**Note:** We recommend that you configure dynamic routing only if you have experience and knowledge of the general principles of dynamic routing and Quagga syntax. Poorly configured dynamic routing can lead to adverse effects on networks, such as packets being directed to the wrong interfaces or data being exposed to undesired networks.

The two methods for configuring dynamic routing are separate, and using both methods on the same engine is not supported.

- If you configure dynamic routing for a firewall engine on the command line, that dynamic routing configuration is not shown in the Management Client.
- If you configure dynamic routing for a firewall engine in the Management Client, the configuration overwrites the dynamic routing configuration that you configured on the engine's command line.

In the Management Client, you can configure dynamic routing using border gateway protocol (BGP), open shortest path first (OSPFv2), and protocol-independent multicast (PIM).

When using Quagga commands and syntax on the firewall engine's command line, the supported dynamic routing protocols are BGP, OSPFv2, OSPFv3, PIM, and routing information protocol (RIP).

Dynamic routing is supported on Single Firewalls and Virtual Firewalls. Dynamic routing is supported on Firewall Clusters, but not if all cluster nodes are online at the same time (active-active clustering). The rules that allow dynamic routing traffic are created automatically.

Before installing a policy that includes a dynamic routing configuration, you can preview and save the configuration in Quagga syntax.

# Dynamic routing configuration overview

The steps for configuring dynamic routing depend on the protocol you use and whether you configure it in the Management Client or on the engine command line.

Follow these general steps to configure dynamic routing in the Management Client:

- 1) Create the elements for dynamic routing that you want to use in the configuration.
- 2) Configure the settings for dynamic routing for the Firewall, Firewall Cluster, or Virtual Firewall in the Engine Editor.
- 3) (Recommended) Preview the dynamic routing configuration in Quagga format to check that the routing configuration is what you intended.

Follow these general steps to configure a dynamic routing protocol on the command line:

- 1) Create an empty protocol-specific configuration file.
- 2) Start the protocol-specific routing daemon.
- 3) Start the Quagga command shell, then enter the dynamic routing commands.

## Creating elements for dynamic routing

Before enabling dynamic routing in the Management Client, you can optionally create customized elements for dynamic routing.

If the default elements meet your needs, it is not necessary to create custom elements.

**Table 67: BGP elements for dynamic routing**

Element	Description
BGP Profile	This element contains administrative distance, redistribution, and aggregation settings. You can use this element in multiple Firewalls, Virtual Firewalls, and Firewall Clusters. There is a default BGP Profile element that is used automatically.
Autonomous System	An autonomous system (AS) is a group of IP routing prefixes controlled by an administrative entity. Each AS has a unique identifying number. This element is used to define the AS number. The number determines whether internal BGP (BGP peers have the same AS number) or external BGP (BGP peers have different AS numbers) is used.
BGP Peering	An element that you place between a Firewall and another Firewall or an External BGP Peer element in the <b>Routing</b> view in the Engine Editor. It contains the parameters to define a BGP peering relationship, and implements inbound and outbound policies through access lists and the Route Map.
BGP Connection Profile	This element can be used to set a password for TCP MD5 authentication between BGP peers, and to set timers, such as the keepalive value. You can use this element in multiple BGP Peering elements. There is a default BGP Connection Profile element that is used automatically.

Element	Description
External BGP Peer (Optional)	Use this element to define the IP address and AS number of a BGP peer that is under the administrative control of a third party, such as another organization or SMC.

**Table 68: OSPFv2 elements for dynamic routing**

Element	Description
OSPFv2 Domain Settings	Use this element to set the area border router (ABR) type, throttle timer settings, and the max metric router link-state advertisement (LSA) settings. There is a default OSPFv2 Domain Settings element that is used automatically.
OSPFv2 Profile	This element contains administrative distance and redistribution settings. There is a default OSPFv2 Profile element that is used automatically.
OSPFv2 Interface Settings	This element contains the interface settings. You can also select the type of authentication to use. There is a default OSPFv2 Interface Settings element that is used automatically.
OSPFv2 Area	Use this element to set the area ID and type. You can also configure the ABR settings and virtual links.
OSPFv2 Key Chains	This element contains the keys that you can use if the <b>Message Digest</b> authentication type is used in an OSPFv2 Interface Setting element.

**Table 69: PIM elements for dynamic routing**

Element	Description
PIM Profile	This element contains the multicast groups and determines the PIM mode that is used. There is a default PIM Profile element that is used automatically.
PIM Interface Settings	This element contains various settings, such as the designated router (DR) priority and the zone boundary router (ZBR) group. You must also set the IGMP Querier Settings element to use. There is a default PIM Interface Settings element that you can use.
IGMP Querier Settings	This element determines the IGMP version to use. You can also set the query interval and robustness settings. You can use this element when configuring both PIM and IGMP Proxy multicast. There are three default IGMP Querier Settings elements; one element for each version of IGMP.


**Table 70: Common elements for dynamic routing**


Element	Description	
Route Map (Optional)	An element that contains rules to control or manipulate received or advertised routes based on matching conditions. The rules can be edited in the same way as in policy elements.	
Access Lists (Optional)	IP Access List	A filtering element that you can use in the Matching Condition cell of a Route Map rule. You can filter by subnet. This element can also be used to implement inbound and outbound filtering policies in a BGP Peering element.
	IP Prefix Access List	Similar to an IP Access List, but includes the prefix length or netmask as a filter. This element can be used in the Matching Condition cell of a Route Map rule and in a BGP Peering element.

Element		Description
	Community Access List	A filtering element used for the BGP community attribute. If the Type is Expanded, you can use regular expressions in the Community Regular Expression cell. This element can be used in the Matching Condition cell of a Route Map rule and in a BGP Peering element.
	Extended Community Access List	A filtering element that represents the extended version of the Community Access List. If the Type is Expanded, you can use regular expressions in the Community Regular Expression cell. This element can be used in the Matching Condition cell of a Route Map rule.
	AS Path Access List	A filtering element for the BGP AS path attribute. You can enter regular expressions for matching AS paths (a sequence of AS numbers). This element can be used in the Matching Condition cell of a Route Map rule and in a BGP Peering element.

## Create core elements for dynamic routing

Create the elements that contain dynamic routing configuration information. The elements can be used in multiple Firewalls, Virtual Firewalls, and Firewall Clusters.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Dynamic Routing Elements**.
- 3) Browse to **BGP Elements, OSPFv2 Elements, or PIM Elements**.
- 4) Right-click the type of element that you want to create, then select **New <element type>**.
- 5) Adjust the properties as needed, then click **OK**.

## Create Access List elements

You can use Access List elements as a Matching Condition in a Route Map element. You can also use certain Access Lists in BGP Peering elements.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Dynamic Routing Elements**.
- 3) Right-click the type of Access List that you want to create, then select **New <Access List>**.





- 4) Enter a name in the **Name** field.
- 5) (For Community Access Lists and Extended Community Access Lists) To use regular expressions for the Community name, in the **Type** field, select **Expanded**.
- 6) To add a row to the table, click **Add**, then fill in the details for the row.
- 7) (Optional) To reorder the table, select a row, then click **Up** or **Down**. The rows are processed from top to bottom.
- 8) (Optional) To remove a row, select the row, then click **Remove**.
- 9) Click **OK**.

## Create Route Map elements

---

Use Route Map elements in more complex networks to control or manipulate routes. You can use Access List elements as a Matching Condition in a Route Map rule.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Dynamic Routing Elements**.
- 3) Right-click **Route Maps**, then select **New Route Map**.
- 4) Enter a name for the Route Map in the **Name** field, then click **OK**. The Route Map opens for editing.
- 5) To add a rule, right-click the Route Map, then select **Add Rule**.
- 6) (Optional) To add a Rule Section, right-click the Route Map, then select **Add Rule Section Before** or **Add Rule Section After**.  
You can use Rule Sections to group similar rules. Double-click the Rule Section to give it a name. Because you can jump to a Rule Section in the Goto action, use a unique name.
- 7) To add a Matching Condition for a rule, double-click the **Matching Condition** cell.
  - a) Click **Add Row**, then in the **Type** cell, select the type of matching condition.
  - b) If using an Access List or Next Hop, drag and drop the Access List from the left pane to the **Value** cell.
  - c) If using a Peer Address, drag and drop a Firewall or External BGP Peer from the left pane to the **Value** cell.
  - d) To enter a Metric, double-click the **Value** cell.

- e) (Optional) To reorder the condition rows, select a row, then click **Up** or **Down**.  
The rows are processed from top to bottom.
  - f) (Optional) To remove a condition row, select the row, then click **Remove Row**.
  - g) To save your changes, click **OK**.
- 8) To select the action for the rule, right-click the **Action** cell, then select **Permit** or **Deny**.
- 9) To change the Route Entry Settings, double-click the **Route Entry Settings** cell, adjust the settings, then click **OK**.
- 10) (Optional) To jump to a Route Map, double-click the **Call** cell, then select a Route Map.
- 11) Select the **Goto** action.  
By default, the action is **Finish**. Further rules are not processed.
- To jump to the following rule, double-click the **Goto** cell, then select **Goto Next Rule**.
  - To jump to another Rule Section, select **Goto Rule Section**.

## Configure BGP


You can configure dynamic routing using the BGP protocol on Firewalls, Virtual Firewalls, and Firewall Clusters.


### Before you begin

We recommend that you first create elements for configuring dynamic routing.

## Enable BGP on the Firewall, Firewall Cluster, or Virtual Firewall

You must enable BGP for the Firewall, Firewall Cluster, or Virtual Firewall in the Engine Editor.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click an engine, then select **Edit <element type>**.
- 3) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Routing > Dynamic Routing**.
- 4) In the BGP section, select **Enabled**.

- 5) (Optional) Enter the Router ID in the **Router ID** field.
- 6) If you do not want to use the default BGP Profile, select another BGP Profile element from the **BGP Profile** drop-down list.
- 7) Select an Autonomous System element from the **Autonomous System** drop-down list.
- 8) (Optional) To add Announced Networks, click **Add**.  
You can add hosts, networks, or groups that contain both hosts and networks.
- 9) (Optional) To add a network to the Antispoofing pane, click **Add** next to the **Additional Networks to Automatically Add to Antispoofing** table.  
You can add hosts, networks, or groups that contain both hosts and networks.
- 10) Click **Save**.

## Next steps

You are now ready to add a BGP Peering element to the engine on the **Routing** branch.

# Add the BGP Peering element

You must add a BGP Peering element to the routing configuration.

## Before you begin

You must enable BGP on the engine. To establish a BGP peering relationship with another Firewall or Virtual Firewall, you must enable BGP on both Firewalls.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click an engine, then select **Edit <element type>**.
- 3) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Routing**.
- 4) Right-click a directly connected network under an interface or right-click a Tunnel Interface, then select **Add BGP Peering**.
- 5) Browse to the BGP Peering element, click **Add**, then click **OK**.  
The element is added beneath the network or Tunnel Interface.
- 6) (Optional) To change the CVI address:
  - a) Right-click the BGP Peering element.

- b) Select **IP addresses**, then select an IP address.
- 7) Right-click the BGP Peering element, then select **Add Firewall** or **Add External BGP Peer**.
- 8) Browse to the Firewall, Virtual Firewall, Firewall Cluster, or External BGP Peer element, click **Add**, then click **OK**.  
The Firewall, Virtual Firewall, Firewall Cluster, or External BGP Peer element is added beneath the BGP Peering element.
- 9) Click **Save**.

## Configure OSPFv2


You can configure dynamic routing using the OSPFv2 protocol on Firewalls, Virtual Firewalls, and Firewall Clusters.


### Before you begin

We recommend that you first create elements for configuring dynamic routing.

## Enable OSPFv2 on the Firewall, Firewall Cluster, or Virtual Firewall

You must enable OSPFv2 for the Firewall, Firewall Cluster, or Virtual Firewall in the Engine Editor.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click an engine, then select **Edit <element type>**.
- 3) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Routing > Dynamic Routing**.
- 4) In the OSPFv2 section, select **Enabled**.
- 5) (Optional) Enter the Router ID in the **Router ID** field.
- 6) If you do not want to use the default OSPFv2 Profile, select another OSPFv2 Profile element from the **OSPFv2 Profile** drop-down list.
- 7) (Optional) To add a network to the Antispoofing pane, click **Add** next to the **Additional Networks to Automatically Add to Antispoofing** table.  
You can add hosts, networks, or groups that contain both hosts and networks.

- 8) Click  **Save**.

## Next steps


You are now ready to add an OSPFv2 Area element to the engine on the **Routing** branch.



# Add an OSPFv2 Area element

You must add one or more OSPFv2 Area elements to the routing configuration.

### Before you begin

You must have enabled OSPFv2 on the engine.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click an engine, then select **Edit <element type>**.
- 3) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Routing**.
- 4) Right-click a directly connected network under an interface or right-click a Tunnel Interface, then select **Add OSPFv2 Area**.
- 5) Browse to the OSPFv2 Area element, click **Add**, then click **OK**.  
The element is added beneath the network or Tunnel Interface.
- 6) (Optional) Override the OSPFv2 Interface Settings element that is used in the OSPFv2 Area element.
  - a) Right-click the OSPFv2 Area element, then select **Override Interface Settings**.
  - b) Browse to the OSPFv2 Interface Settings element, click **Add**, then click **OK**.
- 7) (Optional) To change the communication mode, right-click the OSPFv2 Area element, then select **Force Communication Mode** and one of the following options:
  - **Not Forced** — This is the default option. Use this option if you do not want to use a different communication mode.
  - **Point-to-Point** — Select this option if the network is between two routers only.
  - **Passive** — Select this option if you do not want the interface to send routing updates, but you do want the interface to be announced.
  - **Unicast** — Select a Host element, click **Add**, then click **OK**.
- 8) Click  **Save**.

# Configure PIM

You can configure dynamic multicast routing using a variant of the PIM protocol on Firewalls, Virtual Firewalls, and Firewall Clusters.

## Before you begin


We recommend that you first create elements for configuring dynamic routing.



Three variants of PIM are supported: PIM sparse mode (PIM-SM), PIM dense mode (PIM-DM), and PIM source-specific multicast (PIM-SSM), and the mode can be set separately for different multicast groups. The variant to use depends on many factors, such as the network topology, the number of recipients, and what the existing infrastructure supports.

- Use PIM-SM when multicast traffic needs to travel greater logical distances; over WAN links, for example. There is usually intermittent multicast traffic.
- Use PIM-DM when there are a lot of potential recipients and the logical distances are short; within a WAN, for example. There is usually a high, constant load of multicast traffic. Messages are flooded over the network, so this is not always the most efficient use of bandwidth.
- Use PIM-SSM when you want receivers to be able to specify the source IP address of the requested multicast stream. This is the most efficient use of bandwidth, but all devices and client applications must have support for IGMPv3 and this variant of PIM. However, SSM mapping allows IGMPv2 requests to be converted into IGMPv3 requests.

## Enable PIM on the Firewall, Firewall Cluster, or Virtual Firewall

You must enable PIM for the Firewall, Firewall Cluster, or Virtual Firewall in the Engine Editor.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click an engine, then select **Edit <element type>**.
- 3) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Routing > Multicast Routing**.
- 4) From the **Multicast Routing Mode** drop-down list, select **PIM**.
- 5) If you do not want to use the default PIM Profile, select another PIM Profile element from the **PIM Profile** drop-down list.
- 6) (Optional, PIM-SM only) Expand the **Bootstrap Settings** section, then modify the settings.
- 7) Click  **Save**.

## Next steps


You are now ready to add a PIM Interface Settings element to the engine on the **Routing** branch.



# Add a PIM Interface Settings element

You must add one or more PIM Interface Settings elements to the routing configuration.

### Before you begin

You must have enabled PIM on the engine.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click an engine, then select **Edit <element type>**.
- 3) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Routing**.
- 4) Right-click a directly connected network under an interface or right-click a Tunnel Interface, then select **Add PIM Interface Settings**.  
When configuring a Firewall Cluster, the interface must have a CVI address defined.
- 5) Browse to the PIM Interface Settings element, click **Add**, then click **OK**.  
The element is added beneath the network or Tunnel Interface.
- 6) (Optional) To change the IP address used, right-click the PIM Interface Settings element, then select **IP Addresses** and an IP address.
- 7) Click  **Save**.

## Preview the dynamic routing configuration in Quagga syntax

To make sure the dynamic routing configuration done in the Management Client is what you intended, preview the configuration in Quagga syntax.

You can also save the configuration as a .conf file, for testing with the Quagga suite.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click the Firewall, Firewall Cluster, or Virtual Firewall, then select **Configuration > Dynamic Routing > Quagga Preview**.  
The **Quagga Configuration Preview** dialog box opens, and you can see the configuration in Quagga syntax.
- 3) To save the configuration:
  - a) To select where to save the configuration, click **Browse**.
  - b) Click **Save**.The configuration is saved in .conf format.

## Using the command line to configure dynamic routing

---

You can enter dynamic routing commands through the Quagga suite on the command line of the firewall engine.



**Important:** If you make changes to dynamic routing using the Management Client, all the changes you made on the command line are overwritten.

Dynamic routing with the Quagga suite is supported on Single Firewalls and Virtual Firewalls. For Virtual Firewalls, configuration is done on the command line of the Master NGFW Engine. Dynamic routing is supported on Firewall Clusters, but not if all cluster nodes are online at the same time (active-active clustering).

Firewall Clusters or Master NGFW Engines automatically synchronize the Quagga configuration files between nodes, and automatically start and stop the routing daemon if the online node changes. You only edit the Quagga configuration for the online node.

Dynamic routing is configured on the node's command line using the vtysh shell for Quagga routing software.



**Note:** Configuring dynamic routing requires SSH access to the command line. We recommend that you disable SSH access whenever it is not needed. Make sure that your Access rules allow SSH access to the engines from the administrators' IP addresses only.

Detailed instructions for configuring the Quagga suite can be found on the Quagga Software Routing Suite website at <http://www.nongnu.org/quagga/docs.html>.



# Edit the Quagga configuration file

To configure dynamic routing on the command line of the firewall engine, edit the Quagga configuration file.

The protocol-specific configuration file (for example, ospfd.conf) must exist in the /data/config/quagga directory, and the routing daemon must be running before you configure dynamic routing using vtysh. Otherwise, vtysh cannot save protocol-specific configurations.

## Steps

- 1) Open an SSH connection to the command line console of the engine.
- 2) To create empty protocol-specific configuration files, enter, for example:  

```
sg-dynamic-routing sample-config ripd ospfd bgpd
```
- 3) To start the routing daemon, enter:  

```
sg-dynamic-routing restart |force-reload
```
- 4) To start the Quagga command shell, enter:  

```
vtys
```

### Related concepts

[Adjust Master NGFW Engine clustering options](#) on page 681

### Related tasks

[Access the engine command line](#) on page 338

[Adjust general Firewall clustering options](#) on page 677

### Related reference

[Forcepoint NGFW Engine commands](#) on page 1424

# Back up or restore command-line dynamic routing configurations

You can back up and restore the engine's current dynamic routing configuration that has been configured on the command line of the engine.



**Note:** This operation does not back up or restore configurations done in the Management Client; those configurations are included in Management Server backups.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.

- 2) Right-click the engine, select **Configuration > Dynamic Routing**, then select one of the following:
  - **Backup** — To save the current dynamic routing configuration. This action overwrites the previously saved backup.
  - **Restore** — To restore a saved dynamic routing configuration.A progress summary opens in a new tab.
- 3) Click **Close** when the backup or restoration is complete.

**Related tasks**

[Edit the Quagga configuration file](#) on page 729

## Restart dynamic routing processing

If routes are not being updated as expected, you can restart the dynamic routing processing.



**Note:** Instead of issuing the BGP stop and start commands, the engine issues the BGP graceful restart command.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click the Firewall or Virtual Firewall, then select **Configuration > Dynamic Routing > Restart**.
- 3) In the **Confirmation** dialog box, add an optional comment for auditing, then click **Yes**.

# Outbound traffic management

## Contents

- [Getting started with outbound traffic management](#) on page 731
- [Configuring outbound Multi-Link settings](#) on page 737
- [Create outbound load-balancing NAT rules](#) on page 740
- [Monitoring and testing outbound traffic management](#) on page 742
- [Examples of Multi-Link](#) on page 742

You can use Multi-Link to distribute outbound traffic between multiple network connections and to provide High Availability and load balancing for outbound traffic.

## Getting started with outbound traffic management

---

To ensure outbound connectivity, you create an Outbound Multi-Link element and manually add NAT rules to the Firewall Policy.

A single connection to the Internet is a single point of failure: if the connection becomes unavailable, all outbound traffic is blocked. To prevent traffic from being blocked, Multi-Link distributes outbound traffic and balances the load of outbound traffic between multiple network connections. Multi-Link ensures that Internet connectivity remains available even when one or more network connections fail. You can also use Multi-Link with aggregated links.

For outbound connections, you create an Outbound Multi-Link element and add NAT rules manually to the Firewall Policy. For inbound connections, load balancing is provided by Server Pool elements.

If you use element-based NAT and multiple external IP addresses, the default NAT address works like an Outbound Multi-Link and the NAT rules are automatically generated.

## What outbound traffic management does

---

Single Firewalls, Firewall Clusters, and Virtual Firewalls can balance outbound traffic between two or more network links (NetLinks) using the Multi-Link feature. NetLinks are combined into Outbound Multi-Link elements. The NetLinks can be of different types and they can have different speeds. The NetLinks must be added under the appropriate interfaces in the Routing tree to support Multi-Link. You can also use Multi-Link with aggregated links.

Multi-Link allows you to:

- Balance outbound traffic between two or more alternative network links to increase the available bandwidth.
- Ensure that outbound network connectivity remains available even if network links fail. When a network link fails, the firewall detects this and stops forwarding traffic through the failed link.

## Limitations

---

- Multi-Link is supported on Single Firewalls, Firewall Clusters, and Virtual Firewalls.
- VPN traffic is balanced independently from the settings covered in this configuration (when the firewall is the VPN endpoint).
- Multi-Link is only supported for IPv4 traffic.

## What do I need to know before I begin?

---

For a truly redundant configuration, we recommend connecting each link through different physical network equipment (such as routers).

If you configure element-based NAT, you can use an Outbound Multi-Link element as a NAT address in a NAT definition.

### Related concepts

[Getting started with inbound traffic management](#) on page 745

[Network address translation and how it works](#) on page 123

[Multi-Link and VPNs](#) on page 1139

## Load-balancing methods for outbound traffic

---

Load balancing can be based on either of two methods: *Round Trip Time* or *Ratio*.

- **Round Trip Time** — When this method is used, NetLink performance is measured for each new TCP connection by sending the initial request (SYN) to the destination through all available NetLinks. When the destination host sends the reply (SYN-ACK), the NetLink that receives the reply first is used to complete the TCP connection establishment. The firewall cancels the slower connection attempts by sending a TCP Reset (RST) to the destination through the other NetLinks.  
This way, the fastest route is automatically selected for each connection. Information about the performance of each NetLink is cached, so no new measurement is made if a new connection is opened to the same destination within a short time period.
- **Ratio** — When this method is used, traffic is distributed between all available NetLinks according to the relative capacity of the links. The bandwidths of the other NetLinks are automatically compared to the bandwidth of the NetLink with the most bandwidth to produce a ratio for distributing the traffic. When the volume of traffic is low, the ratio of actual traffic distribution is approximate. When the volume of traffic is high, the ratio of traffic handled by each NetLink is closer to the ratio calculated from the link capacity.

## Using standby NetLinks for High Availability in outbound traffic management

---

*Standby NetLinks* allow you to define a NetLink as a backup that is only activated when all primary NetLinks are unavailable.

This minimizes the use of NetLinks that are more expensive or otherwise less preferable, while still ensuring the High Availability of Internet connectivity. To test which NetLinks are available, the status of the NetLinks is monitored. As soon as one or more primary NetLinks become active again, the standby NetLinks are deactivated.

The deactivated NetLink still handles the previously established connections, but new connections are no longer sent to the standby NetLink. You can define multiple active and standby NetLinks.

When load balancing is used with standby NetLinks, traffic is only distributed between the NetLinks that are currently active. Standby NetLinks are only activated when failure is detected, not to balance the load.

Using standby NetLinks on the same interface as other NetLinks affects the interface speed you enter in the configuration of QoS for firewall interfaces.

#### Related concepts

[Link status probing in outbound traffic management](#) on page 733

#### Related tasks

[Define QoS Policy elements](#) on page 956

## Link status probing in outbound traffic management

To monitor the status of the NetLinks, the firewall must be configured to probe each NetLink.

Probing is always recommended, and it is mandatory with the following features:

- The Ratio-based load-balancing method
- Failover to Standby NetLinks
- Inbound traffic balancing with dynamic DNS updates

Traffic is correctly balanced between active working links without probing if Round Trip Time balancing is used, since failed links are eliminated from use in the periodic round-trip time checks. Although traffic is always allocated to a working link, information about the status of the links is not available unless you add NetLink probing to the configuration.

The probe is made using ICMP echo requests (ping) to IP addresses you define. Make sure the Probe IP Addresses that you select produce a reliable measurement of the link performance. For example, probing the IP address of an ADSL router usually succeeds even if the ISP network is unreachable. Probing the default gateway provided to you by the ISP might succeed even if the ISP is not able to forward traffic anywhere outside the ISP's own network. Several alternative probe IP addresses can be added to avoid probing failures caused by a probed host going down.

## Benefits of using Multi-Link in outbound traffic management

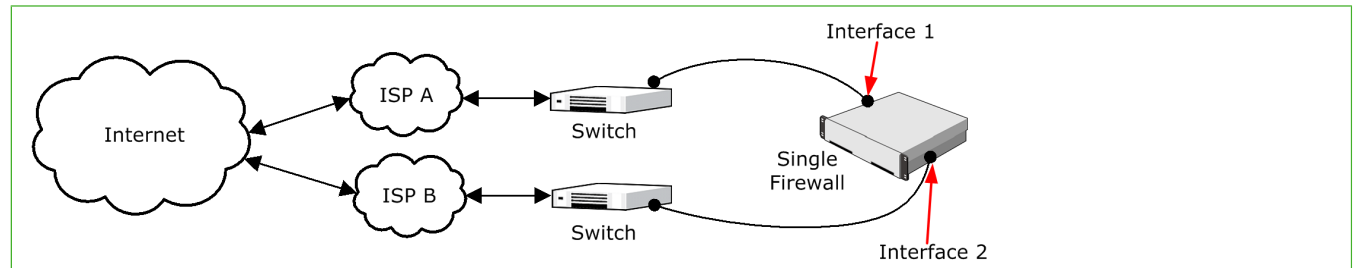
Multi-Link is used for High Availability to ensure that business-critical traffic gets through even when one or more Internet connections fail.

Standby NetLinks act as backup Internet connections that are only activated if all primary NetLinks fail. Using standby NetLinks provides High Availability of Internet connectivity, but is less expensive than having multiple NetLinks active at the same time. Using Multi-Link for load balancing can also help reduce costs. Traffic can be balanced between two slower, less expensive, Internet connections instead of one faster connection.

# Multi-Link with a Single Firewall in outbound traffic management

You can configure Multi-Link with Single Firewalls using network or modem interfaces.

## Single Firewall interfaces with Multi-Link



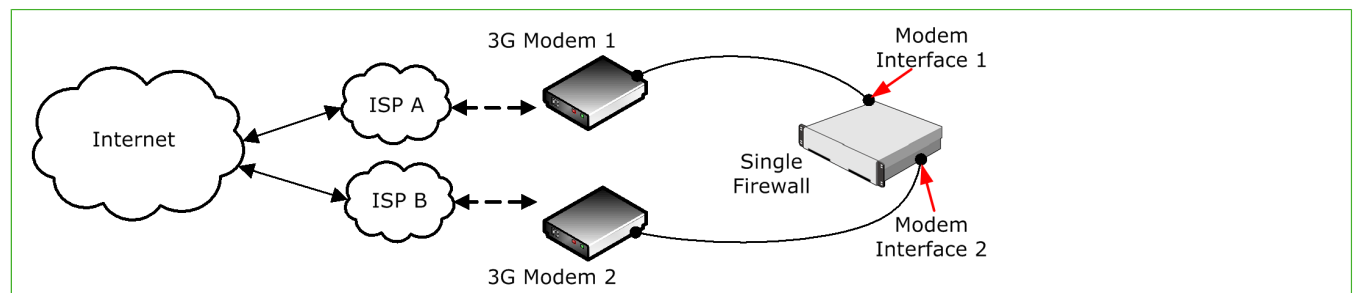
In this scenario, interface 1 is used as the network interface for Internet traffic that is routed through ISP A. Interface 2 is used as the network interface for Internet traffic that is routed through ISP B.



**CAUTION:** We do not recommend defining two or more IP addresses for a single physical interface. If two IP addresses are defined, the router behind the interface forwards the traffic to the different ISPs. This creates an additional single point of failure at the intermediate router, and the associated cabling and network cards.

## Multi-Link configuration with two Modem Interfaces on a Single Firewall

You can also configure Multi-Link with Single Firewalls by replacing one or more physical interfaces with Modem Interfaces and 3G modems.

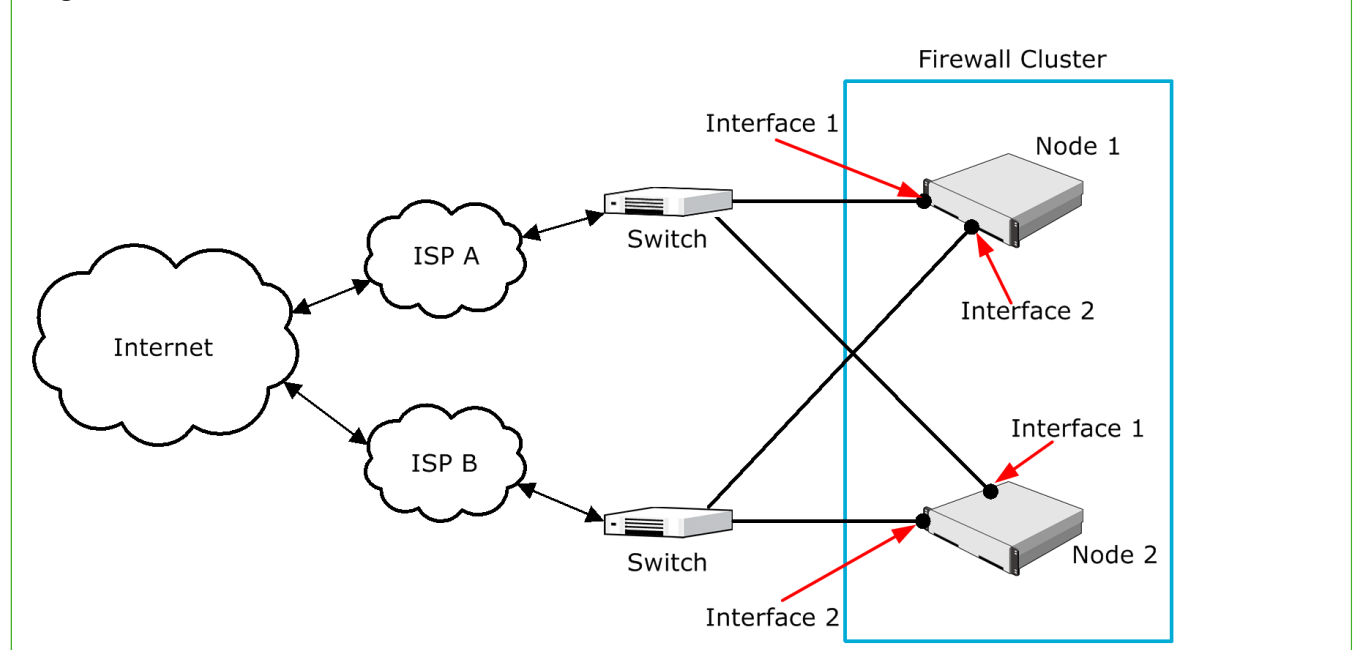


In this scenario, Modem Interface 1 is used for Internet traffic that 3G Modem 1 routes through ISP A. Modem Interface 2 is used for Internet traffic that 3G Modem 2 routes through ISP B.

# Multi-Link with a Firewall Cluster in outbound traffic management

You can configure Multi-Link with a Firewall Cluster consisting of two nodes by using two routers and physically connecting each node to each router.

**Figure 92: Cluster interfaces for Multi-Link**



In this scenario, the Firewall Cluster consists of two nodes. On both nodes, Interface 1 is used as the CVI for Internet traffic that is routed through ISP A. Interface 2 is used as the CVI for Internet traffic that is routed through ISP B. Both nodes have one physical interface for each CVI, so that both nodes are physically connected to both routers leading to the Internet.



**CAUTION:** We do not recommend configuring Multi-Link by connecting two CVIs to a single router, which in turn connects to both ISPs. It creates a single point of failure.

## Using multiple outbound Multi-Link elements

You can create multiple Outbound Multi-Link elements, and each NetLink can belong to more than one Outbound Multi-Link element at the same time. This can be useful, for example, when you want a certain type of traffic to be balanced only between some of the NetLinks, and another type of traffic to be balanced between all NetLinks.

## Outbound traffic management configuration overview

Outbound traffic management is configured using NetLink elements which represent network connections. You can use Multi-Link on Single Firewalls, Firewall Clusters, and Virtual Firewalls.

In the SMC, NetLink elements represent the network connections for Multi-Link. Usually, a NetLink element is used to represent an ISP connection. However, NetLinks can also represent a leased line, xDSL, or any other type of network connection mediated by your firewall.

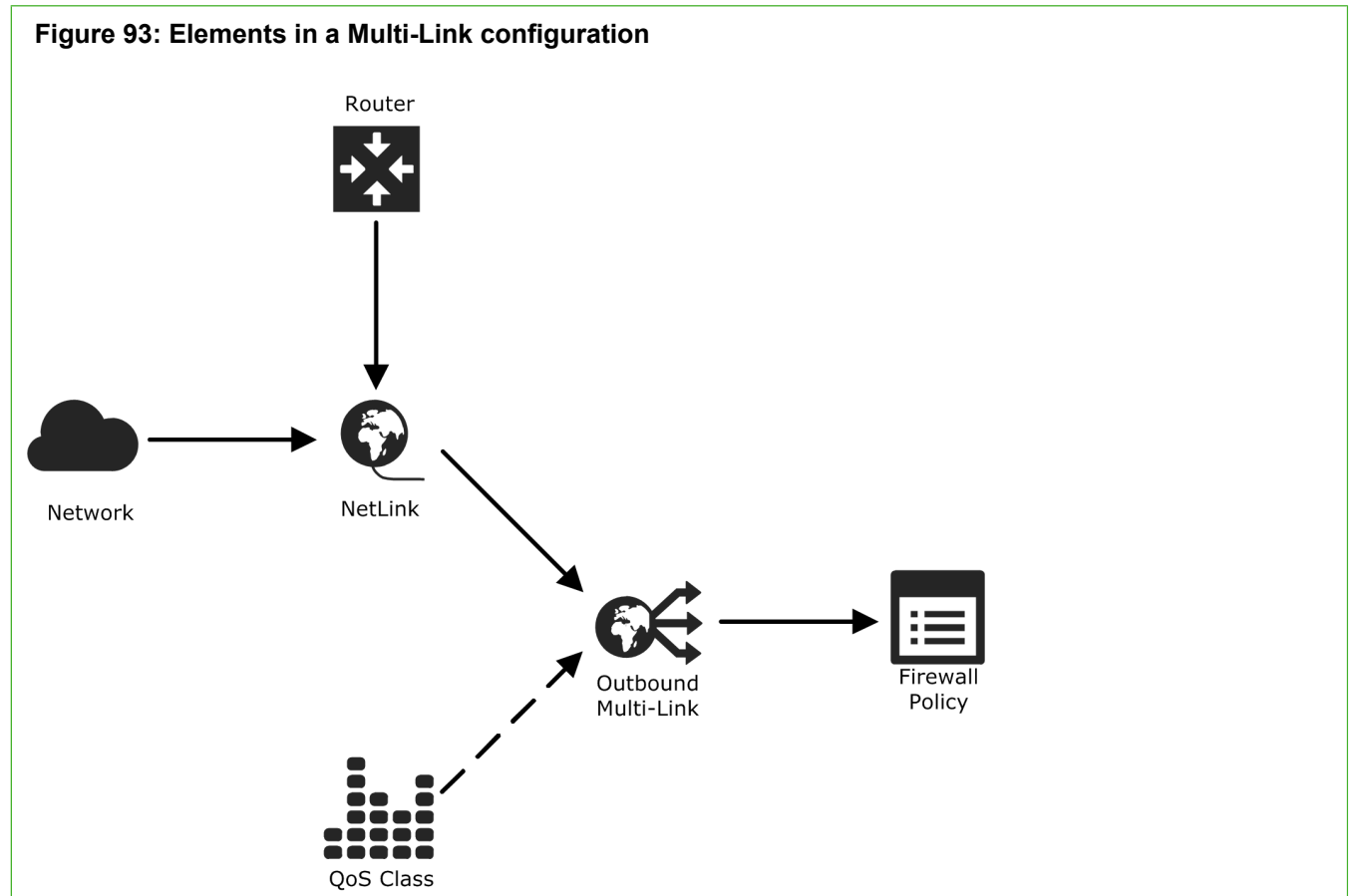
There are two types of NetLinks: *static* and *dynamic* NetLinks.

- Static NetLinks are supported in the routing configuration for both IPv4 and IPv6 traffic.
- Dynamic NetLinks are used only with Single Firewalls, as dynamic IP addresses are not supported for Firewall Clusters.



**Note:** If you configure wireless Multi-Link on a Modem Interface of a Single Firewall, only Dynamic NetLinks are supported, as Modem Interfaces always have dynamic IP addresses.

**Figure 93: Elements in a Multi-Link configuration**



This illustration shows the elements that are used to configure Multi-Link. Each NetLink element contains a Router element and a Network element. The Router element represents the router for that network connection. The Network element represents the set of public IP addresses allocated by the provider of the network connection. NetLinks are added to the Routing tree under the Interface IDs and the Modem numbers that represent the physical interfaces or the 3G modems toward the routers used for the Internet connections.

Multiple NetLinks are combined into an Outbound Multi-Link element. Outbound Multi-Link elements are the central elements used to configure load balancing for outbound traffic. Outbound load balancing is implemented by using the Outbound Multi-Link elements in the Firewall Policy's NAT rules. Outbound Multi-Link elements are only supported for IPv4 traffic.

- 1) Configure routing with at least two NetLinks.
- 2) If you want the firewall to select the NetLink based on the type of traffic, create QoS Classes and assign them to traffic.



- 3) Create an Outbound Multi-Link element to group your NetLinks and define traffic management settings.
- 4) In the Firewall Policy, create NAT rules for outbound load balancing.

#### Related concepts

[Defining Multi-Link routes for firewalls](#) on page 706

[Quality of Service \(QoS\) and how it works](#) on page 947

#### Related tasks

[Create Outbound Multi-Link elements](#) on page 737

## Configuring outbound Multi-Link settings

Outbound Multi-Link elements are used for combining NetLinks and for setting options for the high availability and load balancing features.

You must configure the basic settings for the Round Trip Time or Ratio methods in the properties of each NetLink.

## Create Outbound Multi-Link elements

The Outbound Multi-Link element collects together the NetLinks and sets options for load balancing.

To group the NetLinks together as a single entity, you must create an Outbound Multi-Link element that includes the NetLinks. To create the Outbound Multi-Link element, you must define the following:

- Which NetLinks are included
- The load-balancing method for determining which link is selected for each new outbound connection
- Whether each NetLink in the Outbound Multi-Link element is an Active or Standby NetLink

You can create multiple Outbound Multi-Link elements, and each NetLink can belong to more than one Outbound Multi-Link element at the same time.

You can optionally assign QoS Classes to NetLinks in the Outbound Multi-Link element to specify which traffic is routed through which NetLink. NAT rules can alternatively be used to select a particular link, but if you use QoS Classes, traffic can still fail over to other links if the selected link fails.

The same QoS class can be assigned to more than one NetLink in the same Outbound Multi-Link element to balance traffic through those selected NetLinks when those links are available. If you want to use QoS class to specify which traffic uses which NetLink, you must assign the QoS class to the traffic in an Access rule or with the QoS policies based on the DSCP codes in the traffic.

The Outbound Multi-Link elements you create do not work on their own; you must use them in the Firewall Policy's NAT rules to select traffic for outbound load balancing.



**Note:** If you use element-based NAT and multiple external IP addresses, the default NAT address works like an Outbound Multi-Link element.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Network Elements > Traffic Handlers**.
- 3) Right-click **Traffic Handlers** and select **New > Outbound Multi-Link**.
- 4) Give the Outbound Multi-Link element a unique **Name**.
- 5) (Optional) Add a free-form **Comment** for your own reference.
- 6) Specify the **Method** for link selection:
  - **Round Trip Time**: The firewall periodically probes the NetLinks to test them for speed and selects the fastest available active NetLink for each new outbound connection.
  - **Ratio**: Traffic is distributed between all available active NetLinks according to the relative bandwidth of each NetLink. The NetLink with the highest bandwidth is assigned the largest portion of the traffic.

#### Related concepts

[Using bandwidth management and traffic prioritization](#) on page 950

## Select NetLinks for Outbound Multi-Link elements

NetLink elements represent multiple network connections in the Multi-Link configuration.

### Before you begin

To introduce a new Internet connection, you must define a NetLink element that represents the Internet connection in the SMC.

The NetLink element contains the IP addresses that are used for translating source IP addresses (NAT) so that outgoing connections receive the correct IP address depending on the ISP. This allows the correct routing of the return packets. Each NetLink must have a unique IP address space.

A NetLink can be either static or dynamic. Dynamic NetLinks are supported only for Single Firewalls. In addition, only Dynamic NetLinks are supported if you configure Multi-Link using 3G modems with a Single Firewall. You can use the same NetLink with several firewalls. If you want to use NetLinks with a firewall that has several interfaces with dynamic IP addresses, you must create a separate Dynamic NetLink element for each interface with a dynamic IP address.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.


- 2) Select to **Network Elements > Traffic Handlers**.
- 3) Right-click the Outbound Multi-Link element and select **Properties**.
- 4) On the **General** tab of the **Outbound Multi-Link Properties** dialog box, click **Add**.
- 5) From the **NetLink** drop-down list, select a NetLink element.
- 6) From the **Network** drop-down list, select the Network element that represents the IP address space in the directly connected external network of this network link.
- 7) In the **Selected Range** fields, specify the IP address range for dynamic source address translation (NAT) for the internal source IP addresses on this NetLink. To define a single IP address, enter the same address in both fields.  
Because Multi-Link works without external arrangements, the address translation is necessary for correct routing of packets.
- 8) From the **Type** drop-down list, select an option to specify how traffic is routed through the NetLink.
- 9) (Optional) Select the QoS Classes for traffic handled by this NetLink and click **Add**.  
You can use the QoS classes to assign the NetLink with or without activating the actual QoS features.
  - You can select the same QoS class for several NetLinks to balance the traffic between the NetLinks. If none of the NetLinks with the appropriate QoS class are available, or if the traffic has not been assigned a QoS class, the traffic is distributed between the NetLinks according to the Method you specify in the Outbound Multi-Link element properties.
  - QoS classes are assigned based on ToS codes in network traffic or in the Access rules. Traffic that has been assigned the selected QoS class uses this NetLink if the NetLink is available.
- 10) Click **OK**.  
The NetLink is listed in the **Multi-Link Members** list.
- 11) Click **OK** in the **Outbound Multi-Link Properties** dialog box.

#### Related concepts

[Quality of Service \(QoS\) and how it works](#) on page 947

# Define destination cache settings for NetLinks in Outbound Multi-Link elements

Information about the performance of each NetLink is cached. No new measurement is made if a new connection is opened to the same destination within a short time period. You can define the duration of the cached information.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the **Outbound Multi-Link Properties** dialog box, select the **Advanced** tab.
- 2) Deselect **Default**.
- 3) Enter the **Timeout** (in seconds) after which a new measurement of NetLink performance is made. The default is 3600 seconds.
- 4) Enter the number of **Maximum Retries** for checking each NetLink. The default is 2.
- 5) Click **OK**.

## Create outbound load-balancing NAT rules

To balance outbound connections between the NetLinks, define NAT rules using the source NAT addressing defined in the Outbound Multi-Link element.


You can create several Outbound Multi-Link elements to balance different types of traffic differently. If you do not want to balance some traffic, direct the traffic through a specific NetLink with a normal NAT rule before the balancing rule.


You activate Multi-Link for outbound connections in the Firewall Policy with NAT rules that match certain traffic for Outbound Multi-Link address translation. Other NAT rules can translate the source addresses in outbound connections to the IP address space of a particular ISP. The traffic is automatically routed through a particular link, even if the link fails. Only the part of traffic that matches a NAT rule with the Outbound Multi-Link element is balanced between different links.

Some protocols cannot use dynamic NAT based on IP/port translation. To provide high availability and load balancing for these protocols, you can use static NAT with an Outbound Multi-Link element in an outbound load-balancing NAT rule. When static NAT is used, the size of the source network must be the same as the size of the Multi-Link network.




**Note:** If you use element-based NAT, NAT rules are automatically generated. In addition, you can use an Outbound Multi-Link element as a NAT address in a NAT definition.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Policies > Firewall Policies**.
- 3) Right-click a Firewall Policy and select **Edit**.
- 4) On the **IPv4 NAT** tab, add a rule.
- 5) Specify the source, destination, and service according to the traffic that you want to balance using an Outbound Multi-Link element.
- 6) Double-click the **NAT** cell.
- 7) Select **Dynamic** as the **Translation Type**.
- 8) Click **Select** next to the **IP Address Pool** field.
- 9) Browse to **Network Elements > Traffic Handlers** and select the Outbound Multi-Link element.
- 10) (Optional) In the **First Port to Use** and **Last Port to Use** fields, enter port numbers for source port translation.  
The default is to use all “free” high ports from 1024–65535.



**Note:** Make sure that the IP address pool and port range are large enough to translate the number of simultaneous connections that match this NAT rule.

- 11) To generate proxy ARP entries, select **Automatic Proxy ARP (Recommended)**.  
For proxy ARP to work, the untranslated IP address of all hosts whose IP address is translated must be included in the routing tree. There must be a CVI with an address from the same network in the Firewall element’s properties. Otherwise, the Network or Host must be manually added to the routing tree.
- 12) Click **OK**.
- 13) Click  **Save and Install**.

#### Related concepts

[Element-based NAT and how it works](#) on page 635

# Monitoring and testing outbound traffic management

The status of the different NetLinks can be monitored in the **Home** view.

Status is displayed based on the results of status probes to the Probing addresses configured in the NetLink elements.

You can test that the outbound traffic management configuration works as intended by generating traffic and then disabling network connections, for example, by unplugging cables (in a cluster, disable the same link on all active nodes to simulate ISP failure).



**Note:** By default, if you unplug a cable from a node in a cluster, the automatic engine tester recognizes this as a malfunction and turns the node offline (unless it is the last node that remains online). To override this automatic test, command all nodes to “Lock Online” during the test.

Most connections that are currently open on the link that goes down are cut and must be reopened by the communicating applications, since the external IP address used in the communications changes to an address of the new link. Any type of traffic can switch to using a different link transparently if it is transported through a Multi-Link VPN between two Firewalls.

If the Ratio-based load-balancing method is used, a link is used until a failure is detected based on the link status probes to the Probing addresses configured in the NetLink elements. With the Round Trip Time method, new connections are directed to working links (since the link that responds the fastest is chosen) even if probing is not configured or working.

## Related concepts

[Getting started with monitoring the system](#) on page 169

## Examples of Multi-Link

Multi-Link technology has many uses, some of which might apply to your situation.

### Example: Using Multi-Link to prepare for ISP downtime

This scenario shows an example of using Multi-Link to configure connections to two ISPs. This configuration guarantees connectivity if one ISP fails.

Company A wants to make sure that their Internet connection remains available even when one ISP connection fails. The company has subscribed to one Internet connection each from ISP A and ISP B. The administrators decide to use Multi-Link to guarantee High Availability of Internet connectivity.

The administrators do the following:

- 1) Create NetLink elements to represent connections to ISP A and ISP B.

- 2) Place the ISP A and ISP B NetLinks under the correct interfaces in the **Routing** tree.
- 3) Create an Outbound Multi-Link element and add the ISP A and ISP B NetLinks to it.
- 4) Define the following NAT rule in the Firewall Policy so that traffic from the internal network to destinations that are not internal is handled by the Outbound Multi-Link element:

Source	Destination	Service	NAT
Internal Network element	Not Internal expression	ANY	Dynamic load balancing: My Multi-Link

## Example: Excluding NetLinks from handling a QoS Class of traffic

Using Multi-Link technology and QoS classes, you can exclude VoIP traffic from a satellite connection.

Company B has three Internet connections: IPS A, ISP B, and ISP C, which is a satellite link. Because of the long latency in satellite connections, the administrators do not want any VoIP traffic to be routed through ISP C. They decide to use QoS classes so that VoIP traffic is only routed through ISP A and ISP B.

To do this, the administrators:

- 1) Create NetLink elements to represent connections to ISP A, ISP B, and ISP C.
- 2) Place the ISP A, ISP B, and ISP C NetLinks under the correct interfaces in the **Routing** view.
- 3) Define a QoS class and assign it to VoIP traffic.
- 4) Create an Outbound Multi-Link element and add the ISP A, ISP B, and ISP C NetLinks to it.
- 5) Select the QoS class for the ISP A NetLink and the ISP B NetLink in the Outbound Multi-Link element properties. No QoS class is assigned to ISP C.
- 6) Define the following NAT rule for outbound load balancing in the Firewall Policy:

Source	Destination	Service	NAT
ANY	ANY	ANY	Dynamic load balancing: Multi-Link Element

## Example: Balancing traffic according to link capacity

To manage ISP connections having very different bandwidths, you configure an Outbound Multi-Link element and select ratio load balancing.

Company B has three ISP connections that have different bandwidths:

- ISP A 20 Mbit/s

- ISP B 10 Mbit/s
- ISP C 4 Mbit/s

The administrators want the traffic to be divided between the NetLinks according to the ratio of their relative bandwidths. This means that ISP A handles twice as much traffic as ISP B and five times as much traffic as ISP C. The administrators have already created and configured NetLink elements to represent each ISP connection, so now they:

- 1) Combine the NetLinks for each ISP connection into an Outbound Multi-Link element and select the Ratio load-balancing method.
- 2) Define the following NAT rule for outbound load balancing in the Firewall Policy:

Source	Destination	Service	NAT
ANY	ANY	ANY	Dynamic load balancing: Multi-Link Element

## Example: Balancing traffic between Internet connections

This scenario shows an example of using Multi-Link to balance the load of traffic between two smaller Internet connections instead of one larger connection.

The administrator at Company B determines that a 4 megabyte Internet connection is required to handle the volume of traffic their network receives. However, Company B is a small company on a tight budget, and the cost of a single 4 megabyte connection is too high. The administrator decides to subscribe to one 2 megabyte connection each from ISP A and ISP B, and use Multi-Link to balance the load of traffic between the two connections to reduce costs.

The administrator:

- 1) Creates NetLink elements to represent connections to ISP A and ISP B.
- 2) Places the ISP A and ISP B NetLinks under the correct interfaces in the **Routing** tree.
- 3) Creates an Outbound Multi-Link element and adds the ISP A and ISP B NetLinks to it.
- 4) Defines the following NAT rule in the Firewall Policy so that traffic from the internal network to destinations that are not internal is balanced by the Outbound Multi-Link element (My Multi-Link):

Source	Destination	Service	NAT
Internal Network element	Not Internal expression	ANY	Dynamic load balancing: My Multi-Link



# Inbound traffic management

## Contents

- [Getting started with inbound traffic management](#) on page 745
- [Defining Server Pool elements](#) on page 749
- [Install Server Pool Monitoring Agents](#) on page 755
- [Uninstall Server Pool Monitoring Agents](#) on page 756
- [Configuring Server Pool Monitoring Agents](#) on page 757
- [Enable Server Pool Monitoring Agents](#) on page 768
- [Entering Server Pool IP addresses for your DNS Server](#) on page 769
- [Create Access rules for inbound load balancing](#) on page 770
- [Configuring dynamic DNS updates for Server Pools](#) on page 771
- [Test Monitoring Agents on the command line](#) on page 774
- [Monitor Monitoring Agents on the command line](#) on page 774
- [Examples of Server Pools](#) on page 775

Firewalls allow you to set up a Server Pool that distributes the load of incoming traffic between a group of servers and/or allows controlling the NetLink use of incoming traffic in a Multi-Link configuration. This ensures that services remain available even when one or more servers or NetLinks fail, and balances the load of incoming traffic more efficiently between a group of servers. Inbound traffic management is not supported on Layer 2 Firewalls.

## Getting started with inbound traffic management

---

Inbound traffic on a Firewall can be managed with a Server Pool.

### What inbound traffic management does

---

Server Pools primarily provide load balancing and High Availability for two or more servers that offer the same service to users. Server Pools also control which NetLink incoming traffic uses. Inbound traffic management can:

- load-balance incoming traffic between several servers to even out their workload
- monitor the server's status so that the traffic is not directed at unavailable or overloaded servers (optional Monitoring Agents can be installed on each server)
- send dynamic DNS (DDNS) updates to a DNS server to prevent incoming traffic from attempting to use a non-functioning NetLink in a Multi-Link configuration (with or without using the other features of Server Pools).

## Limitations

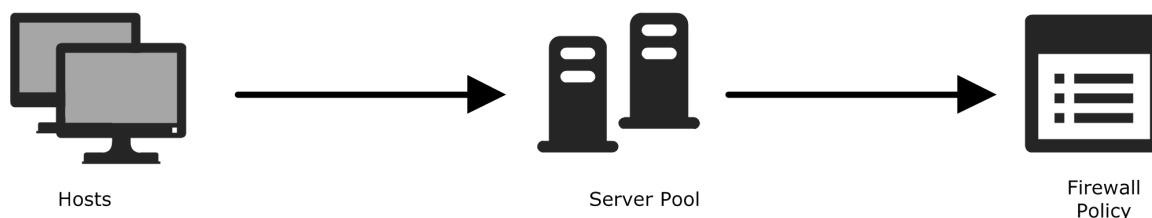
- DDNS updates have no access control, so the communications must be secured in other ways.
- Standby servers cannot be defined for a Server Pool. Only load balancing between the servers in the Server Pool is supported.
- Only TCP and UDP protocols are supported for Server Pools.
- Source address translation is not supported for Server Pools.
- Server Pools are only supported for IPv4 traffic.

## What do I need to know before I begin?

It is recommended that each Server Pool offers one type of service. If the servers provide several services (for example, HTTP and HTTPS), create a separate Server Pool for each service.

## Server Pools

**Figure 94: How Server Pools and related elements are used together**



Host elements represent your servers in the SMC. One or more Host elements are added as Server Pool members to a Server Pool element. The Server Pool element must be used in an IPv4 Access rule in the Firewall Policy for incoming traffic to be routed to the pool members. There can be several Server Pools for different services. The Access rules define which traffic is directed to which pool.

The Server Pool is a built-in load balancer in the Firewall that can be used for distributing incoming traffic between a group of servers to balance the load efficiently and to ensure that services remain available even when a server in the pool fails. The Server Pool has a single external IP address that the clients can connect to. The Firewall uses NAT to distribute the incoming traffic to the different servers.

The server load is distributed to the Server Pool members based on each server's availability. *Monitoring Agents* installed on each server can be used to monitor server availability and load balancing. Alternatively, the server availability can be checked by periodically sending simple ICMP Echo Requests (ping) or by periodically sending TCP strings to check that the expected response is returned. The ping test only checks the server's connectivity, the TCP test checks that specific services are available, and the Monitoring Agents provide additional information about the server's load and functioning.

If the tests or the Monitoring Agent report a server failure, the server is removed from the Server Pool and the connections are distributed to the remaining servers. When a server is removed from the Server Pool, traffic from existing connections can still be sent to the server (since in typical use scenarios the other servers would not be able to handle them in any case) without sending new connections to the failed member. With Monitoring Agents, the server can be completely excluded from handling traffic.

When a previously unavailable server comes back online, existing connections are not redistributed, but some of the new connections that are opened are again directed to the server that rejoins the pool.

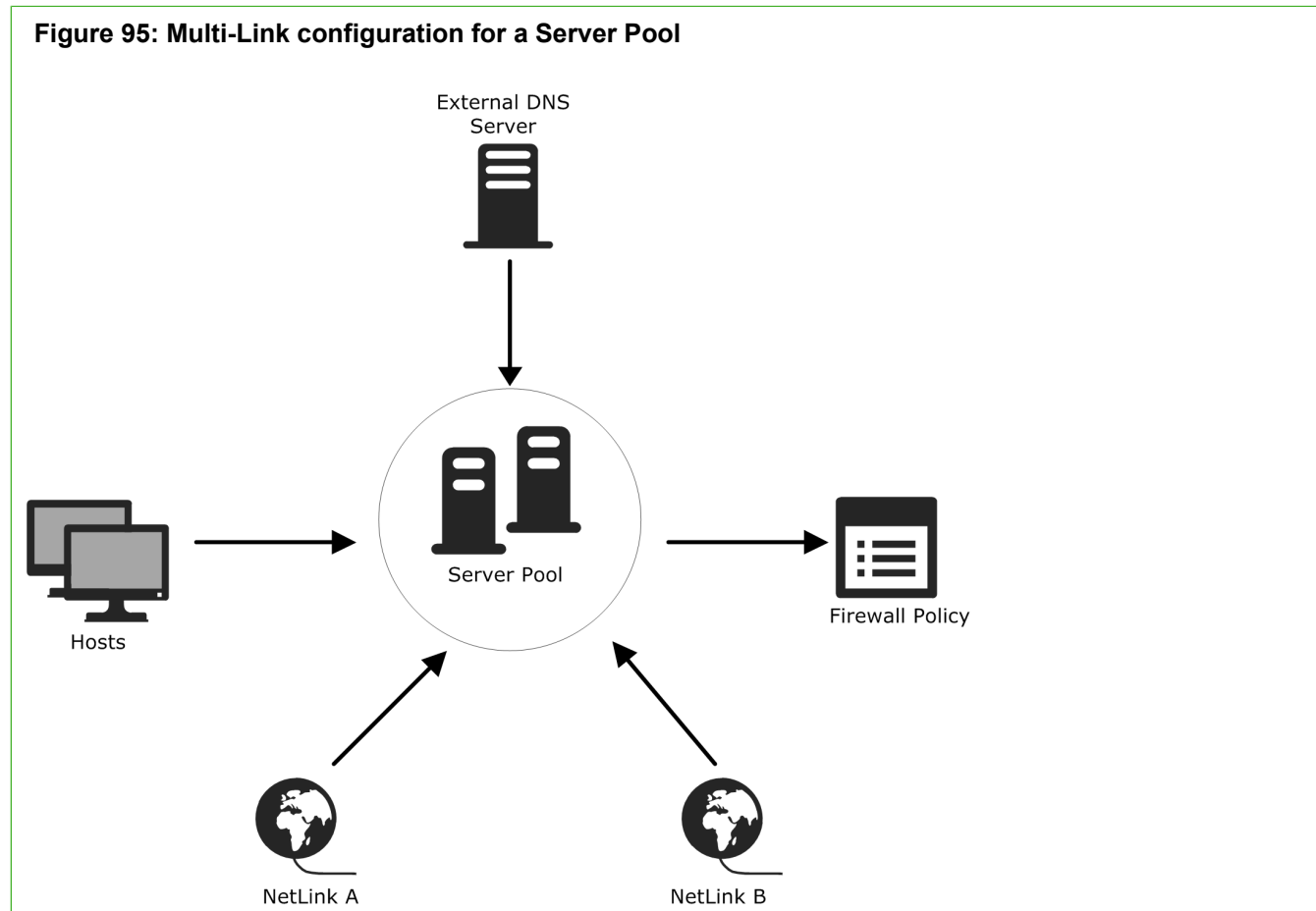
Additionally, Multi-Link can be used with Server Pools to provide the connecting clients access to the Server Pool through multiple Internet connections, increasing Server Pool availability.

## Using Multi-Link with Server Pools in inbound traffic management

If you have configured Multi-Link, it can be used to improve Server Pool availability.

You can also use Multi-Link with just one server in the Server Pool to take advantage of dynamic DNS updates.

**Figure 95: Multi-Link configuration for a Server Pool**



As an addition to the basic configuration, the NetLinks and (optionally) the External DNS Server are also specified for the Server Pool.

When dynamic DNS updates are not used, Multi-Link is based on assigning an IP address for the Server Pool in each NetLink. The Server Pool's DNS entry on the external DNS server must be configured with an IP address for each NetLink so that clients can access the servers through the different NetLinks. When the connecting client requests the IP address for the Server Pool's DNS name, the DNS server sends the Server Pool's DNS entry with the IP addresses on the different NetLinks. The client connects to one of these addresses and the Firewall allocates the connection to one of the Server Pool members. If the first Server Pool IP address is unreachable, the client can connect to the Server Pool's next IP address on a different NetLink (depending on the client application).

When dynamic DNS updates are used, the firewall updates the DNS entries automatically based on the availability of the NetLinks. When a NetLink becomes unavailable, the Server Pool's IP address for that link is automatically removed from the DNS entry on the external DNS server. When the NetLink becomes available, the IP address is again automatically added to the DNS entry.

**Related concepts**[Configuring dynamic DNS updates for Server Pools](#) on page 771

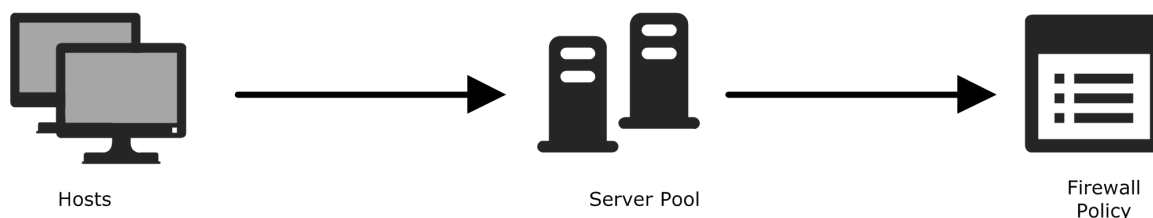
## Default elements for Server Pools in inbound traffic management

You can use Server Pools to load-balance servers without using Multi-Link for inbound traffic management. To do this, use the special “Not specified” default NetLink element.

## Inbound traffic management configuration overview

The process of configuring inbound traffic management consists of the following overall steps.

**Figure 96: Elements in the configuration**



- 1) Create Host elements for all servers you want to include in the Server Pool.
- 2) Define a Server Pool element and define settings for inbound traffic management.
- 3) Make sure that the servers' public, external IP addresses in the Server Pool properties correspond to their IP addresses in the DNS server.
- 4) Update your Firewall Policy to include inbound traffic management.
- 5) (Optional) If you want to use Server Pool Monitoring Agents, install, configure, and enable them.
- 6) (Optional) If you want to send dynamic DNS (DDNS) updates to a DNS server, configure the updates.

**Related concepts**[Entering Server Pool IP addresses for your DNS Server](#) on page 769  
[Configuring dynamic DNS updates for Server Pools](#) on page 771

**Related tasks**[Create Access rules for inbound load balancing on page 770](#)[Install Server Pool Monitoring Agents in Windows on page 755](#)


## Defining Server Pool elements


The Server Pool element collects servers that provide a particular service into a single element and defines the settings for handling the inbound traffic.

### Create Server Pool elements

Add servers to Server Pools based on the services that the servers provide.

All servers included in the server pool are equal. It is possible for the servers in a server pool to provide more than one service, but it is recommended to create a separate server pool element for each type of service.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Expand the **Network Elements** branch.
- 3) Right-click **Traffic Handlers** and select **New > Server Pool**.
- 4) Enter a unique **Name** for the Server Pool.
- 5) Click **OK**.


### Define external addresses of server pools



Define the external address of a server pool as a property of the Server Pool element.

Clients make their incoming connections to the address of the Server Pool. The Firewall decides which server handles the connection and translates (in a NAT operation) the public address to the private IP address of that server. The external address or addresses of the Server Pool are defined as properties of the Server Pool element.



**Note:** Make sure that other NAT configurations do not overlap with the NAT of the Server Pool.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Select **Network Elements > Traffic Handlers**.
- 3) Right-click a Server Pool element and select **Properties**.
- 4) In the **External Addresses** section, click **Add**.
- 5) Select a NetLink element, or if you want to configure load sharing without traffic balancing between NetLinks, select **Not Specified**.
- 6) From the **Network** drop-down list, select the Network element that is used for the Server Pool's external NATed address.
- 7) In the **IP Address** field, enter the external NATed destination IP address for the Server Pool. Client computers contact this address when accessing the service that the servers in the Server Pool offer.  
 **Note:** The IP address you enter here must be reserved for NAT and it must not be used by any equipment in your network. Remember to update your DNS server with any changes in IP addressing.
- 8) From the **Status** drop-down list, select **Enabled**.
- 9) (Recommended) Select **Proxy ARP Entry Generation** to automatically generate a proxy ARP for the NATed address in the selected Network. Otherwise, define the ARP entry manually in the Firewall element properties.
- 10) Click **OK**.

## Add members to Server Pool elements


Add Host elements to Server Pool elements to balance traffic between the servers.


### Before you begin

You must have a Host element for the internal IP address of each member of the server pool.

The Firewall uses the internal IP address of each member of the server pool to select which server handles which traffic that arrives at the server pool's external address. When you define a Host element, you enter the IP address that the firewall uses to contact the server. Only Hosts with IPv4 addresses can be used in the server pool.

The server pool can have any number of members. If you have only one server and you want to balance the inbound traffic between your NetLinks, you can define a server pool with just one Host. This approach allows dynamic DNS update information to be used to prevent contacting clients from attempting to use a NetLink that is out of service.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Expand the **Network Elements** branch.
- 3) Right-click **Traffic Handlers** and select **New > Server Pool**.
- 4) In the **Server Pool Members** section, click **Add**.
- 5) Select the elements for the members of the server pool.
  - Select an existing Server element (for servers that have some special role in the SMC configuration) or Host element (for other servers).
  - Select **Tools > New** to create an element.
- 6) From the **Allocate Traffic to Servers by** drop-down list, select the granularity for the server selection. The granularity defines how likely it is that traffic is redirected to a particular server. Usually it is best to choose the least granular option that still produces an acceptable distribution of traffic. The options are (from least granular to most granular):



**Note:**

Consider the type of traffic when selecting the allocation method. Connections from the same source might be directed to different servers in the following cases:


- Using the **Host** setting if the host's IP address apparent to the SMC can change.
- Using the **Connection** setting in all cases.


Depending on the services offered, this behavior might deteriorate service quality.

## Configure server availability monitoring

---

There are different methods for monitoring whether a server or a service running on a server is available.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Expand the **Network Elements** branch and select **Traffic Handlers**.
- 3) Right-click a Server Pool element and select **Properties**.
- 4) Select the **Monitoring** tab.
- 5) In the **Frequency Check** field, define how often you want the availability to be checked.
- 6) From the **Method** drop-down list, select the method for monitoring the availability of the servers in the Server Pool.

7) (TCP or HTTP methods) Specify the additional options.

The text in the **Request** field is sent by the firewall in the first packet after the TCP handshake. The text in the **Response** field is checked against the first data packet received from the server after the TCP handshake.



**Tip:** The response is evaluated using a `begins with` pattern. It is not necessary to enter the complete text of the response.

When using TCP, if the **Request** and **Response** fields are left empty, the Firewall only checks that a connection can be established.

For example, to check for the HTTPS service, enter 443 as the port number, but leave the **Request** and **Response** fields empty. In this case, the firewall only checks that a connection to port 443 can be established.

8) Click **OK**.

#### Related concepts

[Install Server Pool Monitoring Agents on page 755](#)

#### Related tasks

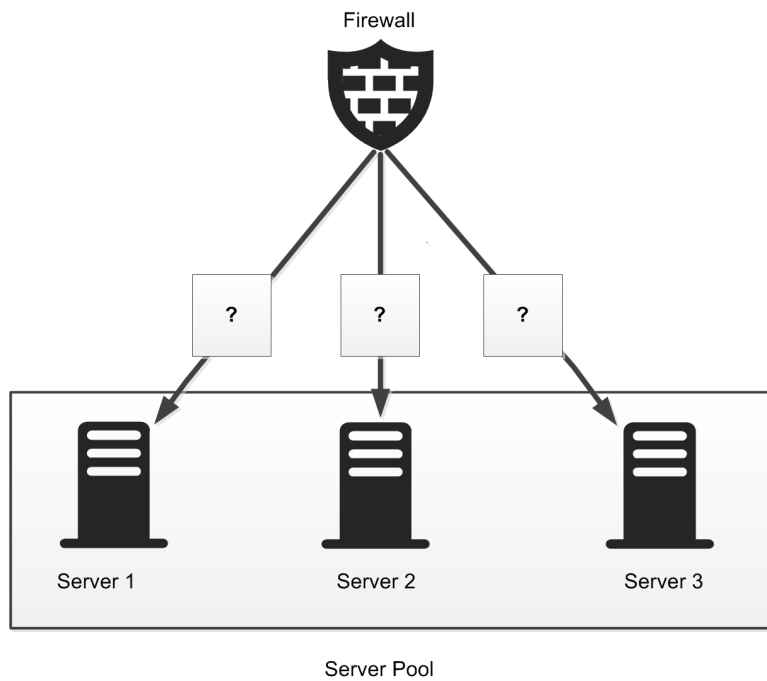
[Enable Server Pool Monitoring Agents on page 768](#)

## Using Server Pool Monitoring Agents

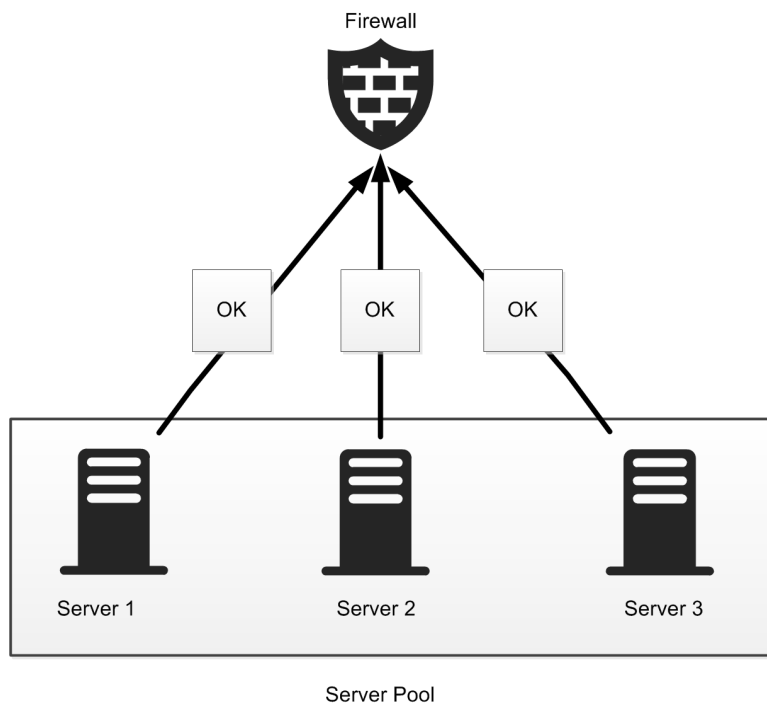
Server Pool Monitoring Agents provide advanced features for monitoring the server load and status.

The ping monitoring relies on checking the server availability, and the TCP monitoring relies on checking the availability of specific services. However, Monitoring Agents run on each server to check the server status and load. The Monitoring Agents can also run system checks on the servers and send log messages to the SMC.

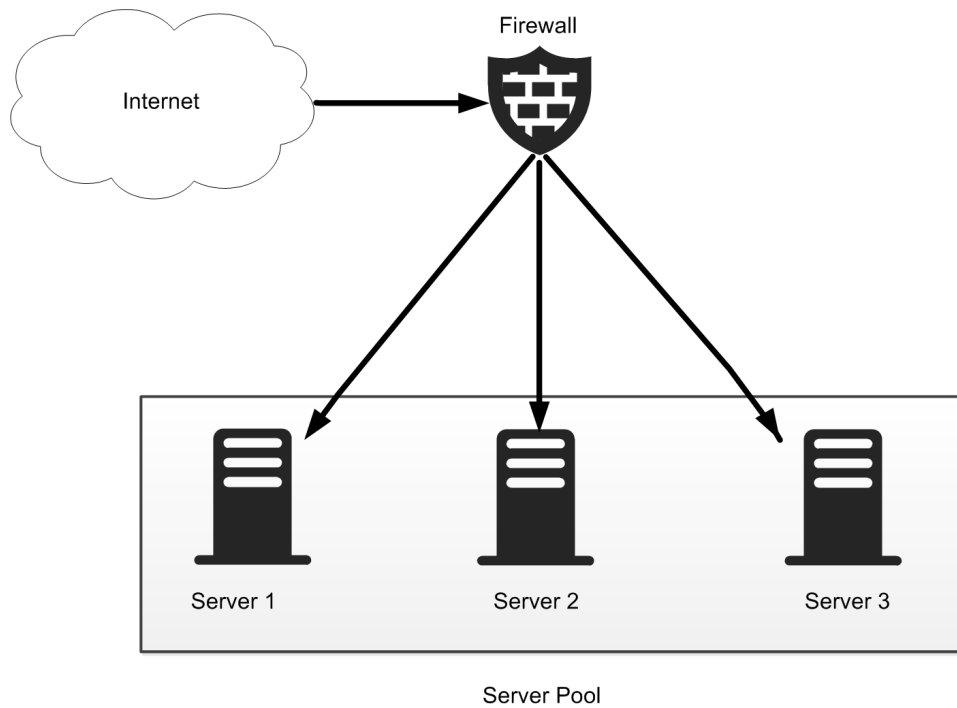


**Figure 97: Firewall queries Server Pool Monitoring Agents on each server**

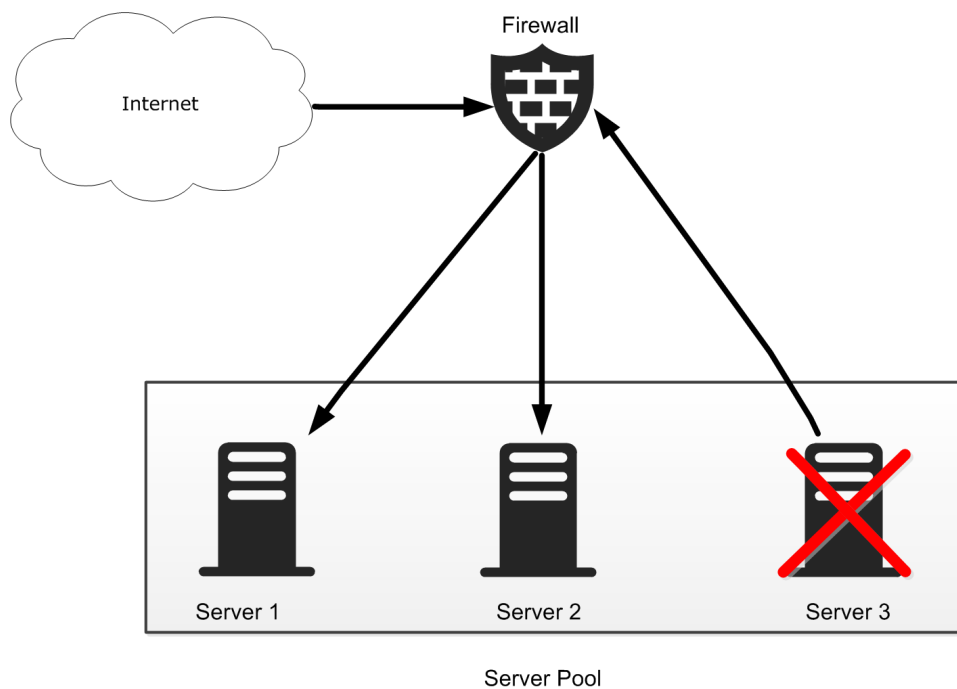
A Monitoring Agent runs as a service (port 7777/UDP by default) on the Server Pool member. The firewall queries the Monitoring Agent on each Server Pool member to check the status and load of the server.

**Figure 98: Server Pool Monitoring Agents provide status information**

The Monitoring Agent on each Server Pool member provides information about the server load and status to the firewall.

**Figure 99: Firewall balances connections between Server Pool members**

The firewall balances the incoming connections between the Server Pool members according to the status and load information it receives from the Monitoring Agents.

**Figure 100: Server Pool Monitoring Agents: Test failure**

The Server Pool Monitoring Agent also has a tester that is configured to run predefined tests or user-defined programs. Automatic action can be configured based on the results of the test. When a test fails, an alert is sent to the Firewall engines. Optionally, the agent can also take the server out of the Server Pool by changing its

status from “OK” to “Excluded”. When a server is excluded from the Server Pool, all new connections are directed to other available servers in the pool. The excluded server does not process any connections.

Server Pool Monitoring Agents are available for Windows and Linux platforms.

## Install Server Pool Monitoring Agents

---

Server Pool Monitoring Agents can be installed on the Server Pool servers to monitor the availability and load of the Server Pool members.

Server Pool Monitoring Agents are installed on the servers that form the Server Pool to report the server’s health and load. The Firewall uses the information to send traffic to the server that can best handle the additional load and avoid sending new connections to a server that is inoperative. The Monitoring Agent has various in-built tests and it can also run external scripts or programs on the server to check that the server is functioning properly. You must install the Server Pool Monitoring Agents onto all members of the Server Pool.

## Install Server Pool Monitoring Agents in Windows

---

Install Server Pool Monitoring Agents on all members of a Windows-based server pool. Perform this task on all Server Pool members.

### Steps

- 1) On the server, copy the ServerPool\_Monitoring\_Agent\_Installer\Windows\ directory from the SMC installation DVD to a suitable location.
- 2) Run the sgagent.exe self-extracting installation program.

## Install Server Pool Monitoring Agents in Linux

---

Install Server Pool Monitoring Agents on all members of a Linux-based server pool. Perform this task on all server pool members.

### Steps

- 1) On the server, copy the ServerPool\_Monitoring\_Agent\_Installer/Linux/ directory from the SMC installation DVD to a suitable location.
- 2) In the terminal, change directories to the location where you copied the directory, extract the SGFWagent package, then run the rpm command.

For example, you can use the following commands.

```
cp SGFWagent.tar /var/spool/pkg
cd /var/spool/pkg
tar -xf SGFWagent.tar
rpm -i sgagent-4.0.0.build403-1.i386.rpm
```

The name of the .rpm file might vary, depending on the version you are using.

## Install Server Pool Monitoring Agents in Solaris

Install Server Pool Monitoring Agents on all members of a Solaris-based server pool. Perform this task on all server pool members.

### Steps

- 1) On the server, copy the `ServerPool_Monitoring_Agent_Installer/Solaris/` directory from the SMC installation DVD to a suitable location.
- 2) In the terminal, change directories to the location where you copied the directory, extract the SGFWagent package, then run the `pkgadd` command.  
For example, you can use the following commands:

```
cp SGFWagent.tar /var/spool/pkg
cd /var/spool/pkg
tar -xf SGFWagent.tar
pkgadd
```

- 3) Select SGFWagent for installation.

## Uninstall Server Pool Monitoring Agents

You can uninstall the Server Pool Monitoring Agents you no longer need.

### Steps

- 1) On the server, uninstall the Monitoring Agent according to the operating system of the server.
  - In Windows, in the Windows Control Panel, click **Add/Remove Programs** and select **Monitoring Agent**. Follow the instructions to remove the Monitoring Agent.
  - In Linux, run the following command: `rpm -e sgagent`.
  - In Solaris, run the following command: `pkgrm SGFWagent`.

# Configuring Server Pool Monitoring Agents

Server Pool Monitoring Agents are configured in two files. The `sgagent.local.conf` file is specific for each server. The `sgagent.conf` file applies to all servers in the pool.

Both files are found in the following directory on each server:

- Windows: Program Files\Stonesoft\StoneGate Monitoring Agent\
- Linux: `/etc/stonegate/`
- Solaris: `/opt/sgagent/etc/`

The `sgagent.local.conf` file contains server-specific information, and is different for each server. If you do not want to change the default values, there is no need to edit this file.

The `sgagent.conf` file contains information that refers to the entire Server Pool.

## Editing `sgagent.local.conf`

You can edit the `sgagent.local.conf` file for each Server Pool member or use the default values.

The server-specific file `sgagent.local.conf` includes information to identify the Server Pool member if default values are not used. If the file is not configured, the Monitoring Agent uses the system host name as the default value to identify the member. If edited, this file must be different on each Server Pool member.

Statement	Description
<code>host host_name</code>	Specifies the <code>host_name</code> of the server. If no value is defined, the system host name is used.
<code>set alias value</code>	Defines the <code>value</code> of an <code>alias</code> that can be used as a variable in the global <code>sgagent.conf</code> configuration.

For example, to configure the member of the Server Pool where `sgagent.local.conf` resides to use `server1` as its host name, and to set the alias `hostip` to `192.168.1.1`:

```
host server1
set hostip 192.168.1.1
```

## Editing `sgagent.conf`

You define attributes for the entire Server Pool in the `sgagent.conf` file.

The file common to all Server Pool members is called `sgagent.conf`. In this file, you define attributes for the entire Server Pool. In most cases, the Server Pool members are similar in configuration and function, so the tests performed on each member are also similar. Usually, the same `sgagent.conf` file is used on all servers. The `sgagent.conf` file contains two sections: the statement section and the test section.

### An example sgagent.conf file

```
# -----START OF STATEMENT SECTION
begin host server1
config boot-delay 5:00 # set the config delay on the slow member
end
begin host not server1
config boot-delay 20 # 20s config delay on other members
end
config alert-interval 1:00:00
config startup-script /etc/scripts/startup.sh
# Monitor one minute load average and set alert threshold at 5
load-index 500 load-average-1
# -----START OF TEST SECTION
# Tests
test "webster listening"
interval 2:00
action exclude
recovery 10:00
command portlistening 80 %hostip%
# Check that this member's
# port 80 is listening.
test "server1 running baz"
interval 10:00
action exclude
host server1
script /etc/init.d/baz start
command servicerrunning baz
test "external1"
interval 10:00
action alert
command external 3 700 /usr/lib/webster/test.sh 212.20.2.21
```

## Statements in the sgagent.conf statement section

You can define general commands for the tests the Monitoring Agents perform in the statement section.

A statement can apply to all or only some members of the Server Pool.

**Table 71: Statements in the sgagent.conf statement section**

Statement	Description
begin host host_name	<p>If you want a statement to apply to certain Server Pool members only, the statement must start with the <code>begin host</code> command followed by the name of the Server Pool member.</p> <p>The <code>begin host</code> command can be followed by actual server names or an exclusion. In an exclusion, <code>begin host</code> is followed by <code>not</code> and the server name, instead of just a server name. This exclusion indicates that the setting is applied to all other servers except the one specified.</p> <p>For example, the following statement would apply to all members in the Server Pool except <code>server1</code>:</p> <pre>begin host not server1 config settings end</pre>

Statement	Description
<pre>config [port port_number] [boot-delay time] [alert-interval time] [alert-script path] [startup-script path] [overload-script path] [listen IP_address [:port] [load-index threshold index_name [[index-parameter]] [load-index-action exclude time]</pre>	<p>Defines the option in question.</p> <p>If a statement applies to all members in the Server Pool, you can enter the setting on a single line without using <code>begin</code> or <code>end</code>.</p>
<pre>end</pre>	<p>Ends the statement when <code>begin</code> is used.</p>

## Options in the `sgagent.conf` statement section

When you want to configure a particular setting, the syntax starts with the command `config`.

The available options are listed in the following table:

**Table 72: Options in the `sgagent.conf` statement section**

Option	Description
<pre>port port_number</pre>	<p>Specifies the port that the Server Pool uses for communication with the engines.</p> <p>All Server Pool members must use the same port number; the port setting cannot start with the <code>begin host</code> command. The port number can be from 0–65535.</p> <p>By default, the port is set to 7777. If you use another port instead of the default port, you must edit the IPv4 and IPv6 Access rules to allow connections to the new port.</p>
<pre>boot-delay time</pre>	<p>Defines how long the tester waits before starting the tests after the system has been booted up or restarted to ensure that all necessary processes have completed their startup.</p> <p>Time is entered in the format <code>[(hh:)mm:]ss</code>. The default is 30 seconds.</p>
<pre>alert-interval time</pre>	<p>Defines how long the system waits before sending a new alert in response to a test failure to prevent excessive alerts from being sent.</p> <p>Time is entered in the format <code>[(hh:)mm:]ss</code>. The default is 1 hour.</p>
<pre>alert-script path</pre>	<p>Specifies the path to a custom alert script.</p> <p>You must use quotation marks if the path contains spaces. This is only needed when you want to use a custom alert script. There is no default value.</p>
<pre>startup-script path</pre>	<p>Specifies the path to the custom script to be run when the Monitoring Agent starts.</p> <p>You must use quotation marks if the path contains spaces.</p>

Option	Description
<code>overload-script path</code>	Specifies the path to the custom script to be run if the load index exceeds the threshold value defined with the <code>load-index</code> statement.  You must use quotation marks if the path contains spaces.
<code>listen IP_address [:port]</code>	Specifies the IP address the Monitoring Agent listens on.  If no IP address is specified, the first IP address of the interface is used by default. If no port is defined, the default port (7777) is used.
<code>load-index threshold index_name [index-parameter]</code>	Defines the method that is used to measure the load.  We recommend using the same method of measurement for all members of the Server Pool. If the load measurement exceeds the defined threshold, a log message and an alert are generated. The <code>index_name</code> can be a complex expression combining multiple methods with basic arithmetic operations (+ - * /), such as "index-name + index-name".
<code>load-index-action exclude [time]</code>	Excludes the server from handling traffic for the specified time (in seconds) when the threshold value of the load-index is reached.  When the server has switched to the Excluded state, the server does not return to the normal state until the specified length of time has elapsed, even if the load of the server has dropped to a normal level.

**Table 73: Index\_name options**

Option	Description
<code>processor-load time</code>	Measures the average processor load level over the specified time period.  The time is entered in the format [(hh:)mm:]ss. The returned value is a percentage value from 0–100.
<code>processor-kernel-load time</code>	Measures the average processor time spent in the kernel mode over the specified time period.  The time is entered in the format [(hh:)mm:]ss. The returned value is a percentage value from 0–100.
<code>load-average- minutes</code>	Measures the average number of processes waiting in the execution queue due to reserved resources over the specified number of minutes.  The options for the value of minutes are 1, 5, or 15. The returned value is the load average for the specified time period multiplied by 100.

## Monitoring Agent statement configuration examples

When you add options for Monitoring Agents to the statement section of the `sgagent.conf` file, you can use the following examples as a guide.

### Port option example

To use port 5555 for the communication between the engines and the Server Pool members instead of the default port:

```
config port 5555
```



## Boot-delay option example

---

To set a boot delay of 20 seconds on server1:

```
begin host server1
config boot-delay 20
end
```

## Alert-interval option example

---

To set an alert interval of 1 hour on servers 1 and 2:

```
begin host server1 server2
config alert-interval 1:00:00
end
```

## Alert-script option example

---

To run `alertscript.sh` every time an alert is generated:

```
config alert-script /etc/test/alertscript.sh
```

## Startup-script option example

---

To run `startup.sh` when the Monitoring Agent starts on server1:

```
begin host server1
config startup-script /etc/test/startup.sh
end
```

## Overload-script option example

---

To run `overload.sh` script when the threshold value of the load index is reached on server2:

```
begin host server2
config overload-script /etc/test/overload.sh
end
```

## Listen option example

---

To make the Monitoring Agent of server2 listen to the IP address 192.168.10.31 using the default port 7777:

```
begin host server2
config listen 192.168.10.31
end
```

## Load-index option example

This example demonstrates how the measurement of `load-average-5` is used on all servers except `server1` to compare against the `threshold` value 4. When the load-average is higher than 4, a log message is generated:

```
begin host not server1
config load-index 400 load-average-5
end
```

Because `server1` is ignored in the previous statement, it would typically have its own statement with different options, such as the following statement:

```
begin host server1
config load-index 400 load-average-1
end
```

## Load-index-action option example

To set the server status to Excluded when the threshold value of the load index is reached on `server2`:

```
begin host server2
config load-index-action exclude 10
end
```

## Parameters in the `sgagent.conf` test section

You can use the parameters described in the following table to configure internal and external tests for Monitoring Agents.

The second part of the `sgagent.conf` file specifies which tests the Monitoring Agents carry out on the servers they monitor. A test begins with the test definition, followed by optional parameter lines, and ends with the command definition. The `test` and `command` parameters are always required. The `interval`, `action`, `host`, `script`, and `recovery` parameters are optional and have their default values if not specified for the test.

## Parameters in the `sgagent.conf` test section

Parameter	Description
<code>test name</code>	<p>Begins the test definition. Specifies the name of the test.</p> <p>The name appears in the logs and alerts in the event of a failure. It should be descriptive to give the administrators enough information about what has happened. The test name can be any string. You must use quotation marks if the name contains spaces.</p> <p>This parameter is required and has no default value.</p>
<code>interval time</code>	<p>Defines how often the test is executed.</p> <p>Time is entered in the format <code>[(hh:)]mm:]ss</code>. The minimum interval is 3 seconds and the maximum is 1 day. If no interval is defined, the default is 60 seconds.</p>
<code>action alert exclude</code>	<p>Defines what to do if the test fails.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>alert</code> creates an alert entry and runs the alert script if one is defined for the test.</li> <li><code>exclude</code> sets the server status to Excluded and creates an alert. No new connections are directed to the excluded server and the current connections are moved to the other members of the Server Pool.</li> <li>If no action is set for the test, <code>alert</code> is the default action.</li> </ul>

Parameter	Description
host server	<p>Defines the server to be tested. If the name of the server is specified in the host field of <code>sgagent.local.conf</code>, that name must be used here. Otherwise, the default host name of the server must be used.</p> <p>You can also list multiple server names, separated by spaces.</p> <p>If no specific server is defined, the test is performed on all Server Pool members by default.</p>
script [always repeat] path	<p>Specifies how many times the script is executed after the test fails, and the path to the script file. You must use quotation marks if the path contains spaces.</p> <p>There are two options for how many times to execute the script after the test fails:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>repeat</code> defines the number of failures after which the script is no longer run. The counter is reset each time the server status changes, or the test succeeds.</li> <li>• <code>always</code> runs the script without restrictions on the number of failures.</li> </ul> <p>If no argument is given, the script is run only after the first failure by default.</p>
recovery always time	<p>Determines how long the tester reruns a failed test to see if it succeeds on the next attempt. There are two options for specifying the time period:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>always</code> : There are no time limits on how long the tester waits for the test to succeed again. The server state is changed from Excluded to OK when the test succeeds.</li> <li>• <code>time</code> : If the test succeeds in the defined time period after a failure, the server state is changed from Excluded to OK. Time is entered in the format [(hh:)mm:]ss.</li> </ul> <p>If no recovery options are specified, the test is never rerun after a failure, and the server state remains Excluded.</p>
command external test_expression [ retry ] [ timeout ] [ path ] [ parameters ]	<p>Specifies which test script to use, and the options for running the test. This parameter is required and has no default value.</p> <p>There are two options for specifying the test script:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>external</code> : Indicates that an external test is used. External tests can be created by combining predefined tests with AND, OR, and NOT operators, or you can write your own script. External tests must return an exit code of 0 (zero) to indicate success. Any non-zero return value is interpreted as a failure.</li> <li>• <code>test_expression</code> : Specifies the internal test to run. For more information about the internal tests, see <i>Internal tests for Monitoring Agents</i>.</li> </ul> <p>The other options are used as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>retry</code> : Specifies how many times the script is run before the test is considered failed.</li> <li>• <code>timeout</code> : Specifies how long (in milliseconds) the tester waits for the test result.</li> <li>• <code>path</code> : Specifies the path to the external test script. You must use quotation marks if the path contains spaces. The path is required for external tests, and is not used for internal tests.</li> <li>• <code>parameters</code> : Specifies any possible parameters that a specific test might need.</li> </ul>

**Related concepts**

[Editing `sgagent.local.conf` on page 757](#)

**Related reference**

[Internal tests for Monitoring Agents on page 764](#)

# Monitoring Agent test configuration examples

When adding internal or external tests for Monitoring Agents to the `sagent.conf` file, you can use the following examples as a guide.

## Internal Test Example

In this example, the test checks that `server1` is listening to traffic on port 80. In this example, the port information and the IP address of the server are required in the `command` definition. The test is performed every two minutes, and if there is a failure, the server is excluded from the Server Pool. If the test fails, the `/etc/init.d/port start` script is run. If the subsequent tests succeed within 10 minutes of the failure, recovery occurs and the server returns to the OK state:

```
test "port listening test"
interval 2:00
action exclude
host server1
script /etc/init.d/port start
recovery 10:00
command portlistening 80 192.168.1.1
```

## External Test Example

In this example, the external test script `test.sh` is run. There are three attempts to run the test before it is considered failed, and the tester waits for one second before the test is timed out. The test is run every 10 minutes, and if there is a failure an alert is generated:

```
test "multiple_services"
interval 10:00
action alert
command external 3 1000 /usr/lib/server/test.sh 192.168.1.1
```

## Internal tests for Monitoring Agents

You can add the internal tests for Monitoring Agents described in the following table to the test section of the `sagent.conf` file.


All internal tests available for the Server Pool monitoring are listed in the following table.



**Note:** Some of the internal tests might not work on virtualization platforms.

**Table 74: Internal tests**

Test	Description
<code>swapfree limit</code>	Checks the available swap space. If the current amount of free swap space drops below the limit (given in kilobytes), the test fails.
<code>processcount count</code>	Checks how many processes are currently running. If the number of processes exceeds the count, the test fails.

Test	Description
multi-ping retry timeout ip_address [ip_address [...]]	Sends ICMP Echo Request messages to the defined IP addresses and waits for the replies. The test fails if none of the IP addresses answers the ping query. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>retry specifies how many ICMP Echo Request packets are sent to each IP address.</li> <li>timeout defines how long (in milliseconds) the tester waits for the reply.</li> </ul>
filesystem partition free_space	Checks whether there is enough space left on a particular partition. The test fails if the amount of free_space (in kilobytes) is lower than the free space on the partition. You can also identify the partition by its path. <p>File system tests are quite taxing on the operating system. We recommend that you set an interval of at least 15 minutes when using this test.</p>
servicerunning service_name	Checks whether the specified service is running on the server. The test fails if the specified service or process is not running. On Windows platforms, the test checks whether the service called service_name is running. In UNIX environments, the test checks whether the process named service_name is running.
ip-listening ip_address	Checks whether the specified ip_address is listening on the server. The test fails if the host does not have the specified IP address.
portlistening port [ip_address [protocol]]	Checks whether the specified port is listening on the server. The test fails if the port is not in the listen state. You can optionally specify the ip_address at which to check for the port. The protocol can be TCP or UDP.
portanswer retry timeout query response port [ip_address]	Checks whether the TCP port answers a TCP query with the expected response. The test fails if the port does not answer, or the answer differs from the expected response. <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;">  <p><b>Note:</b> The Telnet protocol executes handshake procedures before beginning the connection. If you use portanswer to test a Telnet service, test the handshake procedure, not the Telnet prompt.</p> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>retry specifies how many attempts are made before the test is considered failed.</li> <li>timeout specifies how long the tester waits after sending a query to the port. The timeout is entered in milliseconds. If no response is received within the time period, the test fails.</li> <li>query specifies the TCP query to send. You must use quotation marks if the query contains spaces. If no query parameter is specified, nothing is sent to the port.</li> <li>response specifies the expected response to the TCP query. You must use quotation marks if the response contains spaces.</li> <li>port specifies the port to which the query is sent.</li> <li>ip_address is the IP address to which the query is sent.</li> </ul>
httpsanswer retry timeout URL file port [ip_address]	Checks whether the server answers an HTTP request for the specified URL with the expected file. The test fails if the server does not answer the HTTP request or if the reply does not contain the contents of the specified file. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>port specifies the port to which the request is sent.</li> <li>retry specifies how many attempts are made before the test is considered failed.</li> <li>timeout specifies how long the tester waits after sending a query to the port. The timeout is entered in milliseconds. If no response is received within the time period, the test fails.</li> <li>ip_address is the IP address to which the request is sent. If no address is specified, the tester sends the query to the localhost address by default.</li> </ul>

Test	Description
networkinterface-up interface	Checks that the specified interface is up.  The test fails if the specified network interface does not exist or is down. In Windows, this test behaves similarly to the networkinterface-linkstatus test described next.
networkinterface- linkstatus interface	Checks the link-layer status of the specified interface.  The test fails if the specified network interface is not linked.
file-exists path	Checks whether a file exists on the server.  The test fails if the file is not found at the specified path.

## Monitoring Agent internal test examples

When you add internal tests for Monitoring Agents to the sgagent.conf file, you can use the following examples as a guide.

Each test has an example configuration, which might differ from what you configure for your own environment.

### swapfree

This example checks that there is at least 1500 kilobytes of free space on server 2. The test runs at one-hour intervals and sends an alert if the test fails.

```
test "swapfree test"
interval 1:00:00
host server2
action alert
command swapfree 1500
```

### process\_count

This example checks that there are a maximum of 2500 processes running on server2. The test runs at 60-second intervals and sends an alert if the test fails:

```
test process_count
interval 60
host server2
action alert
command prosscscount 2500
```

### multi-ping

This example tests the connectivity of server2. The tester sends three ICMP Echo requests to the IP addresses 192.168.1.2 and 192.168.1.254, and waits 1000 milliseconds for a reply. The test runs at 30-second intervals. If the test fails, server2 is excluded from the Server Pool.

```
test "multi-ping test"
interval 30
host server2
action exclude
command multi-ping 3 1000 192.168.1.2 192.168.1.254
```

## filesystem

---

This example checks that there is at least 1000 kilobytes of free space in the /var/tmp partition on server2. The test runs at 15-second intervals and sends an alert if the test fails.

```
test "free space in filesystem"  
interval 15  
host server2  
action alert  
command filesystem /var/tmp 1000
```

## servicerunning

---

This example checks that the ntpd service is running. The test runs at 15-second intervals. If the test fails, the ntpd start script is run. If the test succeeds again within one minute of failing, recovery occurs and the server is returned to the OK state. Otherwise, the server is excluded from the Server Pool.

```
test "is ntp running -test"  
interval 15  
script /etc/init.d/ntpd start  
action exclude  
recovery 1:00  
command servicerunning ntpd
```

## ip-listening

---

This example checks that server2 is listening at the IP address 192.168.1.1. The test runs at 30-second intervals, and the server is excluded from the Server Pool if the test fails.

```
test ip-listening  
interval 30  
host server2  
action exclude  
command iplistening 192.168.1.1
```

## port-listening

---

This example checks that server2 and server3 are listening on port 80. The test runs at 30-second intervals, and the server is excluded from the Server Pool if the test fails.

```
test port-listening  
interval 30  
host server2 server3  
action exclude  
command portlistening 80
```

## httpanswer

---

This example checks that the server sends the contents of the file /web/file.html as a part of its response to a URL request for http://www.example.com/index.html on port 80. The request is attempted four times, and the

tester waits 3500 milliseconds for a response before retrying. The test runs at 30-second intervals, and the server is excluded from the Server Pool if the test fails.

```
test http_answering
interval 30
action exclude
command httpanswer 4 3500 /www.example.com/index.html /web/file.html 80
```

## networkinterface-up

This example checks that the eth0 interface is up. The test runs at 45-second intervals, and an alert is sent if the test fails.

```
test etc0_up
interval 45
action alert
command networkinterface-up eth0
```

## networkinterface-linkstatus

This example checks that the eth0 interface is linked. The test runs at 45-second intervals, and an alert is sent if the test fails.

```
test "link status on eth0"
interval 45
action alert
command networkinterface-linkstatus eth0
```

## file-exists

This example checks that the /important/index.html file exists. The test runs at 2-minute intervals, and an alert is sent if the test fails.

```
test "index -file exists"
interval 2:00
action alert
command file-exists /important/index.html
```

### Related reference

[Parameters in the sgagent.conf test section](#) on page 762


# Enable Server Pool Monitoring Agents


Enable Server Pool Monitoring Agents for one Server Pool element.



**Note:** Do not enable the Monitoring Agents before you configure them.



**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Network Elements > Traffic Handlers**.
- 3) Right-click the Server Pool element for which you want to enable the Monitoring Agents and select **Properties**.
- 4) Click the **Monitoring** tab, then select **Agent** as the **Method**.
- 5) In the **Frequency Check** field, define how often the status is checked.
- 6) (Optional) Enter the **Port** if you want to use a port other than the default port (7777).



**Note:** Remember to edit the corresponding IPv4 and IPv6 Access rules to allow connections to the new port.

- 7) Click **OK**.

#### Related concepts

[Configuring Server Pool Monitoring Agents](#) on page 757

## Entering Server Pool IP addresses for your DNS Server

When using static DNS entries (recommended), you must make sure that the IP addresses for your Server Pool are properly entered into your DNS server's records.

The Server Pool has one IP address per NetLink (Internet connection) in a Multi-Link configuration and a single IP address in a single-link configuration. If you decide to use dynamic DNS updates, you must configure the DNS server to accept the DDNS updates from the firewall. If the servers have multiple IP addresses, make sure the IP addresses are all defined on the DNS server to ensure operation as intended.

See the documentation of your DNS server software for instructions on how to enter the IP addresses.

# Create Access rules for inbound load balancing


You can apply Server Pool load balancing to the firewall configuration by adding the Server Pool to an IPv4 Access rule in the Firewall Policy.

When the rule matches traffic, the Server Pool uses NAT to change the destination IP address to the IP address of the server that the firewall selects for the connection. Reverse NAT (for the replies the server sends back to the client) is handled automatically. No separate NAT rule is required.

The IPv4 Access rules specify which traffic is directed to the Server Pool.

Note the following:

- The Server Pool does automatic NAT from the external addresses you configured in the Server Pool element to the addresses of the included servers. Make sure that there are no overlapping NAT rules in the policy. You can add a NAT rule that disables further NAT for matching connections (empty NAT cell), if necessary.
- If you want to balance traffic that arrives through a VPN using a Server Pool, NAT must be enabled in the properties of the VPN element (NAT is disabled by default for traffic that uses a VPN).
- You must create a separate rule for each Server Pool.
- If the same Server Pool provides more than one service, you must create a separate rule for each Service.
- You must enable Connection Tracking for the rule that directs traffic to the Server Pool. The Server Pool uses NAT, which does not work without Connection Tracking.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Open the Firewall Policy for editing and add an IPv4 Access rule.
- 2) Configure the rule to match the **Source**, **Destination**, and **Service** of the traffic you want to direct to the Server Pool.



**Note:** Each rule must contain only one **Service**.

- 3) Set the **Action** to **Allow** and enable **Connection Tracking** in the **Action Options**. The following example rules direct traffic from outside networks to the HTTP Server Pool and to the HTTPS Server Pool.

Source	Destination	Service	Action
NOT internal Expression	HTTP Server Pool	HTTP	Allow Connection tracking: normal
NOT internal Expression	HTTPS Server Pool	HTTPS	Allow Connection tracking: normal

- 4) If you are using static DNS entries, save and Install the Firewall Policy to transfer the changes.

## Related tasks

[Add rules allowing dynamic DNS updates](#) on page 773

# Configuring dynamic DNS updates for Server Pools

The Firewall can automatically update dynamic DNS (DDNS) entries for the Server Pool according to the available NetLinks.

The firewall engine removes the Server Pool IP addresses for NetLinks that are not available from the DNS entry, and adds the IP addresses back when the NetLink becomes available again. When the connecting client requests the Server Pool's IP address from the DNS server, the client receives a list of IP addresses that only contains IP addresses that work.

Firewalls support the Dynamic DNS protocol and can send DDNS updates to a specified DNS server. If a network connection specified by a NetLink element fails, the dynamic DNS updates notify the DNS, which then removes the corresponding IP address from its records.

To configure DDNS updates, you must have already defined the necessary NetLinks and the Server Pool element. To use DDNS updates, you must set up a DDNS-capable DNS server in your network. The DNS server must be configured as the primary DNS server for the domain.



**Note:** Using dynamic DNS updates is a security risk.

## Related concepts

[Improving dynamic DNS security](#) on page 772

## Dynamic DNS configuration overview

To minimize any security risk, follow these overall steps when configuring DDNS.

- 1) Implementing DDNS can be a security risk. Read about the security risks involved before proceeding with the configuration.
- 2) To enable monitoring of the status of your NetLinks, you must add probe IP addresses in the NetLinks' properties.
- 3) Define the External DNS Server element.
- 4) Edit the Server Pool element to include information about how the DNS server is updated.
- 5) Edit the active policy to allow DDNS updates.

## Related tasks

[Create NetLink elements for Multi-Link configuration](#) on page 707

# Improving dynamic DNS security

You can improve the security of dynamic DNS updates.



**CAUTION:** Although Firewalls support dynamic DNS updates, the protocol itself poses a security risk because there is no access control. If you must use dynamic DNS updates, do so only after careful research, planning, and testing.

There are actions you can take to improve the security of dynamic DNS updates:


- Always place the DNS servers behind the Firewall for protection from IP address spoofing.
- Use BIND or an equivalent DNS server that allows you to define which hosts are allowed to send dynamic updates.
- Consider using static DNS entries instead, as DDNS is not necessarily needed with inbound load balancing. In that case, the DNS entries are not removed automatically from the DNS server if an ISP fails, but you can sometimes solve these problems by other means. For example, some web browsers can automatically try other IP addresses if one address does not respond.


## Define External DNS Server elements

There are some cases in which you must define an External DNS Server element.

- (Firewalls only) For dynamic DNS (DDNS) updates with a Multi-Link configuration.
- (Firewalls only) If you want to use a DNS server for resolving malware signature mirrors.
- If you want to use a DNS server for resolving domain names and URL filtering categorization services on Firewalls, IPS engines, and Layer 2 Firewalls.

You can also optionally use External DNS Server elements to specify the DNS servers to which the firewall forwards DNS requests when you configure DNS relay.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Expand the **Network Elements** branch.
- 3) Right-click **Servers** and select **New > External DNS Server**.
- 4) Enter a unique **Name** and **IP address** for the server.
- 5) Enter a **Time to Live (TTL)** interval in seconds. It defines how long a DNS entry can be cached before querying the DNS server again.  
The default is 1 second.
- 6) Enter an **Update Interval** in seconds. It defines how often the DNS entries can be updated to the DNS server if the link status changes constantly.  
The default is 10 seconds.


- 7) (Optional) If the device has additional IP addresses, you can enter them as **Secondary IP Addresses** instead of creating additional elements. However, secondary IP addresses are only used in the **Source** and **Destination** cells in rules. They are ignored otherwise.
- 8) Click **OK**.

## Define the dynamic DNS update information

---

You must define the settings for the Dynamic DNS updates sent from your Firewall to the DNS server.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Network Elements > Traffic Handlers**.
- 3) Right-click the Server Pool and select **Properties**.
- 4) Select **Enable Dynamic DNS Updates**.
- 5) Select the **DNS Server** element to which the DDNS updates are sent.
- 6) Enter the **Fully Qualified Domain Name** for the Server Pool service.  
Example: www.example.com
- 7) Click **OK**.


## Add rules allowing dynamic DNS updates

---

You might need to add a rule that allows the Dynamic DNS updates from your Firewall to the specified DNS server.

In addition to creating a rule for inbound load balancing, you might also need to add a rule allowing the Dynamic DNS updates from your Firewall to the specified DNS server.

The Firewall Template allows this traffic by default. If your policy is based on an unmodified Firewall Template, there is no need to add a rule that allows Dynamic DNS updates.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the Firewall Policy and select **Edit**.  
The policy opens for editing.
- 2) Add the following Access rule:
  - **Source**: the address (toward the DNS server) of the Firewall or NDIs of all nodes in the Firewall Cluster

- **Destination:** the DNS server
- **Service:** the DNS Service Group
- **Action:** Allow

3) Save and install the policy.

#### Related tasks

[Create Access rules for inbound load balancing](#) on page 770

## Test Monitoring Agents on the command line

You can test the Server Pool Monitoring Agents on the command line.

The monitoring tool allows you to query the agents locally or remotely to check their status.

### Steps

- 1) On the command line, browse to the folder where the Monitoring Agent is installed.
- 2) Run one of the following commands:
  - **Linux:** `sgagentd -d test [file_name]`
  - **Windows:** `agent test [file_name]`

Where `file_name` is a configuration you want to test. Giving the file name is optional, but if you omit the file name, the test is run with the active configuration.

#### Related reference

[Server Pool Monitoring Agent commands](#) on page 1430

## Monitor Monitoring Agents on the command line

You can monitor the Server Pool Monitoring Agents on the command line.

### Steps

- 1) On the command line, browse to the folder where the Monitoring Agent monitoring tool is installed:
  - In Windows, the program is installed in the folder where the Monitoring Agent itself is installed.
  - On Linux and Solaris, the program is installed in `usr/bin`.

- 2) (Optional) Copy the `sgmon` program to a remote host that you want to use for testing the Monitoring Agents.
- 3) Run the command `sgmon -h` to see usage instructions, then run your monitoring commands according to the syntax displayed.  
The host argument is mandatory. To get the status locally on the server where the Monitoring Agent is installed, use `localhost` as the host argument.

## Examples of Server Pools

Using Server Pools, you can manage incoming traffic to your web servers.

### Example: Load balancing for web servers

To configure and monitor load balancing for multiple web servers, you can set up a Server Pool and install Monitoring Agents on the individual servers.

Company A has three web servers to handle the large volume of traffic its website receives. The administrators have already created Host elements to represent their web servers and created NAT rules to assign an external address to each web server.

Now the administrators want to distribute the load of the traffic between the servers. The administrators also want to monitor the status and the load of the servers, and receive an alert whenever one of the web servers in the Server Pool fails. The administrators decide to set up a Server Pool and install Monitoring Agents on the web servers. The administrators:

- 1) Delete the existing NAT rules that translate the IP address of each server so that the Server Pool can do automatic NAT without conflicts.
- 2) Create a Server Pool element and add the Host elements to it. Because they are not balancing incoming connections to the Server Pool between multiple Internet connections, the administrators select the Not Specified NetLink.
- 3) Install a Server Pool Monitoring Agent on each server in the Server Pool and configure the Monitoring Agents to measure the load average on the server. They also set up a test that checks each server's connectivity every 60 seconds and sends an alert if the test fails.
- 4) Enable the Server Pool Monitoring Agents in the Server Pool element.
- 5) Add the following IPv4 Access rules in the Firewall policy to allow HTTP connections from addresses that are not internal (Not Internal expression) to the Server Pool.

Source	Destination	Service	Action
Not Internal expression	Server Pool element	HTTP	Allow

# Example: Setting up Multi-Link and dynamic DNS updates

---

You set up dynamic DNS updates, so that Server Pool NetLink addresses, which correspond to the available Internet connections, are updated automatically on the DNS server.

The administrators at Company A have already configured a Server Pool (see the previous example). Now they want to make sure that web services remain available even when an Internet connection fails. They also want the Server Pool's NetLink addresses to be automatically updated on the DNS server based on the availability of the Internet connections.

The administrators have already configured Multi-Link routing with the necessary NetLink elements to represent each of their Internet connections. A DNS server has also already been set up in the network. The administrators decide to add the NetLinks to the Server Pool and set up Dynamic DNS (DDNS) updates.

The administrators do the following:

- 1) Configure the DNS server to accept DDNS updates from the firewall.
- 2) Edit the NetLink elements to add probe IP addresses for testing the NetLinks' status.
- 3) Edit the Server Pool element's properties and replace the default Not Specified NetLink with the NetLink elements that represent their Internet connections.
- 4) Define an External DNS Server element to represent the DDNS-capable server in the SMC.
- 5) Enable dynamic DNS updates and configure the dynamic DNS settings in the Server Pool element's properties.



# PART IX

## Traffic inspection policies

### Contents

- [Creating and managing policy elements](#) on page 779
- [Ethernet rules](#) on page 805
- [Access rules](#) on page 811
- [NAT rules](#) on page 831
- [Inspection Policy elements](#) on page 843
- [Editing policies](#) on page 851
- [Defining IP addresses](#) on page 893
- [Working with Service elements](#) on page 901
- [Defining Situation elements](#) on page 915
- [Using Network Application elements](#) on page 935
- [Defining User Response elements](#) on page 943
- [Quality of Service](#) on page 947
- [File filtering](#) on page 963
- [Integrating McAfee ePO and McAfee EIA with Forcepoint NGFW](#) on page 977
- [Filtering URLs](#) on page 985
- [Spam filtering](#) on page 997
- [Anti-malware scanning](#) on page 1001
- [Protocol Agents on engines](#) on page 1005
- [Sidewinder Proxies](#) on page 1017
- [Setting up TLS inspection](#) on page 1035
- [Using external content inspection servers](#) on page 1057
- [Blacklisting IP addresses](#) on page 1069

Policies are key elements that contain rules for allowing or blocking network traffic and inspecting the content of traffic.



# Creating and managing policy elements

### Contents

- [Getting started with policies](#) on page 779
- [Create template policies or policies](#) on page 788
- [How sub-policies work](#) on page 790
- [Install policies](#) on page 792
- [Using policy elements and rules](#) on page 798
- [Deleting policies templates or sub-policies](#) on page 800
- [Firewall Policy elements examples](#) on page 801
- [IPS Policy example](#) on page 803

Policy elements are containers for the rules that determine how NGFW Engines, Master NGFW Engines, and Virtual NGFW Engines examine traffic. The policy elements for the engines include Template Policies, Policies, and Sub-Policies.

## Getting started with policies

Policies organize traffic processing rules hierarchically, to make administration easier and to optimize traffic inspection performance.

### What policy elements do

- Firewall, Layer 2 Firewall, and IPS Policies contain the rules according to which the NGFW Engines allow or block traffic.
- The same policy can be shared by several NGFW Engines that have the same role, several Master NGFW Engines, and several Virtual NGFW Engines that have the same role.
- Inspection Policies contain the rules according to which the NGFW Engines inspect traffic. The same Inspection Policy can be shared by several Firewall Policies, IPS Policies, and Layer 2 Firewall Policies.
- Each policy must always be based on a Template Policy. Template Policies contain rules that are inherited into any template or policy below it in the policy hierarchy.
- You can also insert Sub-Policies in your policies. A Sub-Policy is a set of IPv4 or IPv6 Access rules that can be matched conditionally to a restricted part of the traffic. Using Sub-Policies can improve processing performance. Sub-Policies can also enforce administrative boundaries.
- Policies can share Policy Templates and Sub-Policies. In shared rules, Alias elements can represent IP addresses that depend on the environment, so that the actual values are defined separately for each component.

## What do I need to know before I begin?

- Master NGFW Engines always use Firewall Policies, regardless of the role of the Virtual NGFW Engines they host.
- Virtual Firewalls use Firewall Policies.
- Virtual IPS engines use IPS Policies.
- Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls use Layer 2 Firewall Policies.

## Default policy elements

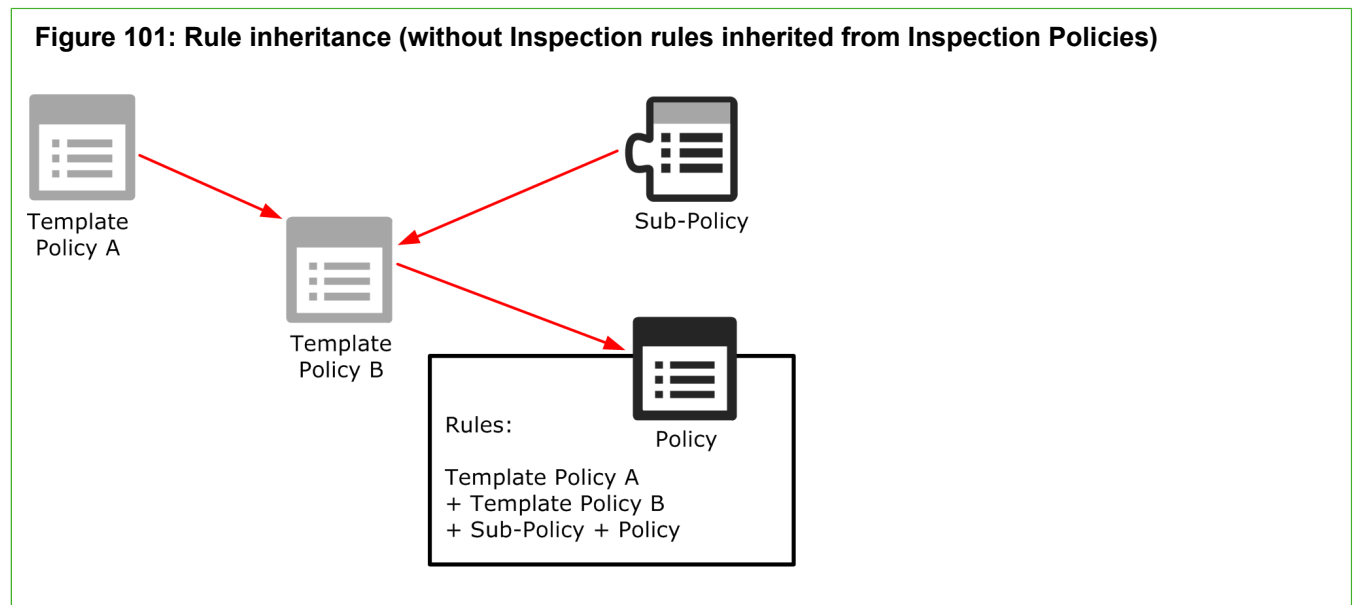
Predefined Policies, Template Policies, and Inspection Policies provide an easy starting point for determining what kinds of rules your system needs.

Four kinds of policy elements are used in the policy configuration for NGFW Engines, Master NGFW Engines, and Virtual NGFW Engines:

- A Template Policy is a policy that can be used as the basis for Policy or other Template Policy elements. The rules in the Template Policy are copied as *inherited rules* into the Policies and Template Policies that are based on the Template Policy. You can edit the inherited rules only by editing the original Template Policy from which the rules were inherited.
- An Inspection Policy element is a set of Inspection rules that are referenced from the **Inspection** tab of Policy and Template Policy elements. You can use the same Inspection Policy in multiple Policy and Template Policy elements.
- A Sub-Policy element is a section of IPv4 Access rules that you can insert into Policies and Template Policies. The rules in the sub-policy are conditional rules that allow you to define matching criteria that determines whether the sub-policy applies to a connection. You can edit the rules by editing the sub-policy where the rules belong.
- A Policy element gathers together all rules from the different policy elements. Policies include the rules added directly to the Firewall, IPS, or Layer 2 Firewall Policy, the rules from the higher-level Template Policy, and possibly rules from one or more sub-policies. For example, an IPS Policy is always based on an IPS Template Policy element, and a Layer 2 Firewall Policy is always based on a Layer 2 Firewall Template Policy element.

The hierarchy of how rules are inherited between the main policy elements is shown in the following illustration.

**Figure 101: Rule inheritance (without Inspection rules inherited from Inspection Policies)**



In this illustration, Template Policy A is the basis for Template Policy B, so Template Policy B contains all rules defined in Template Policy A.

Template Policy B also contains all rules in a Sub-Policy, as well as rules defined directly in Template Policy B.

The example Policy inherits the following rules:

- All rules in Template Policy A.
- All rules in Template Policy B.
- All rules in the Sub-Policy.

In addition to the inherited rules, the example policy also contains any rules that the administrators add to it directly. In the policy, the administrators can only edit the rules that were added directly to the policy. To change rules inherited from Template Policy A, Template Policy B, or the Sub-Policy, they must edit the policy in which the rules were originally defined.

A hierarchy such as the one outlined here is useful to:

- Reduce the need for creating the same or similar rule in several policies. For example, any rule added to Template Policy A is also added to any policy created based on that template. The next time the policies based on Template Policy A are installed on the engines, the new rule is used on all those engines. There is no need to edit each individual policy separately.
- Restrict the editing rights of administrators. For example, administrators who are granted rights to only policies cannot edit the rules defined in the Template Policies on which the policies are based. Their actions have no effect on rules that are placed above the row where the Template Policy allows them to insert new rules. In the hierarchy shown in the illustration, the insert points for the Policy are defined in Template Policy B. Template B can be edited only in the place where there is an insert point in Template Policy A.
- Reduce the likelihood of mistakes affecting important communications. Template Policies can be reserved for defining only the rules for essential communications, so that most daily editing is done in the lower-level policies. If the Template Policy is properly designed, rules in the lower-level policy cannot override the rules in the Template Policy. Good organization also makes it easier to read policies, and reduces the risk of errors.
- Improve processing performance. Using sub-policies, whole blocks of rules can be skipped during processing when a connection does not match the rule that directs the traffic processing to the sub-policy. Using sub-policies reduces the processor load, which can lead to better throughput if the processor load is constantly high.

The default policy elements are introduced into the SMC when you import and activate a recent dynamic update package (for example, during the installation). The elements might change when you install newer update packages. None of the default policy elements can be changed. However, you can make copies of the default policies if you have to create a changed version.

**Table 75: Default policy elements for NGFW Engines**

Element type	Default name	Description
Firewall Template Policy	Firewall Template	A Template Policy that contains the predefined Access rules necessary for the firewall to communicate with the SMC and some external components.  The Firewall Template Policy uses Inspection rules from the No Inspection Policy. The rules in the No Inspection Policy do not enforce inspection.
	Firewall Inspection Template	Firewall Template Policy that uses Inspection rules from the High-Security Inspection Template.
Firewall Sub-policy	DHCP Relay	A Sub-Policy containing rules that allow the firewall to relay DHCP requests from a host in one internal network to a DHCP server in a different network, as well as DHCP requests from VPN clients to an internal DHCP server.

Element type	Default name	Description
IPS Template Policy	High-Security IPS Template	<p>IPS Template Policy that uses Inspection rules from the High-Security Inspection Template.</p> <p>A Template Policy containing the predefined Access rules necessary for the IPS engine to communicate with the SMC and some external components.</p> <p>The High-Security IPS Template Policy provides an easy starting point for determining what kinds of rules your system needs.</p>
	Medium-Security IPS Template	IPS Template Policy that uses Inspection rules from the Medium-Security Inspection Policy.
IPS Policy	Customized High-Security Inspection IPS Policy	Example of a customized IPS Policy that uses Inspection rules from the Customized High-Security Inspection Template. Used in testing IPS at ICSA Labs and NSS Labs.
	Default IPS Policy	<p>Basic IPS Policy that uses Inspection rules from the High-Security Inspection Template. Can be used as a starting point for creating a customized IPS Policy.</p> <p>The Default IPS Policy does not add any rules to the rules defined in the IPS Template. It allows you to install the predefined rules in the IPS Template on the IPS engine right after installation. (Template Policies cannot be installed on the engines.)</p>
Layer 2 Firewall Template Policy	Layer 2 Firewall Template	<p>A Template Policy that contains the predefined Access rules necessary for the Layer 2 Firewall to communicate with the SMC and some external components.</p> <p>The Layer 2 Firewall Template uses Inspection rules from the No Inspection Policy. The rules in the No Inspection Policy do not enforce inspection.</p>
	Layer 2 Firewall Inspection Template	<p>A Template Policy that is based on the Layer 2 Firewall Template.</p> <p>The Layer 2 Firewall Inspection Template uses Inspection rules from the High-Security Inspection Template. The Layer 2 Firewall Inspection Template enables deep inspection for all traffic.</p>
Inspection Policy	No Inspection Policy	Suitable for Firewall deployments, in which only packet filtering is needed. Disables deep packet inspection.
	Medium-Security Inspection Template	For Firewalls, Layer 2 Firewalls, inline IPS deployments in asymmetrically routed networks, and IPS deployments in IDS mode. Terminates reliably identified attacks and logs Situations that have some degree of inaccuracy. Low risk of false positives.
	High-Security Inspection Template	For Firewall, Layer 2 Firewall, and inline IPS use. Extended inspection coverage and evasion protection. Not for asymmetrically routed networks. Terminates reliably identified attacks, and Situations that have some inaccuracy. Moderate false positive risk.
	Customized High-Security Inspection Policy	This policy is an example of a highly customized Inspection Policy for network environments in which unconditional inspection coverage and evasion protection are required. The risk of false positives is high in production use.

You can add new Template Policies without basing them on any existing Template Policy.

However, in most cases we recommend using the IPS Template as the starting point for your customized IPS Template Policies and IPS Policies. We recommend using the Layer 2 Firewall Template as the starting point for your customized Layer 2 Firewall Template Policies and Layer 2 Firewall Policies.

Situations are the central elements in the Inspection rules of your Inspection Policies. The Situation elements detect exploit attempts against known vulnerabilities and other commonly known security threats. Dynamic updates include new and updated Situations. New patterns in traffic might begin to match when a new dynamic update is activated and you refresh the Inspection Policy.

In most environments, we recommend using the High-Security Inspection Policy as the starting point for Inspection Policies. The High-Security Inspection Policy provides extended inspection coverage. It also protects the network against evasions, which are attempts to disguise attacks to avoid detection and blocking by network security systems. The only difference between the rules in the High-Security Inspection Policy and the Medium-Security Inspection Policy is in the way the Inspection rules handle Situations that are categorized as Suspected Attacks. The High-Security Inspection Policy terminates Suspected Attacks with an alert, whereas the Medium-Security Inspection Policy only logs Suspected Attacks.

Situations that belong to the Suspected Attacks category contain basic fingerprints. Suspected Attacks also contain traffic patterns that might indicate malicious activities but are not any verified attack patterns. Suspected Attacks can detect zero-day attacks (attacks that are not yet publicly known), but can sometimes block some legitimate traffic if the traffic pattern resembles malicious activities.

## Policy hierarchies

---

The policy structure is a hierarchy based on templates.

The structure allows you to:

- Reuse rules without duplicating them.
- Assign and enforce editing rights of different parts of a single policy to different administrators.
- Reduce the resource consumption of the engines.
- Make policies easier to read.

The template and policy hierarchy is flattened when the Policy is transferred to the engines. The policy looks the same to the engines regardless of how it is organized on the Management Server (as long as the rules are in the same order). You can also create sections of conditional IPv4 Access rules that you can insert into the other policy elements. The engine can skip the processing of a conditional block of rules based on whether certain common matching criteria is found in the packet being examined.

If your environment is simple and you do not need the benefits outlined here, you can create a simple policy hierarchy. You can, for example, start with one Firewall Policy built on the provided Firewall Template. The same Firewall Policy can be used on more than one engine. Likewise, you can use the same IPS Policy on any number of IPS engines and Virtual IPS engines, and the same Layer 2 Firewall Policy on any number of Layer 2 Firewalls and Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls.

# How the engines examine traffic

---

Firewall engines only pass traffic allowed in the Firewall Policy. IPS and Layer 2 Firewall engines assign traffic to a protocol and then perform deep inspection.

## Packet validity checks

---

Forcepoint NGFW in all roles checks the validity of packets to protect the engine from processing invalid packets, which can be harmful to the Forcepoint NGFW. Depending on the action in the Inspection Policy, Forcepoint NGFW in the IPS and Layer 2 Firewall roles can either terminate invalid packets or bypass the traffic without processing the invalid packets. For self-protection reasons, Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role always terminates invalid packets without establishing a connection.

Configuring logging options for the Invalid Packet Situation Type in the Inspection Policy enables logging for all Forcepoint NGFW roles. Detailed information is available in the Firewall logs when invalid packets are detected and terminated.



**Note:** Invalid Packet Situations are always log rate limited.

## Firewalls

---

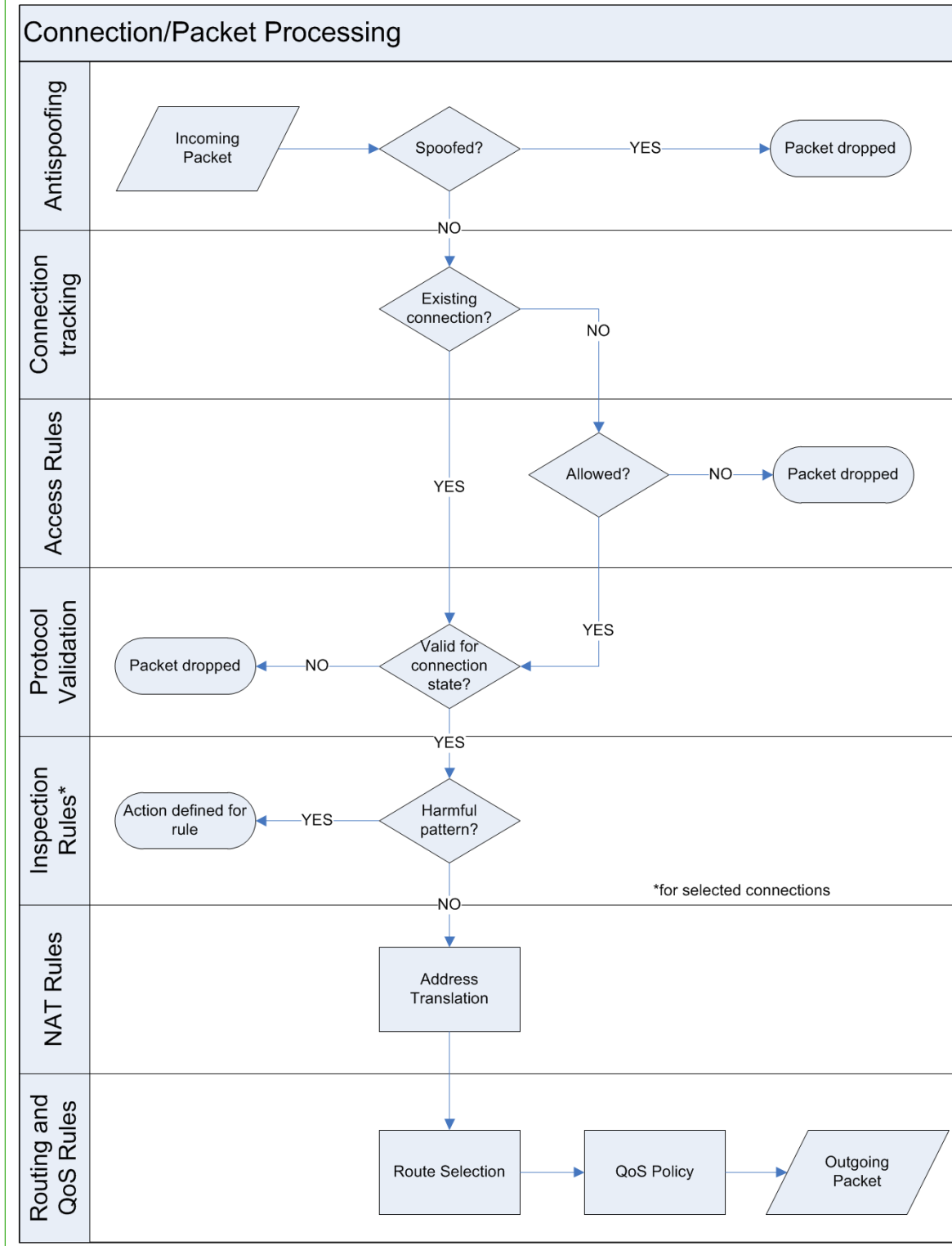
A Firewall, Master NGFW Engine, or Virtual Firewall passes through only traffic that is explicitly allowed in the Firewall Policy. All other traffic is discarded. All connections are handled in the same way, even connections that the engine itself opens, and the management connections that the engine is intended to receive.

On Firewall Clusters and clustered Master NGFW Engines, the load-balancing filter first determines which node in the cluster actually processes the received packet. The processing then begins on the selected node.

The engine checks a new connection against the policy, rule by rule. The header on each packet arriving on an interface is examined for the source and destination IP address, and protocol-related information, such as the port. The authentication status of the user attempting a connection and the current date and time can also be included as parameters in the examination process.



**Figure 102: Connection/packet handling in a Firewall engine**



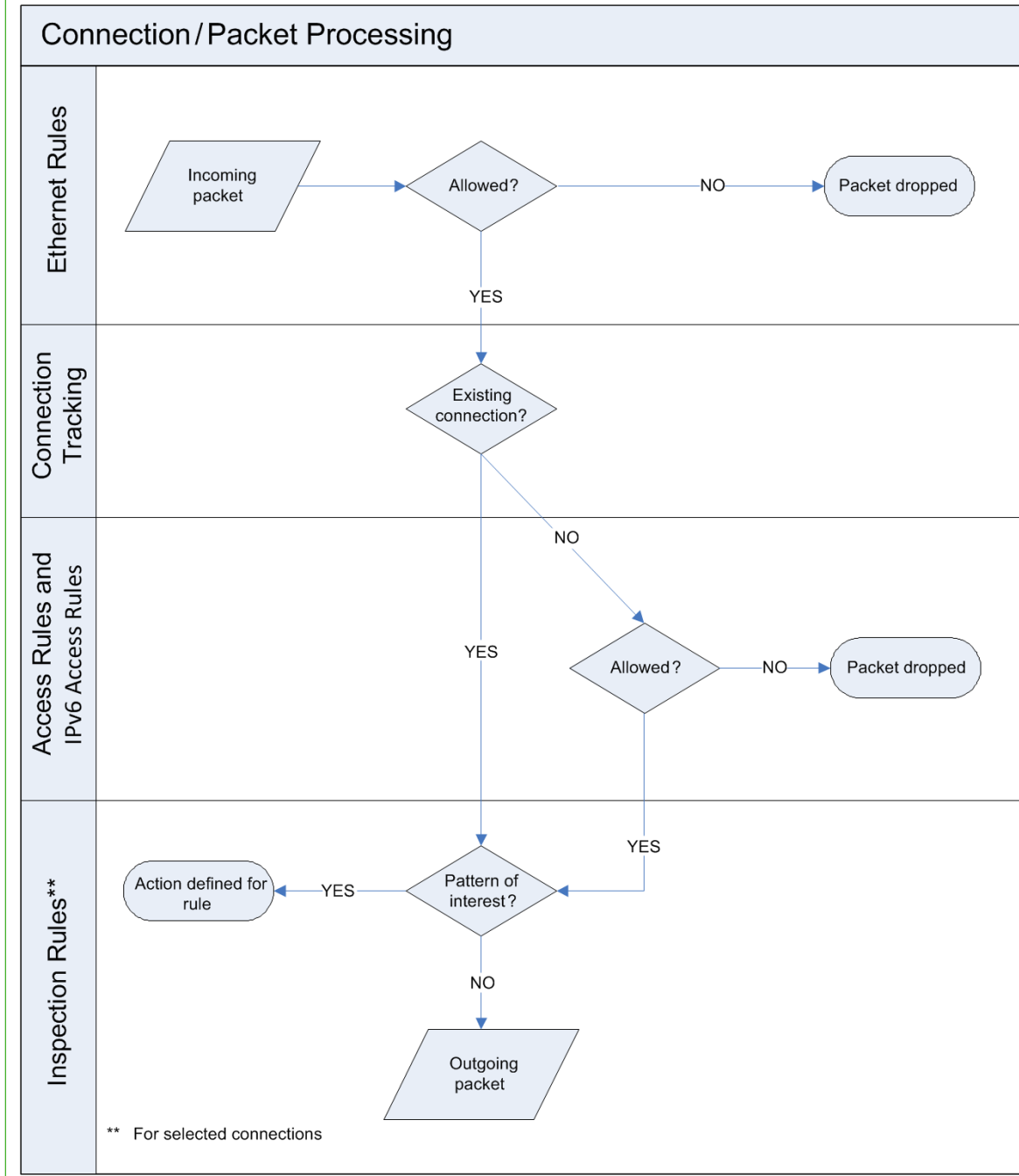
- 1) Antispoofing — The engine checks that the traffic is coming in through the correct interface as defined in the **Routing** and **Antispoofing** trees.
- 2) Connection tracking — The engine checks the current connection tracking information to see if the packet is part of an established connection (for example, a reply packet to a request that has been allowed).

- 3) Access rules — If the packet is not part of an existing connection, the packet is compared with the Access rules in the installed Firewall Policy. The processing continues until the packet matches a rule that tells the engine to allow or stop the packet.  
  
If there is no rule match anywhere else in the policy, the packet is discarded when the engine reaches the end of the Firewall Policy.
- 4) Protocol validation — If the packet is allowed as an existing connection or in an Access rule, the engine checks that the packet is valid for the state of the connection. If not, the packet is dropped.  
  
For example, a TCP connection must always begin with a SYN packet (as defined in the protocol standards). The engine checks that the first packet of a new connection is a valid SYN packet.
- 5) Inspection rules — The engine applies Inspection rules to connections that are selected for deep packet inspection in the Access rules.
  - Inspection applies to all packets in a connection, so the Inspection rules are applied even if the packet is a part of an existing connection.
  - The Inspection rules are used to look for harmful patterns hiding in the legitimate-looking connections (that is, payload of packets that are a part of allowed connections).
- 6) NAT rules — Network Address Translation (NAT) rules are applied to IPv4 and IPv6 connections. The source and destination addresses are translated according to the first matching NAT rule (or not done at all, if a NAT rule so defines). If none of the NAT rules match, the packet continues with the original addresses.
- 7) Routing and QoS rules — A routing decision is made (using the translated address). If the destination zone of the packet is changed by a NAT operation, the original packet is checked against the Access rules again using updated destination zone information. If the packet is still allowed by an Access rule, the packet is let through the engine according to its priority and any bandwidth limits or guarantees that might have been defined. If the packet no longer matches an Access rule, the packet is dropped.

## IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls

---

An IPS or Layer 2 Firewall engine matches traffic to different protocols and then checks the definitions for known vulnerabilities and other threats for that protocol. The protocol is assigned first, before the deep inspection. An engine in inline mode can also filter traffic based on protocols, IP addresses, and the interface that received the traffic without analyzing the traffic for threat patterns. IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls can be installed either in inline mode or in capture mode.

**Figure 103: Connection/packet handling in an inline IPS or Layer 2 Firewall engine**

- 1) Ethernet rules — The engine checks Ethernet frames against the Ethernet rules in the policy. The packet is processed until it matches an Ethernet rule that tells whether to allow or to discard the packet.
- 2) Connection tracking — The engine checks the current connection tracking information to see if the packet is part of an established connection (for example, a reply packet to a request that has been allowed).
- 3) Access rules and IPv6 Access rules — If the packet is not part of an existing connection, the packet is matched to IPv4 or IPv6 Access rules according to the IP protocol used.

- If the traffic is tunneled using IP-in-IP or Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE), the traffic can be checked against the IPv4 or IPv6 Access rules several times. The traffic is rematched according to the number and type of layers in the tunnel and the settings of the engine.
  - The processing of the packet continues until the packet matches a rule that tells the engine to allow or discard the packet. If the packet does not match any Access rule, the final action depends on the engine type. An IPS engine allows the packet to pass through, while a Layer 2 Firewall drops the packet.
- 4) Inspection rules — The engine matches connections that are selected for deep packet inspection in the IPv4 or IPv6 Access rules against the Inspection rules.
- The Inspection rules are used to look for patterns of interest in allowed connections. The patterns can indicate potential attacks, exploits, or other possible threats. They can also be any other patterns of interest, such as multiple logon attempts, use of peer-to-peer or instant messaging software, or protocol violations in the traffic.
  - If a pattern in traffic matches a pattern defined in a rule, the actions defined in the rule are taken.

## Policy element configuration overview

After you decide on a policy hierarchy, you can populate the policy elements with rules for handling the traffic. Policy elements are only containers for the actual traffic handling rules. When you have decided on a policy hierarchy, you can populate the policy elements with the rules for handling the traffic.

- 1) (Optional) Create a custom template and add the rules and insert points.
- 2) Create a custom policy and add the rules.
- 3) (Optional) Create sub-policies and add the IPv4 Access rules.

### Related concepts

[How sub-policies work](#) on page 790

### Related tasks

[Create template policies or policies](#) on page 788

## Create template policies or policies

Template Policy elements are used as a basis for Policies and other Template Policies.

Every Policy and Template Policy that you create is based on a Template Policy. You can base several policies on the same Template Policy. The Template Policy or a customized copy of the Template Policy is always at the highest level of the policy hierarchy. It is not mandatory to create any custom Template Policies if you feel that it is not necessary in your environment.

When editing policies, the main difference between Policies and Template Policies are the special rows called insert points. Insert points are shown in both Template Policies and in Policies, but you can add them only to Template Policies. The insert points added to Template Policies mark where new rules can be added to policies that are based on the templates. If you create a Template Policy and do not base the Template Policy on any

predefined Template Policy, you must add insert points separately for Access rules, NAT rules, and Ethernet rules.

**Figure 104: Insert point in a Template Policy and the inheriting (Template) Policy**

1	System Communications	± ANY	± ANY	◆ DNS (UDP)
Automatic Rules Insert Point				
Insert Point only for rules related to system communications				
4	System Commu	System Communications	± ANY	± ANY ◆ DNS (UDP)
5	ANY			
Automatic Rules Insert Point				
Insert Point only for rules related to system communications - add rules here				
4	System Communications	± ANY	± ANY	◆ ANY
5	ANY	± D Class ± E Class ☐ Limited Broadcast ☁ Loopback network	± ANY	◆ ANY

This illustration shows what the same insert point looks like in a Template Policy and in the inheriting policy elements. The color of the insert point indicates whether the insert point has been added in the current Template Policy for inheritance to lower levels (orange) or whether it has been inherited from the higher-level Template Policy (green). Only the orange insert points are inherited to lower-level policy elements. You must add at least one new insert point at each Template Policy level to make the lower-level policies editable. When you add the first new rule to the green insert point, the rule replaces the insert point. Any number of rules can then be added directly above and below that first rule. The engine reads rules in order from the top down. The rules above the insert point in the higher-level Template Policy cannot be canceled by anything a lower-level policy adds into the insert point.

Rules defined in the Template Policy itself cannot be edited in lower-level policies that use the Template Policy. Such inherited rules are shown only on your request and they are displayed with a gray background. Only the actual rules are inherited from a higher-level Template Policy into the lower-level policies and Template Policies. The rights to edit policies and Template Policies are defined separately.

A Firewall Policy, IPS Policy, or a Layer 2 Firewall Policy is the element that gathers all rules from the different policy elements:

- Rules inherited from the Template Policy that is used as the basis of the policy
- Rules from one or more Sub-Policies added to the policy
- Rules added directly to the policy
- Rules from the Inspection Policy that is referenced from the Inspection tab in the policy

The Firewall Policy is the only policy element that you can transfer to a Firewall, Master NGFW Engine, or Virtual Firewall. The Firewall Policy is always based on a Template Policy, either a predefined Template Policy or a Template Policy that you have created.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.

- 2) Right-click **Policies**.
- 3) Select **New** and the type of policy you want to create.
  - To create a policy for use on Master NGFW Engines or Virtual Firewalls, select **New > Firewall Policy**.
  - To create a policy for use on Virtual IPS engines, select **New > IPS Policy**.
  - To create a policy for use on Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls, select **New > Layer 2 Firewall Policy**.
- 4) In the properties dialog that opens, enter a **Name** for the element.
- 5) Select the **Template** you want to base this template or policy on.
- 6) (Optional) Switch to the **Permissions** tab and grant rights for the template or policy.
  - a) To add a permission, click **Add Permission**.  
A new row appears on the administrator list.
  - b) Click the **Administrator** cell and select the Administrator.
  - c) Double-click the **Administrator Role** cell to select the correct role.
- 7) Click **OK**.

The new Template Policy or Policy opens in the **Policy Editing** view.

If you changed administrator permissions for the policy, the changes are applied immediately. The permissions are also automatically updated in the properties of the administrator's account.

## How sub-policies work

Sub-Policies are sections of Access rules that you can insert in the IPv4 or IPv6 Access rules of Policies, Template Policies, or other Sub-Policies.



**Note:** For IPS and Layer 2 Firewall Policies, you can only use IPv4 access rules. Sub-Policies are useful in the policies of inline IPS or Layer 2 Firewall engines that are used extensively for IPv4 packet filtering.

Sub-Policies can also be used to organize the policies and to delegate administrator rights. You can restrict specific administrators to edit, add, or delete rules within a limited section of IPv4 or IPv6 Access rules, which is more restrictive than giving access to a template or policy.

A Sub-Policy is inserted into some other policy element by adding a Jump rule to the policy element. The Jump rule directs connections that match the Jump rule for matching against the rules in the Sub-Policy.

**Figure 105: A collapsed Sub-Policy**

6.7	± ANY	± ANY	⬢ ANY	↪ Jump My Sub-Policy
6.8	± ANY	🌐 www.example.com	⬢ HTTP	✅ Allow

**Figure 106: An expanded Sub-Policy**

6.7	± ANY	± ANY	◇ ANY	↗ Jump My Sub-Policy
1	🌐 External	🏠 Internal	🔑 FTP 🔑 HTTP	✅ Allow
2	± ANY	± ANY	◇ ANY	❌ Discard
6.8	± ANY	🌐 www.example.com	🔑 HTTP	✅ Allow

The illustrations show the same Jump rule in a policy in the collapsed and the expanded state. The rules of the Sub-Policy are shown on a gray background, because they can be edited only within the Sub-Policy itself, not in the Firewall Policy that uses the rules.

You could use a Sub-Policy, for example, for examining traffic destined to a group of servers located in one particular network. The Jump rule could then use the destination network as a criteria for directing connections for matching against the Sub-Policy. Any connection that was destined to some other network would not get matched against any of the rules in the Firewall Sub-Policy. This makes the matching process faster, because the engine can skip a whole Sub-Policy by comparing a connection to just one simple rule for any non-matching connection. If the Sub-Policy rules were inserted directly into the main Firewall Policy, the engine would have to compare all connections to all those rules individually (since that is the only way to find out whether the connection matches the rules). The performance benefit gained depends on the number and complexity of the rules that can be placed in a Sub-Policy. It also depends on how heavy the engine load is to begin with.

The main goal of Sub-Policies is to match only part of the traffic against the rules in the Sub-Policy and allow other traffic to bypass the Sub-Policy. Rules in a Sub-Policy should have at least some identical matching criteria (source, destination, service, source VPN, or user authentication details). These criteria can be used to select only a portion of the traffic for the sub-policy checks.

There are two ways to create Sub-Policies: you can either create a Sub-Policy and add Access Rules to it manually or select Access rules in a policy and convert them into a Sub-Policy.

## Create empty sub-policies

Before you can edit a sub-policy, you must create an empty sub-policy.

**Steps** 📌 For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click the **Policies** branch and select the kind of sub-policy to create.
  - For firewalls, Master NGFW Engines, or Virtual Firewalls, select **New > Firewall Sub-Policy**.
  - For IPS Engines or Virtual IPS engines, select **New > IPS Sub-Policy**.
  - For Layer 2 Firewalls or Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls, select **New > Layer 2 Firewall Sub-Policy**.
- 3) Enter a unique **Name** for the element.
- 4) (Optional) Click the **Permissions** tab and adjust the Access Control Lists at the top part of the dialog box to include the Sub-Policy on one or more custom Access Control Lists.
- 5) Click **OK**.  
The new Sub-Policy opens in the **Policy Editing** view.

# Create sub-policies from existing Access rules

You can convert IPv4 and IPv6 Access rules in an existing policy into a Sub-Policy.

The IPv4 and IPv6 Access rules do not have to be consecutive. However, if you add several references to a Sub-Policy in the same policy, all Sub-Policy rules are checked at each reference point, even if those rules were already checked at a previous reference point. This can be avoided, for example, by adding a rule at the end of the Sub-Policy that stops all connections that did not match the other rules.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the policy or template and select **Edit Firewall Policy**, **Edit IPS Policy**, or **Edit Layer 2 Firewall Policy**.
- 2) Switch to the **IPv4 Access** or **IPv6 Access** tab.
- 3) Select the Access rules that you want to add to the Sub-Policy.
- 4) Right-click one of the selected rules and select **Create Sub-Policy**.
- 5) Enter a **Name** for the Sub-Policy and click **OK**.  
The Sub-Policy element is created, a new Jump rule that references the Sub-Policy is automatically added to the policy, and the selected rules are moved to the Sub-Policy.
- 6) Edit the Jump rule cells to be as specific as possible, so that traffic is not unnecessarily matched to the sub-policy.  
If necessary, you can add more references to the Sub-Policy, for example, by copy-pasting the Jump rule.
- 7) (Optional) Add the Sub-Policy to a custom Access Control List:
  - a) Right-click the **Action** cell in the Jump rule and select **Properties**.  
The **Properties** dialog box for the Sub-Policy opens.
  - b) Switch to the **Permissions** tab and adjust the Access Control Lists at the top part of the dialog box.
  - c) Click **OK**.

## Install policies

After creating or editing a policy, you must install or refresh the policy on the engine.

After creating or editing a Firewall Policy, you must transfer the changes to the engine using the Management Client. You can install the policy, which transfers the policy you select. Alternatively, you can refresh the policy, which transfers the most recent version of the policy that the engine already uses. You can install the same Firewall Policy on several engines.

When you install a changed or a new Firewall Policy, any existing connections that are not allowed by the new Firewall Policy are dropped. The existing connections allowed by the new Firewall Policy are not affected; they continue uninterrupted. These include related connections and authenticated connections on the engines.



Policy installation transfers any new engine configuration information in addition to the Firewall Policy. Whenever you update the engine's configuration, you must reload the Firewall Policy on the engine so that the changes take effect. These changes include, for example, changes in the routing configuration, the VPN configuration, and the properties of the Firewall, Master NGFW Engine, or Virtual Firewall element itself. You must reload the policy even if the changes are not directly related to the rules in the Firewall Policy.

If the Firewall Policy installation fails, the system automatically rolls back to the previously installed configuration. By default, a rollback also occurs if the system detects that the new Firewall Policy or related configuration (such as routing configuration) does not allow the Management Server to connect to the engines. This safety feature prevents an administrator from inadvertently installing a configuration that would cause the critical management connections to fail.


After creating or editing an IPS Policy or Layer 2 Firewall Policy, you must transfer the changes to the engines using the Management Client.


The policy transfer includes more information than just the rules in the IPS Policy or Layer 2 Firewall Policy. Whenever you update the engine's configuration, you must refresh the IPS Policy or the Layer 2 Firewall Policy for the changes to take effect. After you have edited Physical Interfaces or VLAN Interfaces in the Master NGFW Engine properties, you must refresh the policy on the Master NGFW Engine to transfer changes. After editing Physical Interfaces or VLAN Interfaces in the Virtual IPS or Virtual Layer 2 Firewall engine properties, you must refresh the policy on the Virtual IPS or Virtual Layer 2 Firewall engine to transfer the changes.

If the installation of a policy fails for some reason, the system automatically rolls back to the previously installed configuration.

After the IPS or Layer 2 Firewall engine makes initial contact with the Management Server, only the interface used for the control connection with the Management Server is configured. You must install an IPS or Layer 2 Firewall Policy using the Management Client to transfer the complete interface configuration to the engine.

Changes to an engine's rules and most other configurations are activated in a policy installation. Only Policy elements can be installed; Template Policy and Sub-Policy rules are installed as part of the main Policy. A Policy Snapshot is automatically created each time you install or refresh a policy. You can install a policy through the Policy element or through the engine element. The following procedure explains the first method.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Expand the **Policies** branch and select the policy type.
- 3) Right-click the policy you want to install and select **Install Policy**.
- 4) Select the engines on which you want to install the same policy and click **Add**. You can install the same policy on several engines at the same time.  
The SMC tracks the policies installed on engines and pre-fills the **Target** when possible.
- 5) (Optional) Leave **Keep Previous Configuration Definitions** selected to allow established connections to continue using existing configurations (such as NAT rules) until they finish.
  - If the previous configurations are erased, connections that use them are cut.
  - All previously established connections that the newly installed policy does not allow are always dropped regardless of this setting.

- 6) (Optional) Leave **Validate Policy before Upload** selected to validate the rules in the policy.  
See *Validate rules automatically*.



**Note:** You cannot validate the policy if you are installing the policy on several engines.

- 7) (Optional) Add an **Upload Comment**.  
The comment provides history information to administrators and Web Portal users when viewing Policy Snapshots.
- 8) Click **OK** to validate and install the policy.  
The progress is displayed on a new tab.

### Upload Policy: Dubai Master Policy

Resources

Resource	Info	Progress
Dubai Master FW	Applying configuration o...	100%
Dubai Master IPS	Applying configuration o...	98%
Dubai Virtual FW 2	Building file filtering conf...	25%
Dubai Virtual FW 3	Building file filtering conf...	25%
Dubai Virtual FW 4	Building file filtering conf...	25%
Dubai Virtual FW 5	Building file filtering conf...	25%

Building anti-spoofing configuration...  
 Building domain name server confi...  
 Building SSL VPN configuration...  
 Building anti-virus configuration...  
 Building dynamic routing configur...  
 Building server pools configurator...  
 Building log rate configuration...  
 Building file filtering configuration...  
 Upload in progress...  
 Configuration **successfully** upload  
**FW node 1.**  
 Configuration **successfully** upload  
**FW node 2.**  
 Upload **completed.**  
 Apply in progress...  
 Applying configuration on **Dubai M**  
 Applying configuration on **Dubai M**

49%

Issues (1)

...	Description	Element	Same Rule	Validation Type
	Anti-Malware is enabled in rule @260036.0, but no Anti-Malware Add-Ons are enabled in the properties of Master Engine <b>Dubai Master</b>	@260036.0		General Checks

- 9) If validation issues are found, read the **Issues** tab in the **Info** pane and take action:
- Double-click an issue to view the corresponding configuration, or click **Continue**.
  - For more information, including steps to disable warnings, see *Viewing policy validation issues*.
- 10) Monitor the installation and make sure that it is successful. With multiple engines, the progress is indicated through colored icons on the left (click the icon to view the details):
- Yellow: Ongoing installation
  - Blue: Waiting for the installations on other components to finish
  - Red: Failure
  - Green: Success

**Related concepts**

[Viewing policy validation issues](#) on page 889


**Related tasks**


[Validate rules automatically](#) on page 887

## Check the currently installed policy

---

You can check the details of the currently installed policy.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click the engine, then select **Current Policy > Info**.  
A message is displayed on the screen with the following information:
  - Name of the installed policy
  - Name of the administrator who installed the policy
  - Date (year-month-day) and time of the policy installation
- 3) Click **OK** to close the message.

## Preview the currently installed policy

---

You can preview the policy that is currently installed on the Management Server.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click the engine, then select **Current Policy > Preview**.  
A preview of the policy in its current format on the Management Server opens.



**Note:** The policy on the Management Server might be different from the actual currently installed policy if the policy has been edited after it was installed.

# Check and compare Policy Snapshots

You can compare two policy snapshots, or check which policy was in place at a particular time.

Each time a policy is successfully installed, a record of that configuration is stored in the upload history. These policy snapshots enable you to check which policies were uploaded and when, and allows you to run an automatic check for policy refresh needs.



**Note:** The policy snapshot is only stored when the policy is successfully installed. No snapshot is stored if the policy installation fails.

## View Policy Snapshots

A policy snapshot captures a policy's configuration at the time it was installed.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Policy Snapshots**.  
A list of policy snapshots with the upload times and dates appears.
- 3) Double-click the policy snapshot you want to view.  
The details of the selected policy snapshot open.



**Tip:** You can also view the snapshot in HTML format: right-click a snapshot and select **Tools > Save as HTML File**.

- 4) Select elements in the other pane to see their details. The elements are organized in the following groups:
  - Policy: The policy whose installation created the snapshot.
  - Target: Properties of the engine on which the policy has been saved.
  - Elements: Elements included in the policy.



**Tip:** Select **Show XML** to view the policy snapshot in XML format.

## Compare Policy Snapshots

You can compare any two policy snapshots from the list to check for changes between policy installations.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Open the comparison in one of the following ways:
  - To compare any two snapshots to each other, select two policy snapshots, right-click, and select **Compare Snapshots**.
  - To compare a policy snapshot to the engine's current policy, right-click a policy snapshot and select **Compare > Compare Snapshot to Engine's Current Policy**.

- To compare a policy snapshot to the most recently saved policy on the Management Server, right-click the policy snapshot and select **Compare > Compare Snapshot to Most Recently Saved Policy**

The changes are highlighted in the policy and shown as a summary.

- 2) Select objects in the summary to focus on them.

For example, if you select a network element, its properties are shown. The objects are organized in the following groups:


- **Targets** — The engine on which the policy has been saved.
- **New Elements** — Elements added to the policy.
- **Removed Elements** — Elements that have been removed from the policy.
- **Modified Elements** — Elements that exist in both policies but that have been edited.


## Change templates of policies

---

You can change the template of a Firewall, IPS, or Layer 2 Firewall policy.

For example, if you created policy A based on template X, you can later change the parent template for policy A so that policy A inherits rules from template Y.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Expand the **Policies** tree and select the appropriate policy type.
- 3) Right-click the correct policy and select **Properties**.  
The **Properties** dialog box for the policy opens, showing the **Policy** tree.
- 4) Select the new parent template.  
The parent template must have insert points for the types of rules that the Policy contains.
- 5) Click **OK**.  
The policy is moved under your chosen template in the tree view, and starts using rules from the new template.

# Using policy elements and rules

Names, comments, and the Continue action make policy rules easier to use. You can also enable policy validation and configure user responses and connection tracking.

## Validating policies

You can automatically validate the policy while editing and during policy installation.

The number of rules in a policy can grow large over time. It can become difficult, for example, to notice configuration errors in a policy. To make policy management easier and to make sure that the policy does not contain misconfigured rules, you can automatically validate the policy while editing and during policy installation. You can select different criteria for validating the policy. You can, for example, check the policy for duplicate and empty rules or check if there are rules that cannot match traffic.

Additionally, the engines automatically count how many times each Access rule has matched. Engines also count the number of matches to NAT rules. You can run an analysis over a selected time frame in the policy editing view to display rule counter hits for each rule (in the **Hits** cell). Rule analysis allows you to find otherwise valid rules that are unnecessary because they match traffic that does not appear in your networks.

## Configuring connection tracking

Connection tracking means that the engine keeps a record of all currently open connections (stateful inspection).

With connection tracking, the engine can verify that the connection proceeds according to the protocol standards. Connection tracking is also required for changing addresses using NAT and enforcing some other connection-related settings. By default, connection tracking is on.

However, it is not necessary to track the state of certain kinds of connections (for example, SNMP traps). Some applications can also communicate in a non-standard way that prevents them from being allowed through the engine when connection tracking is used. For those connections, you can disable connection tracking in the Access rules, which allows the engine to function as a simple packet filter for those connections. However, disabling connection tracking also prevents the use of some features that require connection tracking.

When connection tracking is off, each packet that you want to allow must match an Access rule that allows the packet. This means that even if two-way communications are always opened one way, both directions of communication must be explicitly allowed in Access rules. Reply packets are not recognized, so they are not automatically allowed through. If done carelessly, turning off connection tracking reduces the benefits you gain from your engine and might even weaken security. You might have other options: sometimes using the correct Protocol Agent helps.



**Note:** Before disabling connection tracking, always check if there is a Protocol Agent for the protocol in question. The Protocol Agents can pass connections that require special handling when connection tracking is on, which is always a more secure option.

When connection tracking is enabled in an Access rule, the **Service** cell of the rule must contain one of the protocols supported for connection tracking (ICMP, TCP, UDP, or another protocol that belongs to the IP protocol suite). ICMP and UDP are stateless protocols that do not contain any connection data. However, ICMP and UDP packets contain data that the engine can use to build virtual connections. The engine can also build virtual connections based on the IP address and IP protocol data in other types of IP packets.

You can choose between several connection tracking modes, depending on the traffic type and how strictly you want the connections to be tracked. The effect of the connection tracking setting in the Access rules depends on the traffic type.

If Connection Tracking is on, you can also set the **Idle Timeout** for connections. The timeout is meant for clearing the engine's records of old connections that the communicating hosts leave hanging. The timeout concerns only idle connections, so connections are not cut because of timeouts while the hosts are still communicating. The timeout defined for an Access rule overrides the default idle timeout value that is set for the protocol in the engine's properties.



**CAUTION:** Setting excessively long timeouts for many connections can consume engine resources and degrade engine performance and stability. Be especially careful when defining timeouts for ICMP and UDP. The ICMP and UDP virtual connections do not have closing packets. The engine keeps the records for the ICMP and UDP connections until the end of the timeout.

Connection Tracking options in Access rules also allow you to override the limit for connections from a single source or destination IP address defined in the **Traffic Handling** settings for NGFW Engines and in the properties of some interface types. When the set number of connections is reached, the engine blocks the next connection attempts until a previously open connection is closed.

Changes in the Connection Tracking mode affect how existing connections are handled when you install or refresh the policy. When you install or refresh the policy on an engine, the engine checks if the existing connections are still allowed in the policy. If the connection tracking mode changes from Loose to Strict, existing virtual ICMP connections are only allowed if they began with a valid packet (for example, not with a response packet). In addition, if the mode changes from Normal to Strict, existing TCP connections are only allowed if all packets in the connection have been seen. In all other cases, changes in connection tracking mode do not affect existing ICMP, TCP, and UDP connections at policy installation.

## Policy Snapshots

---

A Policy Snapshot is a stored record of a policy configuration.

A Policy Snapshot is stored in an engine's upload history whenever a policy is installed or refreshed on the engine. The Policy Snapshots allow you to check which policies and other configuration information were uploaded, and when they were uploaded. You can also compare any two Policy Snapshots and see the differences between them.

## Continue rules

---

The Continue action for a rule sets default options for traffic matching.

The Continue action for a rule sets default options (such as logging options and idle timeout) for the traffic matching process. Options set in Continue rules are used for subsequent rules that match the same criteria as the Continue rule, unless the rules are set to override the options. Continue rules are also useful in the hierarchical structure of the policies. Template Policies are convenient for setting options with a Continue rule, because all Policies and Template Policies that use the template inherit the option settings you have specified.

### Related concepts

[Configuring default settings for several Access rules](#) on page 819

## Adding comments to rules

---

You can add comments to rules to provide useful information to administrators and to make policies easier to read.

Each policy can include a large number of rules. Adding comments provides administrators with useful information and also makes it easier to read policies. You can add comments to all types of rules. In rule tables, you can add comments in the rule's **Comment** cell. You can also add a Rule Section, which begins with a comment row and can include one or more rules.

The Rule Section automatically includes all rules below the Rule Section until the next Rule Section in the policy. You can expand and collapse the Rule Sections as necessary. The comment row in a Rule Section is displayed against a colored background (with configurable colors). Rule Sections are useful in visually separating the sections of rules within a single policy.

## Naming rules

---

You can specify an optional name or short description for Access rules, NAT rules, Ethernet rules, Exceptions in Inspection Policies, and rules in QoS Policies and Alert Policies.

Names help administrators identify individual rules in large rule tables. You can also search for a rule by its name. If a rule has been named, the name is displayed in the **Logs** view as well.

## Deleting policies templates or sub-policies

---

If no policies are based on a policy template, you can delete the template. Similarly, you can delete a Sub-Policy as long as no Jump rules use it.

To delete a template, there must be no policies that are based on that template. The deletion is not allowed until you either delete the policies or switch them to use a different template.

To delete a Sub-Policy, there must be no policies that have Jump rules that use the Sub-Policy. The deletion is not allowed until you edit or remove the Jump rules in the policies.

### Related concepts

[How the Trash works](#) on page 156

### Related tasks

[Change templates of policies](#) on page 797



# Firewall Policy elements examples

---

Using Firewall Policy elements, you can protect essential communications, make Firewall rules more readable and Firewall Policies more efficient, and manage network administrator rights.

## Protecting essential communications example

---

You can make sure that essential communications are protected and cannot be cut off.

Company A has a firewall system administered by multiple administrators of various degrees of familiarity with networking, firewalls, and Forcepoint NGFW Firewalls. The administrators must often make quick changes to respond to the needs of the company and attend to any problems detected.

In this situation, it is possible that someone might accidentally change the Firewall Policy in such a way that important services are cut off. The administrators decide to separate the rules allowing the most important business communications from rules that deal with non-essential traffic to minimize this risk. The administrators:

- 1) Create a Firewall Template Policy and select the predefined Firewall Template as the basis of the policy.
- 2) Cut and paste the rules allowing essential communications from their current Firewall Policy into the new Firewall Template Policy.

In this case, all administrators are allowed to edit the new Firewall Template Policy as well.

- 3) Add an insert point below the copied rules in the Firewall Template Policy.

Having the insert point below the essential rules prevents the rules added to the inheriting Firewall Policy from affecting the essential communications.

- 4) Reparent their current Firewall Policy to use the new template, moving it down a step in the policy hierarchy.

- 5) After validating the policy and making sure that the rules are correct, refresh the current Firewall Policy.

Most daily editing is done in the Firewall Policy. There is less risk of someone accidentally changing the essential rules in the Firewall Template Policy, because the rules are not editable in the Firewall Policy.

## Improving readability and performance example

---

You can make Firewall rules more readable and improve the performance of Firewall Policies.

Company B has two separate DMZs, one for the extranet and one for other web services. The number of services offered is large. The company also has many partners and customers that have varying access rights to the different services. The administrators realize that many of the rules in their policies are related to the DMZ connections. The rest of the rules govern access to and from the company's internal networks. Many of the rules have been entered over time by inserting them at the beginning of the rule table, so rules governing access to the different networks are mixed. Finding all rules that govern access to a particular network takes time.

The administrators decide that they want to make their Firewall Policy more readable and at the same time optimize the way the firewall handles traffic, so they:

- 1) Create two new Firewall Sub-Policies: one for each DMZ.

- 2) Cut and paste the rules from the current Firewall Policy into the correct Firewall Sub-Policy.
- 3) Add Jump rules to the Firewall Policy, to direct the examination of traffic to/from the different networks to the correct Firewall Sub-Policy.
- 4) Refresh the Firewall Policy.

## Restricting administrator editing rights in Firewall Policies example

---

You can restrict the editing rights of network administrators in your organization, as needed.

Company C is implementing a distributed network with multiple sites: one central office where most of the administrators work, and several branch offices in different countries. The branch offices mostly have IT staff with only limited networking experience, but who are still responsible for the day-to-day maintenance of the network infrastructure at their site. They must be able to, for example, add and remove Access rules for testing purposes without always contacting the main administrators.

The administrators decide to limit the permissions of the branch office IT staff so that they are not able to edit the policies of the firewalls at any of the other sites. The administrators:

- 1) Create a Firewall Template Policy and select the predefined Firewall Template as the basis of the policy.
- 2) Add rules to the Firewall Template Policy using Alias elements to cover the essential services that each of these sites has, such as the VPN connections to the central site.

Using a common Firewall Template Policy for all branch offices also eliminates the need to make the same changes in several policies, easing the workload.

- 3) Create a Firewall Policy based on the new Firewall Template Policy for each of the branch office sites.

Although the same Firewall Policy might work for all sites, in this case the administrators decide against it. Separate policies are needed for the separation of editing rights. The policies are based on the same Firewall Template Policy, so rules can still be shared without duplicating them manually.

- 4) Grant each Firewall Policy to the correct Firewall element.

After this, only the correct policy can be installed on each firewall. No other policy is accepted.

- 5) Create administrator accounts with restricted rights for the branch office administrators and grant the correct Firewall element and Firewall Policy to each administrator.

- The branch office administrators are now restricted to editing one Firewall Policy and can install it on the correct firewall.
- The branch office administrators are not allowed to edit the Firewall Template Policy the policy is based on. They also cannot install any other policies on any other firewalls.

# IPS Policy example

---

You might want to restrict the policy editing rights of administrators to the IPS engines at their sites.

## Restricting administrator editing rights in IPS Policies example

---

You can restrict the policy editing rights of administrators to the IPS engines at their sites.

Company A is implementing a distributed network with multiple sites: one central office where most of the administrators work, and several branch offices in different countries. The branch offices mostly have IT staff with only limited networking experience, but who are still responsible for the day-to-day maintenance of the network infrastructure and the IPS engines at their site. They must be able to, for example, add and remove Access rules for testing purposes without always contacting the main administrators.

The administrators decide to limit the permissions of the branch office IT staff so that they are not able to edit the policies of the IPS engines at any of the other sites. The administrators:

- 1) Create an IPS Template Policy based on the predefined IPS Template.
- 2) Add rules to the IPS Template Policy using Alias elements to cover the essential services that each of these sites have.

Using a common IPS Template Policy for all branch offices eliminates the need to make the same changes in several policies, easing the workload.

- 3) Create an IPS Policy based on the new template for each of the branch office sites.

Although a single IPS Policy for all sites could work, in this case the administrators decide against it. Separate policies are needed for the separation of editing rights. The policies are based on the same template, so rules can still be shared without duplicating them manually.

- 4) Grant each IPS Policy to the correct IPS engine elements.

After this, only the correct IPS Policy can be installed on each IPS engine. No other policy is accepted.

- 5) Create accounts with restricted rights for the branch office administrators and grant the correct IPS engine element and IPS Policy to each administrator.
  - The branch office administrators are now restricted to editing one IPS Policy and can install it on the correct IPS engine.
  - The branch office administrators are not allowed to edit the template the IPS Policy is based on. They also cannot install any other policies on any other IPS engines.



# Ethernet rules

## Contents

- [Getting started with Ethernet rules](#) on page 805
- [Overview of Ethernet rules](#) on page 805
- [Configuration of Ethernet rules](#) on page 806
- [Examples of Ethernet rules](#) on page 809

## Getting started with Ethernet rules

Ethernet rules are lists of matching criteria and actions that define whether Ethernet protocol traffic is allowed or discarded.

Ethernet rules are used by IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls. These rules define whether Ethernet traffic is allowed to continue or whether the traffic is denied immediately. Inline Interfaces of IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls can directly stop any traffic when the Discard action is used.

If you are using the IPS Template or the Layer 2 Firewall Template as the basis, the Ethernet rules direct IPv4 and IPv6 traffic to the Inspection Policy for inspection, and let ARP, RARP, and STP traffic through. You can use the first Insert Point in the template to make exceptions to this behavior for certain MAC addresses or Logical Interfaces. We recommend that you insert any other changes at the second insert point.

Make sure that your Ethernet rules direct IP traffic for inspection against Access rules (by applying the default IPv4 and IPv6 Services to traffic). When traffic does not match any Ethernet rule, the traffic is let through without further inspection.

## Overview of Ethernet rules

Ethernet rules define which Ethernet protocol packets the engines stop, and which packets are allowed through.

Ethernet rules that stop traffic are used by inline IPS engines or Layer 2 Firewalls in Transparent Access Control mode, by inline Virtual IPS engines, and by Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls. Ethernet rules can also be used by IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewalls, Virtual IPS engines, and Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls in capture mode to define Ethernet protocol traffic logging. The Ethernet rules are stored in policy elements.

The traffic matching in Ethernet rules is based on the Source and Destination MAC Address in the packets. Any Ethernet network traffic, such as ARP, RARP, IPv6, Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP), and Spanning Tree Protocol (STP), can be checked against the Ethernet rules. Ethernet traffic can be allowed or discarded. For IPS engines or Layer 2 Firewalls in capture mode, only the Allow action is available.

Regardless of the action taken, a matching rule can also create a log or alert entry.

### Related concepts

[Getting started with policies](#) on page 779

# Configuration of Ethernet rules

Ethernet rules are configured on the **Ethernet** tab inside IPS and Layer 2 Firewall Policy and Template Policy elements. IPS and Layer 2 Firewall Sub-Policies cannot contain Ethernet rules.

**Figure 107: Newly inserted Ethernet rule - Main cells**

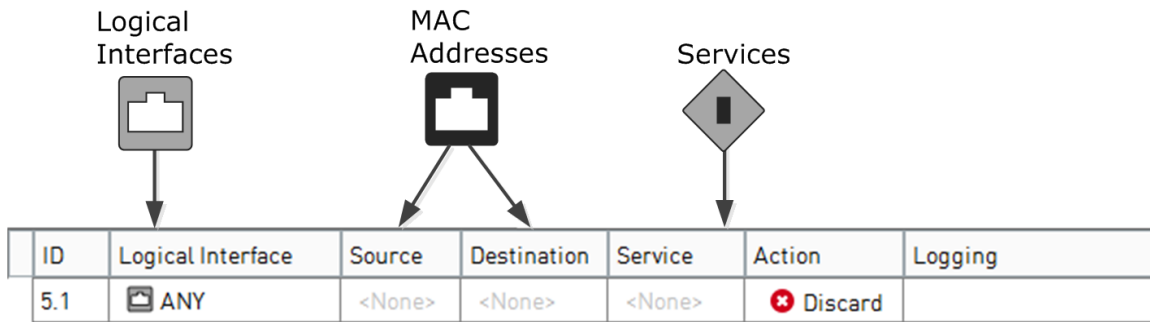
Ethernet						
ID	Logical Interface	Source	Destination	Service	Action	Logging
Ethernet Insert Point (Before) - add rules here						
5.1	ANY	<None>	<None>	<None>	Discard	
Allow all						

Engine applies Action when it finds a match

This illustration displays an Ethernet rule that has been inserted into the policy. The Source, Destination, and Service cells are set to NONE, so this rule never matches until they are changed to ANY or some more specific value. The Logical Interface cell is also matched against traffic, but it is not mandatory to change it if you want the rule to apply regardless of the interface. The other editable cells specify further conditions and options for handling matching connections. It is not necessary to edit all cells in each rule.

Before starting to build policies, make sure that you understand the network element types available and how to define the resources that you want to protect and control. The illustration below shows the types of elements that you can use in Ethernet rules.

**Figure 108: Elements in Ethernet rules**



The following table explains briefly what each Ethernet rule cell does and which elements you can use in the rules.

**Table 76: Ethernet Rule cells**

Cell	Explanation
<b>ID</b>	(Not editable) Automatically assigned ID number that indicates the order of the rules in the policy. The rules are matched against traffic in the order of the ID numbers.
<b>Logical Interface</b>	Matches the rule based on which interface the traffic is picked up from. The same logical interface can be assigned to one or several interfaces as configured in the properties of the IPS engine or Layer 2 Firewall. This cell accepts only Logical Interface elements.

Cell	Explanation
Source	Elements containing the MAC addresses that the rule matches. Both the Source and the Destination defined must match the source and destination of a packet for the packet to match the rule. The Source and Destination cells accept MAC Address elements.
Destination	
Service	The Services match an Ethernet frame type. The Service cell accepts Ethernet Services elements.
Action	Command for the engine to carry out when a connection matches the rule.
Logging	The options for logging.
Comment	An optional free-form comment for this rule. You can also add separate comment rows in between rules.
Rule Name	<p>Contains a rule tag and optionally a rule name.</p> <p>Name: (Optional) Name or description for the rule. Displayed alongside the rule tag.</p> <p>Tag: (Not editable) Automatically assigned unique identification for the rule. Works as a link between the log entries and the rule that has generated the log entries. The rule tag consists of two parts (for example, @20.1). The first part of the tag is permanent and belongs to only that rule. The second part changes when the rule is changed. The first part and the second part are separated by a period.</p>

## Considerations for designing Ethernet rules

Ethernet rules are read from the top down. More specific rules must be placed above more general rules that match the same traffic.

The actions **Allow** and **Discard** stop the processing from continuing down the rule table for any packet that matches the rule. Rules with these actions must be placed so that the more limited the rule is in scope, the higher up in the rule table it is. If the traffic does not match any of the Ethernet rules by the end of the policy, it is allowed by default.

## Default elements for Ethernet rules

The IPS Template and the Layer 2 Firewall Template contain predefined Ethernet rules.

Because the template policies are added and updated through dynamic update packages, the templates you currently have in your SMC might look different from the one here. Newer versions of the templates work in the same way as described below. Any changes to the templates are documented in the Release Notes document for each dynamic update package. The predefined Ethernet rules allow the most common types of Ethernet traffic.

**Figure 109: IPS template - Ethernet rules**

Ethernet							
IPv4 Access		IPv6 Access		Inspection			
ID	Logical Interface	Source	Destination	Service	Action	Logging	
Ethernet Insert Point (Before) - add rules here							
1	ANY	ANY	ANY	ARP RARP STP (Sp	Allow		
2	ANY	ANY	ANY	IPv4	Allow		
3	ANY	ANY	ANY	IPv6	Allow		
Allow all							

In this illustration, you can see a green insert point at the top of the rule table, three default rules below it, and then another insert point.

- The first rule contains the IPv4 protocol and allows the matching traffic to pass through.
- The second rule contains the IPv4 protocol and allows IPv4 traffic with further inspection against the IPv4 Access rules.
- The third rule contains the IPv6 protocol and allows IPv6 traffic with further inspection against the IPv6Access rules.

The two insert points indicate where you can add Ethernet rules to a policy that uses the IPS Template or the Layer 2 Firewall Template. The first insert point above the default rules allows you to change and make exceptions to how traffic that matches the three default rules is checked. For example, you could add a rule defining that no IPv4 or IPv6 traffic at all is allowed between certain MAC addresses.

The second insert point below the default rules allows you to define how traffic that matches other protocols is checked. The final rule allows all traffic.

## Defining the source and destination in Ethernet rules

The source and destination MAC addresses specified in an Ethernet rule are compared to the MAC addresses in each packet's header.

Based on these and other criteria, the rule is applied to matching packets. By default, these cells are set to NONE, and you must change the value in both cells to make the rule valid.

The Source and Destination cells accept MAC address elements. You can set these cells to ANY to make the rule match all possible source or destination MAC addresses. You can also add more than one element in each cell to make the rule match multiple MAC addresses.

## Defining the service in Ethernet rules

The Service cell defines which protocols the Ethernet rule applies to.

By default, the Service is set to NONE, and you must change the value to make the rule valid. The Service cell accepts only Ethernet Services elements. You can set the Service to ANY to make the rule match all protocols.



## Selecting the action in Ethernet rules

The Action cell defines what happens when a packet matches the Ethernet rule.

The following actions are available in the Ethernet rules:

- Allow: The traffic is let through the engine.
- Discard: The traffic is silently dropped if going through an Inline interface.



**Note:** When the Allow action is used for IPv4 or IPv6 traffic in the Ethernet rules, the traffic is then checked against the IPv4 or the IPv6 Access rules. The final action for the IPv4 and IPv6 traffic is determined according to traffic type by the IPv4 or the IPv6 Access rules.

## Examples of Ethernet rules

These examples illustrate some common modifications to the default Ethernet rules and general steps on how each example is configured.

### Example: Logging protocol use in Ethernet rules

An example of configuring Ethernet rules to log the use of Ethernet protocols.

The administrators at Company A have installed an IPS engine in Transparent Access Control mode and they want to create some custom Ethernet rules. The administrators know that most traffic uses the IPv4 protocol, but they are not sure which other Ethernet protocols are being used in the company's network. They decide to temporarily log the use of Ethernet protocols, excluding IPv4.

To log all Ethernet protocol traffic excluding IPv4, the administrators:

- 1) Create an IPS Policy based on the IPS Template.
- 2) Add a rule in the Ethernet rules to exclude IPv4 traffic from logging:

**Table 77: Ethernet rule for excluding IPv4 traffic from logging**

Source	Destination	Service	Action	Options
ANY	ANY	IPv4	Allow	Logging: None

- 3) Add a rule to log the use of other Ethernet protocols:

**Table 78: Ethernet rule for logging Ethernet protocol use**

Source	Destination	Service	Action	Options
ANY	ANY	ANY	Allow	Logging: Stored

- 4) Save and install the policy on the IPS engine.

- 5) View the logs generated by the matches to the Ethernet rules in the Logs view.
- 6) Disable the logging Ethernet rule to prevent excess log data from being generated.

## Example: restricting the use of Ethernet protocols

An example of configuring Ethernet rules to restrict which Ethernet protocols are allowed.

Now that the administrators at Company A from the previous example have a clear picture of which Ethernet protocols are being used, they want to restrict allowed protocols. The administrators determine that ARP and Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) must be allowed. Since most traffic will use these protocols, the administrators do not want to log matches to the rules that allow specific protocols.

They decide to block the Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP) on the logical interface named Inline Interface because of security problems, and log detected CDP use.

To block the use of the CDP protocol, the administrators:

- 1) Add a new rule in the Ethernet rules to allow ARP, Spanning Tree Protocol (STP), and IPv4 without producing any logs:

**Table 79: Ethernet rule for allowing ARP and STP use**

Logical Interface	Source	Destination	Service	Action	Options
ANY	ANY	ANY	ARP, STP, IPv4	Allow	Logging: None

- 2) Add another rule to block the use of Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP) on the Inline Interface, and produce logs that will be stored:

**Table 80: Ethernet rule for blocking CDP use**

Logical Interface	Source	Destination	Service	Action	Options
Inline Interface	ANY	ANY	CDP	Discard	Logging: Stored

- 3) Add a rule on the last line of the Ethernet rules to block the use of other Ethernet protocols without producing logs:

**Table 81: Ethernet rule for blocking other Ethernet protocols**

Logical Interface	Source	Destination	Service	Action	Options
ANY	ANY	ANY	ANY	Discard	Logging: None

- 4) Save and install the policy on the IPS engine.

# Access rules

### Contents

- [Getting started with Access rules](#) on page 811
- [Overview of Access rules](#) on page 811
- [Configuring Access rules](#) on page 812
- [Using Access rules](#) on page 818
- [Examples of firewall Access rules](#) on page 824
- [Examples of IPS Access rules](#) on page 827

Access rules are lists of matching criteria and actions that define how the engine treats different types of network traffic. They are your main configuration tool for defining which traffic is stopped and which traffic is allowed.

## Getting started with Access rules

Access rules filter traffic by defining matching criteria and an action that is applied to packets that match all criteria defined in the rule.

Access rules are used by Firewalls, IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewalls, Master NGFW Engines, Virtual Firewalls, Virtual IPS engines, and Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls:

- In Firewall and Layer 2 Firewall policies, the Access rules are the most important type of rules. The criteria you define in the Access rules determines which connections are allowed. By default, Firewall and Layer 2 Firewall Access rules stop traffic that you do not specifically allow.



**Note:** Master NGFW Engines always use Firewall Policies regardless of the role of the Virtual NGFW Engines they host. Virtual Firewalls use Firewall Policies. Virtual IPS engines use IPS policies. Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls use Layer 2 Firewall Policies.

- In IPS policies, Access rules can be used to optionally filter out some traffic and to exclude some traffic from further inspection. Only traffic on Inline Interfaces can be filtered with Access rules. IPS engines allow all traffic that you do not specifically deny. For IPS policies based on the IPS Template, all traffic allowed by rules placed after the inherited rules is inspected against the Inspection Policy by default.

## Overview of Access rules

Access rules are traffic handling rules in which you define the details of traffic examination and which action to take when matching details are found.

The IPv4 and IPv6 Access rules are stored in policy elements.

The traffic matching is based on the information contained in the packets:

- Source and destination IP addresses.
- Protocol-specific information, such as the port information for protocols that use ports.

Additional matching criteria that is not based on information in the packets includes:

- The interface the traffic is coming from or going to. This allows you to restrict which traffic is allowed through which interfaces in more detail than basic antispoofing.
- (Firewalls only) The VPN the traffic is coming from (on an engine where that VPN terminates). This allows creating rules that apply to VPN traffic only, or rules that apply to all traffic except VPN traffic.
- (Firewalls only, IPv4 only) User authentication (allowing you to create rules that define the end users who are allowed to make connections and the authentication methods for the end users).
- The User or User Group of a user who has logged on to an integrated Microsoft Active Directory domain (allowing you to create user-specific rules without configuring authentication).
- The day of the week and the time of day (allowing you to enforce rules only during certain times, such as working hours).

The Access rules provide several different ways to react when some traffic is found to match a rule. You can:

- Specifically allow the traffic.
- (Firewalls only, IPv4 only) Allow the traffic on the condition that the user has passed authentication.
- (Firewalls only) Allow the traffic on the condition that a VPN is established.
- (Firewalls only) Allow the traffic on the condition that the same source or destination IP address does not have an excessive number of connections already open (concurrent connection limit).
- Allow the traffic with inspection against the Inspection Policy.
- Allow the traffic without further inspection.
- (Firewalls only) Specifically stop the traffic.
- Stop the traffic if the traffic passes through the inline interfaces of an IPS engine or Layer 2 Firewall with a license that allows this action.

Regardless of which of the above actions is taken, a matching rule can also create a log or alert entry.

In addition to traffic allowed by the Access rules, Firewalls automatically allow the following types of traffic with specific configurations:

- DHCP requests and replies for an interface for which a DHCP server is enabled.
- DHCP requests and replies for an interface that has a dynamic IP address.
- State synchronization between cluster nodes.
- IPv6 Neighbor Discovery traffic.

#### Related concepts

[Getting started with policies](#) on page 779

## Configuring Access rules

Access rules filter traffic by defining matching criteria and an action that is applied to packets that match all criteria defined in the rule.

IPv4 Access rules are configured on the **IPv4 Access** tab, and IPv6 Access rules are configured on the **IPv6 Access** tab inside the following elements:

- Firewall Policy
- IPS and Layer 2 Firewall Policy
- Template Policy
- Sub-Policy

You can create new Access rules in the Policy Editing View. You can also create IPS and Layer 2 Firewall Access rules in the Logs view. Use one or more selected log entries to create these rules (only available for IPS and Layer 2 Firewall IPv6 Access rules, not for Firewall IPv6 Access rules).

Before starting to build policies, make sure that you understand the network element types available and how you can use them efficiently to define the resources that you want to protect and control.

## Configuring Firewall Access rules

**Figure 110: Newly inserted Firewall IPv4 Access Rule - Main cells**

IPv4 Access	IPv6 Access	Inspection	IPv4 NAT	IPv6 NAT								
ID	Source	Destination	Service	Action	Authentication	QoS...	Logging	Time	Comment	Rule Name	Source VPN	Hits
5.5.1	<None>	<None>	<None>	Discard						@2097273.0		
Discard all												

Mandatory cells for matching traffic

Engine applies Action when it finds a match

The illustration above displays an Access rule that has been inserted into the policy. The matching cells are set to <None> and the action is set to **Discard**. These settings prevent the rule from having any affecting in case a new rule is added to the policy accidentally. It is not necessary to edit all cells in each rule. However, the mandatory cells for traffic matching (**Source**, **Destination**, and **Protocol**) must be set to some value other than <None> for the rule to be valid. The **Source VPN** cell is also matched against traffic in the inspection process, but it can be left empty to match all traffic. The other editable cells specify further conditions and options, such as logging.

The illustration below shows the types of elements that you can use in IPv4 and IPv6 Access rules.

**Figure 111: Elements in Firewall Access rules**

Network and User Elements

ID	Source	Destin...	Service	Action	Authentication	QoS...	Logging	Time	Comment	Rule Name	Sour...	Hits
Automatic Rules Insert Point												
5.1	<None>	<None>	<None>	Discard						@2097292.0		
Discard all												

## Configuring IPS and Layer 2 Firewall Access rules

**Figure 112: Newly inserted IPS or Layer 2 Firewall Access Rule - Main cells**

ID	Logical Interface	Source	Destination	Service	Action	QoS Class	Logging	Time	Comment	Rule Name	Hits
IPv4 Insert Point (Before) - add rules here											
13.1	ANY	<None>	<None>	<None>	Allow					@2097282.0	

Mandatory cells for matching traffic

Engine applies Action when it finds a match

The illustration above displays an Access rule that has been inserted into the policy. The matching cells are set to <None> to prevent the rule from affecting traffic in case a new rule is added to the policy accidentally. It is not necessary to edit all cells in each rule, but the mandatory cells for traffic matching (**Source**, **Destination**, and **Service**) must be set to some value other than <None> for the rule to be valid. The **Logical Interface** cell is also matched against traffic, but it is not mandatory to change its value if you want the rule to apply regardless of the interface. The other editable cells specify further conditions and options for handling connections that match the cells that are used for traffic matching.

The illustration below shows the types of elements that you can use in IPv4 and IPv6 Access rules.

**Figure 113: Elements in IPS and Layer 2 Firewall Access rules**

ID	Logical Interface	Source	Destination	Service	Action	QoS Class	Logging	Time	Comment	Rule Name	Hits
IPv4 Insert Point (Before) - add rules here											
13.1	ANY	<None>	<None>	<None>	Allow					@2097282.0	

### Related concepts

- [Getting started with directory servers](#) on page 1079
- [Getting started with user authentication](#) on page 1099
- [Overview of external user authentication](#) on page 1102
- [Bandwidth management](#) on page 949
- [Traffic prioritization](#) on page 949
- [Selecting logging options for Firewall Access rules](#) on page 817

## Considerations for designing Access rules

One of the crucial issues in designing policies is the order of the rules.

The most important thing to remember when editing Firewall and IPS and Layer 2 Firewall Template Policies, Policies, and Sub-Policies is that the rules are read from the top down. The actions **Allow**, **Refuse**, **Discard**, and the action **Use VPN** with the option **Enforce** (Firewall only) stop the processing from continuing down the rule table for any connection that matches the rule. Therefore, rules with any of these actions must be placed so that the more limited the rule is in scope, the higher up in the rule table it is.

Example: An Access rule that allows connections to the IP address 192.168.10.200 must be put above an Access rule that stops all connections to the network 192.168.10.0/24.

In Firewall and Layer 2 Firewall policies, traffic that does not match any of the Access rules by the end of the policy is discarded by default. In IPS policies, traffic that does not match any of the Access rules by the end of the policy is allowed by default.

### Related concepts

Example: [exempting traffic from inspection in IPS Access rules](#) on page 827

## Default elements for Access rules

There are several predefined elements for configuring Access rules.

### Default elements for Firewall Access rules

There are two predefined Firewall Template Policies called Firewall Template and Firewall Inspection Template. They contain the basic Access rules that allow communications between the engine on which the policy is installed and other SMC components. The Firewall Inspection Template is based on the Firewall Template.

You must use one of the predefined Firewall Template Policies as the basis for defining your own templates and policies. It is not possible to create a new template at the highest level of the policy hierarchy. No changes can be made directly to the predefined Firewall Template Policies. However, you can create your own copies of the predefined Firewall Template Policies if you have a specific need to edit the rules in them.



**Note:** If you use a copy of a predefined Firewall Template Policy, you may have to adjust your rules manually when the system is upgraded to account for changes in system communications. Upgrades can change only the predefined Firewall Template Policies, not the copies.

There is a yellow row near the end of the list of rules on the IPv4 Access and IPv6 Access tabs in the predefined Firewall Template Policies. The yellow row marks the insert point, where rules can be added in the inheriting Firewall Policy and Firewall Template Policy elements.

The rules above the insert point detail the various kinds of system communications. Most of the IP addresses are defined using Aliases to make the rules applicable on any system where they are installed. These Aliases are default elements. The Service cell is the best starting point for understanding in greater detail what these rules do.

There are two rules below the insert point. The rule directly below the insert point has the action **Refuse** for the Ident protocol traffic. This action stops the traffic and sends an ICMP error message to the Ident request sender. This rule exists to prevent Ident requests from being silently dropped (as the next rule specifies for all other traffic). Silently dropping Ident requests causes delays. The last rule before the end of the policy is a rule that discards all traffic and creates a log entry that is stored. This rule's purpose is to make sure that this connection dropping is logged. This rule is important because the engine silently drops the connection without creating a log entry if the matching process reaches the end of the policy.

### Default elements for IPS and Layer 2 Firewall Access rules

The IPS Template and the Layer 2 Firewall Template have predefined Ethernet rules, IPv4, and IPv6 Access rules. Because the default policy elements are introduced when you import and activate a recent dynamic update package, the templates you currently have in your SMC might look slightly different from the one that is presented

in this section. Newer versions of the templates work in the same way as described below. Any changes to the templates are documented in the Release Notes document for each dynamic update package.

There are several IPv4 and IPv6 Access rules with various Services defined with Continue as the action and a yellow insert point indicating the place where a Policy that uses the template can be edited.

The Access rules that you add at the insert points in custom policies based on the IPS Template or the Layer 2 Firewall Template are usually specific exceptions to the rules inherited from the template. For example, you could insert a rule there that allows a connection between two particular hosts to continue without any further inspection. Or, you could insert a rule for inline IPS engines to always stop traffic between particular IP addresses and ports.

#### Related reference

[Security Management Center ports](#) on page 1433

[Forcepoint NGFW Engine ports](#) on page 1436

## Defining the Source and Destination in Access rules

The Source and Destination cells specify the IP addresses that are compared to the IP addresses in each packet's header.

Based on these and other criteria, the rule is applied to matching packets. By default, these cells are set to NONE, and you must change the value in both cells to make the rule valid.

You can add more than one element in each cell. You can optionally define detailed lists of matching criteria for each cell by combining Users (stored in an integrated Active Directory database), Network Elements, DNS Domain Names, and interface Zones. Each row of the list is combined with a logical AND: all items must match for the row to match. Groups, Aliases, Countries, Address Ranges, Expressions, and IP Address Lists are also useful for defining IP addresses in complex scenarios.

You can set the Source and Destination cells to ANY to make the rule match all possible source or destination IP addresses.

## Defining the Service in Access rules

The Service cell defines which protocols the Access rule applies to.

The Service also determines the applications protocol used in the Inspection Policy for matching traffic (the protocol that is detected and selected for traffic by an Access rule is a matching criteria in the Inspection Policy). By default, the Service is set to <None>, and you must change the value to make the rule valid.

The Service cell accepts only Service and Service Group elements. There are ready-made Services that cover most needs. For example, there are predefined Service elements that you can use to enforce safe search features. However, you can also use your own customized versions, for example, to define a non-standard port. The Services available for rule design are categorized according to protocols.

You can add more than one element in this cell to make the rule match several Services. You can optionally define detailed lists of matching criteria by combining URL Situations (for URL filtering), Applications, Services, and TLS matches. Each row of the list is combined with a logical AND: all items must match for the row to match.

Protocol Agent parameters are available for some Protocols in Service elements.



Certain Services are associated with Protocols of the type Protocol Agent, which define more advanced inspection and handling for the connections. Also, the Protocol element identifies the protocol for the traffic for inspection against the Inspection rules.

You can set the Service to ANY to make the rule match traffic using any application or protocol. A previous Continue rule can define a Protocol of the type Protocol Agent for certain types of traffic that is allowed by rules with ANY as the Service. If there is no previous Continue rule that matches the same connection that would define a Protocol of the type Protocol Agent, a rule that allows ANY Service does not apply a Protocol of this type.



**Note:** Firewalls cannot handle some types of traffic correctly if the traffic is allowed without the correct Protocol of the type Protocol Agent when connection tracking is on (stateful inspection).



**Note:** For the most efficient inspection on IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls, select the correct Protocol of the type Protocol Agent when connection tracking is on (stateful inspection).

### Related concepts

[Configuring default settings for several Access rules](#) on page 819

## Selecting logging options for Firewall Access rules

Rules can create a log or alert entry each time they match.

By default, the rule's **Logging** options are undefined, which means that the rule uses logging options that have been set in the previous Continue rule above. If there is no previous Continue rule, Firewalls create a Stored-type log entry. Layer 2 Firewalls and Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls log the connections by default. IPS engines and Virtual IPS engines do not log the connections by default. Each individual rule can be set to override the default values.

Logging for the closing of the connection can be turned on or off, or on with accounting information. You must collect accounting information if you want to create reports that are based on traffic volumes.

When the Log Server is unavailable, log entries are temporarily stored on the engine. When the engine is running out of space to store the log entries, it begins discarding log data in the order of importance. Monitoring data is discarded first, followed by log entries marked as Transient and Stored, and finally log entries marked as Essential. The Alert entries are the last log entries to be discarded.

The settings for storing the logs temporarily on the engine are defined in the engine's log spooling policy.

## Adding user authentication requirements for Firewall Access rules

The Firewall can enforce user authentication

(IPv4 only) A mobile VPN always requires some form of authentication, but you can also add the authentication requirement to non-VPN rules.

The authentication requirements are configured in the **Authentication** cell. The cell accepts User and User Group elements to define the end users who are allowed to make connections allowed by the rule. Authentication Method elements define the type of authentication required for connections that match the rule.

If the authentication fails, the connection is discarded. If the authentication succeeds, the connection is allowed through.

#### Related concepts

[Getting started with user authentication](#) on page 1099

[Overview of external user authentication](#) on page 1102

## Restricting Firewall Access rule matches based on the Source VPN

You can match Firewall Access rules based on whether the traffic is coming from a VPN.

You can define that the rule matches only non-VPN traffic, or only traffic from a certain VPN.

## Using Access rules

There are some additional concepts that are useful when working with Access rules.

#### Related concepts

[Using policy elements and rules](#) on page 798

## Allowing system communications in Access rules

You must add Access rules for some types of communication between SMC components.

The necessary communications between the engine and other SMC components are allowed in the predefined Firewall Template Policy, IPS Template, and Layer 2 Firewall Template. However, the predefined templates do not allow other SMC components to communicate through the engine to some third SMC component.

For example, when you have a firewall and a Log Server at a remote site that are managed by a Management Server behind a firewall at a central site, you must create rules in the Firewall Policy at the central site to allow:

- Management and monitoring connections to/from the remote firewall.
- Monitoring and log browsing connections from the central site to the remote Log Server.
- Any remote-site Management Client connections to the Management Server at the central site.

If NAT is applied to the connections, Access rules alone are not enough. You must also create Location elements and add Contact Addresses for the elements to define which translated addresses are necessary for making contact.

If you have inline IPS engines or Layer 2 Firewalls, be careful that you do not define rules that would prevent other SMC components from communicating with each other.

There are predefined Service elements for all system communications. You can use these elements to create Access rules.

**Related concepts**[NAT and system communications](#) on page 836**Related reference**[Security Management Center ports](#) on page 1433[Forcepoint NGFW Engine ports](#) on page 1436

## Configuring default settings for several Access rules

The **Continue** action allows you to set default values for some settings in rules to avoid defining the same settings for several rules individually.

When a connection matches a rule with Continue as the action, some of the rule's settings are written in memory but the matching continues until another rule that matches is found. This matching rule uses the defaults set in the Continue rule *unless* the rule specifically overrides the defaults with different settings. This way, you do not have to define the settings for each rule separately.

You can use Continue rules to set default settings for a general type of traffic and define settings for individual rules only when required. There are also default values that are used for rules that are set to use the values of a Continue rule, but there is no previous matching Continue rule.

The options that can be set using Continue rules in Access rules include:

- The Connection Tracking option:
  - For Firewalls, the default is on.
  - Idle Time-out also overrides the global defaults set in the engine's properties.
  - The concurrent connection limits define the maximum number of connections allowed from a single source or destination IP address.
- The logging options (for Firewalls, the default is **Stored**).
- The Protocol option inside the Service used (for Firewalls, this option is used to apply a Protocol to rules with ANY as their Service).
- The QoS Class (default is that no specific QoS Class is assigned).

Continue rules are defined the same way as other rules. However, you must remember that when any of the options listed above is set in the Continue rule, many or even all rules below can be affected. The Continue rule options are used by the rules below if the source, destination, service port, and the optional source VPN match the same connection as the Continue rule. Continue rules are inherited from Template Policies into lower-level templates and policies like any other rules.

Continue rules behave in the same way as any other rules. A Continue rule can be overridden by:

- A later Continue rule that has an identical scope (such as Source and Destination)
- Partially overridden by a Continue rule that partially overlaps with the previous Continue rule
- A rule with the Allow or Apply VPN action that has an identical scope and specifies different settings.

When you define Continue rules with different matching criteria, you can have several Continue rules one after another without them interfering with each other in any way at all.

Sub-Policies might require special attention with Continue rules: the Sub-Policies can have different options when you insert them into different policies if the Sub-Policy rules do not override the options set by preceding Continue

rules. Also, when a Sub-Policy contains a Continue rule, the options are then used for further matching in the higher-level policy (if the processing returns to the higher-level policy).

## Using Continue rules to set Access rule logging options

Instead of setting the log level for all rules individually, you can set a Continue rule in a template or in a policy to set the default log level.

One common use for the Continue action is to set the default log level for all subsequent rules. The log level for any subsequent matching rules can be left undefined. The rules trigger logging as defined in the Continue rule.

**Figure 114: Setting the default log level**

ID	Source	Destination	Service	Action	Authentication	QoS ...	Logging
15.1	ANY	ANY	ANY	Continue			Transient No Closing

The default log level is set to Transient for any source, destination, or service. All subsequent rules in this policy and any sub-policies log Transient by default. Individual rules can still override this option with specific log levels, such as Essential or Stored.

If logging is not defined for a rule and there is no prior Continue rule that sets logging options, the default log level is Stored.

## Using Continue rules to set the Protocol in Access rules

The default Protocol can be set using the Continue action.

This way, the correct Protocol is also used for traffic that is allowed by rules that are set to match any Service. These rules have no particular Service element that would set the correct protocol). This setting can even be mandatory, for example, if you want to allow certain protocols that allocate ports dynamically. On Firewalls, the Protocol is needed to associate the traffic with the correct protocol for further inspection and to handle some types of traffic, such as FTP, correctly. The IPS Template and the Layer 2 Firewall Template include several Continue rules that associate all traffic with Protocols according to standard ports. The Firewall Template includes one Continue rule that defines that Protocols of the type Protocol Agent are used for the Service Group **Default Services with Agents**.

**Figure 115: Protocol Agent rule in Firewall Template**

14	ANY	ANY	Default Services with Agents	Continue
----	-----	-----	------------------------------	----------

You can set a Protocol for more types of protocols or override the Default rule shown in the illustration above for some or all connections. Do this by placing one or more Continue rules at the top or some other suitable place in your own template or policy. The Source and Destination can be some specific addresses if you want to limit the scope of your Continue rules.



**Note:** A rule that matches the same source, destination, and service port as the Continue rule and specifies an Protocol of the types Protocol Agent, Protocol Tag, or SSM Proxy for the Service

overrides the default set in the Continue rule. To avoid this limitation, do not add rules that specify these types of Protocols for the same matching criteria as the Continue rules.

If you have TCP and UDP services set up in your network under non-standard ports, the traffic might not be associated to the correct protocol. The traffic could therefore be inspected at a more general (TCP or UDP) level. In this case, you can create your own custom Situation and add it in your policy to have the traffic inspected with the correct protocol information. Only some protocols and some of their parameters are supported in the services that are used in IPS policies.

You can also add your own rules for the opposite purpose: to have some traffic not inspected as a particular protocol, but more generally as TCP or UDP traffic. In this case, you add a rule in your policy that includes the general TCP or UDP Service element from the IP-proto branch of the Services tree.

## Using Continue rules with Sidewinder Proxies

When you use Continue rules to specify a default Protocol, including Sidewinder Proxies, rules later in the policy can override the defaults set in Continue rules.

These limitations are due to the way that rules are processed, and are not specific to Sidewinder Proxies.

If you use a Continue rule to specify a Sidewinder Proxy as a default Protocol, a rule later in the policy overrides the Continue rule that specifies the Sidewinder Proxy when:

- The rule matches the same source, destination, and service port as the Continue rule.
- The rule specifies a Protocol of the type Protocol Agent or Protocol Tag for the Service.

To avoid this limitation, do not add rules that specify a Protocol of the type Protocol Agent or Protocol Tag for the same matching criteria as the Continue rules for Sidewinder Proxies.

**Table 82: Example of a rule that overrides a Continue rule that specifies a Sidewinder Proxy**

ID	Source	Destination	Service	Action
14.1	Internal network	External	SSM HTTP on port 80	Continue
14.7	Internal network	External	HTTP with Protocol Agent on port 80	Allow

In this example, the second rule overrides the defaults set in the Continue rule because it specifies a Protocol Agent for the same matching criteria as the Continue rule. HTTP traffic on port 80 from the internal network to external destinations matches the second rule. The traffic does not use the Sidewinder Proxy.

A rule later in the policy does not override the default Protocol set in the Continue rule when:

- The rule matches the same source, destination, and port as the Continue rule.
- The rule does not specify a Protocol of the type Protocol Agent or Protocol Tag for the Service. For example, the rule specifies a Service element without a Protocol Agent or Protocol Tag.

**Table 83: Example of a rule that does not override a Continue rule that specifies a Sidewinder Proxy**

ID	Source	Destination	Service	Action
14.1	Internal network	External	SSM HTTP on port 80	Continue
14.7	Internal network	External	HTTP on port 80	Allow

In this example, the second rule does not override the first because it specifies a Service element without a Protocol Agent or Protocol Tag. Because there is no more specific rule for the same matching criteria, the traffic uses the Sidewinder Proxy specified in the Continue rule.

## Rematching tunneled packets in Access rules

---

You can rematch encapsulated traffic against the Access rules.

If an engine inspects traffic that is tunneled using IP-in-IP tunneling or Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE), the traffic can be checked against IPv4 or IPv6 Access rules several times. The number of checks depends on the number and type of layers in the tunnel.

For example, when an IPv4 datagram contains an IPv6 datagram, the IPv4 datagram is first matched according to Access rules. If the tunneling Service in the Access rule specifies that the encapsulated IPv6 datagram should be matched again, the contents are then matched against the IPv6 Access rules.

To limit the number of encapsulating layers, the engine properties define the maximum rematch count. By default, the maximum rematch count is 1. If this count is exceeded, the packet is allowed or discarded according to the setting specified in the engine properties and a log or an alert is generated.

## Enforcing safe search features in Access rules

---

The safe search feature helps schools and other organizations to limit web searches and filter out potentially offensive content from search results.

Safe search can be implemented in two ways:

- *DNS-based* (used by Google SafeSearch)
- *Safe search based on HTTP request modification* (used by, for example, Bing, Yahoo, and DuckDuckGo)

### DNS-based solution for Google SafeSearch

---

When DNS (TCP with Google SafeSearch) or DNS (UDP with Google SafeSearch) services are in use, Forcepoint NGFW redirects Google searches to Google's SafeSearch service by changing the DNS response. It forces all users to use safe search while still allowing a secure connection via HTTPS. Changing safe search settings in the browser does not disable safe search.

### HTTP request modification for Bing, Yahoo, and DuckDuckGo searches

---

Use HTTP (SafeSearch) or HTTPS (SafeSearch with decryption) services to enforce safe search with Bing, Yahoo, and DuckDuckGo. Forcepoint NGFW modifies the search request by adding a "restriction" redirect string to the search URL to prevent offensive content from showing in the search results. You must have Deep Inspection enabled in the Access rule for HTTPS traffic for the safe search enforcement to apply to HTTPS.

## Using Alias elements in Access rules

---

You can use **Alias** elements to create a single rule that changes in meaning depending on where it is installed.

*Alias* elements are one of the most useful tools for reducing the complexity of a policy. Alias elements are like variables in a mathematical equation—their value changes depending on the component on which they are installed. Because Alias elements are able to change their meaning to adapt to local contexts, they can be used to create a single rule. That rule then changes in meaning depending on where it is installed. With Alias elements, you can avoid creating multiple, near-duplicate rule sets when you have several engines. The Alias element is

used like any other network element. However, the IP addresses that the Alias element represents depends on the engine where the rules are installed. The IP address to engine mapping is defined in the Alias element.

For example, a company has its headquarters in Helsinki and branch offices in Atlanta, Munich, Tokyo, and Montreal. Each office has its own web server. The web server rules could be put in a single Sub-Policy, but each location's web server has a different IP address. Normal rules would require allowing access to all IP addresses on all engines, which is not only unnecessary, but can also be a security risk. Using Alias elements, the company can create a single set of rules that are still valid when applied to multiple engines. These rules would not, however, allow access to IP addresses that are not in use on a particular engine.

The administrator of the example company can create a web server alias, `$WebServers`. In the Alias element's properties, the administrator defines what `$WebServers` means for each component. For the IPS engine in Helsinki, the web server would be defined as 192.168.1.101, for the IPS engine in Tokyo as 192.168.2.101, and so on.

When the administrator installs a policy containing the web server rules with the Alias element, the addresses are translated to the correct address on that component. Therefore, when the policy is installed on the Helsinki IPS engine, the Alias element translates to an IP address of 192.168.1.101. The other addresses are not included in the policy that is transferred to that particular engine.

In this way, Alias elements simplify policies without reducing security.

## Creating user-specific Access rules

You can use User and User Group elements as the source or destination of a rule to create user-specific rules.

You can optionally integrate a McAfee Logon Collector server with Forcepoint NGFW to associate users in an Active Directory database with IP addresses. This makes it possible to use User and User Group elements as the source or destination of a rule to create user-specific rules without requiring user authentication.

User-specific rules do not replace user authentication; they are a tool to simplify the configuration of access control, and improve the end-user experience by allowing transparent access to services. They are intended to be used for trusted users in a trusted environment where strong authentication is not required. User-specific rules can be used together with user authentication rules to allow some user groups to access a service, while otherwise requiring authentication for the same service.

## Using Domain Name elements in Firewall Access rules

You can use Domain Name elements in Access rules to represent an Internet domain that might be associated with multiple IP addresses.

If you have specified one or more DNS servers in the engine's properties, the engine periodically queries the DNS server to automatically resolve domain names to IP addresses. This makes it possible to create rules that are valid even if new addresses are added to the domain or the domain's IP addresses change. If the DNS server returns multiple IP addresses for the same domain name, the engine associates all the IP addresses with the domain name. However, if there are a large number IP addresses associated with the same domain name, the DNS server might only reply with a few of the IP addresses at a time. In this case, the engine might need to make more queries to the DNS server to resolve all the IP addresses for the domain name. By default, the engine queries the DNS server every six minutes. Resolved IP addresses are kept in the engine's DNS cache for a maximum of one hour by default.



**Note:** The DNS cache is not synchronized between nodes of a cluster. Each node separately queries the DNS server using the node's NDI address. It is possible that the DNS cache can be different on different nodes of a cluster.

# Using Zone elements for interface matching in firewall Access rules

You can use Zone elements to match traffic based on which interfaces it is traveling through.

Zone elements are interface references that can combine several network interfaces of an engine into one logical entity. Using Zones in the Source or Destination cells allows you to restrict traffic according to which interfaces the traffic is traveling through. Zones can be useful, for example, when a type of traffic is only valid it when it travels through a specific interface, but basic Anti-Spoofing allows the traffic on any interface.

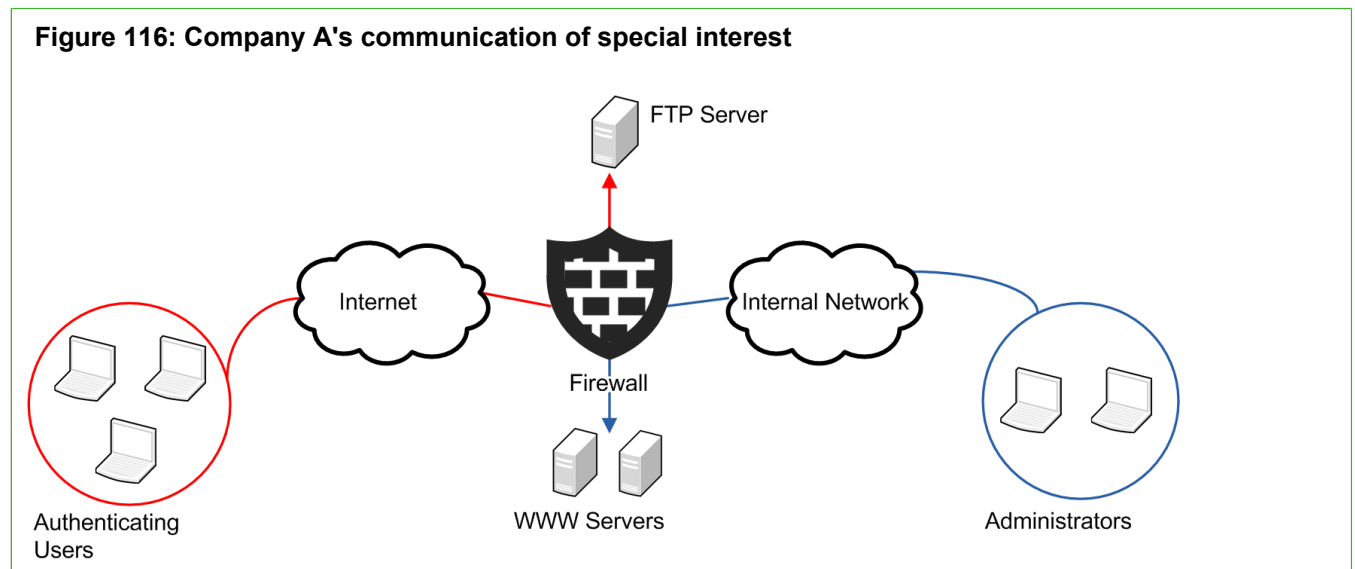
## Examples of firewall Access rules

These examples illustrate some common uses for Firewall Access rules and general steps on how each example is configured.

### Example: firewall Access rule order

An example of how Access rule order affects traffic matching.

Company A has an office network, a DMZ for WWW servers, and a second DMZ for an FTP server. The administrators only need to add rules for the DMZ traffic.



The WWW servers must be accessible to anyone from both internal and external networks. HTTP traffic is inspected against the Inspection rules, excluding the administrators' own PCs (on the right in the illustration), since they often test the servers for vulnerabilities. The FTP server is accessible to all users in the general office network, but only to certain external users (on the left) that authenticate using an external authentication server.

The administrators:

- 1) Create Host elements for the WWW servers, the FTP server, and the administrators' PCs.
- 2) Create a Group element that contains the WWW server Host elements.



- 3) Create a Group element that contains the administrator PCs' Host elements.
- 4) Configure an external authentication server for use with the Firewall.
- 5) Create User and User Group elements for the allowed external FTP users.
- 6) Add IPv4 Access rules with the Allow action for access to the DMZs:

**Table 84: Access rules for the DMZ**

Source	Destination	Service	Authentication	Action
"Administrator PCs" Group	"WWW Servers" Group	"HTTP" Service		Allow (Deep Inspection Off)
ANY	"WWW Servers" Group	"HTTP" Service		Allow (Deep Inspection Off)
Network element for Office Network	"FTP Server" Host	"FTP" Service		Allow (Deep Inspection Off)
ANY	"FTP Server" Host	"FTP" Service	"External Users" User Group Require authentication with the external authentication method selected	Allow (Deep Inspection Off)

- As seen in the rule table, there are two rules for traffic to both the WWW servers and the FTP server.
- The rules are arranged so that the more specific rules are above the more general rules. For example, the rule allowing administrators to connect to the WWW servers without checking against the Inspection rules is above the more general rule. The general rule allows any connection to the servers as subject to the Inspection rules.
- If the first two rules were in the opposite order, the rule specific to administrators would never match, as the rule with the source as ANY would be applied first. The connection would be allowed according to that general rule, and the firewall would stop checking the rule table.

## Example: Continue rules in firewall Access rules

An example of using Continue rules to set default options for several Firewall Access rules.

Company B has decided to implement QoS Policies. The administrators want to set the QoS Class for traffic using a classification of high, medium, and low for all traffic depending on the sender. High priority is assigned to a few hosts in different networks, medium priority to one internal network, and low priority to all other hosts. The administrators want to follow how much traffic is allowed using the highest priority. Because of this, they also want to make sure that this traffic is logged with the accounting option turned on. They decide that the lower priorities of traffic don't need to be permanently logged at this point, so the administrators:

- 1) Configure the QoS features.

- 2) Create elements for all high-priority hosts.
- 3) Add the following Access rules to the top of their policy:

**Table 85: Continue rules for Logging and QoS Class**

Source	Destination	Service	Action	Logging	QoS Class
Important Hosts	ANY	ANY	Continue	Stored with accounting	High priority
Network element for Important Network	ANY	ANY	Continue	Transient	Medium priority
All other Hosts	ANY	ANY	Continue	Transient	Low priority

After adding these rules, individual rules can override the settings as needed. However, most of the existing rules governing access from internal networks to the Internet now use the QoS Class and Logging options as set in these rules.

- 4) Transfer the policy to the firewall.

## Example: User-specific firewall Access rules

An example of using Access Control by User to define Firewall Access rules that only apply to specific users.

Company C has an existing Microsoft Active Directory server that it uses for user accounts in its Windows domain. Users are divided into groups according to the department they work in. The administrators have already integrated the Active Directory user database with the SMC to be able to view and manage Users in the Management Client.

There is already an Access rule that blocks access to a video sharing site. However, the marketing team needs to be able to publish videos for its new marketing campaign on the site. The administrators want to allow users in the marketing group to access the site, but do not want to require user authentication.

Because the video sharing site has multiple servers with different IP addresses, the administrators decide to use a Domain Name element. This element dynamically resolves the IP addresses of servers in the video sharing site's Internet Domain.

The administrators:

- 1) Integrate a McAfee Logon Collector server with Forcepoint NGFW.
- 2) Add the following Access rule before the rule that blocks access to the video sharing site:

**Table 86: User-Specific Access Rule**

Source	Destination	Service	Action
Marketing user group	Domain Name element that represents the video sharing site	HTTP	Allow

- 3) Install the policy on the firewall.

## Examples of IPS Access rules

These examples illustrate some common uses for IPS Access rules and general steps on how each example is configured.

### Example: exempting traffic from inspection in IPS Access rules

An example of using IPS Access rules to allow specific traffic without deep inspection.

At Company A, there is an IPS engine deployed between the general office network and a subnetwork.

**Figure 117: Company A's networks**



In the subnetwork, there are several servers that provide services to the general office network as well as the Management Server and Log Server. There is also a Firewall deployed between the internal and external networks. There is heavy traffic to the subnetwork where the internal servers are. The administrators decide to exempt the log transmissions between the Firewall and the Log Server from being inspected against the Inspection Policy to reduce the IPS engine's workload. The administrators:

- 1) Create an IPS policy based on the IPS Template to replace the Default IPS Policy that they have currently installed.
- 2) Add a rule in the Access rules for their IPS engine:

**Table 87: Access Rule for exempting traffic from inspection against the Inspection policy**

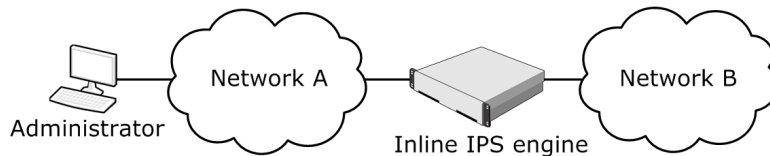
Source	Destination	Service	Action	Options
Firewall	Log Server	SG Engine to Log	Allow	Deep inspection: Off

# Example: using Access rules to filter traffic on an inline IPS engine

An example of using IPS Access rules to filter traffic between internal networks.

Administrators at company B decide that they want more control over which hosts and ports can be used between two networks.

**Figure 118: Company B's network**



Hosts in the two networks must be able to communicate between each other using certain specific ports. Also, one of the administrators has a workstation connected to Network A. The administrator's workstation must have unrestricted access to Network B. The administrators decide that the inline IPS engine provides an acceptable level of security between two internal networks.

The administrators:

- 1) Create elements for network A, network B, and administration host.
- 2) Add new Access rules for their inline IPS engine:

**Table 88: Access rules for filtering traffic**

Source	Destination	Service	Action	Options
Administrator Network B	Administrator Network B	ANY	Allow	Logging: Undefined Deep inspection: On
Network A Network B	Network A Network B	Service elements for allowed services	Allow	Logging: Undefined Deep inspection: On
ANY	ANY	ANY	Allow	Logging: Stored Deep inspection: (irrelevant, because dropped traffic is never inspected further)

- Each of the first two rules allows traffic between the Source and the Destination in both directions. The order of the elements within the Source, Destination, and Service cells makes no difference to the outcome of the matching process.
- The order of the rules is important. The rules above proceed correctly from most specific to the least specific. The two first rules must be in this order, because the administrators want all connections from the Administrator host (which is in Network A) to always match the first rule and never the second one, since the rules have different logging options.
- The last of the added rules stops all traffic that is not allowed in the rules above to prevent unauthorized traffic from passing.



**Note:** If the inline interfaces are on a fail-open network card, traffic passes freely whenever the IPS engine is offline regardless of what the Access rules state.



## Contents

- [Getting started with NAT rules](#) on page 831
- [Configuring NAT rules](#) on page 832
- [Using NAT and NAT rules](#) on page 835
- [Examples of NAT configuration](#) on page 839

## Getting started with NAT rules

NAT rules define how NAT (network address translation) is applied to traffic.

Firewalls, Master NGFW Engines, and Virtual Firewalls can perform NAT. NAT replaces the source or destination IP addresses in packets with other IP addresses. NAT rules are matched to allowed connections after Access rule matching. NAT is applied before a routing decision is made, so the address translation can affect how the traffic is routed. NAT can be applied to IPv4 and IPv6 traffic.



**Note:** Master NGFW Engines always use Firewall Policies regardless of the role of the Virtual NGFW Engines they host. Virtual Firewalls use Firewall Policies.

In addition to manually configured NAT rules, you can also use element-based NAT to define how firewalls translate network IP addresses. The NAT rules generated from NAT definitions are applied only after the NAT rules that you have added manually to the policy. This means that the NAT rules that are generated from NAT definitions do not override the rules that you have manually added to the policy.

You can define the following types of NAT:

- **Static source NAT.** Typically translates the internal (“real”) IP address of an internal host to a different IP address in the external network.
- **Static destination NAT.** Typically translates the public IP address of an internal host to the private IP address, so that the host (server) can receive new connections from external hosts. Allows IP address or port translation (PAT), or both.
- **A combination of both of the previous types of NAT.** Typically translates both the Source and Destination IP address in the same connection. Used, for example, to allow internal hosts to access your organization’s public servers using the public IP addresses of both the client and the server.
- **Dynamic source NAT.** Typically translates the internal IP addresses of several internal hosts to one or a few external IP addresses. Used to hide the internal network structure from outsiders and to avoid acquiring a separate public IP address for each of the hosts.
- **Dynamic destination NAT** can be configured for IPv4 traffic as part of the Server Pool feature (not in NAT rules).

General guidelines for adding NAT rules:

- NAT rules only apply to connections that are handled statefully (Connection Tracking option is enabled in the Access rule that allows the connection).

- NAT rules are applied to whole connections; reverse NAT for reply packets is automatic, so you do not need to define rules for replies within a connection.
- Connections are matched against NAT rules with the same type of matching criteria as other types of rules. The first matching NAT rule is applied and any other NAT rules are ignored. To prevent a NAT rule from matching some connections, create a NAT rule that specifies no translation for those connections and place it above the rule that matches.
- By default, NAT rules are ignored for traffic that enters or leaves a VPN tunnel. To match such traffic against NAT rules, enable NAT in the VPN Gateway element's properties.
- Routing decisions are made after NAT, so remember that translating the destination address can affect how the traffic is routed. If not included in existing definitions, you might need to add the translated addresses to the Routing tree.
- If you install the Firewall Policy with the **Keep Previous Configuration Definitions** option selected, previous NAT rules are kept until all currently open connections that use those rules are closed. In some cases, the old and the new rules can conflict and prevent policy installation until the option is deactivated.

## Configuring NAT rules

Address translation is configured as part of the Firewall Policy using NAT rules.

NAT rules are configured on the **IPv4 NAT** and **IPv6 NAT** tabs in Firewall Policy and Firewall Template Policy elements. Firewall Sub-Policies cannot contain NAT rules.



**Note:** NAT rules are applied only after a packet matches an Access rule and is allowed by the firewall. The Access rule must have connection tracking enabled (default).

**Figure 119: Newly inserted NAT rule**

IPv4 Access	IPv6 Access	Inspection	IPv4 NAT	IPv6 NAT		Used on	Comment	Rule Name	Hits
2.1	<None>	<None>	ANY			± ANY		@2097213.6	
No NAT									

①
②
③

- 1 **Source, Destination, and Service** are used to match the rule to traffic.
- 2 The **NAT** cell defines how the translation is done.
- 3 **Used on** makes the rule match on particular firewalls.

The illustration shows a NAT rule that has just been inserted into a policy. The **Source**, **Destination**, and **Service** cells are set to **<none>** and they must be changed to something else for the rule to match any traffic. The **Used on** cell is also used for traffic matching: you can add specific Firewall elements in this cell to make the rule valid only on those firewalls, or you can leave it to the default **ANY** to make the rule valid on all firewalls where the policy is installed.

The following table explains briefly what each NAT rule cell does (more information is included in the task flow later in this chapter). The columns are presented here in the default order, but you can drag and drop them to your preferred order in your own Management Client.



**Table 89: NAT rule columns**

Cell	Explanation
<b>ID</b>	(Not editable.) Automatically assigned ID number that indicates the order of the rules in the policy. The rules are matched against traffic in the order of the ID numbers. For example, rule 4.3 is the third rule added in this Firewall Policy element to the insert point that is the fourth NAT rule in the upper-level Template Policy element.
<b>Source</b>	A list of matching criteria that defines the IP addresses and interfaces that the rule matches. The Source and Destination cells accept any elements in the Network Elements category, as well as User and User Group elements. Both the Source and the Destination defined must match the source and destination of a packet for the packet to match the rule. The addresses you insert must be valid for the address translation operation, for example, static source address translation requires that the Source cell contains a single continuous IP address space.
<b>Destination</b>	
<b>Service</b>	Allows limiting the rule's scope to a specific protocol (similar to Access rules). The Service cell accepts only Service elements.
<b>NAT</b>	The network address translation that is applied to connections that match the rule. You can also set outbound load-balancing parameters in this cell. If you leave this cell empty, address translation is not applied to matching connections. In other words, the rule specifies that NAT is not applied to matching connections (to make an exception to the other NAT rules below).
<b>Used on</b>	The firewalls on which the NAT rule is applied. Used for creating NAT rules when a shared policy is used on several different firewalls. The Used on cell accepts only Firewall and Firewall Cluster elements.
<b>Comment</b>	Your free-form comment for this rule. You can also add separate comment rows in between rules.
<b>Rule Name</b>	Contains a rule tag and optionally a rule name. Name: (Optional) Name or description for the rule. Displayed alongside the rule tag. Tag: (Not editable) An automatically assigned unique identifier for the rule. Works as a link between the log entries and the rule that has generated the log entries. The rule tag consists of two parts (for example, @180.2). The first part of the tag is permanent and belongs to only that rule. The second part changes when the rule is changed. The first part and the second part are separated by a period.
<b>Hit</b>	(Not editable) Shows the number of connections that have matched the rule. This information is only shown if you have run a Rule Counter Analysis for the policy. The cell shows "N/A" if there is no information available about the rule.

**Related concepts**

[Outbound load-balancing NAT](#) on page 838

## Considerations for designing NAT rules

NAT rules are processed from the top down, and more specific rules must be placed above more general rules that match the same traffic.

The traffic is matched based on the **Source**, **Destination**, **Service**, and **Used on** cells. The Source and Destination addresses in the cells must be valid for the address translation operation (the Source cell for source address translation and the Destination cell for destination address translation). When the first matching rule is

found, the NAT defined for the rule is applied and the rest of the NAT rules are ignored. All NAT operations for the same connection must be defined in the same NAT rule (if you want to apply both source and destination translation to a connection).



**Note:** NAT is applied after an Access rule has allowed the connection but before a routing decision is made. Make sure that the Access rules allow the connection with the original (before NAT) addresses. Make sure that the translated (after NAT) addresses are included under the correct interface in the Routing pane of the Engine Editor, if necessary.

If you use element-based NAT, the NAT rules generated from NAT definitions are applied only after the NAT rules that have been added manually to the policy. This means that the NAT rules that are generated from NAT definitions do not override the rules that you have manually added to the Firewall policy. Remember, however, that a more specific NAT rule can prevent traffic from matching the automatically generated NAT rules.

## Default elements for NAT rules

The Firewall Template contains NAT rules that exclude some system communications from address translation.

The NAT rules exclude from address translation the communications between the firewall and the Management Server that controls it. Also the communications from the firewall to the Log Server where the firewall sends its log data are excluded. Do not use NAT rules to translate the addresses in these system communications. Define Locations and Contact Addresses instead.

### Related concepts

[NAT and system communications](#) on page 836

## Defining Source, Destination, and Service for NAT

**Source**, **Destination**, and **Service** are the main matching criteria that determine if a NAT rule is applied to a connection.

These criteria are defined in the same way as in Access rules.

## Defining address translation

Address translation is defined in the NAT cell of the NAT rules.

If a connection matches the rule, the address translation defined in the NAT cell is applied. You can leave the NAT cell empty, if you do not want to apply NAT to any connections that match the rule. Otherwise, this cell allows you to define that the source address, the destination address, or both addresses are translated.

**Static** translation implies a one-to-one relationship. Therefore, in static source and destination translation, the translated address space must be as large as the original address space.

**Dynamic** source translation allows a many-to-one relationship, so that several hosts can use the same IP address. In dynamic translation, a port is reserved for each host that is communicating. Then as many hosts can communicate simultaneously using a single IP address as there are ports in the port range you define. However, if the ports run out, translation cannot be done and some of the communications fail. If failures happen, you might

need to divide your dynamic translation rule and use an extra IP address for the translation. Naturally, dynamic translation can only be applied to communications that use ports (TCP and UDP-based protocols).

## Defining the Firewalls that apply the NAT rules

You can use the **Used on** cell in the NAT rule to limit the scope of NAT rules based on the firewall where the rule is installed.

This way, you can install the same policy on different firewalls and create NAT rules that take into account the different addressing in the different networks. If you leave the cell empty, the rule is applied on any firewall where the policy is installed.

## How NAT affects other firewall configurations

Translated IP addresses are used in routing, in VPN site definitions, and system communications.

After adding or editing NAT rules, you must consider how these areas of communications are affected and what changes are needed. If you are using Multi-Link, Outbound Multi-Links have their own NAT configurations that must not overlap with the NAT rules you define.

In particular, check that:

- Access rules and Inspection rules use the addresses that are seen in the packets as they arrive on the firewall (as they are before any NAT operation is done).
- Routing decisions are made after NAT, so the routing decision is made using the translated address. Make sure that the translated address is included in the Routing pane of the Engine Editor under the correct interface, unless the packets are forwarded to the default gateway.
- If you translate addresses of communications going through VPN tunnels, the translated addresses must be included in the VPN site definitions.



**Note:** By default, NAT is disabled with connections traversing a VPN (NAT rules are completely ignored for VPN traffic). If you want the NAT rules to apply to connections traversing a VPN, enable NAT in the properties of the VPN element.

## Using NAT and NAT rules

There are some more concepts that are useful when working with NAT.

The following sections provide further information about configuring NAT:

- *NAT and system communications*
- *Outbound load-balancing NAT*
- *Proxy ARP and NAT*
- *Protocols and NAT*

For general information about using rules, see *Using policy elements and rules*.

**Related concepts**[NAT and system communications](#) on page 836[Outbound load-balancing NAT](#) on page 838[Proxy ARP and NAT](#) on page 838[Protocols and NAT](#) on page 839[Using policy elements and rules](#) on page 798

## NAT and system communications

If NAT is needed between SMC components, you must define Contact Addresses for the communications so that the components use the correct address for contact when needed.

Contact Addresses are used in a NAT environment for communications of SMC components with each other and with some external components that function as a part of the system. An example of these is a RADIUS server used for authenticating Administrators. Contact Addresses might also be needed for site-to-site VPNs and mobile VPNs.

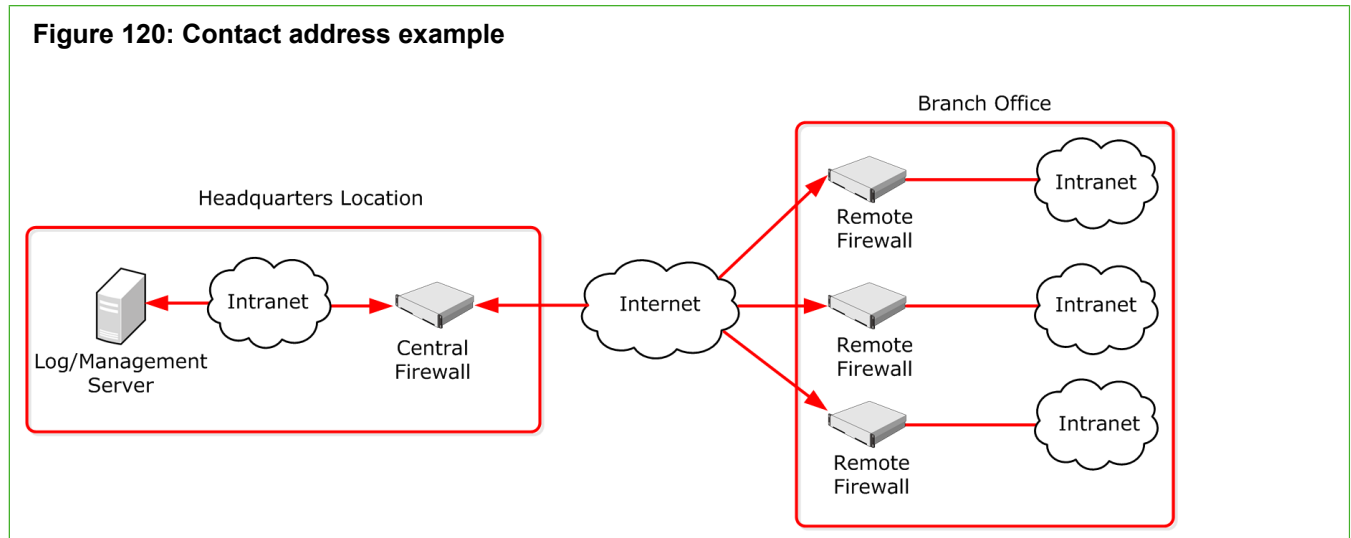
The Firewall Template includes NAT rules which define that NAT is not done for communications between the firewall where the policy is installed and the Management Server and Log Server that the firewall uses. If these connections require NAT, the configuration must be done as explained here. Other system communications traversing the firewall can be translated as any other connections. However, Location and Contact Address definitions are usually still needed for those components so that they know the correct addresses to use with each other. See *Situation where contact addresses are needed scenario*.

Contact Addresses are defined for *Locations*, which is an element that represents all devices that are routable behind a particular interface of a NAT device. The components that need Contact Addresses are placed in the Locations according to the Contact Address they use.

**Related concepts**[Situations where contact addresses are needed](#) on page 837

# Situations where contact addresses are needed

An example of a situation in which Contact Addresses are needed.



In this illustration, there are several remote firewalls that are managed through Management and Log Servers at a central site. NAT is typically applied at the following points:

- The central site firewall or an external router can provide the SMC servers external IP addresses on the Internet. The external addresses must be defined as Contact Addresses so that the remote firewalls can contact the servers across the Internet.
- The central firewall's IP address can be translated by an external router. The external IP address must be defined as a Contact Address to allow VPN connections from the remote firewalls to the central site using that address.
- NAT can also be applied at the remote sites (by external equipment) to translate the remote firewalls' IP address. In this case, you must define Contact Addresses for the remote firewalls so that the Management Server can contact them. The communications between the remote firewalls and the Management Server can also be reversed, so that the remote firewalls open the connections to the Management Server and maintain the connections open while waiting for commands.

When Contact Addresses are needed, a single Location to group all remote sites might be enough. The SMC servers' and the central firewall's definitions must include a Contact Address for the "Remote Firewalls" Location. However, if VPN communications between firewalls from different remote sites are allowed, it is necessary to create a Location for each remote firewall and to add further Contact Addresses for the firewalls.

## Contact addresses, Location elements, and NAT

Contact Addresses represent the translated address of a component. Location elements group components together, so that there is no NAT between them.

The Contact Address represents the translated address of a component. Contact Addresses are defined for each Location element. The Location element is a way to group components together, in effect telling them that there is no NAT device between them.

The SMC components on each side of a NAT device are grouped into two separate Location elements (if necessary, more Location elements can be used). The Contact Address is defined in each element's properties for the other Location. When contacting some other component in their own Location, the components always use the untranslated address. When contacting some component outside their own Location, the contacting

component checks if the other component has a Contact Address defined for the contacting element's Location. If it finds one, it uses the Contact Address. If there is no Location-specific Contact Address defined, the contacting component checks if the element has a Default Contact Address that components belonging to any other Location use for contacting the element. If the element does not have a Default Contact Address, the connection is attempted using the element's untranslated address.

For example, when a Management Server contacts a firewall node through NAT, the Management Server uses the translated Contact Address instead of the firewall node's real Control IP address. The NAT device in between translates the NAT address to the firewall's real IP address as usual.

We recommend dividing elements into different Locations based on NAT and the communications the components have, and not just based on actual physical sites. For example, you might have one central site and several remote sites, and the system communications take place only from each remote site to the central site (not between the remote sites). In this case only two Locations are needed no matter how many of the firewalls use a translated address.



**Note:** If NAT is performed between a Log Server and a Management Client, you might need to select the correct Location for the Management Client as well.

## Outbound load-balancing NAT

You can use NAT for outbound load-balancing.

In addition to source and destination translation, another main use for NAT is outbound load balancing. It is used in a Multi-Link configuration where the Firewall balances outbound traffic between two or more network connections. To be able to direct traffic to the faster connection, the firewall translates outgoing connections to an address from a pool assigned to each available NetLink. In this case, the IP addresses used for the NAT are defined in the properties of the Outbound Multi-Link element.

### Related concepts

[Defining Multi-Link routes for firewalls](#) on page 706

[Getting started with outbound traffic management](#) on page 731

## Proxy ARP and NAT

Automatic proxy ARP requires an explicit route to the host or network to be configured in the Routing pane of the Engine Editor.

*Proxy ARP* (Address Resolution Protocol) is a specification that allows a device to respond to ARP requests on behalf of some other device on the network. When network address translation is used on a firewall, the firewall is typically configured to use proxy ARP so that it can accept packets for the translated addresses. The firewall uses proxy ARP instead of requiring the administrator to assign all the translation addresses to the firewall's network interface.

In the Firewall, proxy ARP is handled automatically. Proxy ARP is enabled by default in the **NAT** cell in NAT rules for each translation type, although you can deselect it, if necessary.

# Protocols and NAT

Protocols of the Protocol Agent type help with problems related to certain complex protocols and NAT.

In some protocols, such as FTP, IP address information is included in the data payload of the packets, which do not normally include information for routing. Protocols of the Protocol Agent can examine the data payload of packets arriving to the firewall and also edit it. For example, when the source address is included in a packet's data, the firewall can translate the original source address and also the address embedded in the data.

## Related concepts

[Protocol Agents overview](#) on page 1005

# Examples of NAT configuration

These examples illustrate some common uses for NAT rules and the general steps on how each example is configured.

## Example: configuring NAT for dynamic source address translation

An example of configuring NAT for dynamic source address translation.

Company A uses private IP addresses that are not routable on the Internet in their internal network. The administrators need to translate the internal IP addresses to IP addresses that are routable on the Internet to make it possible to use external services. The administrators:

- 1) Create an Address Range element "External Addresses" for two consecutive IP addresses from the pool of addresses that they have been assigned by their Internet service provider.
- 2) Add a NAT rule to their Firewall Policy:

**Table 90: Dynamic translation rule for opening connections to the Internet**

Source	Destination	Service	NAT
"\$ Local Protected Sites" Alias	"NOT \$ Local Protected Sites" Expression	ANY	Source: Dynamic to External Addresses 1024–65535

- The administrators use the whole range of high ports (1024–65535) for translating the addresses in this case.
  - Return address translation is done automatically. Therefore, a single rule suffices to cover all (client) hosts that only open connections themselves, and do not need to accept new connections coming from external networks.
- 3) Refresh the Firewall Policy. All internal addresses are now hidden behind two IP addresses and a range of ports.

## Example: configuring NAT for static address translation

An example of configuring NAT for static address translation.

Company A has set up the firewall to translate the IP addresses of all communications between the internal and the external network dynamically. However, the company also has a mail server, which must be able to accept connections from external networks. For this, it must have a fixed translated IP address. The administrators:

- 1) Create the Host element “Mail Server” to represent the mail server’s private IP address.
- 2) Create the Host element “Mail Server NAT” to represent the mail server’s public IP address.
- 3) Add two new NAT rules above the general dynamic translation rule.
  - In this case, new connections can be opened both from the mail server and from external hosts, so two rules are necessary.
- 4) Change the newly added NAT rules as follows:

**Table 91: Static translation rules for opening connections both ways**

Source	Destination	Service	NAT
“Mail Server” Host element	“NOT \$ Local Protected Sites” Expression	“SMTP” Service element	Source: Static from Mail Server to Mail Server NAT
“NOT \$ Local Protected Sites” Expression	“Mail Server NAT” Host	“SMTP” Service element	Destination: Static from Mail Server NAT to Mail Server

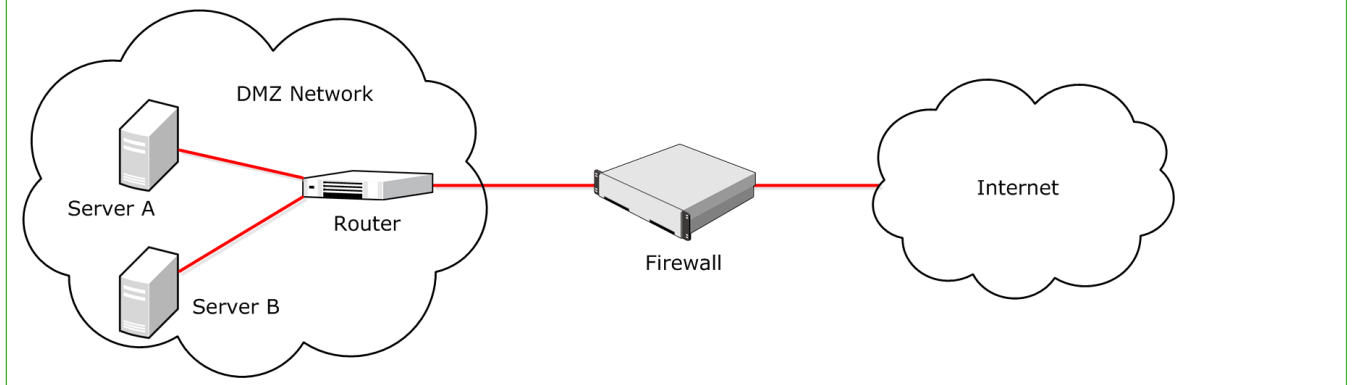
- The first rule is for connections that the mail server opens to external hosts.
  - The second rule is for connections that external hosts open to the mail server.
  - Return address translation is done automatically, so if the connection would always be opened from one end, a single rule would suffice.
- 5) Refresh the Firewall Policy.

## Example: configuring NAT with hosts in the same network

An example of configuring NAT to route traffic between hosts in the same network through the firewall.

Company B has two servers running in the same DMZ network. The servers keep contact with each other to exchange some information. The administrators want to route the traffic through the firewall so that it is logged for reporting purposes instead of letting the servers communicate with each other directly.



**Figure 121: Company B's network setup**

The administrators first intend to just configure the servers to use the external (NAT) address of the other server as a destination and configure the related static destination NAT rule. However, they soon realize that the receiver would see the real source address in the communications and the replies would be sent directly, bypassing the firewall for the reply communications. This action would obviously prevent the connections. A static source NAT is required in addition to the static destination NAT.

The administrators:

- 1) Create Host elements to represent the private addresses of the two servers.
- 2) Create Host elements to represent the public addresses of the two servers.
- 3) Add two new NAT rules before any other NAT rule that would match these connections:

**Table 92: Static translation rules for opening connections both ways**

Source	Destination	Service	NAT
"Server A Private" Host	"Server B Public" Host	ANY	Source: Static from Server A Private to Server A Public  Destination: Static from Server B Public to Server B private.
"Server B Private" Host	"Server A Public" Host	ANY	Source: Static from Server B Private to Server B Public  Destination: Static from Server A Public to Server A private.

- When the servers are configured to contact each other using the public IP addresses, the communications are routed through the firewall.
- The Firewall translates the destination to the other server's private IP address and the private IP address of the source to the public IP address to "hide" the private source address from the receiving host. This way, the replies are sent to the public IP address and routed correctly through the firewall.



# Inspection Policy elements

## Contents

- [Inspection Policy elements and how they work](#) on page 843
- [How Inspection Policy elements are designed](#) on page 844
- [Set default options for Exception rules in Inspection Policy elements](#) on page 849
- [Example: Tuning an Inspection Policy element to eliminate false positives for a firewall](#) on page 849

Inspection Policy elements define how the engines look for patterns in traffic allowed through the Access rules and what happens when a certain type of pattern is found.

## Inspection Policy elements and how they work

Inspection Policy elements define how the main traffic analysis is done for traffic that has been allowed and selected for deep inspection in the Access rules. They define what action the engine takes when a match is found.

The Inspection Policy elements are selected in Firewall, IPS, and Layer 2 Firewall Policy elements. The IPS Template and Layer 2 Firewall Template enable deep inspection for all IP traffic. Deep inspection is not automatically enabled in the Firewall Template.

Deep inspection examines the packet payload throughout whole connections, and acts when something threatening is discovered.

NGFW Engines examine IPv4 and IPv6 traffic against traffic patterns defined in Situation elements. NGFW Engines and Log Servers process the detected events using *Correlation Situation* criteria. Dynamic update packages are the main source of Situation elements. If you want to detect a specific traffic pattern (for example, a particular internal file server in your network being accessed) or if you want to create an edited version of some existing Situation element, you can also define new patterns as custom Situation elements. You can add your custom Situation elements to the Rules tree by selecting a Situation Type for them.

There are three general types of cases for using Inspection Policy elements:

- You can detect attempts to exploit known vulnerabilities in your systems and prevent such attempts from succeeding if the system is not patched against it.
- You can monitor traffic that does not cause alarm on the surface, but when examined for certain patterns, can turn out to conceal actual threats. For example, you can detect if a series of occasional service requests are someone secretly scanning the network structure or if a spike in traffic is a denial-of-service attack.
- You can also detect other sequences in traffic, such as the use of certain applications or even access to a particular file.

Based on the detection results, the Inspection Policy element provides several different ways to react when some traffic is found to match a pattern of interest:

- Stop the traffic if it is going through a Firewall.
- Stop the traffic if it is going through an IPS engine or Layer 2 Firewall with inline interfaces.

- Reset the connection.
- Blacklist the connection on one or more NGFW Engines.
- Allow the traffic.

Regardless of which action is taken, a match can also create:

- A log entry with or without recording some of the detected traffic.
- An alert with or without recording some of the detected traffic.

Firewalls can inspect all protocols. Virtual NGFW Engines do not individually inspect traffic. One shared inspection process running on the Master NGFW Engine handles the inspection and correlation for all Virtual NGFW Engines associated with the Master NGFW Engine. To prevent excessive resource consumption on the Master NGFW Engine, take care when configuring Inspection policies for use on Virtual NGFW Engines.

#### Related concepts

[Getting started with policies](#) on page 779

[Getting started with Situation elements](#) on page 915

## How Inspection Policy elements are designed

Inspection Policy elements activate checks for specific traffic patterns and define what action the engine takes when a match is found.

Firewalls, IPS engines, and Layer 2 Firewalls inspect traffic based on Situation elements, which contain the information about traffic patterns. Patterns can trigger immediate responses or be recorded. Detected events can be matched against Correlation Situations, which combine and further analyze the traffic-based findings to detect more threats and produce an easy-to-read event stream.

Inspection Policy elements are selected on the **Inspection** tab inside the Firewall, IPS, and Layer 2 Firewall Policy and Template Policy elements. Sub-Policies cannot contain Inspection Policy elements. You can add new rules to the Inspection Policy elements in the Policy Editing View and also in the Logs view based on log entries.

The Inspection Policy elements has two parts:

- The **Inspection** tab contains the main rules for finding traffic patterns. The Rules tree is applied to all traffic that is not handled as Exceptions.
- The **Exceptions** tab contains rules that match specific portions of the traffic based on Logical Interface, IP addresses, and Ports. Exceptions have some additional options, and can also set some of those options for the main Rules by using *Continue* rules.

The main Rules tree on the Inspection tab contains a tree of Situations, which are organized under Situation Types. This tree allows you to control which inspection checks trigger a reaction and which checks are ignored. The Rules tree defines general checks that are applied to all patterns that are not handled by a more specific definition. It is not possible to limit the scope of the checks to certain IP addresses or Logical Interfaces in the Rules tree.

**Figure 122: Inspection tab - Rules tree**

Exceptions		Inspection				
Name	Action	Logging ▲	Comment	Overrides	Tag	
[-] Attacks	✖ <b>Terminate</b>	<b>Alert, With Payload</b>		1 Override	@261002.0	
[+] Attack Related Anom...	✖ <i>Terminate</i>	<i>Alert, With Payload</i>				
[+] Compromise	✖ <i>Terminate</i>	<i>Alert, With Payload</i>				
[+] Denial of Service	✖ <i>Terminate</i>	<i>Alert, With Payload</i>		1 Override		
[+] Disclosure	✖ <i>Terminate</i>	<i>Alert, With Payload</i>				
[+] Malicious Routing	✖ <i>Terminate</i>	<i>Alert, With Payload</i>				
[+] Probe	✖ <i>Terminate</i>	<i>Alert, With Payload</i>				
[+] Successful Attacks	✖ <i>Terminate</i>	<i>Alert, With Payload</i>				
[+] Botnet	✖ <b>Terminate</b>	<b>Alert, With Payload</b>			@261011.0	
[+] Suspected Attacks	✖ <b>Terminate</b>	<b>Stored, With Paylo...</b>			@261005.0	

The Exceptions are matched before the main rules. The most frequent use of Exceptions is to eliminate false positives. This typically requires permitting a pattern for some part of the traffic while the same pattern still triggers a reaction when it is encountered in any other traffic.

**Figure 123: Exceptions tab**

Exceptions		Inspection						
ID	Situation	Seve...	Logical Interface	Source	Destination	Protocol	Action	Logging
Insert Point								
1.2	Compression and Count Events	ANY	ANY	± ANY	± ANY	ANY	✔ Permit	Stored With Payload
1.3	Generic web feed reader Any Software not specific Generic HTTP client not specific	ANY	ANY	private	private-	ANY	✔ Permit	
1.4	URL Filtering	ANY	ANY	Inter	External	ANY	⇒ Continue Response: custom response	

The main matching cell is the Situation cell, which contains the actual patterns. The other matching cells are Logical Interface, Source, Destination, Protocol, and Time. The role of the other matching cells is to limit the scope of the rule to some specific traffic. For example, the engine can take different action based on which host is the sender or receiver of traffic identified as malicious.

## Verifying and tuning Inspection Policy elements

Tuning increases the relevancy and accuracy of the findings that the system generates.

The most common way to introduce inspection is to start with a default Inspection Policy element. Tuning the policy is important, because a general policy that is meant to work in all environments is not necessarily suited to your particular network environment. A tuning period is needed to activate and deactivate inspection checks based on the findings and your needs.

To help policy tuning, you can use the *passive termination* feature. When passive termination is used, the engine creates a special log entry that notes that a certain connection would have been terminated. However, the engine does not actually terminate the connection. This allows you to check the logs and adjust your policy without the risk of cutting important business communications. There are two levels of activating this feature:

- Passive termination can be activated globally in the engine's properties for the initial policy tuning.
- Later on, you can test newly added Situations by setting individual Exception rules to passive termination mode.

For cautious introduction of new Situations introduced in dynamic update packages, you can use the Tags for the five most recent updates (**Situations > By Tag > By Situation Tag > Recent Updates**).

## Rule order for Inspection Policy elements

The rules in Inspection Policy elements are read from the top down. More specific rules must be placed above more general rules that match the same traffic.

The detailed rules specific to some IP addresses and Protocols are defined as Exceptions. The general rules that are applied to remaining traffic are defined in the Rules tree on the Inspection tab.

The traffic matching in Inspection rules and exceptions is different from other types of rules, because it is done based on the traffic pattern definitions in Situation elements. The engines monitor the network for all patterns included in the policy. When a pattern is found, the Inspection rules and exceptions are matched based on the Situation element that contains the detected pattern. Inspection rules and exceptions match certain patterns only. Non-matching traffic is passed through without any reaction.

The Situation-based configuration logic means that the behavior of the Inspection rules and exceptions can change without anyone editing the policy directly. Just creating a Situation element can include the Situation in the policy if the Situation is associated with a Situation Tag or Situation Type grouping included in the policy.

Actual rules can look different even if they refer to the exact same Situation, since Situations have grouping mechanisms. However, it makes no difference in matching a pattern whether you add the Situation as a single element or together with other Situations through a Situation Tag or Situation Type.

The Permit action allows traffic that matches the traffic pattern and the Terminate action stops traffic that matches the pattern. A Permit action does not unconditionally allow the traffic because processing still continues to look for other patterns. However, a Permit match does prevent the exact same Situation from matching again if it appears at any point further down in the policy.

*Example:* Situation A matches a Permit rule with the logging level set to "None". There is a second rule that contains Situation A below the first rule with Terminate as the action and the logging level set to "Stored". The logs do not show any matches to Situation A and the traffic that matches the pattern continues uninterrupted.

Similarly, the Terminate action prevents the same Situation from matching again as the policy is processed to the end, but does not prevent other Situations from matching simultaneously.

It is important to note that for the purposes of configuring the system, each Situation element is a unique pattern (with the exception that is discussed below). Avoid defining the exact same pattern in different Situation elements because such duplicates in the policy can create unintended results and makes the policies difficult to manage.

*Example:* A Continue rule sets a User Response for Situation A, which matches the URL `www.example.com`. A different rule specifies Termination for Situation B, which also matches `www.example.com`. When the users access the URL, their connections are terminated without a User Response, because the User Response is set for Situation A. However, the traffic is terminated by Situation B. The configuration handles these as two separate patterns.

The exception where one Situation is used in the configuration to prevent a different Situation from matching is URL filtering. When you whitelist URLs, the special URL filtering Situations stop further URL-based matching.

*Example:* A URL filtering category defined in Situation A prevents users from accessing www.example.com (among other sites). The administrators add www.example.com to a custom Situation B that is permitted higher up in the policy. Users can now access www.example.com. With other types of Situations, matching connections would continue to be terminated if two different Situations were used.

Virtual NGFW Engines do not individually inspect traffic. One shared inspection process running on the Master NGFW Engine handles the inspection and correlation for all Virtual NGFW Engines associated with the Master NGFW Engine. To prevent excessive resource consumption on the Master NGFW Engine, take care when configuring Inspection policies for use on Virtual NGFW Engines.

### Related concepts

[Getting started with Situation elements](#) on page 915

## Default elements for Inspection Policy elements

Default Inspection Policy elements are introduced when you import and activate a dynamic update package. The rules in the Inspection Policy Templates can change when you activate new update packages.

To customize inspection, you must have a custom Inspection Policy element. The predefined templates are a good starting point for your own customization.



**Note:** Keeping your system up to date with latest dynamic updates is an essential part of maintaining your Inspection Policy elements.

**Table 93: Default Inspection Policy elements**

Template	Description
<b>No Inspection Policy</b>	Suitable for Firewall deployments, in which only packet filtering is needed. Disables deep packet inspection.
<b>Medium-Security Inspection Template</b>	For Firewalls, Layer 2 Firewalls, inline IPS deployments in asymmetrically routed networks, and IPS deployments in IDS mode. Terminates reliably identified attacks and logs Situations that have some degree of inaccuracy. Low risk of false positives.
<b>High-Security Inspection Template</b>	For Firewall, Layer 2 Firewall, and inline IPS use. Extended inspection coverage and evasion protection. Not for asymmetrically routed networks. Terminates reliably identified attacks, and Situations that have some inaccuracy. Moderate false positive risk.
<b>Customized High-Security Inspection Policy</b>	This policy is an example of a highly customized Inspection Policy for network environments in which unconditional inspection coverage and evasion protection are required. The risk of false positives is high in production use.

## Activating deep inspection in Access rules

Action options in the Access rules define which traffic is inspected against the Inspection Policy.

Typically, you introduce deep inspection after creating and testing initial Access rules. You must specifically activate deep inspection for the portion of traffic that you want to deep inspect. This activation is done in the

Access rules. You also select which Inspection Policy element is used for deep inspection on the **Inspection** tab of the Firewall, IPS, or Layer 2 Firewall policy.

### Related concepts

[Getting started with Access rules](#) on page 811

## Activating the relevant inspection checks

The Rules tree is the main tool for controlling deep inspection.

Traffic patterns of interest are defined in Situation elements. The inspection checks are based on selecting the reaction to the Situations when the pattern is found. It is not mandatory to create any additional Situation elements to activate inspection checks, because there are many default Situation elements and they are continuously updated through dynamic update packages.

The Rules tree on the **Inspection** tab is the main tool that allows you to select which traffic patterns are permitted and stopped. You can also select whether a log entry or an alert is triggered, and whether matching traffic is recorded. All Rules in the Rules tree can be edited, including overrides that have been set in a higher-level template. The Rules tree can contain a maximum of one instance of each Situation to prevent the definitions within the Rules tree from overlapping.

## Defining Exception rules in Inspection Policy elements

Exception rules in Inspection Policy elements allow you to make changes to the Inspection Policy that are not applied to all connections.

The **Exceptions** tab allows you to create detailed rules, which are processed before the Rules tree definitions on the Inspection tab. The Exceptions have additional features compared to the Rules tree:

- You can make exceptions to the general Rules tree definitions based on Source, Destination, and Protocol information.
- You can set options for connection termination (including User Responses) in addition to the options that are available in the Rules tree. The Response options define an automatic client notification for any HTTP connection that is terminated.
- You can create Continue rules to set Action Options and general rule Options for other Exceptions and the Rules tree. The Rules tree contains specific definitions for logging, so the logging options set with Continue rules do not affect traffic that matches the Rules tree.
- You can create rules in Inspection Policy Template elements that cannot be changed in the inheriting policies.
- You can create rules that are applied only on certain days or times of day.

In addition to individual Situation elements, the Situation cell can contain Tag and Situation Type elements. These elements are shown as branches in the Situations tree and allow adding the whole branch of Situations at once to a rule. Most of the Situations you add to the Exceptions are those that you regard as false positives in your environment. An example might be Situations for exploit attempts against an operating system that is not used in your organization).

In the Exceptions, it is highly unusual to set the Situation cell to ANY. This is not useful in most cases because the patterns that Situations define range widely. There are Situations that detect something as benign as the use of particular applications and Situations that detect something as malicious as successful attacks on a server. The ANY setting also creates unnecessary load on the engines, as a high number of Situations is checked in each matching connection.



# Tuning Inspection Policy elements to eliminate false positives

False positives are matches to rules and exceptions in Inspection Policy elements that are incorrect or irrelevant in your environment.

As the Inspection rules and exceptions are matched to traffic, there are always some false positives. By tuning the Inspection Policy element to the actual traffic and applications in your network environment, you can increase the relevance of inspection results greatly. To eliminate a false positive, you adjust either the Inspection Rules tree or the Exception rules depending on whether the change should be applied globally or to traffic between specific hosts. An easy way to create new Exceptions is to use an existing log entry as the basis: you can create Exceptions through the right-click menu of log entries.

## Related concepts

[Example: Tuning an Inspection Policy element to eliminate false positives for a firewall](#) on page 849

# Set default options for Exception rules in Inspection Policy elements

The **Continue** action allows you to set default values for some settings in Exception rules to avoid defining the same settings for several rules individually.

You might want to set default settings for some Exception rules to avoid defining the same settings for several rules individually. The Continue action in Exception rules is used to set such default options in the same general way as in the Access rules. In Exception rules, all settings in the Action Options and the Logging cell can be set using Continue rules. However, the Rules tree on the Inspection tab ignores any logging options set with Continue rules. In the Rules tree, the rules either inherit the logging settings from a higher level in the tree or define a specific logging option as an override.

## Related concepts

[Configuring default settings for several Access rules](#) on page 819

# Example: Tuning an Inspection Policy element to eliminate false positives for a firewall

An example of using Exception rules in the Inspection Policy element to eliminate a false positive.

The administrators in this example have started using inspection. They have installed a policy that includes only the rules defined in the Loose Inspection policy. When they install the Firewall Policy, they soon start receiving alerts.

After some investigation, the administrators realize that a custom-built application causes the alert. This application communicates in a way that happens to match the pattern of how an attacker would carry out a certain exploit. The custom-built application is only used by a specific server and a few clients in the internal network. The administrators quickly edit the Inspection policies to exclude those particular hosts for the Situation in question. The administrators:

- 1) Create Host elements to represent the server and the clients.
- 2) Create a Group element that includes the client's Host elements.
  - The administrators name the Group so that it is immediately clear from the name that the Group contains those hosts that must contact the server running their custom-built application. This makes the new rule easier to read than if they included the hosts directly in the rule.
- 3) Add the following rule on the Exceptions tab in their Inspection Policy element:

**Table 94: Rule for eliminating a false positive**

Situation	Source	Destination	Action	Logging
The Situation element that is mentioned in the alerts in the Logs view.	The Group defining the clients.	The Host for the internal server.	Permit	None

- If the Situation matches traffic between any other hosts than those included in the Group, the IP address does not match the hosts defined in the new rule. The processing will continue to the next rule, which terminates the traffic and triggers an alert.
  - The logging would not have to be set to None, because it is the default option. However, the administrators want to do so anyway to make sure any rules that they add in the future cannot accidentally set logging on for this rule.
- 4) Refresh the policy on the Firewalls.

# Editing policies

### Contents

- [Getting started with editing policies](#) on page 851
- [The different parts of the policy editing view](#) on page 853
- [Editing rules in a policy](#) on page 856
- [Add Insert Points in Policy Templates](#) on page 862
- [Automatic rules and how they work](#) on page 862
- [Configure settings for Automatic rules](#) on page 863
- [Add Ethernet rules](#) on page 863
- [Add Access rules](#) on page 865
- [Add NAT rules](#) on page 874
- [Add Inspection rules](#) on page 880
- [Add Exception rules](#) on page 883
- [Specify rule validity times](#) on page 886
- [Validate rules automatically](#) on page 887
- [How default rules can be changed](#) on page 891

The rules in Firewall, IPS, and Layer 2 Firewall Policies allow you to control how the engines inspect and filter network traffic, and how NAT (network address translation) is applied on Firewalls, Master NGFW Engines, and Virtual Firewalls.

## Getting started with editing policies

Rules in policies are instructions to the engines for handling traffic.

### What rules do

There are five main types of rules.

- *Ethernet rules* (IPS and Layer 2 Firewall only) filter traffic based on MAC addresses and low-level network protocols. These rules can be used to segment a network.
- *Access rules* filter traffic based on IP addresses and IP-based protocols. These rules control access to resources. There are separate Access rules for IPv4 and IPv6 traffic.
- *NAT rules* (Firewall, Master NGFW Engine, and Virtual Firewall only) change source or destination IP addresses in traffic that is allowed to pass through the firewall. NAT (network address translation) can hide the network structure and allows several computers to use the same IP address on the Internet. There are separate NAT rules for IPv4 and IPv6 traffic.

- *Inspection rules* in Inspection Policies filter traffic based on patterns in any of the information that is transferred. These rules log complex traffic use patterns and find network attacks, network worms, or other worrying or unwanted traffic like the use of peer-to-peer file transfer applications.
- *Exceptions* in Inspection Policies create detailed exceptions to the Inspection rules to eliminate false positives and to activate blacklisting or User Responses for specific traffic patterns.

The engines process the rules one type at a time in the order previously listed. IPv4 and IPv6 traffic can be matched to both IPv4 and IPv6 Access rules in any order if traffic is tunneled, possibly several times.

## Basic rule design considerations

Keep the following in mind when editing rules:

- Rule tables are read from the top down, so the order of the rules is important. Make sure that the rules advance logically from specific rules at the top toward more general rules at the bottom whenever the matching criteria in rules overlap.  
Example: A rule that denies access to your server from a particular network must be placed above a general rule that allows access from any source address.
- Any two rules that have identical matching criteria are redundant and should be merged. Automatic rule validation can be used to find such mistakes.
- When rules are matched to traffic, the traffic is compared to each rule one by one until a match is found. What happens when the end of the rule table is reached without any matches varies by the component and the type of rules.
- If you use element-based NAT, the NAT rules generated from NAT definitions are applied only after the NAT rules that you have added manually to the policy. This means that the NAT rules that are generated from NAT definitions do not override the rules that you have manually added to the policy. Remember, however, that a more specific manually created NAT rule can prevent traffic from matching the automatically generated NAT rules.

## What do I need to know before I begin?

There are different policy types for different NGFW Engine roles:

- Master NGFW Engines always use Firewall Policies regardless of the role of the Virtual NGFW Engines they host.
- Single Firewalls, Firewall Clusters, and Virtual Firewalls use Firewall Policies.
- Single IPS engines, IPS Clusters, and Virtual IPS engines use IPS Policies.
- Single Layer 2 Firewalls, Layer 2 Firewall Clusters, and Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls use Layer 2 Firewall Policies.

### Related tasks

[Create template policies or policies](#) on page 788

# The different parts of the policy editing view

The tabs and options shown in the policy editing view depend on the type of policy you are editing.



**Note:** Only one administrator at a time can edit a policy. Save your changes and close the policy editing view when you are finished.

All policy editing views have by default the **Resources** pane on the left, the rule table on the right, and the policy toolbar at the top of the page. The available elements in the **Resources** pane can be used as matching criteria in different rule cells. There are tabs for the different rule types that are available for each type of policy.

**Figure 124: Policy editing view (IPv4 Access tab)**

The screenshot shows the 'HQ Policy (EDIT)' interface. On the left is the 'Resources' pane with a search bar and a list of categories like 'Network Elements', 'Users', and 'Client Applications'. The main area is the 'IPv4 Access' tab, which contains a table of rules. The table has columns for ID, Source, Destination, Service, and Action. A rule with ID 5.6 is selected, and its details are shown in a 'History' pane on the right. At the bottom, there is a 'Search Rules' section with a search bar and navigation buttons. Numbered callouts identify: 1. Policy toolbar (top right), 2. Rule table (center), 3. History for selected rule (right pane), and 4. Search tool (bottom center).

ID	Source	Destination	Service	Action
5.5	External management	ATL_pub_NAT Atlanta FW1 public N...	SSH	Allow
5.6	Management Server	Global Firewalls	Echo Request SG Management SSH	Allow
5.7	Management Server	Global IPS	SG Management SG Management	Allow

In the Inspection Policy Editing view, there are only two tabs: **Exceptions** and **Inspection**. Global Inspection rules are configured on the **Inspection** tab, and exceptions to global Inspection rules on the **Exceptions** tab.

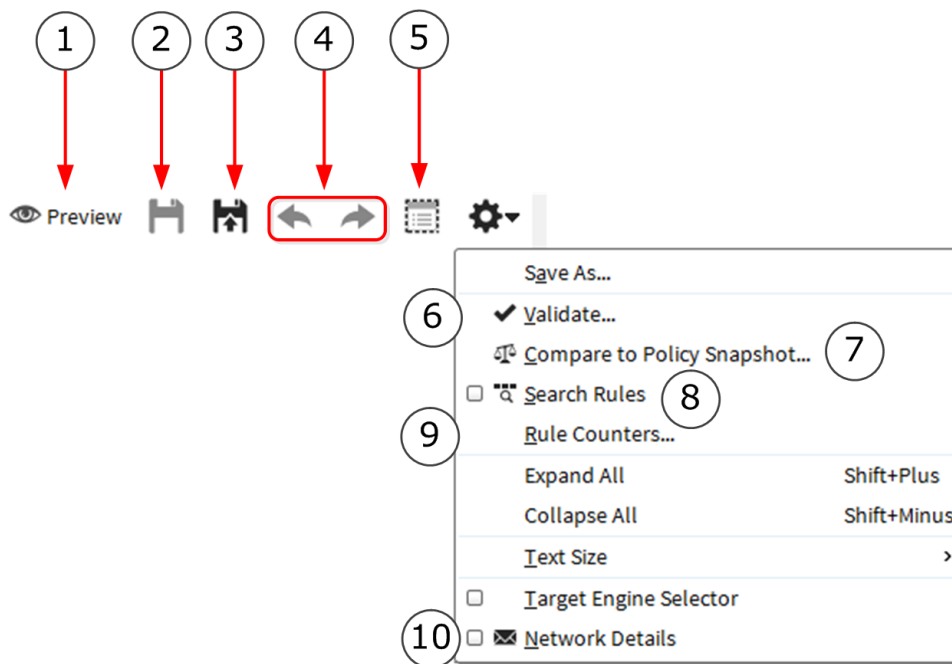
**Figure 125: Inspection Policy Editing view**

Name	Action	Logging ▲	Comment	Overrides	Tag
⊕ Attacks	✖ Terminate	Alert, With Payload		1 Override	@261002.0
⊕ Botnet	✖ Terminate	Alert, With Payload			@261011.0
⊕ Suspected Attacks	✖ Terminate	Stored, With Payload			@261005.0
⊕ Suspicious traffic	✔ Permit	Stored, With Payload		1 Override	@261006.0

1 Detailed Exceptions to the main Inspection rules

2 The main rules tree

The policy toolbar contains tools for managing the policy.

**Figure 126: Policy toolbar**

- 1 Preview the policy in read-only mode
- 2 Save
- 3 Save changes and install policy on engines
- 4 Undo or Redo
- 5 Show Inherited rules passed down from higher-level templates
- 6 Automatic validation finds rules that are clearly incorrect
- 7 A Snapshot is made at each policy installation to allow change tracking
- 8 Search tool for finding rules
- 9 Display the number of hits for each rule
- 10 Toggle between element names and IP addresses

**Related tasks**

[Create template policies or policies](#) on page 788

# Editing rules in a policy

Editing rules consists of defining matching criteria for different rule cells and making sure that the rules are organized in a logical way in the rule table.

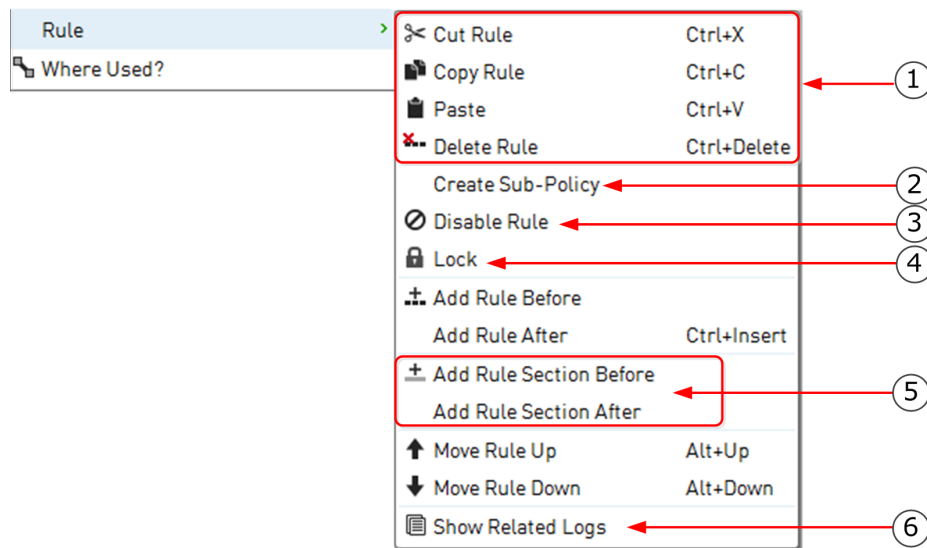
## Editing rule tables

Use the right-click menu options to add, remove, and organize rules in rule tables.

You can edit the rule tables in the following ways:

- Use the actions in the right-click menu, such as add, cut, copy, paste, and move. If you right-click a cell that has cell-specific actions, the rule-specific actions are moved to the **Rule** submenu.
- Drag and drop (move) whole rules by the rule's ID or Tag number.

**Figure 127: Example of a right-click menu for a rule**



- 1 Standard editing actions are available here and as keyboard shortcuts.
- 2 Convert the selected rules to a Sub-Policy.
- 3 Temporarily disable rules without deleting them.
- 4 Prevents editing the rule until the rule is explicitly unlocked.
- 5 Create collapsible rule sections.
- 6 View logs related to the rule.

## Editing rule cells

Rule cells define the matching criteria for the rules.

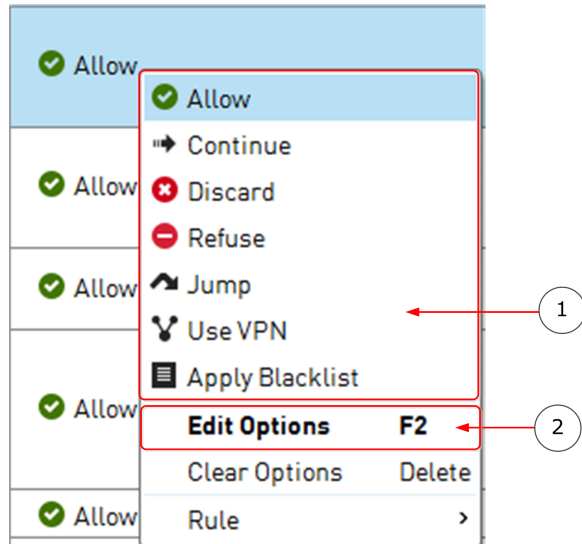
Most rule cells require you to insert elements of specific types:



- When you click the cell, the Resources list on the left shows the types of elements that you can insert in that cell.
- You can drag and drop the correct elements into the cell from the Resources list, from another cell, or even between tabs.
- You can define detailed sets of matching criteria in the Definitions dialog box for the Source, Destination, and Service cells.
- You can create new elements in the Resources list (of the types that are currently displayed).

To edit rule cells that do not accept elements, right-click the cell and select an item from the right-click menu.

**Figure 128: Right-click menu for the Action cell in a Firewall Access rule**




- 1 Main options for the Action cell.
- 2 Opens a dialog box that contains more settings for the selected Action (if any exist).

## Define Source, Destination, and Service criteria in rules

You can create detailed sets of matching criteria for the rule in the Source, Destination, and Service cells.

You can create Source and Destination Definitions for all types of rules in Firewall, IPS, and Layer 2 Firewall Policies. You can create Service Definitions for IPv4 and IPv6 Access rules in Firewall, IPS, and Layer 2 Firewall Policies.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the **Source**, **Destination**, or **Service** cell and select **Edit Source**, **Edit Destination**, or **Edit Service**.

- 2) For each row of matching criteria that you want to add:
  - a) Click **Add Row**.  
A new row is added to the list of matching criteria.



**Note:** All items on the same row must match the traffic for the row to match. You do not have to insert elements into all cells on the same row.

- b) Drag and drop elements from the list on the left to the correct cell in the row. The following types of items can be used as matching criteria:

**Table 95: Matching criteria for Source and Destination Definitions**

User	IP Address	Domain Name	Zone
User and User Group elements for users stored on an integrated Active Directory server in an environment with a McAfee Logon Collector installed and configured.	Any element from the Network Elements branch that directly represents an IP address.	Domain Name elements. If DNS Server IP addresses have been defined in the engine properties, the engine automatically resolves the Internet domain names to IP addresses.	Zone elements for interface matching.



**Note:** VPN and NAT operations can change the routing of packets, potentially causing packets that no longer match the Destination Zone of an Access rule to be discarded.

**Table 96: Matching criteria for Service Definitions**

Network Application	Service (Port)	TLS Match
Network Application elements for application detection.	TCP and UDP Service elements.	TLS Match elements for application detection. TLS Match elements must be used with a URL Situation Element or with a Network Application element that contains a TLS Match.



**Note:** You cannot use Network Application elements and Service elements on different rows of the Service Definition.

- 3) When you are finished adding matching criteria, click **OK**.

#### Related concepts

[Enabling access control by user](#) on page 1087

[Defining Domain Name elements](#) on page 894

[How Access rules match traffic](#) on page 866

[Getting started with Network Application elements](#) on page 935

#### Related tasks

[Create TLS Match elements for network application detection](#) on page 936

## Adding comments in policies

You can add comments to the Comment cell in each rule or you can insert Rule Sections to add comment rows to the policy.

There are two ways to add comments in policies:

- The Comment cell in each rule allows you to write rule-specific comments, for example, to record why the rule was added. The History in the Info pane shows when the rule was added and last changed and through which administrator account. Double-click the cell to edit the comment text.
- In rule tables, you can insert Rule Sections to visually structure the policy under collapsible sections of rules that are preceded by a comment row. Double-click the row to edit the comment text. You can set each comment row's color through the **Colors** submenu in the comment row's right-click menu.

The maximum length of both types of comments is 4096 characters.

## Rule identifiers and how they work

The **ID** and **Tag** for each rule are automatically created and updated. You can optionally specify a name for each rule.

Each rule has two non-editable identifiers:

- The **ID** cell shows the order of the rules. For example, the ID 14.1.2 shows that the rule is the second rule in the policy. It is in an insert point that is the first rule in the parent template. That insert point is the 14th rule in the top-level parent template. The number changes as you add, remove, and move rules.
- The **Tag** is the unique identifier of the rule in this policy. It contains a static part that does not change when rules are added, removed, or moved, and a changing part that indicates the version of the rule. For example, in Tag "@274.12", "274" is the unchanging part and "12" indicates that the rule is in its 12th revision. The tag is used, for example, to provide links from logs to rules that created the log entries.

In addition to non-editable identifiers, you can specify an optional name for each rule.

## Naming rules

You can optionally add a name or short description to a rule to help identify it.



**Note:** You cannot add a name or short description to the rules on the Inspection tab of Inspection Policies.

In the policy editing views, the name is displayed in the Rule Name cell with the rule tag, and on the General tab of the Info pane. In the Logs view, in statistics, and in reports, the rule name is displayed instead of the rule tag in the Rule Tag column. If no name is specified, the rule tag is shown.

The maximum length of a name or description is 254 characters. The name does not have to be unique. Double-click the **Rule Name** cell in the editing view of a policy to edit the name text.

You can search for a specific rule by its name in the Search Rules view.

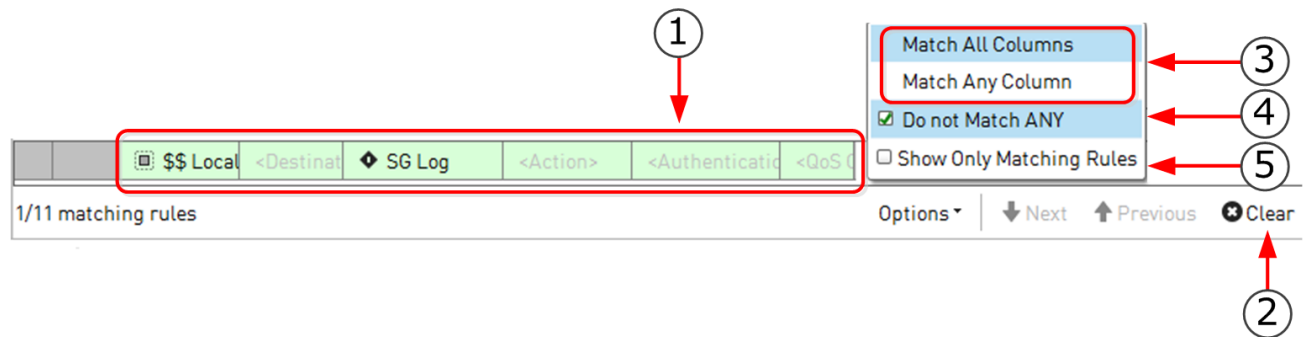
# Searching in rules

You can search rules in rule tables and on the Inspection tab of Inspection Policies.

In rule tables, you can search rules based on most of the cells. Select **Tools > Search Rules** to display the search at the bottom of the rule table.

In the Rules tree on the Inspection tab of Inspection Policies, you can search the Situations through type-ahead searching. When you type a part of the name of the Situation, the tree shows only matching Situations (and their parent Situation Types, which make up the tree branches). The currently active type-ahead search is shown at the bottom of the tree pane.

**Figure 129: Rule search for rule tables**



- 1 Drag and drop or enter the search criteria in selected cells.
- 2 Remove all search criteria.
- 3 Search rules that match all or any defined criteria.
- 4 Do not find rules that have ANY in a cell that is used as search criterion.
- 5 Hide rules that do not match the defined criteria.

You can add values in different ways:

- Drag and drop elements from the rule table, from different windows and tabs, or from the resource pane (shown in edit mode).
- Right-click a cell, then choose **Select** to browse for elements.
- In the **Source** and **Destination** search cells, you can manually type in IPv4 or IPv6 addresses, networks, or address ranges. Use standard notations (for example, 192.168.1.0/16, or 192.168.10.0 - 192.168.10.101 for IPv4 networks, or 2001:0db8:1234::/48, or 2001:0db8:1234:: - 2001:0db8:1234:::100 for IPv6 networks).
- In the **Comment** and **Rule Name** search cells, you can manually type in any part of the comment or name.

Fill in the relevant cells. The cells you leave empty are ignored in the search. The first rule that matches your search is shown on a dark green background and all other matching rules are highlighted on a light green background. Click **Next** or **Previous** to move up or down from the currently selected rule to a matching rule above or below.


# Rule hit counters and how they work




Firewall Access rules and NAT rules contain a Hits cell that can show how many times each rule in your Firewall Policy has matched actual network traffic.

## Run a rule counter analysis in Access rules or NAT rules

Viewing the rule hits allows you to find valid rules that match traffic that the engine does not encounter in the network.

This feature complements the rule validation checks, which can find rule design errors. Engines count rule hits automatically for all rules of supported types. The hits are stored as statistical counter data on the Log Servers.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Open the policy for preview or editing, then click the tab for the type of rules that you want to examine.
- 3) Select an engine from the **Target Engine** drop-down list.  
If the drop-down list is not visible, select  **Tools > Target Engine Selector**.
- 4) Select  **Tools > Rule Counters**.
- 5) From the **Period** drop-down list, select the period for which you want to check the rule matches.
  - Select one of the existing options.
  - To define a custom period, select **Custom**.
- 6) (Optional) Click **Add** to add other engines to the **Target** list.



**Tip:** You can run a rule counter analysis on several engines at the same time.

- 7) (Optional) To select Management or Log Servers for this operation, or to include archived data, click the **Storage** tab, then change the selection.  
Make sure that you include the Log Servers and folders that contain data for the target engine and the period you selected.
- 8) Click **OK** to display the rule hits. The Hit information is displayed until you close the view.  
The Hit cell in each rule is filled in with the number of connections that matched the rule during the chosen period.  
If there is no statistical information about the rule with your selected criteria, the Hit cell shows N/A (for example, for rules added after the period analyzed).

### Related tasks

[Validate rules automatically](#) on page 887

# Add Insert Points in Policy Templates

Insert Points mark the positions where rules can be added.

When you edit a Template Policy, add at least one new yellow Insert Point on all tabs if you want their inheriting Policy or Policy Template to be editable. Green Insert Points are inherited insert points from the previous level, and they are not inherited further down in the hierarchy. They only show you where the higher-level template allows you to add rules and disappear when you add a rule or a new (yellow) insert point.

You can add as many insert points in the Template as your rule structure calls for.

**Steps** • For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Open the Policy template for editing.
- 2) Right-click the green insert point and select **Add Insert Point** or a rule that is editable in this Template and select **Rule > Add Insert Point Before** or **Add Insert Point After**.
- 3) Give the insert point a descriptive **Name** and click **OK**. An inheritable (yellow) insert point is added to the Template.

## Related tasks

[Create template policies or policies](#) on page 788

# Automatic rules and how they work

When you enable a feature that requires traffic between certain components to be allowed, rules allowing the traffic are automatically created.

Automatic rules are created for traffic to and from the engine, never for traffic that passes through the engine. Some features require more specific control over what traffic is allowed between specific components, and in those cases you still have to configure Access rules manually.

Automatic rules are not visible in rule tables, but you can view a summary of currently used Automatic rules in the **Automatic Rules** section of the Engine Editor. You can also change some settings for Automatic rules in the Engine Editor.

Automatic rules are only created if the policy that is installed on the engine contains the Automatic Rules Insert Point. The default Template Policies in the Management Client already contain this insert point. No further action is needed for Automatic rules to be created if you base your Template Policies and Security Policies on the recommended default Template Policies.

If you create a Template Policy that is not based on a default Template Policy, you must add the Automatic Rules Insert Point manually. To do this, open the Template Policy for editing, right-click the **ID** cell of any rule, and select **Add Automatic Rules Insert Point**. You can add the Automatic Rules Insert Point anywhere in the Template Policy.

# Configure settings for Automatic rules

View a summary of Automatic rules and manage related settings in the Engine Editor.

## Before you begin

The Template Policy used on the engine must contain the **Automatic Rules Insert Point**.

In the Automatic Rules section of the Engine Editor, you can set the log level and possible Alert element for Automatic rules. For Firewalls, Virtual Firewalls, and Master NGFW Engines, you can also define whether traffic from the engine to authentication ports is allowed.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click an engine, then select **Edit <element type>**.
- 3) Browse to **Policies > Automatic Rules** in the navigation pane on the left.
- 4) (Firewalls, Virtual Firewalls, and Master NGFW Engines only) For the **Allow Traffic to Authentication Ports** setting, select **Yes** or **No**.  
By default, traffic to authentication ports is allowed.
- 5) Using the **Log Level for Automatic Rules** menu, set the log level for Automatic rules to **None**, **Alert**, **Essential**, **Stored**, or **Transient**.  
By default, logging is set to **None**.
- 6) (Optional, only if **Log Level for Automatic Rules** is set to **Alert**) Using the **Alert** menu, select the Alert element to use.
- 7) Click **Save**.

## Add Ethernet rules

Ethernet rules define which Ethernet protocol packets the engines stop, and which packets are allowed through.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Expand the **Policies** branch and select **IPS Policies** or **Layer 2 Firewall Policies**.

- 3) Open a Template Policy or Policy for editing, and switch to the **Ethernet** tab.
- 4) Add the rule in one of the following ways:
  - Right-click the **ID** cell of an existing rule and select **Add Rule Before** or **Add Rule After**.
  - Copy and paste an existing rule.
- 5) Specify the portion of the traffic that you want to control and select what happens to traffic that matches the rule.

## Define logging options for Ethernet rules

Ethernet rules can create a log or alert entry each time they match.

Rules can create a log or alert entry each time they match. By default, logging options set in a previous rule with Continue as its action are used. If no such rule exists, Layer 2 Firewalls and Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls log the connections by default. IPS engines and Virtual IPS engines do not log the connections by default. Each individual rule can be set to override the default values.

**Table 97: Log levels in Ethernet rules**

Log level	Explanation
None	Does not create any log entry.
Transient	Creates a log entry that is displayed in the Current Events mode in the Logs view (if someone is viewing it) but is not stored.
Stored	Creates a log entry that is stored on the Log Server.
Essential	Creates a log entry that is shown in the Logs view and saved for further use.
Alert	Triggers an alert entry.

When the Log Server is unavailable, log entries are temporarily stored on the engine. When the engine is running out of space to store the log entries, it begins discarding log data in the order of importance. Monitoring data is discarded first, followed by log entries marked as Transient and Stored, and finally log entries marked as Essential. The Alert entries are the last log entries to be discarded.

The settings for storing the logs temporarily on the engine are defined in the engine's log spooling policy.



**Note:** A log entry is generated for each packet that matches an Ethernet rule. Use careful consideration when setting the logging options to avoid producing an excessive amount of log data.



**CAUTION:** Ethernet rules are matched to each packet. If logging is active for a rule, a new log entry is produced for each matching packet. Do not activate any logging for Ethernet rules that match sizeable portions of your network traffic.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Double-click the **Logging** cell in the rule.



- 2) Define the options.

**Related tasks**


[Configure log handling settings for engines](#) on page 686


**Related reference**

[Log fields controlled by the Additional Payload option](#) on page 1510

## Define MAC addresses for Ethernet rules

MAC Address elements are used to match a certain source or destination MAC address in the Ethernet rules. The MAC Address element defines the MAC (Media Access Control) address of a network card.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements** branch.
- 3) Right-click **MAC Addresses** and select **New MAC Address**.
- 4) **Name** the element.
- 5) Enter the **MAC Address**. You can enter any valid MAC address including, for example, the broadcast address (ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff).
- 6) Click **OK**.

## Add Access rules

Access rules are used by Firewalls, IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewalls, Master NGFW Engines, Virtual Firewalls, Virtual IPS engines, and Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls.

**Before you begin**

You must have a custom Policy element and permissions to edit it.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.

- 2) Expand the **Policies** tree and select a type of policy (for example, **Firewall Policies**).
- 3) Open a Template Policy, Policy, or Sub-Policy for editing, and switch to the **IPv4 Access** tab or to the **IPv6 Access** tab.
- 4) Add the rule in one of the following ways:
  - Right-click the **ID** cell of an existing rule and select **Add Rule Before** or **Add Rule After**.
  - Copy and paste an existing rule.
- 5) Specify the portion of the traffic that you want to control.
- 6) Define what happens to traffic that matches the rule.
- 7) (Optional) Define options for triggering logs and alerts.

## How Access rules match traffic

Firewalls, IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewalls, Virtual Firewalls, Virtual IPS engines, and Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls use both IPv4 Access rules and IPv6 Access rules. Master NGFW Engines only use IPv4 Access rules.



**Note:** Master NGFW Engines always use Firewall Policies regardless of the role of the Virtual NGFW Engines they host. Virtual Firewalls use Firewall Policies. Virtual IPS engines use IPS policies. Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls use Layer 2 Firewall Policies.

In addition to more specific matching criteria, the matching cells can be set to two more settings:

- ANY (available by right-clicking in a cell and selecting Set to ANY) matches all valid values for the cell, for example, all IPv4 addresses.
- NONE is the default value for mandatory traffic matching cells that have no matching criteria in them. As long as any cell in a rule contains NONE, the whole rule is invalid and is ignored.

## Using Zones in the Destination cell of Access rules

Due to the processing order of Access and NAT rules, the interface through which the packet will be sent out is not yet determined when Access and NAT rules are processed. During the matching against Access and NAT rules, the destination Zone is matched based on the current routing decision for the packet. NAT and VPN operations can change the route that is used when the packet is sent out. Because of this possibility, the packet is checked against the Access rules again before being forwarded. If the changed destination Zone still matches, traffic is processed according to the original rule. If the changed destination Zone does not match the Access rule, the traffic is discarded. Carefully consider how the rules will be applied when using Zones in the Destination Cell of Access rules when NAT and VPN operations can change the routing decision.

To define how an Access rule matches traffic, fill in the cells with elements.

### Related concepts

[Types of traffic inspection interfaces for IPS engines](#) on page 565

[Getting started with directory servers](#) on page 1079

[Getting started with Service elements](#) on page 901

[Getting started with user authentication](#) on page 1099

**Related tasks**

[Create rules for VPN configuration 1](#) on page 1144


[Define Source, Destination, and Service criteria in rules](#) on page 857

[Define Authentication options for Firewall Access rules](#) on page 874

[Specify rule validity times](#) on page 886

## Define what action Access rules take

The Action cell defines what happens when a packet matches an Access rule.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the Action cell, then select the Action.

**Related concepts**

[How the Allow action options work for IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 872

**Related tasks**

[Define Action options for the Allow action in Firewall Access rules](#) on page 870

[Define Action options for the Continue action in Access rules](#) on page 871

## Defining Access rule Action options

Action Options define additional action-specific options.

In Access rules, the Action Options define more action-specific options for:

- Deep inspection
- File filtering
- Anti-spam (IPv4 only, not supported on Master NGFW Engine or Virtual NGFW Engines)
- Connection tracking
- Rate-based DoS protection
- Scan detection
- User responses
- Blacklisting


If no options are specified, the Action Option settings from the previous Continue rule are applied.

**Related concepts**

- [Configuring default settings for several Access rules](#) on page 819
- [Getting started with basic policy-based VPN configurations](#) on page 1141
- [Anti-malware scanning overview](#) on page 1001
- [Spam filtering overview](#) on page 997
- [Configuring connection tracking](#) on page 798

## Define Action options for the Apply Blacklist action in Access rules

The options for the Apply Blacklist action in Access rules affect the reception of blacklist entries on engines.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the **Action** cell in an IPv4 Access rule and select **Apply Blacklist**.
- 2) Double-click the **Action** cell.
- 3) Set the options, then click **OK**.

**Related concepts**


- [User Response elements and how they work](#) on page 943
- [Blacklisting traffic and how it works](#) on page 1069

**Related tasks**

- [Configure scan detection settings for engines](#) on page 688

## Define Action options for the Discard action in Access rules

The Discard Action Options in Access rules allow you to define an automatic User Response to be shown to the user when an HTTP connection is discarded.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the **Action** cell in an Access rule and select **Discard**.
- 2) Double-click the **Action** cell.
- 3) Set the options, then click **OK**.

**Related concepts**

[User Response elements and how they work](#) on page 943

**Related tasks**

[Configure scan detection settings for engines](#) on page 688

## Define Action options for the Refuse action in Access rules

The Refuse Action Options in Access rules allow you to define an automatic User Response to be shown to the user when an HTTP connection is refused.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the **Action** cell in an Access rule and select **Refuse**.
- 2) Double-click the Action cell.
- 3) Set the options, then click **OK**.

**Related concepts**

[User Response elements and how they work](#) on page 943


**Related tasks**

[Configure scan detection settings for engines](#) on page 688

## Define Action options for the Jump action in Access rules

The Jump action directs traffic to a Sub-Policy.

The Jump action in Firewall, IPS, and Layer 2 Firewall IPv4 Access rules, and Firewall IPv6 Access rules adds a conditional section of rules to the policy. If a connection matches the Jump rule's matching criteria, it is matched against the rules in the Sub-Policy.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the **Action** cell in an IPv4 or IPv6 Access rule in a Firewall Policy, or an IPv4 Access rule in an IPS Policy or a Layer 2 Firewall Policy and select **Jump**.

- 2) Set the options, then click **OK**.

## Define Action options for the Allow action in Firewall Access rules

The Allow Action Options in Access rules allow you to define additional options for traffic that has been allowed.

The Allow action options define the following aspects of Firewall traffic handling:

- You can control stateful inspection by setting options for connection tracking, including idle timeouts and TCP segment size enforcement. The effect of the connection tracking setting depends on the traffic type.
- You can enable or disable rate-based DoS protection and scan detection if they have not been disabled in the properties of individual NGFW Engines.
- (License permitting) For IPv4 or IPv6 traffic, you can enable deep inspection to match traffic against the Inspection Policy. You can check IPv4 traffic for malware by setting deep inspection and anti-malware options. You can filter incoming IPv4 traffic for spam by enabling deep inspection and anti-spam options.



**Note:** Anti-spam is not supported on Virtual Firewalls.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the **Action** cell in a firewall Access rule and select **Allow**.
- 2) Double-click the **Action** cell.
- 3) Set the options, then click **OK**.

### Related concepts

[Configure anti-malware on engines](#) on page 666

### Related tasks

[Configure anti-spam on engines](#) on page 669

[Define Action options for the Permit action in Exception rules](#) on page 885

[Set connection timeouts](#) on page 684

[Adjust general Firewall clustering options](#) on page 677


[Configure DoS protection settings for engines](#) on page 687

[Configure scan detection settings for engines](#) on page 688

# Define Action options for the Continue action in Access rules

The Continue action in Access rules allows you to set default options for multiple rules.


If the Action in an Access rule is Continue, the options specified in the Continue rule are applied to any other Access rule that the same packet matches. However, if the Access rules have rule-specific definitions, those will be used instead.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the **Action** cell in an Access rule and select **Continue**.
- 2) Double-click the **Action** cell.
- 3) Configure the options, then click **OK**.

# Define Action options for the Use VPN action in Firewall Access rules

The Use VPN Action options define how traffic is directed into the VPN.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the **Action** cell in a firewall Access rule and select **Use VPN**.
- 2) Set the options on the **Policy-Based VPN** tab.
- 3) Click the **Inspection** tab and set the options.
- 4) Click **OK**.

## Related concepts

[Rules for Policy-Based VPNs on page 1201](#)

## Related tasks

[Redirect traffic between VPN tunnels on page 1252](#)

# How the Allow action options work for IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls

The Allow Action Options in Access rules allow you to define additional options for traffic that has been allowed.

The Allow action options define how the IPS or Layer 2 Firewall engine inspects traffic.

- You can control stateful inspection by setting options for connection tracking, including idle timeouts and TCP segment size enforcement. The effect of the connection tracking depends on the traffic type and how strictly you want the connections to be tracked.
- You can enable or disable rate-based DoS protection and scan detection if they have not been disabled in the properties of individual NGFW Engines.

Enable or disable deep inspection for matching traffic in the IPS and Layer 2 Firewall Access rules. If deep inspection is disabled, the traffic is not checked against the Inspection Policy.

If you use the IPS Template or the Layer 2 Firewall Template as the basis for your policy, deep inspection is enabled by default for all supported protocols (with Continue rules). Deep inspection can be disabled for a specific rule if necessary. Otherwise, make sure that your custom template policy directs all necessary Protocols to be inspected.

## Define Action options for the Allow action in IPS and Layer 2 Firewall Access rules


The Allow Action Options in Access rules allow you to define additional options for traffic that has been allowed.

The Allow action options define how the IPS or Layer 2 Firewall engine inspects traffic.

- You can control stateful inspection by setting options for connection tracking, including idle timeouts and TCP segment size enforcement. The effect of the connection tracking depends on the traffic type and how strictly you want the connections to be tracked.
- You can enable or disable rate-based DoS protection and scan detection if they have not been disabled in the properties of individual NGFW Engines.

Enable or disable deep inspection for matching traffic in the IPS and Layer 2 Firewall Access rules. If deep inspection is disabled, the traffic is not checked against the Inspection Policy.

If you use the IPS Template or the Layer 2 Firewall Template as the basis for your policy, deep inspection is enabled by default for all supported protocols (with Continue rules). Deep inspection can be disabled for a specific rule if necessary. Otherwise, make sure that your custom template policy directs all necessary Protocols to be inspected.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the **Action** cell in an IPS or Layer 2 Firewall Access rule and select **Allow**.
- 2) Double-click the **Action** cell.
- 3) Set the options, then click **OK**.



**Related tasks**

[Set connection timeouts](#) on page 684

[Adjust general Firewall clustering options](#) on page 677

[Configure DoS protection settings for engines](#) on page 687

[Configure scan detection settings for engines](#) on page 688

## Define logging options for Access rules

Access rules can create a log or alert entry each time they match.

By default, logging options set in a previous Access rule with Continue as its action are used. If no such rule exists, Firewalls, Virtual Firewalls, Layer 2 Firewalls, and Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls log the connections by default. IPS engines and Virtual IPS engines do not log the connections by default. Each individual rule can be set to override the default values.



**Note:** Log pruning might override the logging options by deleting any number of generated log entries when they are received at the Log Server.



**Note:** Master NGFW Engines always use Firewall Policies regardless of the role of the Virtual NGFW Engines they host. Virtual Firewalls use Firewall Policies. Virtual IPS engines use IPS policies. Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls use Layer 2 Firewall Policies.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Double-click the **Logging** cell.
- 2) Set the options.
- 3) Click **OK**.

**Related concepts**

[Enabling access control by user](#) on page 1087

**Related tasks**

[Configure log handling settings for engines](#) on page 686

**Related reference**

[Log fields controlled by the Additional Payload option](#) on page 1510

# Define Authentication options for Firewall Access rules

The Authentication options define which users can authenticate and the type of authentication required.

(IPv4 only) A mobile VPN always requires some form of authentication, but you can also add an authentication requirement to non-VPN rules.

The authentication requirements are configured in the **Authentication** cell. The cell accepts User and User Group elements to define the end users who are allowed to make connections allowed by the rule, and Authentication Method elements to define the type of authentication required for connections that match the rule.

If the authentication fails, the connection is discarded. If the authentication succeeds, the connection is allowed through.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Double-click the **Authentication** cell.
- 2) Configure the settings on the **Parameters** tab.
- 3) On the **Users** tab, select the Users or User Groups that this rule applies to.
- 4) Switch to the **Authentication Methods** tab and select the Authentication Methods to use.
- 5) Click **OK**.

## Related tasks

[Create User Group elements](#) on page 1091

[Create User elements](#) on page 1092

# Add NAT rules

NAT rules define how NAT is applied to matching connections. NAT rules are only available in Firewall Policy elements.

## Before you begin

You must have a custom Policy element and permissions to edit it.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Add the NAT rule in one of the following ways:
  - Right-click the **ID** cell of an existing NAT rule and select **Add Rule Before** or **Add Rule After**.

- Copy and paste an existing NAT rule.
  - Copy and paste an Access rule to match the rule to the same Source, Destination, and Service.
- 2) Specify the portion of the traffic to which you want to apply NAT.
  - 3) Define the translation you want to apply.

## How NAT rules match traffic

NAT rules are matched based on IP addresses and services.

Each address translation operation places specific restrictions on what you can put in the cells. Consider the design of your NAT rules and Access rules separately, because attempting to match the different types of rules one-to-one is usually not effective or even possible.

To overwrite both the source and destination IP address in the same packet (for example, to achieve hairpin NAT), configure both address translations in the same NAT rule.




**Tip:** With element-based NAT, the same connection can separately match the source and destination NAT. Hairpin NAT is automatic.

## Translate source addresses in packets

There are two types of source address translation: static source translation and dynamic source translation.



**Tip:** With element-based NAT, you do not need to use separate static source and static destination NAT rules. Static NAT is bidirectional.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Double-click the NAT cell in the NAT rule.
- 2) Select the translation type.
- 3) If you selected an address translation operation, configure the additional options according to the type of operation.

## Translate destination addresses in packets

Destination translation is typically used to translate new incoming connections from a server's public IP address to the server's private IP address.



**Note:** Destination translation can change the routing of packets and potentially cause packets that no longer match the Destination Zone of an Access rule to be discarded.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Double-click the **NAT** cell in the NAT rule.
- 2) On the **Destination Translation** tab, select the translation type.
- 3) Click **OK**.

#### Related concepts

[How Access rules match traffic](#) on page 866

## Examples of NAT rules

Read the following examples of NAT rules.

### Example of a static source translation NAT rule

This example shows a static address translation that translates the addresses in one network to IP addresses in another network.

In this example, the NAT is done to access a particular server on the Internet.

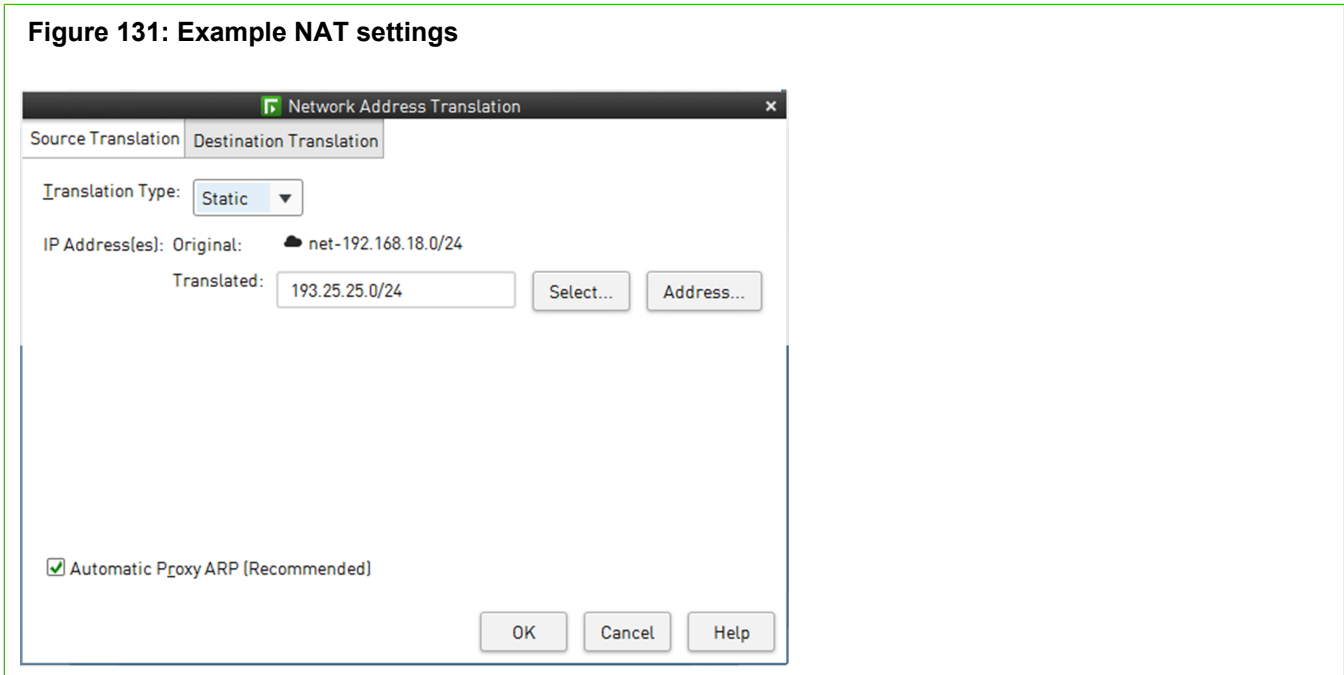
**Figure 130: Example scenario**



**Table 98: Example NAT rule matching cells**

Source	Destination	Service
192.168.18.0/24	213.28.200.140	HTTP

**Figure 131: Example NAT settings**

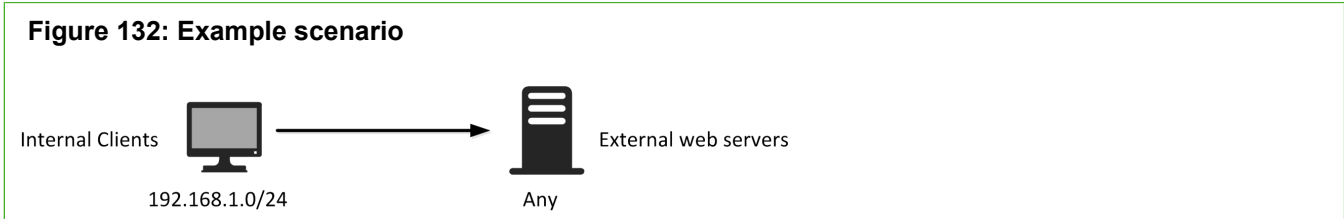


In static address translation using whole networks, each original source IP address has a static translated pair. For example here, the host 192.168.1.6 is always translated to 193.25.25.6 and host 192.168.1.11 is always translated to 193.25.25.11.

## Example of a dynamic source translation NAT rule

This example shows a dynamic address translation that translates the addresses in one internal network to a single external address for general web browsing.

**Figure 132: Example scenario**



**Table 99: Example NAT rule matching cells**

Source	Destination	Service
192.168.1.0/24	ANY	HTTP

**Figure 133: Example NAT settings**

Network Address Translation

Source Translation | Destination Translation

Translation Type: Dyna...

IP Address Pool: 193.25.25.1 [Select...] [Address...]

First Port to Use: 1024

Last Port to Use: 65535

Automatic Proxy ARP (Recommended)

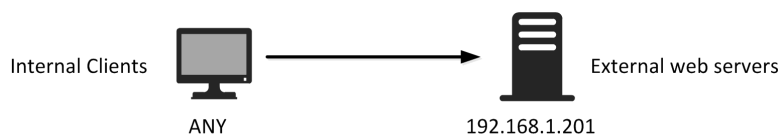
[OK] [Cancel] [Help]

In dynamic address translation, several source IP addresses are translated using a smaller pool of translated addresses with the help of port translation. Each client connection uses a different port on an IP address that is shared between several different connections. Because each client reserves a port, the maximum number of simultaneous connections can be calculated by multiplying the number of IP addresses by the number of ports in the range. Every port and IP address pair must be free from any other use (duplicate connections cannot successfully cross the firewall).

## Example of a destination translation NAT rule

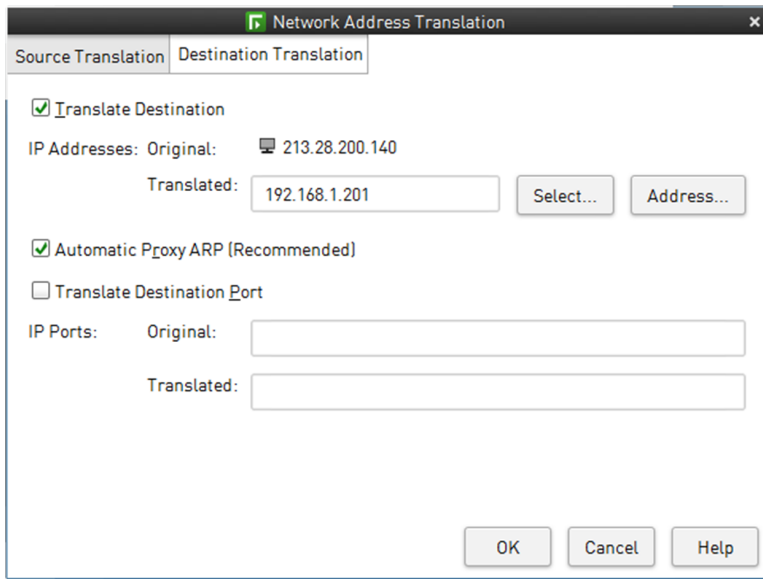
This example shows a static address translation that translates the external IP address of a web server to the server's internal address.

The external IP address (213.28.200.140) of the web server is translated to the server's internal address (192.168.1.201).

**Figure 134: Example scenario****Table 100: Example NAT rule matching cells**

Source	Destination	Service
ANY	213.28.200.140	HTTP

**Figure 135: Example NAT settings**

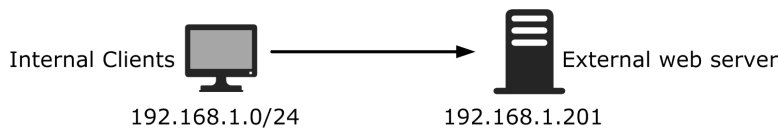


## Example of a combined source and destination translation NAT rule

In this example, *hairpin NAT* is configured.

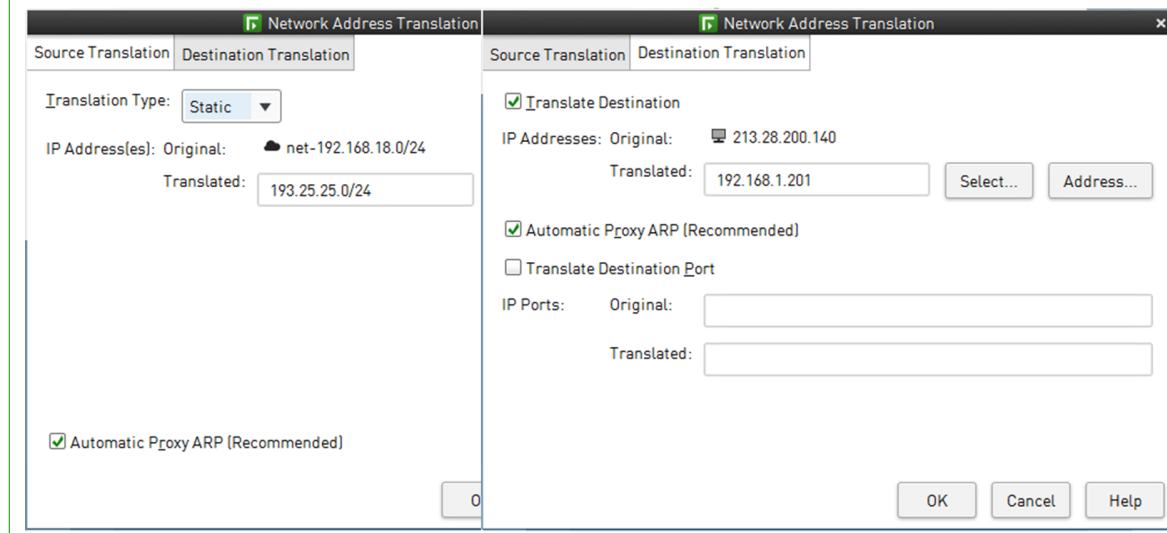
Clients in the internal network (192.168.1.0/24) contact the organization's own public web server using the public IP address (213.28.200.140). The server's external address is translated to an internal address (192.168.1.201) that belongs to the same internal network address space as the contacting clients. Source address translation is used to prevent the server replies to the client's original IP address. Such replies would be routed directly within the local network instead of through the firewall, and the connections do not work without the reverse NAT that the firewall provides.

**Figure 136: Example scenario**



**Table 101: Example NAT rule matching cells**

Source	Destination	Service
192.168.1.0/24	213.28.200.140	HTTP

**Figure 137: Example NAT settings**

The NAT settings on each tab are not any different than when you apply only source translation or only destination translation to matching connections. The key is that both definitions must be defined in the same NAT rule, because none of the other NAT rules are considered after the first match is found.



**Tip:** With element-based NAT, the same connection can separately match the source and destination NAT. Hairpin NAT is automatic.

## Add Inspection rules

Inspection rules filter traffic based on traffic patterns. Inspection rules are stored in Inspection Policy elements.

### Before you begin

You must have a custom Policy element and permissions to edit it.

The rules tree on the **Inspection** tab is the main tool that allows you to select which traffic patterns are permitted and stopped. You can also select whether a log entry or an alert is triggered, and whether matching traffic is recorded.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Policies > Inspection Policies**.
- 3) Right-click a Template Inspection Policy or Inspection Policy element and select **Edit Inspection Policy**. The policy opens for editing on the **Inspection** tab.
- 4) Adjust the Rules that are applied to most traffic.



- 5) (Optional) Switch to the **Exceptions** tab and define detailed Exceptions to the main Inspection rules. The main uses for Exceptions are to eliminate false positives and to activate blacklisting or User Responses for specific traffic patterns.

## Inspection rules tree and how it works

The rules tree is the main tool for controlling deep packet inspection in Inspection Policy elements.

The rules tree on the **Inspection** tab in Inspection Policies allows you to define what action the engine takes when Situation matches are found and how they are logged. To edit these rules, click the Action cell or the Logging cell of a rule and select the suitable option. The definitions on the **Exceptions** tab are matched before the Rules tree on the **Inspection** tab.

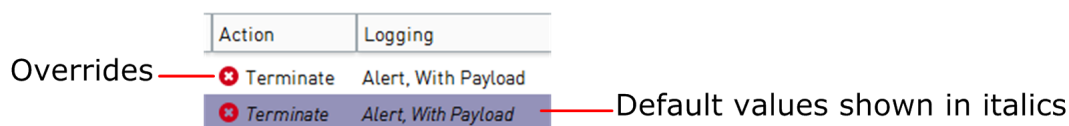
In the rules tree, items that have subitems are Situation Type elements. The items that have no subitems are individual Situation and Correlation Situation elements. The rules tree contains all Situation Types and the Situations associated with them.

All levels of the rules tree are editable. By default, subitems inherit the Action and Logging options from their parent item. If a subitem has any setting that differs from the parent item's settings, this is regarded an *override*. If you change a value in an item that has subitems, all subitems that are set to use the default value inherit this change. Any subitems that are set to an override continue to use that override.

Example: The parent item and 10 of the subitems are set to use the “Permit (Default)” action. Two of the subitems are set to use the “Permit” action. You change the parent to use the “Terminate” action. Ten subitems change to “Terminate (Default)”. Two subitems continue to use “Permit”.

The following illustration shows how overrides are highlighted in the rules tree.

**Figure 138: Default values and overrides in the rules tree**



In the list of options available in the right-click menu, “default” is included in the label. For example, “Permit (default)” means that this action is the default action for the selected Situation Type or Situation.


Regardless of the settings in the rules tree in a higher-level Template Policy, it is still possible to change any rules tree values in the inheriting policy. To add to a Template Policy rules that cannot be edited in the inheriting policies, add the rules as Exceptions.

### Related tasks

[Configure log handling settings for engines](#) on page 686

## Add Situations to the Inspection rules tree

The Inspection rules tree can contain a maximum of one instance of each Situation to prevent the definitions within the Rules tree from overlapping.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select the most appropriate Situation Type (these are all included at some level of the tree) as the **Situation Type** in the properties of a custom Situation element.

### Related tasks

[Create custom Situation elements](#) on page 917

## Remove overrides from the Inspection rules tree

You can reset branches in the rules tree to their default values.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Right-click an item in the tree and select **Reset Branch**.  
The item you right-clicked and all its subitems are reset to the Default value.

## Define logging options for Inspection rules

Inspection rules can create a log or alert entry each time they match.

By default, an Inspection Policy uses the logging options set in a previous Exception rule with Continue as its action. If no such rule exists, Firewalls, Virtual Firewalls, Layer 2 Firewalls, and Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls log connections by default. IPS engines and Virtual IPS engines do not log connections by default.

Each individual Inspection rule can be set to override the default values of the engine role.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Switch to the **Inspection** tab.
- 2) Click the **Logging** setting of a rule and select **Logging Options**.
- 3) Set the options.



**Note:** Storing or viewing the packets' payload can be illegal in some jurisdictions due to laws related to the privacy of communications.

**Related tasks**

[Configure log handling settings for engines](#) on page 686

## Add Exception rules

Inspection Exceptions allow you to make changes to the Inspection Policy that are not applied to all connections. Exception rules also allow you to set some options (using the Continue action) for Exceptions and rules that are processed later. Exception rules also contain some additional options that are not available in the rules tree.


- You can match specific connections based on the IP addresses of the communicating hosts, the Service used, and the Logical Interfaces of IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls. For example, an Exception can be used to eliminate a false positive in traffic between two internal hosts without disabling inspection.
- You can set more responses to matches that are found. You can blacklist connections on an engine, and you can add User Responses as notifications to some types of events.

**Related tasks**

[Create template policies or policies](#) on page 788

## Add Exception rules in Inspection Policy elements

The **Exceptions** tab allows you to create detailed rules that are processed before the Rules tree definitions on the Inspection tab.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Add the Exception rule in one of the following ways:
  - Right-click a generated log entry and select one of the options in the **Create Rule** submenu. The rule is created as an Exception with matching details from the log entry.
  - Right-click the **ID** cell in an existing Exception and select **Add Rule Before** or **Add Rule After**.
  - Copy and paste an existing Exception rule.
  - Copy and paste a rule from the Inspection tab to the Exceptions tab to match the same Situations and options.
  - Copy and paste an Access rule to match the Exception to the same Source, Destination, and Service.
- 2) Match the Exception rule to traffic.
- 3) Define the exception you want to apply.
- 4) *(Optional)* Define options for triggering logs and alerts.

## Define what traffic Exception rules match

Exception rules in Inspection Policy elements are matched based on the patterns defined in Situation elements. The traffic is checked against all patterns in the Inspection Policy. When a match is found, the Situation element is used in looking up the rule that determines what happens to the traffic. If none of the Exceptions match, the matching continues in the Rules tree.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Fill in the cells.  
Setting a value in the **Time** cell is optional. All other cells must always contain a value.

### Related concepts

[Defining IP addresses as elements](#) on page 893  
[Getting started with directory servers](#) on page 1079

### Related tasks

[Add Logical Interfaces for IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 565  
[Define Source, Destination, and Service criteria in rules](#) on page 857  
[Specify rule validity times](#) on page 886

## Define what action Exception rules take

The Action defines the command for the engine to carry out when a connection matches the Exception rule.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the **Action** cell and select the action.

## Define Action options for the Continue action in Exception rules

The Continue action can set options for the Permit and Terminate actions in subsequent rules.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the **Action** cell and select **Continue**.

- 2) Double-click the **Action** cell.
- 3) Set the options, then click **OK**.

## Define Action options for the Permit action in Exception rules

The options for the Permit action in Exception rules allow you to set additional options for traffic that has been allowed.

On the Firewall, the options for the Permit action in Exception rules allow you to control the inspection options in further detail and set a User Response for malware scanning or Situation matches.



**Note:** Malware scanning and anti-spam are not supported on Virtual NGFW Engines.

On the IPS and the Layer 2 Firewall, the options for the Permit action in Exception rules allow you to blacklist traffic.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the **Action** cell and select **Permit**.
- 2) Double-click the **Action** cell.
- 3) Set the options, then click **OK**.

### Related concepts

[Configure anti-malware on engines](#) on page 666

## Define Action options for the Terminate action in Exception rules

The Terminate action options control connection termination, notifications, and the creation of blacklist entries.



**Note:** Virtual NGFW Engines cannot send blacklist requests to other Virtual NGFW Engines.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the **Action** cell and select **Terminate**.
- 2) Double-click the **Action** cell.

- 3) Select the action options, then click **OK**.

#### Related concepts


[User Response elements and how they work](#) on page 943

## Define logging options for Exception rules

Inspection Exception rules can create a log or alert entry each time they match.

Firewalls, Virtual Firewalls, Layer 2 Firewalls, and Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls log connections by default. You can override the default logging options in an Exception rule with Continue as its action. IPS engines and Virtual IPS engines do not log connections by default.

Each individual Exception rule can be set to override the default values of the engine role.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Switch to the **Exceptions** tab.
- 2) Double-click the **Logging** cell of an Exception rule.
- 3) Set the options, then click **OK**.



**Note:** Storing or viewing the packets' payload can be illegal in some jurisdictions due to laws related to the privacy of communications.

#### Related concepts

[Add Exception rules](#) on page 883

#### Related tasks

[Configure log handling settings for engines](#) on page 686


[Add Situations to the Inspection rules tree](#) on page 882

[Remove overrides from the Inspection rules tree](#) on page 882

## Specify rule validity times

You can specify when Access rules and inspection Exception rules are applied.

You can set the validity of the rules by month, day of the week, and time of day. For example, you might have certain rules that allow access only during business hours on weekdays. If you do not specify when a rule is valid (the **Time** cell is left empty), the rule is always valid.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Double-click the **Time** cell in a rule.
- 2) Select the **Month** range during which the rule is effective.
- 3) Select one of the following:
  - **Days of Week** — creates a weekly schedule.
  - **Days of Month** — creates a monthly schedule.
- 4) In **Day**, select the beginning and end of the period during which the rule is enforced.
- 5) In **Time**, specify the times of day during which the rule is enforced.



**Note:** The times are entered in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC). You must calculate which UTC day and time corresponds to the time that you want to set. UTC time does not adjust for Daylight Saving Time (summer time).


- 6) Click **OK**.


## Validate rules automatically

---

You can automatically validate the rules in a policy at any time.

You can also validate the policy when you install or refresh the policy on an engine. In both cases, you can also select which issues are checked in the policy.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Start the policy validation in one of the following ways:
  - If the policy is open in the Policy Editing view, select  **Tools > Validate**.
  - If you are installing or refreshing a policy and the Task Properties dialog box is open, make sure that the **Validate Policy before Upload** option is selected, then click **Select Settings**.
- 2) (Optional, available in the Policy Editing view) Select the **Target** engine on which you want to install the policy to get more accurate results.
  - The Target engine selection is used to resolve Alias elements when a policy is validated.
  - If no Target engine is selected, all issues related to the engine configuration cannot be checked (for example, parts of the VPN configuration).
- 3) (Optional) Edit the **Validation Settings** (the types of issues that are checked).
- 4) (Optional) Click **Save as Default** if you want to save the selected settings as the default set for future policy validations.

- 5) Click **OK**.



**Tip:** Any issues that are found are displayed in the Issues pane.

### Related concepts

[Rule hit counters and how they work](#) on page 861

## Start the policy validation

You can validate the rules in the Policy Editing view or when you install or refresh the policy on an engine. In both cases, you can also select which issues are checked in the policy.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Start the policy validation in one of the following ways:
  - If the policy is open in the Policy Editing view, select **Tools > Validate**.
  - If you are installing or refreshing a policy and the Task Properties dialog box is open, make sure that the **Validate Policy before Upload** option is selected, then click **Select Settings**.
- 2) (Optional, available in the Policy Editing view) Select the **Target** engine on which you want to install the policy to get more accurate results.
  - The Target engine selection is used to resolve Alias elements when a policy is validated.
  - If no Target engine is selected, all issues related to the engine configuration cannot be checked (for example, parts of the VPN configuration).
- 3) (Optional) Edit the **Validation Settings** (the types of issues that are checked).
- 4) (Optional) Click **Save as Default** if you want to save the selected settings as the default set for future policy validations.
- 5) Click **OK**.

### Result

Any issues that are found are displayed in the **Issues** pane.

## Override default validation settings for rules

You can define rule-specific settings for policy validation.

The rule properties allow you to view some rule-specific information and select the settings that are applied to the selected rule when the policy is validated. The rule-specific settings override the default validation options for your administrator account.



**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Double-click the rule's **ID** cell.
- 2) Click the **Validate** tab.
- 3) Edit the **Validation Settings** (the types of issues that are checked).
- 4) Click **OK**.

The selected Validation Settings are now applied to this rule when you next validate the policy. A green checkmark is added to the rule's **ID** cell in the rule table. This indicates that the Validation Settings of the rule are different from those of the whole policy.

## Viewing policy validation issues

If policy validation finds issues, the issues are displayed in the **Issues** pane in the **Policy Editing** view or on the tab that shows the progress of installation.

**Figure 139: Issues pane**

Revalidate policy with the same validation settings

Validate policy and select validation properties

Number of found issues

Descriptions of found issues

Rules with issues are listed by rule name

Issues (4)				
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Revalidate		
...	Description	Element	Same Rule	Validation Type
	The Inspection Policy <b>High-Security Inspection Template</b> has issues: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● The Inspection rule @261010.0 is unreachable. The rule @261002.0 matches also same network details.</li> <li>● The Inspection rule @261013.0 is unreachable. The rule @261006.0 matches also same network details.</li> </ul>			General Checks
⚠	The authentication Method <b>NPS Authentication</b> is ignored in IPv4 Access rule @2097314.0: To use <b>NPS Authentication</b> , it must be selected as the authentication	@2097314.0		Unsupported Definitions
⚠	The IPv4 NAT rule @2097327.0 is unreachable. The rule @2097326.0 matches also same network details.	@2097327.0	@2097326.0	Unreachable Rules
⚠	The IPv4 Access rule @2097315.0 is duplicated. The rule @2097316.0 matches also same network details.	@2097315.0	@2097316.0	Duplicate Rules

# View the configuration in which a validation issue was found

You can view the part of the configuration that caused a policy validation issue.

In rules, the ID cell shows the status of validation issues in the rule. If issues are found for a rule, the rule's ID cell has a yellow triangle with an exclamation point. If a rule's Validation Settings override the Validation Settings of the whole policy, the rule's ID cell has a green checkmark.

**Figure 140: Rules with validation issues or rule-specific validation settings**

	IPv4 Access	IPv6 Access	Inspection	IPv4 NAT	IPv6 NAT
Rule with modified Validation Settings	5.25	Global Firewalls Helsinki Internal Network Remote Sites	DNS 1 DNS 2	DNS (UDP)	Allow
Rule in which a validation issue was found	5.26	Helsinki Internal Network	Not \$ Local Protected Si	DNS (TCP) NTP (TCP) SMTP	Allow

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Double-click the issue. The relevant part of the configuration is shown.
- 2) Fix the issues that are indicated.

## Disable validation warnings for rules


You can optionally set an issue listed in the Issues pane to be ignored for a specific rule.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the rule in the Issues pane and select **Ignore Issue Type for Rule**.  
This issue type is no longer checked for this rule. A green checkmark is added to the rule's ID cell in the rule table. It shows that the rule's Validation Settings are not the same as the policy's Validation Settings. You can change the overall selection of validation issues for a rule in the rules's properties.

## Exclude rules from policy validation

If you do not want to validate a certain rule in the policy, you can exclude the rule from policy validation.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the rule in the Issues pane and select **Disable All Issues for the Rule**.

The rule is no longer checked when you validate the policy. A green check mark is added to the rule's ID cell in the rule table. It shows that the rule's Validation Settings are not the same as the policy's Validation Settings.

## How default rules can be changed

---

Rules inherited from the default Template policies cannot be edited directly. Instead, you can create a copy of the default Template policies.


In most cases, templates and policies are inherited from the default Template policies. However, it is not possible to edit these system elements. If you must edit the default templates, you can create a copy.

Version upgrades and dynamic updates might require changes to the default Template policies. These changes are not applied to any copies of the templates. You must manually edit the copies to make sure that the system communications continue to be allowed and all necessary inspection continues to be performed.

## Create a custom version of a default Template policy

---

It is not possible to directly edit a default Template policy. Instead, you must create a copy of the default Template policy.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the template and select **New > Duplicate**.
- 2) Save the copy of the template under a different name.
- 3) Right-click existing policies that you want to use the edited template and select **Properties**.
- 4) Select your copy of the template in the **Template** pane and click **OK**.



**CAUTION:** Incorrect modifications to the default Template policies can seriously disturb the operation of the engines.



# Defining IP addresses

## Contents

- [Defining IP addresses as elements](#) on page 893
- [Access and modify network elements](#) on page 898
- [Edit Expression elements](#) on page 898
- [Using SMC elements to represent IP addresses in policies](#) on page 899

IP addresses are defined as elements in the SMC to allow reuse of the same definitions in any number of configurations for any types of components. Any element that represents at least one IP address is a *network element* and can be used to define IP addresses in policies (with some restrictions).

## Defining IP addresses as elements

There are several types of elements in the SMC that represent IP addresses.

The elements that you can use for defining IP addresses are called network elements (not to be confused with the Network element, which defines an IP network). Each element can be inserted in several places in the Access, Inspection, or NAT rules (as source and destination of traffic). Network elements are also used in many other places where you have to define IP addresses (for example, in routing and log filtering).

The primary tools for defining IP addresses are elements in the SMC whose only role is to define an IP address. But elements created for configuring a feature in the SMC can also be used in policies (with some limitations) if they represent an IP address.

Different types of elements allow you to flexibly define any set of IP addresses:

- *Address Range* elements allow you to define any continuous range of IP addresses.
- *Alias* elements represent a variable value in policies. The IP address value is filled in based on the engine on which the policy is installed. Aliases make using the same policy on several engines practical.
- *Country* elements contain lists of IP addresses that are registered in a particular country.
- *Domain Name* elements represent all IP addresses that belong to a particular domain.
- *Expression* elements allow you to define any set of IP addresses in a single element. They are especially suited for excluding some IP addresses from otherwise continuous ranges.
- *Group* elements allow you to combine different types of elements into a single element.
- *Host* elements represent a single device in the network. Each Host can represent one or more individual IP addresses in policies.
- *IP Address List* elements contain IP addresses.
- *Network* elements represent complete network segments.
- *Router* elements represent a gateway device in the network and are primarily meant for configuring routing. Each Router can represent one or more IP addresses in policies.
- *Zone* elements allow you to combine engines' network interfaces into a single element.

## Defining Address Range elements

---

An Address Range element can specify any continuous range of IP addresses.

On the Address Range element's **NAT** tab, you can view or edit the NAT definitions for the NAT configuration in which the element is included. However, you primarily configure NAT definitions in the properties of a Firewall engine.

## Defining Alias elements

---

Alias elements represent different IP addresses depending on the engine on which they are used.

Alias elements are like variables: they can be given different IP address values in the policy depending on the engine on which the policy is installed. This makes it possible to create rules that are valid on several engines without including all IP addresses in the policies of all elements. Alias elements are especially useful in Template Policies.



**Tip:** You can view the IP addresses that the Alias represents in the policy of each component: in a policy, select **Tools > Network Details**. Then select a component from the list that is added to the toolbar.

Some of the default system Aliases always receive their values directly from other parts of each engine's configuration and cannot be edited. These Aliases start with two \$\$ symbols. There are also some default Aliases that either do not receive any value without your action, or allow you to add to and change the default values. These Aliases start with one \$ symbol, as do all Alias elements you create yourself.

## Defining Country elements

---

Country elements are IP address lists based on country-level geolocation information. They are grouped within continents.

Country elements can be used to filter traffic in Access rules, based on the source or destination country or an entire continent. They can also be used in NAT rules, Inspection rules, and File Filtering rules.



**Note:** You cannot edit or create Country elements or continents. Country elements are system elements that are imported and updated when you activate new dynamic update packages.

## Defining Domain Name elements

---

A Domain Name element represents all IP addresses that belong to a particular domain.

If you have entered the IP addresses of one or more DNS servers in the engine properties, the Firewall, IPS, and Layer 2 Firewall engines periodically query the DNS server to automatically resolve domain names to IP addresses. The use of DNS servers makes it possible to create rules that are valid even if new addresses are added to the domain or the domain's IP addresses change.

If the DNS server returns multiple IP addresses for the same domain name, the engine associates all IP addresses with the domain name. However, if there are a many IP addresses associated with the same domain name, the DNS server might only reply with a few of the IP addresses at a time. In this case, the engine might need to make more queries to the DNS server to resolve all IP addresses for the domain name.

By default, the engine queries the DNS server every six minutes. Resolved IP addresses are kept in the engine's DNS cache for a maximum of one hour by default.



**Note:** The DNS cache is not synchronized between nodes of a cluster. Each node separately queries the DNS server using the node's NDI address. It is possible that the DNS cache might be different on different nodes of a cluster.

### Related concepts

[Creating engine elements](#) on page 464

## Defining Expression elements

Expression elements allow you to combine other network elements with logical operators to represent complex sets of IP addresses.

The main parts of the Expression properties are explained in the following illustration.

**Figure 141: Expression element properties**

The screenshot shows the 'Not \$ Local Protected Sites - Properties' dialog box. The 'Name' field contains 'Not \$ Local Protected Sites'. The 'Comment' field is empty. The 'Category' is 'Not Categorized'. The 'Expression Composer' section has a search bar and a list of elements. The list includes elements like '\$ Allowed ICMP Local Sources', '\$ Allowed ICMP Remote Sour...', '\$ Allowed SSH Local Sources', '\$ Allowed SSH Remote Sources', '\$ DHCP Address Pools', '\$ DHCP Address Pools for Mo...', '\$ DHCP servers', '\$ DHCP Servers for Mobile VP...', '\$ DNS\_SERVERS', '\$ EXTERNAL\_NET', and '\$ HOME\_NET'. The 'Add' button is highlighted with a red box. The 'Logical Operators' section includes buttons for '(', ')', and '&not;'. The 'Operand' field contains '\$ Local Protected Sites'. A red arrow points from the 'Add' button to the Operand field. A red arrow points from the 'Logical Operators' section to the Operand field. The 'Expression' field contains '\$ Local Protected Sites'. A red arrow points from the 'Expression' field to the text 'The expression'.

Logical Operators in Expressions are resolved in the following order (however, items inside parentheses are evaluated before any items outside parentheses are considered):

- 1) Negations
- 2) Intersections
- 3) Unions

## Defining Group elements

---

The Group element can be used to combine any number of previously defined elements into a single element. The elements can be of different types. You can use Group elements in policies to make the policies clearer to read and to simplify the editing of configurations where the same elements always appear together. You can also use Groups to add monitored elements that are displayed in the **Home** view.

*Example:* Host elements for file servers could be gathered together in a Group element, which is then used in several rules in Firewall, IPS, and Layer 2 Firewall policies. When a new file server is introduced, it is added to the Group. The change is propagated to all rules in all policies in which the Group is used.

On the Group element's **NAT** tab, you can view or edit the NAT definitions for the NAT configuration in which the element is included. However, you primarily configure NAT definitions in the properties of a Firewall engine.

## Defining Host elements

---

A Host element represents the IP addresses of any single device.

Host elements are used to represent individual devices that have no additional special role in the SMC configuration (such as being a next-hop router or an external authentication server).

You can optionally configure on the **Monitoring** tab that a Log Server monitors the device.

If you selected any of the options on the **Monitoring** tab, a new Monitoring rule for the Host is added on the selected Log Server.

On the Host element's **NAT** tab, you can view or edit the NAT definitions for the NAT configuration in which the element is included. However, you primarily configure NAT definitions in the properties of a Firewall engine.

## Defining IP Address List elements

---

IP Address List elements contain large lists of IP addresses, IP address ranges, or networks that can be used to filter traffic in Access rules, NAT rules, Inspection rules, and File Filtering rules.

IP Address List elements are imported and updated when you activate new dynamic update packages. You can also create your own IP Address List elements.

You can use IP Address List elements in Access rules to block the IP addresses used by specific services, such as Tor, or anonymous proxies. You can also block IP address ranges used by known botnets. If there are IP address ranges specific to your company that you want to control access to, create custom IP Address List elements.



## Defining Network elements

A Network element represents the IP address space of a complete network or subnetwork.

On the Network element's **NAT** tab, you can view or edit the NAT definitions for the NAT configuration in which the element is included. However, you primarily configure NAT definitions in the properties of a Firewall engine.

## Defining Router elements

A Router element represents a next-hop gateway's IP address in routing configurations when the Router has a fixed IP address.

The element can also be used to represent IP addresses in rules and other configurations as needed.



**Note:** If the interface toward the next-hop gateway has a dynamic IP address, a special Gateway (DHCP Assigned) element must be added directly through the right-click menu of the automatically added Network (DHCP assigned) element in the Routing tree. The Gateway (DHCP Assigned) element is not valid in policies. Use a corresponding Alias element instead.

You can optionally configure on the **Monitoring** tab that a Log Server monitors the device.

If you selected any of the options on the **Monitoring** tab, a new Monitoring rule for the Router is added on the selected Log Server.

On the Router element's **NAT** tab, you can view or edit the NAT definitions for the NAT configuration in which the element is included. However, you primarily configure NAT definitions in the properties of a Firewall engine.

## Defining Zone elements

Zone elements allow you to group network interfaces of Firewall, IPS, and Layer 2 Firewall engines.

You can use Zones to specify the receiving or sending interfaces in policies. The Zone element represents all interfaces that belong to the Zone. All rules that include a Zone element also apply to any new interfaces that you associate with the same Zone.

There are several predefined System Zones available:

- **DMZ:** interfaces connected to DMZ networks.
- **External:** interfaces connected to the Internet or other external networks.
- **Guest:** interfaces connected to guest networks.
- **Internal:** interfaces connected to internal networks.
- **Node-internal:** Firewall, IPS, and Layer 2 Firewall nodes themselves. This Zone is automatically assigned to interfaces through which traffic to or from the engine node travels. It cannot be assigned to other interfaces, but it can be used in policies.

### Related concepts


[How Access rules match traffic](#) on page 866


### Related tasks

[Define Source, Destination, and Service criteria in rules](#) on page 857

# Access and modify network elements

Network elements are different types of elements that represent IP addresses.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Network Elements**.
- 2) To create or edit elements:
  - In the right pane, click **New** and select an element from the drop-down list.
  - In a tree view, right-click the **Network Elements** category or a subcategory and select **New <element>**.
  - To create a copy of an existing element, right-click the element and select **New > Duplicate**.
  - To edit an existing element, right-click the element and select **Properties**. Default system elements cannot be edited.

## Edit Expression elements

The criteria in an expression combine network elements (IP addresses) with logical operators.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Select **Network Elements > Expressions**.
- 3) Right-click an Expression element and select **Properties**.
- 4) Add the first element or logical operator to the expression.
  - Select an element in the left pane and click **Add**.
  - Click the **Negation** operator or **Open Parenthesis**.



**Note:** Expressions can start with a negation operation or a section in parentheses.

- 5) Add the next element or logical operator to the expression.
  - Select an element in the left pane and click **Add**.
  - Click a logical operator.



**Note:** The **AND** and **OR** logical operators must have an element (or a section in parentheses) on both sides of the operator.

You can also click the expression to view the cursor. Click again or use the arrow keys to move the cursor. When the cursor is visible, you can press the Delete or Backspace key to remove an item (no undo).

- 6) When you are finished editing the expression, click **OK**.

### Examples

- Expression defining any other network but one internal network (172.16.2.0/24): “[negation] net-172.16.2.0/24”.
- Expression for selecting Hosts in the Network 172.17.1.0/24 from a Group element which contains Hosts from many different networks: “net-172.17.1.0/24 [intersection] Intranet Hosts Group”.

## Using SMC elements to represent IP addresses in policies

There are special considerations for using SMC elements in policies.

Many elements are created as part of configuring a particular feature. When such elements define an IP address for a device, the element can also be used to represent the IP address in policies. However, there are some special issues that might have to be considered depending on the element type.



**Tip:** To view the actual IP addresses that the element adds to a policy, insert the element in a rule, then select **Tools > Network Details**.

## SMC components

Using elements that represent SMC components as a source or destination IP address in policies can produce unexpected results. Be careful especially when you use engine elements as source or destination IP addresses in policies:

- Firewall, Single IPS, IPS Cluster, Single Layer 2 Firewall, and Layer 2 Firewall Cluster: These elements represent all static IP addresses defined for all interfaces. Create separate Host elements to represent individual IP addresses.
- Firewall Cluster: Represent all CVI IP addresses of all interfaces, but not the NDI addresses. Create separate Host elements to represent individual CVI addresses and NDI addresses.
- Firewalls with dynamic IP addresses: The Firewall element does not represent any of the dynamic IP addresses. There are default Aliases that can be used to represent the firewall’s own dynamic IP addresses in the firewall’s own policy. Fixed IP address definitions are needed for the dynamically assigned IP addresses when they have to be defined in the policies of any other components.
- SMC servers: Represent the single primary IP address defined for the element.
- Contact addresses are not taken into account when the element is used in a policy. Consider which IP address has to be added to the rule and create separate Host elements for the contact addresses as necessary.

## External Servers

Several types of external servers can be integrated with the SMC when configuring different features. In general, each server element simply represents the single primary IP address defined in the element when used in a policy. Some elements have additional considerations when used in policies:

- **Secondary IP addresses:** Many server elements can contain one or more secondary IP addresses in addition to the primary address displayed for the element. The secondary addresses are equally valid in policies.
- **Contact addresses:** Some server elements can have a contact address. Contact addresses are not taken into account when the element is used in a policy. Consider which IP address has to be added to the rule and create separate Host elements for the contact addresses as necessary.
- **Server Pools:** The Server Pool element represents the external addresses that the clients contact. Use the Server Pool in rules that allow clients' traffic to the servers whenever you want to use the Server Pool features. Elements that represent the individual members of the pool can be used to allow connections to individual pool members (for example, to allow remote administration of each server).

## Traffic handlers

---

Traffic handlers are used in Firewall Policies when configuring Multi-Link for Firewalls. They can be used in rules in the following ways:

- In **Source** and **Destination** cells: A NetLink element represents the whole network address space that is associated with the NetLink element. An Outbound Multi-Link element represents the network address spaces of all NetLinks included in the Outbound Multi-Link element.
- In the **NAT** cell in NAT rules: When the source address is translated using the Outbound Multi-Link element as the address space, the traffic is balanced between the included NetLinks according to the options selected for the Outbound Multi-Link element.

# Working with Service elements

## Contents

- [Getting started with Service elements](#) on page 901
- [Creating Service elements](#) on page 902
- [Protocol elements and how they work](#) on page 905
- [Defining Protocol parameters](#) on page 905

Service elements match traffic based on protocol or port and set options for advanced inspection of traffic. Service elements are used in Firewall Policies, IPS Policies, and Layer 2 Firewall Policies.

## Getting started with Service elements

Service elements specify a network protocol, as well as source or destination ports for TCP and UDP traffic.

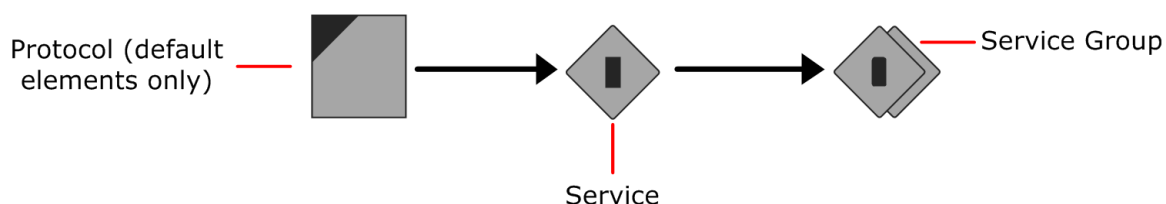
You can use Service elements to match rules to traffic in Ethernet rules (Ethernet Services), Access rules, and NAT rules.

Services can refer to **Protocol** elements, which activate further inspection checks and advanced traffic handling. Some Protocol elements have additional options that you can set in the Service element's properties.

Most of the time, you can use the default Service elements to represent standard protocols and ports. For example, you can enforce safe search features on the NGFW Engine by using predefined Services elements in Access rules. However, you might need to create a custom Service in the following cases:

- If none of the default Service elements match the type of traffic you want to allow, for example, if some TCP or UDP service in your network uses a non-standard port.
- If you want to set options for advanced traffic handling, for example:
  - Access rules that disallow the use of either the active or passive FTP connection mode
  - Firewall Access rules for CIS (content inspection server) redirection
  - Firewall Access rules and Firewall NAT rules for protocols that assign ports dynamically inside the packet payload

**Figure 142: Elements in the Services configuration**



The configuration of Service elements consists of the following general steps:

- 1) Create a Service element that matches the correct protocol number and port number (if applicable).

- 2) (Optional) Select one of the default Protocol elements if you want the traffic to be inspected further or if you want to use a Protocol Agent.
- 3) (Optional) Add the Service to a Service Group to make it easier to insert several related Services into configurations.

#### Related concepts

[Enforcing safe search features in Access rules](#) on page 822

## Creating Service elements


There are predefined Service elements that correspond to reserved and commonly used protocols and ports. You might also need to add your own custom Service elements for any non-standard ports in use or if you want to define options for advanced traffic handling (Protocol Agents).


## Create custom Service elements

Create a custom Service element if you need to match a protocol or port number that is not represented by the default Service elements. You can also use a custom Service element to change the properties of a Service element.

IP-based services are used in Access rules and NAT rules. Make sure that you know which underlying protocol the traffic you want to allow uses, and be aware of whether you must define a protocol number or a port number. Usually, the Services you define yourself are TCP-based or UDP-based and are identified by the port number they use. However, there are many common protocols that are not TCP-based or UDP-based (for example, ICMP and RPC) and are identified by other information.

Example: The GRE protocol is transported directly over IP as protocol number 47 - on the same layer as TCP (#6) and UDP (#17). Therefore, any custom Services created for TCP and UDP ports 47 do not allow GRE to pass the Firewall.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements** tree and select **Services**.
- 3) Create the Service element in one of the following ways:
  - To create an element with no settings predefined, right-click the branch for the type of Service you want to create and select **New > [Service type] Service**.
  - To create a Service based on some other Service element, right-click the existing Service and select **New > Duplicate**.
- 4) Give the new Service a unique **Name** and write an optional **Comment**.

- 5) Configure the following options depending on the protocol:

**Table 102: Required options for each protocol**

Protocol	Option
TCP and UDP	Dst. Ports (Optional)
	Src. Ports (Optional)
ICMP	Type
	Code (Optional)
SUN RPC	Program Number
	Version (Optional)
	Allow TCP (Optional)
	Allow UDP (Optional)
IP	Code

IANA assigns the protocol codes. See <http://www.iana.org> for a list.

- 6) (Optional) To associate the Service with a Protocol element, click **Select** next to the **Protocol** field and select a Protocol element.  
Selecting the Protocol is mandatory if the Service is used in an Access rule that directs packets to deep inspection against the inspection rules. Some types of traffic might require a Protocol element of the type Protocol Agent.
- 7) (Optional, not available for all Protocol elements) Set more options on the **Protocol Parameters** tab.
- 8) Click **OK**.

#### Related concepts

[How Access rules match traffic](#) on page 866

#### Related tasks

[Define what traffic NAT rules match](#)

## Create Ethernet Service elements

Create a custom Ethernet Service element if you need to match Ethernet-level traffic that is not represented by the default Ethernet Service elements. You can also use a custom Ethernet Service element to change the properties of an Ethernet Service element.

There are predefined Ethernet Service elements that correspond to commonly used Ethernet services. The predefined Ethernet Services should cover most needs you have, but you can add custom Ethernet Services if you want to:


- filter other Ethernet-level traffic
- use different names


- add your own comment for the Services



**CAUTION:** Match any IP traffic you allow in Ethernet rules to the default IPv4 and IPv6 Services. These Services match the traffic using the correct Protocol element. Only IP traffic matched to the correct Protocol element is inspected further against the Access rules. Non-IP traffic is never inspected any further.

Ethernet Services are used with IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements** tree.
- 3) Right-click **Ethernet Services** and select **New > Ethernet Service**.
- 4) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name for the new Ethernet Service.
- 5) Select the Ethernet-level protocol and enter the details depending on the protocol:

**Table 103: Required options for each protocol**

Protocol	Option
Ethernet 2 (DIX)	MAC type
LLC	SSAP
	DSAP
SNAP	Vendor
	Type



**Note:** IEEE assigns the protocol codes. The Raw IPX and Protocol protocols do not have any configurable options.

- 6) Click **OK**.

### Related concepts


[Overview of Ethernet rules](#) on page 805


## Create Service Group elements

Grouping several Service elements into Service Group elements simplifies your policies.

You can use the Service Group element in your policies instead of several individual Service elements. You can group both default Service elements and custom Service elements.



**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements** tree.
- 3) Right-click the **Services** or (IPS only) **Ethernet Services** branch according to the type of service you want to create and select one of the following:
  - **New > [Service type] Service Group** to create a Service Group under the branch for the selected type of services (for example, TCP).
  - **New > Service Group** to create the Service Group under the Group branch (item not available if you right-clicked Ethernet Services).
- 4) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name for the Service Group.
- 5) From the list on the left, select the Service elements that you want to include in the group and click **Add**.
- 6) Click **OK**.

## Protocol elements and how they work

---

Protocol Elements identify traffic as being of a certain network protocol.

Protocol elements can be inserted directly in Inspection rule exceptions. In Access rules, the Protocol elements are always contained in a Service element, which can then be inserted into the Service cell in rules. Some Protocols add options that you can adjust to custom Service elements that you create. You cannot add or modify the Protocol elements directly.

A Protocol element in Access rules identifies the protocol for inspection against Inspection rules. In Inspection rules, the Protocol can be used to limit the scope of exception rules according to the Protocol (as identified in the Access rules) in rules that otherwise match many Protocols. Also, the Protocols might activate some additional software modules on the engines.

This action depends on the type of the Protocol element:

- **Protocol Tag:** a Protocol element that does not activate additional modules.
- **Protocol Agent:** a Protocol element that activates an additional module on the engines to provide advanced application layer features.

## Defining Protocol parameters

---

Many Protocols provide options for you to set in the Service that uses them.


Some of the parameters are only used by a specific type of component.

To set options for a Protocol, you must attach it to a custom Service element: either open the properties of a custom Service you have created previously or create a Service.

## Define DNS Protocol parameters

---

The DNS protocol parameters control the DNS protocol enforcement on the IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls. When you activate this feature, the engines can determine if traffic on the DNS port is actual DNS traffic or some other application that misuses this commonly open port. For example, peer-to-peer file transfer applications might use this port).

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) In the properties of a custom Service you have created, click **Select** next to the **Protocol** field and select **DNS**.
- 2) On the **Protocol Parameters** tab, set the parameters for the Protocol.
- 3) Click **OK**.

## Define FTP Protocol parameters

---

The FTP Protocol Agent keeps track of the ports used in File Transfer Protocol (FTP) sessions.

An FTP session starts with a control connection (by default, TCP port 21), and the communications continue using a dynamically allocated port. The FTP Protocol Agent can open the actual ports used in FTP sessions as needed so that the whole range of possible dynamic ports does not need to be allowed in the policy.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the properties of a custom Service you have created, click **Select** next to the **Protocol** field and select **FTP**.
- 2) On the **Protocol Parameters** tab, set the parameters for the Protocol.




**Note:** Do not change options marked as **Firewall Only** from their default values when you use the Service element on IPS engines or Layer 2 Firewalls.

- 3) Click **OK**.

## Define GRE Protocol parameters

The Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE) protocol is a tunneling protocol that allows the encapsulation of network layer packets inside IP tunneling packets.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the properties of a custom Service you have created, click **Select** next to the **Protocol** field and select **GRE**.
- 2) On the **Protocol Parameters** tab, set the parameters for the Protocol.
- 3) Click **OK**.


## Define H323 Protocol parameters

The H323 Protocol Agent tracks H.323 connections.

H.323 consists of a series of different types of standards relating to, for example, video and audio services, real-time transport, control channels and security. The H323 Protocol Agent can allow H.323 traffic through a firewall when NAT is used.



**Note:** T.120 connections, used for instance for file transfer and whiteboard drawing, are not allowed by the H.323 Protocol Agent. To allow T.120, use the H.323 Service Group or the T.120 Service element.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the properties of a custom Service you have created, click **Select** next to the **Protocol** field and select **H323**.
- 2) On the **Protocol Parameters** tab, set the parameters for the Protocol.
- 3) Click **OK**.

## Define HTTP or HTTPS Protocol parameters

The HTTP agent can be used for redirecting traffic to an external content inspection server and to log the URLs from HTTP requests. The HTTPS agent can be used for identifying encrypted HTTPS traffic for decryption and inspection in the Access rules and for identifying encrypted HTTPS traffic for inspection in the Inspection Policy.

You can configure parameters for the following two HTTP Protocol elements:

- The **HTTP** Protocol Agent can be used for redirecting traffic to an external content inspection server and to log the URLs from HTTP requests.
- The **HTTPS** Protocol Agent is for SSL encrypted HTTP.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the properties of a custom Service you have created, click **Select** next to the **Protocol** field and select **HTTP** or **HTTPS**.
- 2) On the **Protocol Parameters** tab, set the parameters for the Protocol.
- 3) Click **OK**.

#### Related concepts

[External content inspection and how it works](#) on page 1057

[TLS inspection and how it works](#) on page 1035

## Define IPv4 Encapsulation Protocol parameters

The IPv4 Encapsulation Agent provides protocol inspection for tunneled IPv4 traffic.

The parameters define if IPv4 packets encapsulated in IPv6 packets are rematched to the policy.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the properties of a custom Service you have created, click **Select** next to the **Protocol** field and select **IPv4 Encapsulation**.
- 2) On the **Protocol Parameters** tab, set the parameters for the Protocol.
- 3) Click **OK**.

## Define IPv6 Encapsulation Protocol parameters

The IPv6 Encapsulation Agent provides protocol inspection for tunneled IPv6 traffic.

The parameters define if IPv6 packets encapsulated in IPv4 packets are rematched to the policy.


**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the properties of a custom Service you have created, click **Select** next to the **Protocol** field and select **IPv6 Encapsulation**.
- 2) On the **Protocol Parameters** tab, set the parameters for the Protocol.
- 3) Click **OK**.

## Define MSRPC Protocol parameters

The MSRPC (Microsoft RPC) Protocol Agent allows related connections for MSRPC applications, and also handles NAT modifications for communications between Microsoft Outlook clients and Microsoft Exchange servers.


The supported endpoint mapper (EPM) connection method is TCP. By default, the Microsoft RPC/ EPM service is available at port 135/tcp and the communications continue using a dynamically allocated port. The Protocol Agent monitors the actual ports used to dynamically allow the connections based on the port allocation. This removes the need to allow the full range of ports.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the properties of a custom Service you have created, click **Select** next to the **Protocol** field and select **MSRPC**.
- 2) (Firewall only) On the **Protocol Parameters** tab, set the parameters for the Protocol.
- 3) Click **OK**.

## Define NetBIOS Protocol options

The NetBIOS Protocol Agent can be used to make NAT modifications in IP addresses transported in the payload of Windows NetBIOS Datagram Service connections through the Firewall. It can also be used for deep inspection on IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the properties of a custom UDP Service you have created, click **Select** next to the **Protocol** field and select **NetBIOS (UDP)**.
- 2) On the **Protocol Parameters** tab, set the parameters for the Protocol Agent.
- 3) Click **OK**.

## Define Oracle Protocol parameters

The Oracle Protocol Agent handles Oracle Transparent Network Substrate (TNS) protocol-based SQL\*Net, Net7, and Net8 connections.



**CAUTION:** The Oracle Protocol Agent is for cases where TCP port 1521 is used only for negotiating the port number for Oracle database connections, and the port number for the actual connection is assigned dynamically. It must not be used in any other cases.

The Oracle Protocol Agent is meant only for non-SSL connections where the port number is assigned dynamically. If TCP port 1521 is used for the actual database connection, do not use a Service that contains this Protocol element. This can consume excessive resources on the firewall and lead to performance problems. Instead, use a Service that matches TCP port 1521 without any Protocol element.

If you plan to use NAT for Oracle connections, you must configure the Oracle listener so that the listener tells the client its original non-NATed IP address. This configuration, and the Protocol Agent itself, is necessary only if the database is located on a different computer than the Oracle listener. The Oracle Protocol Agent does not modify payload data because the database service connections could go through a different route than the listener connection.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the properties of a custom Service you have created, click **Select** next to the **Protocol** field and select **Oracle**.
- 2) On the **Protocol Parameters** tab, set the parameters for the Protocol.
- 3) Click **OK**.

## Define RTSP Protocol parameters

---

The RTSP Protocol Agent allows RTP (Real-time Transport Protocol) and RTCP (Real-time Control Protocol) media streaming connections initiated with RTSP through the engine.

The RTSP (Real Time Streaming Protocol) network control protocol is used for establishing and controlling media sessions between clients and media servers. On firewalls, the Protocol Agent also handles NAT modifications to the protocol payload.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) In the properties of a custom Service you have created, click **Select** next to the **Protocol** field and select **RTSP**.
- 2) On the **Protocol Parameters** tab, set the parameters for the Protocol.
- 3) Click **OK**.

## Define Shell (RSH) Protocol parameters

---

The Shell (RSH) Protocol Agent manages Remote Shell connections and allows NAT modifications to the standard output (stdout) stream.

Remote Shell (RSH) is a widely used remote management protocol. The Shell (RSH) Protocol Agent also manages RExec connections.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the properties of a custom Service you have created, click **Select** next to the **Protocol** field and select **Shell**.
- 2) On the **Protocol Parameters** tab, set the parameters for the Protocol.
- 3) Click **OK**.

## Define SIP Protocol parameters

---


The Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) agent can be used to handle multimedia connections that use SIP as their transfer protocol.

Using the agent allows SIP to be used across a firewall that uses NAT. SIP uses TCP or UDP port 5060 to initiate the connection, after which the traffic is allocated a dynamically assigned port. The Protocol Agent monitors the actual ports used, so that the range of dynamic ports does not need to be allowed in the firewall policy.

The SIP agent can be configured to force the client or server address used within the SIP transport layer to be used also for the media stream carried over SIP. This configuration is by default set for both client and server.



**Note:** Connections used for file transfer and whiteboard drawing are not allowed by the SIP Protocol Agent. Allow them in a different rule as necessary.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the properties of a custom Service you have created, click **Select** next to the **Protocol** field and select **SIP**.
- 2) On the **Protocol Parameters** tab, set the parameters for the Protocol.
- 3) Click **OK**.

## Define SMTP Protocol parameters

---

On Firewalls, the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) Protocol Agent redirects connections to an external content inspection server. On Layer 2 Firewalls and IPS engines, it provides protocol validation and deep inspection.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the properties of a custom Service you have created, click **Select** next to the **Protocol** field and select **SMTP**.

- 2) (Firewall only) On the **Protocol Parameters** tab, set the parameters for the Protocol Agent.
- 3) Click **OK**.

### Related concepts

[External content inspection and how it works](#) on page 1057

## Define SSH Protocol parameters

The SSH Protocol Agent validates the communications to make sure the protocol used really is SSH.

Secure Shell (SSH) is an encrypted remote use protocol. You can create custom SSH agents with different settings, if necessary. The SSH Agent validates SSHv1 only. This Protocol Agent is available on Firewalls, IPS engines, and Layer 2 Firewalls.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the properties of a custom Service you have created, click **Select** next to the **Protocol** field and select **SSH**.
- 2) (Firewall only) On the **Protocol Parameters** tab, set the parameters for the Protocol.
- 3) Click **OK**.

## Define SunRPC Proxy parameters

The Sun Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Protocol Agent assists the Firewall, Layer 2 Firewall, or IPS engine in Portmapper connections.

There are both UDP and TCP-based Protocol Agents for Sun Remote Procedure Call (RPC) protocol. On the firewall, these agents only assist the firewall in Portmapper connections. They make the handling of RPC program numbers used in the Access rules more rapid. On IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls, these protocol agents provide deep inspection.



**Note:** The Protocol Agent is meant only for Portmapper connections. Allow other RPC services using Service elements without the Protocol Agent.

The Portmapper Protocol Agents collect information about RPC services by interpreting the GET PORT and DUMP PORTS requests and their respective answers. All information it collects is stored in the Portmapper cache.

When the packet filter needs to evaluate RPC matches, it consults the Portmapper cache to check if the destination of the packet has the appropriate service defined in the rule. If the cache does not have the requested information available, the packet under evaluation is not let through and a query is sent to the destination host for RPC information. The information received is stored in cache.

We recommend following these precautions with the RPC protocol:

- Attach the Portmapper Protocol Agent only to Portmapper connections passing through the firewall.




- Allow the firewall engine to send RPC queries.
- Optimize the structure of your security policy. See Knowledge Base article [10086](#) for more information.

RPC queries are sent from the firewall to TCP port 111 of the external host. You can use the SunRPC (TCP) Service element or the SunRPC (UDP) Service element, or you can use the Portmapper Service element with both TCP and UDP. We recommend adding the following rule above any other Portmapper rules to allow connections without the Protocol Agent:

**Table 104: Rule for RPC Queries**

Source	Destination	Service	Action
Firewall engine IP address (NDIs on clusters)	Any	SunRPC (TCP) SunRPC (UDP)	Allow

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) In the properties of a custom Service you have created, click **Select** next to the **Protocol** field and select **SunRPC ([TCP|UDP])**.
- 2) (Firewall only) On the **Protocol Parameters** tab, set the parameters for the Protocol Agent.
- 3) Click **OK**.

## Define TCP Proxy Protocol parameters

The TCP Protocol Agent is a proxy agent that allows closing connections after a set amount of idle time.

Certain TCP-based applications do not properly handle closing of connections but instead leave them open for a long time, unnecessarily consuming resources. For such situations, the TCP proxy agent can be used to actively close the connections after a certain idle time. The TCP Proxy Agent can also close a connection if connection closing initiated by one of the communicating parties does not complete in a timely manner.

Apply this Protocol Agent strictly to those TCP connections that require this feature. Proxy operations use more resources than normal TCP connection handling and therefore increase the firewall's load.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the properties of a custom Service you have created, click **Select** next to the **Protocol** field and select **TCP Proxy**.
- 2) (Firewall only) On the **Protocol Parameters** tab, set the parameters for the Protocol Agent.
- 3) Click **OK**.

# Define TFTP Protocol parameters


---

The Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) Protocol Agent transfers data using dynamically assigned ports.

A TFTP Agent is attached to a UDP connection established between the client and the server. The client opens the control connection from a dynamically selected source port to the fixed destination port 69/UDP on the server. A separate UDP data connection is established between the client and the server after the client has sent a “read” or “write” command to the server. The server opens a data connection from a dynamic source port to the client’s destination port. This port is same as the one used as the source port of the control connection.

The TFTP protocol (RFC 1350) does not limit the port range that can be used. This Protocol Agent is available on Firewalls, IPS engines, and Layer 2 Firewalls. The TFTP Protocol Agent supports NAT operations (Firewall only).

The parameters in this protocol are for firewalls only.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the properties of a custom Service you have created, click **Select** next to the **Protocol** field and select **TFTP**.
- 2) (Firewall only) On the **Protocol Parameters** tab, set the parameters for the Protocol.
- 3) Click **OK**.

# Defining Situation elements

## Contents

- [Getting started with Situation elements](#) on page 915
- [Situations configuration overview](#) on page 916
- [Create custom Situation elements](#) on page 917
- [Context options for Situation elements](#) on page 919
- [Defining Context Options for Correlation Situation elements](#) on page 920
- [Anti-Malware Contexts for Situation elements](#) on page 926
- [DoS Detection Contexts for Situation elements](#) on page 926
- [Scan Detection Contexts for Situation elements](#) on page 926
- [Protocol-specific Contexts for Situation elements](#) on page 926
- [File Contexts for Situation elements](#) on page 927
- [System Contexts for Situation elements](#) on page 927
- [Default elements for Situation elements](#) on page 927
- [Using Tags with Situation elements](#) on page 927
- [Vulnerability elements and how they work](#) on page 930
- [Using Situation elements](#) on page 931
- [Examples of custom Situation elements](#) on page 932

Situation elements are the central element in Inspection Policies. Situation elements collect the information that identifies and describes detected events in the traffic (or in the operation system). Situation elements contain the context information that defines the pattern that the system is to look for in the inspected traffic. Situation elements also define the patterns that match events in the traffic.

## Getting started with Situation elements

Situation elements define a pattern in traffic that the engine looks for.

The patterns and events are defined by selecting a *Context* for the Situation element. The Context contains the information on the traffic to be matched, and the options you can set for the matching process.

The Inspection Policy defines how the Situation elements are matched to traffic and what action the engine takes when a match is found.

*Correlation Situation* elements are Situation elements that group event data to find patterns in that data.

Situation elements also provide a description that is shown in the logs, and a link to relevant external information (CVE/BID/MS/TA) in the form of a *Vulnerability* element attached to the Situation.

You can group Situations together using *Tags*. The Tag elements are shown as branches in the Situations tree and they can be used in policies to represent all Situations that are associated with that Tag. For example, using the Tag **Windows** in a rule means that the rule matches all Situations that are classified as concerning Windows systems.

Associating a Situation with a *Situation Type* includes the Situation in the Rules tree in the Inspection Policy, which is grouped according to the Situation Type.

Depending on the Usage Context properties of a Correlation Situation, correlation can be done only on the NGFW Engine, only on the Log Server, or on both the NGFW Engine and the Log Server. When correlation is done only on the NGFW Engine, the Correlation Situation only matches when all correlated events are detected by the same NGFW Engine. The following table lists the Usage Contexts for predefined Correlation Situations:

**Table 105: Usage Contexts for predefined Correlation Situations**

Correlation Context	Usage Context
Compress	Engine Only
Count	Engine Only
Group	Engine Only
Match	Engine Only
Sequence	Log Server Only

By default, correlation is done on both the NGFW Engine and the Log Server for custom Correlation Situations.

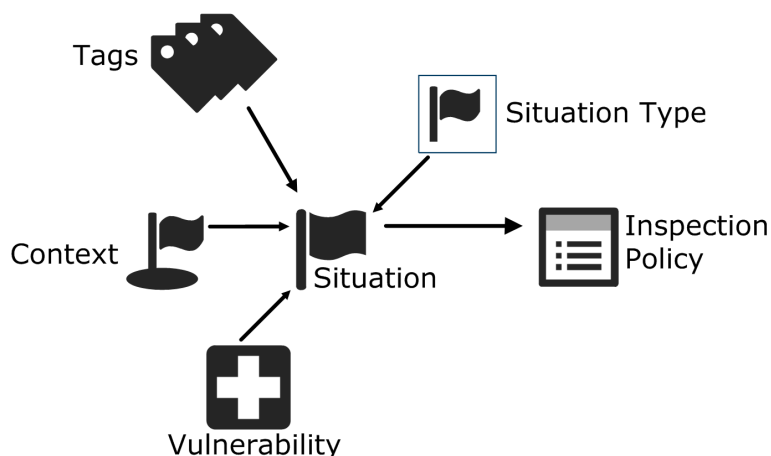
## Situations configuration overview

Configuring Situation elements involves several main steps.

The Situation element uses different elements to form a representation of the traffic that you want to detect in your Inspection Policy. The purpose of these elements is as follows:

- The **Tag** elements help you to create simpler policies with less effort. Tag elements represent all Situations that are associated with that Tag. For example, using the Tag “Windows” in a rule means that the rule matches all Situations that concern Windows systems.
- The **Situation Type** elements define the general category of the Situation and the branch of the Rules tree under which the Situation appears (such as Attacks or Successful Attacks). One Situation Type can be associated with each Situation.
- The **Context** element defines the traffic patterns the Situation detects. The Context binds the Situation to a certain type of traffic and gives you a set of options or a field for entering a regular expression.
- The **Vulnerability** element associates your custom Situation with a commonly known vulnerability. It allows you to attach a description of the Vulnerability and references to public vulnerability databases (which are shown in the Logs view if a match is found).

The Context is the only mandatory element in a Situation. However, it is recommended to consistently associate all relevant Tags with each custom Situation you create. The vulnerability description is not mandatory, but it is helpful to have it for Situations that detect some publicly known issue.

**Figure 143: Elements in the configuration**

- 1) Create a Situation element.
- 2) Give the Situation a Context, and fill in the context information according to the patterns in traffic that you want to match.
- 3) (Optional) Associate the Situation with the relevant Tags.
- 4) (Optional) Associate the custom situation description with a relevant Vulnerability.
- 5) Use the Situation in the Inspection Policy.

#### Related concepts

[Inspection Policy elements and how they work](#) on page 843

## Create custom Situation elements

You can create custom Situation elements in addition to using the predefined ones.


### Before you begin


Creating new Situation elements requires detailed knowledge of the protocols that you want to inspect and the traffic patterns related to their use.

You can create a Situation element to detect individual events or a Correlation Situation element to detect a group of related events.

A Situation element collects together the related elements and settings and sets the severity value for the Situation. The severity value can be set between Info (the least severe) to Critical (the most severe). You can use the severity value to restrict which Situations added to the Situations cell are considered in Inspection Exceptions and Alert Policies. For example, if a rule matches a large range of Situations you can create separate rules for less severe and more severe Situations.

The predefined Situation elements are updated through dynamic update packages. You can also create new Situation elements to fine-tune the patterns that the engines look for in the traffic.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements** branch and right-click the **Situations** branch in the tree view.
- 3) Select **New > Situation** or **New > Correlation Situation**.
- 4) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.  
Except for whitelisted URLs in URL Filtering, Situations are identified only by the element name. Creating multiple Situations that match the same pattern can make the policy difficult to read and manage.
- 5) (Optional) In the **Comment** field, enter a comment for your reference.  
The comment is only shown in the element properties and in the Info pane.
- 6) (Optional) Click **Select** and select the Situation Type with which to associate this Situation. You can only select on Situation Type for each Situation. The Situation Type specifies the branch of the Rules tree under which the Situation is included.
- 7) In the **Description** field, enter a description of the traffic pattern that the Situation represents.  
This description is shown, for example, in log entries.
- 8) In the **Severity** drop-down list, select the severity value for the Situation.  
The Severity is shown in the logs and can be used in Alert Policies as a criterion for alert escalation.
- 9) (Optional) In the **Attacker** and **Target** drop-down lists, select how the attacker and target are determined when the Situation matches.  
This information is used for blacklisting and in log entries.
  - **None** does not define the Attacker and Target information, so blacklisting entries cannot be created using the **Attacker** and **Target** options.
  - **IP Source** and **IP Destination** are the IP addresses of the (last) packet that triggers the Situation. Because the packet can be a request or a reply, make sure to select the option correctly based on the pattern that the situation detects to avoid reversed labeling.
  - **Connection Source** and **Connection Destination** IP addresses depend on which host opened the connection and provide a constant point of reference to the client and server in the communications.
- 10) (Optional) Click **Select** to select a category for the correlation situation.

#### Related tasks

[Add URL List elements to manually block or allow URLs on page 991](#)

# Context options for Situation elements

Adding a Context to a Situation allows you to define what kinds of patterns you want to look for in the traffic.

For example, you can specify that you want to look for a certain character sequence in an HTTP stream from the client to the server.

When you select a Context, you get a set of options or a field for entering a regular expression as parameters for the Context. The parameters define the pattern you want to look for in the traffic.

Other types of context parameters are not listed in this guide. They concentrate on some aspect of a particular kind of network traffic, and using them requires basic knowledge of the underlying network protocols. For more information on what a particular Context is used for, see the Properties dialog box of the Context in question.

Context elements are protocol-specific, so they define what the Situation element matches. They provide a framework for defining the parameters for each Situation. The parameters are entered as a regular expression or through a set of fields and options that you can adjust, depending on the Context element selected. The properties of each Context help in filling in the parameters for the Contexts.

## Related tasks

[Add URL List elements to manually block or allow URLs](#) on page 991

## Define Context options for Situation elements

The Context gives the Situation the information on which patterns you want it to match in the traffic.

For example, you might want to look for a certain character sequence in an HTTP stream from the client to the server.

The Content gives you a set of options or a field for entering a regular expression that you can use to define the pattern you want to look for in the traffic.



**Note:** Except for whitelisted URLs in URL Filtering, Situations are identified only by the element name. Avoid matching the same pattern in different Situation elements. Situations with duplicate patterns can make the policy difficult to read and manage.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) On the **Context** tab of the **Situation Properties** dialog box, click **Select**.  
The available Context categories are shown.

- 2) Select the Context you want to associate with this Situation.



**Note:**

- The details related to the Contexts can be different from what is described here because the Contexts might have been updated through dynamic update packages. Read the Release Notes of each update package you import to see which elements are affected.
- For many Contexts, type in a regular expression.
- In other cases, open the Properties dialog box for the Context element for more information.

The options for the selected Context are added to the Situation Properties.

## Defining Context Options for Correlation Situation elements

Correlation Contexts define the patterns for matching groups of related events in traffic.

Correlation Situations are used by NGFW Engines and Log Servers to conduct further analysis of detected events. Correlation Situations do not handle traffic directly. Instead they analyze the events generated by matches to Situations found in traffic. Correlation Situations use Event Binding elements to define the log events that bind together different types of events in traffic.

**Table 106: Correlation Context types**

Correlation Context Type	Description
Compress	Combines repeated similar events into the same log entry, reducing clutter in the Logs view. Example: There is a custom Situation for detecting suspicious access to a file server. An attacker is likely to browse through many files, triggering an alert entry for each file. An Event Compress Situation can be used to combine Situations together when the suspect's IP address is the same.
Count	Finds recurring patterns in traffic by counting how many times certain Situations occur within the defined period, so that action can be taken if the threshold values you set are exceeded. Example: A Situation that detects access to a system could normally trigger just a log entry. The Event Count Situation could be used to blacklist connections when access by any single host is too frequent.
Group	Finds event patterns in traffic by keeping track of whether all events in the defined set of Situations match at least once in any order within the defined time period. Example: Individual attempts to exploit different vulnerabilities in a software product in use on your server might not be too alarming if you know that your system is patched against those vulnerabilities. However, when several such events are found in a short period, it becomes more likely that someone is trying to systematically attack the server. They might also already know that the server is running that particular piece of software. A Situation that belongs to the Group Context can detect this kind of attack.



Correlation Context Type	Description
Match	Allows you to use Filters to filter event data produced by specific Situations.
Sequence	<p>Finds event patterns in traffic by keeping track of whether all events in the defined set of Situations match in a specific order within the defined time period.</p> <p>Example: Clients might use a certain type of request (for example, “give file X”) to fetch a file from a file server. When administrators log on to the same server, a successful administrator logon can be seen in the traffic as a certain type of response (for example, “full access granted”). However, a vulnerability in the server software can allow an attacker to send a specially crafted file fetch request. This kind of request might look like a valid “give file x” command, but actually causes the server to give the attacker administrator rights. This action is seen as a normal-looking “full access granted” response from the server. The Event Sequence Situation can detect when a “give file X” Situation match is followed by a “full access granted” Situation match, which cannot be any legitimate traffic.</p>

Depending on the Usage Context properties of the Correlation Situation, correlation can be done only on the NGFW Engine, only on the Log Server, or on both the NGFW Engine and the Log Server. By default, correlation is done on both the NGFW Engine and the Log Server for custom Correlation Situations. For more information about selecting the Usage Context, see the following Context-specific sections.



**CAUTION:** In custom Correlation Situations, logging might be automatically enabled for the correlated Situations even if the correlated Situations do not normally have logging enabled. If the Situations produce a large amount of log data and correlation is done on the Log Server, the increased amount of log data might overload the network or the Log Server even if no correlation matches occur.

## Define Context options for Correlation Situation elements

Correlation Contexts define the patterns for matching groups of related events in traffic.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) On the **Context** tab of the **Correlation Situation Properties** dialog box, click **Select**.
- 2) Select the Context you want to associate with this Correlation Situation.

### Related tasks


[Add Tag elements to Situation elements](#) on page 928

# Define Compress Context parameters for Correlation Situation elements

The Compress Context combines repeated similar events into the same log entry, reducing clutter in the Logs view.



**CAUTION:** Be careful when defining the Compress Context options. You must make sure that all event data you compress is part of the same event. Otherwise you risk losing valuable event information.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Browse to the Situations you want to compress in the left pane of the dialog box and drag and drop them into the **Correlated Situations** field.



**CAUTION:** In custom Correlation Situations, logging might be automatically enabled for the correlated Situations even if the correlated Situations do not normally have logging enabled. If the Situations produce a large amount of log data and correlation is done on the Log Server, the increased amount of log data might overload the network or the Log Server even if no correlation matches occur.

- 2) Enter the **Time Window Size** in seconds. The matches to the Situations selected are combined to a common log entry when they are triggered within the defined time period.
- 3) Enter the **Events per Window**. This defines the maximum number of events that are forwarded within the Time Window defined.
- 4) Select a **Log Fields Enabled** option.
- 5) Double-click the **Event Binding** field and select the Event Binding that is used by the matching option you selected in the previous step.
- 6) Select a **Location** to determine the execution order of this Compress operation in relation to other Compress operations. Operations that share the Location are executed in parallel; each compress operation receives the same events as the other compress operations in the same Location. The next Location receives only the events that are left after the compression.



**CAUTION:** Be careful when using the Early or Very Early Locations. The compression can affect the other types of correlation tasks.

- 7) Click **Edit** and define a **Compress filter** in the Local Filter Properties dialog box. The filter is used for filtering data to be included in the compression.
- 8) Make sure that **Engine Only** is selected as the **Usage Context**.




**Note:** The purpose of the Compress context is to reduce the amount of data that is sent to the Log Server. Including the Log Server in the Usage Context of a Compress context actually increases the amount of data that is sent to the Log Server.

**Related concepts**[Creating and editing local filters](#) on page 287

## Define Count Context parameters

The Count Context finds recurring patterns in traffic by counting how many times certain Situations occur within the defined period. Action can then be taken if the threshold values you set are exceeded.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Browse to the Situations you want to count in the left pane and drag and drop them to the **Correlated Situations** field.



**Note:** In custom Correlation Situations, logging might be automatically enabled for the correlated Situations even if the correlated Situations do not normally have logging enabled. If the Situations produce a large amount of log data and correlation is done on the Log Server, the increased amount of log data might overload the network or the Log Server even if no correlation matches occur.

- 2) Enter the **Time Window Size** in seconds. All events must occur during this length of time for the Correlation Situation to match.
- 3) Enter the **Alarm Threshold** number. This is the number of times that the event must occur for the Correlation Situation to match.
- 4) Select a **Log Fields Enabled** option.
- 5) Double-click the **Event Binding** field and select the Event Binding that is used by the matching option you selected in the previous step.
- 6) (Optional) Select the Usage Context to define where correlation is done.




**Note:** If you select a Usage Context that does not include the Log Server, events only match if they are all detected by the same NGFW Engine or NGFW Engine Cluster.

## Define Group Context parameters for Correlation Situation elements

The Group context finds event patterns in traffic by keeping track of whether all events in the defined set of Situations match at least once in any order within the defined time period.

The Group context has a table that allows you to define local filters and log fields for selecting which details are considered when events are grouped. In this context, the order in which the events occur is not relevant. If you would like the order of the events to matter, use the Sequence context instead.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Double-click the **Event Match** cells for each **Member** cell and define a local filter. The local filter selects the events for examination.  
You can add and remove members using the buttons to the right (to remove a member, first select a cell within that member's column).
- 2) Double-click the **Needed Number** cell of each member and enter the number of occurrences of the Event Match that are required for the events to be grouped.
- 3) Double-click the **Event Binding** field and select the Event Binding that defines the set of log events to match.
- 4) Drag and drop the relevant Situations to the **Correlated Situations** field.
- 5) Select whether you want to **Keep and Forward Events**.
- 6) Enter the **Time Window Size** in seconds. All events must occur during this length of time for the Correlation Situation to match.
- 7) Select whether you want to trigger **Continuous Responses**.
- 8) (Optional) Select the Usage Context to define where correlation is done.




**Note:** If you select a Usage Context that does not include the Log Server, events only match if they are all detected by the same NGFW Engine or NGFW Engine Cluster.

#### Related tasks

[Create or edit Filter elements](#) on page 290

## Define Match Context parameters for Correlation Situation elements

The Match context allows you to use Filters to filter event data produced by specific Situations.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Browse to the Situations you want to count in the left pane of the dialog box and drag and drop them into the **Correlated Situations** field.



**CAUTION:** In custom Correlation Situations, logging might be automatically enabled for the correlated Situations even if the correlated Situations do not normally have logging enabled. If the Situations produce a large amount of log data and correlation is done on the Log Server, the increased amount of log data might overload the network or the Log Server even if no correlation matches occur.

- 2) Click **Edit** and define a local filter.
- 3) (Optional) Select the Usage Context to define where correlation is done.



**Note:** If you select a Usage Context that does not include the Log Server, events only match if they are all detected by the same NGFW Engine or NGFW Engine Cluster.

### Related concepts


[Creating and editing local filters](#) on page 287

## Define Sequence Context parameters for Correlation Situation elements

The Sequence context finds event patterns in traffic by keeping track of whether all events in the defined set of Situations match in a specific order within the defined time period.

The Sequence context has a table you can use to define, in order from left to right, the events that comprise a sequence. This context allows detecting events such as when a request from a client triggers one pattern and the response from a server triggers a second pattern.

The table has gray and white cells; white cells must be filled, gray cells are left empty. If you would like to match events regardless of the order in which they occur, use the Group context instead.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Double-click the **Event Match** cell and define a local filter.
- 2) Double-click the **Event Binding** field and select the Event Binding that defines the set of log events to match.
- 3) Click Add Event Before or Add Event After to add more Event rows.
  - Define the Event Match for each row.
  - Define the Event Binding for each row.
- 4) When you are finished defining the sequence, drag and drop the relevant Situations in the **Correlated Situations** field below the table.
- 5) Select whether you want to **Keep and Forward Events**.
- 6) Enter the **Time Window Size** in seconds. All events must occur during this length of time for the Correlation Situation to match.
- 7) Select one of the following options as the **Usage Context**:
  - Engine and Log Server.

- Log Server Only.



**Note:** If you select a Usage Context that does not include the Log Server, events only match if they are all detected by the same NGFW Engine or NGFW Engine Cluster.

#### Related concepts

[Creating and editing local filters](#) on page 287

## Anti-Malware Contexts for Situation elements

---

Anti-Malware Contexts are used to detect malware in HTTP, HTTPS, IMAP, POP3, and SMTP protocol traffic.

You must have a license that supports anti-malware inspection to be able to use these Contexts for traffic inspection.

## DoS Detection Contexts for Situation elements

---

The DoS detection Contexts provide parameters for detecting DoS (Denial of Service) events in network traffic.

## Scan Detection Contexts for Situation elements

---

The Scan detection Contexts provide parameters for detecting attempts to scan which IP addresses are in use or which ports are open in your systems.

## Protocol-specific Contexts for Situation elements

---

The protocol-specific Contexts are used to detect a particular characteristic in the network traffic.

For example, you can detect a certain option number used in IP packets, or set the maximum length for particular arguments in FTP commands. You can also use the HTTP URL Filter to allow or deny access to specific websites (Not supported on Layer 2 Firewalls).

For Contexts that have particular values to be filled in (instead of a regular expression), the parameters you define in the Contexts often actually determine what is regarded as normal. This means that anything above/below/outside/not matching these values is regarded as a match for the Situation. In some cases, you might define what the Situation *does not* match.

Effective modifications to the protocol-specific Contexts require you to be familiar with the protocols in question and how the traffic in your network uses those protocols.

## File Contexts for Situation elements

---

The File Contexts are used to detect malicious or suspicious content in transferred files regardless of the transport protocol used.

When a file is detected, the file is inspected to identify the file type. Once the file type is identified, more specific inspection can be applied to the file.

## System Contexts for Situation elements

---

The System Contexts are used for errors and other system events.

The System Contexts are internal to the SMC, and they cannot be edited in any way.

## Default elements for Situation elements

---

There are many predefined Contexts, Situations, Tags, and Vulnerabilities.

Predefined Contexts, Situations, Tags, and Vulnerabilities are imported and updated from dynamic update packages. This also means that the set of elements available changes whenever you update your system with new definitions. Both Situation elements and Context elements have a comment and a longer description that you can view in the Management Client. This information is shown in the Info pane or in the Properties dialog for the element and explains what each element is meant for.

The Release Notes of each dynamic update package list the new elements that the update introduces. If your Management Server can connect to the Forcepoint website, you can view the [Release Notes](#) directly through the Management Client.

## Using Tags with Situation elements


---


Tag elements collect together several Situations that have something in common.

For example, you can use Tag elements to group Situations that detect threats against a particular Operating System. Tags are shown as branches in the Situations tree. Tag elements help you organize the tree, and you can use the Tags in the Inspection Policy to easily match the rule to all Situations that reference the Tag.

# Create new Tag elements for Situation and Vulnerability elements

Tag elements collect together several Situations and Vulnerabilities that have something in common.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Situations** or **Other Elements > Vulnerabilities**.
- 3) Right-click the **By Tag** branch, then select **New > <Tag Type>**.
- 4) Enter a **Name** and optionally a **Comment** for the new Tag, then click **OK**.  
The new Tag is added to the tree under the main category you selected in the previous step.

## Add Tag elements to Situation elements

You can use Tag elements to group Situation elements and Situation Type elements to classify Situations.


You can use predefined Tags or create new ones according to any criteria (for example, create a Tag for grouping together related services). Situation Types are predefined, and you cannot create new Situation Types. You can associate multiple Tags with one Situation, but only one Situation Type can be associated with each Situation.

You can use the Tags and/or Situation Types to represent a group of Situations in the Rules and Exceptions of the Inspection Policy. This allows you to match a rule to all Situations that contain the Tag or Situation Type. Situations that are associated with a Situation Type are automatically included in the Rules tree.

When you are editing the Situation properties, you can add tags.



**Note:** If a Tag or Situation Type you add to a Situation is in use in some Inspection Policy, the new Situation is automatically included in the policy when you save the Situation. The engines start matching traffic to the Situation when you refresh the policy.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the Situation properties, switch to the **Tags** tab.
- 2) Click **Add Tags** and select a Tag type from the list that opens.
- 3) Select the Tags you want to use with this Situation and click **Select**.
- 4) Click **OK** to confirm the Situation properties change.



# Add Tag elements to several Situation elements from the element tree

---

You can add the same Tag element to several Situation elements.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements > Situations** branch of the element tree and browse to the Situations you want to tag.
- 3) Ctrl-select or Shift-select the Situations that you want to tag.
- 4) Right-click one of the selected Situations and select **Add Tag**. The tag types are shown in a submenu.
- 5) Select the type of Tag you want to add.
- 6) Select the Tags you want to attach to the Situations.

# Remove Tag elements from Situation elements

---

You can remove custom Tag elements that administrators have added.

The default Tags in System Situations (provided in Update Packages) cannot be removed.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements > Situations** branch of the element tree and browse to the Situations you want to edit.
- 3) Right-click the Situation and select **Properties**.
- 4) Switch to the **Tags** tab.
- 5) Right-click the Tag you want to remove and select **Remove**.
- 6) Click **OK**.

# Vulnerability elements and how they work


Vulnerability elements provide a short description of the event that has matched and a reference to external vulnerability information (CVE/BID/MS/TA).


When a Situation element refers to a Vulnerability element, the vulnerability information is included in the log entries generated when the Situation matches traffic. You can also use the vulnerability IDs in the element search to find Situation and Vulnerability elements that refer to a particular vulnerability.

Vulnerability information is included in dynamic update packages, so Situations provided by Forcepoint are already linked to a Vulnerability when appropriate. You can associate Situations with an existing Vulnerability or add a custom Vulnerability element.

## Create Vulnerability elements

You can create custom Vulnerability elements to associate Situations with vulnerabilities that are not included in the default Vulnerability elements.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements > Situations** branch of the element tree.
- 3) Right-click the **By Vulnerability** branch in the tree view and select **New > Vulnerability**.
- 4) Give the Vulnerability a descriptive name and optionally a comment.  
The Comment is not shown in the Logs view. Use the **Description** field to enter information to be shown in the logs.
- 5) To create a reference to external vulnerability information, select one or more reference systems in the **Reference System** section and enter the **ID** this vulnerability has in that system:
  - **Mitre**: vulnerability ID format is CVE-YYYY-XXXX
  - **SecurityFocus**: vulnerability ID format is BID-XXXXXX
  - **Microsoft**: vulnerability ID format is MSYY-XXX
  - **Us-Cert**: vulnerability ID format is TAYY-XXXX
- 6) After you have entered the vulnerability ID, click **Show** next to the ID field to view the information about the vulnerability in the reference system.
- 7) Type or copy-paste a short description of what the vulnerability is about into the **Description** field.
- 8) Under **Situations**, browse to the correct Situation elements, select them (one or several at a time) and click **Add** to associate them with this Vulnerability.  
The selected Situations are added to the **Content** field on the right.

- 9) When you are finished adding Situations, click **OK**.  
The selected Situations are now associated with this vulnerability, and a link to this Vulnerability is added on the Situations' properties dialog box.

## Associate Vulnerability elements with Situation elements

You can associate Situation elements with an existing Vulnerability element or add a custom Vulnerability element.

You can add up to four references to public vulnerability databases to your custom Vulnerabilities (CVE/BID/MS/TA). System vulnerabilities can have an unlimited number of references to any reference system, and can have multiple references to the same reference system. The reference information is also shown in the Logs view.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements > Situations > By Vulnerability**.
- 3) Right-click the correct Vulnerability in the tree and select **Properties**.
- 4) Select the Situation elements (one or several at a time) and click **Add** or **Remove** to change the selection in the **Content** field on the right.
- 5) When you are finished adding Situations, click **OK**.  
The selected Situations are now associated with this vulnerability, and a link to this Vulnerability is added on the Situations' properties dialog box.

### Related tasks

[Create custom Situation elements](#) on page 917

## Using Situation elements

You use Situation elements to define what you want to detect with the Inspection Policy.

Situations are generally used for:

- Detecting malicious patterns in traffic. The Situations supplied in dynamic update packages concentrate on such known vulnerabilities and exploits.
- Reducing the number of alert and log entries you receive (using Correlation Situations).
- Detecting some other traffic patterns that you want to record. For example, you might be interested in the use of certain applications.

Although the general workflow requires making sure that a Situation you want to use is included in the Inspection Policy, you might often not actually insert the Situation into the rule. Instead, you might use a Tag or Situation Type element to represent a whole group of Situations.

## Examples of custom Situation elements

These examples illustrate some common uses for Situations and the general steps on how each example is configured.

### Example: detecting the use of forbidden software

Engine-specific examples of using custom Situations to detect traffic patterns associated with specific software.

#### Firewall engine

Company A has a Firewall that inspects all outgoing web traffic against the Inspection Policy. The use of instant messaging clients across the Internet is forbidden in the company. The Inspection Policy is set to detect and log Situations with the **Instant Messaging Tag**.

The company's administrators have found out that some internal users have started chatting using a new little-known instant messaging client that does not have a default Situation yet. The communications seem to be standard HTTP directly from client to client. The administrators find one distinctive characteristic in the software: when started, the software in question always connects to a particular address to check for updates using HTTP.

The administrators:

- 1) Create a custom Situation element with the name "Software X".
- 2) Add the **HTTP Request URI Context** to the Situation and type in a regular expression that contains the address they want the Situation to find using the SMC regular expression syntax.
- 3) Add the default system Tag **Instant Messaging** to the Situation.
- 4) Refresh the Firewall's policy.
- 5) Open the Logs view and filter the view using the "Software X" Situation as the filtering criteria.
- 6) See which computers use the forbidden software and remove the software from the computers shown in the logs.

#### IPS engine

Company A has an IPS engine deployed in between their internal network and the Internet. The IPS engine uses a policy that is based on the IPS Template policy.

The administrators find out that some of the internal users have installed a piece of software on their computers that the company's security policy forbids. They consider this software a security risk.

The administrators decide that they would like to detect the use of the software so that they can find out which users have installed it. The administrators find one simple but distinctive characteristic in the software: when started, the software in question always connects to a particular address to check for updates using HTTP.

The administrators:

- 1) Create a custom Situation element with the name “Software X”.
- 2) Add the **HTTP Client Stream** Context to the Situation and type in a regular expression that contains the address they want the Situation to find using the SMC regular expression syntax.
- 3) Add one of the default Situation Types under **Traffic Identification** to the Situation.
- 4) Select the correct options for logging the traffic in the Rules tree in the Inspection Policy and install the policy on the IPS engine.
- 5) Open the Logs view and filter the view using the “Software X” Situation as the filtering criteria.
- 6) See which computers use the forbidden software and take action based on which IP addresses are shown in the logs.

## Example: counting events to reduce number of repeated queries to a server

An example of using the Count context in a Correlation Situation.

Company B has a Firewall and an IPS engine that monitor traffic to a DMZ network. The DMZ contains a server that provides information to Company B’s partners. A while ago, users started complaining that the service had slowed down.

Upon investigation, Company B’s administrators found out that the traffic had grown dramatically even though the number of users and the data available had stayed the same. They found out that one of the partners had made a misconfigured script that frequently copied several large catalogs from Company B’s server to their own server. Furthermore, they had given the script to a few other partners as well. As a first step, the administrators decide to immediately stop excessive queries to the server.

The administrators:

- 1) Create a custom Situation for detecting access to the catalog files.
- 2) Create a custom Correlation Situation and attach the **Count** Context to it. Then define the settings for the Count Context to detect when there are more than 5 requests per minute to any of the files from the same source address.

**Table 107: Context settings for the example Correlation Situation**

Field	Option
Correlated Situations	Custom Situation
Time Window	60
Alarm Threshold	5

Field	Option
Log Fields Enabled	Select
Log Names	Src Addr

- 3) Insert the Correlation Situation in the Inspection Policy with blacklisting as the Action. The traffic from the offending hosts is stopped at the Firewall.
- 4) Refresh the Inspection Policy on the IPS engine.

## Example: preventing access to forbidden websites

---

An example of using Situations to block access to specific websites.

The Administrators at Company C have noticed that employees frequently visit websites that are not related to their work. They want to block access to these websites to prevent employees from accessing them at work. To prevent access, they:

- 1) Create a Situation element.
- 2) Add the **Website Access Control** Context to the Situation.
- 3) Specify the addresses they want to prevent access to. Access to the specified addresses is blocked.
- 4) Refresh the Inspection Policy on the IPS engine.

# Using Network Application elements

## Contents

- [Getting started with Network Application elements](#) on page 935
- [Create TLS Match elements for network application detection](#) on page 936
- [Access rules for network application detection](#) on page 938
- [Example: blocking network application use](#) on page 941

Network Application elements collect combinations of identified characteristics and detected events in traffic to dynamically identify traffic related to the use of a particular network application.

## Getting started with Network Application elements

---

Network Application elements provide a way to dynamically identify traffic patterns related to the use of a particular network application.

Network Application elements allow you to more flexibly identify traffic beyond specifying a network protocol and ports for TCP and UDP traffic with a Service element. Matching is done based on the payload in the packets, making it possible to identify the protocol even when non-standard ports are used. First, the protocol is identified, then a protocol-specific pattern matching context is applied to identify the network applications.

Keep the following in mind when working with Network Application elements:

- There are several predefined Network Application elements available that define the criteria for matching commonly used network applications. No configuration is required to be able to use Network Application elements in Access rules.
- Predefined TLS Match elements are used in the properties of some predefined Network Application elements to allow the Network Application to match the use of the TLS protocol in traffic.
- You cannot edit the predefined Network Application elements. However, Access rules can override the properties of a predefined Network Application element.
- Creating Network Application elements requires detailed knowledge of the network applications you want to detect and the traffic patterns related to their use. Creating Network Application elements is not recommended.
- If a certificate for TLS inspection has been uploaded to the engine, adding a Network Application that allows or requires the use of TLS to an Access rule enables the decryption of all TLS traffic. So does enabling the logging of Application information in the Access rules.

# Network Applications configuration overview

---

No configuration is required to be able to use Network Application elements in Access rules.

There are several predefined Network Application elements available that define the criteria for matching commonly used network applications. Creating Network Application elements or duplicating existing elements is not recommended. To override the settings of a predefined Network Application, edit the Service Definition of the rule in which you use the Network Application.

- 1) (Optional) Create TLS Match elements to override the properties of predefined Network Application elements.
- 2) Use the Network Application element in the Access rules.

## Default elements for Network Application elements

---

There are several predefined elements for working with Network Application elements.

Application Type elements define general categories of network applications. One Application Type element can be associated with each Network Application element. Application Type elements are predefined, and you cannot create Application Type elements.

Tag elements help you to create simpler policies with less effort. Tag elements represent all Network Application elements that are associated with that Tag. For example, the Media Tag includes several web-based image, music, and video applications. Several Tags can be associated with each Network Application element.

TLS Match elements define matching criteria for the use of the TLS protocol in traffic. When a connection that uses the TLS protocol is detected, the server certificate for the connection is compared to the TLS Match in the Network Application definition. TLS connections are allowed only to sites that have trusted certificates that meet the following criteria:

- The certificate domain name must match the domain name in the TLS Match element.
- The certificate must be signed by a valid certificate authority.
- The certificate must be valid (not expired or revoked).

The predefined elements are imported and updated from dynamic update packages. This means that the set of elements available changes whenever you update your system with new definitions. The Release Notes of each dynamic update package list the new elements that the update introduces.

## Create TLS Match elements for network application detection

---

TLS Match elements define matching criteria for the use of the TLS (transport layer security) protocol in traffic.

In addition to the predefined TLS Match elements used in predefined Network Application elements, you can optionally define your own TLS Match elements.

TLS Match elements can match traffic based on the following criteria:


- Whether certificate validation succeeded, failed, or was not performed.




- The server domain name in a valid certificate.
- Specific reasons a certificate is regarded as invalid if certificate validation failed.
- The domain name in the Server Name Indication (SNI) field of the TLS Client Hello packet.

TLS Match elements also specify whether to decrypt TLS traffic to particular Internet domains for inspection. TLS Match elements that deny decryption are applied globally. Even if the TLS Match element is not used in the properties of any Network Application elements or in the Access rules, matching connections are never decrypted. Denying decryption in a TLS Match prevents network applications from being detected in encrypted connections to the specified domains. If the server certificate provides sufficient information to identify the network application without decrypting the client communications, you can alternatively specify that decryption is not necessary for network application identification in the Network Application properties.

A Network Application element matches a TLS connection only if a TLS Match element in the Network Application also matches. However, TLS Match elements used in Service Definitions override the TLS Match of a Network Application. In this case, the rule matches when the TLS Match elements specified in the rule match.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements** branch.
- 3) Right-click **TLS Matches**, then select **New TLS Match**.
- 4) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.
- 5) (Optional) Select **Deny Decrypting** to prevent connections from being decrypted for inspection.



**Note:** Selecting this option prevents the network application where the TLS Match is used from being identified if the traffic is encrypted. If you want to specify that decryption is not necessary for identifying the network application, use the **Application Identifiable by TLS Match Alone** option in the Network Application properties instead.

- 6) To define whether the server certificate validity is checked and what to match, select an option from the **Match Certificate Validation** drop-down list.
- 7) Configure the additional settings depending on the option that you selected from the **Match Certificate Validation** drop-down list:
  - **Validation Succeeded** — Click **Add**, then enter the fully qualified domain name to match in the server certificate.
  - **Validation Failed** — (Optional) Select the specific types of invalid certificates to match.
  - **No Validation** — There are no additional settings to configure.
- 8) Click **OK**.

# Access rules for network application detection

---

To detect network application use, you must create Access rules that define the matching criteria.

The Service cell defines the protocols that are compared to the protocol-related information in each packet's header. You can use Network Application elements directly in the Service cell, or as part of the matching criteria in the **Service Definition** dialog box. Any other criteria in the **Service Definition** dialog box override the properties of the Network Application element. For example, the Google Network Application element matches only TCP ports 80 and 443, but using Any TCP Service allows the Network Application element to match any traffic pattern that resembles the use of Google, regardless of the port.


Alternatively, you can use Application Type elements and Tag elements directly in the Service cell. Application Type elements represent general categories of network applications. Tag elements represent all Network Application elements that are associated with that Tag.


Some network applications can open several related connections. If an Access rule that detects network application use identifies a related connection, the related connection is matched against the Access rules again. If the rule that detected the network application use has deep inspection enabled and the related connection matches a rule that has deep inspection enabled, the related connection is matched against the Inspection Policy. No NAT payload modifications are done for the connection that matches the rule that detected the network application use. NAT payload modifications can be done for the related connections according to the policy.

## Create Access rules for network application detection

---

To detect network application use, create Access rules that define the matching criteria.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Policies**, then browse to the policies of the type that you want to edit.
- 3) Right-click a policy, then select **Edit <policy type>**.
- 4) On the **IPv4 Access** or **IPv6 Access** tab, add a rule in one of the following ways:
  - Right-click the last row in an empty rules table, then select **Add Rule**.
  - Right-click the **ID** cell of an existing rule, then select **Add Rule Before** or **Add Rule After**.
- 5) Drag and drop elements from the **Resources** pane to the **Source** and **Destination** cells, or define source and destination criteria.
- 6) In the **Action** cell, select the action according to your needs.

- 7) Drag and drop a Network Application, Application Type, or Tag element to the **Service** cell.

**Note:**

If a TLS Credentials or Client Protection Certificate Authority element has been uploaded to the engine, adding a Network Application element that allows or requires the use of TLS might enable the decryption of the following TLS traffic:

- TLS traffic from network applications that cannot be identified based on cached network application information.
- TLS traffic that matches an Access rule that enables deep inspection if the **Service** cell contains a Network Application or Service element that does not include a Protocol Agent.
- TLS traffic for which there is no TLS Match with the **Deny Decrypting** option that excludes the traffic from TLS Inspection.

- 8) In the **Logging** cell, select options according to your needs.  
If you want to include information about network application use in the logs, select **Default** or **Enforced** for **Log Application Information**.
- 9) Click **Save and Install**.

## Override Network Application element properties in Service Definitions

You can specify criteria in the Service Definition to override the properties of a Network Application element.

### Before you begin


Create Access rules for network application detection.


Network Application elements can include protocols, port numbers, and TLS Matches. Normally, the Access rule that contains the Network Application element only matches when the properties of the Network Application element match:

- When Network Application elements include a protocol and port number, the rule matches only when the protocol and port number match.
- When a TLS Match is specified in the properties of a Network Application element, the rule matches TLS connections only if the TLS Match also matches.

When you use the Service Definition to override the properties of the Network Application element, the Access rule that contains the Network Application element matches when the Service or TLS Matches specified in the rule match.


For example, the predefined Google Mail Network Application matches only TCP ports 80 and 443. Adding Any TCP Service to the Service Definition allows the Network Application to match any traffic pattern that resembles the use of Google Mail, regardless of the port.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Policies**, then browse to the policies of the type that you want to edit.
- 3) Right-click a policy, then select **Edit <policy type>**.
- 4) Click the **IPv4 Access** or **IPv6 Access** tab.
- 5) Right-click the **Service** cell, then select **Edit Service**.
- 6) To add a row to the Service Definition, click **Add Row**.
- 7) Drag and drop Service or TLS Match elements to the correct cells.
  - TLS Match elements can only be used with Network Application elements that include a TLS Match in the Network Application element properties.
  - URL Situation elements cannot be used with Network Application elements.




**Note:** All items on the same row must match the traffic for the row to match. You cannot use a Network Application element and a Service element on different rows of the Service Definition.


- 8) Click **OK**.
- 9) If you have finished editing the policy, click  **Save and Install**.

## Log network application use

---

You can optionally log the use of network applications without using network application detection for access control.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Policies**, then browse to the policies of the type that you want to edit.
- 3) Right-click a policy, then select **Edit <policy type>**.
- 4) On the **IPv4 Access** or **IPv6 Access** tab, add a rule in one of the following ways:
  - Right-click the last row in an empty rules table, then select **Add Rule**.
  - Right-click the ID cell of an existing rule, then select **Add Rule Before** or **Add Rule After**.

- 5) Drag and drop elements from the **Resources** pane to the **Source** and **Destination** cells, or define source and destination criteria.
- 6) (Optional) Drag and drop a Network Application, Application Type, or Tag element to the **Service** cell. It is not necessary to add a Network Application element if you only want to log the use of network applications.
- 7) In the **Action** cell, select **Continue**.
- 8) Double-click the **Logging** cell.
- 9) Select **Override Settings Inherited from Continue Rule(s)**.
- 10) In the **Log Level** drop-down list, select the log level for traffic that matches the rule.
- 11) Select **Override Recording Settings Inherited from Continue Rule(s)**.
- 12) In the **Log Application Information** drop-down list, select **Enforced**.



**Note:** If a TLS Credentials element or a Client Protection Certificate Authority element has been uploaded to the engine, selecting **Enforced** might enable the decryption of the following TLS traffic:

- TLS traffic from network applications that cannot be identified based on cached network application information.
- TLS traffic that matches an Access rule that enables deep inspection if the **Service** cell contains a Network Application or Service element that does not include a Protocol Agent.
- TLS traffic for which there is no TLS Match with the **Deny Decrypting** option that excludes the traffic from TLS Inspection.

- 13) Click **OK**.
- 14) Click **Save and Install**.

## Example: blocking network application use

An example of using Network Application elements to block the use of specific network applications.

The administrators at Company A want to allow the use of HTTP in general, but block the use of social media applications from its corporate network. When social media use is detected, the administrators want to redirect users to the corporate security policy page on the company intranet.

The administrators:

- 1) Create a User Response element to redirect dropped connections to the corporate security policy intranet page.
- 2) Add the following Access rules:

Source	Destination	Service	Action
Internal networks	Not internal networks expression	Social Media Application Tag	Discard Response: User Response to redirect connections to the intranet page
Internal networks	Not internal networks expression	HTTP	Allow

- 3) Refresh the firewall's policy.

# Defining User Response elements

## Contents

- [User Response elements and how they work](#) on page 943
- [Create User Response elements](#) on page 945

With the User Response element, you can send customized replies to users, instead of just closing an HTTP or HTTPS connection.

## User Response elements and how they work

---

User Response elements allow you to define custom responses that are sent to the user when an HTTP or HTTPS connection is closed.

User Responses make it possible to explain to the user why the connection was closed instead of simply closing the connection with no notification. They help administrators differentiate cases where the NGFW Engine closes a connection from cases where a technical problem prevents the connection from going through.

When you combine User Responses with browser-based user authentication, you can also redirect users to their original destination after they have authenticated to a Firewall. The redirection can be automatic or require the users to click a link to the original HTTP destination address on the user authentication page after they have authenticated.

You can use User Responses in Access rules and in Inspection Policies. Redirection to the user's original HTTP destination after authentication must be configured in the Inspection Policy.

## Limitations of User Responses

---

User Responses have the following limitations:

- To use User Responses with HTTPS traffic, you must enable decryption of HTTPS traffic.
- Some web browsers, such as Mozilla Firefox and Google Chrome, use HTTP Strict Transport Security (HSTS) to enforce the use of HTTPS by default. The end user's web browser might not accept the certificate for TLS inspection when HSTS is used.

## User Response configuration overview

---

Configuring a User Response involves creating a User Response element, defining the response content, and adding the User Response element to a policy.

Follow these general steps to configure User Responses:

- 1) Create a User Response element.
- 2) Define the responses that are sent to the users when a connection is closed.
- 3) Use the User Response element in the Access rules and Inspection rules as required.

#### Related tasks

[Add Access rules](#) on page 865

[Add Inspection rules](#) on page 880

[Create User Response elements](#) on page 945

## Variables for User Response elements and how they work

Variables allow you to dynamically add details about the connection to the message that is shown to users. Users can provide the information to their administrator when they report problems with the connection.

You can add variables to the **Message Response** and **Custom HTML** response types. If the information that the variables represent is available for the connection, the details are automatically added as text to the message that is shown to users. For example, if the client's IP address is 192.168.22.33, the `{{SrcIP}}` variable is replaced with 192.168.22.33 in the message. If the information is not available, N/A is shown in the message.

The following variables are supported:

**Table 108: Variables for User Response elements**

Variable	Description
<code>{{SrcIP}}</code>	The source IP address of the connection.
<code>{{DstIP}}</code>	The destination IP address of the connection.
<code>{{SrcPort}}</code>	The source port of the connection.
<code>{{DstPort}}</code>	The destination port of the connection.
<code>{{User}}</code>	The user name and LDAP domain of the user that made the connection in the format <code>user@domain</code> . If the LDAP domain is not available, only the user name is shown.
<code>{{Group}}</code>	A comma-separated list of User Groups to which the user belongs.
<code>{{Url}}</code>	The URL requested in the connection.
<code>{{UrlCategory}}</code>	The URL Category for category-based URL filtering that the requested URL matches.
<code>{{Application}}</code>	The Network Application identified in the connection.
<code>{{RuleTag}}</code>	The rule tag of the rule that blocked the connection.
<code>{{TimeStamp}}</code>	The date and time of the connection.
<code>{{FileName}}</code>	The name of the file that was detected in the connection.



Variable	Description
{{ArchiveName}}	The file name of the compressed file that was detected in the connection.
{{MalwareName}}	The name of the malware that was detected in the connection.

## Create User Response elements

You can define a different User Response entry for each case in which an HTTP or HTTPS connection matches a rule that closes the connection.

The HTTP or HTTPS connection is not allowed to continue in the following cases:

- **Connection Blacklisted (HTTP only)** — The connection was closed according to a rule with the Apply Blacklist action.
- **Connection Discarded by Access Rule (HTTP only)** — The connection was discarded according to an Access rule with the Discard action.
- **Connection Terminated by Inspection Rule** — The connection was terminated according to the Inspection Policy.
- **URL Not Allowed** — The connection was closed by rules for URL filtering.
- **Malware Found** — The anti-malware feature detected malware in the connection.



**Note:** In some cases, such as when inspecting a large file transfer, it is not possible to apply a User Response to HTTPS traffic. In this case, the engine applies the default action for matching traffic. If an HTTPS connection is discarded before the payload is decrypted, no User Response is sent.

You can also redirect users to their original HTTP destination after they have authenticated to a Firewall. You automatically redirect the users after they have authenticated, or you can require the users to click a link to the original HTTP destination address on the user authentication page after authentication.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements** branch, then select **Engine Properties**.
- 3) Right-click **User Responses**, then select **New User Response**.
- 4) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.
- 5) For the entry that you want to change, expand the section.
- 6) From the **Type of Response** drop-down list, select one of the following responses:
  - **Message Response** — (Optional) Customize the message to display to the user.
  - **URL Redirection** — In the **HTTP or HTTPS URL Destination** field, enter the URL to which the connection is redirected. The URL must begin with `http://` or `https://`.

- **Custom HTML** — (Optional) Customize the HTML source code for the message to display to the user. The HTML source code must be a complete HTML page, including the `<html>` and `<body>` tags.
- 7) (Optional) To dynamically add details about the connection to the message for the **Custom HTML** and **Message Response** response types, add variables.
    - a) Click the location in the HTML source code or message text where you want to add the variable.
    - b) Click **Add Variable**, then select the variable that you want to add.
    - c) (Optional) To preview the message in your default web browser, click **Preview in Browser**.
  - 8) (Optional) To redirect users to their original destination after they have authenticated to the Firewall for the **URL Redirection** response type, define the settings for the redirection.
    - a) To enable redirection to the original destination, select **Enable Manual Redirection to Original URL After Authentication**.
    - b) (Optional) To automatically redirect the user to the original destination, select **Enable Automatic Redirection to Original URL After Authentication**.
  - 9) Click **OK**.

# Quality of Service

## Contents

- [Quality of Service \(QoS\) and how it works](#) on page 947
- [Create QoS Class elements](#) on page 955
- [Define QoS Policy elements](#) on page 956
- [Apply QoS to traffic](#) on page 959
- [Examples of bandwidth management and traffic prioritization scenarios](#) on page 960

The Quality of Service (QoS) features allow you to manage bandwidth and prioritize connections on the engines. QoS features are available on Firewalls, IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewalls, Master NGFW Engines, Virtual Firewalls, Virtual IPS engines, and Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls.

## Quality of Service (QoS) and how it works

---

QoS (Quality of Service) allows you to manage the available network bandwidth and make sure that important network services are given priority over less important traffic.

There are two Quality of Service (QoS) features: bandwidth management and traffic prioritization. Both features are configured using the same tools. You can use both bandwidth management and traffic prioritization together or bandwidth management or traffic prioritization individually for any given type of traffic. Bandwidth management and traffic prioritization are not supported on Modem interfaces of Single Firewalls.

The Firewall can also read and write DiffServ Code Point (DSCP) markers in type of service (ToS) fields. The markers allow you to integrate the Firewall with other network equipment that implements QoS management in your own or your ISP's network.

### What QoS does

---

The QoS features help you in the following ways:

- You can set up a *Guarantee* for a type of traffic that must always be given a certain minimum share of the available bandwidth.
- You can set up a *Limit* for maximum bandwidth for a type of traffic that must never use more than a certain share of the available bandwidth.
- You can set a *Priority* value for the traffic. Higher priority traffic is sent forward to its destination before lower priority traffic if the engine queues packets due to congestion.
- *Active Queue Management* (AQM) reduces the volume of dropped or retransmitted packets when there is network congestion. AQM monitors the average queue size and uses a scheduling algorithm to determine the statistical probability for dropping incoming packets.

- The engine can read or write DiffServ Code Point (DSCP) type of service (ToS) field markers. The markers allow the engine to be aware of the priorities set by other network equipment. Other equipment is also aware of the priorities set in the QoS Policy.
- The engine can collect statistics about traffic that matches Access rules that apply a QoS Class to the traffic. QoS Class-based statistics items are used in Overviews and Reports.

## Limitations

- Firewalls — QoS is available only on *Physical Interfaces*, *VLAN Interfaces*, *Tunnel Interfaces*, *ADSL Interfaces*, *SSID Interfaces*, and *Port Group Interfaces* of an integrated Switch as well as in the properties of *policy-based VPNs*. QoS is not available on *Modem Interfaces*.
- IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewalls, Virtual IPS engines, and Virtual Layer 2 Firewalls — QoS is available only on *Physical Interfaces* that are part of an *Inline Interface* pair.
- It is not possible to apply a bandwidth guarantee to incoming Internet traffic on your Internet link. By the time the engine sees the traffic, the bandwidth has already been used. If you want guaranteed bandwidth for a specific portion of your incoming Internet traffic, contact your ISP and ask if they can enforce this guarantee for you.
- If you want to create QoS rules for both incoming and outgoing traffic, you must assign a QoS Policy to at least two interfaces. Incoming traffic is processed according to the Firewall, IPS, or Layer 2 Firewall policy, and then the QoS Policy is applied to the allowed traffic on the outgoing interface.

## What do I need to know before I begin?

- There are three default QoS Classes: High Priority, Normal Priority, and Low Priority. These are used in the default QoS Policy, *Prioritize*. The Prioritize QoS Policy is a sample policy that contains simple rules for prioritizing traffic according to the three default QoS Classes. High Priority traffic is assigned the highest possible priority value of 1. The Normal Priority value is 8, and Low Priority is assigned the lowest possible value of 16. The default Prioritize policy does not provide any bandwidth guarantees or limits. If the default Prioritize policy is sufficient for you, you can use the default QoS Classes and the Prioritize policy as they are.
- By default, the DSCP mark for the encrypted ESP packet in VPN traffic is inherited from the plaintext packet. Selecting a QoS Policy in the properties of the policy-based VPN makes it possible to mark the ESP packet after encryption.
- Priorities, limits, and guarantees are applied. DSCP codes are written to outgoing packets on the interface that the traffic uses to exit the engine according to the QoS Policy and interface speed defined for that interface.
- For packets entering the engine, the QoS Policy on that interface is only used for reading DSCP codes and matching them to QoS Classes for further use. It is the only QoS operation that is done on the interface that the traffic uses to enter the engine.  
**Example:** A new packet enters a Firewall through interface A and leaves the Firewall through interface B. The priorities, guarantees, and limits configured on interface A are ignored for packets in this direction. Any priorities, guarantees, and limits are configured and applied on interface B. If the packet contains a DSCP code when entering the Firewall, the DSCP code is read and matched to a QoS Class on interface A. If a new DSCP code is (over)written in the packet, the new code is written on interface B.
- The *QoS Mode* for each interface defines how QoS is applied to the interface. Depending on the QoS Mode, you might also have to define the QoS Policy the interface uses and the speed of the interface.

### Related concepts

[Defining Policy-Based VPN elements](#) on page 1192

# Bandwidth management

Bandwidth management means giving a guaranteed minimum portion of the available bandwidth to some types of traffic. It also sets limits for how much of the total available bandwidth each type of traffic is allowed to consume at any given time.

You can set a limit, a guarantee, or both for any given type of traffic. These features can be used to guarantee the quality of time-critical communications (even under normal network load), prepare for malfunctions, and limit the total bandwidth needed.



**Note:** Bandwidth management applies to outbound traffic only. The firewall can only indirectly limit the bandwidth use of incoming traffic.

## Related concepts

[Managing bandwidth of incoming traffic](#) on page 952

# Traffic prioritization

You can ensure that essential or time-critical traffic flows without delays by giving it a higher priority value.

Even under normal traffic conditions, temporary traffic peaks sometimes occur. With many communications, slight delays caused by queuing traffic are not noticeable to the user of the service. However, some connections, such as streaming audio or video, are time-critical, and even relatively minor delays cause noticeable reduction in service quality.

Normally, when packets are queued, they are sent onwards in the same order in which the packets were received. To change this behavior, you can assign priority values to the traffic. For example, you can assign time-critical connections a high priority. High-priority packets are placed before any lower-priority packets in the queue, allowing the fastest possible delivery.

Active Queue Management (AQM) reduces the volume of dropped or retransmitted packets when there is network congestion. AQM monitors the average queue size and uses a scheduling algorithm to determine the statistical probability for dropping incoming packets. If the queue is almost empty, all packets are accepted. As the queue size increases, the probability for dropping incoming packets also increases. When the queue is full, all packets are dropped.

# Effects of bandwidth management and prioritization

Bandwidth management and traffic prioritization improve the quality of service for important traffic. However, the quality of service for traffic that you define as less important can decrease.

Both features are configured using the same tools. You can use both bandwidth management and traffic prioritization together, or bandwidth management or traffic prioritization individual for any given type of traffic. Bandwidth management and traffic prioritization are not supported on the Modem interfaces of Single Firewalls.

Usually the traffic management process allows all connections to proceed, although some traffic can occasionally slow down when the bandwidth limits are reached. If there is prolonged congestion in the network, lower priority traffic eventually starts to time out. If you set priorities without setting any maximum limits or minimum guarantees for bandwidth, high-priority traffic can even use all available bandwidth, blocking all lower-priority traffic.

In most situations, the guaranteed minimum bandwidths given to important connections allow traffic to proceed. However, even traffic with bandwidth guarantees might not get through, if network links are unable to maintain throughput or if the volume of traffic continuously exceeds the throughput. Make sure that your bandwidth limits and guarantees are granular enough to account for losing bandwidth, for example, due to ISP failure in a Multi-Link environment. Track the total bandwidth use, so that you can increase the throughput before problems appear.

The Firewall can also read and write DiffServ Code Point (DSCP) markers in type of service (ToS) fields. The markers allow you to integrate the Firewall with other network equipment that implements QoS management in your own or your ISP's network.



**CAUTION:** Inappropriate bandwidth limits and guarantees only disturb traffic. Make sure the guarantees and limits you set are appropriate for the volume of each type of traffic.

## Default QoS elements

---

There are three default QoS Classes: High Priority, Normal Priority, and Low Priority. These are used in the default QoS Policy, *Prioritize*.

The Prioritize QoS Policy is a sample policy that contains simple rules for prioritizing traffic according to the three default QoS Classes. High Priority traffic is assigned the highest possible priority value of 1. The Normal Priority value is 8, and Low Priority is assigned the lowest possible value of 16. The default Prioritize policy does not provide any bandwidth guarantees or limits.



**CAUTION:** If you set priorities without setting any bandwidth limits or guarantees, high-priority traffic can use all available bandwidth, blocking all lower-priority traffic.

If the default Prioritize policy is sufficient for you, you can use the default QoS Classes and the Prioritize policy as they are. Add the QoS Classes to Access rules. Then, configure the interfaces to use the Prioritize QoS Policy.

### Related tasks

[Apply QoS to traffic](#) on page 959

[Define QoS Policy elements](#) on page 956

## Using bandwidth management and traffic prioritization

---

You can use bandwidth management and traffic prioritization to ensure critical communications, prepare for network link failures, and restrict non-essential traffic.

Bandwidth management and traffic prioritization are used for the following purposes:

- To ensure the quality of service for time-critical communications during occasional traffic peaks. Even if there is ample bandwidth available, short periods of congestion can degrade the quality of some types of communications.
- To prepare for severe congestion, caused by the loss of network links when there are technical problems. In a Multi-Link environment, you can have several NetLinks. Ideally, the throughput of these links is large enough that each link can alone handle the traffic. However, if it is not a viable option, it might become necessary to choose which connections are given priority if network connections are lost.

- To reduce the total bandwidth needed, if it is not possible to increase throughput of the network links or add new links. For example, important services (such as VPN connections and clients' connections to extranets) can be given priority over Internet browsing (all HTTP connections or based on IP addresses).

## Designing QoS policy elements

The purpose of the QoS Policy is to determine which limit, guarantee, or priority is given to traffic marked with a certain QoS Class.

Each QoS Class can appear in only one (active) rule on each tab of a QoS Policy. The same QoS Class can be used on both the **QoS** tab and the **DSCP Match/Mark** tab of the same QoS Policy. The order of the QoS rules does not matter. The classification of the traffic is made using Access rules.

Except for the QoS Class, all other cells for rules on the **QoS** tab are optional. However, at least one of the other cells must be filled for the rule to affect the traffic. None of the cells exclude any of the other cells, so you are free to select which cells you want to use for any given QoS Class. It is not necessary to define the use of all available bandwidth in your QoS Policy. The bandwidth outside the guarantees, as well as bandwidth within the guarantees that is not used for traffic, is used to handle the traffic that has no specific QoS rule. The traffic is handled on the normal first-come-first-served-basis, using the medium priority of 8.



**CAUTION:** If your guarantees are equal to the total throughput of an interface, any traffic without a guarantee is blocked if all guarantees are fully used.

When you save the QoS Policy, the system checks for contradictions within each rule, such as a rule that sets a limit that is lower than the guarantee for the same rule. When you refresh the firewall's configuration, the QoS Policies defined for the firewall's interfaces are checked again, comparing the QoS rules to the throughput values set for the interfaces. The values can be automatically scaled down if the sum of all guarantees in the QoS Policy exceeds the interface's throughput. However, the values are never scaled up.

The values for the bandwidth limits and guarantees can be entered either in kilobits or as percentages of the total throughput of the interface. Technically, nothing prevents you from using both ways of entering values even in the same rule. However, it is recommended to use one way of entering the values consistently throughout each QoS Policy. Using mixed methods of entering the values makes it more difficult for the administrators to read the QoS policy. Mixed methods can also prevent the system from checking for issues when you save the QoS Policy, as the throughputs of the interfaces are not known. If the QoS Policy cannot be checked when you save it, it is checked when the Firewall Policy is installed. Mistakes in the QoS Policy can prevent you from installing or refreshing the Firewall Policy.

## Communicating DSCP markers to other network equipment to prioritize traffic

You and your ISP might have routers that also decide how to handle packets based on the priority of the traffic. DSCP (DiffServ type of service field) markers in the traffic are a standard way to indicate priorities in network traffic.

It is possible to read or write DSCP markers for a particular type of traffic without configuring Access rules to apply a QoS Class to the traffic. The matching is done based on the QoS Policy. When a packet that matches a particular protocol comes in, the engine reads the DSCP markers and assigns a QoS Class according to the DSCP Match/Mark rules of the QoS Policy. When the packet is sent out, the engine writes a DSCP mark in the packets. The marking is based on the QoS Class according to the DSCP Match/Mark rules of the QoS Policy on the interface through which the traffic leaves the engine.

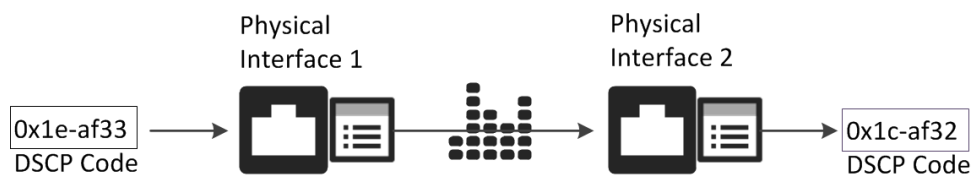
The markers allow you to:

- Communicate the priority of this traffic to other devices that support QoS.

- Convert the packet to use a different classification scheme, if the QoS Class was originally assigned to matching traffic by a DSCP match in the source interface's QoS Policy.
- Remove the DSCP classification set by other devices by entering 0 as the value (shown in the policy as 0x00).

Two QoS Policies on two Physical Interfaces can be used together to translate between two different DSCP schemes as shown in the illustration.

**Figure 144: Translating between two DSCP schemes**



In the illustration, the packets arrive at Physical Interface 1. The firewall reads the existing DSCP value and compares it to the QoS Policy assigned to Physical Interface 1. The policy has a DSCP Match rule for the DSCP marker with an associated QoS Class, which is then assigned to this traffic.



**Note:** The same traffic must not match any firewall Access rule with a QoS Class definition. The QoS Class in the Access rule overrides the QoS Class that is assigned based on the DSCP marker.

When the packets are sent out through Physical Interface 2, the Firewall checks the QoS Policy assigned to this Physical Interface. In this QoS Policy, a DSCP Match/Mark rule defines that traffic with the assigned QoS Class is marked with a DSCP marker specified in the rule. The firewall overwrites the original DSCP marker before sending the packets onwards.

## Managing bandwidth of incoming traffic

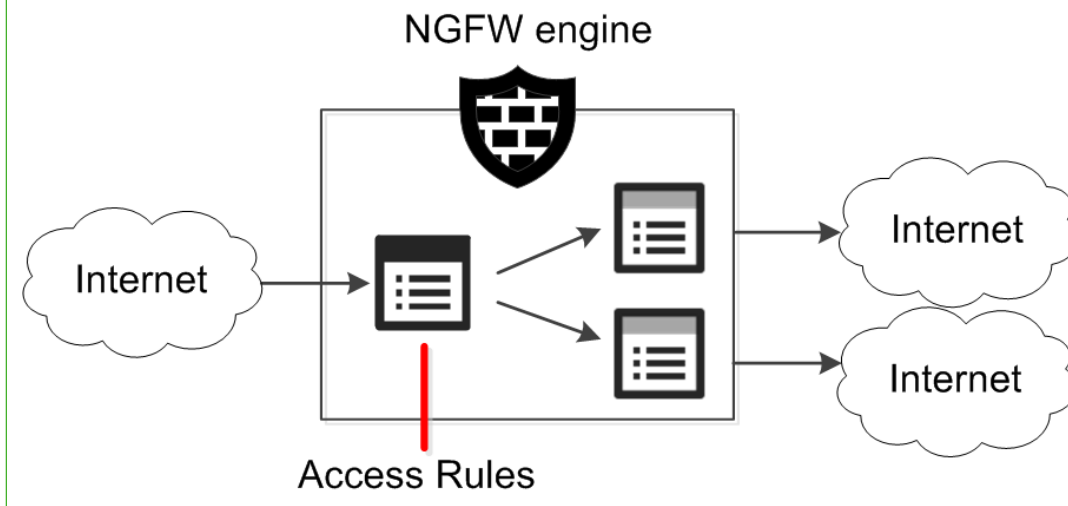
Bandwidth management and traffic prioritization are most useful in managing outgoing traffic.

Bandwidth management and prioritization usually help manage the quality of service for traffic going out through Internet links. These links are often the choke point in a corporate network due to the costs associated with increasing the bandwidth.

Outbound traffic can be controlled easily and accurately with QoS Policies. Controlling incoming traffic is more difficult, because when the engine sees the traffic, the packets have already traveled through congested links and used bandwidth. Still, you might be able to limit some types of incoming traffic in a limited way. In this case, only limits apply. To set guarantees and priorities for traffic, consider other solutions, such as arranging for your ISP to implement traffic management before the traffic is passed to your Internet links.

To limit the bandwidth incoming traffic consumes, you can apply the QoS Policy on the engine's interfaces connected to the internal network. This configuration is shown in the following illustration.



**Figure 145: Applying QoS to incoming traffic**

In the illustration, traffic is checked against the Access Rules, and allowed traffic is assigned a QoS Class. At the interfaces connected to the internal network, the QoS Policies limiting the bandwidth use are enforced as the traffic is sent onwards.

Limiting the bandwidth in this way requires that the application that is the source of the traffic scales down the transmissions to match the available bandwidth. If an application does not scale down its bandwidth use, any limits you set have no effect. The only option is to control the traffic at your ISP before it reaches the engine.

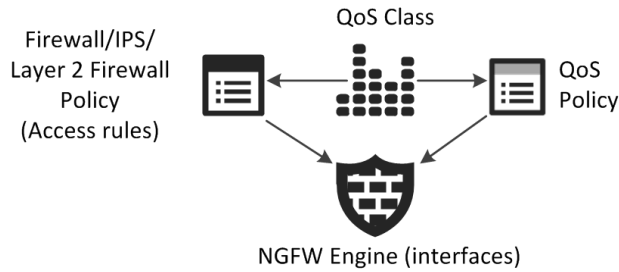
## Collecting statistics based on QoS Classes

QoS Class-based statistics items are available even when QoS is not used for bandwidth management and traffic prioritization.

Selecting the “QoS Statistics Only” QoS Mode for an interface allows the collection of QoS Class-based counters without activating any other QoS feature. No QoS Policy is needed in this case, but you must define Access rules to apply QoS Classes to traffic. QoS Class-based statistics items can be used in Overviews and Reports.

## QoS configuration overview

To apply QoS to traffic, you have to create QoS classes and assign them to different types of traffic. You also have to create QoS Policies that determine how traffic is handled, and define a QoS Mode for each engine interface.

**Figure 146: Elements in the QoS configuration**

Follow these general steps to configure QoS:

- 1) (Optional) Create a QoS Class element for each type of traffic that you want to handle differently on any single network interface.
- 2) (Optional) Create one or more QoS Policies to define how each type of traffic is handled on the interfaces.
- 3) Assign QoS Classes to different types of traffic in your Access rules.
- 4) Define the QoS Mode of each interface.



**Note:** You can select a QoS Mode and define a bandwidth for traffic in the properties of a Physical, VLAN, ADSL, Tunnel, SSID Interface, or Port Group Interface of an integrated Switch. Each Physical, VLAN, Tunnel, ADSL, SSID, or Port Group Interface has separate QoS settings.

Bandwidth management and traffic prioritization are configured in *QoS Policies*. The policies contain rules for the bandwidth guarantees, limits, and priorities you want to set for each type of traffic. The QoS Policies do not contain traffic profiles: to define which QoS rule affects which type of traffic, the same *QoS Class* element is used in QoS Policies and Access rules, to link them.

The *QoS Mode* for each interface defines how QoS is applied to the interface. By default, No QoS is selected. You can select a QoS Mode and define a bandwidth for traffic in the properties of a Physical, VLAN, ADSL, Tunnel, SSID Interface, or Port Group Interface. You can select different QoS Modes for each interface. It is not mandatory to use QoS on all interfaces of the same engine. QoS is not supported on Capture Interfaces.

There are two ways the QoS Class can be applied to a packet:

- If traffic contains a DSCP code when entering the engine, and DSCP handling and throttling or full QoS are enabled, the engine checks if the interface has a QoS Policy. If the DSCP Match/Mark tab of the QoS Policy defines a QoS Class match for that code, the selected QoS Class is applied to the traffic.
- When traffic is inspected against the policy, the traffic might match an Access rule that includes a QoS Class. The QoS Class specified in the QoS Class cell is always applied to the traffic, overwriting any other QoS Class the traffic might have been assigned. Access rules are not needed if you only want to use DSCP handling and throttling.

Using the QoS Class as a matching criterion, the engine checks if the interface that the packet uses to exit the engine has a QoS Policy. If the QoS Policy contains a rule with the same QoS Class defined, the next steps depend on the QoS rules and the current traffic situation. The QoS rule is applied to the connection and packets are dropped, sent directly, or sent into the queue.

**Related concepts**

[Network interfaces for engines](#) on page 529

**Related tasks**

[Create QoS Class elements](#) on page 955

[Define QoS Policy elements](#) on page 956

[Apply QoS to traffic](#) on page 959

[Define DSCP Match/Mark rules in QoS Policy elements](#) on page 958


# Create QoS Class elements

QoS Classes are used to collect QoS statistics about traffic or to create a link between the Access rules in Firewall, IPS, and Layer 2 Firewall policies and the QoS Policy.

When traffic matches an Access rule, the QoS Class defined in the rule is applied to the traffic. QoS Classes can also be used in Outbound Multi-Link elements to adjust the load balancing of different types of connections.

You must create one QoS Class for each rule you plan to add in any single QoS Policy, as the QoS Policy cannot contain any overlapping rules. You can create as many QoS Classes as necessary. The QoS Policy must not have overlapping rules. You must create one QoS Class for each rule you plan to add to the QoS Policy (each type of traffic must have its own QoS Class). The same QoS Class can be used in multiple Access rules, so several Access rules can point matching traffic to the same QoS rule.

There is a default QoS Policy and three default QoS Classes. The classes can be used to set priorities for high, normal, and low priority traffic, without any bandwidth guarantees or limits.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Select **Other Elements > QoS Classes**.
- 3) Right-click **QoS Classes**, then select **New QoS Class**.
- 4) Give the QoS Class a **Name**.
- 5) Click **OK**.  
The new QoS Class is added to the resources and can now be used in policies.

# Define QoS Policy elements

QoS policies determine the rules that the engine follows when it decides which traffic is given priority and how the available bandwidth is divided.

- One QoS Policy can be assigned for each Physical Interface, VLAN Interface, Tunnel Interface, ADSL Interface, SSID Interface, Port Group Interface of an integrated Switch, and policy-based VPN. You can assign the same QoS Policy to several interfaces.
- QoS Policies are tables of QoS rules and DSCP Match/Mark rules. If you only want to collect QoS statistics about traffic, you do not need to define a QoS Policy.
- Because the QoS rules are separate from the Access rules, you can flexibly design the rules. For example, you can create different QoS Policies for different interfaces of the same engine.
- All cells in the QoS rules are applied to outgoing packets. When using Full QoS, packets that do not match a QoS rule are handled with priority 8 (middle of the scale) without bandwidth guarantees or limits.
- All cells in the DSCP Match/Mark rules except the DSCP Match cell are applied to outgoing packets. If packets do not match a DSCP Match/Mark rule, DSCP markers in the traffic are preserved, but do not affect how the engine handles traffic.

The *QoS Mode* for each interface defines how QoS is applied to the interface. By default, No QoS is selected. You can select a QoS Mode and define a bandwidth for traffic in the properties of a Physical, VLAN, ADSL, Tunnel, SSID, or Port Group Interface. You can select different QoS Modes for each interface. It is not mandatory to use QoS on all interfaces of the same engine. The following table describes how QoS is applied for each QoS Mode.

When using Full QoS, define the available throughput in the properties for each Physical, VLAN, ADSL, Tunnel, SSID, or Port Group Interface or whose throughput you want to manage. There is no way to automatically find out how much bandwidth each interface has. The throughput must correspond to the actual throughput that interface offers to clients, that is, the outbound bandwidth of an Internet link that is connected to the interface. If there are VLANs on a Physical Interface, the settings are only available in the properties of each VLAN.



**Note:** When you define the throughput of an interface, the engine always scales the traffic to this throughput. Take special care that you set the throughput value correctly.

If you use Multi-Link where more than one NetLink is connected to the same Physical Interface, the throughput setting depends on the Multi-Link configuration:

- If you are using load-balancing Multi-Link, set the throughput to the combined outbound bandwidth of all Internet links behind the Physical Interface.
- If you are using standby NetLinks, set the throughput to the outbound bandwidth of the primary (active) NetLink. When the bandwidth of the backup NetLink is lower, set the throughput to the speed of the primary NetLink, as it is the most used link.

Policy-based VPNs can optionally use a QoS Policy to define how DSCP matching or marking is done for VPN traffic. In policy-based VPN traffic, the DSCP mark for the encrypted ESP packet is normally inherited from the plaintext packet. Selecting a QoS Policy for the policy-based VPN makes it possible to mark the ESP packet after encryption. Since the total throughput is undefined, Guarantees and Priorities cannot be used for policy-based VPN traffic.

## Related concepts

[Collecting statistics based on QoS Classes](#) on page 953

[VPNs and how they work](#) on page 1125

# Create QoS Policy elements

---

Create separate QoS Policy elements for QoS rules.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Select **Policies > QoS Policies**.
- 3) Right-click **QoS Policies**, then select **New QoS Policy**.
- 4) Type in a **Name**, then click **OK**.  
The new QoS Policy opens for editing.

## Define QoS rules in QoS Policy elements

---

After creating a QoS Policy, add QoS rules to it.

Follow these general guidelines when editing QoS rules:

- The order of the rules in a QoS Policy does not affect how the engine handles traffic, as the match is made based on the QoS Class.
- If you want to use the same QoS Policy on interfaces that have different types of throughput and use the Full QoS Mode, enter Guarantees and Limits as percentages.
- If you want to use the QoS Policy on interfaces that use DSCP Handling and Throttling QoS Mode, enter Guarantees and Limits in kilobits per second.
- Operations are made according to the matching rule in the QoS Policy that is assigned to the interface that the traffic uses to exit the engine.
- The rules do not need to cover all traffic. When Full QoS is used, traffic that is not covered is given a priority of 8 without limits or guarantees.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Select **Policies > QoS Policies**.
- 3) Right-click the policy you want to edit, then select **Edit QoS policy**.  
The QoS Policy opens in the **Policy Editing** view.
- 4) Right-click the **ID** cell of a rule in the QoS Policy, select **Add Rule Before** or **Add Rule After** or the **ID** cell of the **Not Classified** rule, then select **Add Rule**.  
A new blank rule is added.
- 5) Click the **QoS Class** cell in the new rule, then select the QoS Class.


- 6) Define how the engine handles traffic in this QoS Class using any combination of the available options. Each one is optional.
- 7) Save the QoS Policy.
- 8) Refresh the engine's policy to transfer the changes.


**Related concepts**

[Network interfaces for engines](#) on page 529

## Define DSCP Match/Mark rules in QoS Policy elements

Communicate traffic priorities using DSCP to ensure the best possible quality of service for important traffic.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Select **Policies > QoS Policies**.
- 3) Right-click the policy you want to edit, then select **Edit QoS policy**.  
The QoS Policy opens in the **Policy Editing** view.
- 4) Click the **DSCP Match/Mark** tab in the QoS Policy.
- 5) Right-click the **ID** cell of an existing rule, then select **Add Rule Before** or **Add Rule After** or the **ID** cell of the Not Classified rule, then select **Add Rule**.  
A new blank rule is added.
- 6) Click the **QoS Class** cell in the new rule, then select the QoS Class.
- 7) Define how the engine reads or writes DSCP code for traffic in this QoS Class using the available options.
- 8) Save the QoS Policy.
- 9) Refresh the engine's policy to transfer the changes.

**Related concepts**

[Network interfaces for engines](#) on page 529

# Apply QoS to traffic

You can apply QoS to traffic by selecting a QoS Class for an Access rule. The same QoS Class can appear in several Access rules.

You can insert a QoS Class in an Access rule that allows traffic or in an Access rule that uses the Continue action to set the same QoS Class for several rules. This way, you can assign a specific QoS Class to any traffic that you can match with a single Access rule. If you only want to collect QoS statistics about traffic, define Access rules to assign a QoS Class to the traffic.

The rules on the **QoS** tab of the QoS Policy are linked to different types of traffic using the QoS Classes. QoS Classes are matched to traffic in the Access rules with the following actions:

- Access rules with the **Allow** action set a QoS Class for traffic that matches the rules.
- Access rules with the **Continue** action set a QoS Class for all subsequent matching rules that have no specific QoS Class defined.
- Access rules with the **Use VPN** action (Firewall only) set a QoS Class for VPN traffic. Incoming VPN traffic can also match a normal Allow rule after decryption. Otherwise, for outgoing traffic, encryption is done after the QoS Policy is checked. For incoming traffic, decryption is done before the QoS Policy is checked.

If you want to read and use DSCP markers set by other devices, the QoS Class is assigned according to rules on the **DSCP Match/Mark** tab of the QoS Policy.



**Note:** If traffic is assigned a QoS Class using a DSCP Match rule, the same traffic must not match Access rules that assign a different QoS Class to the same traffic. Such Access rules override the QoS Class that has been set with a DSCP Match rule.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Open the Firewall, IPS, or Layer 2 Firewall Policy for editing.
- 2) Click the **QoS Class** cell of a rule that allows traffic or a Continue rule, then drag and drop a QoS Class element into the cell.
  - The QoS Class links connections to a rule on the **QoS** tab of the QoS Policy. There can be different rules in different QoS Policies for the same QoS Class.
  - Packets in both directions of a connection are assigned the same QoS Class (when connection tracking is active for the rule).
  - The applied QoS Class is shown in the logs. You can also generate reports based on this information.
- 3) Refresh the engine's policy to transfer the changes.

## Related concepts

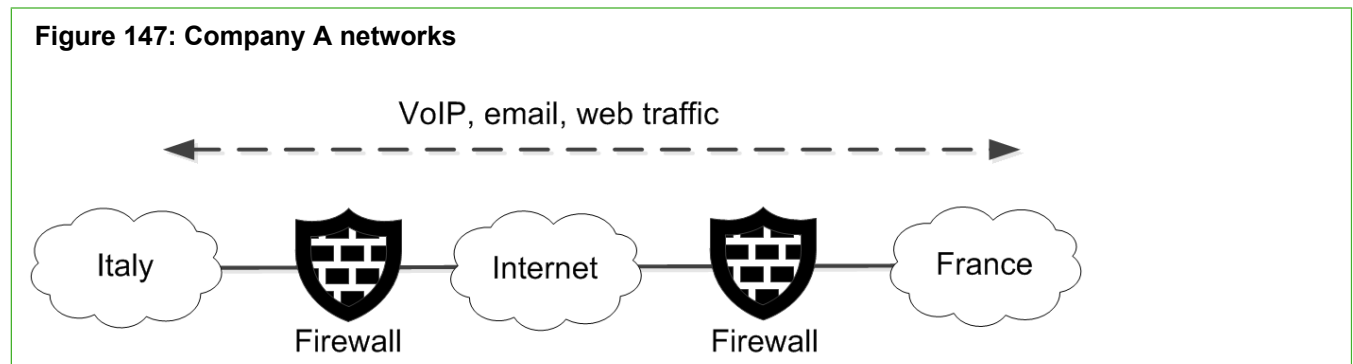
[Getting started with Access rules](#) on page 811

# Examples of bandwidth management and traffic prioritization scenarios

There are common uses for the bandwidth management features and general steps on how each scenario is configured.

## Example: ensuring quality of important communications

In this example, Company A has two offices, one in Italy and one in France. The company has decided to replace phone lines with VoIP telephony.



The illustration shows the two offices and the traffic between them. Telephone and email connections are an important tool for the employees, who use these services to communicate with team members at the other office. Also, employees at the Italian office must be able to use web-based tools at the French site. The administrators determine the priorities as follows:

- The VoIP streaming audio is not only important, but it is also a time-critical service. VoIP streaming audio must have the highest priority.
- Even though business email is important, email does not need to be delivered immediately after it has been sent. This traffic can be assigned a lower priority.
- The web-based services are not time-critical, but delays and time-outs can annoy employees. The company decides to give these services a lower priority than VoIP, but a higher priority than email. It is not necessary to define a specific QoS Class for the medium-priority traffic because all traffic that is not classified is assigned a medium priority.

The internal networks are fast, so there is no need to implement QoS Policies for those interfaces. Only interfaces connected to the Internet need a QoS Policy. The administrators decide that the same QoS Policy can be used at both sites, and that the default elements and the default Prioritize policy are suitable.

So now they:

- 1) Add the QoS Class “High Priority” to Access rules that permit VoIP traffic.
- 2) Add the QoS Class “Low Priority” to Access rules that permit email traffic.
- 3) Define the QoS Policy Prioritize to be used on the interfaces connected to the Internet at both sites. They also define the types of interface throughput.



- 4) Refresh the policies of both firewalls.

## Example: using QoS to prepare for ISP breakdown

Company B decides to use Multi-Link to ensure High Availability of network connections for important business communications.

The company, an engineering subcontractor, is concerned about two types of connections:

- A VPN connection they have for accessing the internal tools and resources of an important client when doing work for them.
- HTTPS connections to the extranet server that the company's clients use to check the status of projects.

The company has a tight budget, and the cost of having enough bandwidth in both links even during peak hours is deemed too high. They decide that only the two most important types of traffic must get through if one ISP link goes down during peak hours. The company determines that 500 kbps is enough to handle those connections, so they subscribe to 512 kbps links from two different ISPs. None of the communications are especially time-critical, so the company decides not to prioritize the traffic.

Then the administrators:

- 1) Create a QoS Policy and two QoS Classes, called VPN and Extranet.
- 2) Create the QoS rules for the important connections by filling in the following cells:

**Table 109: QoS rules in QoS Policy for Company B**

QoS Class	Guarantee
VPN	400
Extranet	100

- 3) Add the QoS Class "VPN" to the VPN rule for outbound traffic in the Firewall's Access rules.
- 4) Add the QoS Class "Extranet" to the Access rule that allows outbound connections from the company extranet.
- 5) Define the types of throughput and select the custom QoS Policy to be used for the Physical Interfaces that correspond to the ISP links on the firewall.
- 6) Refresh the policy of the firewall.

## Example: limiting bandwidth

Company C has experienced a radical increase in the amount of network traffic and wants to limit non-essential traffic to prioritize business communications.

It seems that many employees use bandwidth-intensive services, download large files, and listen to high-quality Internet radio streams. The situation is starting to slow down business communications. Management would rather prohibit connections that are not directly work-related than fund the required increase in bandwidth.

However, the administrators suggest a different approach: limiting the portion of the bandwidth that non-essential traffic can use, so some employees can still listen to Internet radio, while business communications are guaranteed the bandwidth they need. To ensure the quick delivery of time-critical business communications, they also decide to prioritize the traffic using the three default QoS Classes.

The administrators:

- 1) Create a custom QoS Policy with the following rules:

**Table 110: QoS rules in QoS Policy for Company C**

QoS Class	Priority	Guarantee	Limit
High Priority	1	35%	90%
Normal Priority	8	55%	90%
Low Priority	16	5%	50%

- Normal Priority traffic gets the largest guaranteed portion of the bandwidth because it has the largest volume.
  - High Priority and Normal Priority traffic can each use up to 90% of the bandwidth. Low Priority traffic cannot consume more than 50% of the available bandwidth even if there is more bandwidth available. In this configuration, there must be traffic in at least two of the classes for the bandwidth to be used up to 100%.
  - Even Low Priority traffic is given 5% of the bandwidth to avoid total loss of service, which can cause more complaints from users than slowed-down service.
- 2) Place a Continue rule at the top of the firewall Access rules that includes the Normal Priority QoS Class. This way, all traffic that is not classified as High Priority or Low Priority is classified as Normal Priority.
  - 3) Edit the Access rules to assign QoS Classes to traffic:
    - Place the High Priority QoS Class into Access rules that permit important traffic.
    - Place the Low Priority QoS Class into Access rules that permit low-importance traffic.
  - 4) Define the types of throughput and select the new custom QoS Policy to be used for the Physical Interfaces connected to the Internet on the firewall.
  - 5) Refresh the policy of the firewall.

# File filtering

## Contents

- [How file filtering works](#) on page 963
- [Integrate file reputation services and sandboxes](#) on page 965
- [Integrate McAfee GTI file reputation with Forcepoint NGFW](#) on page 965
- [Integrate TIE file reputation with Forcepoint NGFW](#) on page 966
- [Forcepoint Advanced Malware Detection and how it works](#) on page 967
- [Integrate Forcepoint Advanced Malware Detection with Forcepoint NGFW](#) on page 971
- [Integrate an Advanced Threat Defense server with Forcepoint NGFW](#) on page 973
- [Restrict file types with file filtering](#) on page 974

Monitoring and restricting what data is sent out is an important part of data loss prevention (DLP). File filtering allows you to restrict the file types that are allowed in and out through the firewall, and to apply malware detection to files.

## How file filtering works

Use file filtering to scan files for malware and to restrict which file types are allowed through the firewall.

You can configure one or more malware detection methods that are applied to the traffic that matches the rules in the File Filtering Policy. Scanning is done in the following order:

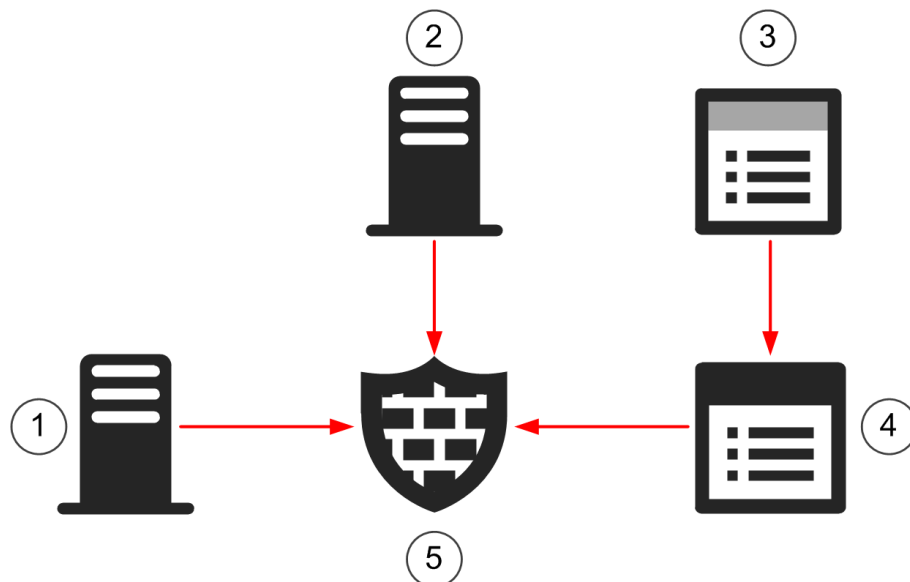
- 1) The file is checked against file reputation information in the engine's cache.  
If no match is found, the configured malware detection methods are applied to the traffic in the order listed here.
- 2) The file is scanned using one of the following file reputation services:
  - McAfee® Threat Intelligence Exchange (TIE)
  - McAfee® Global Threat Intelligence™ (McAfee GTI)
- 3) The file is scanned using anti-malware scan on the NGFW Engine.
- 4) The file is scanned using one of the following sandboxes:
  - Cloud Sandbox — Forcepoint Advanced Malware Detection
  - Local Sandbox — McAfee® Advanced Threat Defense

The NGFW Engine allows or blocks the file according to the action defined in the File Filtering Policy.

# File filtering configuration overview

To use file filtering, integrate or configure one or more malware detection methods and add rules for file filtering.

**Figure 148: Components and elements in the configuration**



- 1 McAfee Global Threat Intelligence file reputation service or McAfee Threat Intelligence Exchange (TIE) file reputation service
- 2 Forcepoint Advanced Malware Detection sandbox service or McAfee Advanced Threat Defense server
- 3 File Filtering Policy
- 4 Firewall, IPS, or Layer 2 Firewall Policy
- 5 NGFW Engine

The configuration of file filtering consists of the following general steps:

- 1) Integrate or configure one or more malware detection methods.
  - (Optional) Integrate Forcepoint NGFW with one of the following file reputation services:
    - McAfee Global Threat Intelligence
    - McAfee Threat Intelligence Exchange (TIE)
  - (Optional) Integrate Forcepoint NGFW with one of the following sandbox services:
    - Forcepoint Advanced Malware Detection
    - McAfee Advanced Threat Defense (requires a separate license)
  - (Optional) Enable **Anti-Malware** for the engine.



**Note:** Each malware detection method is optional, but you must integrate or configure at least one malware detection method.

- 2) Create a File Filtering Policy element and add rules to the File Filtering Policy.
- 3) Enable file filtering in a Firewall, IPS, or Layer 2 Firewall Policy element.



**Note:** File filtering is only available for protocols for which the engine can do deep inspection. If a protocol is not included in the engine's deep inspection license, file filtering is not available for that protocol.

# Integrate file reputation services and sandboxes

Integrating Forcepoint NGFW with file reputation services and sandboxes improves the malware detection coverage of Forcepoint NGFW when you use file filtering.

## Integrate McAfee GTI file reputation with Forcepoint NGFW

Integrating Forcepoint NGFW with McAfee Global Threat Intelligence file reputation services allows access control based on the scan results.



**Note:** Integrating McAfee GTI requires enabling McAfee GTI File Reputation and authorizing the use of the McAfee GTI service.

The McAfee GTI database contains classifications of files. When a file transfer matches a rule in the File Filtering Policy that applies McAfee GTI file reputation, the NGFW Engine sends a hash of the file to the McAfee GTI cloud. McAfee GTI file reputation compares the hash of the file against the McAfee GTI database.



**Note:** Only a hash of the file is sent to the McAfee GTI cloud. No other data or telemetry information is sent to the McAfee GTI cloud.

Use of McAfee GTI file reputation does not require a separate license in the SMC.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Authorize the use of McAfee GTI in the Management Client.
  - a) Select **≡ Menu > System Tools > Global System Properties**.
  - b) Click the **McAfee Services** tab.
  - c) Select **Enable McAfee Global Threat Intelligence (GTI) and Threat Intelligence (TIE) usage**.
- 2) Enable McAfee GTI file reputation checks.
  - a) Select **⚙️ Configuration**.
  - b) Right-click an engine, then select **Edit <element type>**.

- c) Browse to **Add-Ons > File Reputation**.
- d) In the **File Reputation Service** drop-down list, select **McAfee Global Threat Intelligence (GTI)**.
- e) (Optional) If Forcepoint NGFW must use a proxy to connect to the McAfee GTI cloud, add one or more HTTP Proxy Servers.
- f) Click **Save and Refresh**.

## Result

McAfee GTI file reputation scan can now be used for malware detection in the File Filtering Policy.

# Integrate TIE file reputation with Forcepoint NGFW

Integrate Forcepoint NGFW with McAfee® Data Exchange Layer (DXL) and McAfee® Threat Intelligence Exchange (TIE) file reputation to receive file reputation data from the TIE server. Use the reputation data in file filtering to improve the malware detection coverage of Forcepoint NGFW.

## Before you begin

To generate the DXL certificates required for the exchange of file reputation data with the TIE server, you must configure an ePO Server element and initialize the ePO Server SSL context.



**Note:** Integrating TIE file reputation requires enabling McAfee TIE and authorizing the use of the McAfee TIE service.

DXL is a framework of client software and brokers that enables the exchange of real-time encrypted file information between integrated security components in the network environment. The TIE server uses DXL to collect file reputation data. When Forcepoint NGFW is integrated with DXL and TIE file reputation, Forcepoint NGFW engines can request and automatically receive up-to-date file reputations from the TIE server. This ensures that NGFW Engines always have the latest file reputations available for use in file filtering.



**Note:** Use of TIE file reputation does not require a separate license in the SMC. However, the DXL service components, such as the DXL broker, might require a separate DXL license.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Authorize the use of TIE in the Management Client.
  - a) Select **Menu > System Tools > Global System Properties**.
  - b) Click the **McAfee Services** tab.

- c) Select **Enable McAfee Global Threat Intelligence (GTI) and McAfee Threat Intelligence Exchange (TIE) usage**.
- 2) Enable TIE file reputation checks.
  - a) Select **Configuration**.
  - b) Right-click an engine, then select **Edit <element type>**.
  - c) Browse to **Add-Ons > File Reputation**.
  - d) In the **File Reputation Service** drop-down list, select **McAfee Threat Intelligence Exchange (TIE)**.
  - e) Next to the **ePO Server** field, click **Select**, then select the ePO Server element.
  - f) Click **Save and Refresh**.  
The DXL certificates are automatically generated.

## Result

TIE file reputation scan can now be used for malware detection in the File Filtering Policy.

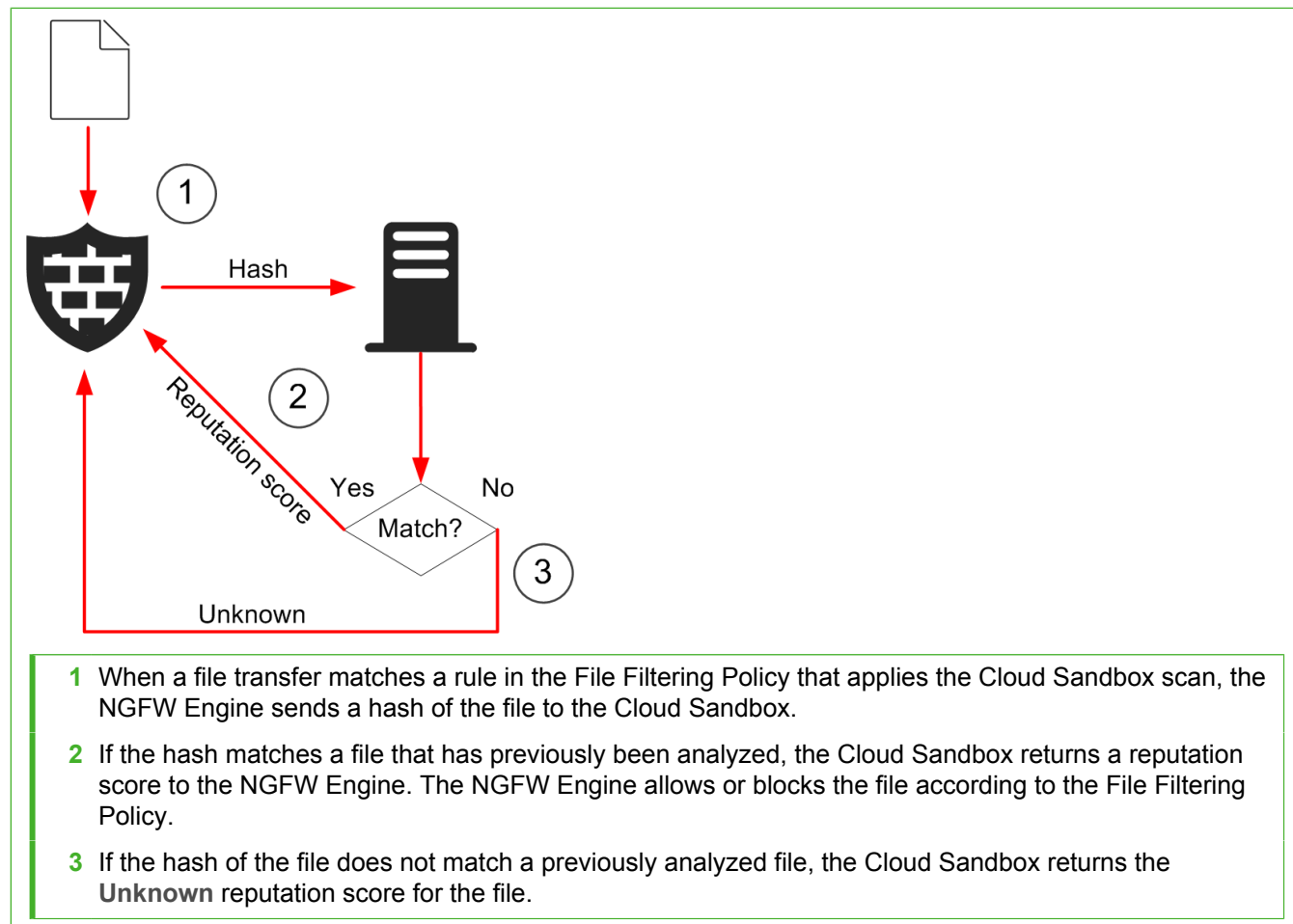
# Forcepoint Advanced Malware Detection and how it works

---

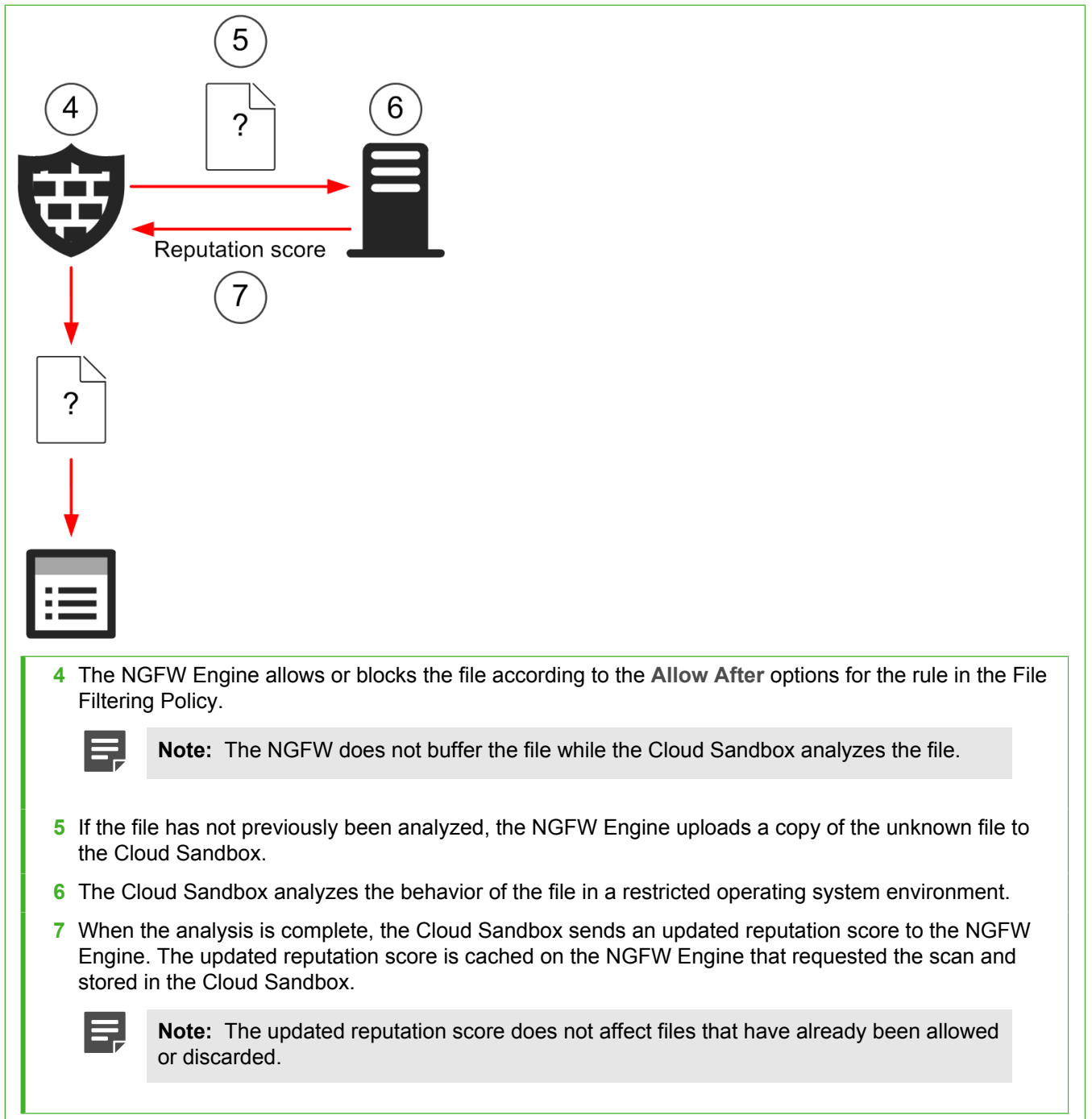
Forcepoint Advanced Malware Detection detects advanced threats by analyzing the behavior of files in the Cloud Sandbox.



**Note:** All unknown files are uploaded to the Cloud Sandbox servers. Do not use Forcepoint Advanced Malware Detection in countries where transferring files or other data outside of the country is prohibited. Binary files that are uploaded to the Cloud Sandbox are stored in the Cloud Sandbox indefinitely. Other types of files are not stored.







If the same file is transferred again, the Cloud Sandbox returns the stored reputation score for the file.

## Licenses for Forcepoint Advanced Malware Detection

To use Forcepoint Advanced Malware Detection, you must have an NGFW license that includes the Cloud Sandbox feature, and a license key and license token for the connection to the Cloud Sandbox server.

Forcepoint order operations provide the license details and instructions by email. The license includes two pairs of license keys and license tokens:

- A license key and license token for EU data centers
- A license key and license token for US data centers



**CAUTION:** The license keys and license tokens allow access to confidential analysis reports. Handle the license key and license token securely.

The license keys and license tokens define the home data center where the Cloud Sandbox analyzes and stores files. Make sure that you install the license key and license token for the region that you want to use as your home data center. If the data center that the firewall contacts is in a different region than the home data center that is specified in the license, files are forwarded to the home data center.

## Limitations of Forcepoint Advanced Malware Detection

---

There are some limitations when you use Forcepoint Advanced Malware Detection.

- Each engine communicates separately with the Cloud Sandbox server. If different engines detect the same file before an analysis result is stored in the Cloud Sandbox, the engines might upload the same file more than once. However, if the hash of the file matches a stored result, the engine does not upload the file again.
- You can only use one type of sandbox at a time on each engine. For example, you cannot use McAfee Advanced Threat Defense and the Cloud Sandbox at the same time.
- You can only use one HTTP Proxy Server for the connection to the Cloud Sandbox server. If you select more than one HTTP Proxy Server, the additional HTTP Proxy Servers are ignored.

## Rules for Forcepoint Advanced Malware Detection

---

Rules to allow communication with the Cloud Sandbox service are automatically generated based on the NGFW Engine configuration.

The Default File Filtering Policy applies the Sandbox scan settings defined for the engine to some traffic by default. If you want to exclude specific traffic from these scans, add a more specific rule to a custom File Filtering Policy, or add an Access rule that excludes the traffic from file filtering.

## Logging for Forcepoint Advanced Malware Detection

---

Log entries related to allowed or blocked files contain information about the Cloud Sandbox scan and about the status of the connection to the Cloud Sandbox.

The **File Filtering Log Data Context** shows all log entries related to file filtering events.

The following information is available in log entries:

- The **Sandbox Reputation** field shows the file reputation provided by the Cloud Sandbox.



**Note:** Logging for allowed files is not enabled by default in the File Filtering Policy. You must enable logging of allowed files to see the sandbox reputation of allowed files in the logs.

- When the NGFW Engine receives an updated reputation score from the Cloud Sandbox, the **File reputation updated** Situation matches and a log entry is created.
- The information messages in log entries related to allowed or blocked files show errors related to the connection to the Cloud Sandbox.

## Using Forcepoint Advanced Malware Detection with Master NGFW Engines and Virtual NGFW Engines

---

In environments with Master NGFW Engines and Virtual NGFW Engines, you configure the settings for the connection to the Cloud Sandbox on the Master NGFW Engine.

All Virtual NGFW Engines that are hosted by the same Master NGFW Engine use the same configuration. The File Filtering Policy for each Virtual NGFW Engine defines whether the engine uses the Cloud Sandbox scan.

## Integrate Forcepoint Advanced Malware Detection with Forcepoint NGFW

---

Configure the settings that Forcepoint NGFW uses to connect to the Cloud Sandbox.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click an engine, then select **Edit <element type>**.
- 3) Browse to **Add-Ons > Sandbox**.
- 4) From the **Sandbox Type** drop-down list, select **Cloud Sandbox - Forcepoint Advanced Malware Detection**.
- 5) In the **License Key** field, enter or paste the license key for the connection to the Cloud Sandbox server.

- 6) In the **License Token** field, enter or paste the license token for the connection to the Cloud Sandbox server.



**Note:** The license defines the home data center where the Cloud Sandbox analyzes and stores files. Enter the license key and license token for the region that you want to use as your home data center.



**CAUTION:** The license key and license token allow access to confidential analysis reports. Handle the license key and license token securely.

- 7) (Optional) From the **Sandbox Service** drop-down list, select the data center that the firewall contacts to request file reputation scans.



**Note:** If the data center that the firewall contacts is in a different region than the home data center that is specified in the license, files are forwarded to the home data center.

- 8) (Optional) To connect to the Cloud Sandbox through an HTTP proxy server, add an HTTP Proxy Server element to the **HTTP Proxy Servers** field.



**Note:** You can only use one HTTP Proxy Server for the connection to the Cloud Sandbox server. If you select more than one HTTP Proxy Server, the additional HTTP Proxy Servers are ignored.

- 9) Click **Save and Refresh** to transfer the changed configuration.

## Result

You can now use Cloud Sandbox file reputation scan for malware detection in the File Filtering Policy.

# View Cloud Sandbox reports

In an external portal, you can view detailed reports for files that have been analyzed in the Cloud Sandbox. Log entries that have Cloud Sandbox in the **Responding Scanner** cell and a reputation score other than Unknown in the **Sandbox Reputation** cell include a link to the analysis report.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Logs**.
- 2) From the Log Data Context drop-down list on the **Query** pane, select **File Filtering**, then click **Apply**. Log entries related to file filtering events are shown.
- 3) Select a log entry, then select **Tools > Details**.



**Note:** You cannot view reports for log entries where the **Scanner Details** cell shows the message "Sandbox Analysis Pending".

The details arrangement of the Logs view shows detailed information about the event.

- 4) On the **Summary** pane, click **Open full sandbox report**.  
The external portal opens in a web browser.
- 5) Enter your credentials to view the report.


## Integrate an Advanced Threat Defense server with Forcepoint NGFW


Integrating Forcepoint NGFW with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense improves the malware detection coverage of Forcepoint NGFW when you use file filtering.

Advanced Threat Defense uses multiple techniques to scan files for malware detection. The Advanced Threat Defense server returns the result of the scan as a file reputation.

Rules to allow communication with the Advanced Threat Defense server are automatically generated based on the NGFW Engine configuration.

Use of Advanced Threat Defense file reputation does not require a separate license in the SMC. However, you must have an existing Advanced Threat Defense server and the required third-party licenses.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.



- 1) Create an ATD Server element.
  - a) Select  **Configuration**.
  - b) Browse to **Network Elements > Servers**.
  - c) Right-click **Servers**, then select **New > ATD Server**.
  - d) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name for the ATD Server element.
  - e) In the **IP Address** field, enter the IPv4 address of the Advanced Threat Defense server.



**Note:** The **Port** field contains the port number for communication between Forcepoint NGFW and the Advanced Threat Defense server. The **Control Port** field contains the port number for communication between the Management Server and the Advanced Threat Defense server. Do not change the **Port** or **Control Port** settings unless you must use different ports.

- 2) Import the certificate from the Advanced Threat Defense server.
  - a) Click **Get ATD Certificate**.
  - b) In the **User Name** and **Password** fields, enter your credentials for connecting to the Advanced Threat Defense server.
  - c) Click **OK**.

The certificate is retrieved from the Advanced Threat Defense server.

- 3) Enable Advanced Threat Defense file reputation checks.
  - a) Select  **Configuration**.
  - b) Right-click an engine, then select **Edit <element type>**.
  - c) Browse to **Add-Ons > Sandbox**.
  - d) From the **Sandbox Service** drop-down list, select **Local Sandbox - McAfee Advanced Threat Defense (ATD)**.
  - e) Add one or more Advanced Threat Defense servers.
  - f) Click  **Save and Refresh**.

## Result

Advanced Threat Defense file reputation scan can now be used for malware detection in the File Filtering Policy.

# Restrict file types with file filtering

Configure file filtering if you want to restrict the file types that are allowed through the firewall, and to apply malware detection to files.

## Before you begin

Integrate or configure one or more malware detection methods.

Rules for file filtering are defined in the File Filtering Policy. When a file transfer is detected, the traffic is checked against the File Filtering Policy. The first rule that matches the traffic is applied. If no matching rule is found, the file transfer is allowed.

If you do not want to create a custom File Filtering Policy, you can use one of the following default File Filtering Policy elements:

- **Anti-Malware All** — Applies the anti-malware and file reputation scanning methods that are defined in the Engine Editor to all traffic. Rematches archive content for the following file types: Memory Dumps, Media File, Data File, Text, Empty.
- **Anti-Malware Legacy** — Applies the anti-malware and file reputation scanning methods that are defined in the Engine Editor to all traffic. Rematches archive content for all file types.
- **Default File Filtering** — Applies specific scanning methods and options depending on the file source, file destination, and file type.

## Related concepts

[Configure anti-malware on engines](#) on page 666


## Related tasks


[Integrate McAfee GTI file reputation with Forcepoint NGFW](#) on page 965

[Integrate an Advanced Threat Defense server with Forcepoint NGFW](#) on page 973

# Create File Filtering Policy elements

File Filtering Policy elements contain the rules for file filtering.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click **Policies** and select **New > File Filtering Policy**.
- 3) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name for the File Filtering Policy.
- 4) Click **OK**.

## Result

The File Filtering Policy opens for editing.


# Add rules to File Filtering Policy elements

The rules in the File Filtering Policy allow you to define rule-specific options for malware detection.

## Before you begin

You must create a File Filtering Policy element.

Rules are read from the top down. Place more specific rules above more general rules that match the same traffic. For example, if there is a rule that allows a file type without scanning above a rule that applies scanning, the matching files are allowed without scanning.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Add a rule in one of the following ways:
  - Right-click the last row in an empty policy, then select **Add Rule**.
  - Right-click the **ID** cell of an existing rule, then select **Add Rule Before** or **Add Rule After**.
- 2) Drag and drop elements from the **Resources** pane to the **Source** and **Destination** cells, or define source and destination criteria.




**Note:** The **Source** and **Destination** fields are the source and destination of the file transfer, not the source and destination of the connection.



A client in the internal network downloads a file from a web server on the Internet. The source is the web server that served the file. The destination is the client computer.

- 3) Drag and drop **File Type Situations** from the **Resources** pane to the **File Type** cell.
- 4) Right-click the **Action** cell, then select the action.
- 5) If you selected **Allow After**, select options for malware detection scans.  
The scanning methods are applied in the order in which they are listed. If a file is not blocked by an earlier scan, the action specified for the last scanning method determines whether the file is allowed or blocked.
- 6) (Optional) To configure the logging options, double-click the **Logging** cell in the rule.
- 7) Click  **Save**.

## Enable file filtering in Firewall, IPS, or Layer 2 Firewall Policy elements

When you enable file filtering in Firewall, IPS, or Layer 2 Firewall Policy elements, traffic is checked against the File Filtering Policy.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Edit the Firewall, IPS, or Layer 2 Firewall Policy.
- 2) Enable **File Filtering** in the action options of individual Access rules or add a rule with the **Continue** action to set defaults for file filtering.
- 3) On the **Inspection** tab, select the File Filtering Policy.  
 **Note:** If there is no custom File Filtering Policy, the default File Filtering Policy is used.
- 4) To save and install the Firewall, IPS, or Layer 2 Firewall Policy, click  **Save and Install**.

### Related concepts

[Getting started with policies](#) on page 779



# Integrating McAfee ePO and McAfee EIA with Forcepoint NGFW

### Contents

- [EIA integration and how it works](#) on page 977
- [EIA integration configuration overview](#) on page 978
- [Integrate McAfee ePO with Forcepoint NGFW](#) on page 979
- [Configure the EIA settings on the engine](#) on page 980
- [Define Executable elements](#) on page 980
- [Use Client Applications, Executables, and predefined user types in IPv4 Access rules](#) on page 982
- [Enable logging of Client Application and Executable information](#) on page 983

If you have installed McAfee® ePolicy Orchestrator® (McAfee ePO™) and McAfee® Endpoint Intelligence Agent (McAfee EIA) on your network, you can integrate these tools with Forcepoint NGFW. The integration allows you to collect log data about endpoint client information and use it for access control in the SMC.

## EIA integration and how it works

Integrating McAfee EIA with Forcepoint NGFW enables you to collect per-connection user and client application information about Windows endpoint clients that try to connect through an engine managed by the SMC.

This information can be viewed in log data and used in Report elements. Endpoint client information can also be used as criteria for allowing or dropping the connection in the engine's policy.

EIA integration has the following prerequisites:

- McAfee ePO must be installed on the same network as Forcepoint NGFW.
- The McAfee Agent extension and the McAfee ePO Endpoint Intelligence Management Extension must be installed and deployed on the endpoint clients that the McAfee ePO server manages. See the Forcepoint NGFW and SMC [Release Notes](#) for compatibility information.

For more information about using McAfee ePO and installing the extensions, see McAfee ePO product documentation. For more information about McAfee EIA, see McAfee EIA product documentation.

To configure EIA integration in the Management Client, you must first configure integration with the McAfee ePO server and generate an ePO-signed EIA certificate for the Management Server. You must also enable and configure the EIA traffic on the engines. To view endpoint client-related log data, enable logging of Client Application and Executable information in the IPv4 Access rules that handle the traffic from the endpoint clients.

To use endpoint client information as criteria for access control in the engine's policy, use Client Application and Executable elements that represent endpoint client applications in the Management Client.

- Client Application elements represent all versions of an executable. Client Applications are delivered in dynamic update packages.
- Executable elements represent a single executable and a single version of an executable. You must create the Executable elements manually or import them from XML files.

Client Application and Executable elements can be used as matching criteria in IPv4 Access rules.

EIA can also collect information about user types that are not found in the user database on the internal or external directory server referenced by the SMC. There are two predefined elements in the Management Client that represent these additional EIA user types: Local Users and System Users. System Users are internal to the operating system, and Local Users have a local account on the endpoint client. You can use the predefined user type elements as matching criteria in the **Source** cell. You can also use EIA user types together with User and User Group elements in the same rule.

EIA integration is supported on Single Firewalls, Firewall Clusters, Virtual Firewalls, Single IPS engines, and Single Layer 2 Firewalls. The NGFW Engine license includes support for EIA integration.

## EIA integration configuration overview

The configuration of EIA integration in the Management Client consists of several general steps.



**Note:** Before you can integrate McAfee EIA with the SMC, make sure that the McAfee ePO is installed on your network. In addition, make sure that the McAfee Agent extension and the McAfee ePO Endpoint Intelligence Management Extension 2.4 are installed and deployed on the endpoint clients managed by the McAfee ePO server.

Follow these general steps to configure EIA integration in the Management Client:


- 1) Integrate McAfee ePO with Forcepoint NGFW.
- 2) Generate an EIA certificate for the Management Server.
- 3) Enable EIA integration on the engine.
- 4) (Optional) If you want to use endpoint client information for access control, define Executable elements that represent endpoint client applications in the Management Client.
- 5) (Optional) In the engine's policy, configure Access rules using Client Application or Executable elements as matching criteria.
- 6) (Optional) To view Client Application or Executable information in log data and Report elements, enable logging in the Access rules.


# Integrate McAfee ePO with Forcepoint NGFW

Integrating Forcepoint NGFW with McAfee ePO improves the monitoring of client computers in the protected network.

McAfee ePO is a centralized management tool for endpoint solutions deployed on multiple hosts. Integrating a McAfee ePO server allows you to query information about client computers in the protected network.

To enable the communication between McAfee EIA and the Forcepoint NGFW engines, generate an ePO-signed certificate for the Management Server.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Create an **ePO Server** element.
  - a) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Network Elements**.
  - b) Browse to **Servers**.
  - c) Right-click **Servers** and select **New > ePO Server**.
  - d) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name for the element.
- 2) Configure the contact information for connections to the McAfee ePO server.
- 3) Click **OK**.

You are prompted to initialize the SSL context trusted by the McAfee ePO server.
- 4) Click **Yes**.

Information about the certificate authority that signed the certificate for communication with the McAfee ePO server is displayed.
- 5) Click **OK**.

Contact is established with the McAfee ePO server, and an EIA certificate is generated. To view the EIA certificate details, select the **EIA Certificate** tab.
- 6) Click **OK**.

## Result


You can now query information about client computers in the protected network from the **Logs** view.



### Related tasks

[Query McAfee ePO information in log entries](#) on page 251

# Configure the EIA settings on the engine

Enable EIA integration on the Single Firewall, Firewall Cluster, Virtual Firewall, Single IPS engine, or Single Layer 2 Firewall on which you want to receive endpoint client information.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click an engine, then select **Edit <element type>**.
- 3) Browse to **Add-Ons > EIA Settings**.
- 4) Configure the **EIA Settings**.
- 5) Click  **Save**.

## Define Executable elements

To use endpoint client information for access control in the SMC, you must define Executable elements.

Executable elements contain information about the applications used by the endpoint clients, such as the file name and the MD5 hash. Executable elements are delivered in dynamic update packages, but you can also create Executable elements manually or import multiple elements in an XML file. You can also create Executable elements from log entries.

To categorize Executable elements by usage type, use Tag elements. In addition to predefined Tag elements, you can create custom User Tags.

### Related tasks

[Create Executable elements from log entries](#) on page 259

## Import Executable elements to the SMC

To define many Executable elements, import endpoint client application information from an XML file to the Management Client.



**Tip:** You can use the Endpoint Baseline Generator tool to generate the XML file that contains application executables. The Endpoint Baseline Generator is included in the installation of the McAfee EIA on the client computer that runs McAfee ePO. For more information about McAfee EIA, see McAfee EIA product documentation.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Client Applications > Executables**.
- 3) Right-click **Executables**, then select **Import Executables**.
- 4) To locate the XML file on your computer, select **Browse**.
- 5) (Optional) To categorize all imported Executables with an Executable Tag, select **Select**.
  - To categorize by usage type, select **Usages**.
  - To create a custom User Tag element, select **User Tags**, then **Tools > New > User Tag**.  
After selecting the Executable Tag, click **Select**.
- 6) Click **Import**.  
The XML import view opens in a new tab.
- 7) To proceed with the import, click **Continue**.  
The import takes some time, and the completion of the import is displayed in the status bar of the Management Client window.
- 8) When the import is finished, click **Close** to close the XML import tab.

## Result

The application executables are imported into the Management Client as Executable elements.

# Create Executable elements manually

---

Create Executable elements by manually defining endpoint client application details.

To identify the application used by the endpoint client, you must define at least the file name and the MD5 hash.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Executables**.
- 3) Right-click **Executables**, then select **New Executable**.
- 4) Define the properties of the Executable element.

- 5) (Optional) To categorize the Executables with an Executable Tag, select the **Tags** tab.
  - To categorize by usage type, select **Add Tags > Usage**.
  - To create a custom User Tag element, select **Add Tags**, then **Tools > New > User Tag**.After selecting the Executable Tag, click **Select**.
- 6) Click **OK**.

## Create custom User Tag elements to categorize Executable elements

---

Define custom categories for Executable elements using User Tag elements.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Executables > By User Tag**.
- 3) Right-click **By User Tag**, then select **New > User Tag**.
- 4) In the **Name** field, enter a descriptive name for the User Tag.
- 5) Click **OK**.

## Use Client Applications, Executables, and predefined user types in IPv4 Access rules

---

Configure the engine to allow or discard connections based on endpoint client information. Use EIA user types as additional matching criteria.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Policies > <policy type>**.
- 3) Right-click the policy you want to edit, then select **Edit <policy type>**.

- 4) Add a rule, then define the **Destination** and **Service** cells as needed.
- 5) Click the **Source** cell.
- 6) In the navigation pane, select **Client Applications**, browse to the Client Application or Executable elements, then add them to the **Source** cell.



**Tip:** To select all Client Application elements that have been categorized using the same By Usage tag, add the appropriate tag to the **Source** cell.




**Tip:** To select all Executable elements that have been categorized using the same User Tag, add the appropriate tag to the **Source** cell.

- 7) (Optional) To use EIA user types as matching criteria, go up a level in the navigation pane, then select **Users**.
  - To restrict the rule to users belonging to the Local Users user type, add **Local Users** to the **Source** cell.
  - To restrict the rule to users belonging to the System Users user type, add **System Users** to the **Source** cell.
- 8) Right-click the **Action** cell, then select the action as needed.
- 9) Save and install the policy to transfer the changes to the engines.

## Enable logging of Client Application and Executable information

Logging of Client Application and Executable information allows you to view endpoint client information in log data and Report elements.

By default, Executable information is logged when it is used for matching in the Access rules. You can optionally set Executable information to be logged whenever it is received. You can view the name, reputation, and version information of the Executable in logs.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Open the policy for editing.
- 2) In an IPv4 Access rule where Client Application or Executable elements are used, double-click the **Logging** cell.
- 3) Make sure **Override Recording Settings Inherited from Continue Rule(s)** is enabled.
- 4) In the **Log Application Information** or **Log Executable Information** drop-down list, select the appropriate logging option.

- 5) Click **OK**.
- 6) Save and install the policy to transfer the changes to the engines.



# Filtering URLs

## Contents

- [URL filtering and how it works](#) on page 985
- [Enable ThreatSeeker for engines](#) on page 988
- [Use an HTTP proxy to connect to the ThreatSeeker Intelligence Cloud server](#) on page 989
- [Add Access rules for category-based URL filtering](#) on page 990
- [Add URL List elements to manually block or allow URLs](#) on page 991
- [Add Access rules for custom URL Lists](#) on page 992
- [Migrate a single NGFW Engine to ThreatSeeker URL filtering](#) on page 993
- [Migrate an NGFW cluster to ThreatSeeker URL filtering](#) on page 994
- [Examples of URL filtering](#) on page 995

URL filtering allows you to filter URLs based on categories of content or lists of individual URLs.

## URL filtering and how it works

URL filtering compares the URLs that end-users attempt to access to URL categories or lists of URLs.

You can use URL filtering to prevent users from accessing websites that provide content that is objectionable, potentially harmful, or not work-related. This kind of content filtering can increase network security and enforce an organization's policy on acceptable use of resources.

In URL filtering, the engines compare the URLs in HTTP and HTTPS requests against URL categories or lists of URLs. There are two ways to define the URLs:

- You can use URL Category and URL Category Group elements to filter URLs based on URL categorization.
- You can use URL List elements to filter specific URLs.

You can use both methods together. You can also define allowed URLs manually if a URL that you want to allow is included in a category of URLs that you otherwise want to block.

The URL categorizations are provided by the external Forcepoint™ ThreatSeeker® Intelligence Cloud service. ThreatSeeker Intelligence Cloud (ThreatSeeker) provides categories for malicious websites and several categories for different types of non-malicious content you might want to filter or log. The NGFW Engine sends categorization requests using HTTPS to ThreatSeeker.

URL Category Group elements contain several related URL Categories. When you use URL Category Group elements in the Access rules, the rule matches if any of the URL Categories included in the URL Category Group match.

The engine can use the server name indication (SNI) in HTTPS traffic for URL categorization without decrypting the HTTPS connection. When a web browser contacts a server to request a page using HTTPS, the browser sends the server name in an unencrypted SNI field. However, the requested URL is not known when HTTPS connections are not decrypted.

You can use category-based URL filtering to create Access rules that disallow decryption for traffic in the specified categories. For example, you can create rules that prevent traffic to online banking services from being decrypted.



**Note:** If the end user's browser does not use SNI and the traffic does not match rules for category-based URL filtering, the traffic might be decrypted.

You can configure the engine to respond in various ways when a match is found. For example, you can log the matches or block the traffic. If you decide to block traffic, the engine can notify end users with a message in their browsers. You can define customized User Response elements for URL filtering matches, such as a custom HTML page that is displayed to the end user when a connection is blocked.

If the engine detects that it cannot connect to ThreatSeeker, all URLs match the **Data Provider Error** URL Category. You can optionally add Access rules to discard all traffic that cannot be categorized.

## Limitations

- Category-based URL filtering using the ThreatSeeker Intelligence Cloud service is a separately licensed feature.
- URL filtering and CIS redirection cannot be done for the same traffic.
- Category-based URL filtering is based on the categorizations of the external service, so it is not possible to manually add or directly edit the URL filtering categories. Add URL Lists to Access rules if you want to create exceptions to the category-based URL filtering.



**Note:** The engine can only use one kind of URL categorization at a time. If you used legacy URL filtering with Forcepoint NGFW version 6.0 or earlier, you must migrate the engine to use ThreatSeeker URL filtering when you upgrade the engine to version 6.1 or later.

### Related concepts

[External content inspection and how it works](#) on page 1057

### Related tasks

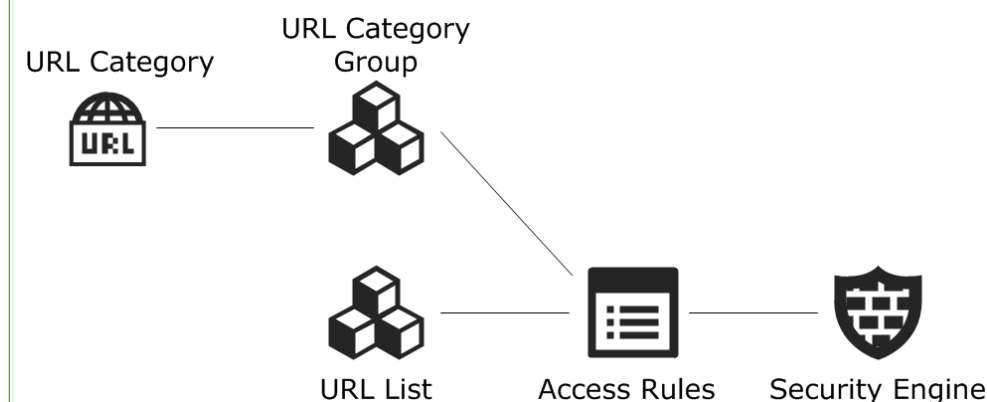
[Migrate a single NGFW Engine to ThreatSeeker URL filtering](#) on page 993

[Migrate an NGFW cluster to ThreatSeeker URL filtering](#) on page 994

# URL filtering configuration overview

The URL filtering feature is configured using category-based URL filtering and custom URL Lists.

**Figure 149: Elements in the configuration**



The Access rules define how URL Categories and URL Lists are matched to traffic and what reaction a match triggers. URL Lists can override category-based URL filtering to allow some URLs manually.

Because an external service defines the URLs that are included in category-based URL filtering, it is not possible to add or edit categories. The category names for category-based URL filtering are updated through dynamic update packages.

- 1) (Category-based URL filtering) Enable ThreatSeeker for the engine.
- 2) (Category-based URL filtering) Make sure that the engine and the network are set up so that the engine can contact the ThreatSeeker Intelligence Cloud servers to request URL categorizations.
  - Make sure that DNS servers are defined for the engine in the **General** branch of the Engine Editor.
  - Make sure that the engine can access the DNS server (UDP port 53, Service element "DNS (UDP)"). The connections are automatically allowed from the engine on which the policy is installed, but not from other components.
  - (Optional) Configure an HTTP proxy for the connection to the ThreatSeeker Intelligence Cloud server in the **Add-Ons > ThreatSeeker** branch of the Engine Editor.
- 3) (Optional) Create User Responses to notify users about matches that are found.
- 4) (Optional when using category-based URL filtering) Create URL Lists to block or allow URLs manually.
- 5) Add Access rules to define how URL filtering is applied.
  - Create IPv4 or IPv6 Access rules to define how URL Categories are matched to traffic and what kind of reaction a match triggers.
  - Create IPv4 or IPv6 Access rules to define how URL Lists are matched to traffic and what kind of reaction a match triggers.

For example, you can add rules for URL Lists to create exceptions to rules for category-based URL filtering.

## Related concepts

[User Response elements and how they work](#) on page 943

### Related tasks

[Use an HTTP proxy to connect to the ThreatSeeker Intelligence Cloud server](#) on page 989

[Add Access rules for category-based URL filtering](#) on page 990

[Add URL List elements to manually block or allow URLs](#) on page 991

[Add Access rules for custom URL Lists](#) on page 992

[Migrate a single NGFW Engine to ThreatSeeker URL filtering](#) on page 993

[Migrate an NGFW cluster to ThreatSeeker URL filtering](#) on page 994

## Default elements for URL filtering

There are default elements for the categories you can use in category-based URL filtering and for creating custom URL lists.

- URL Category elements represent the categories for category-based URL filtering.
- URL Category Group elements contain several related URL Categories. You can find these elements under **Network Applications > By Type > URL Category Group** in the element tree.







**Note:** The URL Categories and URL Category Groups are predefined. It is not possible to add or edit URL Categories or URL Category Groups.


- URL List elements allow you to manually define lists of URLs. You can find these elements under **Network Applications > By Type > URL List** in the element tree.

## Enable ThreatSeeker for engines

To start using ThreatSeeker categories for URL filtering, enable ThreatSeeker for the engine.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click an engine, then select **Edit <element type>**.
- 3) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Add-Ons > ThreatSeeker**.
- 4) Select **Enable**.
- 5) Select from the following:
  - To validate the changes, select  **Tools > Validate**.
  - To validate and save the changes, click  **Save**.

- To validate and save the changes and refresh the security policy on the engine, click  **Save and Refresh**.






**Note:** Validation issues are displayed in the **Issues** pane. Double-click an issue to return to the section in which the issue can be fixed.

# Use an HTTP proxy to connect to the ThreatSeeker Intelligence Cloud server

You can optionally configure an HTTP proxy for the engine's connection to the external ThreatSeeker Intelligence Cloud server.

When you use an HTTP proxy, categorization requests are sent through the proxy instead of the engine accessing the external network directly.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Add one or more HTTP Proxy elements.
  - a) Select  **Configuration**.
  - b) Browse to **Other Elements > Engine Properties**.
  - c) Right-click **HTTP Proxies**, then select **New HTTP Proxy**.
  - d) Configure the settings.
  - e) Click **OK**.
- 2) In the **Configuration** view, browse to **NGFW > NGFW Engines**.
- 3) Right-click an engine, then select **Edit <element type>**.
- 4) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Add-Ons > ThreatSeeker**.
- 5) Next to the **HTTP Proxies** list, click **Add**.
- 6) Select one or more HTTP Proxy elements, then click **Select**.
- 7) Click  **Save**.

# Add Access rules for category-based URL filtering

Use category-based URL filtering in IPv4 or IPv6 Access rules in a Firewall Policy, IPS Policy, or Layer 2 Firewall Policy to define which traffic is logged or blocked when a URL match is found.

## Before you begin

Category-based URL filtering requires that the engine is licensed to use the ThreatSeeker categorization service. You must also define DNS server addresses in the NGFW Engine elements so that the engines can send categorization requests to ThreatSeeker.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Right-click a Firewall Policy, IPS Policy, or Layer 2 Firewall Policy and select **Edit <policy type>**.
- 2) On the **IPv4 Access** or **IPv6 Access** tab, add a rule.



**Tip:** As a general guideline, we recommend placing rules that allow traffic above rules that block traffic.

- 3) Drag and drop elements from the **Resources** pane on the left to the **Source** and **Destination** cells.
- 4) Add URL Category or URL Category Group elements for category-based URL filtering in one of the following ways:
  - Drag and drop one or more elements from the **Resources** pane on the left to the **Service** cell.
  - Add elements to the Service definition.

When you use URL Category Group elements in a rule, the rule matches if any of the URL Categories in the group match.

- 5) In the **Action** cell, select the action depending on the purpose of the rule.
  - To allow matching traffic, select **Allow**.
  - To block matching traffic, select **Discard**.
- 6) (Optional) In the **Logging** cell, configure the logging options for the rule.
- 7) Click  **Save and Install**.

## Next steps

If you want to make exceptions to the category-based URL filtering, add rules to manually block or allow URL Lists.

**Related concepts**

[Getting started with Access rules](#) on page 811

[User Response elements and how they work](#) on page 943

**Related tasks**

[Define Source, Destination, and Service criteria in rules](#) on page 857

# Add URL List elements to manually block or allow URLs

URL List elements allow you to define custom lists of URLs to block or allow.

The action that you select in the Access rules determines whether the URLs in the URL List are blocked or allowed.


When you use URL Lists in combination with category-based URL filtering, you can allow individual URLs that are included in a blocked category. Using URL Lists to allow URLs only affects other URL-based filtering. It does not exclude the traffic from other inspection checks. Traffic to allowed URLs might still be terminated if deep inspection is enabled and the traffic matches Situations in the Inspection Policy.

There is no limit on the number of URL Lists that you can create or on the number of URLs that you can add to each URL List. You can enter URLs as whole URLs or partial URLs. Partial URLs must end with a slash (/). The URLs in the list can match all URLs in a domain, all URLs in a specified path, or exact URLs.

When you add an exact URL, only the specified URL matches. Other URLs in the same domain or path do not match. For example, if you add the exact URL `www.example.com/index.html`, connections to `www.example.com/main.html` do not match.

When you add domains or paths, connections might match more than one URL in the list. For example, if you add the exact URL `www.example.com/path/index.html` and the path `example.com/path/`, both URLs match if the engine detects a request to `http://www.example.com/path/index.html`.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **NGFW > Other Elements > Network Applications > By Type > URL List**.
- 3) Right-click **URL List** and select **New > URL List Application**.
- 4) Add one or more URLs.
  - To add the first URL, double-click the empty row.
  - To add a URL above an existing URL, right-click the URL and select **Add**.

- To add a URL below an existing URL, right-click the empty space in the list and select **Add**.



**Tip:** You can also paste a URL or a list of URLs into the field. Each line of text is automatically added on a separate line.

- 5) Enter the URL without the `http://` protocol.
  - To match all URLs in a domain, enter the domain name followed by a slash (/).  
Example — `example.com/`
  - To match all URLs in the specified path, enter the path followed by a slash (/).  
Example — `example.com/path/`
  - To match an exact URL, enter the URL.  
Example — `www.example.com/index.html`
- 6) (Optional) On the **Tags** tab, select the Tags that you want to use with this URL List.
- 7) Click **OK**.

## Next steps


To use the URL List element for URL filtering, add it to an Access rule.

# Add Access rules for custom URL Lists

Use URL List elements in the Access rules to block or allow individual URLs.

## Before you begin

If you want to add a User Response element to the rule, you must have a custom User Response element.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Right-click a Firewall Policy, IPS Policy, or Layer 2 Firewall Policy and select **Edit <policy type>**.
- 2) On the **IPv4 Access** or **IPv6 Access** tab, add a rule.



**Tip:** As a general guideline, we recommend placing rules that allow traffic above rules that block traffic.

- 3) Drag and drop elements from the **Resources** pane on the left to the **Source** and **Destination** cells.
- 4) Add URL List elements in one of the following ways:
  - Drag and drop one or more elements from the **Resources** pane on the left to the **Service** cell.
  - Add elements to the Service definition.



- 5) In the **Action** cell, select the action depending on the purpose of the rule.
  - To allow matching traffic, select **Allow**.
  - To block matching traffic, select **Discard**.
- 6) (Optional, **Discard** action only) To display warnings or notes in the users' browsers when URL filtering prevents access, add a User Response element to the rule.
  - a) Right-click the **Action** cell and select **Edit Options**.
  - b) On the **Response** tab, select **Override Settings Inherited From Continue Rule(s)**.
  - c) Next to the **User Response** field, click **Select**.
  - d) Select your custom User Response element and click **Select**.
  - e) Click **OK**.
- 7) (Optional) In the **Logging** cell, configure the logging options for the rule.
- 8) Click  **Save and Install**.

#### Related concepts

[Getting started with Access rules](#) on page 811

[User Response elements and how they work](#) on page 943

#### Related tasks

[Define Source, Destination, and Service criteria in rules](#) on page 857


## Migrate a single NGFW Engine to ThreatSeeker URL filtering

If you used legacy URL filtering with Forcepoint NGFW version 6.0 or earlier, you must migrate the engine to use ThreatSeeker URL filtering when you upgrade the single NGFW engine to version 6.1 or later.

The policy that is uploaded to the engine depends on the engine version. For engines running version 6.0 or earlier, only rules that contain legacy URL Situation elements are applied. For engines running version 6.1 or later, only rules that contain new URL Category elements are applied.



**Note:** Do not use legacy URL Situation elements and URL Category elements in the same rule. Rules that contain both legacy URL Situation elements and URL Category elements are ignored.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Create a transition policy that contains both the legacy URL Situation elements and the new URL Category elements.

- 2) Install the transition policy on the engine.  
Policy validation warnings about the legacy URL Situation elements are expected. You can safely ignore the warnings.  
Because the engine has not yet been upgraded to version 6.1 or later, the rules that contain the legacy URL Situation elements are applied.
- 3) Upgrade the engine to Forcepoint NGFW version 6.1 or later, then verify that it works correctly.
- 4) Install the transition policy again.  
Because the engine is running version 6.1 or later, the rules that contain the new URL Category elements are applied.

## Migrate an NGFW cluster to ThreatSeeker URL filtering

If you used legacy URL filtering with Forcepoint NGFW version 6.0 or earlier, you must migrate the engines to use ThreatSeeker URL filtering when you upgrade the NGFW cluster to version 6.1 or later.



**Note:** We recommend upgrading the cluster during a maintenance break.

The policy that is uploaded to the engine depends on the engine version. For engines running version 6.0 or earlier, only rules that contain legacy URL Situation elements are applied. For engines running version 6.1 or later, only rules that contain new URL Category elements are applied.



**Note:** Do not use legacy URL Situation elements and URL Category elements in the same rule. Rules that contain both legacy URL Situation elements and URL Category elements are ignored.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Create a transition policy that contains both the legacy URL Situation elements and the new URL Category elements.



**Tip:** If you already have a transition policy that you used to upgrade a single engine to NGFW 6.1 or later, you can use the same transition policy for the cluster.

- 2) Install the transition policy on the cluster.  
Policy validation warnings about the legacy URL Situation elements are expected. You can safely ignore the warnings.  
Because the engines have not yet been upgraded to version 6.1 or later, the rules that contain the legacy URL Situation elements are applied.
- 3) Upgrade the first node to Forcepoint NGFW version 6.1 or later, then verify that it works correctly.
- 4) Upgrade the other nodes to Forcepoint NGFW version 6.1 or later.

- 5) Install the transition policy again.

Because all nodes are running version 6.1 or later, the rules that contain the new URL Category elements are applied.

## Examples of URL filtering

These examples show some common uses for URL filtering, and general steps for how each example is configured.

### Example: Allowing a blocked URL

In this example, a company is using category-based URL filtering and wants to make an exception to categorized URLs that are blocked by default.

A social media website that users in the marketing department need to access is blocked by category-based URL filtering. To make an exception for users in the marketing department, the administrators:

- 1) Create a URL List element and enter the URL of the social media website.
- 2) Add the following type of Access rule above the rules that apply category-based URL filtering.

**Table 111: Rule for allowing URLs**

Source	Destination	Service	Action
Marketing department users' workstations	ANY	Custom URL List element	Allow

- 3) Save and install the policy.

### Example: Discarding connections when URL categorization is not available

In this example, a company is using category-based URL filtering and wants to block traffic that cannot be categorized.

When URL categorization is not available, it might be possible for users to access URLs that are usually blocked. To prevent users from accessing potentially harmful URLs, the administrators want to discard connections to external servers that cannot be categorized.



**Note:** Depending on the matching criteria in the Access rules, discarding connections when URL categorization is not available might block all HTTP and HTTPS traffic.

The administrators:

- 1) Add the following type of Access rule after the rules that apply category-based URL filtering.

**Table 112: Rule to discard connections that cannot be categorized**

Source	Destination	Service	Action
Internal Network element	Not Internal expression	Data Provider Error URL Category	Discard



**Tip:** If the engine detects that it cannot connect to ThreatSeeker, all URLs match the **Data Provider Error URL Category**.

- 2) Save and install the policy.

## Example: Preventing decryption of private connections

In this example, a company uses category-based URL filtering to prevent connections to online banking services from being decrypted.

The company uses several different online banking services for business purposes. It also allows users in the company network to connect to personal online banking services. The company does not want connections to any online banking services to be decrypted for TLS inspection.

Because URLs can be categorized based on the server name information (SNI) in HTTPS traffic, connections to online banking services can be identified without decrypting the traffic. Options in the Access rules specify whether decryption is allowed for matching traffic.

To identify connections to online banking services and prevent them from being decrypted, the administrators:

- 1) Add the following type of Access rule.

**Table 113: Rule to prevent decryption of private communications**

Source	Destination	Service	Action
ANY	ANY	Financial Data and Services URL Category	Allow

- 2) Edit the action options and select **Disallowed** for the **Decryption** option.
- 3) Save and install the policy.

# Spam filtering

## Contents

- [Spam filtering overview](#) on page 997
- [Configuring spam filtering for engines](#) on page 997
- [Using spam filtering](#) on page 998

Spam filtering inspects incoming email traffic for spam. If a spam email is found, you can configure the system to label the message as spam, or to reject or discard the message.

## Spam filtering overview

---

Spam filtering allows Forcepoint NGFW to inspect SMTP protocol traffic for spam to protect your mail servers from spam attacks.

Only IPv4 traffic is supported in spam filtering. Spam filtering is available as a separately licensed feature on selected platforms. Spam filtering is not supported on Master NGFW Engines or Virtual NGFW Engines.

You can freely configure the criteria for filtering email traffic. In the spam filtering process, each email is assigned a spam score. If the spam score is low, an email is considered to be legitimate. If the spam score is high, the email can be labeled as spam, rejected, or discarded depending on your settings.

## Configuring spam filtering for engines

---

To use spam filtering, you must configure the anti-spam settings in the Engine Editor of the element and activate anti-spam in the IPv4 Access rule Action Options.

To define spam filtering, your license must include the feature. The anti-spam settings in the Engine Editor allow you to define different spam filtering options.

You must activate spam filtering in the IPv4 Access rule Action Options. You can deactivate spam filtering for trusted hosts in the IPv4 Access rule Action Options.

When you activate spam filtering, deep inspection is automatically activated for the same traffic (the traffic is also checked against the Inspection rules). You must define the SMTP service individually in the Service cell of each IPv4 Access rule to enable deep inspection and anti-spam filtering for the service.

To prevent spam filtering for certain destinations, you can create a more specific IPv4 Access rule before a more general one. For some traffic, spam filtering might not be feasible. For example, you might want to exclude traffic between your local mail servers from spam filtering to avoid unnecessary use of resources.

# Using spam filtering

---

Spam filtering can help you detect email address spoofing and forgery. You can assign emails different spam scores, create spam filtering rules, and check email addresses based on DNS-based Blackhole lists.

## Anti-spoofing and anti-relay protections in spam filtering

---

Anti-spoofing and anti-relay options allow you to detect spam activity and to stop suspicious emails.

Email address spoofing is a technique used by spammers to obtain sensitive information. Parts of the header of an email are forged to make the message appear as though it originates from someone other than the original sender.

To protect your network from spoofing, you can specify your local network domains in the spam filtering settings. This allows Forcepoint NGFW to detect the messages that contain spoofed email addresses. Forcepoint NGFW checks the domain information specified in the following parts of an email:

- Domain information in the HELO/EHLO command.
- Domain information in the MAIL FROM command.
- Domain information in the From field of an email header.
- Relay information in the RCPT TO command.

If an external email contains your local domain information, it is considered to be spam. You can adjust the anti-spoofing and anti-relay options to discard, reject, or score such messages.

## Handling email address forgery in spam filtering

---

You can detect forgery of sender email addresses by using SPF (Sender Policy Framework) and MX (Mail Exchanger) record matching.

SPF protects the envelope sender address that is used for delivering emails. Domain owners can specify in an SPF record a mail sending policy that indicates which mail servers they use to send email from their domains. The SPF record is then published in the Domain Name System. Mail exchangers use SPF records to check if an email is sent from a legitimate server.

An MX record is a type of record published in the Domain Name System that specifies a mail server responsible for accepting emails for a certain domain. MX records are used to direct a domain's mail flow to the correct servers. We recommend that SPF and MX record matching is used when traffic is not routed through a proxy or a VPN gateway.

# Spam filter sensitivity settings

Each incoming email that passes spam filter checks is assigned a spam score which determines the likelihood of its being spam.

A spam label is added to the headers of emails with the score of 2 and above. Emails with a score of 8 and above are rejected. You can adjust the score values that determine when emails are labeled as spam or rejected in the scoring settings.

## Spam filtering rules

Spam filtering rules allow you to detect specific word patterns and regular expressions in emails and to define how such messages are handled.

You can define separate spam filtering rules for different parts of an email:

- An *Envelope rule* inspects data in the envelope of an email.
- A *Header rule* inspects data in the header of an email.
- A *Content rule* inspects content in the body of an email.

You can create various rules to handle emails for different recipients differently. For example, you can create Envelope rules per recipient to have milder rules for marketing or PR divisions and stricter rules for other employees.

The following table shows an example of an Envelope rule. The rule increases the credibility of all email that is sent to specified recipients. A negative score value decreases the overall spam score of an email and makes the email less likely to be spam.

**Table 114: Example Envelope rule**

Field	Value	Action
<Envelope>Rcpt To	Email addresses of employees working in marketing or PR divisions.	Score - 5

Spam filtering rules allow you to save system resources because if a message matches a specific rule, further processing might not be necessary. For example, you might create a Header Rule that blacklists emails if the content in the header is written in simplified Chinese.

**Table 115: Example Header rule**

Field	Value	Action
<Header Rules>Content-type	<Regular Expression>/gb2312/i	Blacklist

## DNS-based blackhole lists in spam filtering

*DNS-based Blackhole Lists (DNSBLs)* are lists of IP addresses of computers or networks that are suspected of sending spam. They are published in the Domain Name System.

There are two types of lists that you can define to be checked: *Real-Time Blackhole Lists (RBL)* and *Uniform Resource Identifier DNSBLs (URI DNSBL)*. RBLs contain URLs of DNSBLs that list IP addresses of servers that

are responsible for sending spam or that are hijacked for spam relay. URI DNSBLs contain URLs of DNSBLs that list domain names and IP addresses of links found in the body of spam emails.



# Anti-malware scanning

## Contents

- [Anti-malware scanning overview](#) on page 1001
- [Configuring anti-malware scanning](#) on page 1002
- [Using anti-malware scanning](#) on page 1002

An anti-malware scanner compares network traffic against an anti-malware database to search for malware. If malware is found, the traffic is stopped or content is stripped out.

## Anti-malware scanning overview

An anti-malware scanner is available as a separately licensed feature.

Anti-malware scanning is a resource-intensive activity and is practical mainly in branch-office-type settings, where the physical setup is as simple as possible with little equipment onsite.

The scanner can inspect IPv4 traffic. The supported protocols are HTTP, HTTPS, IMAP, POP3, and SMTP. If the scanner detects infected files, it strips them out. If an email attachment is filtered out, a message is added to the email notifying the recipient.

You can also configure an external server as a content inspection server (CIS) as an external anti-malware scanner for Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role.

### Related concepts

[External content inspection and how it works](#) on page 1057

# Configuring anti-malware scanning

---

Configure the anti-malware settings in the Engine Editor of the element and activate anti-malware scanning in the File Filtering Policy.

## Activating anti-malware scanning

---

The anti-malware settings in the Engine Editor allow you to set a schedule for downloading updates to the anti-malware database and change the settings for logging the malware found in network traffic.

## Selecting traffic for anti-malware scanning

---

You can activate anti-malware scanning in the File Filtering Policy that is referenced in a policy.

Activating the scanning always also activates deep packet inspection for the same traffic (the traffic is also checked against the Inspection rules). You can deactivate the anti-malware scanning if the download source is trusted and the download process takes too long. You must define the services individually in the Service cell to enable deep inspection and anti-malware scanning for them.

To not scan for certain destinations, create a more specific IPv4 Access rule before a more general one that does not have the file filtering option defined.

For some content delivered through HTTP or HTTPS, anti-malware scanning might not be feasible. For example, you might want to prevent videoconferencing sessions from being scanned for malware, to avoid any increase in latency.

# Using anti-malware scanning

---

Setting up integrated anti-malware scanning directly on the engine is best suited for branch offices with moderate traffic loads.

Some limitations apply to using anti-malware scanning on clusters.

## Integrated scanning vs. content inspection server in anti-malware scanning

---

In branch-office-type environments without skilled administrators, a centrally managed anti-malware scanning solution on the same hardware as Forcepoint NGFW makes maintenance easier than having separate equipment.

Anti-malware scanning is needed when there is Internet connectivity at the site (instead of VPN connectivity to a central site where traffic can be scanned centrally).

However, scanning directly on the Forcepoint NGFW is not practical in high-traffic environments. The amount of data gathered for scanning is large, since files must be inspected as a whole to block all infected content. Storing and scanning files significantly increases the demand for resources as the volume of traffic grows.

In high-traffic environments, a separate content inspection server (CIS) integrated with Forcepoint NGFW is a more economical and flexible solution.

**Related concepts**

[External content inspection and how it works](#) on page 1057

## Limitations of anti-malware scanning on clusters

---

Firewall, IPS, and Layer 2 Firewall clusters that are correctly licensed can be used for anti-malware scanning. However, some restrictions apply.

Since the data being inspected is not synchronized between the nodes, connections that are undergoing anti-malware scanning at the time of a failover are dropped. The applications must reopen the connections.



# Protocol Agents on engines

### Contents

- [Protocol Agents overview](#) on page 1005
- [Configuring Protocol Agents](#) on page 1007
- [Using Protocol Agents](#) on page 1008
- [Examples of Protocol Agents](#) on page 1014

**Protocol** elements of the **Protocol Agent** type are special modules for some protocols and services that require advanced processing. Protocol Agents can enforce policies on the application layer.

## Protocol Agents overview

Protocol Agents are software modules for advanced processing of protocols that require special handling on the Firewall, Layer 2 Firewall, or the IPS engine.

Special handling might be required due to the complexity of the protocols, address information in the data payload, related connections, or other consideration. Protocol elements also associate the traffic with a certain protocol for inspection against the Inspection Policy.

Protocol Agents on Firewalls can:

- Validate application-level protocol use (for example, FTP command syntax).
- Open related connections when required (for example, FTP data connections).
- Modify application data when required (for example, NAT in H.323 data payload).
- Redirect FTP, HTTP, and SMTP connections to content inspection servers.
- Proxy HTTP connections.

Protocol Agents on Layer 2 Firewalls and IPS engines can:

- Validate application-level protocol use (for example, FTP command syntax).
- Open related connections when required (for example, FTP data connections).

Some protocols require the use of the correct Protocol Agent to pass inspection by the Firewall, Layer 2 Firewall, or the IPS engine when traffic is handled using stateful inspection.

## Using Protocol Agents for connection handling

When related new connections are opened based on information exchanged in an initial connection, Protocol Agents might be needed.

Protocol Agents are provided to handle the following protocols:

- FTP with related active and passive data connections.
- H.323 conferencing protocol communications.
- Microsoft RPC (MSRPC) for Microsoft Exchange and Outlook communications.

- NetBIOS for the Windows NetBIOS datagram services.
- Oracle TNS protocol communications.
- Remote Shell protocol communications.
- Sun RPC Portmapper communications.
- TFTP file transfers.

#### **File transfer protocol (FTP)**

FTP uses two related connections: a control connection and a separately established data connection. If the control connection is allowed without the Protocol Agent, the firewall does not recognize that the data connection is part of an existing connection. The connection is handles as a new connection, which usually leads to the data transfer failing.

## Using Protocol Agents for protocol validation

---

Protocol Agents can be used to validate communications against standards of specific protocols. Exactly how this works depends on the protocol in question.

Here are a few examples:

- The FTP Protocol Agent can be set to strictly limit the allowed commands within the control connection to standard commands as listed in the FTP specifications. If other commands are sent in the control connection, the connection is dropped.
- The Oracle Protocol Agent can control the size of the Oracle TNS packets, or the location of the Listener service regarding the database services.
- The SSH Protocol Agent can ensure that the SSH handshake is performed at the beginning of an SSH connection.

## Using Protocol Agents for NAT in application data

---

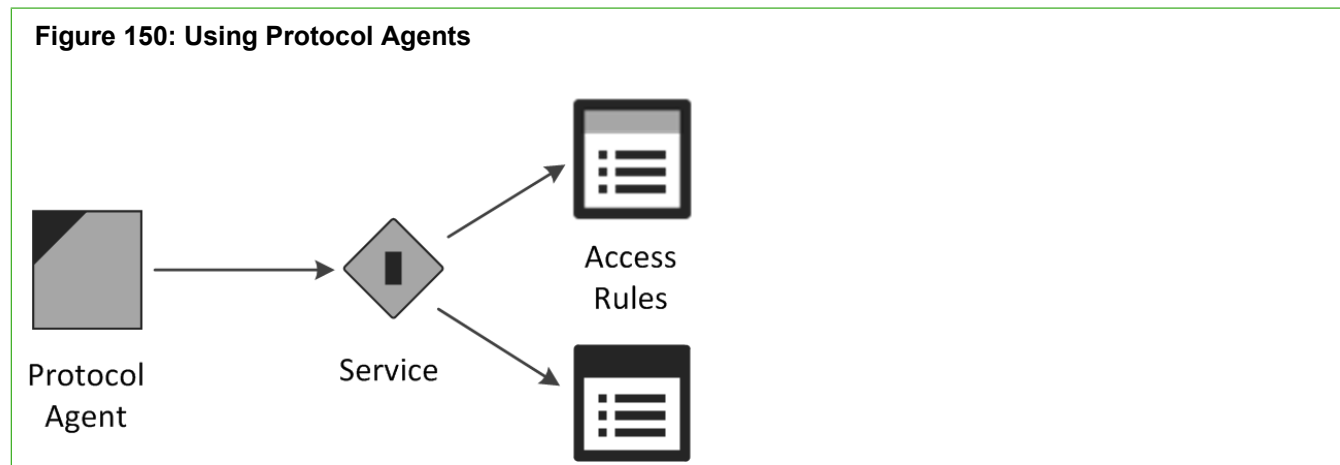
Protocol Agents on Firewalls can be used to assist with network address translation (NAT) in the application data.

For example, the H.323 conferencing protocol includes the source and destination address information in the data payload of the packets. In 'normal' traffic, all IP address information relevant to the communications is in reserved spaces in the packet headers.

The H323 Protocol Agent can examine the data payload and change the addresses according to the network address translation as needed. Therefore, when the source address is included in the protocol data, the source address is also translated in the data payload. The receiving system then responds to the proper address.

# Configuring Protocol Agents

Protocol Agents are represented in the Management Client by **Protocol** elements that have *Protocol Agent* as their type. Other Protocol elements are of the type *Protocol Tag*.



You do not add Protocol Agent elements directly to policies. You select Protocol Agents in custom Service elements that you create. The custom Service elements are used in Access rules. Whenever traffic matches a rule that contains a Service element with an associated Protocol Agent, the Protocol Agent is automatically activated.

All Protocol Agents are default elements, and you cannot change them or add any new ones. There are also default Service elements for most supported protocols that you can use to activate the Protocol Agents. However, some Protocol Agents have parameters and options you can set by creating customized Services.

## Creating custom Service elements with Protocol Agents

In addition to default Service elements that are associated with specific Protocol Agents, you can create custom Services.

There are default Service elements that link to Protocol Agents. These default Services can be used directly in the Access rules. However, the default Services do not allow you to change the default parameters of Protocol Agents that have configurable parameters.

If you want to change the way a Protocol Agent behaves, create a custom Service and attach the correct Protocol Agent to that Service. The Service element contains the identifying information, such as a port number, that determines which traffic the Service matches. In most cases, the identifying information makes sure that the Protocol Agent is not applied to the wrong type of traffic.

# Setting parameters for Protocol Agents

When you create a custom Service that uses a Protocol Agent with configurable parameters, you specify the parameters in the properties of the Service.

## Related concepts

[Using Protocol Agents](#) on page 1008

# Inserting the Service with Protocol Agent in Firewall Access rules

Whether you create a custom Service or use a predefined Services that have a Protocol Agent attached to them, define the traffic in the Access rules in your policies.

A Protocol Agent can be set either on a rule-by-rule basis or you can create a rule with Continue as the Action. When there is a Continue rule, rules further down in the rule table that match traffic (same source and destination) use the Protocol Agent defined in the Continue rule.

With Protocol Agents, the Continue rule affects only rules where the Service cell is set to ANY. More specific Service definitions override the Continue rule, as all Service elements specify that either some particular Protocol Agent or no Protocol Agent is used.

Some protocols might require a Protocol Agent if the Connection Tracking option is enabled for the rule. Those protocols might not be allowed by a rule that has ANY as its Service unless a Protocol Agent is configured using a previous matching Continue rule. The Firewall Template Policy contains a Continue rule that sets a Protocol Agent to be used with Services in the Service Group called Default Services with Agents.

Protocol Agents validate traffic against the specifics of a particular protocol, so make sure that a Service is not applied to traffic that does not use that protocol. Also, Protocol Agents are designed for particular types of uses, so they might not always be appropriate even if the protocol matches.

# Using Protocol Agents

There are Protocol Agents for many different protocols.

Most of the available Protocol Agents have configurable parameters that they add to the Services that use them.

If there are no configurable parameters for a Protocol Agent, there are no options, but there can still be a control for turning the Protocol Agent on or off in the Service.

# FTP Protocol Agent

One of the most common ways to transfer files across networks is using FTP. An FTP session starts with a control connection (by default, TCP port 21), and the data connection continues using a dynamically allocated port.

The Protocol Agent tracks the actual ports used so that ports can be opened only as needed for specific connections. This way, the whole range of possible dynamic ports does not need to be allowed in the policy.



The FTP Protocol Agent inspects protocol validity. There are two selectable levels of inspection: *loose* (default) and *strict*.

- In loose mode, the Protocol Agent tries to identify information for opening the data connection. Loose mode is needed with some non-standard FTP applications.
- With strict mode, protocol integrity can be enforced. All connections with commands that do not comply with the RFC 959 FTP standard are dropped.

The FTP Protocol Agent can change payload data, if necessary. The change can be required to handle NAT correctly.

The FTP Protocol Agent can also redirect traffic to an external content inspection server or to any proxy-type solution.

This Protocol Agent has parameters you can set in the Service properties.

#### Related concepts

[External content inspection and how it works](#) on page 1057

## GRE Protocol Agent

The Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE) protocol is a tunneling protocol that allows the encapsulation of network layer packets inside IP tunneling packets.

The GRE Protocol Agent provides protocol inspection for tunneled GRE traffic. This Protocol Agent specifies rematching parameters for GRE-encapsulated packets, and defines which traffic is tunneled. This Protocol Agent has parameters that you can set in the Service properties.

## GTP Protocol Agent

The GTP Protocol Agent provides protocol inspection for GTP traffic.

The GPRS Tunneling Protocol (GTP) is used to carry GPRS (general packet radio service) packets in GSM, UMTS, and LTE networks. There are no configurable parameters for this Protocol Agent.

## H323 Protocol Agent

H.323 defines a set of protocols as well as the components and procedures for real-time multimedia communication.

H.323 consists of a series of different types of standards related to video and audio services, real-time transport, control channels, and security.

On Firewalls, this Protocol Agent has parameters you can set in the Service properties:

- H.323 can open several related connections, which places demands on access control and NAT. The H323 Protocol Agent's task is to track the related connections that are opened within the same session. Particularly, if you want the Firewall to apply NAT to H.323 connections, you must make sure that the connections use this Protocol Agent.
- The H323 Protocol Agent examines Call Signaling Channel (Q.931/H.225.0) connections and allows the related Control Channel (H.245) connection to open. It also examines the H.245 connection and allows further related connections (RTP and RTCP) to open, based on the port negotiations on the parent connection.

- When NAT is applied to Q.931 connections, the Protocol Agent performs the same NAT to the related H.245 connection and changes the payload data of the parent connection. The same NAT operation is performed also on the opened RTP and RTCP connections.

There are no configurable parameters for this Protocol Agent on IPS engines or Layer 2 Firewalls.

## HTTP Protocol Agent

---

The HTTP Protocol Agent can be used on Firewalls for redirecting traffic to an external content inspection server, and in all engine roles to log the URLs from HTTP requests.

This Protocol Agent has parameters that you can set in the Service properties.

## HTTPS Protocol Agent

---

The HTTPS Protocol Agent can be used for identifying encrypted HTTPS traffic for decryption and inspection in the Access rules. It can also identify encrypted HTTPS traffic for inspection in the Inspection Policy.

This Protocol Agent has parameters that you can set in the Service properties.

## IPv4 Encapsulation Protocol Agent

---

The IPv4 Encapsulation Protocol Agent provides protocol inspection for tunneled IPv4 traffic on IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls.

This Protocol Agent specifies rematching parameters for IPv4 packets encapsulated in IPv6 packets. This Protocol Agent has parameters that you can set in the Service properties. This Protocol Agent is not available on Firewalls.

## IPv6 Encapsulation Protocol Agent

---

The IPv6 Encapsulation Protocol Agent provides protocol inspection for tunneled IPv6 traffic on IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls.

This Protocol Agent specifies rematching parameters for IPv6 packets encapsulated in IPv4 packets. This Protocol Agent has parameters that you can set in the Service properties. This Protocol Agent is not available on Firewalls.

## MGCP Protocol Agent

---

The MGCP (Media Gateway Control Protocol) Protocol Agent provides support for related RTP (Real-time Transport Protocol) connections in Voice over IP (VoIP) traffic.

There are no configurable parameters for this Protocol Agent.

## MSRPC Protocol Agent

---

The MSRPC Protocol Agent is primarily meant for communications between Microsoft Outlook clients and a Microsoft Exchange server.

The supported endpoint mapper (EPM) connection method between the Outlook client and the Exchange server is TCP. By default, the Microsoft RPC/EPM service is available at port 135/TCP and the communications continue using a dynamically allocated port. This Protocol Agent tracks the actual ports used, so that the range of dynamic ports does not need to be allowed in the policy.

If the traffic is Outlook/Exchange traffic, the Protocol Agent can also be used to support NAT for related connections by changing the payload data of the control connection.

On Firewalls, this Protocol Agent has parameters that you can set in the Service properties. On IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls, there are no configurable parameters for this Protocol Agent.

## NetBIOS Protocol Agent

---

This Protocol Agent provides deep inspection for Windows NetBIOS Datagram Service connections. This Protocol Agent is also used to allow Windows NetBIOS Datagram Service connections through the Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall.

There are no configurable parameters for this Protocol Agent.

## Oracle Protocol Agent

---

This Protocol Agent handles Oracle Transparent Network Substrate (TNS) protocol-based SQL\*Net, Net7, and Net8 connections.

It is for cases where TCP port 1521 is used only for negotiating the port number for Oracle database connections and the port number for the actual connection is assigned dynamically.

This Protocol Agent is needed only if the database is on a different computer than the Oracle listener. The Oracle Protocol Agent does not change payload data because the database service connections might go through a different route than the listener connection. You can create custom Oracle agents with different settings when required.

## RTSP Protocol Agent

---

The RTSP (Real Time Streaming Protocol) network control protocol is used for establishing and controlling media sessions between clients and media servers.

The RTSP Protocol Agent allows RTP (Real-time Transport Protocol) and RTCP (Real-time Control Protocol) media streaming connections initiated with RTSP through the engine. On Firewalls, it also handles NAT modifications to the protocol payload. This Protocol Agent has parameters you can set in the Service properties.

## SCCP Protocol Agent

---

The SCCP (Skinny Call Control Protocol) provides support for related RTP (Real-time Transport Protocol) connections in VoIP traffic.

There are no configurable parameters for this Protocol Agent.

## Services in Firewall Protocol Agent

---

This Protocol Agent is intended for system services running on Firewalls. On Layer 2 Firewalls and IPS engines, it is also used with services running on Firewalls managed by the same Management Server as the Layer 2 Firewall or IPS engine.

This Protocol Agent is only intended for the system's internal use. There are no configurable parameters for this Protocol Agent.

## Shell Protocol Agent

---

This Protocol Agent manages Remote Shell connections and RExec connections.

Remote Shell is a widely used remote management protocol. RExec is a remote protocol with which it is possible to run commands on another computer.

This Protocol Agent has parameters that you can set in the Service properties.

## SIP Protocol Agent

---

The Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) Protocol Agent can be used with Firewalls to handle multimedia connections that use SIP as their transfer protocol (such as VoIP).

Using the SIP Protocol Agent allows SIP to be used across a Firewall that uses NAT. SIP uses TCP or UDP port 5060 to initiate the connection, after which the traffic is allocated a dynamically assigned port. The Protocol Agent tracks the actual ports used, so that the whole range of dynamic ports does not need to be allowed in the Firewall Policy.

The SIP Protocol Agent can be configured to force the client or server address used within the SIP transport layer to also be used for the media stream carried over SIP (by default, enforced for both the client and the server).

This Protocol Agent has parameters you can set in the Service properties. This Protocol Agent is not available on IPS engines or Layer 2 Firewalls.

## SMTP Protocol Agent

---

On Firewalls, the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) Protocol Agent redirects connections to an external content inspection server. On Layer 2 Firewalls and IPS engines, it provides protocol validation and deep inspection.

On Firewalls, this Protocol Agent has parameters that you can set in the Service properties. On IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls, there are no configurable parameters for this Protocol Agent.

## SSH Protocol Agent

---

Secure Shell (SSH) is an encrypted remote use protocol.

This Protocol Agent validates the communications to make sure the protocol used really is SSH. The SSH Agent validates SSHv1 only. On Firewalls, this Protocol Agent has parameters you can set in the Service properties. On IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls, there are no configurable parameters for this Protocol Agent.

## SunRPC Protocol Agent

---

The Sun Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Protocol Agent assists the Firewall, Layer 2 Firewall, or IPS engine in Portmapper connections. It makes the handling of RPC program numbers used in the Access rules faster.

Only Portmapper connections going through the engine are assigned this Protocol Agent. This Protocol Agent is not intended for other communications.

The SunRPC Protocol Agent collects information about RPC services by interpreting the GET PORT and DUMP PORTS requests and their respective answers. All information it collects is stored in the Portmapper cache.

When the packet filter evaluates RPC matches, it checks the Portmapper cache to see if the destination of the packet has the appropriate service defined in the rule. If the cache does not have the requested information available, the packet under evaluation is not let through. A query is sent to the destination host for RPC information. The reply information is stored in cache.

There are no configurable parameters for this Protocol Agent.

## TCP Proxy Protocol Agent

---

The TCP Proxy Protocol Agent is used for TCP connections that need to be closed after a certain amount of idle time.

Certain TCP-based applications do not properly handle the closing of connections and leave them open for a long time, unnecessarily consuming resources. For such situations, the TCP Proxy Agent can be used to actively close the connections after a certain idle time. In addition, the TCP Proxy Agent might cancel a connection if the closing of the connection does not complete in a specified time.

On Firewalls, the handling of idle connections defined by the TCP Proxy agent is different from other connection handling on the Firewall, because without the Protocol Agent, idle connections are removed from the Firewall's records without sending any notices to the communicating parties (according to the general TCP timeout set in the Firewall properties, or an overriding timeout set in the rule that allowed the connection).

On Firewalls, this agent has parameters you can set in the Service properties. On IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls, there are no configurable parameters for this Protocol Agent.

## TFTP Protocol Agent

---

The Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) Protocol Agent performs data transfer from a server to a client using dynamically selected ports.

There are no specific limits to the port range in the TFTP protocol (RFC 1350). Apart from Access rules, the TFTP Protocol Agent is also useful in NAT operations on Firewalls.

A TFTP Agent is attached to a UDP connection established between the client and the server. The client opens the control connection from a dynamically selected source port to the fixed destination port 69/UDP on the server. A separate UDP data connection is established between the client and the server after the client has sent a

read or write command to the server. The server opens a connection from a dynamic source port to the client's destination port. The destination port is the same as the source port in the control connection.

On Firewalls, this agent has parameters you can set in the Service properties. On IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls, there are no configurable parameters for this Protocol Agent.

## Examples of Protocol Agents

These examples illustrate some common uses for Protocol Agents and the general steps on how each example is configured.

### Example: preventing active mode FTP with a Protocol Agent

Company A has an FTP server that allows access from the Internet. The Firewall must only allow users to make passive mode FTP connections.

The administrators:

- 1) Create a Service element for passive FTP.
- 2) Attach the FTP Protocol Agent to the Service.
- 3) Change the active mode FTP setting to **No** in the Service properties.
- 4) Create an Access rule that allows users to connect to the FTP server using their custom-made Service element.
- 5) Refresh the policy on the IPS engine.

### Example: logging URLs accessed by internal users with a Protocol Agent

Company B has decided to track which webpages the employees visit. In addition to logging the connections, the administrators also want to log URLs.

An Access rule allows all outbound connections from the internal networks to the Internet, regardless of the service. The administrators decide to add the HTTP Protocol Agent in a Continue rule.

The administrators:

- 1) Add the Continue rule above the existing Access rule, as follows.

Source	Destination	Service	Action
Internal Networks	Expression "NOT Local Protected Sites"	"HTTP (with URL Logging)" default Service	Continue

Source	Destination	Service	Action
Internal Networks	Expression "NOT Local Protected Sites"	ANY	Allow



**Note:** Using the "NOT Local Protected Sites" expression requires the Alias "Local Protected Sites" to be configured with a translation value for the engine.

- 2) Refresh the engine's policy.





# Sidewinder Proxies

### Contents

- [Sidewinder Proxies and how they work](#) on page 1017
- [Change logging options for Sidewinder Proxies](#) on page 1020
- [Enable Sidewinder Proxy](#) on page 1021
- [Configure Sidewinder SSH Proxy](#) on page 1021
- [Add custom Service elements for Sidewinder HTTP Proxy](#) on page 1027
- [Add custom Service elements for Sidewinder TCP Proxy or Sidewinder UDP Proxy](#) on page 1028
- [Add rules for Sidewinder Proxy](#) on page 1028
- [Advanced settings for Sidewinder Proxies](#) on page 1029
- [Supported advanced Sidewinder Proxy settings](#) on page 1030

Sidewinder Proxies are software modules that provide network level proxies, protocol validation, and configurable application level protocol filtering and translation on Forcepoint Next Generation Firewall.

## Sidewinder Proxies and how they work

On Sidewinder firewalls, proxies provide high assurance protocol validation. On Forcepoint NGFW, Sidewinder Proxies are software modules on engines that enable some of the proxy features that are available on Sidewinder.



**Note:** Not all features supported by proxies on Sidewinder are supported by Sidewinder Proxies on Forcepoint NGFW.

On Forcepoint NGFW, Sidewinder Proxies are supported for both Firewalls and Virtual Firewalls.

You can use Sidewinder Proxies on Forcepoint NGFW to enforce protocol validation and to restrict the allowed parameters for each protocol. Sidewinder Proxies are primarily intended for users in high assurance environments, such as government or financial institutions. In environments that limit access to external networks or access between networks with different security requirements, you can use Sidewinder Proxies for data loss protection.

Sidewinder Proxies terminate connections at the firewall, and make separate connections with each of the communicating hosts. Hosts do not communicate with each other directly. Each host communicates only with the Sidewinder Proxy. The proxy does not forward the original packet from one host to the other. Only the data from the original packets is forwarded. For TCP connections, the TCP sequence numbers, ACKs, packet sizes, windows, and other parameters are different on the two sides of the connection.

## Benefits of Sidewinder Proxies

Sidewinder Proxies provide the following benefits:

**Table 116: Benefits of Sidewinder Proxies**

Benefit	Description
More extensive attack prevention	Sidewinder Proxies can prevent most attacks that involve modifying IP, TCP, or UDP headers to evade detection. These kinds of attacks cannot always be detected using signature-based detection alone.
Covert channel prevention	Sidewinder Proxies can prevent attempts to covertly send data in the header bits of IP, TCP, or UDP packets.
More detailed control of application protocols	Sidewinder Proxies provide more granular control of application protocols. For example, you can use the SSM HTTP Proxy for detailed HTTP header filtering and control.

## Limitations of Sidewinder Proxies

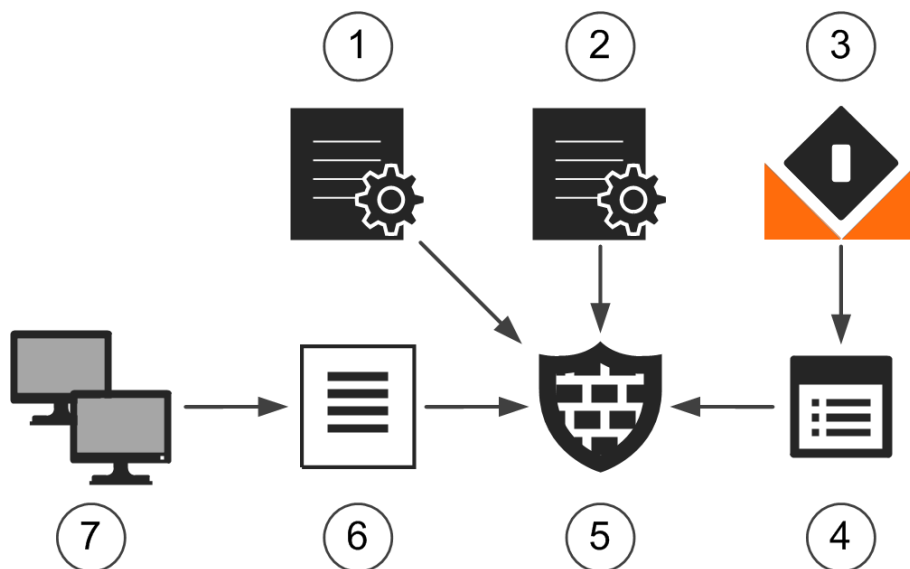
The following limitations apply:

- Sidewinder Proxies are not supported with legacy role-specific licenses. An NGFW license is required.
- Only the Firewall/VPN role is supported.
- On Firewall Clusters, connection failover is not supported.
- Master NGFW Engines only support advanced Sidewinder Proxy settings for the Virtual Firewalls that they host. Master NGFW Engines cannot use Sidewinder Proxies for their own traffic.
- Sidewinder Proxies can be used with both IPv4 and IPv6 traffic. However, they do not support translation between IPv4 and IPv6, or tunneling of IPv4 or IPv6 traffic in an IPv6 or IPv4 connection.
- The SSM SSH Proxy does not support inspection.
- User Responses not supported with Sidewinder Proxy.

# Sidewinder Proxy configuration overview

To use Sidewinder Proxy, you must enable the feature and add Access rules. You can optionally add other elements to customize how Sidewinder Proxies work.

**Figure 151: Elements in the configuration**



- 1 SSH Profile
- 2 Sidewinder Logging Profile
- 3 Service with Proxy
- 4 Access Rules
- 5 NGFW Engine
- 6 SSH Known Host List
- 7 SSH Known Hosts

Follow these general steps to configure Sidewinder Proxies:

- 1) (Optional) To customize logging options for Sidewinder Proxies, create Sidewinder Logging Profiles.
- 2) Enable Sidewinder Proxy for the engine in the Engine Editor.
- 3) (Optional) Add elements and configure settings for specific Sidewinder Proxies.
  - a) Add SSH Profiles for Sidewinder SSH Proxy.
  - b) Add SSH Known Hosts for Sidewinder SSH Proxy and group SSH Known Hosts using SSH Known Hosts Lists.
  - c) Configure settings for Sidewinder SSH Proxy in the Engine Editor.
- 4) (Optional) Add custom Service elements and configure Protocol Parameters for Sidewinder Proxies.



**Note:** There are no configurable Protocol Parameters for the SSM TCP Proxy or the SSM UDP Proxy.

- 5) Add Service elements to Access rules to specify which traffic uses SSM Proxies.

## Default elements for Sidewinder Proxy

The SMC has default elements that can be used for Sidewinder Proxy.

The default elements cannot be edited, but can be duplicated and then edited.

**Table 117: Default elements for Sidewinder Proxy**

Element	Description
<b>SSM HTTP</b> and <b>SSM SSH</b> Service elements	These Service elements allow you use HTTP and SSH traffic with Sidewinder Proxy. These Service elements also provide Protocol Parameters for detailed control of these protocols.
<b>Sidewinder Default</b> Sidewinder Logging Profile element	This Sidewinder Logging Profile element contains default settings that define which events detected by Sidewinder Proxies are logged, and how often logs are created.
<b>High Compatibility Profile</b> SSH Profile element	This SSH Profile element contains default settings for key exchange, encryption algorithm, and message authentication that are compatible with a variety of SSH server software.
ECDSA 256, DSA 1024, and RSA 1024 SSH Host Keys	When you enable Sidewinder Proxy in the Engine Editor, these SSH Host Keys are automatically created for the engine.

## Change logging options for Sidewinder Proxies

Sidewinder Logging Profiles define which events detected by Sidewinder Proxies are logged, and how often logs are created.

If the settings in the default Sidewinder Logging Profile element meet your needs, there is no need to create a custom Sidewinder Logging Profile element.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Sidewinder Elements > Sidewinder Logging Profiles**.
- 3) Right-click **Sidewinder Logging Profiles**, then select **New Sidewinder Logging Profile**.



- 4) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.
- 5) Select logging options for Situation Categories or individual Situations.
- 6) Click **OK**.

## Enable Sidewinder Proxy

---

To start using Sidewinder Proxy, you must enable the feature in the Engine Editor.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click a Single Firewall or Firewall Cluster and select **Edit <element type>**.
- 3) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Add-Ons > Sidewinder Proxy**.
- 4) Select **Enable**.
- 5) (Optional) Select a customized Sidewinder Logging Profile.
  - a) Next to the **Sidewinder Logging Profile** field, click **Select**.
  - b) Select a Sidewinder Logging Profile element, then click **Select**.
- 6) Click  **Save**.

## Configure Sidewinder SSH Proxy

---

The Sidewinder SSH Proxy enforces protocol validation and restricts the allowed parameters for SSH traffic.

Follow these general steps to configure Sidewinder SSH Proxy:

- 1) (Optional) To define custom settings for key exchange, encryption algorithm, and message authentication, create an SSH Profile element.
- 2) (Optional) Allow connections only to specific trusted servers.
  - a) Add SSH Known Host elements.
  - b) Group the SSH Known Hosts in SSH Known Hosts Lists.
  - c) Select SSH Known Hosts Lists in the Engine Editor.


- 3) (Optional) Add host keys for Sidewinder SSH Proxy in the Engine Editor.
- 4) Add custom Service elements for Sidewinder SSH Proxy.


## Add SSH Profiles for Sidewinder SSH Proxy

SSH Profiles define custom settings for key exchange, encryption algorithm, and message authentication for SSH connections that use the Sidewinder SSH Proxy.

If the default High Compatibility Profile SSH Profile element meets your needs, it is not necessary to create a custom SSH Profile.

The lists of selected key exchange methods, cipher methods, and message authentication code (MAC) methods are organized in order of preference. You can move selected items up or down in the list.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Sidewinder Elements > SSH Profiles**.
- 3) Right-click **SSH Profiles**, then select **New SSH Profile**.
- 4) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.
- 5) On the **Key Exchange** tab, select one or more key exchange methods, then click **Add**.
- 6) On the **Cipher** tab, select one or more cipher methods, then click **Add**.
- 7) On the **MAC** tab, select one or more MAC methods, then click **Add**.
- 8) Click **OK**.

### Next steps


If you want to allow connections only to specific trusted servers, create SSH Known Hosts. Otherwise, you are now ready to select your custom SSH Profile in the Engine Editor.


## Create SSH Known Hosts for Sidewinder SSH Proxy

SSH Known Host elements contain the contact information, public key, and fingerprint that you use to authenticate servers that you trust.



**Tip:** The Sidewinder SSH Proxy logs the SSH server key for each connection attempt. You can optionally add SSH Known Hosts from log entries using the right-click menu.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Sidewinder Elements > SSH Known Hosts > SSH Known Hosts**.
- 3) Right-click **SSH Known Hosts**, then select **New SSH Known Host**.
- 4) In the **Name** field, specify the name of the element in one of these ways:
  - Enter the domain name of the server.
  - Enter a unique name for the server.

- 5) Enter one or more IP addresses.



**Note:** You can enter both an IPv4 address and an IPv6 address. You can only enter one address of each type.

- In the **IPv4 Address** field, enter the IPv4 address of the server.



**Tip:** To automatically resolve the IP address from the domain name, enter the domain name, then click **Resolve**.

- In the **IPv6 Address** field, enter the IPv6 address of the server.
- 6) If the server communicates on a port other than the default port (TCP 22), enter the port number in the **Port** field.
  - 7) To manually enter the SSH key for the server, enter the key as text.
    - a) From the **Key Type** drop-down list, select the algorithm used for the key.
    - b) In the **SSH Key** field, type or paste the key.
  - 8) To use an existing key file as the SSH key for the server, import the key file.
    - a) Click **Import**.
    - b) Select the key file, then click **Open**.
  - 9) To retrieve a public key from a host, follow these steps.
    - a) From the **Key Type** drop-down list, select the algorithm used for the key.
    - b) Click **Retrieve**.
    - c) Select a firewall, then click **Select**.


The firewall sends a public key request to the host, and retrieves the SSH key and fingerprint.
  - 10) Click **OK**.


## Next steps

You are now ready to group SSH Known Host elements using SSH Known Hosts Lists.

# Group SSH Known Hosts in SSH Known Hosts Lists

To allow connections only to specific trusted servers, group SSH Known Hosts in SSH Known Hosts Lists. You select SSH Known Hosts Lists for each NGFW Engine in the Engine Editor.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Sidewinder Elements > SSH Known Hosts > SSH Known Hosts Lists**.
- 3) Right-click **SSH Known Hosts Lists**, then select **New SSH Known Hosts List**.
- 4) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.
- 5) Click **Add**, select one or more SSH Known Host elements, then click **Select**.
- 6) Click **OK**.


## Select SSH Known Hosts Lists for engines

To allow connections only to specific trusted servers, select SSH Known Hosts Lists in the Engine Editor.



**Note:** When **Use Strict Known Hosts List** is selected for the **Server Host Key Validation** option in the properties of the custom Service element for SSM SSH Proxy, you must select SSH Known Hosts Lists for the engine. If you do not select an SSH Known Hosts List, connections are not allowed to any hosts.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click a Single Firewall or Firewall Cluster and select **Edit <element type>**.
- 3) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Add-Ons > Sidewinder Proxy**.
- 4) Next to the **SSH Known Hosts Lists** table, click **Add**.



- 5) Select one or more SSH Known Hosts List elements, then click **Select**.
- 6) Click **Save**.

## Next steps

You are now ready to add host keys.

# Add host keys for Sidewinder SSH Proxy

In the Engine Editor, you can add host keys for Sidewinder SSH Proxy and specify which host keys are used for specific SSH Proxy Services.

When you enable Sidewinder proxy in the Engine Editor, 3 default SSH Host Keys are automatically created for the engine. You can optionally add more host keys. You can import existing host keys or generate host keys. You can also associate host keys with specific SSH Proxy Services. Each engine on which you use the SSH Proxy Service must have one host key of each type.



**Note:** You can only associate one key of each key type with the same Service. This limitation includes the default Proxy Service that is used if you do not select a specific Service.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click a Single Firewall or Firewall Cluster and select **Edit <element type>**.
- 3) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Add-Ons > Sidewinder Proxy**.
- 4) (Optional) Generate host keys.
  - a) Next to the **Host Keys** table, click **Add**.
  - b) From the **Host Key Type** drop-down list, select the algorithm to use for the key.
  - c) From the **Host Key Length** drop-down list, select the length of the key.
  - d) Click **Add**.
- 5) (Optional) Import existing host keys.
  - a) Next to the **Host Keys** table, click **Import**.
  - b) Select the key file, then click **Import**.
- 6) If you added host keys, specify which host keys are used for specific SSH Proxy Services.
  - a) In the **Host Keys** table, double-click the **SSH Proxy Services** cell.
  - b) From the **Resources** list, select one or more Service elements, then click **Add**.

c) Click **OK**.

7) Click **Save**.

## Add custom Service elements for Sidewinder SSH Proxy

Add a custom Service element if you need to change the Protocol Parameters of the default SSM SSH Service element.


You cannot edit the default SSM SSH Service element. Instead, you must duplicate the default element and edit the copy. When you duplicate the default SSM SSH Service element, the following options are already configured:

**Table 118: Predefined options in the default SSM SSH Service element**

Option	Value
Dst. Ports	22
Protocol	SSM SSH Proxy

The Sidewinder SSH Proxy allows you to restrict the types of traffic and the commands that can be used with SSH connections. For example, you can use the Sidewinder SSH Proxy to block port forwarding or to restrict the commands allowed in file transfers using the SSH protocol.

You can also use Sidewinder Proxies to enforce encryption strength for the connections. In the Protocol Parameters, you can separately specify the key type and key length for each side of the connection. The **Client Advanced Settings** define settings for connections between the Sidewinder SSH Proxy and the client. The **Server Advanced Settings** define settings for connections between the Sidewinder SSH Proxy and the server.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Services > With Proxy**.
- 3) Right-click the default SSM SSH Service, then select **New > Duplicate**.
- 4) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.
- 5) (Optional) To match traffic that uses different ports than the standard SSH port 22, enter the port numbers in the **Dst. Ports** and **Src. Ports** fields.
- 6) On the **Protocol Parameters** tab, select options according to your needs.
- 7) Click **OK**.

## Next steps

You are now ready to use the custom Service element in the Access rules.

# Add custom Service elements for Sidewinder HTTP Proxy


Add a custom Service element if you need to change the Protocol Parameters of the default SSM HTTP Service element.


You cannot edit the default SSM HTTP Service element. Instead, you must duplicate the default element and edit the copy. When you duplicate the default SSM HTTP Service element, the following options are already configured:

**Table 119: Predefined options in the default SSM HTTP Service element**

Option	Value
Dst. Ports	80
Protocol	SSM HTTP Proxy

The Sidewinder HTTP Proxy allows you to enforce strict HTTP protocol standards, log URLs in requests, validate HTTP requests, and block some types of content in requests. For example, you can use Sidewinder Proxies to block actions in requests, such as HTTP POST.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Services > With Proxy**.
- 3) Right-click the default SSM HTTP Service, then select **New > Duplicate**.
- 4) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.
- 5) (Optional) To match traffic that uses different ports than the standard HTTP port 80, enter the port numbers in the **Dst. Ports** and **Src. Ports** fields.
- 6) On the **Protocol Parameters** tab, select options according to your needs.
- 7) Click **OK**.


## Next steps




You are now ready to use the custom Service element in the Access rules.

# Add custom Service elements for Sidewinder TCP Proxy or Sidewinder UDP Proxy

Add a custom Service element if you want to apply the Sidewinder TCP Proxy or the Sidewinder UDP Proxy to TCP or UDP services.

There are no configurable Protocol Parameters for the SSM TCP Proxy or the SSM UDP Proxy Protocol elements.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Services**.
- 3) Create the Service element in one of the following ways:
  - To create an element with no settings predefined, right-click the branch for the type of Service you want to create and select  **New > TCP Service** or  **New > UDP Service**.
  - To create a Service based on an existing TCP or UDP Service element, right-click the existing Service, then select **New > Duplicate**.
- 4) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.
- 5) (Optional) To match traffic that uses different ports than the standard ports for the protocol, enter the port numbers in the **Dst. Ports** and **Src. Ports** fields.
- 6) Click **Select** next to the **Protocol** field, then select an SSM Proxy according to the protocol.
  - For TCP protocols, select **TCP Proxy > SSM TCP Proxy** element.
  - For UDP protocols, select **UDP Proxy > SSM UDP Proxy** element.
- 7) Click **OK**.

## Next steps

You are now ready to use the custom Service element in the Access rules.


# Add rules for Sidewinder Proxy

Use one of the default Service elements for Sidewinder Proxy or a custom Service element in the Access rules to specify which traffic uses Sidewinder Proxies.



**Note:** In some cases, connections might not use the Sidewinder Proxy.

- If the policy contains rules that match traffic based on the payload, such as Applications or category-based web filtering, connections might not match rules that specify an Sidewinder Proxy.  
To avoid this limitation, do not add rules that match traffic based on the payload to the same policy where you use SSM Proxies.
- If you use a rule with the Continue action to specify an Sidewinder Proxy as a default Protocol, rules later in the policy can override the defaults set in Continue rules.  
To avoid this limitation, do not add rules that specify a Protocol of the type Protocol Agent or Protocol Tag for the same matching criteria as the Continue rules for SSM Proxies.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) To specify which traffic uses SSM Proxies, add the following type of Access rules to the Firewall Policy:

**Table 120: Access rules for Sidewinder Proxy**

Source	Destination	Service	Action
The elements that represent hosts in the internal network, or ANY.	The elements that represent external servers, or ANY.	One or more custom Service elements or one or more default Service elements for Sidewinder Proxy.	Allow or Continue

- 2) Save and install the policy to start using the new configuration.

## Advanced settings for Sidewinder Proxies

Advanced Sidewinder Proxy settings enable optional behavior or set parameters, such as window sizes.

Each setting has a name and a value. Some settings are specific to individual proxies. Most settings can be used with any proxy, or for all proxies if you set them using shared proxy properties. If you do not specify a value, the default values are used.



**Note:** Changing the advanced settings requires detailed knowledge of the protocols involved and how the parameters affect your environment. We do not recommend changing the advanced settings unless you are instructed to do so by [Forcepoint support](#).

## Advanced settings on Master NGFW Engines and Virtual Firewalls

In an environment with Master NGFW Engines and Virtual Firewalls, some advanced settings apply only to Master NGFW Engines, and some advanced settings apply only to Virtual Firewalls. Settings that do not apply to the type of engine on which they are configured are ignored. For example, if you configure a Master NGFW Engine advanced setting for a Virtual Firewall, the setting has no effect on the Virtual Firewall.

Advanced settings that you configure for a Virtual Firewall affect only the individual Virtual Firewall. Advanced settings that you configure for a Master NGFW Engine affect all Virtual Firewalls that are hosted by the Master NGFW Engine.

## Supported advanced Sidewinder Proxy settings

This table lists the most commonly used advanced settings for Sidewinder Proxies.



**Note:** All advanced Sidewinder Proxy settings can be configured for Firewalls. Some settings can be configured for Master NGFW Engines or for Virtual Firewalls. Settings that do not apply to the type of engine on which they are configured are ignored.


**Table 121: Supported advanced Sidewinder Proxy settings**

Property	Supported proxy types	Accepted values	Default value	Supported engine types	Description
allow_client_half_close	HTTP	0 or 1	1	Firewall	If 1, allows clients to receive data after indicating that they will send no more.
debug_level	HTTP SSH TCP UDP	0–4	0	Firewall, Master NGFW Engine	If any value other than 0, enables debugging messages. Higher values produce more output. See also send_debug_to_log.
encoded_url_max	HTTP	Numerical values in kilobytes	100000 (100 megabytes)	Firewall, Master NGFW Engine	Maximum size of an encoded URL that can be decoded in normalization. Normalization can make up to 6 copies of a URL.
header_waiting	HTTP	0–100	25	Firewall, Master NGFW Engine	Limit for the percentage of proxy sessions waiting for additional HTTP header information. If this limit is reached, half of the waiting sessions are discarded.
max_header_total_size	HTTP	Numerical values	65536	Firewall	Maximum size of all HTTP header data (not just individual lines).
net.inet.ip.random_id	HTTP SSH TCP UDP	0 or 1	0	Firewall	If 1, assigns random ip_id values to outgoing IPv4 packets. The default behavior is to assign a random initial value for each proxy instance, and increment for each outgoing packet.

Property	Supported proxy types	Accepted values	Default value	Supported engine types	Description
net.inet.ip.ttl	HTTP SSH TCP UDP	Numerical values in the number of hops	64	Firewall	The maximum time to live (TTL) in hops for IPv4 packets that are sent.
net.inet.tcp.always_keepalive	HTTP SSH TCP	0 or 1	1	Firewall	If 1, enables use of TCP keepalive probes on all connections.
net.inet.tcp.drop_synfin	HTTP SSH TCP	0 or 1	1	Firewall	If 1, drops TCP packets that have SYN+FIN set.
net.inet.tcp.keepidle	HTTP SSH TCP	Numerical values in milliseconds	7200000 (2 hours)	Firewall	Time, in milliseconds, that the connection must be idle before keepalive probes are sent.
net.inet.tcp.keepinit	HTTP SSH TCP	Numerical values in milliseconds	75000 (75 seconds)	Firewall	Time allowed to establish connection.
net.inet.tcp.keepintvl	HTTP SSH TCP	Numerical values in milliseconds	75000 (75 seconds)	Firewall	Time between keepalive probes.
net.inet.tcp.msl	HTTP SSH TCP	Numerical values in milliseconds	15000 (15 seconds, TCP TIME_WAIT time 30 seconds)	Firewall	Maximum segment lifetime. The default TCP TIME_WAIT time is double this value.
net.inet.tcp.recvbuf_auto	HTTP SSH TCP	0 or 1	1	Firewall	If 1, enables automatic receive buffer sizing.
net.inet.tcp.recvbuf_inc	HTTP SSH TCP	Numerical values in bytes	16K	Firewall	Incrementor step size of automatic receive buffer. Use the following suffixes to specify larger values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• K — Kilobytes</li> <li>• M — Megabytes</li> <li>• G — Gigabytes</li> </ul>

Property	Supported proxy types	Accepted values	Default value	Supported engine types	Description
net.inet.tcp.recvbuf_max	HTTP SSH TCP	Numerical values in bytes	96K	Firewall	Maximum size of automatic receive buffer. Use the following suffixes to specify larger values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• K — Kilobytes</li> <li>• M — Megabytes</li> <li>• G — Gigabytes</li> </ul>
net.inet.tcp.recvspace	HTTP SSH TCP	Numerical values in bytes	64K	Firewall	Size of the initial TCP receive window. Use the following suffixes to specify larger values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• K — Kilobytes</li> <li>• M — Megabytes</li> <li>• G — Gigabytes</li> </ul>
net.inet.tcp.rfc1323	HTTP SSH TCP	0 or 1	1	Firewall	If 1, enables the TCP timestamp option and window scaling option specified in RFC 1323, which allows per-packet timestamps, protection against wrapped sequences, and windows larger than 65535 bytes.
net.inet.tcp.sendbuf_auto	HTTP SSH TCP	0 or 1	1	Firewall	If 1, enables automatic send buffer sizing.
net.inet.tcp.sendbuf_inc	HTTP SSH TCP	Numerical values in bytes	8K	Firewall	Incrementor step size of automatic send buffer. Use the following suffixes to specify larger values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• K — Kilobytes</li> <li>• M — Megabytes</li> <li>• G — Gigabytes</li> </ul>
net.inet.tcp.sendspace	HTTP SSH TCP	Numerical values in bytes	32K	Firewall	Size of the initial TCP send window. Use the following suffixes to specify larger values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• K — Kilobytes</li> <li>• M — Megabytes</li> <li>• G — Gigabytes</li> </ul>
net.inet.udp.checksum	UDP	0 or 1	1	Firewall	If 1, requires checksums on incoming UDP packets.
net.inet6.ip6.hlim	HTTP SSH TCP UDP	Numerical values	64	Firewall, Virtual Firewall	The hop limit for IPv6 packets that are sent.



Property	Supported proxy types	Accepted values	Default value	Supported engine types	Description
reserved_allowed	SSH	0 or 1	1	Firewall	If 1, allows messages in the reserved range.
send_debug_to_log	HTTP SSH TCP UDP	0 or 1	1	Firewall, Master NGFW Engine	<p>If 1, debugging messages are sent to the Log Server. If 0, messages are written to a file.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; background-color: #f9f9f9;"> <p> <b>Note:</b> Change this value only if instructed to do so by <a href="#">Forcepoint support</a>.</p> </div>
server_requests_allowed	SSH	0 or 1	1	Firewall	If 1, allows global requests from the server.
server_channels_allowed	SSH	0 or 1	1	Firewall	If 1, allows the server to open channels.
sftp_extensions_allowed	SSH	0 or 1	1	Firewall	If 1, allows local SFTP extension commands.
ssh_extensions_allowed	SSH	0 or 1	1	Firewall	If 1, allows local SSH extension messages.
undefined_allowed	SSH	0 or 1	1	Firewall	If 1, allows messages for which the proxy does not have a protocol handler.



# Setting up TLS inspection

## Contents

- [TLS inspection and how it works](#) on page 1035
- [Using TLS inspection](#) on page 1039
- [Configure TLS inspection for server protection](#) on page 1040
- [Configure TLS inspection for client protection](#) on page 1042
- [Define trusted certificate authorities for TLS inspection](#) on page 1046
- [Exclude traffic from decryption for TLS inspection](#) on page 1047
- [Activating TLS inspection](#) on page 1050
- [Examples of TLS inspection](#) on page 1054

The TLS inspection feature decrypts TLS connections so that they can be inspected for malicious traffic and then re-encrypts the traffic before sending it to its destination.

## TLS inspection and how it works

TLS Inspection allows you to decrypt TLS traffic so that it can be inspected.

The TLS protocol allows applications to communicate across a network in a way designed to ensure the confidentiality and integrity of the communications. HTTPS uses the TLS protocol to secure HTTP connections. When a browser connects to a server that uses HTTPS, the server sends a certificate to the browser. The certificate contains the server's public key and a digital signature from a certificate authority that verifies the server's identity. The browser and the server negotiate an encryption algorithm, which is used to create the encrypted connection.

The TLS Inspection feature consists of server protection and client protection. Server protection inspects incoming connections to servers in the protected network. Client protection inspects TLS outgoing connections initiated by clients in the protected network. TLS Inspection requires two separate secure connections: one from the client to the firewall and one from the firewall to the server. You can use client protection alone, server protection alone, or client and server protection together.

When a TLS server in the internal network is the destination of an incoming connection, the engine uses the server's credentials to decrypt and re-encrypt the traffic.

When a client in the internal network initiates a connection to an external TLS server, the firewall checks whether the server's certificate was signed by a certificate authority that is considered trusted. If the certificate was signed by a trusted certificate authority, the engine makes a new certificate that matches the server's certificate. From the point of view of a user in the internal network, the process is invisible: the connection is established in the same way as a connection made directly to a TLS server.

When a server's certificate is self-signed or has not been signed by a trusted certificate authority, the engine cannot trust the server certificate. In this case, the engine makes a new self-signed certificate. This certificate is presented to the user in the internal network. The user's browser shows the same warning that it would show if it received a self-signed certificate directly from a TLS server. In this case, the user must decide whether to accept the certificate.

In both cases, the engine adds a Netscape Certificate Comment to the Extensions in the certificate to indicate that the certificate is a dynamically created certificate for SSL/TLS deep inspection. Substituting the original server certificate allows the firewall to decrypt and re-encrypt the traffic.

After decrypting the traffic, normal HTTP inspection and optionally malware scanning (requires separate license) are applied. If the traffic is allowed to continue, it is re-encrypted before it is forwarded.

## Limitations

---

TLS inspection has the following limitations:

- TLS inspection for client protection cannot be done for traffic picked up through Capture interfaces on Forcepoint NGFW in the IPS and Layer 2 Firewall roles.
- TLS inspection for server protection can be done for traffic picked up through both Capture interfaces and Inline interfaces on Forcepoint NGFW in the IPS and Layer 2 Firewall roles.



**Note:** Due to security features of the TLS protocol, TLS decryption for traffic picked up through Capture interfaces can only be done when RSA key exchange negotiation is used between the client and the server.

- TLS inspection is not supported on Single IPS engines or on Single Layer 2 Firewalls if the engines are deployed alongside a Firewall Cluster that uses dispatch clustering.
- TLS inspection and CIS redirection cannot be done for the same traffic.
- Default Trusted Certificate Authority elements are automatically added to the SMC from dynamic update packages and cannot be edited or deleted.
- TLS inspection is not supported on Master NGFW Engines.

## What do I need to know before I begin?

---

Consider these things before configuring TLS inspection:

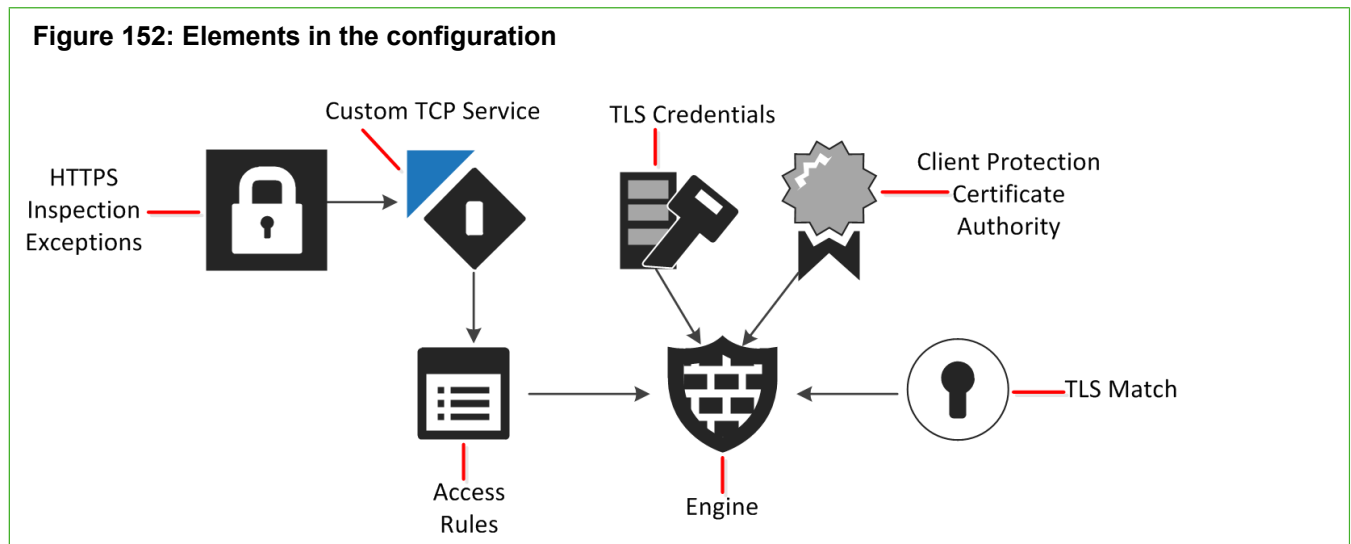
- Traffic that uses TLS might be protected by laws related to the privacy of communications. Decrypting and inspecting this traffic might be illegal in some jurisdictions.
- The TLS communications mediated by the engine are decrypted for inspection, and the private keys of the servers are stored unencrypted in the TLS Credentials elements on the Management Server and on the engine. For these reasons, you must carefully consider security precautions when using TLS inspection. The following recommendations are general guidelines for ensuring the security of the engine and the SMC:
  - Run the Management Server on a hardened operating system.
  - Disable SSH access to the engine's command line.
  - Make sure that the engine's Control IP address is in a protected network.
  - Save Management Server backups as encrypted files.
- When a certificate for client or server protection has been uploaded to the engine, it is possible to unintentionally enable TLS decryption for all traffic in one of the following ways:
  - Adding a Network Application that allows or requires the use of TLS to an Access rule
  - Enabling the logging of Application information in the Access rules
  - Enabling Deep Inspection in an Access rule with the Service cell of the rule set to ANY
- Strict TCP inspection mode is automatically applied to TCP connections when TLS Inspection is used.

**Related concepts**

[External content inspection and how it works](#) on page 1057

## TLS inspection configuration overview

To use TLS inspection, you must configure TLS Credentials elements and Client Protection Certificate Authority elements. You must also activate client protection or server protection in the engine properties and enable TLS inspection in the Access rules.



The TLS Credentials and the Client Protection Certificate Authority are specified in the properties of the engine that provides TLS Inspection. The engine uses the private key and certificate stored in the TLS Credentials to decrypt traffic to and from TLS servers in the protected network for inspection.

The Client Protection Certificate Authority contains a private key and a certificate. The engine uses the private key stored in the Client Protection Certificate Authority to sign the certificates presented to the end user, and the certificate to negotiate encrypted connections with TLS servers.

TLS Match elements define matching criteria for the use of the TLS protocol in traffic, and allow you to prevent specified traffic from being decrypted. TLS Matches that deny decrypting are applied globally, even if the TLS Match elements are not used in the policy.

The HTTPS Inspection Exceptions element is a list of domains that are excluded from decryption and inspection. The HTTPS Inspection Exceptions can be specified in the Protocol Parameters of a custom HTTPS Service, which is used in the Access rules to select HTTPS traffic for inspection.

The Access rules define which traffic is decrypted and inspected. You can select specific traffic for decryption and inspection, or you can enable the decryption and inspection of all TLS traffic.

When a certificate for client or server protection has been uploaded to the engine, it is possible to unintentionally enable TLS decryption for all traffic in one of the following ways:

- Adding a Network Application that allows or requires the use of TLS to an Access rule
- Enabling the logging of Application information in the Access rules
- Enabling Deep Inspection in an Access rule with the Service cell of the rule set to ANY

TLS inspection configuration overview:

- 1) To configure server protection, create TLS Credentials elements.

- 2) To configure client protection, create Client Protection Certificate Authority elements.
- 3) (Optional) Define custom Trusted Certificate Authority elements in addition to the default system elements.
- 4) (Optional) To exclude certain domains from decryption and inspection, define a TLS Match element or an HTTPS Inspection Exceptions element.
- 5) Activate client protection or server protection in the properties of the engine and enable TLS inspection in the Access rules.

#### Related concepts

[Exclude traffic from decryption for TLS inspection on page 1047](#)

[Activating TLS inspection on page 1050](#)

#### Related tasks

[Configure TLS inspection for server protection on page 1040](#)

[Configure TLS inspection for client protection on page 1042](#)

[Define trusted certificate authorities for TLS inspection on page 1046](#)

## Default TLS inspection elements

The SMC has default elements that can be used for TLS inspection. The default elements cannot be edited, but can be duplicated and then edited.

- The Default HTTPS Inspection Exceptions element is an HTTPS Inspection Exceptions element that excludes domains used by the SMC and the engines from decryption and inspection. You cannot edit the Default HTTPS Inspection Exceptions element. If you have to make changes, you can duplicate the Default HTTPS Inspection Exceptions element and edit the copy.
- The default HTTPS (with decryption) Service element enables the decryption of HTTPS traffic that uses the default port 443, excluding the domains that are specified in the Default HTTPS Inspection Exceptions. You cannot edit the default HTTPS (with decryption) Service element. If you have to make changes, you can duplicate the HTTPS (with decryption) Service element and edit the copy.
- There are predefined Trusted Certificate Authority elements that represent the signing certificates of major certificate authorities. Default Trusted Certificate Authority elements are automatically added from dynamic update packages and cannot be edited or deleted. When client protection is used, the engine checks whether the certificate of an external server was signed by one of the Trusted Certificate Authorities. You can also create your own Trusted Certificate Authority elements to represent other certificate authorities that the engine should consider trusted.

# Using TLS inspection

Certain safety precautions must be considered before using TLS inspection. It is possible to apply malware scanning and URL filtering to TLS inspected traffic.

## Security considerations in TLS inspection

You must carefully consider security precautions when using TLS Inspection.

The TLS communications mediated by the engine are decrypted for inspection, and the private keys of the servers are stored in the TLS Credentials elements on the Management Server. For this reason, the following recommendations are general guidelines for ensuring the security of the engine and the SMC:

- Run the Management Server on a hardened operating system.
- Disable SSH access to the engine's command line if it is not needed regularly.
- Make sure that the engine's Control IP address is in a protected network.
- Save Management Server backups as encrypted files.

## Deploying engines in TLS inspection

TLS Inspection requires two separate secure connections: one from the client to the engine and one from the engine to the server. For this reason, engines must be deployed in inline mode to use TLS Inspection.

TLS Inspection cannot be done for traffic picked up through Capture interfaces.

TLS inspection cannot be used on redundant single inline engines deployed alongside a Firewall cluster using dispatch clustering. In dispatch clustering, traffic is received by one node in the Firewall cluster. The node forwards the traffic to the other Firewall nodes. This can result in a situation where one of the single inline engines only receives one direction of the traffic, and the other single inline engine receives both directions of the traffic. If one engine has created substitute certificates, and traffic is dispatched through a different engine without passing through the engine that created the substitute certificates, the connection fails.

### Related concepts

[Guidelines for deploying IPS engines and Layer 2 Firewalls](#) on page 73

## Malware scanning of decrypted TLS traffic

Once TLS traffic has been decrypted, malware scanning (separately licensed feature) can be done in the same way as for regular traffic.

Any traffic that is allowed to continue after malware scanning is re-encrypted and sent to its destination.

### Related concepts

[Anti-malware scanning overview](#) on page 1001

# Configure TLS inspection for server protection

If you want to inspect TLS traffic for which an internal server is the destination, you must create a TLS Credentials element to store the private key and certificate of the server.

The private key and certificate allow the firewall to decrypt TLS traffic for which the internal server is the destination so that it can be inspected. The TLS Credentials element stores the private key and certificate of an internal server. The certificate and the associated private key must be compatible with OpenSSL and be in PEM format. Make sure that the server's private key and certificate are accessible from the computer where you use the Management Client.

When a TLS Credentials element is used in TLS inspection, the private key and certificate allow the Firewall, IPS engine, Layer 2 Firewall, or Virtual Firewall to decrypt TLS traffic for which the internal server is the destination so that it can be inspected.

TLS Credentials elements can also be used in the properties of other elements to secure connections involving those elements.

**Table 122: Other elements where TLS Credentials elements can be used**

Element	Purpose
Web Portal Server	The certificate is used to secure the server's connections using HTTPS.
Management Server	When a TLS Credentials element is used on the <b>SMC API</b> tab of the <b>Management Server Properties</b> dialog box, the certificate is used to secure communications between the SMC API client and the Management Server.
SSL VPN Portal	The private key and certificate are used to establish SSL connections to the SSL VPN Portal.
SSL VPN Portal Service	The private key and the certificate are used in DNS Mapping to establish SSL connections to the service.

## Related tasks

[Activate HTTPS on the Web Portal Server](#) on page 403



# Create TLS credentials using an existing certificate

If you have an existing private key and certificate, create a TLS Credentials element and import the private key and certificate.

## Before you begin

The private key and certificate must be saved in a location that you can access from the computer where you run the Management Client.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Select **Other Elements > Engine Properties > Certificates**.
- 3) Right-click **TLS Credentials**, then select **New TLS Credentials**.
- 4) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.
- 5) Next to the **Private Key** field, click **Import**, then browse to the private key.  
If the private key is encrypted, you are prompted to enter the password.
- 6) Next to the **Certificate** field, click **Import**, then browse to the certificate.
- 7) (TLS Credentials for Web Portal Server only) Next to the **Intermediate Certificate** field, click **Import**, then browse to the certificate from an intermediate CA that was used to sign the server certificate.
- 8) Click **OK**.

# Create TLS credentials from a certificate request

If you do not have an existing private key and certificate, create a certificate request and self-sign it to create a TLS Credentials element.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Select **Other Elements > Engine Properties > Certificates > Pending Certificate Requests**.

- 3) Right-click **Pending Certificate Requests** and select **New Pending Certificate Request**.
- 4) Complete the certificate request details.
  - a) Enter a name and add "REQ" or "request" at the end.
  - b) In the **Common Name** field, enter the IP address or domain name of the server.
  - c) Complete the remaining fields as needed.
  - d) Click **OK**.
- 5) Right-click the completed request and select **Self Sign**.
- 6) Enter the name from the previous step, removing "REQ" or "request" from the end.
- 7) Click **OK**.
- 8) When prompted, remove the pending Certificate Request.

## Result

The TLS Credentials element is added to **Other Elements > Engine Properties > Certificates > TLS Credentials**.

# Configure TLS inspection for client protection

---

Client Protection Certificate Authority elements are used to inspect TLS traffic between an internal client and an external server.

When an internal client makes a connection to an external server that uses TLS, the engine generates a substitute certificate that allows it to establish a secure connection with the internal client. The Client Protection Certificate Authority element contains the credentials the engine uses to sign the substitute certificate it generates. If the engine does not use a signing certificate that is already trusted by users' web browsers when it signs the substitute certificates it generates, users receive warnings about invalid certificates. To avoid these warnings, you must either import a signing certificate that is already trusted, or configure users' web browsers to trust the engine's signing certificate.



**Note:** Traffic that uses TLS might be protected by laws related to the privacy of communications. Decrypting and inspecting this traffic might be illegal in some jurisdictions.


# Create Client Protection Certificate Authority elements


If you want to inspect TLS traffic between a client in the internal network and an external server, you must create a Client Protection Certificate Authority element. It contains the credentials the engine uses to sign the certificate it generates.

You can import an existing private key and certificate or generate a new private key and certificate.

You must configure users' browsers to trust certificates signed using the credentials in the Client Protection Certificate Authority element to avoid excessive warnings or error messages about invalid certificates.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Select **Other Elements > Engine Properties > Certificates**.
- 3) Right-click **Client Protection Certificate Authorities**, then select **New Client Protection Certificate Authority**.
- 4) Enter a unique **Name**.
- 5) (Optional) Enter the **Validity time** (in minutes) for the substitute certificates the engine creates. Each substitute certificate expires at the end of the validity time, and the engine automatically generates a new certificate. This process might produce warnings or error messages in the users' web browsers. To avoid excessive warnings, define a sufficiently long validity time, for example, several hours.



**Note:** All fields except the **Name** and **Validity time** on the **General** tab are grayed out. The grayed out fields are always filled in automatically based on information contained in the certificate you generate or import, and you cannot change them.
- 6) On the **Certificate** tab, import or generate a private key and signing certificate.
- 7) Click **OK**.

## Import private keys and signing certificates for client protection

If you already have a certificate authority that is trusted by users' web browsers, you can import its private key and signing certificate. The engine uses them when it signs the substitute certificates it creates.

Importing a private key and certificate removes the need to separately configure users' web browsers to trust the engine's signing certificate. You can also import a private key and signing certificate that you generated outside of the SMC even if you do not already have a certificate authority that is trusted by users' web browsers. The certificate and the associated private key must be compatible with OpenSSL and be in PEM format. Make sure that the private key and certificate are accessible from the computer where you use the Management Client.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Select **Other Elements > Engine Properties > Certificates**.
- 3) Right-click **Client Protection Certificate Authorities**, then select **New Client Protection Certificate Authority**.
- 4) Click the **Certificate** tab.
- 5) Next to the **Private Key** field, click **Import**, then browse to the private key.
- 6) Next to the **Certificate** field, click **Import**, then browse to the certificate.  
If users' web browsers are not already configured to trust the certificate authority whose signing certificate you imported here, add it to the list of certificate authorities that are trusted by users' web browsers when you are finished configuring TLS inspection in the SMC.

## Generate private keys and signing certificates for client protection

---

If you do not already have a private key and signing certificate for the engine, you can generate a private key and signing certificate.

When you generate a private key and signing certificate in the SMC, you must export the certificate. You must also add it to the list of certificate authorities that are trusted by users' web browsers.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Select **Other Elements > Engine Properties > Certificates > Client Protection Certificate Authorities**.
- 3) Open the **Client Protection Certificate Authority Properties** dialog box in one of the following ways:
  - Right-click **Client Protection Certificate Authorities**, then select **New Client Protection Certificate Authority**.
  - Right-click a Client Protection Certificate Authority element, then select **Properties**.
- 4) Click the **Certificate** tab.
- 5) Click **Generate**.
- 6) In the **Common Name** field, enter the certificate authority's common name.
- 7) From the **Public Key Length** drop-down list, select the length of the public key to be generated.

- 8) In the **Valid Until** field, enter the date and time until which the signing certificate is valid.



**Tip:** You can also select the date by clicking  **Open Calendar**.

By default, the signing certificate is valid for one year after the creation date and time.

- 9) Click **OK**.  
A private key and signing certificate are generated.


## Export Client Protection CA certificates


To make the users' web browsers trust the engine's signing certificate, you must add the Client Protection CA certificate to trusted certificates.

If the users' web browsers are not configured to trust the engine's signing certificate, users receive warnings about invalid certificates. If you generated the signing certificate for client protection in the SMC, you must export the certificate. You must also add it to the list of certificate authorities that are trusted by the users' web browsers.

If you have integrated the SMC with McAfee ePO, you can also export a Client Protection CA certificate to the McAfee ePO server. The McAfee ePO server can then deploy the certificate on the Windows-based endpoints that it manages. For more information about the necessary configuration steps in the McAfee ePO user interface, see McAfee ePO product documentation.

These instructions assume that you already have the **Client Protection Certificate Authority Properties** dialog box open.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Select **Other Elements > Engine Properties > Certificates**.
- 3) Open the **Client Protection Certificate Authority Properties** dialog box in one of the following ways:
  - Right-click **Client Protection Certificate Authorities**, then select **New Client Protection Certificate Authority**.
  - Right-click a Client Protection Certificate Authority element and select **Properties**.
- 4) Click the **Certificate** tab.
- 5) Click the **Export** option for the **Certificate** field, then browse to the location where you want to save the file. When you are finished configuring TLS inspection in the SMC, add the exported certificate to the list of certificate authorities that are trusted by users' web browsers.

### Related tasks

[Integrate McAfee ePO with Forcepoint NGFW](#) on page 979

# Define trusted certificate authorities for TLS inspection


If you are using client protection and users must connect to domains whose certificates are not signed by one of the default Trusted Certificate Authorities, define your own Trusted Certificate Authority element to represent it.


Trusted Certificate Authority elements represent the certificates that identify certificate authorities. When a client in the protected network connects to an HTTPS server, the engine checks whether the certificate authority that signed the server's certificate is one of the Trusted Certificate Authorities. If the certificate was signed by one of the Trusted Certificate Authorities, the engine makes a substitute certificate that matches the server's certificate. The engine then signs the substitute certificate with the Client Protection Certificate Authority signing certificate. If the server's certificate is not signed by a Trusted Certificate Authority, the engine makes a new self-signed certificate. In this case, users receive a warning that the issuer of the certificate is not trusted. In both cases, client protection continues to function normally.

When you define a CA as trusted, all certificates signed by that CA are considered valid until their expiration date.

## Create Trusted Certificate Authority elements

Define your own Trusted Certificate Authority element to represent domains that are not covered by the default Trusted Certificate Authority elements.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Select **Other Elements > Engine Properties > Certificates**.
- 3) Right-click **Trusted Certificate Authorities**, then select **New Trusted Certificate Authority**.
- 4) Enter a unique **Name**.



**Note:** All fields except the **Name** on the **General** tab are grayed out. The grayed out fields are always filled in automatically based on information contained in the certificate you import and you cannot change them.


- 5) On the **Certificate** tab, import a certificate.
- 6) Click **OK**.


# Import trusted certificate authority certificates for TLS inspection

---

Import a certificate authority for the Trusted Certificate Authority element.

Make sure that the certificate authority's certificate is accessible from the computer where you use the Management Client.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Select **Other Elements > Engine Properties > Certificates**.
- 3) Browse to **Trusted Certificate Authorities**, then right-click a Trusted Certificate element and select **Edit**.
- 4) Click the **Certificate** tab.
- 5) Click **Import**.
- 6) Browse to the certificate, then click **Open**.
- 7) Click **OK**.

# Exclude traffic from decryption for TLS inspection

---

Some traffic is automatically excluded from decryption. You can also exclude traffic from decryption globally, or create specific lists of domains to exclude from decryption.

Traffic to and from some servers that use TLS can contain users' personal information that is protected by laws related to the privacy of communications. Decrypting and inspecting this traffic might be illegal in some jurisdictions.

You can exclude traffic from decryption and inspection in two ways: globally with a TLS Match element, or for specific matching traffic with an HTTPS Inspection Exception element. In both cases, traffic to the specified domains is allowed to pass through the engine without being decrypted.

The NGFW Engine mainly matches the specified domains based on the server name information (SNI) in the TLS Client Hello packet before the server certificate is sent. You can also use category-based URL filtering to exclude all traffic in the selected URL Categories from decryption based on the SNI in the traffic.



**Note:** If the end user's browser does not use SNI, the traffic might be decrypted.

TLS Matches define matching criteria for the use of the TLS protocol in traffic, and allow you to prevent specified traffic from being decrypted. TLS Matches that deny decrypting are applied globally, even if the TLS Match elements are not used in the policy. However, TLS Match elements that are used in specific Access rules can override globally applied TLS matches.

In most cases, TLS Matches are the recommended way to prevent traffic from being decrypted and inspected. Globally excluding domains from decryption might also prevent some Network Applications from being detected in encrypted connections. In this case, you can use HTTP Inspection Exceptions to exclude the domain from TLS inspection.


HTTPS Inspection Exceptions are used in a custom HTTPS service to define a list of domains for which HTTPS traffic is not decrypted. The custom HTTPS service must be used in a rule, and only traffic that matches the rule is excluded from decryption and inspection. HTTPS Inspection Exceptions are primarily intended for backwards compatibility.


## Globally exclude domains from decryption

TLS Match elements define matching criteria for the use of the TLS protocol in traffic, and allow you to prevent the specified traffic from being decrypted.

TLS Matches that deny decrypting are applied globally, even if the TLS Match elements are not used in the policy. However, TLS Match elements that are used in specific Access rules can override globally applied TLS matches.

In most cases, TLS Matches are the recommended way to prevent traffic from being decrypted and inspected. Globally excluding domains from decryption can also prevent some Network Applications from being detected in encrypted connections. In this case, you can exclude the domain from TLS inspection.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > TLS Matches**.
- 3) Right-click **TLS Matches**, then select **New TLS Match**.
- 4) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.
- 5) Select **Deny Decrypting**.
- 6) From the **Match Certificate Validation** drop-down list, select **Validation succeeded**.
- 7) Click **Add**, then specify the **Matching Domains** to exclude from decryption.  
We recommend adding the domain names that users access to guarantee that traffic is not decrypted. If no domains are specified, any connection for which validation succeeded is excluded from decryption.
- 8) Click **OK**.  
Connections are excluded from decryption as specified in the TLS Matches.

### Related concepts


[Getting started with Network Application elements](#) on page 935




**Related tasks**[Exclude domains from inspection of HTTPS traffic](#) on page 1049[Define Source, Destination, and Service criteria in rules](#) on page 857

# Exclude domains from inspection of HTTPS traffic

The HTTPS Inspection Exceptions element is a list of domains that are excluded from decryption and inspection. HTTPS Inspection Exceptions are used in a custom HTTPS service to define a list of domains for which HTTPS traffic is not decrypted. The custom HTTPS service must be used in a rule, and only traffic that matches the rule is excluded from decryption and inspection. HTTPS Inspection Exceptions are primarily intended for backwards compatibility.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements** branch.
- 3) Right-click **HTTPS Inspection Exceptions**, then select **New HTTPS Inspection Exceptions**.
- 4) Enter a unique **Name**.
- 5) Click **Add**.
- 6) Enter the domain name or NetBIOS name, then click **OK**.  
The domain name or NetBIOS name must exactly match the domain names that users access. Otherwise, the domain is not excluded from decryption and inspection.



**Note:** Wildcard characters in exceptions are interpreted literally. For example, \*.example.com matches the domain "\*.example.com" rather than all subdomains of example.com.

**Related concepts**[URL filtering and how it works](#) on page 985[Example: Preventing decryption of private connections](#) on page 996

# Activating TLS inspection

To activate TLS inspection, you must configure client or server protection on the engine and define the inspected traffic in Access rules. You might also need to create a custom HTTPS Service element.

In the Engine Editor, you specify the Client Protection Certificate Authority (for client protection), or the TLS Credentials (for server protection). Depending on the options you specify, you can configure only client protection, only server protection, or both client and server protection.



**CAUTION:** Uploading TLS Credentials or a Client Protection Certificate Authority to the engine might enable decryption of TLS traffic that is not excluded from TLS inspection. The following configurations might enable decryption of TLS traffic:

- Adding a Network Application that allows or requires the use of TLS to an Access rule
- Selecting the **Enforced** option for **Log Application Information** in the Access rules
- Enabling Deep Inspection in an Access rule if the **Service** cell contains a Network Application or a Service that does not include a Protocol Agent

If the default HTTPS (with decryption) Service element meets your needs, you can use the default HTTPS (with decryption) Service element in the Access rules without modification. You must create a custom HTTPS Service in the following cases:

- To enable decryption for HTTPS traffic that uses a different port
- To select a different HTTPS Inspection Exceptions element
- To log the URLs in matching traffic
- To change any of the other settings in the Service Properties

The Access rules define which traffic is decrypted and inspected. Access rules that enable Deep Inspection and use a custom HTTPS Service or the default HTTPS (with decryption) Service element select specific traffic for decryption and inspection. To enable the decryption and inspection of all TLS traffic, you enable Deep Inspection in an Access rule with the Service cell of the rule set to ANY. Traffic that matches the Access rule is decrypted and inspected in the same way as unencrypted HTTP traffic according to the Inspection rules.

Activating TLS inspection consists of the following steps:

- 1) Activate client protection or server protection and upload certificates to the engine.
- 2) (Optional) Define a custom HTTPS Service element and enable TLS Inspection in the Protocol Parameters.
- 3) Create Access rules to select specific traffic for decryption and inspection or enable decryption and inspection of all TLS traffic.

## Related concepts

[Overview of Access rules](#) on page 811

## Related tasks

[Activate TLS inspection on engines](#) on page 1051

[Enable TLS inspection in a custom HTTPS Service](#) on page 1051

[Apply TLS inspection to traffic](#) on page 1052


# Activate TLS inspection on engines



Depending on the elements you select in the engine properties, you can activate client protection alone, server protection alone, or client and server protection together.

**CAUTION:**

Uploading TLS Credentials or a Client Protection Certificate Authority to the engine might enable decryption of TLS traffic that is not excluded from TLS inspection. The following configurations might enable decryption of TLS traffic:

- Adding a Network Application that allows or requires the use of TLS to an Access rule
- Selecting the **Enforced** option for **Log Application Information** in the Access rules
- Enabling Deep Inspection in an Access rule if the **Service** cell contains a Network Application or a Service that does not include a Protocol Agent

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Click **NGFW Engines**.
- 3) Right-click an engine element and select **Edit <element type>**.
- 4) From the navigation pane on the left, select **Add-Ons > TLS Inspection**.
- 5) (For client protection) From the **Client Protection Certificate Authority** drop-down list, select a Client Protection Certificate Authority element.
  - To select an existing element, click **Select** and select the element.
  - To create an element, click **New**.
- 6) (For server protection) Click **Add**, then select one or more TLS Credentials elements and click **Select**.
- 7) Click  **Save and Refresh** to transfer the configuration changes and upload the certificates.

**Related tasks**

[Configure TLS inspection for client protection](#) on page 1042


## Enable TLS inspection in a custom HTTPS Service


Create a custom HTTPS Service element and use it for TLS inspection.

The default HTTPS (with decryption) Service element enables the decryption of HTTPS traffic that uses the default port 443, excluding the domains that are specified in the Default HTTPS Inspection Exceptions. If the default HTTPS (with decryption) Service element meets your needs, you can use the default HTTPS (with decryption) Service element in the Access rules without modification.

You must create a custom HTTPS Service in the following cases:

- To enable decryption for HTTPS traffic that uses a different port
- To select a different HTTPS Inspection Exceptions element
- To log the URLs in matching traffic
- To change any of the other settings in the Service Properties

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Select **Other Elements > Services > TCP**.  
A list of TCP Services opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click the default **HTTPS (with decryption)** Service, then select **New > Duplicate**.  
The **TCP Service Properties** dialog box opens with the properties of the HTTPS Service.
- 4) Enter a unique **Name** for the custom Service.
- 5) (Optional) If traffic uses a different port than the default port 443, enter the port number in the first **Dst. Ports** field.
- 6) Click the **Protocol Parameters** tab.
- 7) (Optional) Click **Select** next to the **HTTPS Inspection Exceptions** field, then select an HTTPS Inspection Exceptions element.
- 8) (Optional) To log the URLs in matching traffic, select **Yes for Logging of Accessed URLs**.
- 9) Click **OK**.

#### Related tasks

[Apply TLS inspection to traffic](#) on page 1052

## Apply TLS inspection to traffic

Use the default or custom HTTPS Service element in Access rules to define which traffic is decrypted and inspected.



#### CAUTION:

Uploading TLS Credentials or a Client Protection Certificate Authority to the engine might enable decryption of TLS traffic that is not excluded from TLS inspection. The following configurations might enable decryption of TLS traffic:

- Adding a Network Application that allows or requires the use of TLS to an Access rule
- Selecting the **Enforced** option for **Log Application Information** in the Access rules

- Enabling Deep Inspection in an Access rule if the **Service** cell contains a Network Application or a Service that does not include a Protocol Agent

To select specific traffic for decryption and inspection, you create Access rules that use a custom HTTPS Service or the default HTTPS (with decryption) Service element. To enable the decryption and inspection of all TLS traffic, you enable Deep Inspection in an Access rule with the **Service** cell of the rule set to **ANY**.

You must enable Deep Inspection in the Action options of the Firewall Access rules to enable TLS inspection. Deep Inspection is enabled by default in the IPS and Layer 2 Firewall Access rules. Traffic that matches the Access rules for TLS inspection is decrypted and matched against HTTP Situations in the Inspection rules in the same way as unencrypted HTTP traffic. Any traffic that is allowed to continue by the Inspection Policy is re-encrypted and sent to its destination.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) (Client Protection) Add a rule with the following properties to select traffic from clients in the internal network for inspection.

**Table 123: Access rules for client protection**

Source	Destination	Service	Action
The elements that represent clients in your internal network or <b>ANY</b> .	The elements that represent the HTTPS servers to which internal clients connect, or <b>ANY</b> .	Your custom HTTPS Service, the default <b>HTTPS (with decryption)</b> Service, or set to <b>ANY</b> .	Allow <b>Deep Inspection</b> selected in the Action options.

- 2) (Server Protection) Add a rule with the following properties to select traffic to internal servers for inspection.

**Table 124: Access rules for server protection**

Source	Destination	Service	Action
The elements that represent the clients that connect to your HTTPS server, or <b>ANY</b> .	The elements that represent your internal HTTPS servers.	Your custom HTTPS Service, the default <b>HTTPS (with decryption)</b> Service, or set to <b>ANY</b> .	Allow <b>Deep Inspection</b> selected in the Action options.

- 3) Save and install the policy to start using the new configuration.

#### Related concepts

[Getting started with Access rules](#) on page 811

[URL filtering and how it works](#) on page 985

# Examples of TLS inspection

---

These examples illustrate some common uses for TLS Inspection and general steps on how each scenario is configured.

## Example: server protection in TLS inspection

---

Company A's server offers HTTPS services to their customers. The administrators want to be able to detect and block attacks targeting the HTTPS server, even if the attacks are encrypted inside an SSL tunnel.

They decide to configure TLS Inspection to decrypt and inspect traffic to and from the HTTPS server.

The administrators do the following:

- 1) Create a TLS Credentials element and import the private key and certificate of the HTTPS server.
- 2) Select the TLS Credentials in the Engine Editor.
- 3) Create Access rules with the default HTTPS (with decryption) Service as the Service.
- 4) On Firewalls, use the Medium-Security Inspection Policy to look for attacks in HTTP traffic and check the HTTP traffic against the anti-malware signatures. On IPS engines, use the Inspection rules from the IPS Template to look for attacks in HTTP traffic.
- 5) Save and install the policy.

## Example: client protection in TLS inspection

---

The administrators also want to detect and block -based attacks targeting the browsers of users in Company A's network to protect the workstations and internal networks.

In addition to searching for attacks, the administrators also want to enable malware scanning. However, the employees at Company A often use online banking services that are secured with HTTPS, and these connections should not be inspected. The administrators decide to configure TLS Inspection to detect and block -based attacks that are encrypted inside an SSL tunnel and use a TLS Match element to globally exclude the online banking domains from decryption and inspection.

The administrators do the following:

- 1) Create a Client Protection Certificate Authority element and generate a new certificate and private key. In their network environment, the administrators add the Client Protection Certificate Authority they created to the list of trusted certificate authorities in the users' browsers.
- 2) Select the Client Protection Certificate Authority in the Engine Editor.
- 3) Create a TLS Match element that prevents decryption when certificate validation succeeds for the domain names for the online banking sites that are excluded from decryption. Because the TLS Match is applied globally, the administrators do not have to use it in any specific rules.
- 4) Create Access rules with the default HTTPS (with decryption) Service as the Service.

- 5) On Firewalls, use the Inspection rules from the Medium-Security Inspection Policy to look for attacks in HTTP traffic and check the HTTP traffic against the anti-malware signatures. On IPS engines, use the Inspection rules from the IPS Template to look for attacks in HTTP traffic.
- 6) Save and install the policy.





# Using external content inspection servers

## Contents

- [External content inspection and how it works](#) on page 1057
- [Create a Content Inspection Server element](#) on page 1061
- [Define a Service element for CIS redirection](#) on page 1062
- [Redirect traffic to a CIS server](#) on page 1063
- [Define NAT for CIS redirection](#) on page 1064
- [Example: screening traffic to the Internet with an external content inspection server](#) on page 1065

Content inspection means analyzing traffic for malicious content. You can integrate an external content inspection server (CIS) with Forcepoint NGFW.

## External content inspection and how it works

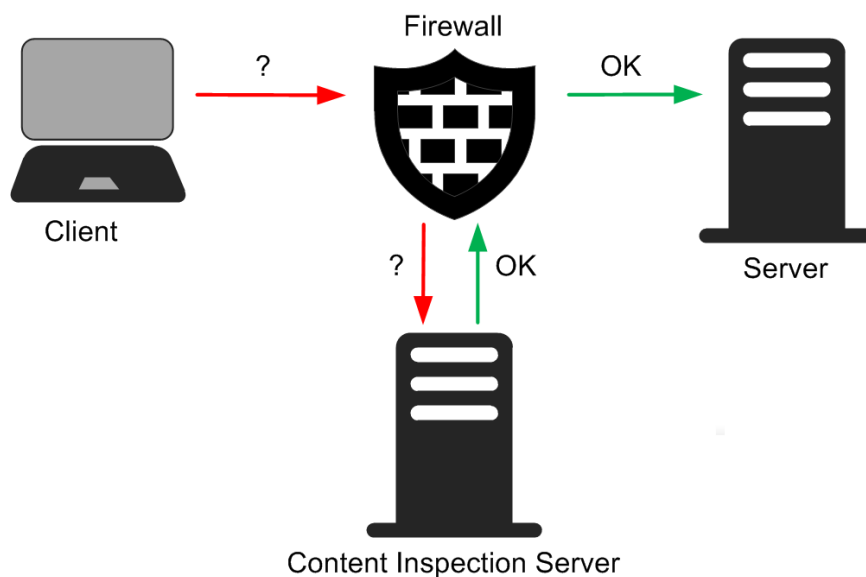
You can redirect traffic to an external content inspection server, such as a malware scanning server, for content screening before the traffic continues to its final destination.

Content inspection, such as malware scanning or URL filtering, can be done by integrating an external CIS in the traffic inspection process. Any Single Firewall or Firewall Cluster can be configured to forward traffic to an external CIS.

Content inspection allows you to inspect the FTP, SMTP, and HTTP protocols in IPv4 traffic for malicious content. Content inspection includes a wide range of ways to check traffic. Many of the methods you can use in a simpler way by integrating an external CIS with your firewall. The integration involves setting up your firewall to redirect traffic to an external CIS. The main benefit in using the firewall to redirect traffic to a separate CIS is that the redirection works transparently: the communicating hosts need no additional proxy configuration when the redirection is done for them at the firewall.

Content inspection servers are most typically used for malware scanning and content filtering, but there are more applications. Using an external CIS allows you to expand the capabilities of the firewall with virtually any type of content screening to perform tasks. For example, the firewall can strip certain types of attachments out of emails without blocking the message itself. This type of anti-malware checking is available directly on the Firewall as well, but an external CIS is a better option in medium to high throughput environments.

Connections arriving at the Firewall can be redirected (using NAT) to a CIS that works as a proxy. The CIS filters out unwanted traffic before inspected traffic is forwarded through the Firewall toward its original destination (possibly with a second NAT operation).

**Figure 153: Content inspection server redirection**

The preceding illustration shows how a client's connection to a server is redirected from the firewall to the CIS. Connections arriving at the firewall are checked against the firewall's policy. Access rules determine which connections are redirected to the defined CIS for inspection. The CIS then handles the traffic according to its policies. Finally, the CIS opens a connection through the firewall and onwards to the original destination. Replies are received with the IP address of the CIS, so they are also redirected to the CIS for screening.

The CIS is used as a transparent proxy, so the client and server are not aware of the redirection and they require no additional configuration. The firewall uses NAT (network address translation) to forward the connections to the external CIS.

Keep the following limitations in mind:

- CIS redirection is only supported on Single Firewalls and Firewall Clusters.
- Only the FTP, HTTP, and SMTP Protocol Agents can be used for redirecting traffic to a CIS.
- You can apply either external content inspection (CIS redirection) or internal content inspection (TLS Inspection, URL filtering, internal malware scanning, deep inspection) on traffic. It is not possible to use both forms of content inspection simultaneously on the same connection.
- Only IPv4 addresses are supported in CIS redirection.

#### Related concepts

[Integrated scanning vs. content inspection server in anti-malware scanning](#) on page 1002

## Benefits of inspecting content on external servers

The main benefit in redirecting traffic to a separate content inspection server is that it works transparently: the communicating hosts need no additional proxy configuration when CIS redirection is used.

However, the redirection uses NAT, which can sometimes cause problems if you want the CIS to treat traffic differently based on IP address. In such cases, it might be necessary to configure the CIS traditionally on the clients instead of using the Firewall's redirection feature.

To illustrate how connections are handled, the following table shows an example of the source and destination IP addresses that are used in redirected connections at different stages. This example can be useful when planning the Access rules. The client's translated IP address in the redirection must be different from the public translated IP address normally used for the client's Internet connections. There are two different connections: one connection between the client and the CIS, and a second connection between the CIS and the server that is the target of the client's connection.

**Table 125: Addresses used in content inspection server redirection**

Communication	Source IP address	Destination IP address
Client to firewall	Client's private IP address	Target server's public IP address
Firewall to CIS	Client's translated IP address	CIS' private IP address
CIS to firewall	CIS' private IP address	Target server's public IP address
Firewall to server	CIS' public IP address	Target server's public IP address
Server to firewall	Target server's public IP address	CIS' public IP address
Firewall to CIS	Target server's public IP address	CIS' private IP address
CIS to firewall	CIS' private IP address	Client's translated IP address
Firewall to client	Target server's public IP address	Client's private IP address

This scenario requires two Access rules (one for each connection) and one NAT rule (for the connection between the CIS and the target server).

Alternatively, anti-malware features (separately licensed feature) are available directly on the Firewall for low-traffic environments. Also, limited URL filtering is available as part of the deep packet inspection features (hardware permitting).

#### Related concepts

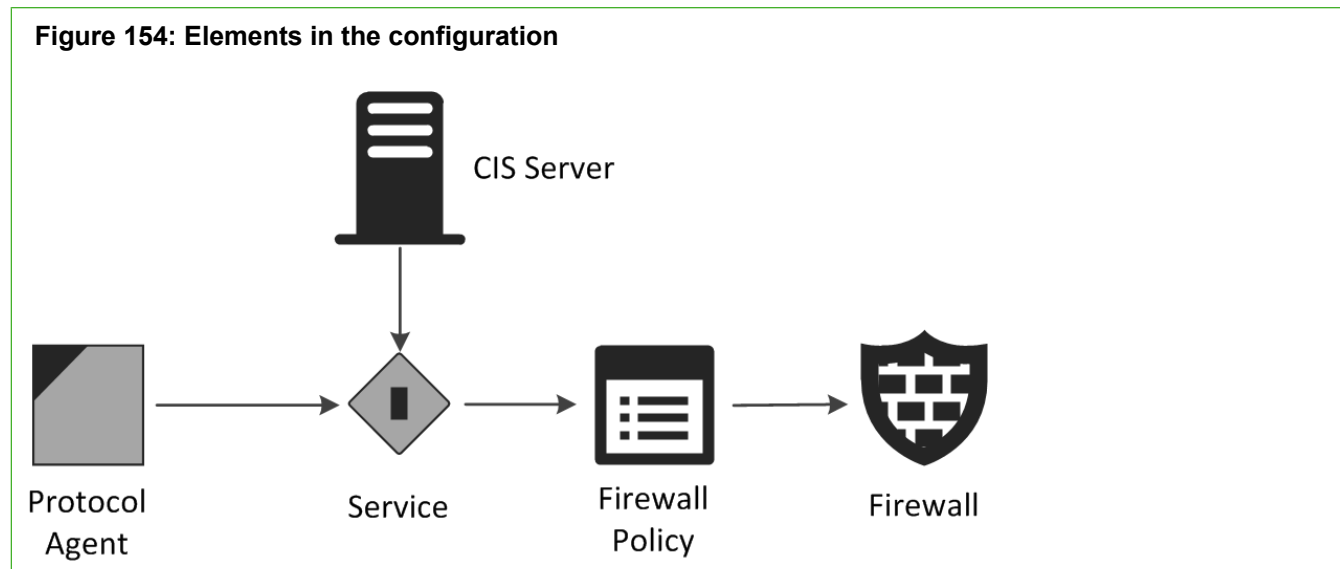
[Example: screening traffic to the Internet with an external content inspection server](#) on page 1065

[Anti-malware scanning overview](#) on page 1001

# External content inspection configuration overview

Use *Protocol Agents* to redirect FTP, SMTP, and HTTP traffic to content inspection servers for inspection.

**Figure 154: Elements in the configuration**



The preceding illustration shows how content inspection server redirection is configured. A custom Service element and a content inspection server (CIS) element are needed. A Service redirects connections for content inspection when one of the existing default Protocol elements of the type Protocol Agent is attached to the Service. The Service element contains a parameter that defines which content inspection server inspects the connection. The Service can be inserted to any number of Access rules in the Firewall Policy to select traffic to be redirected to the content inspection server. There can be several different Services for content inspection server redirection, if you have several content inspection servers.

The Protocol Agent redirection allows using the content inspection server as a transparent proxy, thus requiring no additional configuration on the client computers. The redirection is fully transparent to both the client and the server. The Protocol Agent translates the destination address automatically to the content inspection server's address to redirect the traffic. The content inspection server then functions as a proxy by establishing the forward connection to the actual destination address.

In addition to translating the real destination address to the content inspection server address for redirection, the source address is also translated for handling the content inspection server redirection on the firewall. The translated source address can be any address that is routed back from the content inspection server to the firewall (so that replies are correctly handled). Further address translation can be applied to the connection from the content inspection server to the communications destination.

Follow these general steps to configure and use external content inspection:

- 1) Define the CIS Server element to define the IP address and services the server inspects.
- 2) Create a custom Service element that includes the CIS Server.
- 3) Define the Access rules that select traffic for CIS redirection.
- 4) Define the NAT rules for CIS redirection.

**Related tasks**

- [Create a Content Inspection Server element](#) on page 1061
- [Define a Service element for CIS redirection](#) on page 1062
- [Redirect traffic to a CIS server](#) on page 1063
- [Define NAT for CIS redirection](#) on page 1064

## Default elements for external content inspection

A Protocol of the type Protocol Agent is needed for content inspection server redirection. All Protocol Agents are always default elements.


There are three Protocol Agents that can redirect connections to a CIS:


- FTP — Specifies file transfer protocol file transfers
- HTTP — Specifies hypertext transport protocol connections used in web browsing
- SMTP — Specifies simple mail transfer protocol for email

Also, the default Services for the three supported protocols can be used when allowing connections that the CIS opens for the redirected traffic.

## Create a Content Inspection Server element

Create a CIS Server element that defines the content inspection server's IP address and the services and ports that the content inspection server handles.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Expand the **Network Elements** branch.
- 3) Right-click **Servers**, then select **New > CIS Server**.
- 4) Specify a unique **Name** and the **IP Address** of the server.
- 5) (Optional) Specify the **Location** and the NAT addresses for the server.

The **Location** and NAT addresses must be changed if there is a NAT device between a Firewall and the server, so that the Firewall cannot connect directly to the IP address defined for the server.

- 6) (Optional) Enter a **Secondary IP Address** for the server.  
The Firewall associates the secondary IP address to the correct element when the IP address is used as the source or destination address in pass-through communications. However, the secondary IP address is never used as the destination address when the Firewall initiates the communications.
- 7) Click the **Services** tab.
- 8) Select the protocols to be inspected and enter the port number that the server uses for the service.
- 9) Click **OK**.

#### Related tasks

Create [Location elements](#) on page 129

Define [contact addresses for engines](#) on page 131

## Define a Service element for CIS redirection


A custom Service element is always needed for content inspection server redirection.


When you attach a Protocol that supports content inspection server redirection, you can activate the feature by attaching the correct CIS Server element to the Service.

The (mandatory) source address translation for the redirected connections is defined in the Service — these addresses are what the CIS sees as the connection originator. Any additional address translation for the traffic must be configured for the connections from the CIS when the proxy connections are opened through the firewall.

## Create a custom Service element for CIS redirection

Before you can use CIS redirection, you must create a custom Service element.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements > Services** branch.
- 3) Right-click the TCP branch, then select **New > TCP Service**.
- 4) Enter a unique **Name**.
- 5) Enter the destination port or port range in **Dst. Ports** and/or enter the source port or port range in **Src. Ports**.


- 6) Click **Select** next to the **Protocol** field, then select the Protocol Agent.  
The **FTP**, **HTTP**, or **SMTP** Protocol Agents can be used for CIS redirection.

## Enable CIS redirection in a custom Service element

---

Activate CIS direction by attaching the correct CIS Server element to the custom Service.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Services > TCP**.
- 3) Right-click the **TCP** branch and select **New > TCP Service**, or right-click an existing custom TCP Service element and select **Properties**.
- 4) Click the **Protocol Parameters** tab.
- 5) Click **Edit** next to **Redirect Connections to CIS**.
- 6) Select the **CIS Server**.
- 7) Specify the **IP Address Translation Range** and the **Port Translation Range** used for source NAT of the CIS-redirectioned connections.  
When the traffic is sent from the Firewall to the CIS server, the addresses are translated as defined here. To specify a single IP address, enter the same IP address in both fields. Only IPv4 addresses are supported in CIS redirection.
- 8) Click **OK**.
- 9) To save your changes, click **OK**.


## Redirect traffic to a CIS server


---

You define the connections that you want to redirect to a particular content inspection server in the IPv4 Access rules.

To activate redirection, you use a custom Service element. The redirection rule must always have connection tracking on, since connection tracking is required for the mandatory address translation. Both incoming and outgoing connections can be redirected.

Typically, two IPv4 Access rules are needed when the traffic to and from the CIS server goes through the Firewall. One rule redirects the matching traffic to the CIS server and another rule allows the forward connection from the CIS server to the actual destination.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Expand the **Policies** branch, then select **Firewall Policies**.
- 3) Right-click a policy, then select **Edit Firewall Policy**.  
The policy opens for editing.
- 4) Using the settings in the following table, add an IPv4 Access rule that redirects the traffic to the CIS server.

**Table 126: Access rule for redirecting traffic to CIS server**

Source	Destination	Service	Action
Original source address of the traffic to be inspected (such as clients in the internal network).	Original destination address of the traffic (such as a web server).	Your custom Service element with the CIS redirection.	Allow

- 5) Using the settings in the following table, add a rule that allows forward connections from the CIS server to the actual destination.

This rule is not needed if the forward connection does not go through the Firewall.

**Table 127: Access rule for forwarding traffic from CIS server**

Source	Destination	Service	Action
CIS server's address.	Original destination address (such as a web server).	Normal service element without CIS redirection.  (The Agent with redirection is used only for the connection that is redirected, not the forward connection).	Allow

## Define NAT for CIS redirection

NAT rules must usually be adjusted for content inspection server redirection.

The Protocol Agent handles the translation of addresses when forwarding the traffic from the firewall to the CIS. There must not be overlapping address translation defined for these connections in the NAT rules. A matching rule with an empty NAT cell might be required to ensure that other NAT rules do not match to these connections.

Any NAT you want applied to proxy connections opened by the CIS must be done using normal NAT rules.

The address translation defined in your custom Service element for CIS redirection must not overlap with NAT rules. The NAT rules outlined here ensure that no duplicate NAT is applied and define the NAT applied when connections return from the external server.

To make sure that there are no conflicts with NAT rules, add a "no-NAT" rule for the CIS redirection.



**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Click the **IPv4 NAT** tab in your Firewall Policy, then place the following rule as the first rule.

**Table 128: No-NAT rule**

Source	Destination	Service	NAT
The original source address of the traffic to be redirected (such as clients in the internal network or source network).	The original destination address of the traffic (such as a web server).	Any Service that matches the traffic.	Leave empty to make sure that no NAT is applied.

- 2) If NAT is needed for the forward connection from the CIS server to the actual destination, add a second NAT rule, as follows.

**Table 129: NAT rule for inspected traffic**

Source	Destination	Service	NAT
The address of the CIS.	The original destination address of the traffic (such as a web server).	Any Service that matches the traffic.	Define the NAT that would be used even without CIS redirection (such as dynamic source NAT with NetLinks for outbound connections).

#### Related concepts

[Getting started with NAT rules](#) on page 831

## Example: screening traffic to the Internet with an external content inspection server

The example company has decided to screen out non-work-related connections using an external CIS. It can screen the HTTP and FTP connections that the company's employees open to the Internet.

The content inspection server acts as a proxy for these connections. The administrators have already installed the CIS and configured it to process HTTP and FTP traffic according to the company's policy.

To configure the redirection, the administrators:

- 1) Create an element for their CIS.

- 2) Create a custom Service element for both HTTP and FTP that refer to the Protocol Agents for those protocols.
- 3) Add the CIS to the Protocol Agent parameters in the Service properties.
- 4) Create the Access rules for redirecting connections to the CIS, and the connections that the proxy server then opens to the Internet or any other destination.

ID	Source	Destination	Service	Action
14.1	Internal Network element	ANY	HTTP-CIS-Redirect	Allow
14.2	CIS Server element	ANY	HTTP	Allow
14.3	Internal Network element	ANY	FTP-CIS-Redirect	Allow
14.4	CIS Server element	ANY	FTP	Allow

- The preceding table shows rules for redirecting outgoing HTTP and FTP traffic through a CIS. Connections opened from the corporate LAN are redirected to the content inspection server in rule 14.1 and 14.3. The CIS then connects to the actual destination, which is allowed in the rules 14.2 and 14.4.
  - The FTP Service without redirection in rule 14.4 also uses a Protocol Agent, as it is required for the firewall to correctly handle FTP connections. However, this is the default element that is not configured for CIS redirection.
- 5) Create the NAT rules for ensuring that NAT rules do not match to connections that are being redirected to the CIS. Also create rules for translating the connections opened by the CIS for load-balancing the connections across the company's Multi-Link network connections.

ID	Source	Destination	Service	NAT
4.1	Internal Network element	ANY	HTTP-CIS-Redirect	
4.2	CIS Server element	ANY	HTTP	Dynamic Load Balancing: HQ Multi-Link
4.3	Internal Network element	ANY	FTP-CIS-Redirect	
4.4	CIS Server element	ANY	FTP	Dynamic Load Balancing: HQ Multi-Link

- Rules 4.1 and 4.3 ensure that there is no address translation for the traffic that is redirected to the CIS (NAT cell is empty, which means no NAT is done for matching connections).
- Rules 4.2 and 4.4 are used to NAT the forward connections from the CIS to the actual destination, in this case, dynamic source NAT for load-balancing the traffic across available ISP links (using the Outbound Multi-Link element, which in the example company has been given the name “HQ Multi-Link”).



# Blacklisting IP addresses

## Contents

- [Blacklisting traffic and how it works](#) on page 1069
- [Enable blacklisting traffic](#) on page 1072
- [Configure automatic blacklisting of traffic](#) on page 1073
- [Blacklist traffic manually](#) on page 1075
- [Monitoring blacklisting](#) on page 1076

Blacklisting is a way to temporarily block unwanted network traffic either manually or automatically with blacklist requests from an NGFW Engine or Log Server. Firewalls, IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewalls, and Virtual NGFW Engines can use a blacklist for blocking traffic.

## Blacklisting traffic and how it works

Blacklists contain entries for blocking traffic temporarily based on traffic patterns that the engines detect or on administrator commands.

Blacklisting allows you to temporarily stop traffic:

- Without editing and installing policies (manual blacklisting only)
- Based on events detected by engines
- Based on correlation of detected events
- On a different engine than the one that detects an event
- On multiple engines with a single administrator command or a single detected event

Blacklisting makes it possible to block unwanted network traffic for a specified time. Engines can add entries to their own blacklists based on events in the traffic they inspect. NGFW Engines and Log Servers can also send blacklist requests to other NGFW Engines. You can also blacklist IP addresses manually.

A rule in the Inspection Policy detects a serious attack against a single host in your internal network. You can configure the rule to trigger automatic blacklisting of connections from that host to any other host in your internal networks.

Keep these limitations in mind when planning your blacklisting strategy:

- Layer 2 Firewalls can only blacklist IPv4 traffic.
- Virtual NGFW Engines cannot send blacklist requests to other Virtual NGFW Engines or to NGFW Engines.
- By default, the blacklist is not enforced at all. To enforce the blacklist, you must define the points at which the blacklist is checked in the Access rules. If a connection is allowed by a rule placed above the blacklist rule, the connection is allowed regardless of the blacklist entries.

Automatic blacklisting can have unintended consequences that could disrupt business-critical traffic. Use automatic blacklisting with careful consideration. The following two categories represent the typical risks associated with blacklisting:

**Table 130: Risks of blacklisting**

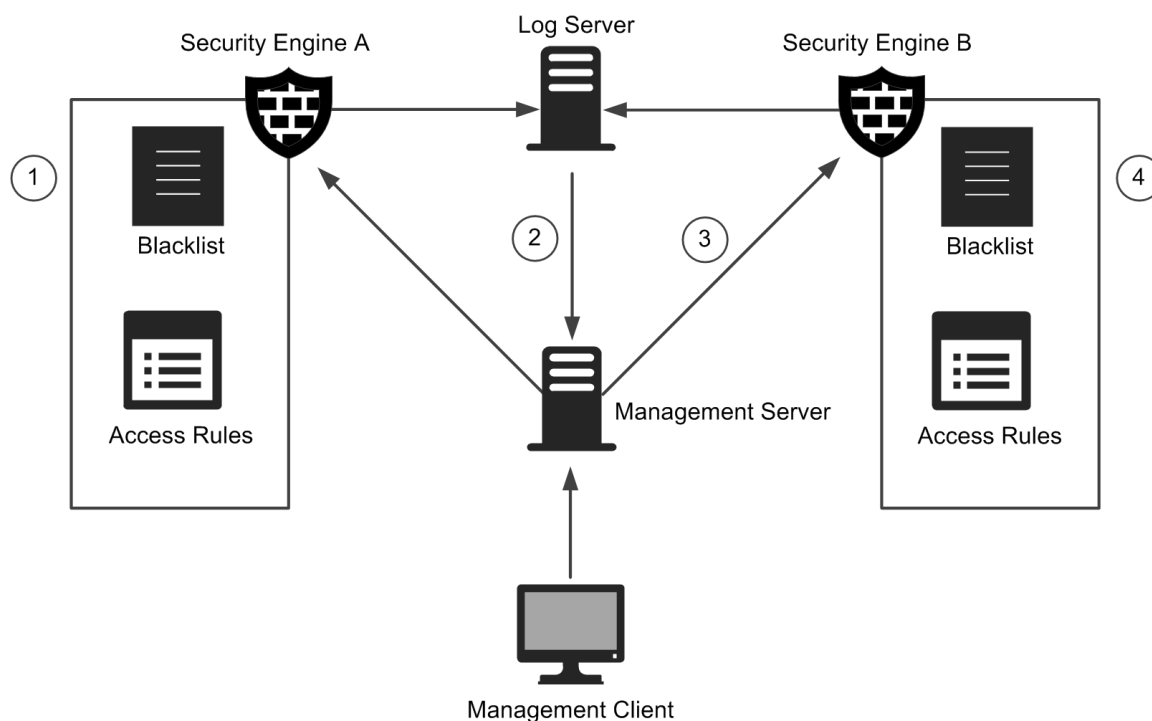
Risk	Explanation
Blacklisting legitimate connections (false positive)	If the defined pattern for detecting malicious traffic is inaccurate, legitimate traffic might sometimes be blacklisted. Blacklisting legitimate connections causes service downtime for hosts that are incorrectly identified as a source of malicious traffic.
Causing self-inflicted denial-of-service (DoS)	When an attacker uses spoofed IP addresses, a different (legitimate) IP address might be blacklisted instead of the attacker's IP address. Blacklisting spoofed IP addresses might cause a self-inflicted denial-of-service of legitimate traffic.

You can minimize these risks with good planning. Identify and evaluate the threats carefully before you configure blacklisting.

# Blacklisting process

Blacklisting is executed as defined in the Access rules of the Firewall Policy, the Layer 2 Firewall Policy, or the IPS Policy. Automatic blacklisting requests are sent as defined in the Inspection Policy.

**Figure 155: Blacklisting process**



- Engines add entries to their own blacklists for traffic they inspect.
  - There is one blacklist for each Firewall, Layer 2 Firewall, IPS engine, or Virtual NGFW Engine.
  - In engine clusters, there is one blacklist for each cluster. The nodes in the cluster exchange blacklist information in their synchronization communications.
- Log Servers send blacklisting requests as a response to correlation of detected events. When one NGFW Engine sends a blacklisting request to another NGFW Engine, the Log Server relays the blacklisting request to the Management Server.
- Management Servers relay manual blacklisting commands from administrators, and blacklisting requests sent by Log Servers to the NGFW Engines. There is no direct communication between different Virtual NGFW Engines or between Virtual NGFW Engines and the Management Server. For this reason, Virtual NGFW Engines cannot send blacklisting requests to other Virtual NGFW Engines.
- Engines enforce the entries on their blacklists according to their Access rules.
  - Each blacklist entry exists only for a defined duration, after which the entry is removed from the blacklist, and matching connections are again allowed. The duration of the blocking is defined when the blacklist entry is created.
  - Access rules check connections against the blacklist. If the IP addresses and ports in one of the blacklist entries match, the connection is discarded.
  - If the connection does not match a blacklisting Access rule or its related blacklist entries, the next Access rule in the policy is checked as usual.

## Whitelisting traffic

Whitelisting means defining a list of IP addresses that must never be blacklisted.

Whitelisting is implemented by following general Access rule design principles. Blacklisting applies only at the position of the blacklisting Access rules in the policy. Connections that have already been allowed or discarded before the blacklisting rules are not affected by blacklisting. If an Access rule in the policy allows a connection, an Access rule that refers to the blacklist further down in the policy cannot blacklist the connection.

## Blacklisting configuration overview

Configuring blacklisting consists of several general steps.

Follow these general steps to configure blacklisting:

- 1) Define which traffic is matched against the blacklist in the Access rules.
- 2) (Automatic blacklisting only) Define the traffic that you want to blacklist automatically in the Exceptions in the Inspection Policy.

After blacklisting is configured, you can monitor the currently active blacklist.

### Related concepts


[Monitoring connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs](#) on page 193

## Enable blacklisting traffic

By default, the blacklist is not enforced. To enforce the blacklist, you define the points at which the blacklist is checked in the Access rules.

Access rules define which connections are checked against the blacklist. Blacklisting is applied with Access rules that contain the Apply Blacklist action. Only traffic that matches such a rule is checked against the blacklist entries. If the traffic checked against the blacklist does not match any of the blacklist entries, the next rule in the policy is checked as usual.

You can have several Apply Blacklist rules with different matching criteria at different points in the policy.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Open the Firewall, Layer 2 Firewall, or IPS Policy for editing.  
Blacklist enforcement for Virtual NGFW Engines is configured in the Firewall Policy, IPS Policy, or Layer 2 Firewall Policy that is used on the Virtual NGFW Engine.
- 2) On the **IPv4 Access** or **IPv6 Access** tab, define which **Sources**, **Destinations**, and **Services** are compared with the blacklist.



**Note:** Layer 2 Firewalls can only blacklist IPv4 traffic.



- 3) Right-click the **Action** cell and select **Apply Blacklist**.
- 4) (Optional) Restrict which engines and servers are allowed to send blacklist requests.
  - a) Right-click the **Action** cell and select **Edit Options**.
  - b) On the Blacklisting tab, select **Restricted** for the **Allowed Blacklisters for This Rule** setting.
  - c) From the **Available Blacklisters** list, select the elements that you want to add to the **Allowed Blacklisters** list and click **Add**.

Add the Management Server to allow manual blacklisting through the Management Clients. Add the Log Server to allow it to relay blacklisting requests from other NGFW Engines.
  - d) Click **OK**.



**Note:** By default, engines are allowed to add entries directly to their own blacklists for traffic they inspect.

- 5) Install the policy on the engine to activate the changes.

## Next steps

No further configuration is needed if you want to blacklist connections manually.

### Related concepts

[Getting started with Access rules](#) on page 811

# Configure automatic blacklisting of traffic

Engines trigger automatic blacklisting based on the Blacklist Scope options in the Exceptions in the Inspection Policy.


Engines add entries directly to their own blacklists for traffic they inspect. Engines can also send blacklisting requests to other NGFW Engines. In this case, the engine sends the blacklisting request to the Log Server. The Log Server relays the blacklisting request to the Management Server. The Management Server relays the blacklisting request to the other NGFW Engines that enforce the blacklisting.

Engines generate blacklist entries based on the patterns they detect in the traffic flow. The blacklist entry that is sent identifies traffic based on IP addresses and optionally the Protocol and port. The blacklist entries can include whole networks, even if the events that trigger them are related to a single source or destination IP address.

Automatic blacklist entries are created using the detected event's source and destination IP addresses, and optionally the TCP or UDP ports. If the event does not contain this information, a blacklist entry cannot be created. Netmasks can optionally be used to blacklist the detected event's network.

# Add a rule for automatic blacklisting

You can add a rule for automatic blacklisting to the Inspection Policy.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Policies > Inspection Policies**.
- 3) Right-click the Inspection Policy and select **Edit Inspection Policy**.  
The Inspection Policy opens for editing.
- 4) On the **Exceptions** tab, add a rule with the **Situation**, **Source**, **Destination**, and **Protocol** that match traffic you want to blacklist.
- 5) Right-click the Action cell and select **Terminate**.
- 6) Right-click the Action cell and select **Edit Options**.


## Define blacklisting rule Action options

When the blacklist entry is created, the actions taken depend on the options you set.

### Before you begin

Add a rule for automatic blacklisting to the Inspection Policy.

You can define Blacklisting scope options for any type of Exception, including rules that use Correlation Situations.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the **Select Rule Action Options** dialog box, click the **Blacklist Scope** tab.
- 2) Select **Override collected values set with "Continue" rules**.
- 3) Select the type of Blacklist entry to create:
  - To create a Blacklist entry that terminates only the current connection using the default options, select **Terminate the Single Connection**. Proceed to step 4.
  - To block the traffic for defined duration and configure the settings, select **Block Traffic Between Endpoints**.
- 4) Select **Blacklist Executors** (the engines where the blacklist entry is sent), then click **Add**.

- 5) (Optional) To include the engine that detects the situation in the list of blacklist executors, select **Include the Original Observer in the List of Executors**.
- 6) Click **OK**.
- 7) Click **Save and Install**.

#### Related concepts

[Monitoring connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs](#) on page 193

#### Related tasks

[Blacklist traffic manually](#) on page 1075

## Blacklist traffic manually

You can blacklist traffic manually on Firewalls, IPS engines, and Layer 2 Firewalls.

For example, you can temporarily block a suspicious or disruptive source of communications while you conduct further investigations.

There are three ways to create new blacklist entries manually.

- Blacklist a connection found in the log data.
- Define a new blacklist entry for an NGFW Engine element.
- Create new blacklist entries in the **Blacklist** view, **Connections** view, **Monitoring** view, and **Logs** view.

The blacklist is not necessarily applied to all traffic. The Access rules determine how the blacklist is used.



**Note:** If a connection is allowed by a rule placed above the blacklist rule in the Access rules, the connection is allowed regardless of the blacklist entries. Check the logs to see which connections are discarded based on blacklisting.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Create a new blacklist entry in one of the following ways:
  - In the **Blacklist** view, **Connections** view, or **Logs** view — Right-click a row in the table and select **New Blacklist Entry** or **New Entry**.
  - To create a blacklist entry for a specific NGFW Engine — Right-click the NGFW Engine element in the **Connections** view, **Monitoring** view, or **Logs** view, and select **New Blacklist Entry** or **Blacklist > New Entry**.
- 2) Select the **Duration** for how long this entry will be kept.
  - If you leave the value as 0, the entry only stops the current connections. Otherwise, the entry is enforced for the specified period of time.
- 3) Select the **Address** to blacklist for Endpoint 1 and Endpoint 2.

- 4) (Only if the protocol is TCP or UDP) Select the **Port** to blacklist for Endpoint 1 and Endpoint 2.
- 5) Select the **Blacklist Executors** that enforce the blacklist entry.
- 6) Click **OK**.  
The blacklist entry is sent to the executor and the traffic is blocked.

## Monitoring blacklisting

---

You can monitor active blacklisting entries in the **Blacklist** view.

The currently active blacklisting entries on the engine can be monitored in the **Blacklist** view. Blacklist monitoring does not show you which connections are dropped. Blacklist monitoring only shows you the IP addresses that are currently on the blacklist. The **Logs** view can show which connections are dropped, depending on the logging options you have set. The blacklist can be sorted and filtered in the same way as log entries.

# PART X

## Users and authentication

### Contents

- [Setting up directory servers](#) on page 1079
- [Setting up user authentication](#) on page 1099

User accounts are stored in internal databases or external directory servers. You can use Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role or external authentication servers to authenticate users.



# Setting up directory servers

## Contents

- [Getting started with directory servers](#) on page 1079
- [Integrating external directory servers](#) on page 1082
- [Enabling access control by user](#) on page 1087
- [Defining user accounts](#) on page 1090
- [Add Users to User Group elements](#) on page 1093
- [Remove Users from User Group elements](#) on page 1093
- [Import user information](#) on page 1094
- [Export user information](#) on page 1094
- [Change user passwords](#) on page 1095
- [Remove the authentication settings of a user](#) on page 1095
- [Reset a firewall engine's local user database](#) on page 1096
- [Set user database replication on or off for Firewalls and Master NGFW Engines](#) on page 1096
- [Examples of Directory Servers](#) on page 1097

A directory server provides access to information about user accounts in a user database. Both internal and external directory servers can be used. Directory servers can be used for user authentication with Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role.

## Getting started with directory servers

A directory server is a server that contains a user database that is queried during the user authentication process.

You can store the user accounts in the Management Server's internal user database, or on an external directory server. Different users can be stored in different directories. Authentication is based on the user information, but is a separate operation and is not necessarily done on the same server that stores the user information.

You can optionally use an integrated external Active Directory Server with an integrated McAfee Logon Collector for Access Control by User. Access Control by User allows the use of Active Directory users as the source and destination of rules.

To implement user authentication, you must define user accounts either in the internal user database or on an external directory server.

If you use an external third-party authentication server and do not need to define different access rights for different users, it is not necessary to integrate an external directory server with the SMC. You can create a special User element with the name \*external\* in the internal user database to represent any user that authenticates using the external authentication service.

## Limitations

- The internal LDAP user database does not allow external authentication servers to query user information.
- The internal LDAP database limits the length of the User and User Group DN (distinguished name) to a maximum of 254 characters. Check the restrictions of external LDAP servers from the external server's documentation.
- If administrative Domains are configured, the internal user database is always in the Shared Domain. The user accounts stored in the internal database are also always in the Shared Domain. If you want to limit the visibility of end-user accounts, you must configure external LDAP databases separately for each Domain.
- User authentication is only supported on Firewalls (not with IPS engines or Layer 2 Firewalls).

## What do I need to know before I begin?

- The Management Server has an internal LDAP user database.
- Alternatively, you can use external LDAP user databases (including Active Directory).
- Different users can be stored in different databases.

Depending where user information is stored, different authentication options are available. The following table explains the possible combinations of internal and external directory servers and authentication servers:

**Table 131: Combinations of internal and external directory servers and authentication servers**

	Internal authentication server	External authentication server
Internal directory server	User and User group information are maintained in the Management Server's internal user database. User and User Group information can be managed using the Management Client and can be used for creating rules. Authentication can be done with password, IPsec certificate, or preshared key.	A second, external user database is required because the external authentication server has no access to the internal database. The same user information must be maintained separately in the Management Server's internal user database and in the external user database. User and User Group information can be used for creating rules. Any authentication method supported by the external authentication server can be used.
External directory server	The Management Server is defined as an LDAP client for the external server. User and User Group information is shown in the Management Client, and can be used for creating rules. Authentication can be done with password, IPsec certificate, or preshared key.	You can optionally define the Management Server as an LDAP client for the external server. You can also manually maintain the same user information separately in the Management Server's internal user database and in the external user database. Otherwise, you can create a single User element named *external* to represent all externally stored users. In this case, it is not possible to create different rules for different externally stored users. Each authentication rule includes all external users. There can be several rules, but any user that can authenticate in one rule can also authenticate when any of the other rules is triggered.  Any authentication method supported by the external authentication server can be used.



**Related concepts**

[Getting started with user authentication](#) on page 1099

## How internal user databases work

The Management Server includes an integrated LDAP directory for storing user information.

The Management Server's internal user database can be used for authenticating users with passwords. Using an internal LDAP directory is the simplest choice when there is no specific need to have an external LDAP server.

When the Management Server's internal LDAP directory is used, the user and user group information is stored on the Management Server. Each firewall node stores a replica of the user database, and any changes to the main database are replicated immediately to the firewalls. This way, the firewalls can access their local directories instead of constantly communicating user information over the network.



**Note:** It is not possible to give external components (such as external authentication servers) access to the Management Server's internal LDAP directory.

If Domain elements have been configured, the Internal LDAP directory belongs to the Shared Domain. This means that the administrators who log on to some other Domain are allowed to view the contents of the Internal LDAP directory. If all user information should not be available to administrators in all Domains, you must use an external LDAP directory in each Domain.

## Directory server configuration overview

User information is stored in an internal or an external LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol) directory.

The standard LDAP user management model consists of three different levels: LDAP domains, user groups, and users. All three levels are represented as elements in the Management Client.

Follow these general steps to configure the directory server:

- 1) (Optional) Integrate an external LDAP directory server:
  - a) Define an LDAP Server or Active Directory Server element. The Active Directory Server element also contains the settings for NPS authentication; generic LDAP Server elements define a directory server only.
  - b) (Optional) Define an LDAP Domain.
- 2) Define the User Group and User information:
  - a) Import existing user information from some other Management Server.
  - b) Create new accounts or edit accounts stored in an external LDAP database.

# Integrating external directory servers

You can use an external directory server to store user group and user information instead of or in addition to the internal user database.

The Management Server and the firewall engines each use their own integrated LDAP client to query the external LDAP directory directly. The external LDAP directory is not replicated into the internal directory on the Management Server or into the local directory of the firewalls. Instead, the external LDAP directory is queried separately each time by the Management Server when you view the User elements in the Management Client. The external LDAP directory is queried separately each time by the firewalls when a user attempts to authenticate.

You can also use an external directory server without integrating it with the SMC components. An external LDAP directory can be used instead of or in addition to the internal LDAP directory. The external directory server can be a general LDAP server, or a Microsoft Active Directory server providing LDAP services. The Management Server is defined as an LDAP client for the external server.

The external LDAP server's schema file defines the attributes (individual pieces of data) that a user account can contain. Extending the external server's schema with SMC-specific attributes is optional. Extending the schema allows you to also add SMC-specific information to User and User Group elements through the Management Client.

In this configuration, a single element (User element named \*external\*) is used to represent all externally stored users in the Firewall's policy. It is not possible to create different rules for different externally stored users.

The Management Server and the Firewall engines both have an integrated LDAP client that can query the external directory server. You can configure access to the directory server for both the Management Server and the Firewall, or for the Firewall only. To take full advantage of user authentication features, we recommend configuring access to the directory server for both the Management Server and the Firewall.

Configuring access to the external directory server for both the Firewall and the Management Server allows the following:

- There is no need to manually duplicate user account information. User and User Group elements are automatically added to the SMC from the external directory.
- Externally stored user accounts are shown in the Management Client and can be used to create different rules for different users.
- In most cases, users can be also added, removed, and edited through the Management Client.
- Internal authentication methods can be used to authenticate externally stored users.

If only the Firewall engines can access the external directory server, the following restrictions apply:

- You can authenticate externally stored users only against authentication methods provided by an external authentication server. Internal authentication methods are not available for externally stored users.
- A single element (User element named \*external\*) is used to represent all externally stored users in the Firewall's policy. It is not possible to create different rules for different externally stored users.

You can view user information and use it for authentication against an external authentication service simply by allowing the SMC components to connect to the LDAP database. You must add parameters for the SMC components on the LDAP directory server by configuring schema files in the following cases:

- To be able to authenticate users with an LDAP password.
- To be able to edit information in the LDAP directory through the Management Client.

# Configuring schema files on external directory servers

---

A schema file defines the attributes (individual pieces of data) that an account can contain.

Extending the external server's schema with SMC-specific attributes is optional. Extending the schema also allows you to add SMC-specific information to Users and User Groups through the Management Client. You must update the schema file if you want to configure authentication requirements for specific Users or User Groups. Otherwise, you can configure authentication only at the LDAP domain level.

The method of configuring Schema files varies depending on which LDAP server you are using. The Schema update is done outside the Management Client. In general, the schema update means that you add the SMC-specific attributes to the existing user information on the external LDAP server. These include attributes for the SMC-specific user name, password, and allowed authentication methods for the user.

## Create LDAP Server or Active Directory Server elements

---

If you want to use an external directory server, you must create an element to define the parameters for contacting the server and the LDAP object classes.

You define the directory parameters in an LDAP Server element. If you are using an Active Directory server, you can define both the directory and the authentication parameters in the same Active Directory Server element. If you use administrative Domains, use a separate external LDAP Server or Active Directory Server in each Domain to create user accounts that are specific to each Domain.


## Create Active Directory Server elements


---

The Active Directory Server element contains both the user database and authentication service options for using a Microsoft Active Directory server to store and authenticate users.

The Active Directory Server element's settings include an account that the Management Server and Firewall engines use to connect to query the directory. The user account must exist in the Active Directory Server's user database. Make sure the account you use has the permissions to manage other user accounts.

There are also values for some attributes that the Management Server and Firewall engines look for in the directory. We recommend that you do not use special characters or accented letters in the Distinguished Names or user ID attributes. Currently, Active Directory has a limit of 160 characters for the Base DN, 24 characters for a UID (user ID) and 64 characters for the OU (organizational unit).

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **User Authentication**.
- 2) Right-click **Servers**, then select **New > Active Directory Server**.
- 3) Configure the **General** settings.

- 4) (Optional) Click the **Secondary IP Addresses** tab, then add one or more secondary IP addresses for the server.  
These IP addresses are included when the Active Directory Server element is used in rules, but SMC components never use the addresses when initiating contact with the server.
- 5) (Optional) If you want the Active Directory Server to be monitored by the Log Server, click the **Monitoring** tab, then configure the monitoring settings.
- 6) Click **OK**.

#### Related concepts

[Define contact IP addresses](#) on page 129

#### Related tasks

[Create Location elements](#) on page 129

[Activate monitoring of third-party devices](#) on page 228


## Create LDAP Server elements

The LDAP Server element can be used to configure access to any LDAP server as a user database for the Firewalls and the Management Server.

The LDAP Server element's settings include an account that the Management Server and Firewall engines use to connect to query the directory. The user account must exist in the LDAP Server's user database. Make sure the account you use has the permissions to manage other user accounts.

There are also values for some attributes that the Management Server and Firewall engines look for in the directory. We recommend that you do not use special characters or accented letters in the Distinguished Names or user ID attributes. For character limits for these settings, see the documentation of your LDAP server.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **User Authentication**.
- 2) Right-click **Servers**, then select **New > LDAP Server**.
- 3) Configure the settings on the **General** tab.
- 4) (Optional) Click the **Secondary IP Addresses** tab, then add one or more secondary IP addresses for the server.  
These IP addresses are included when the LDAP Server element is used in rules, but SMC components never use the addresses when initiating contact with the server.
- 5) (Optional) If you want the LDAP Server to be monitored by the Log Server, click the **Monitoring** tab and configure the monitoring settings.
- 6) Click **OK**.

**Related concepts**

[Define contact IP addresses](#) on page 129

**Related tasks**


[Create Location elements](#) on page 129


[Activate monitoring of third-party devices](#) on page 228

## Add LDAP object classes

If your Active Directory or LDAP server has LDAP object classes that are not defined in the SMC by default, add those object classes to the LDAP Object classes.

This way, the existing classes on the Active Directory or LDAP server can also be used for authentication.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **User Authentication**.
- 2) Right-click **Servers** and select **New > LDAP Server**, or right-click an existing LDAP Server element and select **Properties**.
- 3) Click the **Object Classes** tab.
- 4) Enter the name of the **User Object Class** or **Group Object Class** and click **Add**.  
The object class appears in the list.

## Configure LDAP attribute mapping

On the **Attributes** tab, you can define how attributes in the LDAP directory are mapped to user properties in the SMC.

You might need to change or fill in these values according to the server's configuration. Enter the same values for the attributes that are defined in the LDAP Server's schema file.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **User Authentication**.
- 2) Right-click **Servers** and select **New > LDAP Server**, or right-click an existing LDAP Server element and select **Properties**.
- 3) Click the **Attributes** tab.

- 4) Configure the Attribute settings.


#### Related concepts

[Configuring schema files on external directory servers](#) on page 1083

## Add authentication methods to LDAP Server or Active Directory Server elements

Authentication Methods specify the allowed authentication methods for the users stored on the Active Directory or LDAP server.

You can optionally use the Internet Authentication Service (IAS) in previous Windows Server versions or the Network Policy Server (NPS) in Windows Server 2008 to authenticate end users. You must configure the IAS/NPS as a RADIUS server, and define each Firewall engine that authenticates users as a separate RADIUS client for IAS/NPS. Use the NDI addresses when you define Firewall Clusters as RADIUS clients for IAS/NPS. The IAS/NPS must have access to user information in the Active Directory. The user accounts must have remote access permissions. Set up the IAS/NPS as explained in the Microsoft Server documentation. The SMC does not support the Message-Authenticator attribute option available in the IAS/NPS, and is not NAP-capable. Only PAP authentication is supported.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Open the Active Directory Server or LDAP Server properties and click the **Authentication** tab.
- 2) Configure the settings according to the type of server.
- 3) Click **OK**.

#### Related tasks

[Define Authentication Method elements for external servers](#) on page 1106

## Define LDAP domain elements

If you use an external LDAP directory for user management, you must create an LDAP Domain.


After the LDAP Domain is associated with the external server, the Management Server contacts the LDAP directory. You can then view and edit users and user groups through the Management Client.


When using the internal user database, the users and user groups are always stored and managed in the default **InternalDomain** LDAP Domain.

You can select one LDAP Domain as the **Default LDAP Domain**. Selecting a default LDAP domain allows users belonging to that LDAP Domain to authenticate without specifying the LDAP Domain information. Users in other LDAP Domains must specify their LDAP Domain whenever they authenticate themselves.

If you use administrative Domains, create a separate LDAP Domain in each administrative Domain to create user accounts that are specific to each Domain. You can also use LDAP Domains in different administrative Domains

to point to different parts of the directory hierarchy in the same LDAP directory. The internal LDAP directory is always in the Shared Domain, which makes its contents visible in all administrative Domains. You can select one Default LDAP Domain in each administrative Domain. You can also select an LDAP Domain in the Shared Domain as the Default LDAP Domain for all administrative Domains.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **User Authentication**.
- 2) Right-click **Users** and select **New External LDAP Domain**.
- 3) In the **Name** field, enter a name for the LDAP Domain.
- 4) Select **Default LDAP Domain** if this LDAP Domain is used for all authentication unless otherwise specified in the IPv4 Access rules.



**Note:** If the LDAP Domain you are creating is not the default LDAP Domain, users must type in the domain name when they authenticate.

Only one LDAP Domain can be the default LDAP Domain. The previous default LDAP Domain is automatically deselected.

- 5) Select a Server and click **Add** to bind the LDAP Server to the LDAP Domain.
- 6) (Optional) Click the **Default Authentication** tab and click **Select** to define the allowed authentication methods for all accounts in this LDAP Domain.



**Tip:** You can override the default setting by selecting different authentication methods in the User Group or User properties.

We recommend that you set a default authentication method. If the authentication method is not defined yet, you can return to this dialog box to complete the configuration after you create the authentication method.

- 7) Click **OK**.

#### Related tasks

[Activate monitoring of third-party devices](#) on page 228

## Enabling access control by user

Access control by user lets you use User and User Group elements as the source or destination of rules to create user-specific rules without user authentication.

You can use user-specific rules and user authentication rules to allow some user groups to access a service, while otherwise requiring authentication for the same service.



**Note:** User-specific rules do not replace user authentication. User-specific rules are a tool to simplify the configuration of access control, and improve the end-user experience by allowing

transparent access to services. They are intended to be used for trusted users in a trusted environment where strong authentication is not required.

Access control by user requires an integrated McAfee Logon Collector. Logon Collector monitors logon events from Microsoft Exchange Servers and from the DC to associate users with IP addresses.



**Note:** The Stonesoft User Agent is not supported with Forcepoint NGFW 5.9 or higher. Use McAfee Logon Collector instead.

Integration with Logon Collector has the following benefits:

- High availability using a primary and secondary Logon Collector server.
- Support for multiple Active Directory (AD) domains.
- Support for user and user group names that contain non-ASCII characters.
- Monitoring of logon events from Microsoft Exchange Servers in addition to monitoring events from the DC.

### Related concepts

[Getting started with editing policies](#) on page 851

## Integrate McAfee Logon Collector with Forcepoint NGFW

Integrating Forcepoint NGFW with McAfee® Logon Collector provides user identification for access control by user.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) In the Logon Collector installation, generate or export a certificate for communication with the Logon Collector.  
For complete instructions, see the *McAfee Logon Collector Administration Guide*.
- 2) Save the certificate in a location that is accessible from the computer you use to run the Management Client.
- 3) In the Management Client, create a Logon Collector element.
  - a) Select **Configuration**.
  - b) Browse to **Other Elements > Engine Properties > User Agents**.
  - c) Right-click **User Agents**, then select **New > Logon Collector**.
  - d) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name for the Logon Collector element.
  - e) In the **IP Address** field, enter the IPv4 address of the primary Logon Collector server.






**Note:** The **Port** field contains the port number for communication between the Forcepoint NGFW and the server. Do not change the port setting unless Logon Collector



- 4) (Optional) Complete the following fields in the **High Availability** section configure the contact information for connections to a secondary Logon Collector server.


Field	Explanation
IP Address	The IPv4 address of the secondary Logon Collector server.
Port	<p>The port number for communication between Forcepoint NGFW and the Logon Collector server.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; background-color: #f0f0f0;"> <p> <b>Note:</b> The default port number is 61613. Use the default port number unless you must use a different port number.</p> </div>


- 5) Import the certificate for communication with the Logon Collector.
- a) On the **Certificate** tab, click **Import**.
  - b) Select the certificate and click **Open**.
- 6) Click **OK**.  
The Logon Collector element is created.
- 7) Select a Logon Collector element for NGFW Engines.
- a) Select  **Configuration**.
  - b) Right-click an engine, then select **Edit <element type>**.
  - c) Browse to **Add-Ons > User Agent or Logon Collector**.
  - d) In the **User Agent or Logon Collector** list, select a Logon Collector.  
If the Logon Collector that you want to use is not listed, select **Select**, then select a Logon Collector.
  - e) Click  **Save and Refresh**.
- 8) Export an SMC certificate for communication with the Logon Collector.
- a) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
  - b) Browse to **Other Elements > Internal Certificate Authorities**.
  - c) Right-click the internal certificate authority, then select **Properties**.
  - d) On the **Certificate** tab, click **Export**.
  - e) Save the certificate.
  - f) Click **Cancel** to close the properties of the internal certificate authority.
  - g) Import the certificate on the Logon Collector server.  
For complete instructions, see the *McAfee Logon Collector Administration Guide*.

# Select Logon Collectors for NGFW Engines

Select the Logon Collector for each NGFW Engine in the Engine Editor.

Each Logon Collector can be associated with one or more NGFW Engines, but only one Logon Collector can be selected for each NGFW Engine.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Right-click the NGFW Engine for which you want to select a Logon Collector, then select **Edit <element type>**.
- 3) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Add-Ons > User Agent**.
- 4) Select the Logon Collector element that this NGFW Engine communicates with.



**CAUTION:** The Stonesoft User Agent is not supported with Forcepoint NGFW 5.9 or higher. Do not select a Stonesoft User Agent if the engine version is 5.9 or higher. Use the McAfee Logon Collector instead.

- 5) Click  **Save**.

## Defining user accounts

User Group and User elements define the user account information for end users.

You can use User Group and User elements in Firewall IPv4 Access rules to add a requirement for authentication. If you have integrated a McAfee Logon Collector, you can also use User Group and User elements as the source and destination of Access, Inspection, and NAT rules without user authentication.

## Options for adding user accounts

If you are using the Management Server's internal user database:

- If you have existing user accounts stored in an internal user database on another Management Server, you can export or import the information between the databases.
- Otherwise, create the User Groups and Users individually.

If you are using an external directory server:

- If the LDAP database is integrated with the Management Server, you can view the user information in the Management Client. However, for the accounts to be valid in Access rules, you must configure at least one Authentication Method as allowed for the users. You can configure Authentication Methods as default settings for the LDAP Domain and for the User Groups and Users.
- If the LDAP database is not integrated with the Management Server, the user accounts are not shown in the Management Client and are not available for configuration.

**Related concepts**

[Enabling access control by user](#) on page 1087

**Related tasks**


[Define LDAP domain elements](#) on page 1086


[Import user information](#) on page 1094

## Create User Group elements

If you have many users, you might want to organize your users into several different User Groups.

You can organize the groups, for example, according to different services. A single user can belong to several groups at the same time. You must have at least one User Group element.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **User Authentication**.
- 2) Expand the branch of the LDAP Domain that represents the correct user database. The default InternalDomain LDAP Domain represents the internal database.
- 3) Right-click the parent group under the LDAP Domain (this is called **stonegate** for the internal database), then select **New > Internal User Group**.
- 4) In the **Name** field, enter a name for the Internal User Group.
  - The name is used as the common name (**CN**) for the group.
  - The distinguished name (**DN**) is inherited from the LDAP Domain to which this Internal User Group belongs.
- 5) (Optional) In the **Expiration After** field, enter a number of days after which the Internal User Group expires. When the Internal User Group expires, it stays in the system but is invalid and does not allow authentication until it is re-enabled.
- 6) Click the **Authentication** tab.
- 7) Click **Add**, then select one or more **Authentication Methods**.

If you select several Authentication Methods, you can restrict the Authentication Methods allowed for each user in the User element properties and in Access rules that require authentication.
- 8) Click **OK**.

# Create User elements

The User element defines who your users are and how they can identify themselves to get access to networks and services as defined in your Firewall Access rules.

You create Users as members of a User Group. You do not have to specify all user parameters separately for each individual User. A User that is a member of a User Group can inherit, for example, the Authentication Method and account expiration time from the User Group. Each User Group must belong to an LDAP Domain. We recommend creating a separate user account used for each user. Each user can belong to several User Groups within the LDAP Domain. User-specific properties can override properties defined at the User Group level.

You can import and export Users and User Groups through an LDIF file to or from some other Management Server.



**Note:** Although you cannot edit User Group memberships in the User element properties, each user can belong to several User Groups. After creating the User element, drag and drop it to other User Groups to add more group memberships.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **User Authentication**.
- 2) Browse to **Users**.
- 3) Add a user to a User Group in one of the following ways:
  - Right-click a User Group and select **New > Internal User** (for the internal **stonegate** parent group).
  - Right-click a User Group and select **New Internal User** (for a User Group under the internal **stonegate** parent group).
- 4) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name to identify the User in the directory.  
The name is used as the common name (CN) for the User. The distinguished name (DN) is inherited from the LDAP Domain to which the User belongs.
- 5) (External directory only) Enter additional user information.
- 6) (Optional) Change the Activation settings for the user account.
- 7) Click the **Authentication** tab.
- 8) Click **Add** to select the **Authentication Methods** for the user.
  - You can add more than one authentication method for each user. This way, you can put the User in more than one User Group when the User Groups have different authentication methods.
  - If you have not configured any Authentication Methods yet, you can create them in this dialog box.

- 9) Define the properties for the selected Authentication Method.



**CAUTION:** Use strong passwords that are at least eight characters long and that contain numbers, letters, and special characters. Do not base passwords on personal information such as names, birthdays, ID numbers, phone numbers, street names, registration plate numbers, or relatives' names.

- 10) Click **OK**.

## Result

The user account is created. If the user is stored in the internal LDAP database, the information is automatically synchronized to the local databases on the Firewalls unless user database replication has been disabled.

### Related concepts


[Getting started with user authentication](#) on page 1099

### Related tasks

[Import user information](#) on page 1094

# Add Users to User Group elements


When you add a User to a group, they remain a member of the current User Group and also become a member of the new group.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Drag and drop the User element to a User Group in the element tree.

# Remove Users from User Group elements

If Users do not belong in a User Group, remove them.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Browse to the User Group from which you want to remove the User.

- 2) Right-click the User element, then select **Tools > Remove**.  
A confirmation message is shown.
- 3) To remove the user from the User Group, click **Yes**.

## Import user information

---

You can import the user information from one Management Server's internal LDAP user database to another Management Server.

The internal LDAP user database is represented by the default LDAP Domain **InternalDomain**.

To be able to import user information successfully, the information must meet two conditions:

- The distinguished name (DN) must always be of type **dn: cn=cn-of-the-user-or-group,dc=stonegate**.
- All user groups must be directly attached under the **dc=stonegate** top-level group.



**Note:** The import feature is only meant for importing users exported from another Management Server's internal LDAP database. The import is not meant to work with other .ldif files.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **☰ Menu > File > Import > Import Users**.
- 2) Select the correct file, then click **Import**.  
A new tab opens, showing the progress of the import.
- 3) When the import is finished, check the messages for any warnings before you close the tab.  
If warnings were displayed, select **⚙️ Configuration**, then browse to **User Authentication > Users > InternalDomain** to check the properties for those Users or User Groups.

## Export user information

---

You can export the user information stored in the internal user database on one Management Server to an .ldif file, to transfer it to another Management Server.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select **⚙️ Configuration**, then browse to **User Authentication**.
- 2) Browse to **Users > InternalDomain**.
- 3) Right-click **InternalDomain** and select **Export Users**.


- 4) Select the location, enter the file name, and click **Export**.  
A new tab opens showing the progress of the export.
- 5) When the export is finished, check the messages for any warnings before you close the tab.

## Change user passwords

---

If you use LDAP password authentication, you can reset and change a user's password as necessary.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **User Authentication**.
- 2) Browse to **Users** and then to the correct LDAP Domain and User Group.
- 3) Right-click the User element and select **Tools > Change Password**.
- 4) In the **New Password** and **Confirm New Password** fields, enter and confirm the password.
- 5) Click **OK**.  
The new password becomes valid immediately.


## Remove the authentication settings of a user

---

If you need to revoke a user's access rights quickly, you can remove all authentication settings of a user without deleting the user.

For example, you might want to remove the authentication settings of a user if the user's account has been compromised.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **User Authentication**.
- 2) Browse to **Users**, then to the correct LDAP Domain and User Group.
- 3) Right-click the User element, then select **Tools > Clear Authentication Attributes**.
- 4) In the Confirmation message, click **Yes**.

# Reset a firewall engine's local user database

You can replace the firewall's local copy of the user database with a copy of the internal user database on the Management Server.

If you use the internal user database of the SMC, the user information is stored centrally on the Management Server. When changes are made, they are incrementally replicated to each firewall node to guarantee fault-tolerant authentication. If necessary, you can perform a full synchronization manually.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single Firewall or individual nodes of a Firewall Cluster and select **Commands > Reset User Database**.
- 2) Click **Yes** in the Confirmation message.  
The node's local copy of the user database is replaced with a copy of the internal user database on the Management Server.


# Set user database replication on or off for Firewalls and Master NGFW Engines

The internal user database on the Management Server is replicated automatically to Firewall engines and Master NGFW Engines.

The engine uses the local copy of the internal user database to authenticate users without a connection to the Management Server. If you have a reason to do so, you can turn off the replication.



**CAUTION:** If you want to prevent users from authenticating, remove the authentication settings of a user instead of turning off the replication. Turning off the replication prevents any new users you add after the operation from authenticating, but might not prevent existing users from doing so.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Single Firewall, Firewall Cluster, or Master NGFW Engine and select or deselect **Options > User DB Replication**.

## Related tasks

[Remove the authentication settings of a user](#) on page 1095



# Examples of Directory Servers

---

These examples illustrate some common uses for Directory Servers and general steps on how each scenario is configured.

## Example: using the internal user database

---

This scenario shows an example of separating users into groups for accessing different resources.

Company A has a general office network and a separate HR network for servers that contain HR information, such as employee records and payroll information. The servers already restrict which users have access. For auditing reasons, the administrators want to separate the users into groups and require authentication to access the HR network. The administrators:

- 1) Create a User Group “HR Users” in the InternalDomain and assign one of the default internal authentication methods.
- 2) Create User elements for each person with access rights under the HR Users group.
- 3) Define Access rules for user authentication on the firewall.

## Example: integrating Microsoft Active Directory Servers

---

This scenario shows an example of integrating Microsoft Active Directory servers.

For more information about configuring the Network Policy Server (NPS), see Microsoft’s documentation at <http://technet.microsoft.com>.

Company B has an existing Microsoft Active Directory server that stores user information. They decide to integrate this existing server’s directory services.

The administrators:

- 1) Define an Active Directory Server element.
- 2) Add the SMC-specific classes and attributes into the Active Directory server’s configuration to be able to fully manage the user accounts through the Management Client.
- 3) Define the Management Server as an LDAP client for the Active Directory server.
- 4) Define the Firewall as an authentication client for the NPS.
- 5) Add an LDAP Domain element for the Active Directory server in the Management Client.



# Setting up user authentication

## Contents

- [Getting started with user authentication](#) on page 1099
- [Integrating external authentication services](#) on page 1102
- [Define IPv4 Access rules for authentication](#) on page 1107
- [Enable browser-based user authentication](#) on page 1108
- [Authenticate to firewalls or virtual firewalls](#) on page 1114
- [Customize the User Authentication Pages for browser-based user authentication](#) on page 1115
- [Monitoring and testing user authentication](#) on page 1117
- [Examples of user authentication](#) on page 1118

You can implement user authentication to control which resources different end users can access. You can use authentication as an access requirement in IPv4 Access rules in Firewall Policies. You can use both internal and external user authentication servers.

## Getting started with user authentication

User authentication means requiring the users to prove their identity before giving access to a network resource.

User authentication on the firewall means that the firewall checks user credentials against its own replica of the user database. User authentication is mandatory with mobile VPNs, but you can require it for non-VPN connections as well. User authentication on the firewall is only supported for IPv4 traffic.

Alternatively, if strong authentication is not required, you can allow specific users to access services in a trusted environment without requiring user authentication.

User authentication requires creating user accounts. Different users can use different authentication methods. Storing the user information and authenticating the users are two separate concepts with separate options.

User authentication proceeds as follows:

- The user opens an authentication connection to the firewall.
- The firewall checks if the user exists and which authentication method the user can use.
- The user-supplied credentials are verified.

If authentication succeeds, the firewall lists the user as an authenticated user, taking note of both user name and authentication method.

When the user opens new connections, IPv4 Access rules that contain an authentication requirement can now match (in addition to other rules). The user name and authentication method are both separately checked as matching criteria.

When the configured timeout is reached, the authentication expires and the user is removed from the list of authenticated users. Access rules that require authentication no longer match the user's connections.

With user authentication, you can:

- Maintain separation of internal networks that have different security levels when the confidentiality of the information that is accessed does not need to be strictly enforced. For example, user authentication can provide an extra access control measure for applications that already exchange information securely.
- Allow secure and confidential access from any location to any internal resources for Stonesoft VPN Client users.
- Authenticate Administrator and Web Portal User logons.

The following limitations apply to user authentication:

- User authentication is only supported on Firewalls (not on IPS engines or Layer 2 Firewalls).
- Only IPv4 addresses are supported in user authentication. All elements used in user authentication must have an IPv4 address.

Authentication requires a user database that stores the user information and an authentication method that inspects credentials and grants or denies access.

Firewalls have internal authentication methods. You can also use external RADIUS or TACACS+ authentication servers such as NPS or RSA Authentication Manager (SecurID).

#### Related concepts

[Integrating external directory servers](#) on page 1082

[Enabling access control by user](#) on page 1087

#### Related tasks

[Authenticate administrators using RADIUS or TACACS+ methods](#) on page 360

## Default elements for user authentication

There are predefined **Authentication Method** elements for user authentication on the firewall and for external user authentication.

There are three predefined **Authentication Method** elements for user authentication on the firewall.

- **IPsec Certificate** is for certificate-based authentication.
- **Pre-Shared Key Method** is for use with some third-party VPN clients.
- **User Password** is for simple password authentication against the internal LDAP database (including user authentication in Stonesoft VPN Client hybrid authentication).

To use the firewall for user authentication, you must use one of the predefined **Authentication Method** elements.

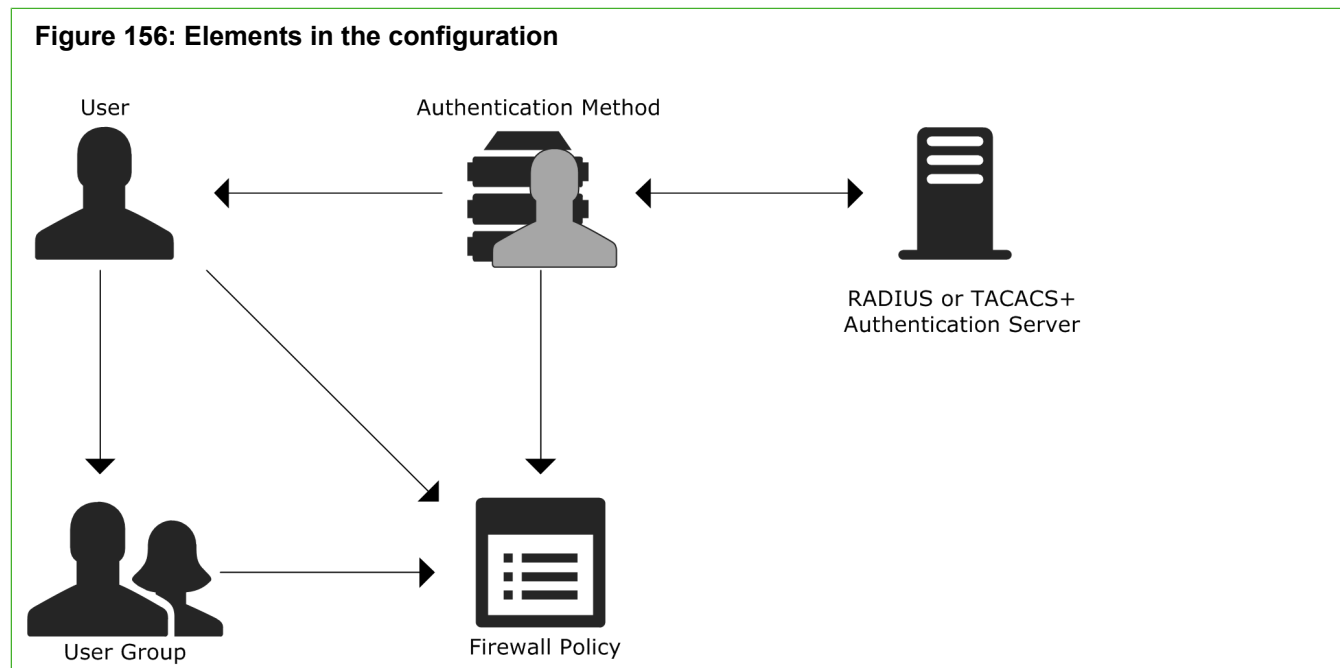
There are three predefined **Authentication Method** elements for use with **RADIUS Authentication Server** or **TACACS+ Authentication Server** elements.

- **Network Policy Server** is for use with an external Network Policy Server (NPS) server.
- **Pre-Shared Key Method** is for use with some third-party VPN clients.
- **User Password** is for simple password authentication against the internal LDAP database.

## User authentication configuration overview

Authentication methods define the authentication method used by particular users and user groups.

The following illustration shows how user authentication elements are configured.



External authentication servers are configured as **RADIUS Authentication Server** or **TACACS+ Authentication Server** elements. RADIUS or TACACS+ authentication servers can be located in any network that allows them to communicate with the firewall that has an authentication rule in its policy. **Authentication Method** elements are associated with authentication servers to define the allowed authentication methods for the server, or the servers that use a particular authentication method.

**Authentication Method** elements define the allowed authentication methods for IPv4 Access rules and for the Users and User Groups. Both **User** and **User Group** elements can be used in IPv4 Access rules to define rules that only match connections from specific, successfully authenticated users. A specific Authentication Method definition is needed in each IPv4 Access rule especially when the Users and User Groups have several allowed Authentication Methods. Otherwise, the rules can allow any defined Authentication Method that is allowed for the included users.

Follow these general steps to configure user authentication:

- 1) (Optional) Create server elements and Authentication Method elements for external authentication services.
- 2) Add an authentication requirement to the relevant IPv4 Access rules.
- 3) (Stonesoft VPN Client authentication) Install the Stonesoft VPN Client software on the users' computers. See the Stonesoft VPN Client documentation for more information.
- 4) (Browser-based Authentication) Configure the authentication prompt:
  - Enable users to authenticate using a browser-based authentication prompt.
  - Customize the authentication prompt.

#### Related concepts

[Integrating external authentication services](#) on page 1102

### Related tasks

[Define IPv4 Access rules for authentication](#) on page 1107

[Enable browser-based user authentication](#) on page 1108

[Customize the User Authentication Pages for browser-based user authentication](#) on page 1115

# Integrating external authentication services

---

An external authentication server can be any server that supports either the RADIUS or the TACACS+ protocol, including Microsoft Active Directory servers.

**Active Directory Server**, **RADIUS Authentication Server**, and **TACACS+ Authentication Server** elements define the settings necessary for connecting to an external authentication server.

**Authentication Method** elements define the allowed authentication methods for the server, or the servers that use a particular authentication method.

In addition to the server element configuration in the Management Client, you must configure the external authentication server to allow the firewalls to use the authentication services.

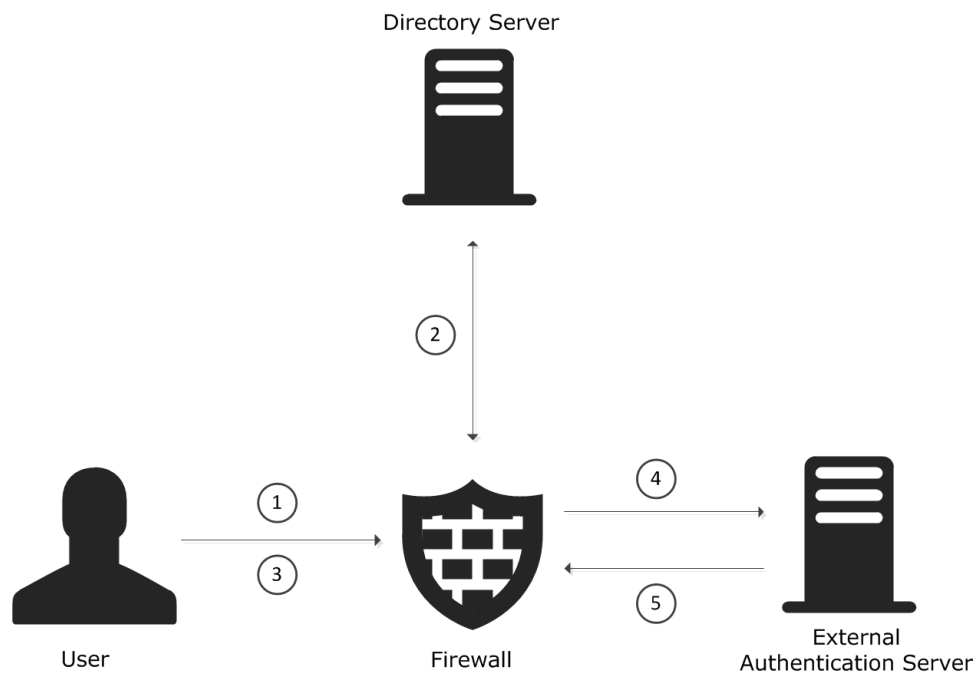
## Overview of external user authentication

---

External user authentication means that authentication services are provided by an authentication server external to the SMC.

You can use external authentication services that support the RADIUS or TACACS+ protocol, such as RSA Authentication Manager or the NPS (Network Policy Server) of a Windows (Active Directory) server. User authentication is only supported for IPv4 traffic.

External user authentication proceeds as follows:

**Figure 157: External user authentication process**

- 1 The user opens an authentication connection to the firewall.
- 2 The firewall queries the directory server to check if the user exists and which authentication method the user should use.
- 3 The firewall prompts the user to authenticate, and the user enters the credentials required for the authentication method.
- 4 The firewall relays the user credentials to the authentication sever.
- 5 The authentication server verifies the user credentials and responds to the firewall whether authentication succeeds or fails.

If authentication succeeds, the firewall lists the user as an authenticated user, storing both the user name and authentication method.

When the user opens new connections, IPv4 Access rules that contain an authentication requirement can now match (in addition to other rules). The user name and authentication method are both separately considered as matching criteria.

When the configured timeout is reached, the authentication expires and the user is removed from the firewall's list of authenticated users. IPv4 Access rules that require authentication no longer match the user's connections.

## Directory servers for external user authentication

You can use an external authentication server to authenticate users.

You can use the same server for storing and authenticating the users, for example, when you use a Microsoft Active Directory server for both tasks. However, remember that storing the user information and authenticating the users are two separate concepts with separate options.

To define different IPv4 Access rules for different users and user groups with external authentication, you must integrate an external directory server with the SMC.

It is also possible to use an external authentication server without integration of an external directory server. In this configuration, the user information is not available to the firewall. You cannot add different IPv4 Access rules for different users and user groups. Instead, you add the user \*external\* with the external authentication methods into the internal user database, and use it to define IPv4 Access rules for authentication.

#### Related concepts

[Getting started with directory servers](#) on page 1079

## Using RADIUS in user authentication

Remote Authentication Dial-in User Service (RADIUS) is a protocol for carrying authentication, authorization, and configuration information.

RADIUS is a widely supported standard. For example, Microsoft NPS and RSA Authentication Manager support the protocol and can be used for user authentication in the SMC.

RADIUS uses UDP as its transport protocol. The exchanges between the client and the RADIUS server are authenticated by using a shared secret, which is never sent over the network. User passwords transferred between the client and the RADIUS server are encrypted using the MD5 message digest algorithm. The rest of the RADIUS communications are in cleartext.

Servers that provide RADIUS-based authentication methods can also be used for authenticating administrators' Management Client logons and wireless client connections to wireless interfaces on firewalls.

#### Related concepts

[Single Firewall configuration overview](#) on page 63

## Using TACACS+ in user authentication

Terminal Access Controller Access Control System Plus (TACACS+) is a protocol used for similar purposes as RADIUS.

In general, TACACS+ provides a more secure method of user authentication than RADIUS. TACACS+ uses TCP as the transport protocol instead of UDP, so transport is more reliable and less sensitive to disruption at the network layer.

TACACS+ also separates authentication, authorization, and accounting services, whereas RADIUS provides a user profile defining all user-specific parameters with the authentication. This separation of services allows TACACS+ to use other forms of authentication, such as Kerberos, together with its own authorization.

TACACS+ uses a pre-shared key to authenticate exchanges. TACACS+ encrypts all traffic between the authentication server and the device requesting authentication. User information, such as IDs and passwords, are secured with the MD5 message digest algorithm.

## User authentication methods

Authentication methods define the authentication method used by particular authentication servers, and by particular users and user groups.

The following authentication methods can be used:

- User passwords stored in internal or external LDAP databases.
- IPsec certificates and passwords (for use with the Stonesoft VPN Client).
- Pre-shared keys (for use with some third-party VPN clients).





- External authentication provided by servers that support the TACACS+ (Terminal Access Controller Access Control System Plus) protocol.
- External authentication provided by servers that support the RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-in User Service) protocol.

The SMC supports many third-party Authentication Methods. You can integrate third-party authentication products with the SMC through the RADIUS and TACACS+ protocols. Integrating third-party authentication products provides simple password authentication, one-time passwords, or any other user name/passcode-type authentication schemes.

## Create RADIUS or TACACS+ Authentication Server elements

You can authenticate end-user access through Firewalls and administrator's logons to the SMC against external authentication servers that support either the RADIUS or TACACS+ protocol.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **User Authentication**.
- 2) Right-click **Servers** and select **New > RADIUS Authentication Server** or **New > TACACS+ Authentication Server**.
- 3) Configure the settings on the **General** tab.
- 4) (Optional) Click the **Secondary IP Addresses** tab and define more IP addresses.  
Only IPv4 addresses are supported. These IP addresses are only used in IPv4 Access rules and routing. Firewalls always use the RADIUS or TACACS+ authentication server's main IP address when they contact the authentication server.
- 5) (Optional) If you want the RADIUS or TACACS+ authentication server to be monitored by the Log Server, click the **Monitoring** tab and configure the monitoring settings.
- 6) Click **OK**.
- 7) Configure the RADIUS or TACACS+ authentication server to accept connections from your Firewall engines:
  - Make sure that the shared secret is entered identically in the Management Client and on the RADIUS or TACACS+ authentication server.
  - The identity that the Firewall provides to the server is the IP address of the interface that has been selected as the value for the **Identity for Authentication Requests** in the Firewall's Interface Options.



**Note:** The IP address used as the identity is a name only. The interface and IP address used for the authentication-related connections is selected based on the Firewall's routing information just like for any other connection.

## Result

The connections to RADIUS or TACACS+ authentication servers are allowed in the predefined Firewall Template. Make sure your IPv4 Access and IPv4 NAT rules are configured correctly for these connections.

### Related concepts

[Define contact IP addresses](#) on page 129

### Related tasks

[Create Location elements](#) on page 129

[Activate monitoring of third-party devices](#) on page 228

# Define Authentication Method elements for external servers

Authentication Method elements represent third-party external authentication servers in user properties and IPv4 Access rules.

There is a predefined Authentication Method for NPS that is automatically used for authentication with Microsoft NPS and Active Directory. To use some other external authentication server, or to use an Active Directory server for RADIUS-based authentication, you must define Authentication Method elements.


Each Authentication Method element can be associated with one or more servers, but each RADIUS Authentication Server or TACACS+ Authentication Server can only be associated with one Authentication Method element. When multiple servers are associated with the same Authentication Method element, the servers are used as alternative servers if the first contacted server does not respond. All servers associated with the same Authentication Method element must contain identical information for each authenticating user. It is not possible for the user to determine which of the alternative servers is contacted.


Authentication Method elements are used in the following configurations:

- In directory server element properties and in User and User group properties to specify the allowed authentication methods for the users.
- In the properties of a RADIUS or TACACS+ Authentication Server, or an Active Directory Server to specify the authentication method offered by the server.
- In the IPv4 Access rules to specify which authentication method users are required to use.

The RADIUS and TACACS+ protocols are generic communications protocols for user authentication. You can use many different types of authentication methods that use the RADIUS and TACACS+ authentication protocols, such as static passwords, one-time passwords, or any other user name/passcode-type authentication schemes.

Firewalls can also use the Internet Authentication Service (IAS) in previous Windows Server versions or the Network Policy Server (NPS) in Windows Server 2008 to authenticate end users. If you use a Windows Server's IAS/NPS service for authentication, define Active Directory Server elements instead.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **User Authentication**.
- 2) Right-click **Authentication Methods**, then select **New Authentication Method**.

- 3) In the **Name** field, enter the name, then select the authentication method **Type**.
- 4) Click **Add**, then select one or more RADIUS or TACACS+ Authentication Servers.
- 5) Click **OK**.

## Define IPv4 Access rules for authentication

The IPv4 Access rules in a firewall policy can be configured to match only when the user is authenticated. With mobile VPNs, some form of authentication is always mandatory. You can also require authentication for non-VPN access. The authentication parameters are defined in the **Authentication** cell.

**Figure 158: Authentication field in the IPv4 Access rules**

ID	Source	Destination	Service	Action	Authentication
5.1	± ANY	net-10.1.1.0/24	ANY	Enforce VPN: \$Client-to-gateway IPsec VPNs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mobile VPN users</li> <li>Authorization Timeout = 3600</li> <li>IPsec Certificate</li> <li>Network Policy Server</li> <li>User password</li> </ul>

An authentication method is activated when at least one rule that contains the corresponding Authentication Method element is installed on the firewall. The authentication is granted for a specific duration based on source IP address.

VPN client user authentication does not require specific rules for clients to authenticate. Browser-based authentication or Telnet based authentication require Access rules that allow access to the firewall interface.

Once the user successfully authenticates, the firewall adds the user on a list of authenticated users. The next connection that the user opens can match an Access rule that requires authentication if the user and authentication method match the parameters of the rule.

The User, User Group, and Authentication Method elements are only used as matching criteria. Any of the other rules above or below can also match the authenticated user's connections. It is especially important to consider whether other rules might match VPN client connections. The VPN Client can be configured to receive an IP address from the organization's internal IP address space.


If necessary, you can define rules that discard connections from some combinations of Users and Authentication methods. You can use the Source VPN cell in IPv4 Access rules to match VPN traffic/non-VPN traffic as you want.

In Firewall IPv4 Access rules, the Authentication cell specifies matching criteria for accessing a particular service and for setting options for the authentication. Authentication rules can be used to require authentication to access services and for authenticating VPN client users. The authentication settings in a rule are configured in the same way regardless of whether a VPN is used.



**CAUTION:** Only a VPN guarantees confidential information exchange. A rule that only requires authentication does not significantly increase the security of access from external networks to internal networks.

Connections from users who have not successfully authenticated, or whose authentication has expired do not match rules that require authentication. The connection matching continues to rules further down in the policy.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Open the Firewall Policy for editing.
- 2) Add an IPv4 Access rule and define the **Source**, **Destination**, and **Service**.
- 3) Right-click the **Action** cell and select the action:
  - Select **Allow** to create a rule that allows access to a particular service.
  - Select **Use VPN** if you want to direct connections into a VPN.
- 4) Double-click the **Authentication** cell.
- 5) Select **Require Authentication**.
  - The users are required to authenticate themselves. The request is sent to the appropriate external authentication server and evaluated.
- 6) Select one of the authorization types:
  - **Connection** authorization is granted for a single connection. Each connection requires that the users type in their credentials again. This option is useful for granting restricted access to a particular service that does not open many separate connections.
  - **Client IP** authorization permits connections from the client's IP address for as long as indicated in the Timeout setting in seconds. The default **Timeout** is 3600 seconds. This option is better if you want to grant access to several services or a service that opens many connections during a single session.
- 7) Switch to the **Users** tab and select the **Users** or **User Groups** that this rule applies to.
- 8) Switch to the **Authentication Methods** tab and select the Authentication Methods or click **Set to ANY** to allow any authentication method.
- 9) Click **OK** to close the **Authentication Parameters** dialog box.
- 10) Install the policy to transfer the changes to the Firewall.

#### Related tasks

[Enable browser-based user authentication](#) on page 1108

## Enable browser-based user authentication

Browser-based user authentication allows end users to authenticate to a Firewall or Virtual Firewall using any standard web browser, or using external RADIUS or TACACS+ authentication servers.

End users usually authenticate through a VPN client, which requests the user to authenticate as needed. When the VPN client is used, successful authentication opens a VPN tunnel.

End users can alternatively open an authentication page in a web browser. The end users can authenticate using encrypted HTTPS connections as well as plain HTTP connections. Browser-based user authentication is configured in the properties of the firewall. The IPv4 Access rules for allowing authentication connections are not included in the Firewall Template Policy. You must add a rule that allows this traffic in the firewall's policy. You must also add IPv4 Access and Inspection rules to enable redirection of unauthenticated HTTP connections to the logon page.

The end users can also start a separate Telnet authentication connection to the firewall. If you want to use Telnet authentication, you must allow the authentication connections from the end users to TCP port 2543 in the Firewall Policy.



**CAUTION:** Telnet connections are unsecured and transfer user access credentials in cleartext. Use browser-based user authentication with HTTPS or with a VPN client to avoid loss of sensitive information.

### Related concepts


[Getting started with basic policy-based VPN configurations](#) on page 1141

### Related tasks

[Customize the User Authentication Pages for browser-based user authentication](#) on page 1115

## Enable browser-based user authentication on the Firewall

Browser-based user authentication is configured in the properties of the Firewall.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Firewall or Virtual Firewall and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Add-Ons > User Authentication**.
- 3) Select **HTTPS** to allow authentication using encrypted HTTPS connections and **HTTP** to allow authentication using plain HTTP connections.



**CAUTION:** Plain HTTP connections are unsecured and transfer the user name and password in cleartext. Use encrypted HTTPS connections to avoid loss of sensitive information.


- 4) (Optional) Change the port settings if you want to use a different port for the authentication interface. You must use the same port settings when you define the IPv4 Access rules that allow the authentication connections.
- 5) (Optional) Select **Always Use HTTPS** if the engine also listens on other ports and you want to redirect the connections to the HTTPS port and enforce the use of HTTPS.  
Example: The engine listens on port 80, but you want to redirect connections to port 443.

- 6) (Recommended) To prevent unauthorized access to resources, select the interfaces through which users can authenticate to the Firewall or Virtual Firewall in the **Listen on Interfaces** section. Only interfaces that have IPv4 addresses are supported.
- 7) From the **User Authentication Page** drop-down list, select a User Authentication Page element. The User Authentication Page element defines the look of the logon page, challenge page, and status page shown to end users when they authenticate. If the User Authentication Page element you want to select is not listed, select **Select**, or select **New** to create a User Authentication Page.
- 8) (Optional) Select **Enable Session Handling** to enable cookie-based strict session handling. If the option is selected, the end user must keep the status page open. If the status page is closed or cannot be refreshed, the connection is terminated.
- 9) (Optional) Select **Refresh Status Page Every** and define how often the status page is automatically refreshed.
  - The option is automatically selected when you select **Enable Session Handling**.
  - If the option is selected, the end user must keep the status page open. If the status page is closed or cannot be refreshed, the connection is terminated.

## Create and sign HTTPS certificates for browser-based user authentication

---

If HTTPS is enabled for Browser-Based User Authentication, you must have a signed HTTPS certificate.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Right-click a Firewall or Virtual Firewall and select **Edit <element type>**. The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **Add-Ons > User Authentication**.
- 3) If **HTTPS** is not selected, select **HTTPS**.
- 4) Click **HTTPS Settings**.
- 5) Enter the certificate information.
- 6) Select how you want to sign the certificate:
  - Select **With External Certificate Authority** if you want to create a certificate request for an external Certificate Authority to sign.
  - Select **Internally with** to sign the certificate using the Internal CA for Gateways of the SMC. If more than one valid internal certificate authority is available, select which internal CA signs the certificate request.
- 7) Click **Generate Request**.

- 8) (External certificate authorities only) When the certificate request is displayed, click **Export** and sign the certificate with an external certificate authority.
- 9) Click **Import Certificate** to import the signed certificate.
- 10) Click **OK** to close the **Certificate Request** dialog box.
- 11) Click **OK** to close the **Browser-Based User Authentication** dialog box.

## Add IPv4 access rules for browser-based user authentication

Browser-based user authentication is not allowed by default in the Firewall Template policy. You must add a rule that allows this traffic in the Firewall Policy.

To reduce the risk of resource consumption or DoS (denial of service) attacks, we recommend limiting the number of connections from each source IP address. Under normal conditions, there should only be one connection at a time from each source IP address. However, incomplete connections or other network errors might temporarily result in more than one simultaneous connection attempt from the same IP address. Set the limit for your simultaneous connections according to your network environment so that the limit does not interfere with legitimate connection attempts.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the Firewall Policy and select **Edit**.  
The policy opens for editing.

- 2) Add the following IPv4 Access rule:

**Table 132: IPv4 Access rule for browser-based user authentication**

Source	Destination	Service	Action
ANY	\$\$Local Cluster (CVI addresses only) or \$\$Interface ID X. (If specific listening interfaces are selected on the General tab in the Browser-Based User Authentication Properties.)	HTTP, HTTPS, or both (Port settings must be the same as defined on the General tab in the Browser-Based User Authentication Properties.)	Allow Connection tracking: Default Connection limit by Source: the number of simultaneous connection attempts you want to allow

- 3) Install the policy to transfer the changes to the Firewall.

# Enable redirection of unauthenticated HTTP connections

To use Browser-Based User Authentication, you must define some IPv4 Access rules.

You must define the following IPv4 Access rules:

- An Access rule that allows all clients to access the logon page.
- An Access rule that allows authenticated users to establish HTTP connections.
- An Access rule that redirects unauthenticated HTTP traffic to the logon page.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Open the Firewall Policy for editing and add the following IPv4 Access rules:

**Table 133: Example Access rules for unauthenticated HTTP connections**

Source	Destination	Service	Action	Authentication
ANY	IP addresses of interfaces through which users can authenticate.	HTTP (Port settings must be the same as defined on the <b>General</b> tab in the Browser-Based User Authentication Properties.)	Allow	
ANY	IP addresses of network services that require authentication.	HTTP	Allow	Users/User Groups who are allowed to access services, and appropriate Authentication Methods.
ANY	IP addresses of network services that require authentication.	HTTP	Refuse Connection tracking: Default Response: redirect to the logon page.	

- 2) Install the policy to transfer the changes to the engine.

## Related concepts

[User Response elements and how they work](#) on page 943



# Enable redirection to the original HTTP destination

Add the necessary Access rules to configure the redirection of unauthenticated HTTP connections from the status page to the HTTP destination that the user originally wanted to access.

You must define the following IPv4 Access rules:

- An Access rule that allows all clients to access destinations that do not require authentication.
- An Access rule that allows authenticated users to establish HTTP connections.
- An Access rule that redirects unauthenticated HTTP traffic to an Inspection rule.
- An Access rule that refuses all HTTP traffic.

Using the HTTP\_Request-with-redirect-capability Situation, you must also define the following IPv4 Inspection Exceptions in the Inspection Policy:

- An Exception that permits all matching connections to access destinations that do not require authentication.
- An Exception that permits authenticated users to establish HTTP connections.
- An Exception that redirects unauthenticated HTTP traffic to the logon page using the original destination URL as a parameter in the redirection.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Open the Firewall Policy for editing, then add the following IPv4 Access rules:

**Table 134: Example Access rules for redirecting unauthenticated HTTP connections to the original HTTP destination**

Source	Destination	Service	Action	Authentication
ANY	IP addresses of services that do not require authentication.	HTTP HTTPS	Allow	
ANY	ANY	HTTP HTTPS	Allow	Users/User Groups who are allowed to access services, and appropriate Authentication Methods.
ANY	IP addresses of network services that require authentication.	HTTP	Allow Deep Inspection: on	
ANY	ANY	HTTP	Refuse	



**Note:** Deep Inspection must be enabled in the Access rules for redirecting unauthenticated HTTP connections to the original HTTP destination. The redirection must be configured in the Inspection Policy using the using the HTTP\_Request-with-redirect-capability Situation.

- 2) Click  **Save**.

- 3) Open the Inspection Policy for editing.
- 4) Add the following IPv4 Inspection Exceptions, then specify a User Response that redirects HTTP traffic terminated by the Inspection rules to the URL of the logon page and onwards to the original HTTP destination.

**Table 135: Example Inspection Exceptions for redirecting unauthenticated HTTP connections to the original HTTP destination**

Situation	Severity	Source	Destination	Protocol	Action
HTTP_Request-with-redirect-capability	ANY	ANY	IP addresses of services that do not require authentication	ANY	Permit
HTTP_Request-with-redirect-capability	ANY	Users/User Groups who are allowed to access services, and appropriate Authentication Methods.	ANY	ANY	Permit
HTTP_Request-with-redirect-capability	ANY	ANY	ANY	HTTP	Terminate Response: redirect to the logon page, including the original URL as a parameter in the redirection

- 5) Click  **Save and Install** to transfer the changes to the engine.

#### Related concepts

[User Response elements and how they work](#) on page 943

## Authenticate to firewalls or virtual firewalls

Users can authenticate using a compatible VPN client, a web browser, or a standard Telnet client.

If the users are authenticating for VPN access, they must authenticate using a compatible VPN client.



**CAUTION:** If users authenticate over an unsecured connection, use a one-time password scheme to reduce the risk of unauthorized access.

### Steps

- 1) Access the authentication prompt in one of the following ways:
  - Follow the instructions for the VPN client on connecting and authenticating to the firewall.

- Enter the IP address and port of the Firewall to open an authentication page in a web browser.
- Enter the following command:

```
telnet <firewall's IP address or DNS name> 2543
```

- 2) Enter the user access credentials.
  - If you only enter your user name without specifying the LDAP domain, the Firewall assumes the default LDAP Domain. If your user account does not belong to the default LDAP Domain, add the LDAP Domain to the user name with an @-character as a separator.

Type "fred@mobileusers" for user "fred" in the LDAP Domain "mobileusers."

## Customize the User Authentication Pages for browser-based user authentication

---

You can customize the logon page, challenge page, and different status pages that are shown to end users when they authenticate using a web browser.

The pages you define are the same for all user groups. The default HTML pages are stored as a .zip file and they are included in dynamic update packages.

## Export the default User Authentication Page for browser-based user authentication

---

You can export a default User Authentication Page element and edit the HTML pages using any HTML editor.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Engine Properties > User Authentication Pages**.  
The default User Authentication Page elements are displayed in the right pane.
- 3) Right-click the default User Authentication Page element, then select **Properties**.
- 4) Click **Export** and save the .zip file under a different name.
- 5) Click **Cancel** to close the dialog box.

# Customize the default HTML pages for browser-based user authentication

You can use an HTML editor to edit the HTML pages.

For example, you can add images and CSS files to the default pages.

## Steps

- 1) Decompress the exported .zip file to your computer.
- 2) Open the HTML file in an HTML editor.



**CAUTION:** The following fields and buttons must not be removed from the default HTML files.


HTML file	Required fields
Logon page	The <b>Username</b> and <b>Password</b> fields, and the <b>Login</b> button.
Challenge page	The <b>Challenge Response</b> field and the <b>Login</b> button.
Status page	The <b>Logged On</b> , <b>Connection Status</b> , and <b>Authentication Message</b> fields.
Status Page With Automatic Redirection	The <b>Logged On</b> , <b>Connection Status</b> , <b>Authentication Message</b> , and <b>Your original destination</b> fields.
Status Page With Manual Redirection	The <b>Logged On</b> , <b>Connection Status</b> , <b>Authentication Message</b> , and <b>Continue to Your Original Destination From This Link</b> fields.


- 3) Compress the customized files into a .zip file.

# Import the custom HTML pages for browser-based user authentication

To use the customized HTML pages, you must create a custom User Authentication Page element and import the custom files.

The HTML files are validated during the import to make sure that the HTML pages conform to basic HTML standards.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Engine Properties**.
- 3) Right-click **User Authentication Pages** and select **New User Authentication Page**.

- 4) Click **Browse** in the **User Authentication Page Properties** dialog box and select the .zip file that you created.  
The files are validated during import. The **Name** is detected automatically based on the name of the .zip file.
- 5) (Optional) Preview the HTML pages by clicking the preview options.
  - **Preview Login Page**
  - **Preview Challenge Page**
  - **Preview Status Page**
  - **Preview Status Page With Automatic Redirection**
  - **Preview Status Page With Manual Redirection**
- 6) Click **OK**.

## Monitoring and testing user authentication

---

You can find information about successful and failed user authentication attempts, as well as the system's own connections to external authentication servers in the logs.

You can also create reports based on this data. There is a separate view for monitoring the currently active authenticated users.

If there are problems with integration with external components, you can activate more detailed diagnostics logging for authentication.

### Related concepts

[Monitoring connections, blacklists, VPN SAs, users, routing, and SSL VPNs on page 193](#)

### Related tasks

[Enable or disable diagnostics on Firewalls on page 330](#)

# Examples of user authentication

These examples illustrate common uses for User Authentication and general steps on how each scenario is configured.

## Example: authenticating VPN client users

This scenario shows an example of restricting VPN access so that only specific users can access the secure network.

Company A's employees include several consultants who frequently work at customer locations, but also remotely access Company A's secure network. All users are stored in the Management Server's internal directory, and there is a separate User Group called Consultants for accounts belonging to the consultants. The administrators have set up a mobile VPN for remote access. They want to allow all users to establish a VPN tunnel to the office, but allow only users in the Consultants group to access the secure network.

The administrators:

- 1) Create a rule that establishes a VPN tunnel and allows users in the Consultants group to access the Secure Network after successful authentication:

Source	Destination	Service	Action	Authentication
DHCP address range for VPN clients Internal Networks	Secure Network	HTTP SSH FTP	Enforce VPN	Consultants User Group User Password Authentication

- This rule allows any users in any directory that is defined in the SMC to authenticate to a VPN client if their allowed authentication methods include User Password.
  - This rule allows any user whose account is stored in the internal directory to use a VPN client to establish a VPN tunnel to the office.
- 2) Create a rule to allow users who have established VPN tunnels to access the company's internal networks from the DHCP-assigned IP addresses for VPN clients:

Source	Destination	Service	Action	Authentication
DHCP address range for VPN clients	Internal Networks	ANY	Allow	

- 3) Transfer the policy to the firewall.

## Example: integrating Microsoft Active Directory Servers

A general overview of integrating Active Directory servers.

For more information about configuring the NPS, see Microsoft's documentation at <http://technet.microsoft.com>.

Company B has an existing Microsoft Active Directory server that stores user information. They decide to use this existing information for user authentication.

The administrators:

- 1) Define an Active Directory Server element.
- 2) Add the SMC-specific classes and attributes into the Active Directory server's configuration to be able to fully manage the user accounts through the Management Client.
- 3) Define the Management Server as an LDAP client for the Active Directory server.
- 4) Define the Firewall as an authentication client for the NPS.
- 5) Add an LDAP Domain element for the Active Directory server in the Management Client.
- 6) Add an IPv4 Access rule with authentication defined as shown here.

**Table 136: Example Access rule for NPS authentication**

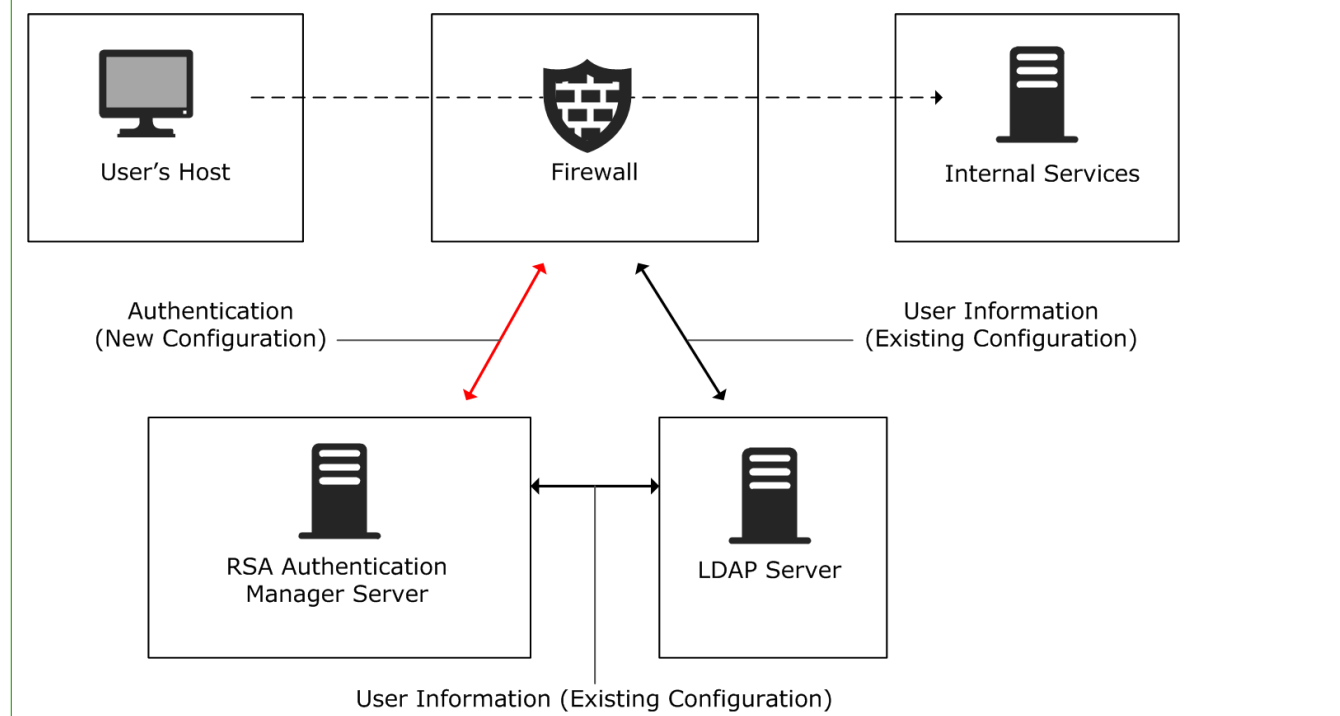
Source	Destination	Authentication
IP addresses of authenticated hosts.	IP addresses of network services that require authentication.	Some User or User Group elements from the AD's LDAP Domain. Require authentication with "Network Policy Server" Authentication Method.

## Example: using SecurID authentication with the Stonesoft VPN Client

This example shows a general overview of using SecurID authentication for the Stonesoft VPN Client.

For more information about using SecurID authentication, see RSA's documentation at <https://www.rsa.com>.

Company C is about to introduce remote Stonesoft VPN Client access to their network. The administrators decide to add one-time passwords with SecurID cards with their existing RSA Authentication Manager server that already shares the user information with the company's LDAP server.

**Figure 159: Company C's authentication scheme**

The administrators:

- 1) Create an Agent Host record for the Firewall in the RSA Authentication Manager server.
- 2) Configure a mobile VPN in the Management Client with the default Hybrid Authentication selected as the authentication method for connecting clients.
  - Hybrid authentication is available for the Stonesoft VPN Client. Hybrid authentication requires the VPN Gateway (the firewall) to authenticate users using a certificate. The users must provide the correct User Name/Password combination (validated by the RSA Authentication Manager server in this case).
- 3) Create a RADIUS Authentication Server element.
- 4) Create a custom Authentication Method element for the server and name it "SecurID."
- 5) Add the "SecurID" Authentication Method in the correct User and User Group elements (stored on the existing external LDAP server).
- 6) Add IPv4 Access rules with both an authentication and a VPN requirement defined as shown here:



**Table 137: Example Access rule for SecurID authentication**

Source	Destination	Authentication	Action
The virtual IP address range used on the virtual adapters of the Stonesoft VPN Client.	IP addresses of network services that require authentication.	Some User or User Group elements. Require authentication with "SecurID" Authentication Method.	"Use VPN" with the "Enforce" option.



# PART XI

## Virtual private networks

### Contents

- [Getting started with VPNs](#) on page 1125
- [Basic Policy-Based VPN configurations](#) on page 1141
- [Configuring VPNs](#) on page 1165
- [Managing VPN certificates](#) on page 1231
- [Reconfiguring existing VPNs](#) on page 1247
- [VPN client settings](#) on page 1259

Forcepoint NGFW supports policy-based VPNs (virtual private networks) and one Route-Based VPN.



# Getting started with VPNs

## Contents

- [VPNs and how they work](#) on page 1125
- [IPsec protocol in VPNs](#) on page 1128
- [Authentication in IPsec VPNs](#) on page 1130
- [Supported encryption methods for IPsec VPNs](#) on page 1134
- [Configuring IPsec VPNs with external gateway devices](#) on page 1137
- [Logs related to VPNs](#) on page 1137
- [Using a dynamic IP address for a VPN endpoint](#) on page 1138
- [Using a NAT address for a VPN endpoint](#) on page 1138
- [Clustering and VPNs](#) on page 1139
- [Multi-Link and VPNs](#) on page 1139

A VPN extends a secured private network over public networks by encrypting connections so that they can be transported over insecure links without compromising confidential data.

## VPNs and how they work

VPNs secure the communications through authentication, encryption, and integrity checking mechanisms.

- *Authentication* provides a way for the devices at both ends of the VPN to confirm the identity of the other device. Authentication prevents malicious parties from obtaining confidential data or access by posing as a legitimate host.
- *Encryption* scrambles the transmissions to prevent anyone from viewing the content, providing privacy for the communications.
- *Integrity checking* detects whether packets have been changed in transit, which could be a sign of malicious tampering or transmission errors.

Forcepoint NGFW provides two types of VPNs. The main difference between the two is how traffic is selected to use the VPN:

- *Policy-based VPNs* are configured using Policy-Based VPN elements. The firewall Access rules define which traffic is sent to the VPN and which traffic is allowed out of the VPN.
- *Route-based VPN tunnels* are configured using the Route-Based VPN element. Any traffic that is routed to firewall interfaces that are designated as endpoints for a VPN tunnel is sent into the VPN tunnel. If Access rules allow the traffic, it is automatically sent through the tunnel to the peer endpoint.

Policy-based VPNs are recommended for the following uses:

- To create mobile VPNs with IPsec tunnels, SSL VPN tunnels, or both IPsec and SSL VPN tunnels.
- To create VPNs in which some gateways act as central gateways and other gateways act as satellite gateways (for example, star topology and VPN hub topology).

The Route-Based VPN is recommended for the following uses:

- To use VPN tunnels as paths in dynamic routing.
- To protect the integrity of dynamic routing communications that are sent through the Internet.
- To protect and route multicast streams through the Internet.



**Note:** You cannot use the same endpoint IP addresses in both the Route-Based VPN and a policy-based VPN.

## Limitations

The following limitations apply to VPNs:

- VPNs are not supported on Layer 2 Firewalls.
- If your Forcepoint NGFW installation is configured in a restricted operating mode to comply with regulatory requirements, some VPN options are not available to you.
- Version-specific limitations in supported features for different Forcepoint NGFW versions are listed in the [Release Notes](#) for the versions you are using. The SMC automatically prevents the use of unsupported settings based on engine version.

### Related concepts

[VPN configuration overview](#) on page 1165

[Getting started with basic policy-based VPN configurations](#) on page 1141

[SSL VPN configuration](#) on page 1209

[Overview of Route-Based VPN configuration](#) on page 1214

[Configuring IPsec VPNs with external gateway devices](#) on page 1137

### Related tasks

[Use a policy-based VPN to encrypt Route-Based VPN tunnels](#) on page 1220

## How policy-based VPNs work

In policy-based VPNs, the Access rules determine which traffic is sent into the VPN tunnels.

## Types of tunnels in policy-based VPNs

Policy-based VPNs can have two types of tunnels:

- *IPsec* tunnels — The IPsec protocol allows any IP traffic to be transported in the VPN regardless of which higher-level protocol the traffic uses on top of the IP protocol. Hosts can communicate through the VPN as if it was a normal link without the need for application-specific configurations on the gateway device. IPsec is part of both the IPv4 and IPv6 standards. IPsec is defined in RFC 4301.
- *SSL VPN* tunnels — SSL VPNs use secure sockets layer (SSL) encryption to provide secure remote access. With SSL VPNs, authenticated users establish secure connections to internal HTTP-based services through a web browser or through a client application.  
You can also use SSL VPN tunnels with the Stonesoft VPN Client in mobile VPNs.

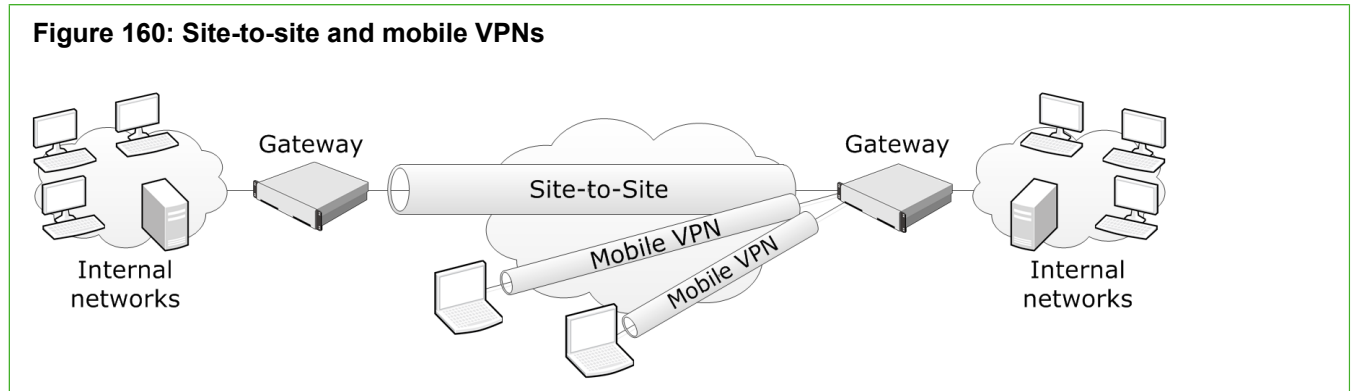
You can use SSL VPN tunnels alone, IPsec tunnels alone, or both SSL VPN and IPsec tunnels together in the same policy-based VPN.

## Site-to-site and mobile VPNs

You can create VPNs between gateway devices or between a VPN client and a gateway device:

- A *site-to-site VPN* is created between two or more gateway devices that provide VPN access to several hosts in their internal networks. Site-to-site VPNs are supported for IPv4 and IPv6 traffic.
- A *mobile VPN* is created between a VPN client running on an individual computer and a gateway device. Mobile VPNs are supported only for IPv4 traffic.

**Figure 160: Site-to-site and mobile VPNs**



For mobile VPNs, we recommended using the Stonesoft VPN Client solution. Stonesoft VPN Client is available for the following platforms:

- Android (SSL VPN only)
- Mac OS (SSL VPN only)
- Windows (IPsec or SSL VPN)

In mobile VPNs with IPsec tunnels, you can alternatively use a third-party IPsec-compatible VPN client. However, third-party clients do not support all features offered by Forcepoint NGFW.



**Note:** Most VPN clients that are a part of a vendor-specific VPN gateway solution are incompatible with gateways from other vendors.

The following limitations apply to mobile VPNs:

- Mobile VPNs can only be created in policy-based VPNs.
- All mobile VPNs that you configure in Forcepoint NGFW must be valid for Stonesoft VPN Client even if you use only third-party VPN client software.
- VPN clients cannot connect directly to firewalls that have a dynamic IP address. Instead, VPN clients connect through a central gateway that forwards the connections to the non-compatible gateways using a site-to-site VPN.

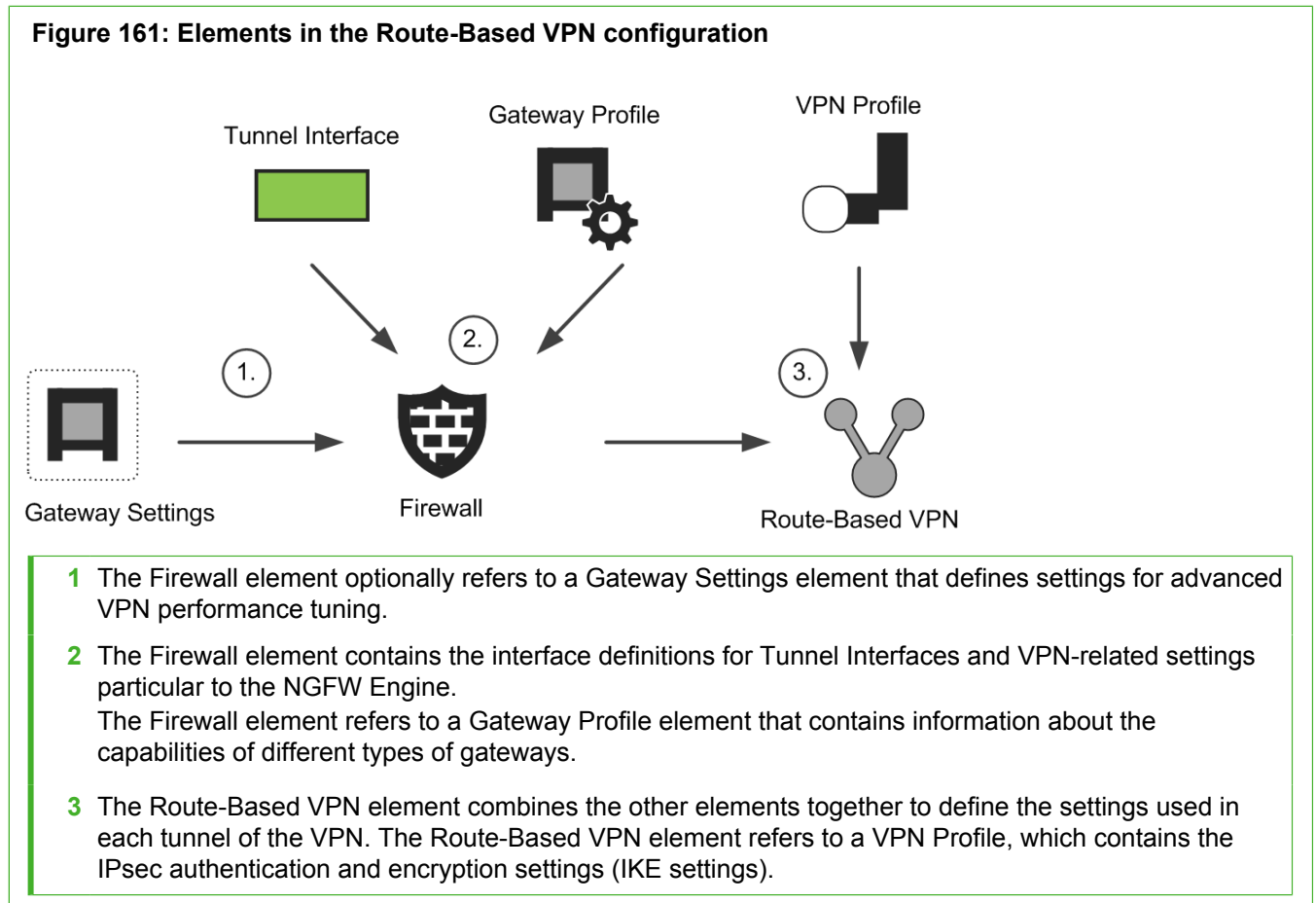
## How the Route-Based VPN works

Devices that provide VPN access are called *VPN gateways*. With the Route-Based VPN, you can create only *site-to-site* VPN tunnels between gateway devices.

There are two general types of VPN gateways in the SMC:

- *VPN Gateways* elements are NGFW Engines that are managed by the Management Server and administrative Domain you are currently connected to with your Management Client.
- All other gateway devices are *External VPN Gateway* elements. NGFW Engines that are managed by a different Management Server or administrative Domain are also External VPN Gateway elements.

Due to the various authentication and encryption methods that the IPsec protocol supports, the number of settings is rather high. To reduce configuration work, you can use reusable profiles for storing different types of settings. These and other elements related to Route-Based VPN configuration are pictured in this illustration.



## Limitations

It is not possible to create a mobile VPN tunnel using the Route-Based VPN.

## IPsec protocol in VPNs

The IPsec protocol allows any IP traffic to be transported in IPsec VPNs regardless of which higher-level protocol the traffic uses on top of the IP protocol.

Hosts can communicate through the IPsec VPN as if it was a normal link without the need for application-specific configurations on the gateway device. IPsec is part of both the IPv4 and IPv6 standards. IPsec is defined in RFC 4301.

When traffic is sent through an IPsec VPN, the gateway or VPN client at the communication source contacts the gateway at the communication destination to establish a VPN tunnel. The original packets are encapsulated when they enter the tunnel, and de-encapsulated when they exit the tunnel at their destination. In between, only the encrypted packets can be detected in the traffic. The hosts that communicate through the tunnel are not aware of the VPN. Communications are sent through the tunnel as if the two gateways were connected directly to each other.



## Tunnel and transport modes

---

The IPsec protocol supports *tunnel mode* and *transport mode* for securing the traffic.

- Tunnel mode encapsulates the complete original packet into a new IPsec packet and is meant for site-to-site and mobile VPNs. IPsec tunnels in policy-based VPNs always use tunnel mode. Tunnels in the Route-Based VPN can use tunnel mode.
- Transport mode does not encapsulate the packets into new IPsec packets. Instead, additional encapsulation, such as *Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE)* or *IP in IP (IP-IP)*, is used to encapsulate the tunneled traffic. Tunnels in the Route-Based VPN can use transport mode.

## Security associations (SA) in IPsec VPNs

---

The settings that are used for a tunnel are stored in *Security Associations (SA)*. There are two SAs for each IPsec VPN tunnel: one for outgoing traffic, and another one for incoming traffic.

For any communications to be able to use the VPN, the gateways must construct and maintain the VPN tunnels. The gateways negotiate which settings to use between each other. The gateways store this information so that it can be used for handling the traffic throughout the lifetime of the VPN tunnel.

The term *SPI* (security parameter index) is sometimes used with SAs in IPsec VPNs. SPIs are used to identify the SAs.

For security reasons, each SA has an expiration time. After the expiration time, the gateways discard the old SAs and agree on new ones if there is still traffic going through the VPN.

## Internet key exchange (IKE) in IPsec VPNs

---

SAs for IPsec VPNs are created in a process called the *Internet key exchange (IKE)* negotiations.

During the IKE negotiations, the VPN gateways negotiate the parameters to use, such as the encryption keys and the authentication methods. This information is then stored in the SAs. Both IKEv1 and IKEv2 are supported with Forcepoint NGFW.

The IKE negotiations consist of two phases:

- Phase 1 — During the *IKE SA* negotiations, the gateways authenticate themselves to each other and establish a secure (encrypted) channel for the IPsec SA negotiations. Authentication in IKE SA negotiations can be done with signatures, or with pre-shared keys. These parameters are then stored in IKE SAs.
- Phase 2 — During the *IPsec SA* negotiations, the gateways select parameters for encrypting the traffic going through the VPN tunnels. These parameters are then stored in IPsec SAs.

The IPsec SA negotiations are much faster than the IKE SA negotiations. Because IKE SA negotiations involve heavy computation, it is common to configure the IKE SAs to expire less frequently than the IPsec SAs.

IKEv2 also provides support for *IKEv2 Mobility and Multihoming Protocol (MOBIKE)* protocol. MOBIKE enables transparent recovery for VPN clients when the VPN clients change their IP addresses. For example, the IP address can change when a laptop is connected to a different network while a VPN connection is open. MOBIKE also allows the IP addresses associated with IKE SAs and IPsec SAs to change in a VPN Multi-Link configuration. When a VPN client fails to connect to a gateway, it checks if another gateway address is available. If the VPN client can connect using the new gateway address, the gateway's IP address is updated in the IKE SAs and the IPsec SAs. VPN traffic can continue uninterrupted. There is no need to renegotiate the SAs.

## Perfect forward secrecy (PFS) in IPsec VPNs

PFS guarantees that the encryption keys for IPsec SA negotiations are created separately for each negotiation.

It is possible to configure the IKE SA negotiations to occur less frequently than IPsec SA negotiations to improve performance. However, this arrangement is less secure than renegotiating both phases again, because the IPsec SA negotiations generate encryption keys based on information from the IKE SA negotiations. To improve security, you can activate PFS. When the encryption keys are created separately for each negotiation, a compromised key can only be used to decrypt communications sent before the next IPsec SA negotiation. Otherwise, compromising one key can potentially breach all communications between two IKE SA negotiations, which cover a longer period.

## Authentication header (AH) and encapsulating security payload (ESP) in IPsec VPNs

After an IPsec VPN tunnel is established, any traffic going through the tunnel is sent either as *Authentication Header (AH)* or *Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP)* packets.

- The IPsec AH protocol does not provide data encryption, so plain AH does not result in a VPN in the full meaning of the word. Anyone who can intercept the packets in transit can see the transferred data. AH can be used to provide authentication and data integrity in communications that do not need encryption. There is rarely any need to use AH alone. AH alone can be used when no encryption is required for the data, but ESP with Null encryption can also be used to achieve the same purpose.
- The IPsec ESP protocol provides authentication, encryption, and integrity checking, providing secure data transfer. This protocol is what is usually meant with the term VPN, as the transferred data is hidden from outsiders. As a general guideline, use ESP for any normal VPN tunneling (data encapsulated in ESP payload).
- The IPsec standards also support a combination of ESP and AH. However, this option does not provide significant security improvements in the type of VPNs the Forcepoint NGFW establishes.

## Authentication in IPsec VPNs

Authentication requires an exchange of information between the two authenticating parties. The exchange must be done securely, so that the exchanged information is unusable, even if intercepted.

The confidentiality of authentication exchanges is most often achieved through digital signatures or through encrypting the authentication messages with a pre-shared key.

- Digital signatures use a public-private key pair to sign messages. This method requires that digital certificates signed by a mutually trusted certificate authority (CA) are present.
- VPN authentication with a pre-shared key does not require the presence of digital certificates. It requires the exchange of a secret encryption key that is known by both communicating parties.

Both methods can be secure enough for VPNs if used correctly, but the security of the pre-shared key method is much more dependent on administrator actions. If pre-shared keys are used for authentication, the keys must be long and random to be sufficiently secure. The pre-shared key must be kept secret, since the security of this configuration relies on the assumption that only the legitimate parties know the key.

**Related concepts**[Supported encryption methods for IPsec VPNs](#) on page 1134

## Supported authentication methods for IPsec VPNs

Authentication verifies that the remote party is who they claim they are (for example, to prevent a man-in-the-middle attack). The IPsec standards mandate support for some options, but also allow other options to be provided by IPsec-compatible products. RFC 4305 lists the IPsec standard requirements that all IPsec-compliant products must follow.

### Using pre-shared key (PSK) authentication

A pre-shared key is a string of characters that is used as an authentication key. You can use pre-shared keys for site-to-site VPN authentication and with third-party VPN clients.

Both gateways create a hash value based on the pre-shared key and other information. The hash values are then exchanged and verified to authenticate the other party. As its name suggests, the pre-shared key has to be distributed beforehand to all devices that use it. Pre-shared keys must be transferred confidentially, since their security benefit is immediately lost if the key is exposed to unauthorized parties.

The pre-shared keys must also be long and random to be secure. Short or predictable pre-shared keys can be easily broken in brute-force attacks. Administrators must also remember to renew the pre-shared keys periodically to maintain a high level of security. Forcepoint NGFW includes tools for generating sufficiently long, random pre-shared keys for VPN components. The keys are automatically transferred to any NGFW Engines that need them using the secure system communications channel.

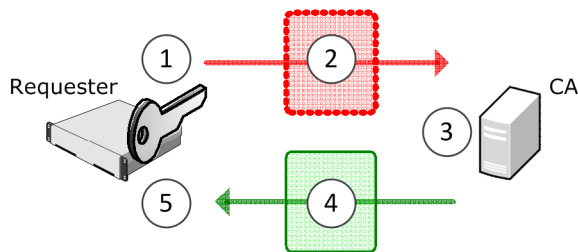
### Using certificate-based authentication

You can use certificates for authentication in any IPsec VPN, including the Route-Based VPN.

In all site-to-site VPNs and in mobile VPNs with third-party VPN clients, you can select whether to use certificates or a pre-shared key for authentication. With the Stonesoft VPN Client, the following types of authentication are available:

- *Hybrid authentication* requires the presence of a valid certificate on the gateway and some other form of authentication from the VPN client user.
- *Certificate exchange authentication* requires a certificate from both the gateway and the VPN client.

Certificates often provide better real-world security than pre-shared keys. Certificates only have to be renewed at an interval of a few years, and have an automatic expiration mechanism that makes sure the certificate is renewed. Certificate files cannot be compromised in transit, since they cannot be used without a private encryption key. This illustration outlines the basics of how a certificate is generated.

**Figure 162: VPN certificate creation**

- 1 When a certificate request process is started, a private encryption key is generated and stored.
- 2 The certificate requester uses the private key to generate an encrypted certificate request that is transferred to the certificate authority (CA).
- 3 The CA signs the encrypted certificate request, which validates the certificate.
- 4 The signed certificate is transferred to the original certificate requester.
- 5 The requester uses its stored private key to access the certificate.

The certificate creation is either automatic or manual:

- For VPN gateways, all steps can be automatic if the default internal certificate authority is used for signing the certificate. If some other certificate authority is used, the certificate request is exported from the SMC and the signed certificate is imported back into the SMC as a file.
- For VPN clients, the certificate request file is created manually in the VPN client and transferred manually to be signed by an internal certificate authority or some other certificate authority. The signed certificate is then transferred manually into the VPN client computer.

Private keys are always generated automatically. If the private key is lost (for example, due to a hardware failure), any associated certificate becomes unusable and a new certificate has to be created. The private key is securely and automatically synchronized between clustered firewall nodes to allow all nodes to use the same certificate.

Unlike pre-shared keys, certificates do not need to be distributed to all gateways in the VPN. Instead, the other gateways are configured to trust the certificate issuer (the CA that signed the certificate), after which they trust all certificates from that issuer. This trust relationship also allows renewing or re-creating the certificate on one gateway without having to reconfigure the other gateways. Only certificates from trusted sources are accepted in authentication. For this reason, VPN gateways must be configured to trust the certificate authorities that sign the certificates that the other gateways use for authentication.

## Validity of certificates

Certificates are always valid starting from a specific date and time and expire at a specific date and time in the future.

All components that use (or sign) certificates must have the correct time settings to avoid unexpected certificate rejections. The **Internal RSA CA for Gateways** and the **Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways** of the Management Server generate certificates that are valid starting immediately until three years from their creation.

*Certificate revocation lists* (CRL) can be used to cancel a certificate before it reaches its expiration. For example, a certificate might be revoked if unauthorized parties have obtained a copy of both the certificate and the associated private key. The Internal RSA CA for Gateways and the Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways do not support certificate revocation lists. If you want to use CRLs, you must use an external certificate authority (either one you maintain yourself or a commercial service). The CRL servers are accessed using LDAP or HTTP (depending on what the certificate specifies). If all defined CRL servers are unreachable, the certificates are treated as invalid until the CRL can be checked. You can set up the NGFW Engine to access CRL servers directly or use the OCSP protocol.

## Internal VPN certificate authorities

---

The Management Server includes a dedicated Internal RSA CA for Gateways and optionally an Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways for signing VPN certificates for creating self-signed certificates.

You can use both an Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways and an Internal RSA CA for Gateways at the same time.

The internal certificate authorities run on the same computer as the Management Server. If you have both types of internal certificate authorities, only one certificate authority can be selected as the default certificate authority. Only the default CA is used in automated RSA certificate management. You must manually create and renew any certificates that are not signed by the default CA.

If you want to use the internal certificate authorities to sign certificates, you must export, transfer, and import certificate requests and signed certificates manually. The Internal RSA CA for Gateways and the Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways do not support certificate revocation lists. We do not recommend using the internal certificate authorities to sign certificates for components that are outside the control of your organization.

The Internal RSA CA for Gateways and the Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways are each valid for 10 years. A new Internal RSA CA for Gateways or Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways is automatically created to replace the default certificate authority 6 months before the expiration date. The internal certificate authority that is not selected as the default certificate authority is not automatically renewed.

If automatic RSA certificate management is activated for an NGFW Engine, RSA certificates issued by the default certificate authority are renewed automatically. You must manually renew certificates if the certificate-related files, including the private key stored on the engines, are damaged or lost. You must also manually create and renew any certificates that are signed not signed by the default certificate authority. If certificates for authenticating VPN client users were signed by the expiring Internal CA for Gateways, you must manually create new certificates for the VPN clients. You must also create new certificates manually for external components that have certificates signed by the Internal RSA CA for Gateways or the Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways.

## External certificate authorities

---

External certificate authorities can create certificates for VPN Gateways, External VPN Gateways, or VPN clients.

All IPsec certificates follow the ITU-T X.509 standard, which is also used in protocols such as TLS/SSL and HTTPS. External certificate authorities are especially useful when creating VPNs with partner organizations. Using external certificate authorities allows both organizations to use their preferred certificate authority. Different gateways in a VPN can have certificates signed by different certificate authorities.

To make NGFW Engines accept externally signed certificates of external components, you simply import the public key of the external certificate authority into the SMC.

To create a certificate for NGFW Engines or the Stonesoft VPN Client, you must generate a certificate request and have it signed by the external certificate authority. The external certificate authority must support PKCS#10 certificate requests in PEM format and the signed certificates must also be in the PEM format. Furthermore, the certificate authority must be able to copy all attributes from the certificate request into the certificate. Especially, the X.509 extension Subject Alternative Name must be copied into the certificate because its value is used for identification.

# Supported encryption methods for IPsec VPNs

Select encryption settings in your IPsec VPN according to the guidelines in your organization's security policy.

The message digest algorithms (for integrity checking) and encryption methods that are available in IPsec VPNs are listed. The IPsec standards mandate support for some options, but also allow other options to be provided by IPsec-compatible products. RFC 4305 lists the IPsec standard requirements that all IPsec-compliant products must follow.

Estimates of how common support for the various algorithms in IPsec-compatible products are listed. This information can be helpful when deciding which methods to use when establishing a VPN with a third-party VPN device.

## FIPS mode

If your organization is required to follow FIPS encryption standards, some of the options presented are not available in your system. See the *Common Criteria Certification User's Guide* for more information.

## GOST-compliant systems

If your organization is required to follow GOST encryption standards, the options in your system are mostly different from the options presented.

# Supported message digest algorithms for IPsec VPNs

Message digest algorithms are used to guarantee the integrity of data (that the packets have not been changed in transit). These algorithms are often also referred to using the MAC or HMAC abbreviations (keyed-hash message authentication code).

**Table 138: Supported message digest algorithms**

Algorithm	Description
AES-XCBC-MAC	<p>128-bit hash algorithm.</p> <p>Available only for checking the integrity of IPsec traffic.</p> <p>Many IPsec-compatible VPN devices do not support this algorithm, but support is becoming increasingly common.</p> <p>Reference: RFC 3566.</p>

Algorithm	Description
MD5	<p>Message-Digest algorithm 5</p> <p>A 128-bit hash algorithm (also referred to as HMACMD5).</p> <p>Available for checking the integrity of the IKE negotiations and IPsec traffic.</p> <p>Most IPsec-compliant VPN devices still support this algorithm, but support might become less common in the future.</p> <p>Reference: RFC 2403.</p>
SHA-1	<p>Secure Hash Algorithm</p> <p>Has a 160-bit hash (sometimes referred to as HMAC-SHA-1).</p> <p>Available for checking the integrity of the IKE negotiations and IPsec traffic.</p> <p>All VPN devices must support this algorithm to be fully IPsec-compliant.</p> <p>Reference: RFC 2404.</p>
SHA-2	<p>Secure Hash Algorithm</p> <p>Has 256-bit, 384-bit, and 512-bit hashes (includes SHA- 224, SHA-256, SHA-384, and SHA-512).</p> <p>Available for checking the integrity of the IKE negotiations and IPsec traffic.</p> <p>Most IPsec-compliant VPN devices support this method.</p> <p>Reference: RFC 4868.</p>



**Note:** The restricted (-R) product version has no strong encryption algorithms.

## Supported encryption algorithms for IPsec VPNs

Encryption algorithms scramble data, so that it is not viewable while in transit.

**Table 139: Supported encryption methods**

Method	Description
AES-128	<p>Advanced Encryption Standard (also referred to as Rijndael) with a 128-bit/192-bit/256-bit encryption key. The AES-128 option uses 128-bit keys by default, but accepts stronger 192-bit or 256-bit keys if requested by the other gateway.</p> <p>Most IPsec-compliant VPN devices support one or both key lengths of these methods, and support is becoming more common.</p> <p>Reference: RFC 4309.</p>
AES-256	

Method	Description
AES-GCM-128	<p>Advanced Encryption Standard (also referred to as Rijndael) in GCM (galois/counter mode), uses a 16-octet ICV (integrity check value). AES-GCM-128 uses a 128-bit encryption key, and AES-GCM-256 uses a 256-bit encryption key. Provides both authentication and encryption. These methods replace the selected message digest algorithm. In high-performance networks, these encryption methods are recommended.</p> <p>Many IPsec compatible VPN devices do not support one or both key lengths of these methods, but support is becoming more common.</p> <p>Reference: RFC 4106.</p>
AES-GCM-256	
DES	<p>Data Encryption Standard (also referred to as the Data Encryption Algorithm, DEA) uses a 56-bit encryption key.</p> <p>Do not use DES if you can avoid it. DES has been largely abandoned because the short key makes it vulnerable to attacks. If you must use DES, make sure that PFS is enabled and that the encryption keys are frequently renegotiated.</p> <p>Many IPsec-compliant VPN devices still support this method, but support is becoming less common.</p> <p>Reference: RFC 2405.</p>
Blowfish	<p>Uses up to 448-bit keys. Policy-based VPNs use 128-bit keys by default, but accept up to 448-bit keys if requested by the other gateway.</p> <p>Many IPsec-compatible VPN devices do not support this method.</p> <p>Reference: RFC 2451.</p>
3DES	<p>Triple-DES (also referred to as TDES or TDEA, Triple Data Encryption Algorithm), uses 168-bit encryption achieved with three different 56-bit encryption keys.</p> <p>3DES is processor-intensive compared to the level of protection it offers and is therefore not the most efficient method. It might not be optimal for VPNs that handle large traffic volumes or systems that otherwise have a high load.</p> <p>Most IPsec-compliant VPN devices support this method.</p> <p>Reference: RFC 2451.</p>
Null	<p>No encryption. Traffic is sent as cleartext just like any non-VPN traffic. Anyone who intercepts the VPN traffic in transit can view the traffic.</p> <p>Null encryption is useful only in special cases. Do not select it for any VPN that requires protected data transfer.</p> <p>Most IPsec-compliant VPN devices support this method.</p> <p>Reference: RFC 2410.</p>



**Note:** The restricted (-R) product version has no strong encryption algorithms.



# Configuring IPsec VPNs with external gateway devices

An External VPN Gateway is any VPN gateway that is not controlled by the same Management Server (and the same administrative Domain) on which you are configuring the gateway element.

Often, external gateway devices are at a partner organization, not under your control, and not Forcepoint NGFW devices. Because IPsec is a networking standard, you can create a VPN between gateways of different brands by selecting the settings you want identically for both gateways. Any option that both gateways support is a valid option for the VPN.

The settings that must match are:

- The IKE SA settings.
- The IPsec SA settings.
- The site definitions (IP addresses) defined for both gateways at both ends (possibly translated using NAT).
- The endpoint identity type and value. The endpoint identity value is often the IP address of each gateway, but other options are also possible.

When the listed settings are identical, the VPN works. Unfortunately, there are some practical problems that complicate matching the settings.

The first problem you might experience when you configure a VPN between different brands of gateways is how to agree on common settings. Every setting must match to produce a fully functional VPN, and the supported options can be partly different on the different gateways. There is not a single common standard for naming the different options. The two gateways might use a different name for the same authentication or encryption method. If Forcepoint NGFW devices are used as External VPN Gateways, you can export and import some settings between the two Management Servers (or between administrative Domains). However, many of the configurations must still be manually constructed.

The IP addresses accessible through each gateway are a commonly mismatched setting. In VPN Gateways controlled by the Management Server on which the VPN is configured, the IP addresses included in the policy-based VPN are defined as separate Site elements. The security association (SA) granularity setting defines whether a new VPN tunnel is established per each communicating host or per each network. In most gateways, there is an option for the SA setting. However, some gateways might select the SA automatically based on the type of IP address definition or even have a fixed setting.



**Note:** Site definitions are always defined for the VPN Gateway or External VPN Gateway element and are used in all policy-based VPNs where the same gateway is used. If you add a site to a gateway in one policy-based VPN, disable it in other policy-based VPNs where you do not want the site to be included.

## Related concepts

[Supported encryption methods for IPsec VPNs](#) on page 1134

## Logs related to VPNs

VPN negotiations and VPN traffic are logged as informational messages and can be viewed in the **Logs** view like any other logs.

New connections that are allowed through the policy-based VPN are logged like any other traffic according to the logging options in the Access rules.

If there are VPN-related problems, you can activate IPsec diagnostics for the firewall to get more detailed information about the VPN negotiations. The Troubleshooting topics contain further information about possible problems, including explanations for the most common messages you might see in the logs.

## Using a dynamic IP address for a VPN endpoint

---

There are some restrictions when a VPN endpoint has a Dynamic IP address (assigned using DHCP, PPPoA, or PPPoE).

The following restrictions apply:

- Each VPN tunnel can have a dynamic IP address at only one end. The VPN can be established only one way: From the endpoint with a dynamic IP address to the endpoint with a static IP address. There must be frequent enough traffic from the gateway with the dynamic IP address to establish and keep up the VPN tunnel. If there is not frequent enough traffic, you can send some traffic through the VPN from the site with the dynamic IP address gateway. Sending traffic ensures that the tunnel is up and ready for traffic coming from the gateway with a static IP address.
- It is not possible to configure a mobile VPN to endpoints that have a dynamic IP address. As a workaround, clients can connect to a gateway with a static IP address. The gateway can be configured to forward the traffic through a site-to-site VPN to the gateway with a dynamic IP address.
- When a dynamic IP address is used, the VPN gateway must be set up to use some other identifier than the IP address: Either DNS name, email address, or (if certificate authentication is used) the certificate's Distinguished Name (DN).
- IKEv1 main mode with pre-shared key authentication is not supported in VPNs involving gateways with dynamic IP addresses. Aggressive mode allows the use of pre-shared keys, but for security reasons certificate-based authentication is also recommended when IKEv1 is set in aggressive mode.

## Using a NAT address for a VPN endpoint

---

VPN traffic is protected against modifications, so there are some restrictions when NAT is applied to the encrypted traffic.

If a gateway does not have a public IP address as a VPN endpoint, you might need to configure NAT traversal.

You might also need to configure the policy-based VPN with contact addresses so that the gateways are aware of the NAT operation:

- Firewalls that are used as VPN Gateways in a NAT environment must have Locations and Contact Addresses defined for the endpoint interfaces involved. On Firewall Clusters, CVIs must have Locations and Contact Addresses defined. If Contact Addresses have already been configured for non-VPN use, the same general configuration applies to VPN communications as well. The Stonesoft VPN Client downloads its configuration from the gateway, including any contact address configuration as needed.
- Usually, External VPN Gateways must be defined using their private IP addresses. The public IP address must be added as the Contact Address for the Location of the contacting Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role.

# Clustering and VPNs

A Forcepoint NGFW cluster can be used as a gateway in policy-based VPNs and the Route-Based VPN. There are no additional configuration steps compared to a Single Firewall.

Clustering provides high availability and load balancing at the VPN gateway with multiple nodes in a cluster. If one of the nodes is commanded offline or fails, the remaining nodes in the cluster take over the VPN traffic that was handled by that node. To allow the nodes to use the same certificate, the associated private encryption key is exchanged securely through the heartbeat channel. To external VPN gateways, the cluster presents itself as a single device with a single endpoint (CVI IP address) to contact.

# Multi-Link and VPNs

Using Multi-Link enhances the reliability of the VPN communications by offering network connection high availability.

Forcepoint NGFW can balance the traffic load between multiple network links and redistribute traffic when a link goes down. Using Multi-Link reduces the possibility of link congestion or ISP network connectivity breaks. Multi-Link is not a part of the IPsec standards.



**Note:** Multi-Link is only supported with Forcepoint NGFW gateways at both ends. If an external gateway device allows configuring multiple VPN tunnels between two devices, you might still be able to use some Multi-Link features. Not all Multi-Link features are available with an external gateway device.

In a Multi-Link configuration, the traffic can use one or several alternative tunnels to reach the same destination. Multi-Link guarantees that even if one or more tunnels fail, the VPN service continues as long as some tunnel is available.

Multi-Link can be used between two Forcepoint NGFW gateways when one or both gateways use multiple network connections. VPN traffic is balanced between the tunnels based on the link availability checks on each VPN tunnel. If one of the links fails or becomes congested, the VPN traffic is routed through the other tunnels.

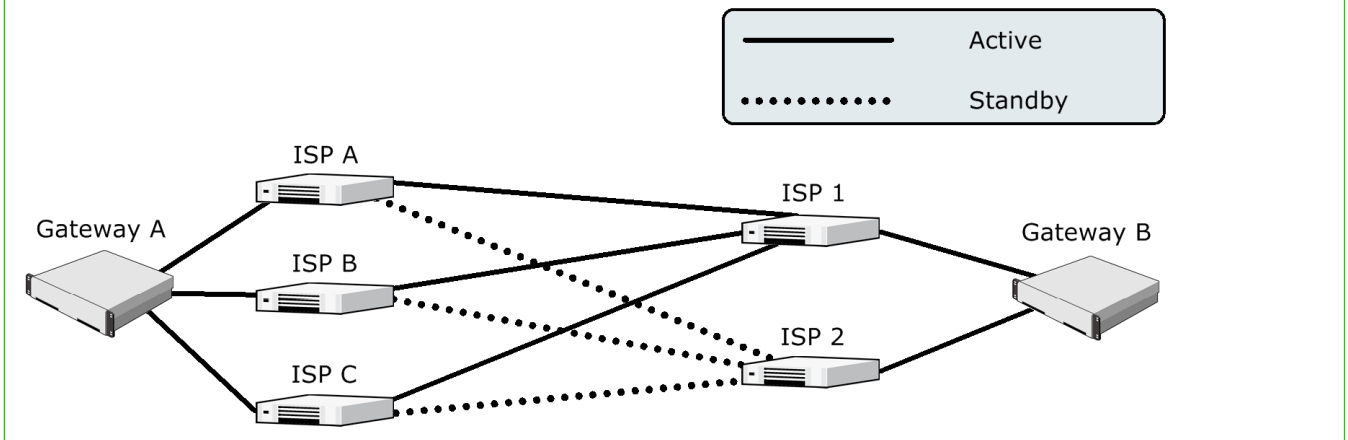
The VPN links can be in three different modes: active, aggregate, or standby. If there are multiple links in active mode, traffic is dynamically balanced across the links. The balancing decision can be based on a performance measurement or based on the links' relative bandwidths. In active mode, a single connection uses one of the active links. With multiple connections, all links are used. If there are multiple links in aggregate mode, each connection is balanced on a packet-by-packet basis between all aggregate links in round robin fashion. Standby tunnels are used only if all active or aggregate tunnels become unavailable. Individual tunnels can also be disabled so that they are never used in the VPN.



**Note:** Aggregate mode in a Multi-Link VPN is likely to cause packet reordering due to different latencies of different links. Packet reordering can decrease performance if the TCP stacks of the connection endpoints do not handle reordering well. Use Active mode instead.

This illustration shows a Multi-Link VPN between two VPN Gateways that both have multiple Internet connections. In this configuration, ISP 2 at Gateway B acts as a backup link for VPN traffic. The three tunnels (one from each ISP at Gateway A) with their endpoints in the ISP 2 network have been set to standby. They are only used if ISP 1 fails. The standby setting is not tied to a particular ISP (NetLink). It is possible to set, for example, only the ISP A to ISP 2 tunnel to active mode while leaving the other tunnels in standby mode.

**Figure 163: Example of a Multi-Link VPN with standby tunnels**



The Stonesoft VPN Client can also use Multi-Link. If one of the gateway's links fails, the client automatically connects to the next available NetLink.

# Basic Policy-Based VPN configurations

## Contents

- [Getting started with basic policy-based VPN configurations](#) on page 1141
- [Configuration 1: Basic VPN between NGFW Engines](#) on page 1142
- [Configuration 2: Basic VPN with a partner gateway](#) on page 1145
- [Configuration 3: Basic VPN for remote clients](#) on page 1153
- [Configuration 4: Basic VPN hub](#) on page 1160

The basic Policy-Based VPN configurations outline specific examples for common Policy-Based VPN configuration scenarios.

## Getting started with basic policy-based VPN configurations

You can use these examples when setting up your own policy-based VPNs and add other features after the basic scenario is configured and working.



**Note:** VPNs are not supported on Layer 2 Firewalls.

The following basic configurations are explained:

- Configuration 1 is for creating a site-to-site VPN between two or more NGFW Engines that are managed through the same Management Server. A default set of VPN settings is used to simplify the configuration.
- Configuration 2 is for creating a site-to-site VPN between an NGFW Engine and an IPsec-compatible VPN gateway that is not managed through the same Management Server. A customized set of VPN settings is created. Customized settings are typically mandatory for this configuration. A pre-shared key is used for authentication.
- Configuration 3 is for creating a mobile VPN between an NGFW Engine and the Stonesoft VPN Client installed on individual computers. A default set of VPN settings is used to simplify the configuration.
- Configuration 4 is for creating a site-to-site VPN in which several remote gateway connect to a hub gateway. The hub gateway forwards connections to the other remote gateways as necessary. A default set of VPN settings is used to simplify the configuration.

**Related concepts**

[Configuration 1: Basic VPN between NGFW Engines](#) on page 1142

[Configuration 2: Basic VPN with a partner gateway](#) on page 1145

[Configuration 3: Basic VPN for remote clients](#) on page 1153

[Configuration 4: Basic VPN hub](#) on page 1160

[VPNs and how they work](#) on page 1125

# Configuration 1: Basic VPN between NGFW Engines

This basic configuration scenario walks you through creating a policy-based VPN between two or more NGFW Engines managed through the same SMC.


This example VPN requires all firewalls to have a fixed IP address (not DHCP- or PPPoE-assigned).


The address spaces protected by the different NGFW Engines that act as gateways must not overlap within any single VPN. If you use the same IP addresses at the different locations, you must apply NAT to the communications. You must also define the sites using the translated IP addresses (the addresses that are used inside the VPN tunnels).

This scenario uses the default **VPN-A Suite** VPN profile that contains the VPN settings specified for the VPN-A cryptographic suite in RFC 4308. The profile uses pre-shared keys for authentication.

## Configure the firewall's VPN settings for configuration 1

You can optionally configure the Sites to use NAT to translate the IP addresses of the hosts that make connections through this VPN.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the Firewall element and select **Edit Single Firewall** or **Edit Firewall Cluster**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **VPN > Sites**.
- 3) Drag and drop the networks for the NAT address space on top of the (top-level) automatic Site element on the right.  
The Sites must include only internal networks. Do not add interfaces with the **Any Network** element in this type of VPN.
- 4) Click  **Save**.

**Related concepts**[Defining VPN gateways](#) on page 1170

# Create a Policy-Based VPN element for configuration 1

In this configuration, you must create a Policy-Based VPN element.



**Note:** This basic configuration scenario does not explain all settings related to Policy-Based VPN elements.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Right-click **Policy-Based VPNs** in the element tree and select **New Policy-Based VPN**.
- 3) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.
- 4) From the **Default VPN Profile** drop-down list, select **VPN-A Suite**.



**Note:** The VPN Profile element defines most of the IPsec settings. You can optionally create a custom VPN Profile element.

- 5) If you want to apply NAT rules to the communications that go through the VPN, select **Apply NAT to traffic that uses this VPN**.  
This setting does not affect the communications that the two gateways have with each other to set up and maintain the VPN. Communications between the gateways are always matched to the NAT rules.
- 6) Click **OK**.  
The **VPN Editing** view opens on the **Site-to-Site VPN** tab.
- 7) To define which gateways can create a VPN with each other, drag and drop two or more VPN Gateway elements from the **Resources** pane to the **Central Gateways** or **Satellite Gateways** lists.
  - If you add a VPN Gateway to the **Central Gateways**, the VPN Gateway can establish a VPN with any other VPN Gateway in this VPN (both Central and Satellite). Add at least one of the VPN Gateways under **Central Gateways**.
  - If you add a VPN Gateway to the **Satellite Gateways**, the VPN Gateway can establish a VPN only with VPN Gateways defined as Central in this VPN. You do not have to add any VPN Gateways to the **Satellite Gateways** (all gateways can be Central).



**Note:** Be careful that you do not accidentally drop VPN Gateway elements on top of other VPN Gateway elements. This configuration creates a hub topology where the top-level VPN Gateway forwards connections from other components to the lower-level VPN Gateway.

- 8) Click the **Tunnels** tab.
- 9) Check that the **Validity** column in the **Gateway<->Gateway** and the **End-Point<->End-Point** tables has a green checkmark to indicate that there are no problems.
  - a) If the **Validity** column of a tunnel has a warning icon, see the **Issues** pane to check what the problem is. If the pane is not displayed, select **≡ Menu > View > Panels > Issues**.
  - b) If issues are displayed, correct them as indicated. Long issues are easiest to read by hovering the cursor over the issue text so that the text is shown as a tooltip.
- 10) Click **Save** to save the Policy-Based VPN.

#### Related concepts

[Defining VPN profiles](#) on page 1183

[Defining Policy-Based VPN elements](#) on page 1192

## Create rules for VPN configuration 1

The rules in this example allow protected hosts to open connections both ways. Two rules are created here to allow the different directions of traffic separately.

VPN rules are matched based on source, destination, and service like any other rules.



**Note:** This basic configuration scenario does not explain all settings related to Access rules for VPNs.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Open the Firewall policy used by the NGFW Engines involved in the VPN for editing.
- 2) Add two IPv4 Access rules in a suitable location in the policy.
  - Make sure that these rules are above other rules that match the same traffic with **Allow**, **Discard**, or **Refuse** as their action.
  - Traffic that you do not want to send through the VPN must not match these rules. Traffic that is not routable through the VPN is dropped if it matches these rules.



## 3) Fill in the rules.

If NAT is enabled in the VPN, remember that the Access rules are checked before the NAT rules are applied.

**Table 140: Example VPN rules**

Source	Destination	Service	Action
Local internal networks	Remote internal networks	Set as needed.	Select <b>Use VPN</b> , then change the <b>Action</b> to <b>Enforce</b> , and click <b>Select</b> to add the Policy-Based VPN element you created.
Remote internal networks	Local internal networks	Set as needed.	Select <b>Use VPN</b> , then change the <b>Action</b> to <b>Enforce</b> , and click <b>Select</b> to add the Policy-Based VPN element you created.

## 4) Save the policy.

## 5) Add the same rules in the policies of all firewalls involved in the VPN.



**CAUTION:** If you continue to use this VPN, change the pre-shared key periodically (for example, monthly) to guarantee continued confidentiality of your data. Alternatively, you can switch to certificate-based authentication by creating a custom VPN profile.

## 6) Refresh the policies of all firewalls involved in the VPN to activate the new configuration.

The VPN is established when traffic matches the Access rules.

#### Related concepts

[Rules for Policy-Based VPNs](#) on page 1201

[Monitoring policy-based VPNs](#) on page 1222

[Changing pre-shared keys for VPNs](#) on page 1254

#### Related tasks

[Find VPN issues](#) on page 1403

## Configuration 2: Basic VPN with a partner gateway

This scenario walks you through creating a site-to-site VPN between one NGFW Engine and one external VPN gateway that is not managed through the same SMC.

To be able to configure this example VPN, your local firewall must have a fixed IP address (not DHCP- or PPPoE-assigned).

The address spaces protected by the different VPN Gateways must not overlap within any single VPN. If you use the same IP addresses at the different locations, you must apply NAT to the communications and define the Sites using the translated IP addresses. The translated addresses are the addresses that are used inside the VPN tunnels.


You can create VPNs with IPsec-compliant gateway devices from many different manufacturers. You can create VPNs with partner organizations that use a third-party VPN solution. The authentication and encryption options to use must be decided beforehand in co-operation with the administrator of the other gateway.

This scenario creates a VPN Profile that contains the VPN settings that you match with settings defined on the external VPN gateway.

## Configure the firewall's VPN settings for configuration 2

---

If you have already configured VPN settings for the firewall engine, there is no need to change any of the settings.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the Firewall element and select **Edit Single Firewall** or **Edit Firewall Cluster**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) If the firewall has a dynamic IP address on an interface that faces the Internet, switch to the **End-Points** tab and
  - a) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **VPN > End-Points**.
  - b) Double-click the endpoint in the table.
  - c) In the **Phase 1 ID** section at the bottom of the dialog box, change the **ID Type** to **E-mail**.
  - d) Type in an email address in the **ID value** field and click **OK**. This email address can be any address that is not used as an ID in any of your other endpoints.  
The address entered here is used only as an identification, not for sending email.
- 3) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **VPN > Sites**. The Sites pane opens on the right.
  - The Sites represent the addresses that are routable through the VPN. Sites do not grant any host access directly. The Access rules define the allowed connections.
  - Leave the **Add and update addresses based on routing** option selected. This option automatically updates this information based on routing changes. You can exclude some interfaces while keeping the others automatically updated as explained in the next step.
- 4) (Optional) Select the internal networks that you want to exclude from the VPN by disabling the interface they are under in the automatic site. Disabled interfaces are grayed-out.
  - If you want to include some individual network that is under an otherwise disabled interface, drag and drop it from under the disabled interface onto the Site element. The element is copied to the higher level. The copied definition is not updated automatically.
  - The Sites must include only internal networks. Do not add interfaces with the Any Network element to this type of VPN.
- 5) To use NAT to translate the IP addresses of the hosts that make connections through this VPN, drag and drop the networks for the translated addresses on top of the (top-level) automatic Site element on the right.

- 6) Click  **Save**.

### Related concepts


[Defining VPN gateways](#) on page 1170


## Create an External VPN Gateway element for configuration 2

You need an External VPN Gateway element for this configuration.



**Note:** This basic configuration scenario does not explain all settings related to External VPN Gateway elements.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Right-click **Gateways** in the element tree, then select **New External VPN Gateway**.
- 3) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.
- 4) Click **Select** for **Gateway Profile**, then select one of the following profiles:
  - Select the **Default (All Capabilities)** profile for third-party gateways.
  - Select the appropriate version-specific profile for Forcepoint NGFW Firewalls managed by a different Management Server.
- 5) Click the **Endpoints** tab.
- 6) Click **Add**.
- 7) Define the IP address for the endpoint:
  - If the endpoint has a static (manually defined) IP address, enter in the **IPv4 Address**.
  - If the endpoint has a dynamic (DHCP-assigned) IP address, select **Dynamic**.
- 8) If the external gateway has a dynamic IP address:
  - a) In the **Phase 1 ID** section at the bottom of the dialog box, change the **ID Type** to **E-mail**.
  - b) Enter an email address in the **ID value** field.

This email address can be any address that is not used as an ID in any of your other endpoints. The address entered here is used only as an identification, not for actually sending email.

- c) Click **OK**.



**Note:** Make sure that the **ID Type** and **ID Value** match the identity configured on the external gateway device. If the device has a static IP address, make sure that the device uses it as its identity in this VPN or change the External VPN Gateway element configuration.

- 9) Leave the properties dialog box open.

#### Related concepts


[Defining VPN gateways](#) on page 1170

## Define a site for the External VPN Gateway for configuration 2

The External VPN Gateway element needs a Site element.

### Before you begin

You must have created an External VPN Gateway element for configuration 2. The **External VPN Gateway Properties** dialog box should still be open.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the **External VPN Gateway Properties** dialog box, click the **Sites** tab.
- 2) Double-click the New Site element on the right.
- 3) (Optional) In the **Name** field, enter a descriptive name for the site.
- 4) Select or create the elements that represent the protected IP addresses behind the Gateway in the left pane, then click **Add** to include them.  
The internal IP address used as the source or destination address must be included in the site of the Gateway. Other traffic cannot use the VPN.
- 5) Click **OK** in both open dialog boxes.

# Create a VPN Profile element for configuration

## 2

You must create a VPN Profile element for this configuration.

### Before you begin

You must have defined a site for the external VPN gateway in configuration 2.



**Note:** This basic configuration scenario does not explain all settings related to VPN Profiles.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the Configuration view, browse to **VPN > Other Elements > Profiles**.
- 2) Right-click **VPN Profiles** in the element tree and select **New VPN Profile**.
- 3) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.
- 4) On the **IKE SA** tab, configure the IKE SA settings.
  - a) Select the **Version**.

You can select **IKEv1**, **IKEv2**, or both. If both versions are selected, IKEv2 is tried first in the negotiations, and IKEv1 is only used if the remote gateway does not support IKEv2.
  - b) In the **Cipher Algorithms** section, select one or more encryption methods that match the settings of the external gateway device.


We recommend that you limit the selection to as few choices as possible. Do not select **DES** unless you are required to do so. DES is no longer secure, since it is relatively easy to break DES encryption with modern computers. **3DES** (Triple-DES) has a relatively high overhead compared to other protocols with a comparable level of security. For this reason, 3DES is not a good choice when high throughput is required.



**Note:** The restricted (-R) product version has no strong encryption algorithms.

- c) Select the **Message Digest Algorithm** that matches the settings of the external gateway device.
  - In IKE, the message digest algorithm is used for integrity checking and key derivation.
  - If you select **SHA-2**, define the **Minimum Length** for the digest: **256**, **384**, or **512** bits. Set the length so that it is in line with the overall security strength.
- d) Select the Diffie-Hellman group or groups (used for key exchange) to be allowed to be used with the external gateway device.

We recommend that you select from groups 14-21 according to the security requirements for the VPN. Groups 1, 2, and 5 are not sufficiently secure in all cases, although they might be required for interoperability with legacy systems.
- e) Select the **Authentication Method**.

- f) If IKEv1 is selected as the Version, adjust the **SA Lifetime in Minutes** to match the settings of the external gateway device.  
In IKEv2, lifetime is set locally, so it does not have to match the lifetime settings of the external gateway.
- g) If one of the Gateways has a dynamic IP address, change the **IKEv1 Negotiation Mode** to **Aggressive**.
- 5) On the **IPsec SA** tab, configure the IPsec SA settings.
- a) Select the **IPsec Type**:
- The recommended setting is **ESP** (the communications are encrypted).
  - Usually, **AH** is not a valid option. The AH setting disables encryption for the VPN, fully exposing all traffic that uses the VPN to anyone who intercepts it in transit. You can use AH to authenticate and check the integrity of communications without encrypting them.
- b) In the **Cipher Algorithms** section, select one or more encryption methods that match the settings of the external gateway device
- Do not select **Null**. This option disables encryption and allows anyone to view the data in transit.
  - Do not select **DES** unless you are required to do so. DES is no longer secure, as it is relatively easy to break DES encryption with modern computers.
  - **3DES** (Triple-DES) has a relatively high overhead compared to other protocols with a comparable level of security. It is not a good choice when high throughput is required.
  - **AES-GCM-128** or **AES-GCM-256** are recommended for high-speed networks.
-  **Note:** The restricted (-R) product version has no strong encryption algorithms.
- c) Select the **Message Digest Algorithm** that matches the settings of the external gateway device.
- In IPsec, the message digest algorithm is used for integrity checking (except when authenticated encryption such as AES-GCM is used).
  - If you select **SHA-2**, define the **Minimum Length** for the digest: **256**, **384**, or **512** bits. Set the length so that it is in line with the overall security strength.
- d) Make sure that **Compression Algorithm** is set to **None**.  
The external gateway must not use compression.
- e) Adjust the **IPsec Tunnel Lifetime** to match the settings of the external gateway device.
- f) Select the **Security Association Granularity for Tunnel Mode** that matches the settings of the external gateway device.
- g) (Recommended) Select **Use PFS with Diffie-Hellman Group** if the external gateway device can use perfect forward secrecy (PFS), and select the Diffie-Hellman group to use with PFS.  
We recommend that you select from groups 14-21 according to the security requirements for the VPN. Groups 1, 2, and 5 are not sufficiently secure in all cases, although they might be required for interoperability with legacy systems.
- 6) Click **OK**.

### Related concepts

[Defining VPN profiles](#) on page 1183

# Create a Policy-Based VPN element for configuration 2

You must add a Policy-Based VPN element for this configuration.

## Before you begin

You must have created a VPN Profile for configuration 2.



**Note:** This basic configuration scenario does not explain all settings related to Policy-Based VPN elements.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click **Policy-Based VPNs** in the element tree, then select **New Policy-Based VPN**.
- 2) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.
- 3) From the **Default VPN Profile** drop-down list, select the VPN profile.
- 4) If you want to apply NAT rules to the communications that go through the VPN, select **Apply NAT to traffic that uses this VPN**.  
This setting does not affect the communications that the gateways have with each other to set up and maintain the VPN. Communications between the gateways are always matched to the NAT rules.
- 5) Click **OK**.  
The **VPN Editing** view opens on the **Site-to-Site VPN** tab.
- 6) Drag and drop the VPN Gateway element that represents the firewall to **Central Gateways**.
- 7) Drag and drop the External VPN Gateway element to **Satellite Gateways**.
- 8) Click the **Tunnels** tab.
- 9) Double-click the **Key** cell for the tunnel displayed in the **Gateway<->Gateway** pane.
- 10) To match the pre-shared key between the two gateways:
  - To use the key that is automatically generated on the Management Server, click **Export**, then transfer the key securely to the external gateway.
  - To use a different key, replace the displayed key with the one that you have agreed on with the administrator of the external gateway device.



**CAUTION:** The pre-shared key must be long and random to provide a secure VPN. Change the pre-shared key periodically (for example, monthly).

- 11) Click **OK** to close the **Pre-Shared Key** dialog box.

- 12) Check that the **Validity** column in the **Gateway<->Gateway** and the **End-Point<->End-Point** tables has a green checkmark to indicate that there are no problems.
  - a) If the **Validity** column of a tunnel has a warning icon, see the **Issues** pane to check what the problem is. If the pane is not displayed, select **☰ Menu > View > Panels > Issues**.
  - b) If issues are displayed, correct them as indicated. Long issues are easiest to read by hovering over the issue text so that the text is shown as a tooltip.
- 13) Click **💾 Save**.

### Related concepts

[Defining Policy-Based VPN elements](#) on page 1192

## Create rules for VPN configuration 2

The rules in this example allow protected hosts to open connections both ways. Two rules are created here to allow the different directions of traffic separately.

### Before you begin

You must have created a VPN element for configuration 2.

VPN rules are matched based on source, destination, and service like any other rules.



**Note:** This basic configuration scenario does not explain all settings related to VPN Access rules.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Open the Firewall policy of the NGFW Engine involved in the VPN for editing.
- 2) Add two IPv4 Access rules in a suitable location in the policy.
  - Make sure that rules for sending traffic through the VPN are above other rules that match the same traffic the **Allow**, **Discard**, or **Refuse** action.
  - Traffic that you do not want to send through the VPN must not match these rules. Traffic that is not routable through the VPN is dropped if it matches these rules.



- Fill in the rules as outlined here. If NAT is enabled in the VPN, remember that the Access rules are checked before the NAT rules are applied.

**Table 141: Example VPN rules**

Source	Destination	Service	Action
Local internal networks	Remote internal networks	Set as needed.	Select <b>Use VPN</b> , then change the <b>Action</b> to <b>Enforce</b> , and click <b>Select</b> to add the Policy-Based VPN element you created.
Remote internal networks	Local internal networks	Set as needed.	Select <b>Use VPN</b> , then change the <b>Action</b> to <b>Enforce</b> , and click <b>Select</b> to add the Policy-Based VPN element you created.

- Save the policy.



**CAUTION:** If you continue to use this VPN, change the pre-shared key periodically (for example, monthly) to guarantee continued confidentiality of your data. Alternatively, you can switch to certificate-based authentication by creating a custom VPN profile.

- Refresh the policies of all firewalls involved in the VPN to activate the new configuration.

## Result

The VPN is established when traffic matches the Access rules created here.

### Related concepts

[Rules for Policy-Based VPNs](#) on page 1201

[Monitoring policy-based VPNs](#) on page 1222

[Changing pre-shared keys for VPNs](#) on page 1254

### Related tasks

[Find VPN issues](#) on page 1403

# Configuration 3: Basic VPN for remote clients

This basic configuration scenario walks you through creating a mobile VPN between an NGFW Engine and more than one Stonesoft VPN Client.

To be able to configure a mobile VPN, the firewall must have a static IP address (not assigned using DHCP or PPPoE).

Depending on the configuration that you want to use, you can add VPN client access to an existing site-to-site VPN as well. However, in this example scenario, a separate Policy-Based VPN is created for VPN clients.

This scenario assumes that automatic Site management is used, and that the Sites do not need to be changed.

In this scenario, the VPN settings are defined in a copy of the default **VPN-A Suite** VPN Profile. The **VPN-A Suite** VPN Profile contains the VPN settings specified for the VPN-A cryptographic suite in RFC 4308.

## Manage VPN client addresses in configuration

### 3


VPN clients cannot use their local IP address in the internal corporate network. In this scenario, NAT is used to solve this problem.


This address management method allows connection opening from the VPN client end only. This method is simpler to set up for testing, as it does not require an external DHCP server. However, this method has some restrictions:

- It does not allow connections to be opened from hosts in the internal network to VPN clients.
- It prevents the Stonesoft VPN Client from using internal DNS servers.

You might want to change the IP address allocation method to **Virtual IP** after you have tested the basic VPN connectivity with the configuration explained here.

This basic configuration scenario does not explain all settings related to VPN client address management.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the firewall element and select **Edit Single Firewall** or **Edit Firewall Cluster**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **VPN > Advanced**.
- 3) Select **Translate IP Addresses Using NAT Pool**.
- 4) Enter the **IP Address Range** of addresses and the **Port Range** you want to use for translating VPN client traffic.  
The VPN clients use these IP addresses when they connect to services in your internal network. Make sure that these IP addresses are not used elsewhere in your network. The translation is dynamic, so the number of IP addresses you enter does not need to correspond to the number of clients connecting. Typically, each connection a VPN client user opens to a resource reserves one port from whichever IP address has unreserved ports within the configured range. The reverse NAT for the reply packets is done automatically.
- 5) Click  **Save**.


#### Related concepts


[VPN client settings and how they work](#) on page 1259

[Virtual IP addresses for VPN clients](#) on page 1263

# Configure the firewall's VPN settings for configuration 3

You must create Gateway elements for the configuration.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the firewall element and select **Edit Single Firewall** or **Edit Firewall Cluster**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **VPN > Certificates**.  
The **Certificates** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Make sure that **Automated RSA Certificate Management** is selected.  
The gateway must have a certificate for a mobile VPN.
- 4) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **VPN > Sites**. The **Sites** pane opens on the right. A Site element is displayed with each internal network interface on the engine as the content.  
The Sites represent the internal addresses that VPN clients can reach through the VPN. This definition alone does not grant access to any hosts. The Access rules define the allowed connections.
- 5) Leave **Add and update addresses based on routing** selected.  
This option automatically updates this information based on routing changes. You can exclude some interfaces while keeping the others automatically updated.
- 6) If you need to make changes in the Sites (add or remove destination addresses that VPN clients route through the VPN), see *Defining Sites for VPN Gateways*.
- 7) Click  **Save**.

## Related concepts

[Defining VPN gateways](#) on page 1170


[Defining Site elements for VPN gateways](#) on page 1177



# Create a VPN Profile element for configuration 3

You must create a custom VPN Profile element to define the settings for VPN clients.



**Note:** This basic configuration scenario does not explain all settings related to authenticating VPN client users.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
  - 2) In the element tree, browse to **Other Elements > Profiles > VPN Profiles**.  
The defined VPN Profiles are displayed.
  - 3) Right-click **VPN-A Suite** and select **New > Duplicate**.  
The settings from the default profile are copied into the **VPN Profile Properties** dialog box that opens.
  - 4) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.
  - 5) On the **IKE SA** tab, configure the IKE SA settings.
    - a) In the **Version** drop-down list, select the IKE version.  
You can select **IKEv1**, **IKEv2**, or both. If both versions are selected, IKEv2 is tried first in the negotiations, and IKEv1 is only used if the remote gateway does not support IKEv2.
    - b) (Only if IKEv1 is selected) Make sure **IKEv1 Negotiation Mode** is set to **Main**.  
Using Main mode helps guarantee that the user names and passwords of the VPN client users remain confidential.
-  **Note:** The restricted (-R) product version has no strong encryption algorithms.
- 6) On the **IPsec Client** tab, configure the VPN client settings.
    - a) Make sure that the **Authentication Method** is set to **RSA Signatures**.
    - b) Select **Allow Hybrid/EAP Authentication**.  
Hybrid authentication is used with IKEv1. EAP (Extensible Authentication Protocol) is used with IKEv2.
    - c) Make sure **IPsec Security Association Granularity for Tunnel Mode** is set to **SA Per Net**.
  - 7) Click **OK**.

#### Related tasks

[Define VPN client settings in VPN Profiles](#) on page 1189

# Create a Policy-Based VPN element for configuration 3

You must add a Policy-Based VPN element for this configuration.

## Before you begin

You must have a custom VPN Profile element for configuration 3.



**Note:** This basic configuration scenario does not explain all settings related to VPN elements.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Right-click **Policy-Based VPNs** in the element tree, then select **New Policy-Based VPN**.
- 3) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.
- 4) From the **Default VPN Profile** drop-down list, select the custom VPN Profile that you created.
- 5) Select **Apply NAT Rules to Traffic That Uses This VPN**.  
This option applies the NAT rules in the policy and the global NAT definition for the Firewall.
- 6) Click **OK**.  
The **VPN Editing** view opens on the **Site-to-Site VPN** tab.
- 7) Drag and drop the VPN Gateway element that represents the firewall to **Central Gateways**.
- 8) On the **Mobile VPN** tab, select **Only central Gateways from overall topology** to define which VPN Gateways provide Mobile VPN access.
- 9) Click the **Tunnels** tab.
- 10) Check that the **Validity** column in the **Gateway<->Gateway** and the **End-Point<->End-Point** tables has a green checkmark to indicate that there are no problems.
  - a) If the **Validity** column of a tunnel has a warning icon, see the **Issues** pane to check what the problem is. If the pane is not displayed, select **Menu** > **View** > **Panels** > **Issues**.
  - b) If issues are displayed, correct them as indicated. Long issues are easiest to read by hovering over the issue text so that the text is shown as a tooltip.
- 11) Click **Save**.

**Related concepts**

[Defining Policy-Based VPN elements](#) on page 1192

## Create users for VPN configuration 3

User authentication is configured in the same way for VPN client connections and normal, unencrypted connections. The same User elements (user accounts) can be used for both.

### Before you begin

You must have a VPN element for configuration 3.



**Note:** This basic configuration scenario does not explain all settings related to user authentication.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **User Authentication**.
- 2) Browse to **Users > InternalDomain**.  
A list of Internal User Groups and Internal Users in the InternalDomain opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click the **stonegate** Internal User Group and select **New > Internal User**.
- 4) In the **Name** field, enter the user name that the end user uses to authenticate to the VPN.
- 5) (Optional) In the **Comment** field, enter the full name of the user.
- 6) Click the **Authentication** tab.
- 7) Click **Add** in the **Authentication Method** section.
- 8) Select **User Password** and click **Select**.  
This default element allows user password authentication for the internal LDAP database.
- 9) In the **Password** and **Confirm Password** fields, enter and confirm the password.  
Make a note of the password so that you can communicate it to the user. The passwords entered in the VPN client are encrypted so that they remain confidential as they are transferred over the Internet.
- 10) Click **OK**.  
The information is added to the Management Server's internal LDAP user database.

**Related concepts**[Getting started with user authentication](#) on page 1099

## Create rules for VPN configuration 3

Create a rule to allow specific users access to internal networks after having authenticated.

The authentication connection from VPN clients is allowed in the Firewall Template. Authentication is always required to establish a VPN tunnel. VPN client connections are matched based on Source, Destination, and Service like any other traffic. The example rule matches only specific users and only after the users have already successfully authenticated. We recommend always adding the authentication requirement to rules that are specific to VPN clients.

After the VPN tunnel is established, any connection from the VPN clients to the internal network is matched against the Access rules as usual. The example rule that is created here allows these connections.



**Note:** This basic configuration scenario does not explain all settings related to VPN Access rules.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Open the Firewall policy that is used by the NGFW Engines involved in the VPN for editing.
- 2) Add an IPv4 Access rule in a suitable location in the policy and configure the rule as outlined here:  
If NAT is active and applied to translate the destination, remember that the Access rules are checked before the NAT rules are applied.

**Table 142: Example VPN rule**

Source	Destination	Service	Action	Authentication	Users
Set to ANY.	Local internal networks	Set as needed.	Select <b>Use VPN</b> , then change the <b>Action</b> to <b>Enforce</b> , and click <b>Select</b> to add the Policy-Based VPN element you created.	Set to ANY or to a particular method.	The <b>stonegate</b> Internal User Group (in <b>InternalDomain</b> )

- 3) Save the policy.
- 4) Refresh the policies of all firewalls involved in the VPN to activate the new configuration.

### Result

The VPN is established when traffic matches the Access rules created here.

**Related concepts**

[Getting started with user authentication](#) on page 1099

[VPNs and how they work](#) on page 1125

[Monitoring policy-based VPNs](#) on page 1222

[Rules for Policy-Based VPNs](#) on page 1201

**Related tasks**

[Find VPN issues](#) on page 1403

## Configuration 4: Basic VPN hub

In a VPN hub configuration, a gateway is configured to forward VPN traffic between different VPN tunnels.

The gateway that does this forwarding is called a hub gateway. The gateways that contact each other through a hub are called spoke gateways.

The hub gateway must be set up specifically as a hub. The hub configuration is reflected in the topology, the Site definitions, and the VPN rules. The spoke gateways do not require any hub-specific configuration. In this example configuration, VPN tunnels are established from all spoke gateways to the hub gateway. All networks of all gateways are configured as reachable through the hub. Connections are allowed only as defined in the Firewall Access rules.



**Note:** There must not be duplicate endpoint-to-endpoint tunnels in different VPNs. If there are existing VPNs between the Firewalls involved in the hub, overlapping configurations must be removed.

This basic configuration scenario explains a configuration in which all connections are defined within the same Policy-Based VPN element. A single Policy-Based VPN element is simpler to set up and maintain than forwarding traffic between VPN tunnels defined in different Policy-Based VPN elements. In this scenario, all gateways are Firewalls controlled by the same Management Server. You can add External VPN Gateways to this configuration even though their creation is not covered in detail in this workflow.

## Create a VPN element for configuration 4

You must add a VPN element for this configuration.



**Note:** This basic configuration scenario does not explain all settings related to VPN elements.

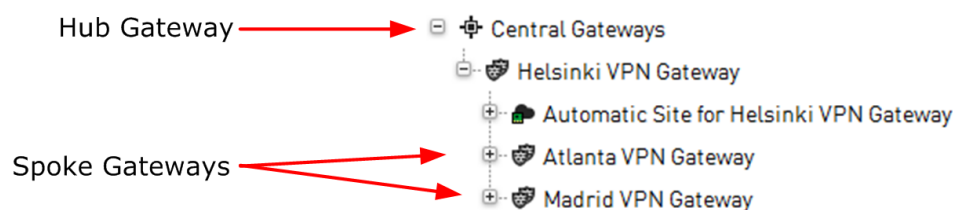
**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Right-click **Policy-Based VPNs** in the element tree, then select **New Policy-Based VPN**.



- 3) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.
- 4) From the **Default VPN Profile** drop-down list, select **VPN-A Suite**.
- 5) If you want to apply NAT rules to the communications that go through the VPN, select **Apply NAT Rules to Traffic That Uses This VPN**.  
This option does not affect the communications that the two VPN gateways have with each other to set up and maintain the VPN. Those connections are always matched against the NAT rules.
- 6) Click **OK**.  
The **VPN Editing** view opens on the **Site-to-Site VPN** tab.
- 7) Drag and drop the firewall that acts as the hub gateway to **Central Gateways**.

**Figure 164: VPN editing view - Site-to-Site VPN tab**



- 8) Drag and drop the other firewalls on top of the hub gateway so that the firewalls are added as branches (spokes) under the hub gateway.  
Spoke gateways can be any other firewalls or External VPN Gateways.
- 9) Click **Save**, but do not close the **VPN Editing** view.

#### Related concepts

[Defining Policy-Based VPN elements](#) on page 1192

## Define a Site element for the hub gateway for configuration 4

The VPN Gateway that acts as the hub gateway needs a Site element.



**Note:** This basic configuration scenario does not explain all settings related to Site elements.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the VPN Gateway that acts as the hub gateway, then select **New > Site**.
- 2) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.

- 3) Add all networks protected by the spoke gateways to the site contents on the right.  
After you add the protected networks, the site contains all remote IP addresses that are used in spoke-to-hub traffic that is forwarded from the hub to other spokes. The site should not contain the hub gateway's local networks. These are defined using the automatic site management features in this example.
- 4) Click the **VPN References** tab.
- 5) Select **Enable** for this VPN element, then deselect it for all other VPNs.  
The site is still shown in all VPNs, but is grayed-out (disabled) and not included in the configuration.
- 6) In the **Mode** cell, select **Hub** to activate VPN hub-related features for the VPN Gateway.
- 7) Click **OK** to close the dialog box.  
You return to the main **VPN editing** view.
- 8) Click the **Tunnels** tab.
- 9) Check that the **Validity** column in the **Gateway<->Gateway** and the **End-Point<->End-Point** tables has a green checkmark to indicate that there are no problems.
  - a) If the **Validity** column of a tunnel has a warning icon, see the **Issues** pane to check what the problem is. If the pane is not displayed, select **≡ Menu > View > Panels > Issues**.
  - b) If issues are displayed, correct them as indicated. Long issues are easiest to read by hovering over the issue text so that the text is shown as a tooltip.
- 10) Click **Save**.

#### Related concepts

[Defining Site elements for VPN gateways](#) on page 1177

## Create rules for VPN configuration 4

The rules in this example allow connections between hosts in protected networks of all gateways to connect to all other protected networks.

VPN rules are matched based on Source, Destination, and Service like any other rules.



**Note:** This basic configuration scenario does not explain all settings related to VPN Access rules.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Open the Firewall policy of the NGFW Engine that is configured as the hub gateway in the VPN for editing.

- 2) Add an IPv4 Access rule in a suitable location in the policy.

Make sure that rules for sending traffic through the VPN are above other rules that match the same traffic with the **Allow**, **Discard**, or **Refuse** action. Traffic that you do not want to send through the VPN must not match this rule. Traffic that is not routable through the VPN is dropped if it matches this rule.

- 3) Fill in the rule as outlined here.

- If NAT is enabled in the VPN, remember that the Access rules are checked before the NAT rules are applied.
- To prevent this rule from matching other traffic, you can add the VPN you created in the **Source VPN** cell.

**Table 143: Example VPN rule for spoke-to-spoke forwarding**

Source	Destination	Service	Action
Remote internal networks	Remote internal networks	Set as needed.	Select <b>Use VPN</b> , then change the <b>Action</b> to <b>Forward</b> , and click <b>Select</b> to add the Policy-Based VPN element you created.

- 4) Add two more rules to allow traffic between the hub gateway's local protected networks to the spoke gateway's protected networks.

Two rules are created here to allow the different directions of traffic.

**Table 144: Example VPN rules**

Source	Destination	Service	Action
Local internal networks	Remote internal networks	Set as needed.	Select <b>Use VPN</b> , then change the <b>Action</b> to <b>Forward</b> , and click <b>Select</b> to add the Policy-Based VPN element you created.
Remote internal networks	Local internal networks	Set as needed.	Select <b>Use VPN</b> , then change the <b>Action</b> to <b>Forward</b> , and click <b>Select</b> to add the Policy-Based VPN element you created.

- 5) Save the policy.
- 6) Add similar rules in the policies of all NGFW Engines involved in the VPN.



**CAUTION:** If you continue to use this VPN, change the pre-shared key periodically (for example, monthly) to guarantee continued confidentiality of your data. Alternatively, you can switch to certificate-based authentication by creating a custom VPN profile.

- 7) Refresh the policies of all firewalls involved in the VPN to activate the new configuration.

## Result

The VPN is established when traffic matches the Access rules defined here.

### Related concepts

[Rules for Policy-Based VPNs](#) on page 1201

[Changing pre-shared keys for VPNs](#) on page 1254



# Configuring VPNs

## Contents

- [VPN configuration overview](#) on page 1165
- [Default elements for policy-based VPNs](#) on page 1168
- [Define a custom Gateway Profile element](#) on page 1169
- [Defining VPN gateways](#) on page 1170
- [Defining Site elements for VPN gateways](#) on page 1177
- [Define VPN Traffic Selector elements](#) on page 1182
- [Defining VPN profiles](#) on page 1183
- [Defining Policy-Based VPN elements](#) on page 1192
- [SSL VPN configuration](#) on page 1209
- [Overview of Route-Based VPN configuration](#) on page 1214
- [Edit the Route-Based VPN](#) on page 1217
- [Monitoring policy-based VPNs](#) on page 1222
- [Monitor SSL VPN connections](#) on page 1223
- [Examples of policy-based VPNs](#) on page 1224
- [Examples of the Route-Based VPN](#) on page 1228

VPNs allow creating secure, private connections through networks that are not otherwise secure.

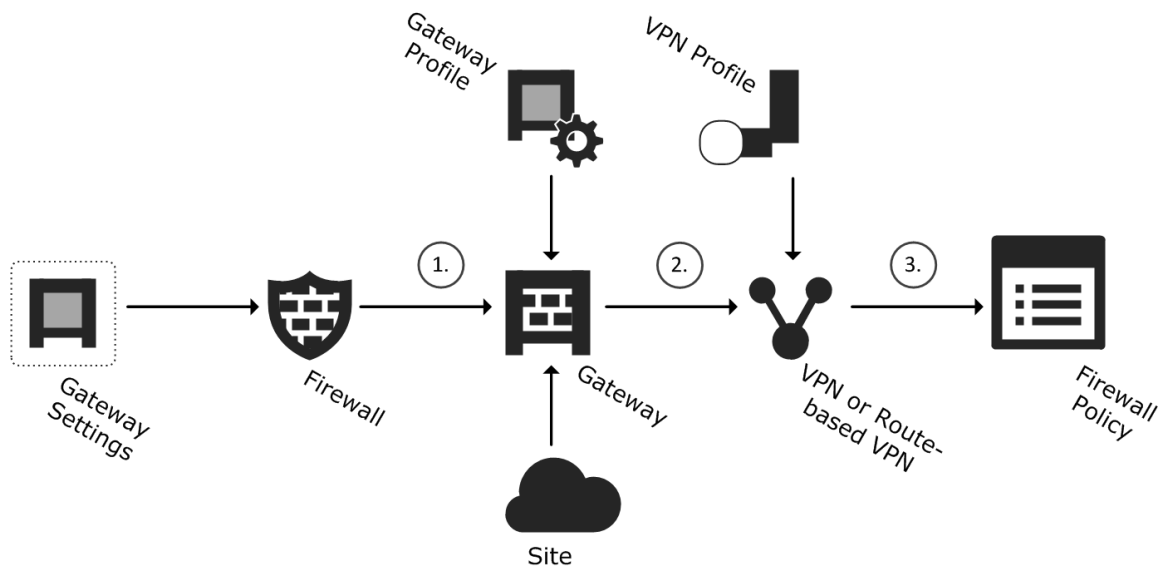
## VPN configuration overview

Many steps might be required to configure a VPN, depending on the complexity of the configuration.

Devices that provide VPN access to other computers are called VPN gateways. There are two general types of VPN gateways in the Forcepoint NGFW Firewall/VPN:

- *VPN Gateway* elements represent NGFW Engines that are managed by the Management Server (and administrative Domain) you are currently connected to with your Management Client.
- All other gateway devices are represented by *External VPN Gateway* elements. Forcepoint NGFW engines that are managed by a different Management Server (or administrative Domain) are also External VPN Gateways.

Due to the various authentication and encryption methods that are supported in VPNs, there are many settings in policy-based VPNs. To prevent repeated configuration work, reusable profiles are used for storing different types of settings. These profiles and other elements related to the configuration of policy-based VPNs are shown in the following illustration, excluding the elements that are related to managing certificates.

**Figure 165: Elements in the VPN configuration (excluding certificate-related elements)**

- 1 The VPN Gateway element represents Firewall/VPN device in VPNs. One VPN Gateway element is automatically created for each Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role. You can optionally add more VPN Gateways to the Forcepoint NGFW. Each VPN Gateway element can be used in several VPNs. The Gateway element refers to the following other elements:
  - The **Firewall** element contains the VPN settings for the VPN Gateway. The Firewall element refers to a Gateway Settings element that defines settings for advanced VPN performance tuning.
  - **Gateway Profile** elements contain information about the capabilities of different gateways, so that the system can disable unsupported options and find incompatible combinations of settings automatically. Gateway Profiles can be created and selected for External VPN Gateways. The Gateway Profiles of VPN Gateways are selected based on the installed software version.
  - **Site** elements define real or translated IP addresses that are routable through the policy-based VPNs. The system can add the IP addresses automatically from routing or you can adjust the sites yourself.
- 2 The Policy-Based VPN element combines other elements together to define the settings used in one particular policy-based VPN and defines the topology for the VPN. The VPN element refers to a VPN Profile, which contains the IPsec authentication and encryption settings (IKE settings) for establishing a VPN.
- 3 The Firewall Policy controls VPN traffic in the same way as any other traffic.
  - The Access rules determine which connections are directed out through each VPN and which traffic is allowed in from each VPN.
  - The NAT rules define how address translation is done for VPN connections. The VPN communications between the gateway devices are always subject to NAT as usual. The traffic that uses the tunnels is subject to NAT only if address translation is enabled for the VPN.

Except for endpoint IP addresses, the same elements used in the configuration of policy-based VPNs can also be used in the configuration of the Route-Based VPN.

## Configuration workflow

The **Gateway Settings** element shown in this illustration is not part of this workflow. The default settings are usually recommended. Otherwise, the following workflow covers all VPN configurations:

- 1) (Route-based VPN only) Create tunnel interfaces on the Firewall/VPN to define endpoints for tunnels in the Route-Based VPN.
- 2) (Route-based VPN only) Define which networks are reachable through each tunnel interface.
- 3) (Optional) If you are configuring a VPN with an external device, you might want to create a custom Gateway Profile specific to the device.
- 4) (External VPN gateways only) Add the necessary number of External VPN Gateway elements to represent the physical VPN devices. External VPN Gateway elements define the VPN endpoints (gateway IP addresses) and the sites (see the next point).



**Note:** VPN Gateways elements are automatically created for NGFW Engines.

- 5) (Policy-based VPNs only) Configure the sites. Sites define the IP addresses that can be made routable through VPNs. The sites can be adjusted in different VPNs that the gateway establishes.
- 6) (Optional) If the existing VPN Profiles do not have suitable settings for your new VPN, create a custom VPN Profile element. The custom VPN Profile element defines the IPsec settings (authentication, encryption, and integrity checking).
- 7) Define the VPN in one of the following ways:
  - Create a Policy-Based VPN element. The Policy-Based VPN element defines the topology (which gateways create tunnels with each other).
  - Add tunnels to the Route-Based VPN element.
- 8) Create certificates, if necessary.
- 9) Add the necessary Access rules according to the type of VPN:
  - (Policy-based VPNs) Add the IPv4 Access rules and, if necessary, the IPv4 NAT rules for VPN traffic. Adding rules for policy-based VPNs also activates the VPN on the engines.
  - (Route-based VPN) Add Access rules to allow traffic between the internal network and the networks that are reachable through the Route-Based VPN.

This workflow contains steps for all kinds of VPN configurations. Alternative next steps are included as necessary to achieve a particular type of configuration. Alternatively, you might want to follow a simplified workflow for building a particular type of VPN.

**Related concepts**

[Getting started with Access rules](#) on page 811  
[Defining VPN gateways](#) on page 1170  
[Defining VPN profiles](#) on page 1183  
[Defining Policy-Based VPN elements](#) on page 1192  
[Defining Site elements for VPN gateways](#) on page 1177  
[Using certificate-based authentication](#) on page 1131  
[Rules for Policy-Based VPNs](#) on page 1201  
[VPN certificates and how they work](#) on page 1231  
[Gateway settings for VPNs](#) on page 1256

**Related tasks**

[Add tunnel interfaces for firewalls](#) on page 540  
[Edit the Route-Based VPN](#) on page 1217

## Default elements for policy-based VPNs

There are several default elements for policy-based VPN configuration.

**Table 145: Default elements for policy-based VPN configuration**

Element type	Default elements
Gateways	The predefined VPN Client gateway element that represents VPN clients, including the Stonesoft VPN Client and third-party VPN clients. You can change the Gateway Profile associated with this default element.
Certifications	The Internal RSA CA for Gateways VPN Certificate Authority represents the Management Server's internal RSA Certificate Authority. You can use the element to define certificate trust relationships if you configure other CAs in the SMC.
Gateway Profiles	Several different Gateway Profiles are included for different Firewall/VPN and Stonesoft VPN Client versions. With third-party VPN devices, you can use the Default (All Capabilities) profile, which enables all options. You can also create a more restrictive profile yourself for better automatic configuration validation.
Gateway Settings	Gateway Default Settings is a predefined Gateway Settings element that contains the default recommended settings for most environments. Each firewall has settings that are common to all VPNs the firewall establishes, set in the Gateway Settings element. These settings are mostly for performance tuning. Usually there is no need to change them at all. If there is some particular need to change the settings, you must create a custom Gateway Setting element. You cannot edit the Gateway Default Settings system element.



Element type	Default elements
VPN Profiles	<p>The predefined VPN Profiles (VPN-A Suite, Suite-B-GCM-128, and Suite-B-GCM-256) are provided to allow you to quickly try out VPNs without creating a VPN Profile yourself.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The VPN-A Suite VPN Profile contains the VPN settings specified for the cryptographic suite “VPN-A” in RFC 4308.</li> <li>The Suite -B-GCM-128 VPN Profile contains the VPN settings specified for the cryptographic suite “Suite-B-GCM-128” in RFC 6379.</li> <li>The Suite-B-GCM-256 VPN Profile contains the VPN settings specified for the cryptographic suite “Suite-B-GCM-256” in RFC 6379.</li> <li>The iOS Suite VPN Profile contains only iOS-compatible encryption algorithms and protocols. For example, iOS VPN clients only support IKEv1 key exchange, which must be enabled in the profile.</li> </ul> <p>The predefined VPN Profiles also allow you to change settings that are not specified in RFC 4308 and RFC 6379. You might need to adjust the settings to achieve a valid VPN in some configurations.</p>

## Define a custom Gateway Profile element

The Gateway Profile element introduces information about the features and options available so that the VPN configuration can be automatically validated.

The general settings directly affect the settings used in VPNs. The authentication and encryption settings defined in the Gateway Profile do not directly influence which of the displayed settings are used for any VPNs. The settings in the Gateway Profile help you make sure that the settings defined for the VPNs correspond to the options supported by the gateway devices involved.


For VPN Gateways that represent firewalls, the Gateway Profiles are automatically selected according to the software version, and you cannot change the selection. If you use an NGFW Engine managed by a different Management Server or administrative Domain as an External VPN Gateway, select the Gateway Profile according to the software version. If you use a third-party device as an External VPN Gateway, you have the following options:


- You can use the **Default (all capabilities)** profile, which allows any of the options to be selected for the External VPN Gateway.
- You can define a custom Gateway Profile to set certificate-related options and to restrict the options to a supported set to prevent configuration errors.

For the Stonesoft VPN Client, there are predefined Gateway Profiles. You can also create custom Gateway Profiles yourself.

There are some advanced properties on the **General** tab, meant for advanced users only. The default values are the recommended values. These options affect the VPN directly.

The **IKE Capabilities** and **IPsec Capabilities** are not directly used in a VPN. The settings are selected for use in the VPN Profile element. The settings define a set of options that the gateway supports, so that the SMC can automatically check for misconfigured settings.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Profiles**.
- 3) Right-click the **Gateway Profiles** branch and select **New Gateway Profile**.
- 4) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.
- 5) (Optional) Select options for **Tunnel-to-Tunnel Forwarding Capabilities**.
- 6) On the **IKE Capabilities** tab, select the options that the device supports for IKE SA negotiations.
- 7) On the **IPsec Capabilities** tab, select the options that the device supports for IPsec SA negotiations.

## Defining VPN gateways

---

VPN Gateway and External VPN Gateway elements represent the physical devices that establish the VPN in the configuration.

**VPN Gateway** elements represent NGFW Engines that are managed by the Management Server (and administrative Domain) you are currently connected to with your Management Client. One VPN Gateway element is automatically created for each Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role. You can optionally add more VPN Gateways to the Firewall.

All other gateway devices are represented by **External VPN Gateway** elements. NGFW Engines that are managed by a different Management Server (or administrative Domain) are also External VPN Gateways. External VPN Gateway elements define settings for the external gateway devices in their role as VPN gateways.

Only one VPN Gateway or External VPN Gateway element per device is needed, even if there are many VPNs. You can use the same Gateway in several different VPNs, possibly overriding some of the Gateway's settings as necessary. You can create several Gateway elements to represent the same Firewall. However, each Gateway element reserves a VPN endpoint (IP address) that other Gateway elements cannot use. If you use the same Gateway element in both policy-based VPNs and the Route-Based VPN, you must define unique endpoints for each type of VPN.

The predefined **VPN Client** gateway element represents all instances of the Stonesoft VPN Client and third-party IPsec VPN clients in mobile VPNs. When you set up a mobile VPN with the Stonesoft VPN Client, the VPN Client element must always be used. Usually, we recommend using the element with third-party VPN clients as well. However, it is possible to configure an individual third-party VPN client using an External VPN Gateway element if there is a specific need to do so. In this configuration, only one client at a time can connect to each gateway.

# Create an External VPN Gateway element

You must create an External VPN Gateway element to represent third-party VPN devices or Forcepoint NGFW devices managed by a different Management Server in VPNs.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Right-click the **Gateways** branch in the element tree and select **New > External Gateway**.
- 3) Enter the **Name** and optionally a **Comment** for the element.
- 4) Select the device this Gateway represents.

## Related concepts

[Defining VPN profiles](#) on page 1183

# Define endpoints for VPN Gateway elements

Each endpoint is dedicated for one VPN Gateway element.

Any IP address that is already an endpoint for another VPN Gateway element is not shown on the **Endpoints** list for other Gateways that you create for the same NGFW Engine. Each VPN Gateway element can be used in several VPNs. However, you cannot use the same endpoint in a Route-Based VPN tunnel and a Policy-Based VPN tunnel. If you want to create both Policy-Based VPNs and Route-Based VPN tunnels using the same Gateway, you must define unique endpoints for each type of VPN.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the Firewall element and select **Edit Single Firewall** or **Edit Firewall Cluster**. The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **VPN > Endpoints**. The IP addresses available for use as endpoints are displayed.
- 3) (Optional) Change the selection of IP addresses that you want to use as endpoints in VPNs.
  - Typically, these are IP addresses that belong to interfaces toward the Internet, which are automatically selected based on the firewall's default routing table.
  - If loopback IP addresses are defined for the NGFW Engine, you can select a loopback IP address as the endpoint IP address. On clustered firewalls, the IP addresses are CVIs.
  - (Policy-Based VPN only) If you have more than one Internet connection, select an IP address from each ISP.
- 4) Double-click the endpoint to open the **Properties** dialog box.

- 5) Configure the following optional settings according to your environment if needed.
  - a) (Optional) In the **Name** field, enter a descriptive name for the endpoint.
  - b) (Policy-Based VPNs only) From the **Mode** drop-down list, select an option to define how the endpoint is used in a Multi-Link configuration.  
You can override these settings in each individual VPN.
  - c) (Optional) From the **Use NAT-T** drop-down list, select an option to activate encapsulation for NAT traversal in site-to-site VPNs.  
You might need NAT traversal to traverse a NAT device at the local or at the remote gateway end. The gateway always allows VPN clients to use NAT-T regardless of these settings. NAT-T always uses the standard UDP port 4500.



**Note:** If a private external IP address is translated to a public IP address by an external NAT device, make sure that Contact Addresses and Locations are defined for the Firewall.



**Note:** The **TCP Tunneling** option is included for backward compatibility with legacy Forcepoint NGFW software versions. Selecting this option has no effect on Forcepoint NGFW version 5.9.0 or later.

- 6) In the **Phase-1 ID** settings, select an option from the **ID Type** drop-down list to according to your environment.
  - The ID identifies the Gateways during the IKE SA negotiations.
  - The **Distinguished Name** type is only valid in certificate-based authentication.
  - The **IP Address type** is not valid for endpoints with a dynamic IP address.
- 7) In the **ID Value** field, enter an ID value according to the selected ID type.
  - If you selected **DNS Name**, enter a DNS name.
  - If you selected **Email**, enter an email address.
  - If you selected **Distinguished Name**, enter the distinguished name that is used in the gateway certificate.
  - If the endpoint has a dynamic IP address, enter a specific IP address as the value for the **IP Address** type.



**Note:** If the endpoint has a static IP address, the value for the **IP Address** type is filled in automatically.

- 8) (Optional) If the endpoint must use different Phase-1 ID settings in individual policy-based VPNs, add VPN-specific exceptions.
  - a) Click **Exceptions**.
  - b) Click **Add**, then select the type of ID from the drop-down list.
  - c) Select a Policy-Based VPN element, then click **Select**.
  - d) In the **ID Value** cell, enter the value of the ID.

- 9) (Optional) In the **VPN Type** settings, restrict the types of VPNs that the endpoint can be used in.
  - a) Select **Selected types only**.
  - b) Select one or more types of VPNs.
- 10) Click **OK** to save your changes to the endpoint.
- 11) Save the changes.
  - To save the changes, click **Save**.
  - To save the changes and refresh the security policy on the engine, click **Save and Refresh**.

#### Related concepts

[Considerations for setting up system communications](#) on page 127

[Defining VPN profiles](#) on page 1183

#### Related tasks

[Add loopback IP addresses for Single Firewalls](#) on page 554


[Add Route-Based VPN tunnels](#) on page 1218

## Define endpoints for External VPN Gateways

Each endpoint is dedicated for one External VPN Gateway element.

### Before you begin

You must have an External VPN Gateway element.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the External VPN Gateway element, then select **Properties**.
- 2) On the **Endpoints** tab, click **Add**.
- 3) Configure the following optional settings according to your environment if needed.
  - a) (Optional) In the **Name** field, enter a descriptive name for the endpoint.
  - b) (Policy-Based VPNs only) From the **Mode** drop-down list, select an option to define how the endpoint is used in a Multi-Link configuration.  
You can override these settings in each individual VPN.

- c) (Optional) From the **Use NAT-T** drop-down list, select an option to activate encapsulation for NAT traversal in site-to-site VPNs.

You might need NAT traversal to traverse a NAT device at the local or at the remote gateway end. The gateway always allows VPN clients to use NAT-T regardless of these settings. NAT-T always uses the standard UDP port 4500.



**Note:** If a private external IP address is translated to a public IP address by an external NAT device, make sure that Contact Addresses and Locations are defined for the Firewall.

- d) If necessary, change the default Contact Address or add Exceptions for the Locations of other gateways involved in the VPN.

The Contact Address must be defined if the IP address for contacting this gateway is different from the IP address that the gateway actually has on its interface (for example, because of NAT).

Example: An external gateway is behind a NAT device. The real address is defined as the endpoint address, because the IP address is also used as the Phase 1 ID inside the encrypted traffic. Contact must be made using the translated address, so it is defined as a Contact Address.

- 4) In the **Phase-1** settings, select an option from the **ID Type** drop-down list to according to your environment.

- The ID identifies the Gateways during the IKE SA negotiations.
- The **Distinguished Name** type is only valid in certificate-based authentication.
- The **IP Address** might not work as an ID if the address is translated using NAT.

- 5) In the **ID Value** field, enter an ID value according to the selected ID type.



**Note:** Make sure that the ID value matches the identity configured on the external gateway device.

- If you selected **DNS Name**, enter the DNS name that is configured on the external gateway device.
- If you selected **Email**, enter the email address that is configured on the external gateway device.
- If you selected **Distinguished Name**, enter the distinguished name that is used in the gateway certificate.
- If the endpoint has a dynamic IP address, enter a specific IP address as the value for the **IP Address** type.



**Note:** If the endpoint has a static IP address, the value for the **IP Address** type is filled in automatically.

- 6) (Optional) If the endpoint must use different Phase-1 ID settings in individual policy-based VPNs, add VPN-specific exceptions.

- a) Click **Exceptions**.
- b) Click **Add**, then select the type of ID from the drop-down list.
- c) Select a Policy-Based VPN element, then click **Select**.
- d) In the **ID Value** cell, enter the value of the ID.

- 7) Click **OK** to save your changes to the endpoint.

**Related concepts**

[Considerations for setting up system communications](#) on page 127

[Defining VPN profiles](#) on page 1183

**Related tasks**

[Add Route-Based VPN tunnels](#) on page 1218

## Define trusted CAs for a gateway

*Certificate Authorities (CA)* verify certificate authenticity with their signatures. Gateways accept certificates only from the trusted CAs that you define.


### Before you begin

You must have more than one VPN Certificate Authority element.

By default, the gateways trust all VPN CAs that are currently defined, but you can restrict the trusted CAs. You can also restrict trusted CAs in VPN Profiles.

For VPN Gateways that represent NGFW Engines, you define the trusted CAs in the Engine Editor.

For External VPN Gateways, you define the trusted CAs in the **External VPN Gateway Properties** dialog box. The system uses the trusted CA definition in the External VPN Gateway element to check that all gateways have the necessary certificates.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Access the **Trusted VPN Certificate Authorities** settings in one of the following ways:
  - Right-click a Firewall element, select **Edit <element type>** to open the Engine Editor, then browse to **VPN > Certificates** in the navigation pane on the left.
  - Right-click an External VPN Gateway element, select **Properties** to open the **External VPN Gateway Properties** dialog box, then click the **Trusted CAs** tab.
- 2) Select **Trust only selected**, then select one or more CAs.
- 3) Save the changes in one of the following ways:
  - In the Engine Editor, click **Save**.
  - In the **External VPN Gateway Properties** dialog box, click **OK**.

**Related tasks**

[Define additional VPN certificate authorities](#) on page 1233

# Define VPN client settings for Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role

The Engine Editor contains settings for assigning valid IP addresses to VPN clients for connections through the VPN to the internal network.

If you use Stonesoft VPN Client, configure the Virtual Adapter. The alternative NAT Pool method does not allow the Stonesoft VPN Client computers to use your organization's internal DNS servers. Virtual IP addresses work with all Stonesoft VPN Client versions and with third-party VPN clients that support this feature.

If you use Stonesoft VPN Client, the Policy-Based VPN configuration defined in the Management Client is also used for creating the configuration for Stonesoft VPN Client. Stonesoft VPN Client downloads the settings from the VPN gateway either manually or automatically whenever there are relevant changes. All IPsec and address management settings are included in the download. For example, the download includes information about which encryption methods are used and which internal networks clients can access through the gateway. The decision whether a VPN tunnel is used is based on the IP addresses you have defined for the Sites of the gateway.

For third-party VPN clients and external VPN gateways, you must duplicate the VPN Gateway settings in the configuration of the VPN client or gateway. You must also duplicate the VPN Gateway settings for engines under a different administrative Domain. The settings that you must duplicate include the following:

- All IPsec-related settings, such as the authentication, encryption, and integrity checking options.
- The encryption domain (the IP addresses that are allowed in the VPN as a source or destination IP address).

If a VPN Gateway that contains VPN Client settings is used in the Route-Based VPN, the VPN Client settings are ignored.



**Note:** The Virtual Adapter IP addresses must be assigned by a DHCP server. It is not possible to define the IP addresses in the VPN client or in the VPN gateway configuration. When you use a Single Firewall's internal DHCP server, use the IP address of the interface on which the internal DHCP server is enabled as the IP address of the DHCP Server element.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Firewall element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **VPN > VPN Client**.
- 3) In the **VPN Mode** menu, select the type of tunnels that the VPN supports.
- 4) (Optional) If you selected a VPN Mode that includes SSL VPN, configure the following settings.
  - a) In the **SSL Port** field, enter the port for SSL VPN tunnels.
  - b) If you need to use a cryptographic suite that differs from the default cryptographic suite, in the **TLS Cryptography Suite Set** field, select a cryptographic suite.
  - c) If you do not want to use the default authentication timeout value (120 min), enter a time in minutes in the **Authentication Timeout** field.
- 5) (Optional) In the **Local Security Checks** section, select security requirements for the end users' computers.



- 6) Select **Virtual IP Address (using Virtual adapter)** and configure the settings.
- 7) (Optional) In the **Secondary IPsec VPN Gateways** section, select one or more IPsec VPN Gateways that Stonesoft VPN Client can connect to if this IPsec VPN Gateway is not available.

#### Related concepts

[Configuring IPsec VPNs with external gateway devices](#) on page 1137

[Defining IP addresses for VPN clients](#) on page 1262

## Defining Site elements for VPN gateways

The protected IP addresses behind each gateway are defined using Site elements.

In the IPsec standard, these IP addresses are called traffic selectors. The IP addresses work like routing definitions when the gateway selects which VPN tunnel a packet is sent through. The Site elements must contain the IP addresses of all protected hosts that potentially send or receive VPN traffic through any site-to-site or mobile VPN. IP addresses that are not included in the Site elements are not allowed as source or destination addresses in the Policy-Based VPN. You cannot add or change Site elements under the VPN Client Gateway element. The Site elements are always added globally for all Policy-Based VPNs where a Gateway is used, but unnecessary Site elements can be disabled in individual VPNs.

The VPN settings for NGFW Engines include a Site that is automatically populated and updated according to the routing definitions. All interfaces and networks are included in the automatic Site, except interfaces with the Any Network element. If loopback IP addresses are defined for the engine, you can use a loopback IP address as an endpoint IP address.

The Site elements must always contain the actual IP addresses that are used inside the VPN tunnel. If you enable NAT for the Policy-Based VPN and translate the local IP addresses, you must define the Site elements using the translated (after NAT) addresses. The NAT addresses are not added to the Site automatically.

A hub gateway forwards traffic from one VPN tunnel to another. If you want to use a central gateway as a hub, include all IP addresses that are accessible through the central gateway in the central gateway's Site elements.



**Note:** An IP address must be included in a Site to be valid in the VPN. The Access rules define which connections are allowed to enter and exit a VPN tunnel.

The IP address information is also checked in the VPN establishment phase. When creating VPNs with external Gateways, make sure that the IP address spaces of both gateways are defined identically in the SMC and on the external device. Otherwise, the VPN establishment can fail in one or both directions. Make sure to update the policies of any firewalls that are involved in the VPN when there are changes in the Site elements at either end.

## Automatic VPN Site management

Automatic Site management copies the internal IP addresses from the Routing tree (except interfaces with the "Any Network" element) and updates the information when you change the routing.

You can change this automatic Site in the following ways:

- You can disable individual interfaces through their right-click menu. This way, you can exclude some of the internal interfaces from VPNs.

- You can add addresses to the automatic Site at the top level (at the same level with the Interface elements, not inside them) by dragging and dropping the correct Networks or other elements.
- You can add more Sites alongside the automatic Site.
- You can define the automatic Site as Private in some VPNs.

#### Related concepts

[Defining VPN profiles](#) on page 1183

[Defining Policy-Based VPN elements](#) on page 1192

#### Related tasks

[Add a VPN site](#) on page 1179


[Adjust VPN-specific Site settings](#) on page 1180


## Disable or enable automatic VPN Site management

Automatic Site management is active by default in the VPN settings for NGFW Engines.

If you prefer not to update the information automatically for any interface, you can disable automatic site management.

When you disable the automatic site management, the automatic Site is removed. There must be some other Site configured for the gateway for it to be valid in a VPN.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click a Firewall element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **VPN > Sites**.  
The **Sites** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Deselect or select the **Add and Update Addresses Based on Routing** option.
  - When the option is not selected, you must manually define the addresses that you want to be routable through the VPN.
  - When the option is selected, the Site content updates automatically according to changes made in the routing configuration for the firewall (for interfaces that are not disabled).
- 4) Click  **Save**.

#### Related concepts

[Automatic VPN Site management](#) on page 1177

# Add a VPN site

The Site element defines the internal IP addresses that send or receive traffic through the VPN.

You must define sites for all NGFW Engines and External VPN Gateways that are used in Policy-Based VPNs. You must also define sites for NGFW Engines and External VPN Gateways that are used in Route-Based VPN tunnels that have the VPN tunnel type.

By default, each site is included in all VPNs where the gateway is used. Individual sites can be manually disabled in any VPN without affecting the other VPNs. It is not possible to partially disable sites. If the IP address space must be different in different VPNs, you need several sites. You can add as many Site elements as you need.

If traffic in the tunnel is subject to NAT, you must add the NAT addresses to the site. For NGFW Engines, you must add both the NAT addresses and any untranslated IP addresses that are not automatically added to the site. Sites for External VPN Gateways only require the translated address space that the NGFW Engine actually contacts.

The local and remote site definitions must match the same information about the other gateways involved in the VPN because the gateways verify this information. It might also make a difference whether addresses are entered as individual IP addresses, address ranges, or networks.



**Note:** Site definitions are applied globally to every VPN in which the Gateway is used unless you specifically adjust the VPN-specific site settings.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Select **Gateways**.  
A list of VPN Gateway and External VPN Gateway elements opens on the right.
- 3) Right-click a **VPN Gateway** or an **External VPN Gateway** and select **New > Site**.
- 4) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.
- 5) Select the elements that represent the protected IP addresses behind the Gateway in the left pane and click **Add** to include them in this site.
  - Do not include IP addresses outside the Gateway's local networks in the site. There is no need to include the Gateways' own IP addresses in the sites. However, there is usually no need to exclude those addresses if they are in the networks you add to the site.
  - IP address ranges might be interpreted differently from lists of IP addresses and networks depending on the VPN device. The system converts Group or Expression elements into address ranges, networks, or individual IP addresses depending on the IP addresses included. Other VPN devices might treat same types of values differently.
  - VPN Traffic Selector elements allow you to define the IP addresses, protocols, and ports used by a specific host in a VPN site.
- 6) Click **OK**.
- 7) If you edited a previously configured VPN, make sure that the configuration of any external VPN gateway device involved contains the same IP address information. Refresh the policy on all affected gateways to transfer the changes.

# Adjust VPN-specific Site settings

Site elements allow you to adjust how the Site is used in each VPN.

## Before you begin

You must have manually added Site elements to VPN Gateways or External VPN Gateways.



**Note:** To adjust settings for the automatic sites for VPN Gateway elements that represent NGFW Engines, use the Engine Editor.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Select **Gateways**.  
A list of VPN Gateway and External VPN Gateway elements opens on the right.
- 3) Expand the gateway, right-click a manually added **Site**, then select **Properties**.
- 4) Click the **VPN References** tab.
- 5) In the table, select or deselect the **Enable** option for the existing VPNs displayed to include or exclude the Site from the configuration.  
When a Site is disabled, it is grayed out.  
You can disable a Site that contains translated address in VPNs in which NAT is not used, or in which a different address space is used for translation.
- 6) Select the **Mode** for the Site for each VPN in which it is enabled.
  - **Normal** mode is the default. Use this mode for all active Site elements that do not require one of the other two modes.
  - **Hub** mode is used on a hub gateway in tunnel-to-tunnel forwarding. Hub mode Sites contain the IP addresses of the networks that are behind the remote spoke gateways (the networks between which the hub gateway forwards traffic). The automatically generated Site cannot be used as a Hub Site.
  - (VPN Gateways on NGFW Engines only) **Private** mode is used for the local untranslated addresses when addresses are translated using NAT in the VPN. You must include the translated IP addresses (the addresses that the other end sees) as a Normal-mode Site element in these types of VPNs. If NAT is disabled in the VPN, any Sites in the Private mode are ignored.

## Related concepts


[Defining Policy-Based VPN elements](#) on page 1192


## Related tasks

[Use a policy-based VPN to encrypt Route-Based VPN tunnels](#) on page 1220

## Temporarily disable a VPN site in all VPNs

You can disable a site that has been manually added to the Gateway. The site is disabled globally in all VPNs. To remove the automatic site from an NGFW Engine that acts as a VPN Gateway, disable automatic VPN site management. There must be at least one enabled site.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Open the list of sites for the gateway in one of the following ways:
  - Right-click a Firewall and select **Edit <element type>**, then browse to **VPN > Sites** in the navigation pane on the left.
  - Open the External VPN Gateway element's properties and click the **Sites** tab.
- 2) Right-click the site and select **Properties**.
- 3) On the **VPN References** tab, deselect the **Enable** cell.
- 4) Click **OK**.
- 5) Save the changes in one of the following ways:
  - In the Engine Editor, click  **Save and Refresh**.
  - In the **External VPN Gateway Properties** dialog box, click **OK**.
- 6) If you edited a previously configured VPN, refresh the policy on all affected gateways to transfer the changes.  
The configurations of external gateways might also require an update.

### Related tasks

[Disable or enable automatic VPN Site management](#) on page 1178


[Add a VPN site](#) on page 1179

[Define VPN topology for Policy-Based VPNs](#) on page 1197

## Remove a VPN site from all Policy-Based VPNs

You can remove a site that has been manually added to the Gateway. The site is removed from all VPNs where the Gateway is used.

To remove the automatic site from an NGFW Engine that acts as a VPN Gateway, disable automatic VPN site management. There must be at least one enabled site.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Open the list of Sites for the gateway in one of the following ways:
  - Right-click a Firewall and select **Edit <element type>**, then browse to **VPN > Sites** in the navigation pane on the left.

- Open the External VPN Gateway element's properties and click the **Sites** tab.
- 2) Right-click the Site and select **Remove**.  
The Site is removed from this Firewall or External VPN Gateway and deleted from all Policy-Based VPNs.
  - 3) Save the changes in one of the following ways:
    - In the Engine Editor, click **Save and Refresh**.
    - In the **External VPN Gateway Properties** dialog box, click **OK**.
  - 4) If you edited a previously configured VPN, refresh the policy on all affected gateways to transfer the changes.  
The configurations of external gateways might also require an update.

#### Related tasks

[Disable or enable automatic VPN Site management](#) on page 1178

[Add a VPN site](#) on page 1179


## Define VPN Traffic Selector elements

VPN Traffic Selector elements allow you to define the IP addresses, protocols, and ports used by a specific host in a VPN site.

### Before you begin

You must have sites for VPN Gateways.

You can use VPN Traffic Selector elements in both policy-based VPNs and in the Route-Based VPN. VPN Traffic Selector elements are intended to be used in specific advanced VPN configurations.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Open the list of sites for the gateway in one of the following ways:
  - Right-click a Firewall, select **Edit <element type>**, then browse to **VPN > Sites** in the navigation pane on the left.
  - Open the External VPN Gateway element's properties, then click the **Sites** tab.
- 2) Select **Tools > New > VPN Traffic Selector**.
- 3) In the **Name** field, enter the host name.  
If you enter the host's DNS name, you can automatically resolve the IP address from the host name.
- 4) In the **IP Address** field, enter the IP address in one of the following ways:
  - Click **Resolve** to automatically resolve the IP address from the host's DNS name.

- Enter the IPv4 or IPv6 address or address range of the host.
- 5) (Optional) From the **Protocol** drop-down list, select the protocol used by the host.
  - 6) (Only if a protocol that supports ports is selected) In the **Port Number** field, enter the port number that is used by the host.
  - 7) Click **OK**.

## Defining VPN profiles

VPN Profile elements contain settings related to authentication, integrity checking, and encryption.

The VPN Profile element is the main point of configuration for IKE and IPsec settings. These settings are used or agreed on during IKE SA and IPsec SA negotiations. You can select any combination of settings as long as all gateways and VPN clients involved in the VPN support those settings and are configured to accept them.

The authentication methods for VPN clients are selected separately in the VPN Profile. A certificate-based method is always included in the VPN, but you can optionally add other authentication methods.

Each VPN refers to a VPN Profile. You can use the same VPN Profile in several VPNs if the settings are compatible. You can use the same VPN Profile in both policy-based VPNs and the Route-Based VPN. You can also easily copy the element to create custom versions of the same basic settings. There are predefined VPN Profile elements, which are mostly useful for site-to-site VPNs between firewalls that act as VPN Gateways.

Mobile VPNs usually require a custom profile. However, there is a predefined VPN Profile element that simplifies configuration for VPNs between iOS devices and Forcepoint NGFW VPN gateways. The iOS Suite VPN profile contains only iOS-compatible encryption algorithms and protocols.

### Related concepts

[Defining Policy-Based VPN elements](#) on page 1192


[Supported encryption methods for IPsec VPNs](#) on page 1134


### Related tasks

[Use a policy-based VPN to encrypt Route-Based VPN tunnels](#) on page 1220

## Create VPN Profile elements

If the default VPN Profile elements do not meet your needs, create a custom VPN Profile element.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements > Profiles** branch in the element tree.

- 3) Right-click **VPN Profiles** and select **New VPN Profile**.
- 4) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.

## Edit VPN Profiles

You can change the settings for VPN Profiles.

Before editing a VPN Profile that is used in active VPNs, we recommend backing up the settings. You can back up the settings by duplicating the element, exporting it, or creating a Management Server backup. After editing a VPN profile that is used in active VPNs, check all VPNs that use the profile for issues that the changes might have caused.

### Related tasks

- [Define IKE SA settings for a VPN](#) on page 1184
- [Define IPsec SA settings for a VPN](#) on page 1186
- [Define VPN client settings in VPN Profiles](#) on page 1189
- [Define trusted CAs for a VPN](#) on page 1190


## Define IKE SA settings for a VPN


The options you select are a balance between performance and security. A higher level of security generally requires more processing power.

### Before you begin

You must have a VPN Profile element.

If External VPN Gateways are involved, you must make sure that all settings match between the gateways.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements > Profiles > VPN Profiles** branch in the element tree.
- 3) Double-click the profile you want to edit.
- 4) Click the **IKE SA** tab.
- 5) From the **Version** drop-down list, select the IKE version.  
You can select **IKEv1**, **IKEv2**, or both. If both versions are selected, IKEv2 is tried first in the negotiations, and IKEv1 is only used if the remote gateway does not support IKEv2.



- 6) In the **Cipher Algorithms** section, select one or more encryption methods according to your company's requirements and the algorithms supported by the gateways.

Select encryption methods that are appropriate for the sensitivity of the transferred information and any regulations that you might have to follow. We recommend that you limit the selection to as few choices as possible, preferably only one. If you make multiple choices, multiple proposals are sent in IKE negotiations.



**CAUTION:** Do not select the **DES** option unless you are required to do so. DES is no longer considered secure, since it is relatively easy to break DES encryption with modern computers.



**Note:** **3DES** (Triple-DES) has a high overhead compared to other protocols with a comparable level of security. 3DES not a good choice when high throughput is required.



**Note:** The restricted (-R) product version has no strong encryption algorithms.

- 7) In the **Message Digest Algorithm** section, select the message digest algorithm to use in the VPN.



**Note:** We recommend selecting just one of these options if you have no specific reason to select more.

In IKE, the message digest algorithm is used for integrity checking and key derivation.

- 8) If you selected **SHA-2** as the message digest algorithm, select the minimum length for the digest from the drop-down list to the right of the option.

Set the length according to the security requirements for the VPN.

- 9) In the **Diffie-Hellman Groups** section, select one or more Diffie-Hellman groups for key exchange in the VPN.

We recommend that you select from groups 14-21 according to the security requirements for the VPN. Groups 1, 2, and 5 are not considered sufficiently secure in all cases, although they might be required for interoperability with legacy systems.

- 10) From the **Authentication Method** drop-down list, select the authentication method.

ECDSA, RSA, and DSS (DSA) signatures require each gateway to have a valid certificate. **Pre-Shared Key** requires you to periodically change the pre-shared keys for each tunnel in the VPN elements to be secure.



**Note:** The authentication method you select here is used for site-to-site VPNs. Mobile VPNs have separate settings on the **IPsec Client** tab.

- 11) If you selected **IKEv1** as the version, enter the SA lifetime in the **SA Lifetime in Minutes** field.

The SA lifetime must match the settings of the external gateway device. This setting affects tunnels that carry traffic continuously. Tunnels that are not used are closed after a short delay regardless of the lifetime set here. If the VPN is continuously used and the lifetime passes, the IKE SA negotiations are done again. Renegotiations improve security, but can require heavy processing.



**Note:** There is a separate setting for **IPsec Tunnel Lifetime** on the **IPsec SA** tab. The IKE SA Lifetime must be longer than the IPsec Tunnel Lifetime.

- 12) If you selected **IKEv1** as the version, select the IKEv1 negotiation mode from the **IKEv1 Negotiation Mode** drop-down list.

## Define IPsec SA settings for a VPN


The options you choose are a balance between performance and security. A higher level of security generally requires more processing power.

### Before you begin

You must have a VPN Profile element.

If external gateways are involved, you must make sure that all settings match between the gateways.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements > Profiles > VPN Profiles** branch in the element tree.
- 3) Double-click the profile you want to edit.
- 4) Click the **IPsec SA** tab.
- 5) In the **IPsec Type** section, select the IPsec type.
  - The recommended setting is **ESP** (the communications are encrypted).
  - Usually, **AH** is not a valid option. The AH setting disables encryption for the VPN, fully exposing all traffic that uses the VPN to anyone who intercepts it in transit. You can use AH to authenticate and check the integrity of communications without encrypting them.

- 6) In the **Cipher Algorithms** section, select one or more encryption methods according to your company's requirements and the algorithms supported by the gateways.
- Select encryption methods that are appropriate for the sensitivity of the transferred information and any regulations that you might have to follow. We recommend that you limit the selection to as few choices as possible, preferably only one.



**CAUTION:** Do not select the **Null** option unless you want to disable encryption. This option disables encryption and allows anyone to view the data in transit. You can use Null encryption to authenticate and check the integrity of communications without encrypting them.



**CAUTION:** Do not select the **DES** option unless you are required to do so. DES is no longer secure, as it is relatively easy to break DES encryption with modern computers.



**Note:** **3DES** (Triple-DES) has a high overhead compared to other protocols with a comparable level of security. 3DES is not a good choice when high throughput is required. **AES-GCM-128** or **AES-GCM-256** are recommended for high-speed networks.



**Note:** The restricted (-R) product version has no strong encryption algorithms.

- 7) In the **Message Digest Algorithm** section, select the message digest algorithm to use in the VPN. In IPsec, the message digest algorithm is used for integrity checking (except when authenticated encryption such as AES-GCM is used). We recommend that you select just one of these options if you have no specific reason to select more.
- 8) If you selected **SHA-2** as the message digest algorithm, select the minimum length for the digest from the drop-down list to the right of the option.
- Set the length according to the security requirements for the VPN.
- 9) In the **Compression Algorithm** section, select the compression algorithm to use in the VPN.
- **Deflate** compresses the data to reduce the bandwidth use on congested links. Compressing the data requires processing and memory resources, which increases latency. Latency might also increase for non-VPN traffic. Do not select this option if the resource consumption is already high. Gateways at both ends of each tunnel involved must support the option.
  - **None** (recommended for most environments) sends the data without compressing it. Provides better performance when bandwidth congestion for VPN traffic is not a constant issue or if there is significant processor load to begin with.
- 10) (Optional) In the **IPsec Tunnel Lifetime** field, enter the tunnel lifetime in minutes or in KB of transferred data.
- Reaching either the time or data amount limits triggers new IPsec SA negotiations, which must happen at regular intervals for the sake of security. This setting affects tunnels that carry traffic continuously. Tunnels that are not used are closed after a short delay regardless of the lifetime set here. IPsec SA negotiations are lighter on the processor than IKE SA negotiations, but still require some processing. Renegotiations that happen too frequently can reduce performance to unacceptable levels.



**Note:** There is a separate setting for the SA Lifetime on the IKE SA tab. The SA Lifetime must be longer than the IPsec Tunnel Lifetime.

- 11) In the **Security Association Granularity for Tunnel Mode** section, select how to create security associations (SAs) for VPN traffic.

The IPsec SAs can be created for each communicating network or host.

- **SA per Net** creates an SA for each network from which connections are made through the VPN. This setting reduces the overhead when there are many hosts making connections through the VPN.
- **SA per Host** creates a SA for each host that makes connections through the VPN. This setting can provide more even load balancing in clusters than the Per Net setting. However, using this setting increases the overhead, as Per Host usually requires more SAs to be negotiated.

- 12) (Optional) Select **Use PFS with Diffie-Hellman Group** to use perfect forward secrecy (PFS) and select the Diffie-Hellman group that you want to use with PFS.

- The gateways calculate new values for key negotiations when renegotiating the SAs instead of deriving the values from previously negotiated keying material. This increases security if a key is compromised.
- We recommend that you select from groups 14-21 according to the security requirements for the VPN. Groups 1, 2, and 5 are not sufficiently secure in all cases, although they might be required for interoperability with legacy systems.

- 13) (Optional) If you have a particular reason to do so, select **Disable Anti-Replay Window**.

The anti-replay window feature provides protection against attacks in which packets are replayed. The gateway checks the sequence numbers of the arriving packets, and discards any packet whose number matches the number of a packet that has already arrived.

We recommend keeping the anti-replay window enabled. However, if QoS is applied to ESP/AH traffic, some ESP packets (for the same SA) might be delayed due to the classification. The delayed ESP packets arrive at the destination so late that the anti-replay window has moved too far. This delay causes the packets to be dropped. In this case, it might be necessary to disable the anti-replay window.

- 14) (Optional) To prevent the gateway from sending ICMP “Fragmentation needed” messages to the originator when the packet size (including the headers added for IPsec) exceeds the Ethernet-standard 1500 bytes, select **Disable Path MTU Discovery**.

If this option is selected, packets might be fragmented for transport across the VPN and reassembled at the receiving gateway. Selecting the option might be necessary if ICMP messages do not reach the other gateway or the other gateway does not react to them correctly.

#### Related concepts

[Defining Policy-Based VPN elements](#) on page 1192

#### Related tasks

[Use a policy-based VPN to encrypt Route-Based VPN tunnels](#) on page 1220

#### Related reference

[Supported encryption algorithms for IPsec VPNs](#) on page 1135

# Define VPN client settings in VPN Profiles


VPN client settings in VPN Profiles affect all VPN client connections and override any overlapping options on other tabs.

## Before you begin

You must have a VPN Profile element.

If a VPN Profile that contains VPN client settings is used in the Route-Based VPN, the VPN Client settings are ignored.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements > Profiles > VPN Profiles** branch in the element tree.
- 3) Double-click the profile you want to edit.
- 4) Click the **IPsec Client** tab.
- 5) Select the **Authentication Method** for certificate-based authentication.
  - This option is always used for the gateway certificates in mobile VPNs. If certificate authentication is used, this option is also used for the client.
  - Certificate authentication does not need separate activation. However, you must configure the issuing authority separately as trusted and you must create certificates for the VPN clients in a manual process.
- 6) (Optional, Stonesoft VPN Client only) Select **Allow Hybrid/EAP Authentication** if you want to allow users to authenticate using a user name and password, or a similar authentication method provided by an external authentication server.

The gateway still authenticates itself to the VPN Clients using a certificate.
- 7) (Optional, certificate authentication only) Select **Allow CN Authentication** to allow using the common name of the certificates for authentication.

The CN is checked against a value entered in the User elements.
- 8) (Optional) Select **Allow Pre-Shared Key Authentication** if you have third-party VPN clients that use a pre-shared key for authenticating the VPN clients and the gateway.

The pre-shared key is defined at the VPN tunnel level in the VPN properties. The Stonesoft VPN Client does not support this method.



**CAUTION:** The pre-shared key option requires aggressive mode IKE negotiations in the mobile VPN. In aggressive mode, user information is not protected. We recommend taking precautions, such as not using the same user name for the users as they have for other services in your internal network.

- 9) Select the **IPsec Security Association Granularity for Tunnel Mode** for VPN traffic. The Stonesoft VPN Client supports only the **SA per Net** option.
- 10) (Optional) Activate any combination of basic **Local Security Checks** for the Stonesoft VPN Client.
  - The selected types of external security software must be operational as reported by the Windows Security Center on the client computer. Otherwise, the connection attempt fails. The check is performed after the user has successfully authenticated.
  - All client security checks are for the on or off status of the external security software only. The checks do not include the update status of virus definitions or if any Windows updates have been installed.
  - If the security check fails, the Stonesoft VPN Client notifies the user which checks have failed with a message in the Windows taskbar.
- 11) If you use certificates for authentication and you want to restrict trusted certificate authorities at the VPN level, proceed to *Define trusted CAs for a VPN*.
- 12) Otherwise, click **OK** and proceed create a Policy-Based VPN element.

#### Related tasks

[Define trusted CAs for a VPN](#) on page 1190

[Create a Policy-Based VPN element](#) on page 1195

[Define Mobile VPNs](#) on page 1208


## Define trusted CAs for a VPN


If you want to use certificates signed by a particular certificate authority (CA), you must define the CA as an element. By default, all VPN CAs are considered trusted, but you can restrict the trusted CAs for particular VPNs.

### Before you begin

You must have a VPN Certificate Authority element and a VPN Profile element.

You can also restrict trusted CAs in VPN Gateway and External VPN Gateway elements. If you restrict trusted CAs in both the gateway and the VPN Profile, make sure that any two gateways that form a VPN tunnel trust the same CA after all defined restrictions are applied.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements > Profiles > VPN Profiles** branch in the element tree.
- 3) Double-click the profile you want to edit.
- 4) Click the **Certificate Authorities** tab.


- 5) To restrict the trusted CAs, select **Trust Only Selected**.  
The options below are activated.
- 6) Select the CAs that you want to be considered as trusted in the VPNs that use this profile.
- 7) Click **OK**.


## Export iOS VPN configuration profiles

Exporting iOS VPN configuration profiles simplifies the VPN client configuration for iOS VPN client users.

### Before you begin

The mobile VPN must be fully configured. These steps are for the native iOS VPN client only. The VPN must use the iOS Suite VPN profile.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) In the elements tree, select the **Policy-Based VPNs** branch, then right-click the VPN to which VPN users connect.
- 3) Select **Tools > Export iOS VPN Configuration Profile**.
- 4) (Optional) Next to the **Export File** field, click **Browse**, then browse to the folder where you want to save the file.
- 5) Next to the **Gateway** field, click **Select**, then select the VPN gateway to which iOS VPN client users connect.
- 6) (Optional) From the **Endpoint** drop-down list, select the endpoint IP address to which iOS VPN client users connect.
- 7) (Optional) To require users to enter a password to open the configuration file, enter a password in the **Password** field.
- 8) Click **Export**.
- 9) Make the configuration available to the iOS VPN client users.  
The VPN client setup procedure automatically starts when the users open the configuration file on the iOS device.

# Defining Policy-Based VPN elements

The Policy-Based VPN element collects together the gateways and the VPN Profile, and provides the settings for defining the topology and the tunnels of the Policy-Based VPN.

The main configuration for the VPN consists of defining which gateways are in the VPN and which of the gateways form tunnels with each other. The Policy-Based VPN element is also where you can enter and renew pre-shared keys if you use them for authentication in this VPN.

The topology is determined by selecting whether the Gateways are Central or Satellite in each particular Policy-Based VPN element:

- A *central gateway* establishes VPN tunnels with any other central or satellite gateway in the VPN, unless you specifically disable the tunnels.
- A *satellite gateway* establishes VPN tunnels only with central gateways.
- You can also create a VPN hub by adding a gateway so that it is listed under some other (central or satellite) gateway in the topology. Other gateways connect to the higher-level gateway, which forwards the connections to the lower-level gateway.

The Sites and networks for each gateway element can be adjusted in the Policy-Based VPN element, but most of the settings are not specific to the Policy-Based VPN. The only change that is specific to the Policy-Based VPN is to disable some Site element in the Policy-Based VPN element. Disabling a Site excludes the IP addresses from that Policy-Based VPN only. Any other adjustments to the Sites and networks affect all other VPNs where the same gateway element is used.

Tunnels are generated from each central gateway to all other gateways based on the overall topology. You can adjust the tunnels to limit which gateways and endpoints form tunnels with each other. You can also change some of the properties for tunnels between two particular gateways or endpoints, such as the VPN Profile used. You can also define Multi-Link VPN settings that allow you to select standby and active tunnels and to set tunnels to aggregate mode. In aggregate mode, each connection is automatically balanced between the aggregate tunnels. Aggregate mode is likely to cause packet reordering that can actually decrease performance, depending on the TCP stacks in the connection endpoints.



**Note:** Although the VPN endpoints usually correspond to the NetLink interfaces in a Multi-Link configuration, the VPN endpoint settings are separate from the NetLink and Multi-Link definitions. For example, a NetLink that is set to standby for cleartext can still be used as an active endpoint for VPN traffic.

When you configure the Policy-Based VPN element, the validity of the VPN is automatically checked. If problems are found, they are shown in the **Issues** view. While useful in many cases, the automatic check does not detect all problems, especially regarding external gateways or interference between several separate Policy-Based VPN elements.

Consider the following when creating new Policy-Based VPN elements:

- Check whether you can use an existing Policy-Based VPN element instead. Most settings can be set individually for each site-to-site tunnel even within a single Policy-Based VPN. The VPN Profile, pre-shared key, and Multi-Link settings can all be selected separately for each VPN tunnel. Site definitions are the only major exception to this rule.
- There must not be duplicate tunnels (two tunnels between the same two endpoints) in the configuration of any Firewall. Duplicate tunnels cause a policy installation failure. The easiest way to avoid duplicate tunnels is to define all VPNs between your Firewalls in the same Policy-Based VPN element.
- If you are creating VPNs with partner organizations, you might only want to include a subset of the internal IP address space in the VPN Site definitions. Limiting the IP address space allows you to avoid revealing all internal addresses to your partner. Any cases where Site definitions must be different for different VPN tunnels requires creating separate Policy-Based VPN elements.

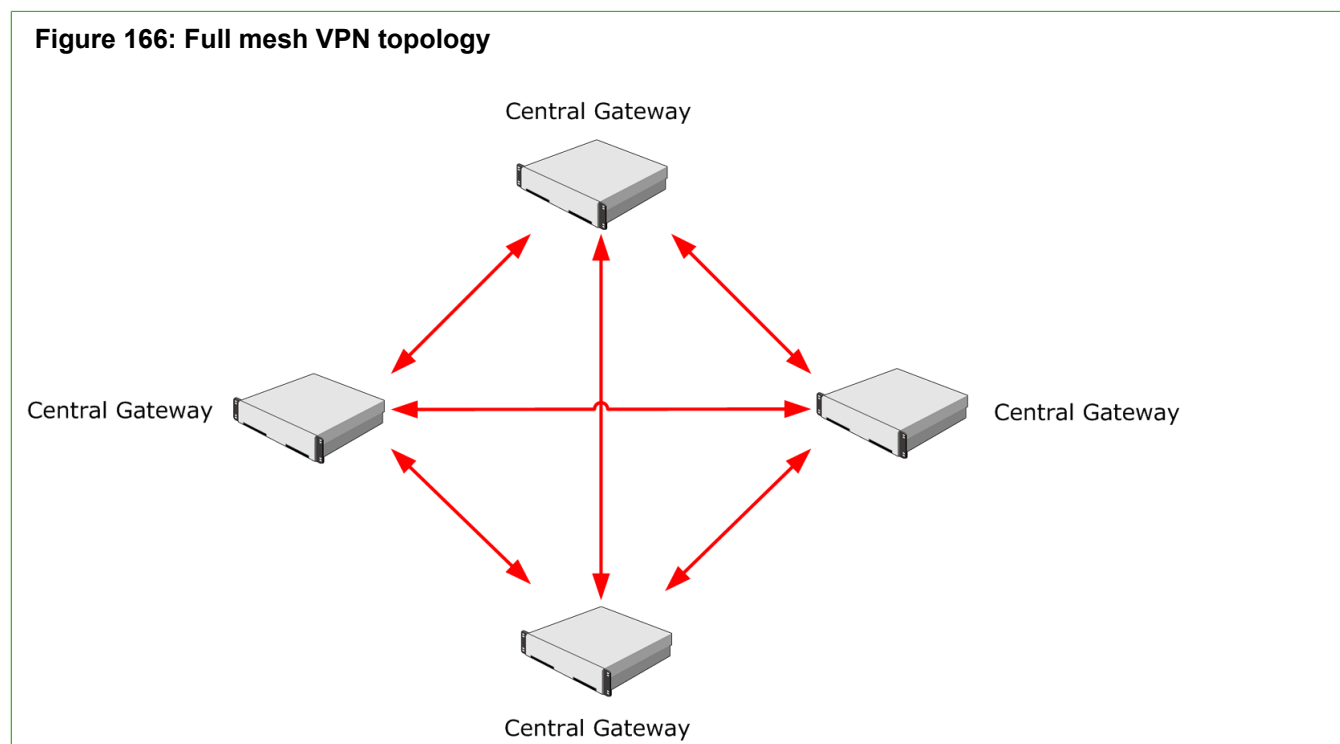


## VPN topologies

Policy-Based VPN tunnels can be defined using different topologies:

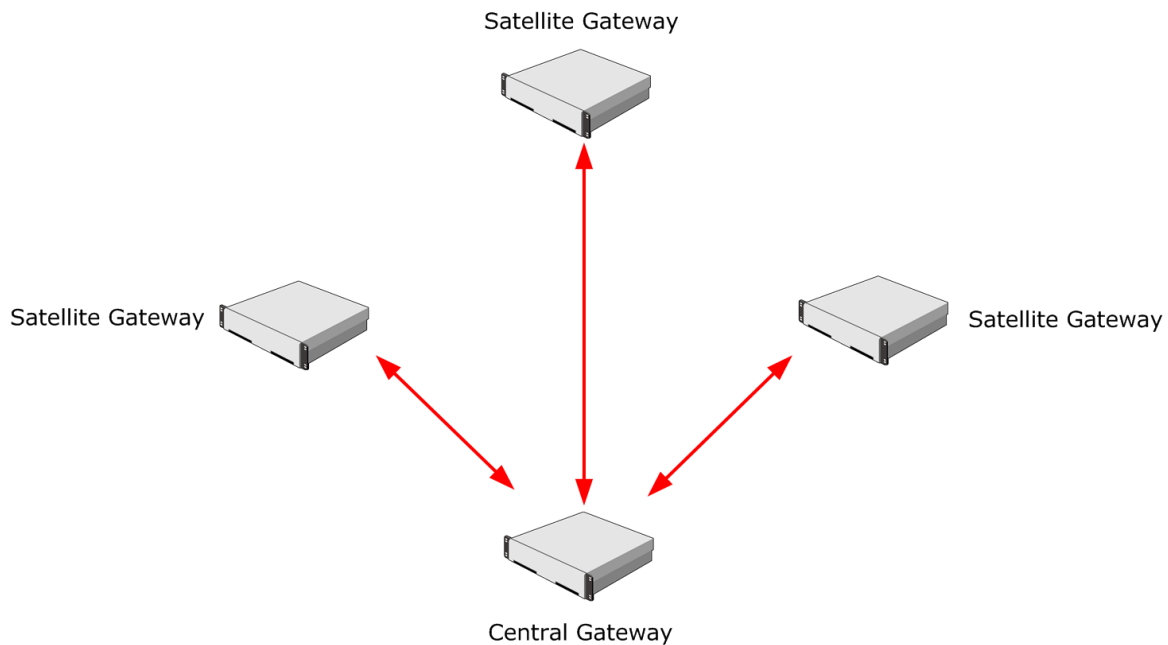
- *Full-mesh topology* connects each site to every other site in the same VPN. All gateways are central gateways, which means that all gateways can establish tunnels with all other gateways in the VPN.
- *Star topology* connects sites behind satellite gateways to the sites behind central gateways. No VPN tunnels are established between the satellite gateways.
- *VPN hub topology* routes site-to-site or mobile VPN connections to other sites through a central (hub) gateway using other site-to-site VPNs. The hub is usually a central gateway, but it can also be a satellite gateway.

The full mesh topology, presented in the following illustration, is formed between sites that must all be able to connect to any other site.



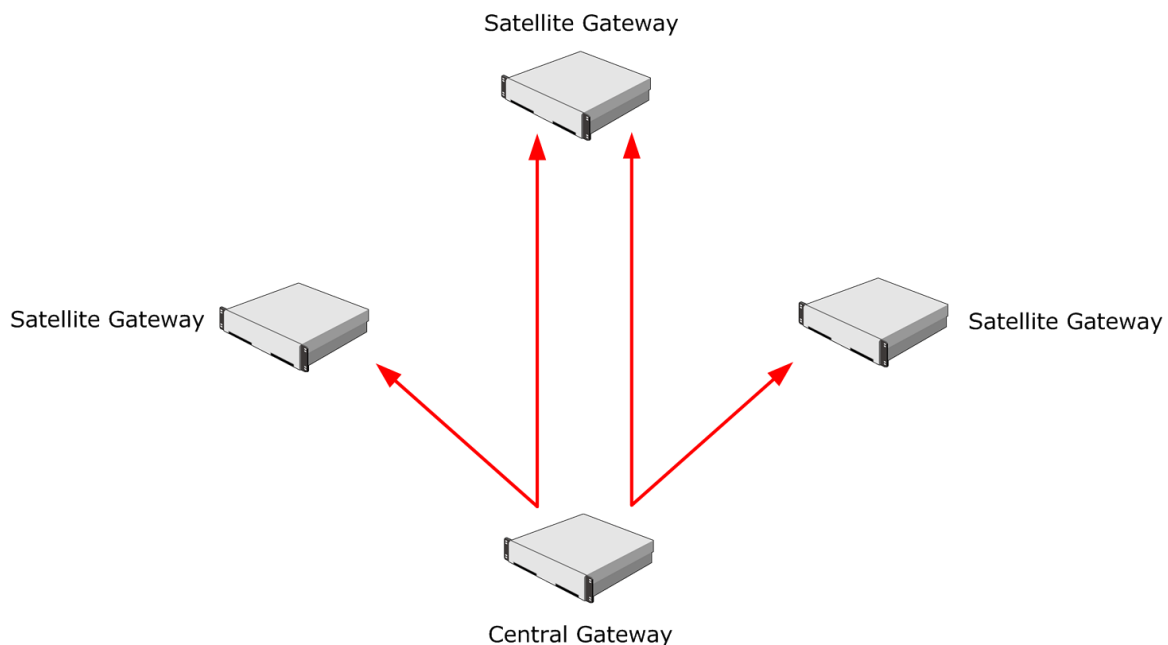
The full-mesh topology allows VPN communications from any one site to any other site.

In VPNs with partner organizations or remote offices, VPN connectivity is needed between remote sites and a main site, but not from one remote site to another. This topology is a star topology.

**Figure 167: Star VPN topology**

The star topology is defined with satellite gateways that connect only to the central gateway. There is no VPN between the satellite gateways. This topology reduces the number of VPN tunnels that the gateways maintain compared to full-mesh topology. Having fewer tunnels can save resources on the remote gateways.

Sometimes the star topology is preferred even if VPN connectivity is needed between the remote offices. In this case, the central gateway can be used as a hub that relays traffic from one VPN tunnel to another. Traffic can be forwarded from either a site-to-site tunnel or a mobile VPN tunnel.

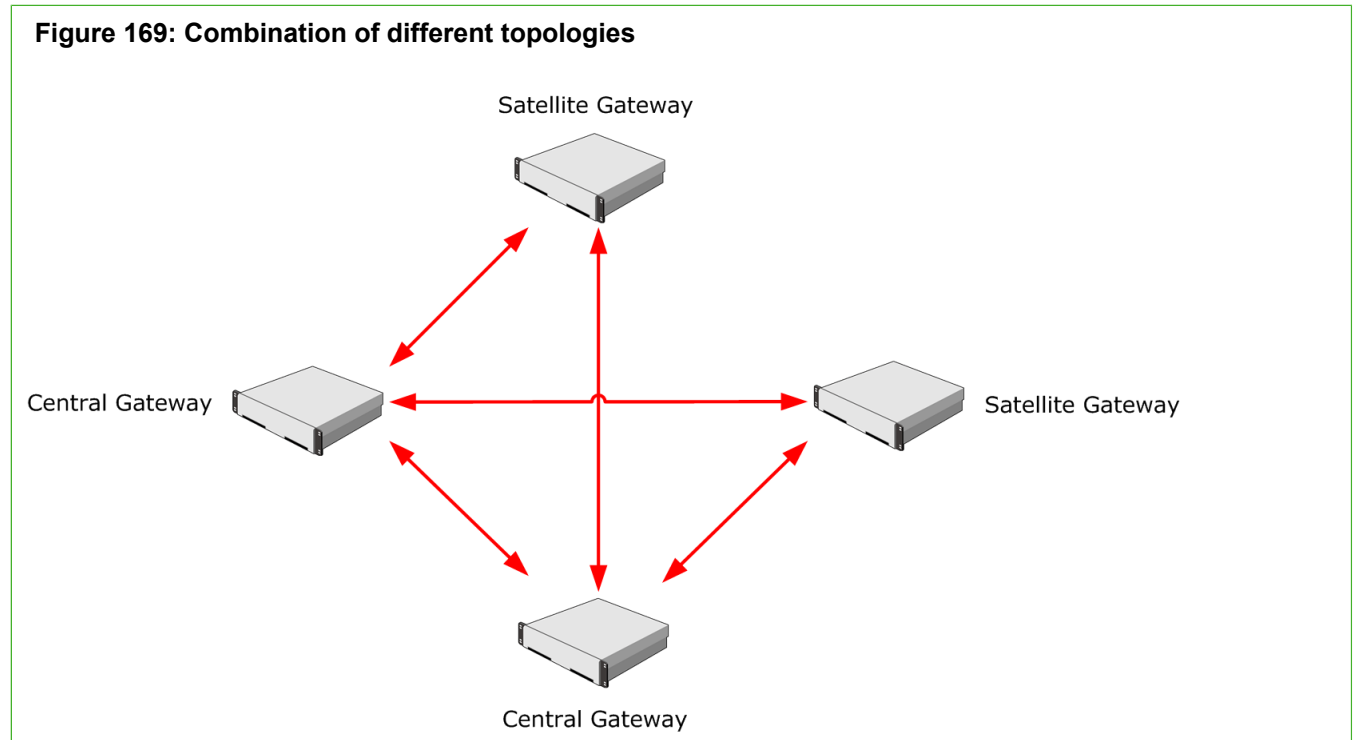
**Figure 168: Hub VPN topology**

The hub topology simplifies VPN client use if the clients connect to several gateways. It can also make setting up site-to-site VPNs easier, especially if the satellite gateways are third-party devices. VPN encryption and

decryption require heavy computing. Consider hardware performance before high volumes of traffic are concentrated at a hub gateway.

The VPN configuration can be a mix of the different topologies, since the connectivity requirements vary from location to location. The following illustration shows an example of a mixed topology.

**Figure 169: Combination of different topologies**



Replacing two of the central gateways from the full mesh example with satellite gateways results in a VPN where all but two gateways still have a VPN with each other.

### Related concepts

[Defining VPN gateways](#) on page 1170

## Create a Policy-Based VPN element

The configuration of a Policy-Based VPN element has two stages: first you define some basic properties for the element, then you can add gateways and adjust the tunnels.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Right-click the **Policy-Based VPNs** branch in the tree and select **New Policy-Based VPN**.
- 3) Enter the **Name** and optionally a **Comment** for the VPN element.
- 4) Select the **Default VPN Profile** for the VPN.  
By default, this profile is used for all tunnels, but you can override the selection for individual tunnels.

5) (Optional) Select the **DSCP QoS Policy** that defines how DSCP matching and marking is done for VPN traffic in one of the following ways:

- Select an existing QoS Policy from the list.
- Select **Other**, then select an existing QoS Policy. To create a QoS Policy element, select **Tools > New > QoS Policy**.

6) (Optional) Select **Apply NAT to Traffic That Uses This VPN** in the following cases:

- You want the NAT rules in the engine's policy to apply to traffic that it sends into or receives from the VPN.
- You want to use the NAT Pool feature to translate VPN client connections

The option affects the traffic that is transported inside the tunnels. The option does not affect the tunnel negotiations or the encrypted packets between gateways. These communications are always matched to NAT rules.

7) Click **OK**.

The Policy-Based VPN opens for editing.

## Next steps

You are now ready to define VPN topology for the Policy-Based VPN.

### Related concepts


[Defining VPN gateways](#) on page 1170

### Related tasks

[Define QoS Policy elements](#) on page 956

# Edit a Policy-Based VPN element

The Policy-Based VPN element can be configured in two ways: the basic properties are defined in the Policy-Based VPN element's properties. All other settings, including the included gateways, Sites, and tunnels are configured in the Policy-Based VPN editing view.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Expand the **Policy-Based VPNs** branch in the element tree.
- 3) Open the correct view for the settings you want to edit:
  - To edit the basic properties, right-click the Policy-Based VPN element and select **Properties**. You must open the editing view manually after changing the basic settings. The editing view does not open automatically in this case.
  - To adjust the other settings, right-click the Policy-Based VPN element and select **Edit**.

# Define VPN topology for Policy-Based VPNs

For a valid Policy-Based VPN, you must have at least two gateways in the VPN. At least one of the gateways must be listed as a central gateway. The satellite gateways list can be left empty (for a full-mesh topology).

The Policy-Based VPN editing view has three tabs. The gateway selection on the **Site-to-Site VPN** tab determines the following:

- Which gateways are included in the VPN.
- Which gateways form tunnels with each other.
- Which gateways contact each other through a hub gateway instead of contacting each other directly.

You define general VPN topology by classifying gateways as Central Gateways or Satellite Gateways. This classification defines which tunnels are generated on the **Tunnels** tab, and which gateways can be selected for mobile VPN access on the **Mobile VPN** tab.

IPv4 Access rules control which connections use the VPN tunnels. Always check the Access rules after you add or remove tunnels.



**Note:** Each endpoint-to-endpoint tunnel can only exist in one active VPN. If you use the same two gateway elements in more than one VPN, make sure that the topology does not create duplicate tunnels. You can also disable any duplicates of existing tunnels on the **Tunnels** tab.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Browse to **Policy-Based VPNs**.
- 3) Right-click the Policy-Based VPN element, then select **Edit**.
- 4) On the **Site-to-Site VPN** tab, drag and drop the Gateways you want to include in this VPN into either of the two panes for the VPN topology.
  - If you add a gateway under **Central Gateways**, the gateway can establish a VPN with any other gateway in the VPN. The **Tunnels** tab is populated with tunnels between the endpoints of the gateway you add and the endpoints of all other gateways in the VPN.
  - If you add a gateway under **Satellite Gateways**, the gateway can establish a VPN only with central gateways in this VPN. The **Tunnels** tab is populated with tunnels between the endpoints of the gateway you add and the endpoints of the central gateways.
  - The **Issues** pane alerts you to any incompatible or missing settings that you must correct.



**Note:** Be careful to not unintentionally drop gateways on top of other gateways. Dropping gateways on top of other gateways creates a forwarding relationship on a hub gateway.

- 5) (Optional) If you want to forward connections from one VPN tunnel into another through a hub gateway, drag and drop a gateway on top of another gateway. The gateway is added under the other gateway at the same level as the Sites.

The Gateway used as a hub requires a special Site configuration.

- 6) (Optional) If you want to exclude a gateway's Site (some IP addresses) from this VPN, right-click the Site element under the gateway, then select **Disable**.

- 7) (Optional) Define which VPN Gateways provide Mobile VPN access.
  - a) On the **Mobile VPN** tab, select one of the following options:
    - **Only central Gateways from overall topology** — Only the **VPN Gateways in the Central Gateways** list on the **Site-to-Site VPN** tab provide mobile VPN access.
    - **All Gateways from overall topology** — All VPN Gateways included in the VPN provide mobile VPN access.
    - **Selected Gateways below** — Only the VPN Gateways that you add to the **Mobile VPN Gateways** tree provide mobile VPN access.
  - b) If you selected **Selected Gateways below**, drag and drop one or more VPN Gateways to the **Mobile VPN Gateways** tree.
- 8) Click **Save**.

#### Related concepts

[Defining VPN gateways](#) on page 1170

[Configuration 4: Basic VPN hub](#) on page 1160

#### Related tasks

[Adjust VPN-specific Site settings](#) on page 1180

## Define VPN tunnel settings for Policy-Based VPNs

The **Tunnels** tab in the Policy-Based VPN editing view allows you to define settings particular to individual tunnels or disable some tunnels altogether.

The topology of the Policy-Based VPN (defined on the **Site-to-Site VPN** tab) determines which tunnels are shown on the **Tunnels** tab. If you have set up connection forwarding between the gateways on the **Site-to-Site VPN** tab, the number of generated tunnels is reduced according to the relationships and the capabilities of the gateway that forwards the traffic. The forwarding relationships are shown under **Forwarding Gateways**.


There are two types of tunnels:



- The **Gateway<->Gateway** list shows connections between pairs of gateways.
- The **Endpoint<->Endpoint** list shows the individual connections that form the tunnels in the **Gateway<->Gateway** list. There can be several connections at this level for any Gateway pair if one or both of the Gateways have multiple endpoints (Multi-Link). If both Gateways have only one endpoint, there is only one tunnel also at this level for the Gateway pair.

If a VPN Gateway has a Multi-Link VPN configuration, you can select whether to use tunnels as backups or actively balance traffic between them. Multi-Link is specific to Forcepoint NGFW, and is not part of the IPsec standard. You might not be able to use Multi-Link with third-party gateways. Satisfactory results can be achieved if the third-party gateway allows ICMP probes, RTT ICMP probes, and supports DPD. You can disable redundant tunnels to the third-party gateway on the **Tunnels** tab if necessary.

This tab is also where you can view the *link summary*. The link summary is a summary of addresses and settings that have been configured for individual tunnels. You might want to check the link summary when there are complex setups involving external components (such as a VPN hub configuration).

Before editing a Policy-Based VPN element that is used in active VPNs, we recommend making a backup of the Management Server.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Browse to **Policy-Based VPNs**.
- 3) Right-click the Policy-Based VPN element, then select **Edit**.
- 4) Click the **Tunnels** tab.  
The list of tunnels is displayed.
- 5) (Optional) If there are tunnels listed that are not needed, right-click the tunnel, then select **Disable**.  
Duplicate tunnels are not allowed between VPNs. If another VPN already defines a tunnel between the same endpoints, disable the duplicate tunnel in one of the VPNs.
- 6) If you use pre-shared keys for authentication with external gateways, either set a key with your partner or export the keys that have been generated for your partner.  
To view, change, or export the pre-shared key for a particular tunnel, double-click  in the **Key** column in the **Gateway<->Gateway** list. This pre-shared key is used only with gateway devices. Set pre-shared keys for third-party VPN clients in the User elements. The Stonesoft VPN Client does not allow pre-shared key authentication.



**CAUTION:** The pre-shared key must be long and random to provide a secure VPN. Change the pre-shared key periodically (for example, monthly). Make sure that it is not possible for outsiders to obtain the key while you transfer it to other devices.

- 7) (Optional) Change the **VPN Profile** used at the tunnel level to override the profile selected for the VPN element:
  - If you change a profile for a tunnel on the **Gateway<->Gateway** list, both IKE SA and IPsec SA settings are overridden from the default for the VPN.
  - If you change a profile for a tunnel on the **Endpoint<->Endpoint** list, only the IPsec SA settings are overridden from the selection for the main tunnel on the gateway level.
- 8) (Optional, Multi-Link only) Select the **Mode** in which **Endpoint<->Endpoint** links are used.
  - a) Select a tunnel on the **Gateway<->Gateway** list.
  - b) Right-click the **Mode** column for a link on the **Endpoint<->Endpoint** list, then select the mode from the right-click menu.  
  
The Mode that you select for a link overrides the Mode setting in the endpoint properties. You can also configure the link's Mode to be automatically calculated based on the Mode defined for the endpoints. You can also define QoS Exceptions to select the Mode based on the QoS class of the traffic that is directed to the link.
- 9) (Optional) To review the IP addresses and settings used in the individual tunnels, right-click the tunnels on the **Endpoint<->Endpoint** list, then select **View Link Summary**.

- 10) After making all changes, check the **Validity** column for all tunnels.
  - a) If a tunnel has a warning icon in the **Validity** column, right-click the tunnel, then select **View Issues**.
  - b) Resolve all problems indicated in the messages shown.

If all tunnels are shown as valid, the Policy-Based VPN is correctly configured, although the Management Server cannot check all possible problems in this view. More issues might be shown at policy installation. Any validation and issues that are shown for external gateways are based only on the definitions that have been entered manually into the related elements.

- 11) Click  **Save**.

## Result

The VPN is now configured.

## Next steps

You are now ready to add Access rules and possibly also NAT rules to direct outgoing traffic to the VPN and allow incoming traffic from the VPN.

### Related concepts

[Defining VPN gateways](#) on page 1170

[Defining Policy-Based VPN elements](#) on page 1192

[VPN certificates and how they work](#) on page 1231


### Related tasks


[Back up system configurations](#) on page 1275

# Change VPN link modes in policy-based VPNs

The Mode of a VPN link determines how the link is used for VPN traffic.

You can select the Mode in which **End-Point<->End-Point** tunnels are used if there are multiple links between two Gateways (Multi-Link configuration). The Mode you select is the default mode for the link.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Expand the **Policy-Based VPNs** branch in the element tree.
- 3) Right-click the Policy-Based VPN element and select **Edit**.  
The Policy-Based VPN opens for editing.
- 4) On the **Tunnels** tab, select a tunnel on the **Gateway<->Gateway** list.  
The links between the gateways are displayed in the **End-Point<->End-Point** list.



- 5) Right-click the **Mode** column for a link on the **End-Point<->End-Point** list and select **Edit Mode**.
- 6) Select the **Mode** for the link.  
The link's Mode setting overrides the Mode defined in the endpoint properties.



**Note:** The Active and the Aggregate modes are mutually exclusive. All VPN endpoints and the links between two gateways must be either in Active and Standby modes or in Aggregate and Standby modes.

- 7) (Optional) Add a **QoS Exception** that defines the tunnel's Mode for VPN traffic that has been assigned a particular QoS class.
  - a) Click **Add** and select the QoS Class. To create a QoS Class element, select **Tools > New > QoS Class**.  
A new row is added to the QoS Exceptions table.
  - b) Click the **Mode** column to select the Mode for the QoS Class.



**Note:** Each QoS Exception definition is link-specific. If you want to direct traffic that has a particular QoS Class to more than one link in a Multi-Link VPN configuration, define a QoS Exception for each link.

- 8) (Optional) Repeat the previous step to add more QoS Exceptions.
- 9) Click **OK**.

### Related tasks

[Create QoS Class elements](#) on page 955

## Rules for Policy-Based VPNs

The firewall IPv4 Access rules define which traffic is sent to the Policy-Based VPN and which traffic is allowed out of the Policy-Based VPN.

These checks are made in addition to the enforcement of the Site definitions of the Gateways, which define the allowed source and destination addresses for each VPN.

No traffic is sent through the Policy-Based VPN until you direct traffic to the VPN in the IPv4 or IPv6 Access rules. The Policy-Based VPN must be referenced in at least one IPv4 Access rule or IPv6 Access rule. The communications required to establish the VPN are allowed based on the Policy-Based VPN definitions and the rules in the Firewall Template. You do not need to specifically include the gateway addresses in the Access rules if your policy is based on the Firewall Template. You might need to allow traffic to the gateway addresses if you use your own customized top-level template policy.

VPN Access rules behave basically the same as all other Access rules: you define certain matching criteria and all traffic that matches is then handled according to the Action set for the rule. The **Use VPN** rule action has three main options, which have different effects depending on the source and destination of the traffic:

- **Apply** — Directs traffic from protected local networks into the Policy-Based VPN tunnel. It allows traffic that arrives through a Policy-Based VPN to proceed. The rule does not match non-VPN traffic from outside networks into the protected networks regardless of whether the other cells in the rule match. This action allows handling special cases in which VPN and cleartext traffic that match the same rule must be passed through the firewall.

- **Enforce** — Directs traffic from protected local networks into the Policy-Based VPN tunnel. It allows traffic that arrives through a Policy-Based VPN to proceed. The rule drops non-VPN connections from outside networks into the protected networks if the other cells in the rule match the connection.
- **Forward** — Directs traffic from protected local networks or from a Policy-Based VPN tunnel into another Policy-Based VPN tunnel. This action is useful for forwarding connections from one Policy-Based VPN tunnel into another (VPN hub configuration), or from local networks to VPN client computers that are currently connected.

When traffic is sent out through a Policy-Based VPN, the correct tunnel is selected based on the Sites of the gateway elements. If a VPN Access rule matches a connection with a source or destination IP address that is not included in the Sites, tunnel selection fails. The connection is dropped.

Incoming connections that arrive through the Policy-Based VPN are matched just like connections that do not use a VPN. Incoming connections do not have to match a VPN Access rule to be allowed in through the Policy-Based VPN. Any Access rule can match a Policy-Based VPN connection. You can use the **Source VPN** cell to match traffic based on whether the traffic is coming from a Policy-Based VPN tunnel. When the Source VPN cell is set to match Policy-Based VPNs, the rule only matches traffic from the selected Policy-Based VPNs. The cell can also be set to only match non-VPN traffic, or traffic from VPN clients. Access rules that do not have any Source VPN definition can match any traffic, including traffic that is received through a VPN.



**Note:** We recommend activating logging for the Policy-Based VPN rules for initial testing even if you do not plan to log the connections that use the Policy-Based VPN later. VPN negotiations between the gateways are always logged.

NAT rules only apply to the encrypted packets (the VPN tunnel) by default. The addresses of the packets going through the Policy-Based VPN tunnel are translated if you specifically enable NAT for the Policy-Based VPN. With NAT, the traffic in the Policy-Based VPN tunnel uses the translated addresses, so you must define the Sites using the translated addresses.




**Note:** NAT is needed for the NAT Pool feature in VPN client communications and for the Server Pool feature in inbound traffic management. To use these features in a Policy-Based VPN, NAT must be enabled in the Policy-Based VPN element.

## Create rules for gateway connections in Policy-Based VPNs

---

The Firewall Template policy contains rules that allow the Policy-Based VPN traffic to form and maintain the tunnels. If you use a custom top-level template, you must allow this traffic in the policy.

If you use a custom top-level template, make sure that at least the **ISAKMP (UDP)** Service is allowed between the gateways. You might also need to open other ports if encapsulation is used.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Create rules for incoming site-to-site VPN traffic,
  - a) Insert the following type of rule to allow traffic from a single Policy-Based VPN with an **Apply** or **Enforce** action:

**Table 146: Basic rule for allowing incoming VPN traffic from a single Policy-Based VPN**

Source	Destination	Service	Action
Remote networks.	Local networks.	Set as needed.	Select <b>Use VPN</b> , then change the <b>Action</b> to <b>Apply</b> or <b>Enforce</b> , and click <b>Select</b> to add the Policy-Based VPN element.

- b) (Optional) Define the following types of rules when you want to match the rule based on whether traffic is using a Policy-Based VPN:

**Table 147: Rule for allowing incoming Policy-Based VPN traffic from any number of different Policy-Based VPNs**

Source	Destination	Service	Action	Source VPN
Remote networks.	Local networks.	Set as needed.	Select <b>Allow</b> .	(Double-click the cell to edit.) To ignore this rule for non-VPN traffic, select the <b>Match traffic based on source VPN</b> option. Add one or more Policy-Based VPN elements according to where the traffic is coming from. This rule does not match traffic from other sources.

- 2) To create rules for outgoing Policy-Based VPN traffic, insert the following type of rules:

**Table 148: Basic rule for outgoing VPN traffic**

Source	Destination	Service	Action
Local networks.	Remote networks.	Set as needed.	Select <b>Use VPN</b> and click <b>Select</b> to add the Policy-Based VPN element (the <b>Apply</b> , <b>Enforce</b> , and <b>Forward</b> actions are all identical in this use).



**Note:** If Access rules send traffic into a Policy-Based VPN, but the source or destination IP addresses are not included in the Site definitions, the traffic is dropped. This configuration error is shown as the message “tunnel selection failed” in the logs.

# Create rules for VPN client connections in Policy-Based VPNs

The Firewall Template policy contains rules that allow the Policy-Based VPN traffic to form and maintain the tunnels. VPN client user authentication is also allowed as part of this VPN connection establishment process. If you use a custom top-level template, you must allow this traffic in the policy.

If your Firewall Policy is based on the Firewall Template policy, there is no need to create rules for VPN client connections. If your Firewall Policy is based on a custom top-level template, make sure that the policy allows the correct Services.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Add the following type of rule to allow incoming connections from VPN clients:

**Table 149: Rule for allowing incoming traffic from VPN clients**

Source	Destination	Service	Action	Authentication
VPN clients' Virtual Adapter address space or ANY if Virtual Adapters are not used.	Local networks.	Set as needed.	Select <b>Use VPN</b> , then change the <b>Action</b> to <b>Apply</b> or <b>Enforce</b> , and click <b>Select</b> to add the Policy-Based VPN element.	(Double-click the cell to edit.) Add User or User Group elements and allowed Authentication Methods.

- When a Policy-Based VPN and Authentication Methods are specified in the installed policy, the corresponding configurations are activated on the firewall. Connections from VPN client users are also matched against all other rules.
- Any users who can authenticate using the specified authentication method can connect with a VPN client. Any such connected users can access resources if there is a matching rule that allows connections without specific Users defined. You can also use the **Source VPN** cell to prevent unwanted matches in Access rules.
- When filled in, the **User** and **Authentication** cells are equal to Source, Destination, and Service as rule matching criteria. Matching continues from the next rule if the defined User and Authentication Method do not match the connection that is being examined. You can, for example, create rules that give the same user access to different resources depending on the authentication method used.

- 2) (Optional) To allow internal hosts to open connections to the VPN client computers when the VPN is active, add the following type of rule:

**Table 150: Rule for sending traffic to VPN clients**

Source	Destination	Service	Action
Local networks.	VPN clients' Virtual Adapter address space.	Set as needed.	Select <b>Use VPN</b> , then change the <b>Action</b> to <b>Forward</b> . Add a specific Policy-Based VPN element or select the <b>Any Mobile VPN</b> option to match any VPN client connection.

- To use the Policy-Based VPN, the connecting hosts' IP addresses must be included in the gateway's Site definition.
- If NAT is used inside this Policy-Based VPN's tunnels, add a NAT rule for this traffic direction.

### Related concepts


[Defining VPN gateways](#) on page 1170

[Defining Policy-Based VPN elements](#) on page 1192

[Defining Site elements for VPN gateways](#) on page 1177

## Create forwarding rules on hub gateways for Policy-Based VPNs

Create rules for forwarding Policy-Based VPN traffic from one tunnel to another and for forwarding tunneled traffic to the Internet.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Add the following type of rule for forwarding Policy-Based VPN traffic from one tunnel to another:

**Table 151: Basic rule for forwarding Policy-Based VPN traffic**

Source	Destination	Service	Action	Source VPN
Addresses in remote (spoke) networks as needed.	Addresses in remote (spoke) networks as needed.	Set as needed.	Select <b>Use VPN</b> , then change the <b>Action</b> to <b>Forward</b> , and click <b>Select</b> to add the Policy-Based VPN element into which matching traffic is forwarded.	(Double-click the cell to edit.) Activate the <b>Match traffic based on source VPN</b> option and add one or more specific Policy-Based VPN elements according to where the traffic is coming from.

- 2) Add the following type of rule for forwarding tunneled traffic to the Internet:

**Table 152: Rule for allowing traffic except if it arrives through Policy-Based VPNs**

Source	Destination	Service	Action	Source VPN
Set as needed.	Set as needed.	Set as needed.	Select <b>Allow</b> .	(Double-click the cell to edit.) Activate the <b>Match traffic based on source VPN</b> option and add one or more specific Policy-Based VPN elements according to where the traffic is coming from. This rule does not match traffic from other sources.

In most cases, the source IP addresses are from a private address space. You must add a NAT rule to translate them to publicly routable IP addresses. Make sure that NAT is enabled in the **Properties** dialog box of the Policy-Based VPN element. Add a NAT rule for the VPN traffic if a suitable NAT rule does not exist already.

- 3) Configure the remote gateway or VPN clients to forward all traffic to the VPN.
- VPN clients — Configure the DHCP server to assign the hub gateway as the default gateway for the VPN clients.
  - Forcepoint NGFW gateways — Create a VPN rule that directs all traffic to the Policy-Based VPN with the hub gateway.



**Note:** For the traffic to be allowed into the VPN, the destination IP address must be part of the Site definition of the hub gateway. When you forward Internet traffic, the hub's Site must usually include the Any Network element. This Site can interfere with other VPN configurations. We recommend disabling it in other VPNs.

#### Related concepts


[Defining VPN gateways](#) on page 1170

[Defining Policy-Based VPN elements](#) on page 1192

[Configuration 4: Basic VPN hub](#) on page 1160

# Prevent other Access rules from matching Policy-Based VPN traffic

Create rules that do not match connections opened through a Policy-Based VPN.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

1) Add the following type of rule:

**Table 153: Rule for allowing traffic except if it arrives through VPNs**

Source	Destination	Service	Action	Source VPN
Set as needed.	Set as needed.	Set as needed.	Set as needed.	(Double-click the cell to change settings.) Activate the <b>Match traffic based on source VPN</b> option. Select <b>Rule does not match traffic from any VPN</b> from the list.

## Create NAT rules for Policy-Based VPN traffic

If you want to apply NAT to traffic inside a Policy-Based VPN tunnel, you must allow NAT with an option in the Policy-Based VPN element's properties.

NAT rules are always applied to the encrypted communications that have the gateways as their source and destination. NAT is not applied to the traffic that uses the Policy-Based VPN tunnel.

Observe the following guidelines:

- Define Sites (encryption domains) that contain the translated IP addresses that the packets use when they are inside the Policy-Based VPN tunnel. Set the Sites that contain the real IP addresses to Private mode in the Policy-Based VPN.  
Example: If you translate IP addresses of traffic going into the Policy-Based VPN, add a Site that includes the translated IP addresses to your VPN Gateway element. The Sites that contain the internal addresses are set to Private mode.
- If address translation for VPN clients is enabled for the firewall in the Engine Editor, the NAT Pool translation is applied before the NAT rules. NAT rules cannot match traffic to which NAT pool translation is applied. NAT Pool is the preferred method for translating VPN client addresses.
- If you want to forward traffic originating from VPN clients to the Internet, you must typically have at least two NAT rules. The first rule is for connections to internal resources to prevent NAT from being applied or to translate to an internal IP address as necessary. The second rule translates internal IP addresses to an external IP address for the Internet connections.

The order of processing for traffic going into a Policy-Based VPN tunnel is:

Access Rules | NAT Rules | VPN tunnel.

The order of processing for traffic coming out of a VPN tunnel is:

Access Rules | (VPN client NAT Pool) | NAT Rules | Internal Network.

Other than these guidelines, there are no other VPN-specific issues with NAT rules. The first matching NAT rule is applied to those connections that are matched against the NAT rules and the rest of the NAT rules are ignored.

### Related concepts

[Defining VPN gateways](#) on page 1170

[Defining Policy-Based VPN elements](#) on page 1192

[Getting started with NAT rules](#) on page 831

### Related tasks

[Adjust VPN-specific Site settings](#) on page 1180

## Define Mobile VPNs

You can use both SSL VPN and IPsec tunnels together in the mobile VPN configuration in the same policy-based VPN.



**Note:** Mobile VPNs are not supported in the Route-Based VPN.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Configure VPN Client settings in the Engine Editor.
  - a) Right-click a firewall element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
  - b) Browse to **VPN > VPN Client**.
  - c) (Optional) If you want to display a different name for the Gateway to Mobile VPN users, enter the name in the **Gateway Display Name** field.
  - d) In the **VPN Type** menu, select one of the following options:
    - **IPsec VPN** — The Mobile VPN only supports IPsec tunnels.
    - **SSL VPN** — The Mobile VPN only supports SSL VPN tunnels.
    - **Both IPsec & SSL VPN** — The Mobile VPN supports IPsec VPN and SSL VPN tunnels.
  - e) (Optional, SSL VPN types only) In the **SSL Port** field, enter the port for SSL VPN tunnels.
  - f) (Optional, SSL VPN types only) If you need to use a cryptographic suite that differs from the default cryptographic suite, in the **TLS Cryptography Suite Set** field, select a cryptographic suite.
  - g) (Optional, SSL VPN modes only) If you do not want to use the default authentication timeout value (120 min), enter a time in minutes in the **Authentication Timeout** field.
  - h) Configure the other settings in the **VPN Client** branch.
  - i) (Optional) Configure the settings on the **Advanced** branch.



- j) Click **Save and Refresh** to save the changes to the configuration and refresh the policy on the engine.
- 2) Create a Policy-Based VPN or edit an existing Policy-Based VPN.
- 3) On the **Mobile VPN** tab, select one of the following options to define which VPN Gateways provide mobile VPN access:
  - **Only central Gateways from overall topology** — Only the **VPN Gateways in the Central Gateways** list on the **Site-to-Site VPN** tab provide mobile VPN access.
  - **All Gateways from overall topology** — All VPN Gateways included in the VPN provide mobile VPN access.
  - **Selected Gateways below** — Only the VPN Gateways that you add to the **Mobile VPN Gateways** tree provide mobile VPN access.
- 4) If you selected **Selected Gateways below**, drag and drop one or more VPN Gateways to the **Mobile VPN Gateways** tree.
- 5) Save the changes to the Policy-Based VPN.

#### Related tasks

[Define VPN client settings in VPN Profiles](#) on page 1189

## SSL VPN configuration

SSL VPNs use secure sockets layer (SSL) encryption to provide secure remote access. SSL VPNs allow authenticated users to establish secure connections to internal HTTP and HTTPS services through a standard web browser or through a client application that allows direct network access.

Access to HTTP-based services is provided by the *SSL VPN Portal*. The SSL VPN Portal is an integrated feature of Forcepoint NGFW. It provides remote access to applications and information in the protected network from standard web browsers. End users must authenticate to access the SSL VPN Portal webpage. You can configure single sign-on (SSO), to allow users to access different services under the same Domain without logging on to each service separately. The SSL VPN Portal proxies end-user connections to HTTP-based services in the protected network. The end user is never directly connected to the back-end services.

Encrypted connections to other services are provided by *SSL VPN tunnels* for the Stonesoft VPN Client solution. SSL VPN tunnels can be used with the Stonesoft VPN Client solution in mobile VPNs. You can use SSL VPN tunnels alone, IPsec tunnels alone, or both SSL VPN and IPsec tunnels together in the same Policy-Based VPN.


## Set up the SSL VPN Portal


The SSL VPN Portal provides secure browser-based access to services in the protected network.

# Make services available in the SSL VPN Portal

SSL VPN Portal Services map external URLs to HTTP-based services in the protected network.

SSL VPN Portal Service elements contain settings that define how the internal URLs of the HTTP-based services are translated to external URLs. URL translation makes sure that all traffic to registered web resource hosts is routed through the SSL VPN Portal. End users can access the SSL VPN Portal Services through the SSL VPN Portal, or directly through web browser bookmarks.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Browse to **SSL VPN Portal > SSL VPN Portal Services**.
- 3) Right-click **SSL VPN Portal Services**, then select **New SSL VPN Portal Service**.
- 4) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.



**Note:** The name must only contain letters, numbers, dashes (-), and underscores (\_). The name cannot contain spaces.

- 5) From the **Link Translation** drop-down list, select how incoming connections are routed to services in the protected network.
- 6) (Only when the link translation method is **URL Rewrite** or **DNS Mapping**) Click **Select** next to the **Profile** field to select an SSL VPN Service Profile element.  
The profile contains settings for SSO and cookie protection.
- 7) If you selected **URL Rewrite**, configure the following settings to define URL translation:
  - a) In the **External URL Prefix** field, enter a forward slash (/) followed by a unique prefix.
  - b) In the **Internal URL** field, enter the URL of the service in the protected network.
- 8) If you selected **DNS Mapping**, configure the following settings to define URL translation:
  - a) In the **External URL** field, enter the URL where users can access the service. The URL must be an HTTPS URL and a valid host name with a top-level domain.
  - b) In the **Internal URL** field, enter the URL of the service in the protected network.
  - c) Specify the certificate that is used for HTTPS connections in one of the following ways:
    - Click **Select**, then select a **TLS Credentials** element.
    - To create and use a self-signed certificate, select **Use Self-Signed Certificate**.
- 9) If you selected **Freeform URL**, configure the following settings to define URL translation:
  - a) From the **Cookie Protection** options, select **On** or **Off**.
  - b) Below the **Allowed URLs** table, click **Add**, then enter one or more host names or IP addresses.

- c) Below the **Trusted CAs** field, click **Add**, then select the Certificate Authority to be used with the service.
- 10) On the **Look & Feel** tab, configure how the service appears on the SSL VPN Portal webpage.
- 11) Click **OK**.

## Next steps

You are now ready to define which users are allowed to access the services.


# Allow access to services using the SSL VPN Portal


The SSL VPN Portal Policy defines which services are available in the SSL VPN Portal and which users can access the services.

### Before you begin

You must have one or more SSL VPN Portal Service elements.

The SSL VPN Portal Policy contains rules that define which users can use each SSL VPN Portal Service, and the authentication requirements for accessing the SSL VPN Portal Services.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Create an SSL VPN Portal Policy.
  - a) Expand the **SSL VPN Portal** branch.
  - b) Right-click **SSL VPN Portal Policies** and select **New SSL VPN Portal Policy**.
  - c) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.
  - d) Click **OK**.

The SSL VPN Portal Policy opens for editing in a new tab.
- 3) Add rules in one of the following ways:
  - Right-click the last row of an empty policy and select **Add Rule**.
  - Right-click the **ID** cell of an existing rule and select **Add Rule Before** or **Add Rule After**.
- 4) Drag and drop one or more SSL VPN Portal Service elements from the **Resources** pane to the **SSL VPN Portal Service** cell.

- 5) Drag and drop one or more User or User Group elements from the **Resources** pane to the **Authentication** cell.
- 6) Save the SSL VPN Portal Policy.

## Next steps


You are now ready to select the SSL VPN Portal Policy for an SSL VPN Portal element.


# Enable the SSL VPN Portal


Create and enable the SSL VPN Portal to make the SSL VPN Portal available through one or more firewalls.

## Before you begin

You must have an SSL VPN Portal Policy.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Browse to **SSL VPN Portal > SSL VPN Portals**.
- 3) Right-click **SSL VPN Portals**, then select **New SSL VPN Portal**.
- 4) In the **Name** field, enter a unique name.



**Note:** The name must only contain letters, numbers, dashes (-), and underscores (\_). The name cannot contain spaces.
- 5) Next to the **SSL VPN Portal Policy** field, click **Select**, then select an SSL VPN Portal Policy.
- 6) Next to the **Hostnames** table, click **Add**, then add one or more host names.  
Enter the domain name or IP address that the user enters in their web browser to access the SSL VPN Portal.
- 7) Next to the **Server Credentials** table, click **Select**, then select a TLS Credentials element. Alternatively, select **Use Self-Signed Certificate** to create and use a self-signed certificate.
- 8) On the **Look & Feel** tab, configure the look and feel settings.
  - a) In the **Title** field, enter the title to show in the end user's web browser when they access the SSL VPN Portal webpage.
  - b) From the **Look & Feel** drop-down list, select an option, or select **Custom** to create a customized look and feel for the SSL VPN Portal.
  - c) If you selected **Custom**, configure the options.

- d) (Optional) To view the changes you have made, select **Preview SSL VPN Portal Webpage** or **Preview SSL VPN Portal Logon Webpage**.
- 9) On the **Target Engine** tab, select one or more firewalls for which you want to enable the SSL VPN Portal.
  - a) Click **Add** to add a row to the table.
  - b) Double-click the **Target Engine** cell, then select the firewall for which you want to enable the SSL VPN Portal.
- 10) On the **Advanced** tab, configure the advanced settings.
- 11) Click **OK**.





**Note:** After you have created an SSL VPN Portal element, you can enable it in an engine in the Engine Editor.

The SSL VPN Portal is now available through the firewalls that you added to the Target Engine table.

## Edit the engine-specific SSL VPN Portal settings

You can edit the engine-specific SSL VPN Portal settings in the Engine Editor.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Right-click an engine element, then select **Edit <element type>**.
- 2) Browse to **VPN > SSL VPN Portal**.  
The **SSL VPN Properties** pane opens on the right.
- 3) Click **Select** to select the SSL VPN Portal you want to use.
- 4) Click  **Save and Refresh** to transfer the new configuration to the engines.

## Select SSL cryptographic algorithms for the SSL VPN

If you need to change the SSL cryptographic algorithms used by the SSL VPN Portal, you can create a TLS Cryptography Suite Set element to define which cryptographic algorithms are allowed.

The default NIST (SP 800-52) Compatible SSL Cryptographic Algorithms element allows SSL cryptographic algorithms that are compatible with the following standard: *NIST SP 800-52 Rev. 1 Guidelines for the Selection, Configuration, and Use of Transport Layer Security (TLS) Implementations*. If the default SSL cryptographic algorithms meet your needs, there is no need to create a custom TLS Cryptography Suite Set element.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements** branch.
- 3) Right-click **TLS Cryptography Suite Sets** and select **New TLS Cryptography Suite Set**.
- 4) In the **Name** field, give the TLS Cryptography Suite Set element a name to easily identify it.
- 5) Select one or more SSL cryptographic algorithms.  
SSL cryptographic algorithms in the **Common** section are compatible with SSL 3.0, TLS 1.0, TLS 1.1, and TLS 1.2. SSL cryptographic algorithms in the **TLS 1.2 Only** section are only compatible with TLS 1.2.
- 6) Click **OK**.

## Next steps

Select the custom TLS Cryptography Suite Set element in the Engine Editor.

# Overview of Route-Based VPN configuration

---

The Route-Based VPN is implemented according to IPsec standards.

The information here assumes that you are already familiar with the basic concepts of building IPsec VPNs and concentrates on the features available in Forcepoint NGFW. Understanding basic IPsec concepts helps you configure VPNs. We recommend reading the general overview to VPNs and IPsec before moving on to this section.

When the Route-Based VPN uses IPsec in *transport mode* between tunnel endpoints, the packets are not encapsulated into new IPsec packets. Instead, the original headers of the packet are left intact, and the IP payload of the packet is encrypted. IPsec transport mode is used to encrypt the packets. Other encapsulation, such as *Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE)* or *IP in IP (IP-IP)*, must be used to add the tunnel endpoint IP addresses in front of the original packet header. *Tunnel interfaces* represent Route-Based VPN tunnel endpoints on the engine. Tunnel Interfaces allow routing information to be used to determine the correct VPN tunnel to use.

When the Route-Based VPN uses IPsec in *tunnel mode* between tunnel endpoints, the encryption is provided by a policy-based VPN.

## Default elements for the Route-Based VPN

---

The Route-Based VPN element is a predefined element. There can only be one Route-Based VPN element on each Management Server.

The **VPN-A Suite** VPN Profile contains the VPN settings specified for the cryptographic suite “VPN-A” in RFC 4308. It is provided to allow you to quickly try out VPNs without creating a VPN profile yourself. The profile also

allows you to change settings that are not specified in RFC 4308, such as the IKE mode for IKEv1. You might need to adjust the settings to achieve a valid VPN in some configurations.

## Defining tunnel interfaces

Tunnel interfaces define endpoints for tunnels in the Route-Based VPN, and allow non-routable packets, such as dynamic routing communications or Multicast streams, to travel between sites.

Tunnel interfaces encapsulate and encrypt outgoing traffic according to the VPN Profile selected for the Route-Based VPN tunnel, and de-encapsulate and decrypt incoming traffic. Any traffic that is routed to a tunnel interface is automatically sent through the tunnel to the peer endpoint defined in the Route-Based VPN. The mapping of tunnel interfaces to physical network interfaces on the engine is done automatically by the engine operating system based on the routing configuration.

You can optionally add IPv4 and IPv6 addresses to a tunnel interface. Any IP address can be added to a tunnel interface, even if the same IP address is used on another interface or as a loopback IP address. Adding an IP address allows you to define the source IP address of traffic sent from the engine node itself. For example, an IP address is recommended to provide a source IP address for dynamic routing daemons, for IGMP proxy, and for Protocol Independent Multicast - Sparse-Mode (PIM-SM) configuration. If there is no IP address, the source IP address is automatically selected according to the **Bypass Default IP Address** setting in the Interface Options for the firewall.

### Related concepts

[Single Firewall configuration overview](#) on page 63

[Firewall cluster configuration overview](#) on page 66

## Configuring routing and antispoofing for tunnel interfaces

In the Route-Based VPN, the routing defines which traffic is sent through the VPN tunnel. The Antispoofing configuration is automatically generated for tunnel interfaces.

The routing configuration also determines the physical network interfaces on the engine to which the tunnel interfaces are automatically mapped. You can statically define which networks are reachable through each tunnel interface. You can also use dynamic routing to create the routes for traffic to be sent through the VPN tunnels.

## Defining gateways for the Route-Based VPN

Usually, there is just one VPN Gateway element for each firewall. You can optionally add more VPN Gateway elements to the same Firewall.

You can use the same VPN Gateway in several different Route-Based VPN tunnels. However, each VPN Gateway element reserves a VPN endpoint (IP address) that other VPN Gateway elements cannot use. If you use both policy-based VPNs and the Route-Based VPN, you cannot use the same endpoints in both types of VPNs. In this case, you must add more VPN Gateway elements with different endpoints for use in each type of VPN.

## Defining VPN Profiles for the Route-Based VPN

VPN Profile elements contain settings related to authentication, integrity checking, and encryption.

The VPN Profile element is the main point of configuration for IKE and IPsec settings. These settings are used or agreed on during IKE SA and IPsec SA negotiations. If you want to use settings other than the ones defined by one of the default VPN Profile elements, you must define a custom VPN Profile element.

You can select any combination of settings as long as all gateways involved in the VPN support those settings and are configured to accept them. The same VPN Profile can be used with several Route-Based VPN tunnels. You can use the same VPN Profile in both the Route-Based VPN and policy-based VPNs.

## Adding Access rules to allow traffic for the Route-Based VPN

Routing determines which traffic is sent into the Route-Based VPN tunnel. However, you must create Access rules to allow traffic between the internal network and the networks that are reachable through the Route-Based VPN.

### Related concepts

[Getting started with Access rules](#) on page 811

## Configuring the Route-Based VPN with external gateway devices

You can create Route-Based VPN tunnels between NGFW Engines and external gateway devices.

An External VPN Gateway is a gateway device managed by a different Management Server and in a different administrative Domain than the one where the Route-Based VPN element is configured. Often, external gateway devices are at a partner organization, not under your control, and are not Forcepoint NGFW devices.

Because the Route-Based VPN follows the IPsec standards, you can create tunnels between gateways from different vendors by selecting the same settings for both gateways. Any option that both gateways support is a valid option for the VPN.

The settings that must match are:

- The tunnel type. The Route-Based VPN supports the following tunnel types:
  - The **GRE** (Generic Routing Encapsulation) tunnel type is compatible with gateways from most vendors.
  - The **IP-IP** (IP address in IP) tunnel type is for use with third-party gateways that only support IP-IP.
  - The **SIT** (Simple Internet Transition) tunnel type is for use with IPv6 addresses.
  - The **VPN** tunnel type negotiates IPsec tunnels in the same way as policy-based VPNs, but traffic is selected to be sent into the tunnel based on routing.
- The gateway authentication method. The Route-Based VPN supports certificate-based authentication and pre-shared key authentication.
- The IKE SA settings.
- The IPsec SA settings.
- The site definitions (IP addresses) defined for both gateways (possibly translated using NAT).



- The endpoint identity type and value. The endpoint identity value is often the IP address of each gateway, but other options are also possible.

## Using the Route-Based VPN with dynamic routing

---

The Route-Based VPN can protect and route dynamic routing communications between sites to protect the confidentiality and integrity of the dynamic routing communications.

Routing protocols, such as RIP, OSPF, and BGP, send non-routable multicast packets between routing devices, such as routers and firewalls. Because IPsec accepts only unicast traffic, these packets cannot be directly sent into IPsec tunnels. Instead, dynamic routing communications are forwarded to tunnel interfaces, which encapsulate the traffic and send it into the Route-Based VPN tunnel. The following configuration considerations apply when the Route-Based VPN is used to protect dynamic routing protocols:

- The TTL value for the tunnel must be high enough to allow the packets to be routed through each hop in the route.
- If IP addresses are defined for tunnel interfaces, the netmask must be defined according to the functionality of the interface. For OSPF, the peers must belong to the same subnet.

## Edit the Route-Based VPN

---

Rather than creating a new Route-Based VPN element for each tunnel, you edit the default Route-Based VPN element to define the tunnels in the Route-Based VPN.

The Route-Based VPN element is a predefined element. There can only be one Route-Based VPN element on each Management Server.

## Select the default encryption for the Route-Based VPN

---

The **Default Encryption** setting in the Route-Based VPN properties defines the encryption mode that is selected by default when you create new Route-Based VPN tunnels.

You can change the **Default Encryption** setting for individual tunnels

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Select **Route-Based VPN**.
- 3) Right-click **Route-Based VPN** element and select **Properties**.
- 4) From the **Default Encryption** drop-down list, select the default encryption.

- 5) Click **OK**.

## Add Route-Based VPN tunnels

Edit the default Route-Based VPN element to add tunnels to the Route-Based VPN.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Select **Route-Based VPN**.
- 3) In the Route-Based VPN tree in the right pane, right-click the **Route-Based VPN** element and select **Edit VPN**.
- 4) Click **Add**.

- 5) In the **Tunnel Type** field, select the type of tunnel to add.  
The **GRE** (Generic Routing Encapsulation) tunnel type is compatible with gateways from most vendors.  
The **IP-IP** (IP in IP) tunnel type is for use with third-party gateways that only support IP-IP.  
The **SIT** (Simple Internet Transition) tunnel type is for use with IPv6 addresses.  
The **VPN** tunnel type negotiates IPsec tunnels in the same way as policy-based VPNs, but traffic is selected to be sent into the tunnel based on routing.



**Note:** For the VPN tunnel type, tunnels between all endpoints of both gateways are automatically created.

- 6) (All tunnel types except VPN) From the **Encryption** drop-down list, select the encryption mode for the tunnel.
- 7) (Optional) From the **VPN Profile** drop-down list, select a VPN Profile element.



**Note:** Settings in the VPN Profile that do not apply to the Route-Based VPN, such as IPsec Client settings, are ignored.


- 8) (Optional) To authenticate the gateways using pre-shared keys, configure the pre-shared key settings.
  - a) Click **Edit**.
  - b) In the **Pre-Shared Key** dialog box, enter a pre-shared key or click **Generate** to generate a random pre-shared key.





**Note:** The pre-shared key must be long and random to provide a secure VPN. Change the pre-shared key periodically (for example, monthly). Make sure that it is not possible for outsiders to obtain the key while you transfer it to other devices.

- c) Click **OK**.

- 9) Configure the settings for the local gateway.
  - a) Click **Select** and select a VPN Gateway element.
  - b) (All tunnel types except VPN) From the **Endpoint** drop-down list, select an endpoint IP address. If loopback IP addresses are defined for a VPN Gateway, you can select a loopback IP address as the endpoint IP address.

 **Note:** You cannot use the same endpoint in a Route-Based VPN tunnel and a policy-based VPN tunnel.
  - c) From the **Interface** drop-down list, select the tunnel interface through which Route-Based VPN traffic is routed.
- 10) Configure the settings for the remote gateway.
  - a) Click **Select** and select a VPN Gateway or External VPN Gateway element.
  - b) (All tunnel types except VPN) From the **Endpoint** drop-down list, select an endpoint IP address. If loopback IP addresses are defined for a VPN Gateway, you can select a loopback IP address as the endpoint IP address.

 **Note:** You cannot use the same endpoint in a Route-Based VPN tunnel and a policy-based VPN tunnel.
  - c) (VPN Gateway elements only) From the **Interface** drop-down list, select a tunnel interface through which Route-Based VPN traffic is routed.
- 11) (Optional) Configure other tunnel options.

The options that you can configure depend on the selected tunnel type.
- 12) Click **OK**.
- 13) Check the **Validity** column for all tunnels.
  - If a tunnel has a warning icon in the **Validity** cell, right-click the tunnel and select **View Issues**. Resolve all problems indicated in the messages shown.
  - If all tunnels are shown as valid, the Route-Based VPN tunnels are correctly configured. However, the Management Server cannot check all possible problems until you refresh the policy. More issues might be shown when you refresh the policy. Any validation and issues that are shown for external VPN gateways are based only on the definitions that have been entered manually into the related elements.
- 14) Click  **Save**.

#### Related concepts

[Defining VPN gateways](#) on page 1170

[Getting started with Access rules](#) on page 811

[Changing pre-shared keys for VPNs](#) on page 1254

**Related tasks**

[Add tunnel interfaces for firewalls](#) on page 540

[Define endpoints for VPN Gateway elements](#) on page 1171

[Add loopback IP addresses for Single Firewalls](#) on page 554

# Use a policy-based VPN to encrypt Route-Based VPN tunnels

You can use a policy-based VPN to provide encryption for Route-Based VPN tunnels.

## Before you begin

You must define the policy-based VPNs that provide the encryption.

Using a policy-based VPN to encrypt Route-Based VPN tunnels allows you to do the following:

- Encrypt multiple tunnels in the same VPN tunnel. This configuration improves compatibility with third-party devices and cloud-based services that do not support multiple, separately encrypted tunnels.
- Create multiple tunnels between remote and local sites when only one public IP address is available.



**Note:** These steps provide a high-level overview of the procedure.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Create a Host element.
  - a) In the **Configuration** view, expand the **Network Elements** branch.
  - b) Right-click Hosts and select **New Host**.
  - c) In the **IPv4 Address** or **IPv6 Address** field, enter the same IP address as the endpoint you use in the Route-Based VPN



**Note:** You might receive a warning that the IP address of the Host element is not unique. Ignore the warning and save the element.

- d) Configure the other settings according to your needs.
  - e) Click **OK**.
- 2) Configure the VPN settings for the firewall that acts as the VPN gateway.
    - a) Right-click the firewall element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.

- b) On the **Endpoints** pane, define at least two endpoints: one for the policy-based VPN and one for the Route-Based VPN.
  - c) On the **Sites** pane of the Engine Editor, add the Host element to the site for the VPN Gateway.
  - d) Click **Save**.
- 3) Configure the policy-based VPN that provides the encryption.
    - a) Open the policy-based VPN for editing.
    - b) On the **Site-to-Site VPN** tab, add the VPN Gateway that represents the firewall to the **Central Gateways** or **Satellite Gateways** list.
    - c) Click **Save**.
  - 4) Configure the Route-Based VPN tunnels.
    - a) Open the Route-Based VPN for editing.
    - b) Add one or more tunnels and select the following settings for each tunnel:

Setting	Configuration
Tunnel type	Select <b>GRE</b> , <b>IP-IP</b> , or <b>SIT</b> .
Encryption	Select <b>Tunnel Mode</b> .
VPN	Select the policy-based VPN that provides the encryption.
Local firewall	Select the same VPN Gateway that is used in the policy-based VPN.
CVI	Select the CVI that has the same IP address as the endpoint that is used in the policy-based VPN.

Configure the other settings for each tunnel according to your needs.

- c) Click **Save**.
- 5) Add Firewall Access rules to allow traffic between the internal network and the networks that are reachable through the Route-Based VPN tunnels.



**Note:** The Access rules that direct the Route-Based VPN traffic into the policy-based VPN are automatically generated for the Firewalls associated with the VPN Gateway elements. The rules are not visible in the Firewall policy, and cannot be edited. If a policy that contains the automatically generated rules is installed on a Firewall that is not involved in the VPN, the rules are ignored.

- a) Open the Firewall policy for editing.

- b) Add IPv4 Access rules or IPv6 Access rules that have the following settings:

Source	Destination	Service	Action
Elements that represent the internal network	Elements that represent the networks that are reachable through the Route-Based VPN tunnels	Select the service according to your needs or set to <b>ANY</b> .	Allow

Configure the other settings for the rules according to your needs.

- c) Click **Save**.
- d) Install the policy on all Firewalls that are involved in the VPNs.

#### Related concepts

[Getting started with Access rules](#) on page 811

#### Related tasks

[Create an External VPN Gateway element](#) on page 1171

[Add a VPN site](#) on page 1179

## Monitoring policy-based VPNs

You can monitor the status of policy-based VPNs in the Home view. The overall status of the Policy-Based VPN elements and the tunnels they contain is shown in the tree of monitored elements.

Logging for policy-based VPNs is separate for the tunnels and the traffic that uses the tunnels:

- VPN negotiations are always logged (regardless of the logging options in Access rules) as informational messages.
- More detailed logging is available when you activate IPsec diagnostic logging for the Firewall/ VPN engine for troubleshooting purposes.
- The traffic using the VPN tunnels is logged according to the logging options in the rule that allows the traffic in or out of the VPN.
- The Home view provides shortcuts to logs filtered for the specific Policy-Based VPN or VPN Gateway element referenced in the log event.
  - Right-click a Policy-Based VPN element in the Status tree or connectivity diagram and select **Monitoring > Logs by VPN**.
  - Right-click a VPN Gateway in the Status tree or connectivity diagram and select **Monitoring > Logs by VPN Gateway**.
  - Right-click the connection between two VPN Gateways in the connectivity diagram and select **Monitoring > Logs by VPN Gateways** to view logs of traffic between the two VPN Gateways.

Log pruning filters can delete some (or even all) of the generated messages.

### Related concepts

[Rules for Policy-Based VPNs](#) on page 1201

[Defining VPN gateways](#) on page 1170

[Defining Policy-Based VPN elements](#) on page 1192

[How component statuses are indicated](#) on page 183

[Information about IPsec tunnels in logs](#) on page 1403

### Related tasks

[Enable or disable diagnostics on Firewalls](#) on page 330

[Define logging options for Access rules](#) on page 873


## Monitor SSL VPN connections

---

Use the **SSL VPN Monitoring** view to check the status of SSL VPN sessions and to terminate SSL VPN sessions.

### Before you begin

The SSL VPN Portal must be configured and enabled.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the Firewall element for which you want to view SSL VPN sessions and select **Monitoring > SSL VPNs**.

The **SSL VPN Monitoring** view opens.

- 2) Browse the data.

# Examples of policy-based VPNs

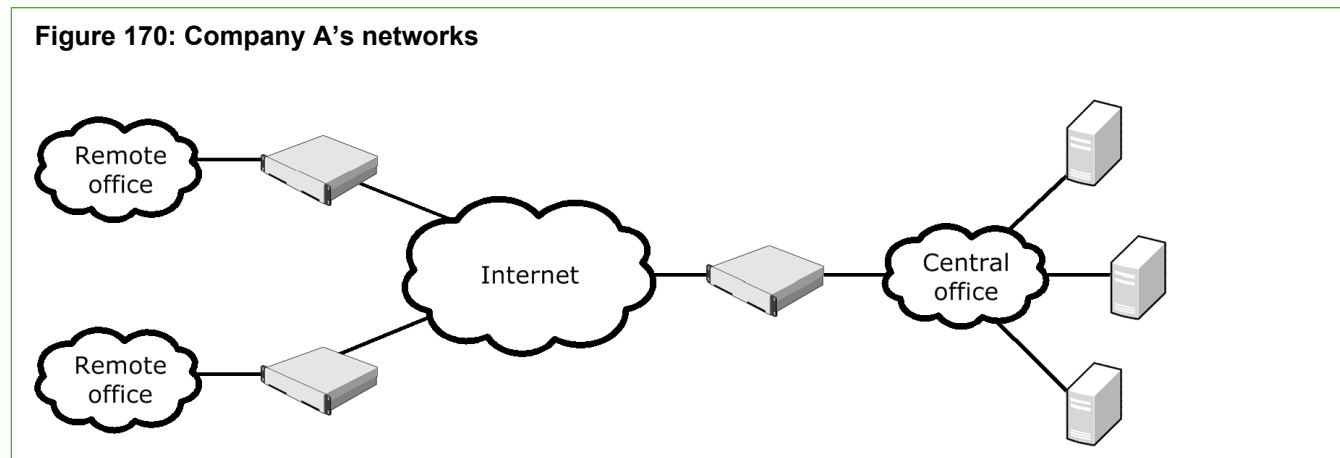
These examples illustrate some common uses for policy-based VPNs and general steps on how each example is configured.

## Example: creating a policy-based VPN between three offices

An example of a VPN between two or more locations.

Company A has a central office and two remote offices, each with their own Forcepoint NGFW Firewall/ VPN device. The company needs secured communications links between the remote offices and the central office for access to various services, such as file servers, at the central office.

**Figure 170: Company A's networks**



All shared servers are at the central office, and internal emails and other communications are also handled by the central servers. There is no need for secure connectivity between the remote offices.

All Firewalls have a public IP address toward the Internet. The internal networks at each site use private IP addresses. There is no need to translate the VPN traffic, since all offices use their own distinct address space.

The security policy of the company requires certificate-based authentication. The administrators decide to use the Management Server's Internal RSA CA for Gateways for issuing the VPN certificates.

The administrators:

- 1) Select each engine's public IP address as the VPN endpoint and activate automatic certificate management.
- 2) Add Site elements for all gateways, and add the entire local internal network as the content for each Site.
- 3) Create a VPN Profile and select RSA Encryption as the authentication method. RSA certificates are automatically generated for each gateway.
- 4) Create a Policy-Based VPN element called "Inter-Office VPN" that includes the central office gateway as a central gateway and the two remote site gateways as satellite gateways.
- 5) Add the following types of Access rules in the policy of the central office firewall:



Source	Destination	Action
Network elements for remote office 1 and remote office 2 internal IP addresses	Network elements for central office's internal networks	Use VPN - Enforce VPN "Inter-office VPN"
Network elements for central office's internal networks	Network elements for remote office 1 and remote office 2 internal IP addresses	Use VPN - Enforce VPN "Inter-office VPN"

- 6) Add the following types of Access rules in the policies of both remote office firewalls:

Source	Destination	Action
Network element for each remote office's internal IP addresses	Network elements for central office's internal networks	Use VPN - Enforce VPN "Inter-office VPN"
Network elements for central office's internal networks	Network element for each remote office's internal IP addresses	Use VPN - Enforce VPN "Inter-office VPN"

## Example: creating a policy-based VPN for mobile users

An example of a policy-based VPN that allows mobile users to authenticate and connect to internal networks.

Company A has service technicians and salespeople who must be able to connect to their office networks to access information when they are on customer visits. The administrators need to add VPN client access to the existing VPN infrastructure. The administrators decide to use Stonesoft VPN Client. As the authentication method, the administrators decide to use passwords stored in the Management Server's internal database.

The administrators also want to provide only one point of access so that the users do not have to select which gateway to connect to. The central office has site-to-site VPN tunnels to both remote offices that can be used for forwarding traffic to those sites as needed. The existing DHCP server at the central office can be used for assigning IP addresses to the VPN clients' Virtual Adapter. A Virtual Adapter is required for this type of forwarding.

The administrators:

- 1) Edit the central office firewall element and activate the Virtual Adapter method for VPN client address management.
- 2) Edit the VPN Profile to use Hybrid Authentication for authenticating the VPN client users.
- 3) Create a Policy-Based VPN element called "Remote User VPN" that includes the central office gateway as a Central Gateway.
- 4) Select the **Only central Gateways from overall topology** option on the **Mobile VPN** tab.
- 5) Create a "Forward Addresses" Site element under the central office gateway.
- 6) Populate the site with the remote office networks to route those IP addresses through the "Remote User VPN".

- 7) Disable the “Forward Addresses” Site in the existing “Inter-Office VPN” between the central office and the remote offices. Sites are global for all policy-based VPNs, so this Site must be disabled to avoid a misconfiguration in the Inter-Office VPN.
- 8) Create User Group and User elements to define the user names and passwords for the VPN client users.
- 9) Add the following Access rules in the policy of the central office firewall:

Source	Destination	Action	Users	Authentication	Source VPN
ANY	Central office internal networks	Use VPN - Enforce VPN “Remote User VPN”	“VPN Client Users” User Group	“User Password” Authentication Service	
VPN Client DHCP addresses	Remote offices’ internal IP addresses	Use VPN - Forward VPN “Inter- Office VPN”			Rule matches traffic from any VPN client

- 10) Create a customized Stonesoft VPN Client installation package for Windows. A customized installation package allows users of Stonesoft VPN Client for Windows to install using a silent installation package that does not require their input. The administrators include the gateway contact information in the package so that the users do not need to enter it manually even when they use the Stonesoft VPN Client for the first time.

## Example: creating a policy-based VPN that requires NAT

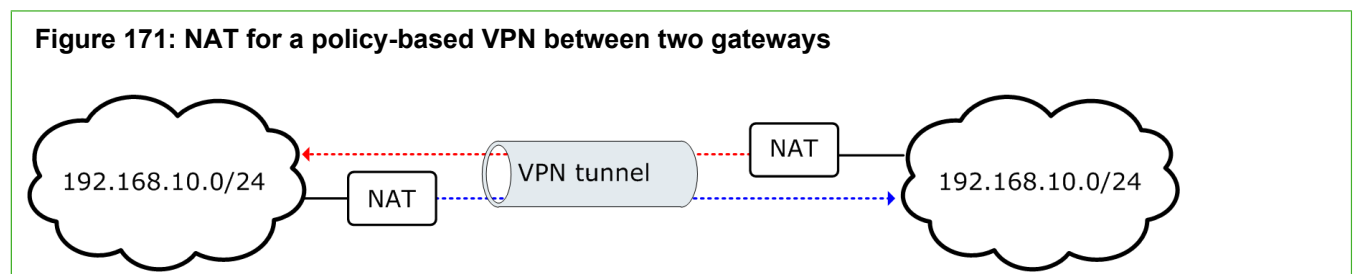
An example of a policy-based VPN where NAT is used to translate between its internal and external IP addresses.

Company B has decided to partner with Company C for a large project. Since the companies need to exchange sensitive information, they decide to establish a VPN.

The external gateway device is behind a NAT device that translates between its internal and external IP address. Both addresses are needed in the policy-based VPN configuration.

Both companies also use the same address space internally, so they must apply NAT for all connections through the policy-based VPN as well.

**Figure 171: NAT for a policy-based VPN between two gateways**



NAT is applied at both companies before traffic enters the VPN from each end. Routing problems caused by the same address space appearing in two different networks can be avoided, since traffic that is routed into the VPN uses unique translated addresses.

The administrators:

- 1) Edit the firewall element and select the engine's public IP address as the VPN endpoint.
- 2) Create a Location element and select it for their firewall element.
- 3) Create an External VPN Gateway element called "Partner Gateway" for the partner's VPN device and configure the following IP addresses:
  - Select the internal IP address as the VPN endpoint.
  - Add the external (translated) IP address as the Contact Address for the Location created in the previous step.
- 4) Create a Network element called "HQ NAT Address Space" for the addresses that Company B plans to use for translating their internal IP addresses. They make sure that these addresses are routable and unique in Company C's internal network.
- 5) Add only the Network element created in the previous step in the Site for the NGFW Engine.
- 6) Create a Network element called "Partner Network" for the addresses that Company C plans to use for translating their internal IP addresses. They make sure that these addresses are routable and unique in Company B's internal network.
- 7) Add the "Partner Network" as the only network in the Partner Gateway's Site.
- 8) Create a VPN Profile and select all settings so that they match the settings agreed with Company C.
- 9) Create a Policy-Based VPN element called "Partner VPN" that includes the VPN Gateway that represents the NGFW Engine as a central gateway and the External VPN Gateway as a satellite gateway.
- 10) Add the following types of Access rules in the policy of their firewall:

Source	Destination	Action
Network element "Partner Network"	Network element "HQ NAT Address Space"	Use VPN - Enforce "Partner VPN"
Company B's internal network (real IP addresses)	Network element "Partner Network"	Use VPN - Enforce "Partner VPN"

- 11) Add the following types of NAT rules in the same policy:

Source	Destination	Action
Company B's internal network (real IP addresses)	Network element "Partner Network"	Static source translation to "HQ NAT Address Space"

To make the static address translation work, the administrators take care that the translated address space is as large as the original address space.

# Examples of the Route-Based VPN

---

These examples illustrate some common uses of the Route-Based VPN and general steps on how each example is configured.

## Example: protecting dynamic routing communications with the Route-Based VPN

---

An example of protecting communications when public Internet networks are used for backup connectivity.

Company A is a large company with enterprise networks at multiple sites. The networks are currently connected with a private backbone network that is built with dynamic routing using OSPF. The administrators want to use public Internet networks for backup connectivity in case the private backbone fails. To route the traffic and to protect the confidentiality and integrity of the dynamic routing communications, the administrators decide to send dynamic routing communications through Route-Based VPN tunnels.

The administrators:

- 1) Define tunnel interfaces on the firewalls that act as VPN Gateways at each site.
- 2) Add IP addresses to each tunnel interface.
- 3) Add a VPN tunnel to the Route-Based VPN between the appropriate gateways, endpoints, and tunnel interfaces, and select the appropriate tunnel type and VPN Profile.
- 4) Define the following options for the tunnels:
  - TTL: Default.
  - MTU: Default.
  - PMTU Discovery: Enabled.
- 5) Save the changes to the Route-Based VPN tunnels.
- 6) Create Access rules that allow traffic between the internal networks and the networks that are reachable through the Route-Based VPN.
- 7) Refresh the policy on the firewalls that act as VPN Gateways.
- 8) Configure dynamic routing on the command lines of the engines.

## Example: configuring Route-Based VPNs with external gateways

---

An example of creating a Route-Based VPN tunnel between an internal and external network.

The administrators at Company B want to create a Route-Based VPN tunnel between their own network and a partner's network. The administrators:

- 1) Create a Network element to represent the partner's network.
- 2) Define a Tunnel Interface on the Company B firewall that acts as the VPN Gateway.
- 3) Configure routing to define a route to the partner's network through the Tunnel Interface.
- 4) Define an External VPN Gateway element to represent the partner company's gateway device.
- 5) Add a VPN tunnel to the Route-Based VPN with the following settings:

Local Gateway	Remote Gateway
<b>Gateway</b> — VPN Gateway element that represents the firewall	<b>Gateway</b> — External VPN Gateway element
<b>Endpoint</b> — Endpoint IP address in the Internal Network	<b>Endpoint</b> — Endpoint IP address in the Partner Network
<b>Interface</b> — Tunnel Interface defined on the firewall	

- 6) Select an IPsec Profile and an encapsulation Mode that is compatible with the External VPN Gateway.
- 7) Save the changes to the Route-Based VPN tunnels.
- 8) Create an Access rule that allows traffic from the internal network to the partner network that is reachable through the Route-Based VPN.
- 9) Refresh the policy on the firewall that acts as a VPN Gateway.



# Managing VPN certificates

## Contents

- [VPN certificates and how they work](#) on page 1231
- [Define additional VPN certificate authorities](#) on page 1233
- [Create an internal ECDSA certificate authority for VPN gateways](#) on page 1235
- [Select the default internal certificate authority](#) on page 1236
- [Create a VPN certificate or certificate request for a VPN Gateway element](#) on page 1236
- [Sign external VPN certificate requests with an internal certificate authority](#) on page 1238
- [Select which internal certificate authority signs each certificate](#) on page 1239
- [Upload VPN certificates manually](#) on page 1240
- [Replace expired VPN certificates](#) on page 1241
- [Export signed VPN gateway certificates or VPN certificate authority certificates](#) on page 1242
- [Import an externally signed VPN gateway certificate](#) on page 1243
- [Check when VPN gateway certificates expire](#) on page 1244
- [Check when VPN certificate authorities expire](#) on page 1245

A digital certificate is a proof of identity. Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role supports using certificates for authenticating gateways and the Stonesoft VPN Client. Forcepoint NGFW in the Layer 2 Firewall role does not support VPNs.

## VPN certificates and how they work

Certificates can be used for authenticating VPN gateways and the Stonesoft VPN Client.

In site-to-site VPNs, you can use both pre-shared keys and certificates as the authentication method. In mobile VPNs, certificates are always needed when the Stonesoft VPN Client is involved. However, if you use the hybrid authentication method with the Stonesoft VPN Client, only the gateway needs a certificate.

### What VPN certificates do

Certificates do not contain information that is specific to a particular VPN. You can use certificates for authentication in both the Route-Based VPN and in policy-based VPNs. A certificate authority (CA) issues certificates as proof of identity. Gateways that form a VPN tunnel are configured to trust the CA that signed the other gateway's certificate. All certificates issued by a trusted CA are accepted as valid, so certificates can be added, renewed, and changed without affecting the VPN as long as the actual identity information is correct. The same certificate can be used for any number of VPNs with any number of gateways and VPN clients.

Certificates are always required for gateways to which the Stonesoft VPN Client connects. Certificates can optionally be used to identify VPN clients, but are not mandatory.

Certificates reduce the required maintenance work, because they do not have to be changed as frequently as pre-shared keys. All certificates are created with an expiration date, after which the certificate is no longer valid.

Certificates signed by an Internal RSA CA for Gateways or an Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways are valid for three years from their creation. When a certificate expires, a new certificate is needed.

## Certificate management

Certificate-related tasks in the SMC mostly involve VPN Gateways that represent firewalls. There are two options for signing VPN Gateway certificates:

- The Management Server includes a dedicated Internal RSA CA for Gateways and optionally an Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways for signing VPN certificates. You use these certificate authorities through the Management Client.
- One Internal CA for Gateways can be selected as the default CA. Certificate management can be automatic if the certificate is signed using the Management Server's internal default CA.
- You can create certificate requests in the Management Client, export them, sign them using an external CA, and then import the signed certificate back into the SMC.

RSA certificates can be created and renewed automatically using the default CA. Some manual steps are required in the following cases:

- You have both an Internal RSA CA for Gateways and an Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways. Only one Internal CA for Gateways can be selected as the default certificate authority. You must manually create and renew any certificates that are not signed by the default CA.
- You use DSA certificates.
- You want to use an external CA to sign certificates.

The Internal RSA CA for Gateways or Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways can also sign certificate requests created by external components. This feature is meant to support VPN client deployments. If you have used the Internal RSA CA for Gateways or Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways to sign certificate requests, you cannot cancel the issued certificates. Consider how widely you can use them for signing external certificate requests within your organization.

## Limitations

All gateways in the same VPN must support the same CA algorithm. Otherwise, VPN communication fails. For example, if you use an Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways as the default CA, all other gateways used in the same VPN must support ECDSA.

### Related tasks

[Replace expired VPN certificates](#) on page 1241

[Create an internal ECDSA certificate authority for VPN gateways](#) on page 1235

[Select the default internal certificate authority](#) on page 1236

## VPN certificate configuration overview

Configuring VPN certificates involves several main steps.

The configuration consists of the following steps:

- 1) (Optional) If you want to use certificates that are signed by some external certificate authority (CA), define the CA in the Management Client.



- 2) (Optional) If you want to use an Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways to sign certificates, create an Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways.
- 3) (Optional) If you have both an Internal RSA CA for Gateways and an Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways, select which CA is the default.
- 4) Start by creating a VPN certificate or certificate request for a VPN Gateway in the following cases:
  - To use an externally signed certificate.
  - To use a DSA certificate.
  - If automated RSA certificate management is disabled for gateways.
- 5) (For externally signed certificates) When the certificate is signed, import the certificate.
- 6) Select a certificate-based **Authentication Method** on the **IKE SA** tab of the VPN Profile.

## Define additional VPN certificate authorities

You can define several certificate authorities.

### Before you begin

You must have the root certificate (or a valid certificate) from the certificate authority.

You must define additional CAs in the following cases:

- In a VPN with an external gateway where you do not want to use the Internal RSA CA for Gateways or the Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways to create a certificate for the external gateway. The external gateway must also be configured to trust the issuer of the certificate.
- If you want to use a certificate signed by an external CA for a VPN Gateway or for a VPN client.




**Note:** Only the Internal RSA CA for Gateways and Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways of your SMC are configured as trusted CAs for gateways in VPNs by default. The Internal RSA CA for Gateways is automatically created when you install the SMC.


You can configure the CA as trusted by importing its root certificate or a valid certificate signed by the CA. The certificates must be X.509 certificates in PEM format (Base64 encoding). It might be possible to convert between formats using, for example, OpenSSL or the certificate tools included in Windows.

The CAs you use can be either private (for self-signed certificates) or public (commercial certificate issuers). When you define a CA as trusted, all certificates signed by that CA are valid until their expiration date (or until the CA's certificate expires). Optionally, you can also set up the SMC to check the certificate revocation status from certificate revocation lists (CRLs) or through the OCSP protocol. The CA can cancel a certificate, for example, because it is compromised.

By default, all CAs you have defined are trusted by all gateways and in all VPNs. If necessary, you can limit trust to a subset of the defined CAs when you configure the VPN Gateway and VPN Profile elements. The trust relationships can be changed at the gateway level and in the VPN Profiles.

To obtain a certificate from an external certificate authority, first create a certificate request.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Certificates > VPN Certificate Authorities**.
- 3) Right-click **VPN Certificate Authorities**, then select **New VPN Certificate Authority**.
- 4) Type a **Name** for the element. This name is only for your reference.



**Note:** All fields but the **Name** on the **General** tab are grayed out. The grayed out fields are always filled in automatically based on information contained in the certificate you import. You cannot change the information in the grayed out fields. The information is shown when you close and reopen the VPN Certificate Authority element after importing the information.

- 5) Click the **Certificate** tab, then do one of the following:
  - Click **Import**, then import a certificate file.
  - Copy and paste the information into the field on the tab (including the “Begin Certificate” header and “End Certificate” footer).



**Tip:** You can copy and paste the certificate information for many public certificate authorities from the default Trusted Certificate Authority elements. The default Trusted Certificate Authority elements are in the **NGFW** branch of the **Configuration** view under **Other Elements > Engine Properties > Certificates > Trusted Certificate Authorities**.

- 6) (Optional) If you want the Firewalls to check the revocation status of certificates signed by this CA, on the **Validation** tab, select the following options:
  - To activate CRLs for certificate status checking, select **Check Validity on Certificate-Specified CRLs**.
  - To activate OCSP certificate status checking, select **Check Validity on Certificate-Specified OCSP Servers**.
- 7) (Optional) To define more CRL servers to check in addition to those defined in the certificates, click **Add**, then select an option:
  - To select an existing element or to define a new LDAP Server element, **LDAP Server Element**.
  - To enter the address, select **Manual LDAP Server Address**.

*Example:* ldap://example.com:389

- 8) (Optional) To define more OCSP servers to check in addition to those defined in the certificates, click **Add**, then enter an address.

*Example:* http://ocsp.example.com



**CAUTION:** When certificate checking is defined, all certificates signed by the CA are treated as invalid if the validity check cannot be performed. For example, the validity check might not be performed due to incorrectly entered addresses or connectivity problems.

- 9) Click **OK**. If you see an invalid certificate error, the certificate you imported might be in an unsupported format. Try converting the certificate to an X.509 certificate in PEM format (Base64 encoding) using OpenSSL or the certificate tools included in Windows.

If your Firewall Policy is based on the Firewall Template, both LDAP (port 389) and HTTP (port 80) connections from the Firewall are allowed. If your firewall or server configuration differs from these standard definitions, edit the Firewall Policy to allow the necessary connections from the Firewalls.

#### Related tasks

[Create an internal ECDSA certificate authority for VPN gateways](#) on page 1235

[Create LDAP Server elements](#) on page 1084

[Define trusted CAs for a gateway](#) on page 1175

[Define trusted CAs for a VPN](#) on page 1190


[Create a VPN certificate or certificate request for a VPN Gateway element](#) on page 1236


[Import an externally signed VPN gateway certificate](#) on page 1243

## Create an internal ECDSA certificate authority for VPN gateways

You can create one Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways.

The Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm (ECDSA) is a digital signature algorithm that uses elliptic curve cryptography. You can use both an Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways and an Internal RSA CA for Gateways at the same time. When there is more than one valid CA, you can select which CA signs each certificate.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Certificates > VPN Certificate Authorities**.
- 3) Right-click **VPN Certificate Authorities** and select **Create New VPN ECDSA Certificate Authority**.  
A new Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways is created.

### Result

The ECDSA CA for Gateways is ready to use for signing certificates.

# Select the default internal certificate authority

If you have both an Internal RSA CA for Gateways and an Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways, only one certificate authority can be selected as the default certificate authority.

Only the default certificate authority is used in automated RSA certificate management. You must manually create and renew any certificates that are not signed by the default CA.



**CAUTION:** All gateways in the same VPN must support the CA algorithm used by the default certificate authority. Otherwise, VPN communication fails.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Certificates > VPN Certificate Authorities**.
- 3) Right-click the Internal CA for Gateways that is not currently the default certificate authority and select **Tools > Set Default Certificate Authority**.  
The selected Internal CA for Gateways is set as the default certificate authority.

# Create a VPN certificate or certificate request for a VPN Gateway element

You can create a certificate request and sign it either using an Internal CA for Gateways or an external certificate authority (CA).

If automated RSA certificate management is active for the VPN Gateway, these steps are necessary only in the following cases:

- You have both an Internal RSA CA for Gateways and an Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways. Only the default CA is used in automated RSA certificate management. You must manually create and renew any certificates that are not signed by the default CA.
- You want to use DSA certificates.
- You want to create a certificate request to be signed by an external CA.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Select **Gateways**.  
The gateways are displayed.

- 3) Right-click the VPN Gateway element and select **Tools > Generate Certificate**.
- 4) In the **Generate Certificate** dialog box, enter the certificate information.
- 5) Select the **Public Key Algorithm** according to the requirements of your organization.



**Note:** The Public Key Algorithm can be different from the internal CA type. For example, you can use RSA key algorithm with an Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways.

- 6) Select how you want to Sign the certificate.
- 7) (Optional) Select the **Signature Algorithm** that the certificate authority uses to sign the certificate.
  - If you selected an Internal CA for Gateways, you can define the Signature Algorithm if the selected Public Key Algorithm is compatible with the algorithm used by the Internal CA. In other cases, the default algorithm for the Internal CA is used (for example, RSA / SHA-1 for Internal RSA CA for Gateways).
  - If you selected an external certificate authority, you can define a Signature Algorithm that is compatible with the selected Public Key Algorithm type.
- 8) (Optional, if supported by the Public Key Algorithm) Enter the **Key Length** for the generated public-private key pair.
  - The default Key Length depends on the Public Key Algorithm.
  - The Key Length cannot be changed for some Public Key Algorithms.
- 9) Click **OK**.

There might be a slight delay while the certificate request is generated. If you signed the certificate using an Internal CA for Gateways, the certificate is automatically transferred to the Firewall and no further action is needed.

The signed certificate or unsigned certificate request is added under the gateway in the gateway list.
- 10) (With external certificate authorities only) Right-click the certificate request, select **Export Certificate Request**, and save it.
  - To generate certificates for a VPN Gateway element, the CA must support PKCS#10 certificate requests in PEM format (Base64 encoding). The signed certificates must also be in the PEM format. It might be possible to convert between formats using, for example, OpenSSL or the certificate tools included in Windows.
  - The CA must be able to copy all attributes from the certificate request into the certificate. In particular, the X.509 extension Subject Alternative Name must be copied as it is in the request because the value is used for authentication.

When you receive the signed certificate, import it.

#### Related tasks

[Select the default internal certificate authority](#) on page 1236

[Import an externally signed VPN gateway certificate](#) on page 1243

# Sign external VPN certificate requests with an internal certificate authority

You can use an internal certificate authority to sign VPN certificate requests for VPN clients and internal VPN gateways.

## Before you begin

For VPN clients, you must have a PKCS#10 certificate request file in PEM format. For internal VPN gateways, you must have already generated a certificate request.

The SMC's Internal RSA CA for Gateways and Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways can be used to sign external certificate requests. You can also use an internal certificate authority to sign any certificate request that is in the supported format (PKCS#10 certificate requests in PEM format). An alternative is to configure the Internal Gateway to accept an externally signed certificate by defining the external certificate issuer as trusted.

If more than one valid internal certificate authority is available, you can select which internal CA signs the certificate request. There can be multiple valid Internal CAs for Gateways in the following cases:

- There is both an Internal RSA CA for Gateways and an Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways.
- The Internal CA for Gateways is in the process of being renewed and both the previous CA and the new CA are temporarily available.

Make sure that the date, time, and time zone are all set correctly on the Management Server and on the external component that uses the certificate. Certificates are valid for three years starting from the date and time they are created. The validity start and end date and time are written in the certificate and are enforced in the authentication.



**Note:** The Internal RSA CA for Gateways and the Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways do not support certificate revocation lists. It is not possible to cancel an internally signed certificate before it expires.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Sign VPN Client certificates.
  - a) Select **Tools** > **Sign VPN Client Certificate**.




**Tip:** You can sign any X.509 certificate requests in this dialog box (not only VPN client certificate requests).

- b) If more than one valid internal certificate authority is available, select which internal CA signs the certificate request.



**Note:** If the Internal CA for Gateways is in the process of being renewed and both the previous CA and the new CA are temporarily available, select the new CA.

- c) Browse to the certificate request file on your local workstation or copy and paste the content of the certificate request into the dialog box.  
If you copy and paste the certificate request, include the Begin Certificate Request header and the End Certificate Request footer.
  - d) Click **Sign**.  
The certificate is signed and the **Export Certificate** dialog box opens. Click the **Certificate** tab to view the validity information for the certificate.
  - e) Click the **General** tab, then click **Export** to save the certificate for transfer to the device that needs it.
  - f) Click **OK**.
- 3) Sign certificate requests for internal VPN gateways.
- a) Click **Gateways**, then expand the VPN Gateway element for which you generated a certificate request.
  - b) Right-click the certificate request, then select **Sign Internally**.
  - c) If more than one valid internal certificate authority is available, select which internal CA signs the certificate request.
-  **Note:** If the Internal CA for Gateways is in the process of being renewed and both the previous CA and the new CA are temporarily available, select the new CA.
- d) Click **Sign**.

#### Related tasks

[Define additional VPN certificate authorities](#) on page 1233

## Select which internal certificate authority signs each certificate

When there is more than one valid CA, you can select which CA signs each certificate.

The Management Server includes a dedicated Internal RSA CA for Gateways for signing VPN certificates. You can optionally also create an Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways. If you have both an **Internal RSA CA for Gateways** and an **Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways**, only one certificate authority can be selected as the default certificate authority. If you want to sign a certificate with the certificate authority that is not the default CA, you must select which Internal CA for Gateways you want to use.

The Internal RSA CA for Gateways and the Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways are each valid for 10 years. A new Internal RSA CA for Gateways or Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways is automatically created to replace the default certificate authority six months before the expiration date. The certificate authority that is not selected as the default certificate authority is not automatically renewed. You must manually renew the Certificate Authority.

If the default Certificate Authority is in the process of being renewed, there is temporarily an extra valid Internal CA for Gateways. In this case, select the new Internal CA for Gateways to sign the certificate.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the **Certificate Properties** dialog box, select **Other** in the **Internally with** field.
- 2) (Optional) Right-click an Internal CA for Gateways and select **Properties**. Check the following information in the **Properties** dialog box to make sure that you are selecting the correct Internal CA for Gateways:
  - **Validity** information in the **Valid from** and **Valid to** fields.
  - **Status** information:
    - **Active** — You can use this Internal CA for Gateways to sign certificates.
    - **Renewal Started** — This certificate authority is a new Internal CA for Gateways that the SMC has created automatically. The process of renewing VPN certificates has begun.
    - **Expires Soon** — A new Internal CA for Gateways has been created but some components might still use certificates signed by this Internal CA for Gateways.
    - **Inactive** — This Internal CA for Gateways has expired or no SMC components use a certificate signed by this internal VPN CA.
- 3) Select the CA you want to use and click **Select**.

#### Related concepts

[Problems with certificates](#) on page 1357

#### Related tasks

[Troubleshoot expiring certificate authorities](#) on page 1362

## Upload VPN certificates manually

In rare cases, you might need to transfer VPN certificates to the Firewalls manually.

In most cases, VPN certificates are transferred to the Firewalls automatically. However, if there are problems with missing VPN certificates on the gateways, you can transfer them to the Firewalls manually.

**Steps** ⓘ For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Select **Tools > Upload Gateway Certificates**.

#### Related concepts

[Problems with certificates](#) on page 1357



**Related tasks**

[Create a VPN certificate or certificate request for a VPN Gateway element](#) on page 1236

# Replace expired VPN certificates

For security reasons, VPN certificates have an expiration date, after which the certificates must be replaced with new ones.

The VPN certificates issued by the Internal RSA CA for Gateways and the Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways are valid for three years.


If you have both an **Internal RSA CA for Gateways** and an **Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways**, only one certificate authority can be selected as the default certificate authority. If automatic RSA certificate management is activated for an NGFW Engine, RSA certificates issued by the default certificate authority are renewed automatically as long as the certificate-related files, including the private key stored on the engines, are intact. You must manually create and renew any certificates that are not signed by the default Certificate Authority.


New certificates signed by the new default Certificate Authority are automatically created for VPN Gateway elements. You must manually create and renew any certificates that are not signed by the default Certificate Authority.

If certificates signed by the expiring Internal CA for Gateways are used to authenticate VPN client users, you must manually create new certificates for the VPN clients. You must also create new certificates manually for any other external components that have certificates signed by the expiring Internal RSA CA for Gateways or Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways.



**Note:** When you renew the VPN certificate, Stonesoft VPN Client users receive a notification about the certificate fingerprint change. Notify users before you renew the certificate if possible.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) To renew an externally signed certificate for a VPN Gateway element, follow these steps.
  - a) Create a certificate request.
  - b) Sign the certificate with the external CA.
  - c) Import the signed certificate.
- 2) To renew an internally signed certificate for an external component, follow these steps.
  - a) Create a certificate request in the external component.
  - b) Sign the certificate with the internal CA.
  - c) Export the signed certificate and import it to the external component.
- 3) To renew an internally signed certificate for a VPN Gateway element, follow these steps.
  - a) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.

- b) Browse to **Other Elements > Certificates > Gateway Certificates**.  
The certificates are shown with their expiration dates and signer information.
- c) Right-click the certificate you want to renew and select **Renew Certificate**.  
You are prompted to confirm that you want to renew the certificate.
- d) Click **Yes**.  
There is a delay while the certificate is renewed, after which you are notified that the certificate was renewed. The certificate is transferred to the engine automatically.
- e) Refresh the policy of the Firewall to activate the new certificate.

This procedure renews the certificate when the certificate-related information is intact on the engine and on the Management Server. If the certificate has not expired but has other problems, delete the existing certificate element in the Management Client and create a new one.

#### Related tasks

[Select the default internal certificate authority](#) on page 1236

[Troubleshoot expiring certificate authorities](#) on page 1362

[Create a VPN certificate or certificate request for a VPN Gateway element](#) on page 1236

[Import an externally signed VPN gateway certificate](#) on page 1243

[Sign external VPN certificate requests with an internal certificate authority](#) on page 1238

## Export signed VPN gateway certificates or VPN certificate authority certificates

You can export signed gateway certificates, the certificates of the **Internal RSA CA for Gateways**, and the certificates of the **Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways**.


### Before you begin



You must have a signed certificate or a new internal VPN CA.

In most cases, it is not necessary to export signed VPN gateway certificates or VPN certificate authority certificates, but can be done as needed.

If the SMC has created a new **Internal RSA CA for Gateways** or **Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways** to replace an expiring default certificate authority, you must export the certificate of the new default certificate authority. You must import the certificate on external gateways that use certificates signed by the default certificate authority or communicate with gateways that use certificates signed by the default certificate authority. If the external gateway itself uses a certificate signed by the default Certificate Authority, you must also create a new certificate for the external gateway.

You must export certificates that are created when an internal certificate authority signs an external certificate request at the time of signing the certificate request. They are not stored for exporting later.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) To export a signed certificate, follow these steps.
  - a) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
  - b) Browse to **Other Elements > Certificates > Gateway Certificates**.  
The certificates are shown with their expiration dates and signer information.
  - c) Right-click a certificate and select **Export Certificate**.
  - d) Browse to the location where you want to save the file on your local workstation and click **Save**.
  
- 2) To export the certificate of an internal CA for gateways, follow these steps.
  - a) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
  - b) Browse to **Other Elements > Certificates > VPN Certificate Authorities**.  
The VPN Certificate Authorities are shown with their expiration dates.
  - c) Right-click a VPN Certificate Authority and select **Tools > Export Elements**.
  - d) Browse to the location where you want to save the file on your local workstation and click **Export**.  
If the external gateway uses a certificate signed by the internal certificate authority that has been renewed, you must create a new certificate for the external gateway.

#### Related tasks

[Select the default internal certificate authority on page 1236](#)

[Replace expired VPN certificates on page 1241](#)


## Import an externally signed VPN gateway certificate

You can import a certificate signed by an external certificate issuer for a VPN Gateway element when the certificate request has been created in the SMC.

For security reasons, it is not possible to import externally generated private keys.



**Note:** All CAs that issue certificates for your VPNs must be configured in the SMC and be included as trusted both at the gateway and VPN Profile levels.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.

- 2) Open the **Gateways** branch and expand the tree under the VPN Gateway element.
- 3) Right-click the certificate request and select **Import Certificate**.
- 4) Select the certificate authority that signed the certificate.
- 5) Browse to the certificate request file on your local workstation or copy and paste the content of the certificate request into the dialog box.  
If you copy and paste the certificate request, include the “Begin Certificate Request” header and the “End Certificate Request” footer.
- 6) After the signed certificate is imported, delete the certificate request, which is still displayed under the Gateway with the signed certificate.  
The certificate is transferred to the engine automatically.

#### Related tasks

[Define additional VPN certificate authorities](#) on page 1233

[Create a VPN certificate or certificate request for a VPN Gateway element](#) on page 1236


## Check when VPN gateway certificates expire


Certificates expire according to the information written in the certificate when it was generated

### Before you begin

A signed certificate must be present.

By default, RSA certificates issued by the default certificate authority for VPN Gateway elements are renewed automatically. VPN Gateways never accept expired certificates.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Certificates > Gateway Certificates**.  
The existing certificates are displayed.
- 3) See the **Expiration Date** column for information about the certificate’s expiration date.
  - You can renew internally signed certificates through their right-click menu. You must manually renew certificates if automated RSA certificate management is not active, or if the certificate was not signed by the default Certificate Authority. VPN client users might be prompted to accept the change of certificate.
  - Elements with no expiration date are certificate requests (Status: To be signed).

**Related tasks**


[Select the default internal certificate authority](#) on page 1236


# Check when VPN certificate authorities expire

The Internal RSA CA for Gateways and the Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways are valid for 10 years.

The Management Server includes a dedicated Internal RSA CA for Gateways for signing VPN certificates. You can optionally also create an Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways. If you have both an Internal RSA CA for Gateways and an Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways, only one certificate authority can be selected as the default certificate authority.

A new Internal RSA CA for Gateways or Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways is automatically created to replace the default certificate authority six months before the expiration date. The certificate authority that is not selected as the default certificate authority is not automatically renewed.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements > Certificates > VPN Certificate Authorities**.  
The existing VPN Certificate Authorities are displayed.
- 3) See the **Expiration Date** column for information about the CA's expiration date.
- 4) To view detailed information, right-click an Internal RSA CA for Gateways or an Internal ECDSA CA for Gateways or and select **Properties**. Check the following information in the Properties dialog box:
  - **Validity** information in the Valid from and Valid to fields.
  - **Status** information:
    - **Active**: You can use this Internal CA for Gateways to sign certificates.
    - **Renewal Started**: This certificate authority is a new Internal CA for Gateways that the SMC has created automatically. The process of renewing VPN certificates has begun.
    - **Expires Soon**: A new Internal CA for Gateways has been created but some components might still use certificates signed by this Internal CA for Gateways.
    - **Inactive**: This Internal CA for Gateways has expired or no SMC components use a certificate signed by this internal VPN CA.

**Related concepts**

[Problems with certificates](#) on page 1357

**Related tasks**

[Select the default internal certificate authority](#) on page 1236



# Reconfiguring existing VPNs

## Contents

- [Changing tunnels in a VPN](#) on page 1247
- [NAT traversal in VPNs](#) on page 1248
- [NAT for VPN gateway communications](#) on page 1248
- [NAT for traffic in VPN tunnels](#) on page 1249
- [Add gateways to an existing VPN](#) on page 1249
- [Changing gateway IP addresses in an existing VPN](#) on page 1250
- [Giving VPN access to more hosts](#) on page 1251
- [Route all Internet traffic through policy-based VPNs](#) on page 1251
- [Redirect traffic between VPN tunnels](#) on page 1252
- [Changing pre-shared keys for VPNs](#) on page 1254
- [Gateway settings for VPNs](#) on page 1256

You can reconfigure and tune existing VPNs.

## Changing tunnels in a VPN

You can add or remove tunnels in a VPN.



**Note:** Before changing the tunnels that are used in active VPNs, we recommend making a backup of the Management Server.

In the Route-Based VPN, you must add or remove tunnels manually.

In a policy-based VPN, the gateway topology and the number of active endpoints in each gateway element determine the number of tunnels generated for a VPN. After changing the topology of a policy-based VPN, always check that all new or changed tunnels are valid on the **Tunnels** tab.

- Each central gateway forms a tunnel with each central and satellite gateway in the VPN. No other Gateway->Gateway tunnels are created. Tunnels are not generated between endpoints that cannot connect to each other. For example, tunnels are not generated between two endpoints if they both have a dynamic IP address.
- Adding a gateway under another gateway instead of directly at the main level in the central gateways list can prevent tunnel generation. This configuration implies that the gateway at the main level forwards connections to the gateways below it in the hierarchy. For the forwarding to work, it must be explicitly configured in the central gateway's Access rules with the **Use VPN > Forward** action.
- Endpoint->endpoint tunnels are created between all endpoints defined in the properties of any two gateways that form a Gateway->Gateway tunnel.

### Related concepts

[Defining VPN gateways](#) on page 1170

**Related tasks**

- [Back up system configurations](#) on page 1275
- [Add Route-Based VPN tunnels](#) on page 1218
- [Define VPN topology for Policy-Based VPNs](#) on page 1197
- [Define endpoints for VPN Gateway elements](#) on page 1171

## NAT traversal in VPNs

NAT traversal prevents intermediary devices from applying NAT to VPN communications if NAT is found to prevent the communications from working.

NAT traversal (NAT-T) encapsulates the IKE and IPsec communications inside UDP packets. The NAT-T encapsulation option does not affect mobile VPNs. NAT-T is always active in mobile VPNs.



**Note:** The **TCP Tunneling** option is included for backward compatibility with legacy Forcepoint NGFW software versions. Selecting this option has no effect on Forcepoint NGFW version 5.9.0 or later.

Encapsulation is not always necessary. Usually, you can define Contact Addresses so that the VPN works even when NAT is applied.

The encapsulation options are activated in the endpoint properties in the Engine Editor or in the External VPN Gateway element.

**Related concepts**

- [Considerations for setting up system communications](#) on page 127

**Related tasks**

- [Define endpoints for VPN Gateway elements](#) on page 1171
- [Define endpoints for External VPN Gateways](#) on page 1173

## NAT for VPN gateway communications

You can apply NAT to the communications between VPN Gateways.

The communications that establish and maintain VPN tunnels between VPN Gateways are always translated according to the NAT rules. Create a matching NAT rule to translate addresses in these communications and make sure that the communications do not match the wrong NAT rule unintentionally.

When you add NAT, you might need to change VPN settings. Add contact addresses for the firewalls. Contact Addresses can be used with both internal and external gateways.

There is nothing VPN-specific about creating the actual NAT rules.

**Related concepts**

- [Getting started with NAT rules](#) on page 831



# NAT for traffic in VPN tunnels

You can configure NAT for traffic in VPN tunnels in the properties of the Policy-Based VPN element.

By default, IP addresses in traffic that enters or leaves a VPN tunnel are not translated. An option in the properties of the Policy-Based VPN element, accessible through the right-click menu for the policy-based VPN, defines whether NAT is applied to traffic in VPN tunnels.

If the option to translate the IP addresses is enabled, the IP addresses in traffic that uses site-to-site VPN tunnels are translated according to the NAT rules. There is nothing VPN-specific in creating these NAT rules. However, the VPN configuration is affected if local protected addresses are translated using NAT:

- Set the Site element that contains the private local addresses (before translation) in the Private mode in VPNs in which those addresses are translated using NAT.
- Add the translated addresses as a new Site for the gateway (disable the Site in other VPNs). This Site is in the default Normal mode.

VPN client traffic is translated according to the NAT Pool settings defined for the Firewall in the Engine Editor, or as defined in the NAT rules.

## Related concepts


[Defining IP addresses for VPN clients](#) on page 1262

[Getting started with NAT rules](#) on page 831

# Add gateways to an existing VPN

You can add new gateways to the Route-Based VPN and to policy-based VPNs.

If you have already configured a policy-based VPN, you can add new gateways as needed.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Create a gateway element to represent the physical gateway device in VPNs if the element does not exist already.

**VPN Gateway** elements are automatically created for Forcepoint NGFW in the Firewall/VPN role. Once created, the same element can be used in any number of VPNs.

- 2) If the VPN uses certificates for authentication, you might need to create a VPN certificate for the gateway. The same certificate can be used in any number of VPNs, providing it fulfills the following criteria:
  - The certificate must match the type of certificate selected for the VPN in the VPN Profile.
  - The certificate must be issued by a certificate authority that the other Gateways trust.
- 3) Add the gateway to a policy-based VPN or to a Route-Based VPN tunnel.
  - Edit the Policy-Based VPN element to add the gateway on the **Site-to-Site VPN** tab.
  - Edit the Policy-Based VPN to add or edit a tunnel, then add the gateway to the tunnel.
- 4) Check and adjust the tunnels between the new gateway and the existing gateways.

- 5) Refresh the policies of all NGFW Engines that are involved in the tunnel.

### Related concepts

[VPN certificates and how they work](#) on page 1231

## Changing gateway IP addresses in an existing VPN

There are special considerations depending on whether you change the IPS address of a VPN Gateway element or an External VPN Gateway element.

For VPN Gateway elements, the IP addresses you have defined for the firewall's interfaces determine the VPN endpoint addresses. On Firewall Clusters, only CVI addresses are used as VPN endpoints. VPNs are not supported on Layer 2 Firewalls.



**Note:** If the gateway's identity in the VPN is based on its IP address, you must update the configurations of all gateways in the VPN. You must update the configurations even if the IP address is NATed and not directly used for contact. For VPN Gateway elements, you update the configuration by refreshing the engine's policy after you change the IP addresses. For External VPN Gateways, change the information in the configuration of the gateway device.

- If you change the IP address a firewall interface, the corresponding VPN endpoint IP address also changes automatically. The existing tunnels in the Policy-Based VPN element or the Route-Based VPN element are preserved.
- If continuous connectivity is required, define the new address as a second endpoint before you change the IP address. The Multi-Link VPN automatically selects the IP address that works before and after the change.
- If you add or remove interfaces, you might need to select or deselect endpoints manually and then check the tunnel configuration in the Policy-Based VPN element or the Route-Based VPN element.



**Note:** You cannot use the same endpoint in a policy-based VPN and the Route-Based VPN.

For External VPN Gateways, you always enter the VPN endpoint addresses manually. Change the IP address configured in the Management Client and refresh the policies of all affected Firewall/ VPN engines.

### Related tasks

[Define VPN tunnel settings for Policy-Based VPNs](#) on page 1198

[Define endpoints for VPN Gateway elements](#) on page 1171

[Define endpoints for External VPN Gateways](#) on page 1173

# Giving VPN access to more hosts

If you want to give access to hosts with IP addresses that are not already configured for your policy-based VPN, you must follow several general steps.

In the Route-Based VPN, it is not necessary to change the VPN configuration to allow access through the VPN for more hosts. Any traffic that is routed to a tunnel interface and allowed by the Access rules automatically uses the Route-Based VPN tunnel.

In policy-based VPNs, proceed according to this general workflow:

- 1) Make sure that the IP addresses are included in one of the Sites of the correct gateway. If the IP addresses must not be included in other VPNs where the same gateway element is used, add them to a separate Site. Disable the Site in other VPNs.
- 2) (VPN with external gateways) Add the new IP addresses to the configuration of the external gateway device, so that it routes the traffic through the VPN.
- 3) Check that the Access rules of all gateways involved specify that this traffic is sent or allowed through the policy-based VPN. If NAT is enabled in the policy-based VPN, also check the NAT rules.

## Related tasks

[Create NAT rules for Policy-Based VPN traffic](#) on page 1207

[Add a VPN site](#) on page 1179

[Create rules for gateway connections in Policy-Based VPNs](#) on page 1202


# Route all Internet traffic through policy-based VPNs

You can force all traffic from VPN clients or clients in protected networks to be routed through a policy-based VPN.

## Before you begin

You must have a working VPN between all gateways.

Routing all traffic from VPN clients or clients in protected networks through a policy-based VPN allows the traffic to be inspected centrally.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Enable NAT for tunneled traffic in the Policy-Based VPN element's properties.
- 2) Change the mode of the central gateway's sites in this policy-based VPN to **Private** and replace them with a Site element that contains the **Any Network** element. Disable the **Any Network Site** in other VPNs.

- 3) Reconfigure the policy:
  - a) Create Access rules.
  - b) Create NAT rules that translate any private IP addresses to public addresses for the Internet.
- 4) Redirect the traffic from external components to the central gateway as necessary.  
For VPN Gateways elements, add an Access rule that sends the allowed traffic to the VPN.
- 5) (VPN Clients only) Configure the Virtual Adapter.

#### Related concepts

[Defining Site elements for VPN gateways](#) on page 1177

[Virtual IP addresses for VPN clients](#) on page 1263

#### Related tasks

[Create NAT rules for Policy-Based VPN traffic](#) on page 1207

[Edit a Policy-Based VPN element](#) on page 1196

[Create forwarding rules on hub gateways for Policy-Based VPNs](#) on page 1205

[Create rules for gateway connections in Policy-Based VPNs](#) on page 1202

## Redirect traffic between VPN tunnels

In policy-based VPNs, you can redirect traffic from one VPN tunnel to another VPN tunnel through a hub gateway.

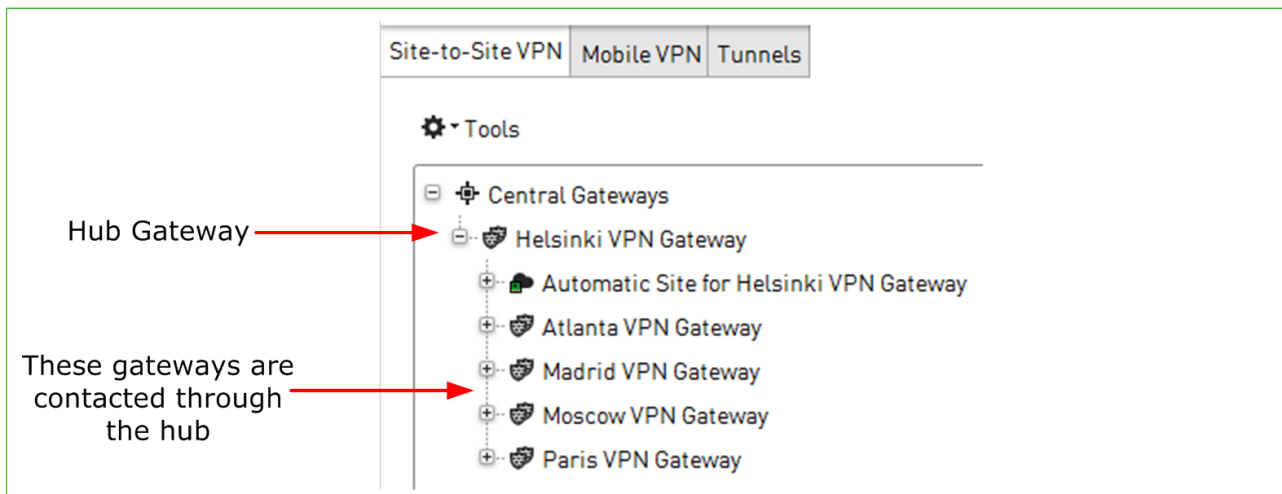
### Before you begin

You must have a policy-based VPN configured. If VPN client traffic is forwarded, you must configure virtual IP addressing for VPN clients.

Redirecting traffic between VPN tunnels is especially useful for VPN client users who need access to resources at different locations. When you redirect traffic between VPN tunnels, the users do not have to separately connect to different gateways.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) On the **Site-to-Site VPN** tab of the Policy-Based VP editing view, place the forwarding hub gateway at the top level of the **Central Gateways** list.



- 2) Place the gateways that are contacted through the hub under the hub gateway.



**Note:** Duplicate tunnels are not allowed. There must not be site-to-site connections between the hub and the other gateways in other active VPNs.

- 3) Add a Site element that contains the IP addresses behind the spoke gateways under the hub gateway.
  - a) Set the **Mode** of the Site element to **Hub**.
  - b) Disable the Site element in any other VPNs where it is used.

The protected IP addresses are behind the spoke gateways.
- 4) To forward VPN client traffic, add a Site element that contains the virtual IP address space used for the VPN clients under the hub gateway.
- 5) Add Access rules that forward the traffic between tunnels.
- 6) Refresh the policies of all firewalls involved in the VPN, starting from the firewall that acts as the hub gateway.  
Optionally, all traffic (including Internet traffic) can be routed through the hub gateway.

#### Related concepts

[Virtual IP addresses for VPN clients](#) on page 1263

[VPNs and how they work](#) on page 1125

[Configuration 4: Basic VPN hub](#) on page 1160

#### Related tasks

[Create forwarding rules on hub gateways for Policy-Based VPNs](#) on page 1205

# Changing pre-shared keys for VPNs

You can renew or generate pre-shared keys automatically or manually depending on the type of VPN.



**Note:** Pre-shared key authentication is selected in the VPN Profile and allowed in the Gateway Profiles.

You can automatically generate pre-shared keys only for policy-based VPNs. You can manually configure pre-shared keys for policy-based VPNs and for the Route-Based VPN.

## Replace pre-shared keys for VPNs with automatically generated pre-shared keys

You can automatically generate pre-shared keys for policy-based VPNs and for tunnels in the Route-Based VPN.

### Before you begin

Pre-shared key authentication must be selected in the VPN Profile and allowed in the Gateway Profiles

As a security precaution, we recommend that you periodically change the pre-shared key (for example, monthly).

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Right-click a Policy-Based VPN element or the Route-Based VPN element and select **Edit <element type>**.
- 3) In a policy-based VPN, follow these steps to replace the pre-shared key.
  - a) Click the **Tunnels** tab.
  - b) Select all Tunnels for which you want to renew the pre-shared keys.
  - c) Right-click one of the selected Tunnels and select **Delete Pre-Shared Key**.
  - d) Right-click one of the selected Tunnels again and select **Generate Missing Pre-Shared Key**.  
A new pre-shared key is generated.
  - e) To transfer keys to external components, double-click the **Key** column for those tunnels and copy-paste or export the key.



**Note:** Make sure that outsiders cannot obtain the key while you transfer it to other devices. The key must remain secret to be an effective security measure.

- 4) In the Route-Based VPN, follow these steps to replace a pre-shared key.
  - a) Right-click a tunnel and select **Edit**.
  - b) Click **Edit**.
  - c) Click **Generate**.  
A new pre-shared key is generated.
  - d) Click **OK**
- 5) Click **Save**.


## Replace pre-shared keys for VPNs manually


You can manually configure pre-shared keys for policy-based VPNs and for tunnels in the Route-Based VPN.


### Before you begin

Pre-shared key authentication must be selected in the VPN Profile and allowed in the Gateway Profiles.

As a security precaution, we recommend that you periodically change the pre-shared key (for example, monthly).

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Right-click a Policy-Based VPN element or the Route-Based VPN element and select **Edit <element type>**.
- 3) In a policy-based VPN, follow these steps to replace the pre-shared key.
  - a) Click the **Tunnels** tab.
  - b) Double-click the **Key** column for the tunnel for which you want to change the key.
  - c) Copy and paste or type in a new key into the dialog box.

 **CAUTION:** The pre-shared key must be long and random to provide a secure VPN.
  - d) Click **OK**
- 4) In the Route-Based VPN, follow these steps to replace a pre-shared key.
  - a) Right-click a tunnel and select **Edit**.
  - b) Click **Edit**.

- c) Copy and paste or type in a new key into the dialog box.



**CAUTION:** The pre-shared key must be long and random to provide a secure VPN.

- d) Click **OK**

- 5) Click **Save**.

## Gateway settings for VPNs

---

The Gateway Settings element defines performance-related VPN options for the Firewalls.

The gateway settings are used internally and there is no need to match them exactly with settings of other gateways in VPNs.

Gateway Settings elements are stored under the **Other Elements > Profiles > Gateway Settings** branch in the **VPN Configuration** view.

## MOBIKE settings in Gateway Settings

---

MOBIKE (mobile IKE) return routability checks (RRC) can be used with IKEv2 to verify the validity of VPN client or gateway IP addresses if the IP address changes in the middle of an open VPN connection.

The IP address is updated in the negotiated SAs when the new IP address has been verified. If the new IP address cannot be verified, the VPN connection is closed. By default, no return routability checks are done.

## Negotiation Retry settings in Gateway Settings

---

If a negotiation for a VPN does not complete successfully, the VPN establishment is retried according to settings in the **Negotiation Retry** section in Gateway Settings properties.

The default settings are the recommended values. VPN establishment might fail because you have frequent intermittent problems with network connectivity or because your network connection is too slow. In these cases, increasing **Negotiation Retry** values might be a work-around solution for getting the VPN to establish.

## Certificate Cache settings in Gateway Settings

---

The **CRL Validity** setting in the **Certificate Cache** section in Gateway Settings properties has effect only if you use certificates to authenticate VPN gateways in IKE negotiations.


The default setting is the recommended value. Adjust the setting only if you need to do so.




## Define a custom Gateway Settings element

---

The Gateway Settings element defines performance-related VPN options for the Firewalls.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements > Profiles** branch in the element tree.
- 3) Right-click the **Gateway Settings** branch in the element tree, then select **New Gateway Settings**.


## Assign gateway settings to a Firewall

---

You can change the gateway settings to a set you have created yourself.

By default, all Firewalls use the **Gateway Default Settings** Gateway Settings element.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the firewall element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, browse to **VPN > Advanced**.
- 3) From the Gateway Settings list, select the profile in one of the following ways:
  - Select **Select** and browse to an existing profile.
  - Select **New** to create a profile.
- 4) Click  **Save and Refresh** to transfer the changes.



# VPN client settings

### Contents

- [VPN client settings and how they work](#) on page 1259
- [VPN client settings in the Management Client](#) on page 1260
- [Defining IP addresses for VPN clients](#) on page 1262

Stonesoft VPN Client does not have controls for many settings that are needed for establishing a VPN. These settings are defined in the SMC. Stonesoft VPN Client downloads the settings from the gateways it connects to. VPN clients are only supported in policy-based VPNs.

## VPN client settings and how they work

Stonesoft VPN Client settings are configured centrally in the SMC. The settings are automatically updated to the Stonesoft VPN Client from the engines when the clients connect.

### What VPN client settings in the SMC do

The following settings are transferred from the gateway to the client:

- Routing information (VPN Site definitions). Generally, if an IP address that the client wants to contact is included in the Site definition, the traffic is routed into the VPN.
- Authentication settings
- Encryption settings
- Information about the gateway's endpoints
- Settings for NAT traversal methods allowed
- Settings for local security checks on the client computer
- Secondary IPsec VPN gateways to contact in case there is a disruption at the IPsec VPN gateway end

### Limitations

- When the Stonesoft VPN Client is first installed, it has no configuration. Either the user or the administrator must add the basic information about gateways, such as the IP address to use for connecting.
- There are version-specific dependencies between the Stonesoft VPN Client and Firewall/ VPN software. See the [Release Notes](#) of the Stonesoft VPN Client version you intend to use for information about compatibility with your Firewall/VPN gateway's software version.
- The SMC does not create configurations for third-party VPN clients. You must create the configuration through the controls and tools of the third-party VPN client product.

**Related concepts**

[VPNs and how they work](#) on page 1125

[Configuration 3: Basic VPN for remote clients](#) on page 1153

**Related tasks**

[Create rules for VPN client connections in Policy-Based VPNs](#) on page 1204

# VPN client settings in the Management Client

Several settings for Stonesoft VPN Client are available in the Management Client.

**Table 154: Stonesoft VPN Client settings in the Management Client**

Location	Setting	Explanation
Engine Editor > VPN > Advanced	TCP Tunneling Port	This option is included for backward compatibility with legacy Forcepoint NGFW software versions. Selecting this option has no effect on Forcepoint NGFW version 5.9.0 or later.
	Translate IP Addresses Using NAT Pool	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Address range for translating IP addresses of incoming Stonesoft VPN Client connections for internal networks</li> <li>Alternative to using the Virtual Adapter (next setting in this table)</li> </ul>
Engine Editor > VPN > VPN Client	VPN Type	Defines the type of tunnels the mobile VPN supports. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>IPsec VPN</b> — The mobile VPN only supports IPsec tunnels.</li> <li><b>SSL VPN</b> — The mobile VPN only supports SSL VPN tunnels.</li> <li><b>Both IPsec &amp; SSL VPN</b> — The mobile VPN supports IPsec and SSL VPN tunnels.</li> </ul>
	SSL Port (SSL VPN types only)	The port for SSL VPN tunnels.
	TLS Cryptography Suite Set (SSL VPN types only)	The cryptographic suite for SSL VPN tunnels.
	Authentication Timeout (SSL VPN types only)	The timeout for Stonesoft VPN Client user authentication.
	Local Security Checks	Defines whether Stonesoft VPN Client checks for the presence of basic security software to stop connections from risky computers.

Location	Setting	Explanation
	<b>Virtual IP address (Using Virtual Adapter)</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Options for configuring Stonesoft VPN Client with a second, virtual network adapter with a DHCP-assigned IP address for connections inside the VPN.</li> <li>Alternative to using the NAT Pool (previous setting in this table).</li> </ul>
	<b>Secondary IPsec VPN Gateways</b>	IPsec VPN gateways to contact in case there is a disruption at the IPsec VPN gateway end (in the order of contact).
<b>VPN Profile element properties &gt; IKE SA tab</b>	<b>Versions</b>	IKE versions used in IKE SA negotiations
	<b>Cipher Algorithms</b> <b>Message Digest Algorithms</b>	The supported algorithms for the current version of Stonesoft VPN Client.
	<b>Diffie-Hellman Groups</b>	Diffie-Hellman groups used in IKE SA negotiations.
	<b>Authentication Method</b> <b>SA Lifetime in Minutes</b> <b>IKEv1 Negotiation Mode</b>	These settings have no effect on Stonesoft VPN Client connections. See <b>IPsec Client</b> tab instead.
<b>VPN Profile element properties &gt; IPsec SA tab</b>	<b>IPsec Type</b>	Only ESP is supported.
	<b>Cipher Algorithms</b> <b>Message Digest Algorithms</b>	The supported algorithms for the current version of Stonesoft VPN Client.
	<b>Compression Algorithm</b> <b>Deflate</b>	
	<b>Use PFS with Diffie-Hellman Group</b>	Diffie-Hellman group used in IKE SA negotiations when PFS can be used.
<b>VPN Profile element properties &gt; IPsec Client tab</b>	<b>Authentication Method</b>	The selected authentication method used with Stonesoft VPN Client.
	<b>Allow Hybrid/EAP Authentication</b>	Stonesoft VPN Client users authenticate by user name and password (or other type of passcode), and the gateway authenticates itself to the client with a certificate.
	<b>Allow CN authentication</b>	Allows authentication using the common name in the certificate as the user name. The CN is checked against a value entered in the User elements.
	<b>Allow Pre-Shared Key Authentication with IKEv1</b>	This setting has no effect on Stonesoft VPN Client connections, as pre-shared key authentication is not supported.

Location	Setting	Explanation
	<b>IPsec Security Association Granularity</b>	Defines whether SAs are negotiated per network or per each connecting IP address. Stonesoft VPN Client only supports the <b>SA Per Net</b> setting.
<b>Policy-Based VPN element &gt; Tunnels tab</b>	<b>Pre-shared Key fields</b>	This setting has no effect on Stonesoft VPN Client connections. Pre-shared keys for Stonesoft VPN Client connections are defined per-user account in the User elements.

### Related tasks

[Define IKE SA settings for a VPN](#) on page 1184

[Define IPsec SA settings for a VPN](#) on page 1186

[Define VPN client settings in VPN Profiles](#) on page 1189

## Defining IP addresses for VPN clients

There are two different methods to define the IP addresses that VPN clients use in the internal network.

You must always configure one of the following methods for the mobile VPN to be valid:

- 1) You can use NAT to translate the IP addresses in communications. Using NAT gives the VPN clients an 'internal' IP address in the internal network without the need for a DHCP server. This method is called a *NAT Pool*.
  - This method is not recommended for the Stonesoft VPN Client. It does not allow the clients to make queries to internal DNS servers without manual configuration.
  - NAT rules are not applied to communications from clients that receive their address through the NAT Pool feature. The NAT Pool translation is applied before the NAT rules.
  - The NAT Pool method does not require any other client-side features.
- 2) (Recommended for the Stonesoft VPN Client) You can use a DHCP server to assign a virtual IP address that VPN clients use in communications through the VPN tunnel. The IP address is attached to a *Virtual Adapter*. Using this method provides the following benefits over the NAT Pool:
  - Centrally configure the DNS settings for VPN clients when connected (using the DHCP server).
  - Control how the IP address each VPN client is assigned (depending on the DHCP server).
  - Forward mobile VPN traffic to a site-to-site VPN or route the Internet traffic from the client computer through the gateway for inspection.
  - Open new connections from the internal network to the VPN client computers through the VPN.

To use the Virtual Adapter, the VPN client software must support this feature. Not all third-party VPN clients have a Virtual Adapter feature. The Virtual Adapter is required when there is a need to open connections from the internal network to the VPN client. Activating both the NAT Pool and the Virtual Adapter is technically possible. However, the NAT Pool address translation is applied to all VPN client traffic when activated, including connections from hosts that use a Virtual Adapter.



**Note:** For a detailed technical discussion on using a virtual IP address, see RFC 3456.

**Related concepts**[VPNs and how they work](#) on page 1125

# Translate VPN client IP addresses using NAT Pool

The NAT pool defines a range of IP addresses that the firewall can use to translate the source address of connections from VPN clients.

The NAT pool translates the addresses in the same way as NAT rules do. Connections that use the NAT Pool must not match any NAT rules.



**Note:** Make sure that NAT is enabled for this VPN. The **Enable NAT with this VPN** option in the properties of the VPN element must be selected. Otherwise, the NAT pool options have no effect.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the firewall element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **VPN > Advanced**.
- 3) Select the **Translate IP Addresses Using NAT Pool** option.



**Note:** If the NAT Pool is active, it is also used for translating connections from VPN clients that have a virtual IP address. It is not possible to exclude hosts with a virtual IP address from being subject to the NAT Pool address translation.

- 4) In the **IP Address Range** and **Port Range** fields, enter the IP addresses and ports you want to use for translating VPN client traffic.



**CAUTION:** Make sure the addresses that you define here do not overlap with addresses that are in use in your networks. Also, the addresses must not overlap with any translated address space in your NAT rules.

## Virtual IP addresses for VPN clients

You can use a Virtual Adapter to assign the VPN client an IP address in the VPN, independent of the address the VPN client computer uses in its local network.

The virtual IP address is only used in communications through the VPN tunnels. The VPN gateway gets the IP address and network settings of the Stonesoft VPN Client from the an external DHCP server and forwards the information to the Stonesoft VPN Client. For one-way access without DNS resolving, the VPN gateway can alternatively be set up to apply NAT to translate the Stonesoft VPN Client connections. This method is meant for testing purposes.

The VPN gateway specifies the destination IP addresses for traffic that the Stonesoft VPN Client sends into the VPN tunnel. The IP addresses are configured as Site elements for each gateway in the Management Client. When the Sites contain specific internal networks, the Stonesoft VPN Client receives a configuration for *split tunneling*. Split tunneling means that only the specified portion of traffic uses the VPN tunnel, and other connections use the local network as usual.

This feature requires the following:

- You use an external DHCP server to assign the IP addresses.
- The users use a VPN client that has a Virtual Adapter feature. The Stonesoft VPN Client always has this feature installed and active.

Most DHCP servers allow a configuration in which a particular client computer is always assigned a particular IP address. For example, the DHCP server might assign the IP address based on the MAC address if VPN clients have fixed MAC addresses for their Virtual Adapters. By default, when the Stonesoft VPN Client virtual adapter requests an IP address, it uses the MAC address of the physical interface used in the VPN connection.

## Define virtual IP addresses for VPN clients in the Engine Editor


You can use a Virtual Adapter to assign the VPN client an IP address in the VPN

### Before you begin

This feature requires the following:

- You use an external DHCP server to assign the IP addresses.
- The users use a VPN client that has a Virtual Adapter feature. The Stonesoft VPN Client always has this feature installed and active.

Most DHCP servers allow a configuration in which a particular client computer is always assigned a particular IP address. For example, the DHCP server might assign the IP address based on the MAC address if VPN clients have fixed MAC addresses for their Virtual Adapters.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the firewall element and select **Edit <element type>**.  
The Engine Editor opens.
- 2) In the navigation pane on the left, select **VPN > VPN Client**.
- 3) From the **DHCP Mode** drop-down list, select how DHCP requests from VPN clients are sent.



**Note:** If **SSL VPN** or **Both IPsec & SSL VPN** is selected from the **VPN Type** drop-down list, only the **Direct** and **DHCP Relay** are shown.

- 4) From the **Interface** or **Interface for DHCP Relay** drop-down list, select the source address for the DHCP packets when querying the DHCP server (the interface toward the DHCP server).
- 5) Click **Add** and select the DHCP server element that assigns IP addresses for the VPN clients.



- 6) (Optional) From the **Add Information** drop-down list, select what VPN Client user information is added to the Remote ID option field in the DHCP Request packets.
- **Add User information** — VPN Client user information (in the form user@domain) is automatically added to the Remote ID option field in the DHCP Request packets.
  - **Add Group information** — VPN Client user information (in the form group@domain) is automatically added to the Remote ID option field in the DHCP Request packets.

Your DHCP server must support the **DHCP Relay Agent Information** option to use this information. Depending on your DHCP server configuration, this information can be used as a basis for IP address selection.

- 7) (Optional) Select **Restrict Virtual Address Ranges** and enter the IP address range in the field on the right. With this option, you can restrict the VPN clients' addresses to a set range, even if the DHCP server tries to assign some other IP address. If an incorrect address is assigned, the user might not be able to access resources. These address ranges must not overlap with the NAT Pool.



**Note:** If the NAT Pool is active, it is also used for translating connections from VPN clients that have a virtual IP address. It is not possible to exclude hosts with a virtual IP address from being subject to the NAT Pool address translation.

- 8) (Optional) Configure the Firewall to act as a proxy for the VPN client's ARP requests.
- a) Select **Proxy ARP**.
  - b) In the field on the right, enter the IP address range for proxy ARP.



**Note:** The **Proxy ARP** option might be required for a working VPN depending on your network configuration.

- 9) Click **Save and Refresh**.



# PART XII

## Maintenance and upgrades

### Contents

- [Configuration of automatic updates and upgrades](#) on page 1269
- [Backing up and restoring system configurations](#) on page 1273
- [Managing log data](#) on page 1283
- [Managing and scheduling Tasks](#) on page 1297
- [Managing licenses](#) on page 1309
- [Upgrading the SMC](#) on page 1319
- [Upgrading the engines](#) on page 1325
- [Manual dynamic updates](#) on page 1331
- [Managing SMC Appliance patches](#) on page 1335

Maintenance includes procedures that you do not typically need to do frequently.



# Configuration of automatic updates and upgrades

### Contents

- [Getting started with automatic updates and upgrades](#) on page 1269
- [Configure automatic updates and upgrades](#) on page 1270

You can configure the Management Server to automatically download and install dynamic update packages, remote upgrades for engines, and licenses.

## Getting started with automatic updates and upgrades

---

Automatic updates are available for dynamic update packages, remote upgrades for engines, and licenses.

Before dynamic updates and engine upgrades are downloaded and activated or installed, they are verified. The Management Server checks the digital signature of each dynamic update or engine upgrade using a valid Trusted Update Certificate. Only updates and upgrades with a valid signature can be downloaded and installed. If there is a verification failure, the administrator receives an error. Verification failure can result from an out-of-date SMC version or an invalid or missing signature.

## What automatic updates and engine upgrades do

---

The Management Server can automatically perform the following tasks:

- Check for new dynamic update packages and automatically download and install them according to your selection.
- Check for new engine upgrade packages. Engine upgrades can also be automatically downloaded, but they must always be installed manually.
- Upgrade the licenses.

When automatic updates and engine upgrades are active, you can also view information regarding the maintenance contract and support level of your licenses in the Management Client.

## Limitations

---

- (Multiple Management Servers only) Dynamic update packages are downloaded and activated on the active Management Server (the Management Server that controls all Domains). The settings for automatic updates and upgrades are configured in the properties of the active Management Server.
- There are no automatic updates for the SMC software.

- New engine software versions might require an upgraded version of the SMC. Check the [Release Notes](#) for compatibility information before upgrading the engines.
- Upgrades and updates (both automatic and manual) require an active maintenance or support contract.
- If you select the **Notify When Updates Become Available** setting, you must manually download the updates and engine upgrades.

#### Related concepts

[Checking maintenance contract information](#) on page 209

#### Related tasks

[Configure automatic updates and upgrades](#) on page 1270


# Configure automatic updates and upgrades

There are several options for handling automatic updates and engine upgrades.

## Before you begin

The automatic updates and engine upgrades require the Management Server to be able to connect to the servers at <https://update-pool.stonesoft.com> and <https://smc-pool.stonesoft.com> either using HTTPS on port 443 or through an HTTP proxy. You must also have a valid maintenance or support contract.

The Management Server can periodically check for new dynamic update packages, engine upgrades, and licenses. This feature is active by default. In an environment with multiple Management Servers, automatic updates and upgrades must be enabled on the active Management Server (the Management Server that controls all Domains).

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Menu > System Tools > Global System Properties**.
- 2) On the **Updates** tab, select **Enable Sending Proof-of-License Codes to FORCEPOINT Servers**.  
Selecting this option allows you to select settings for dynamic updates and for engine and license upgrades.
- 3) Configure the **Dynamic Updates** settings.



**Note:** Because update packages can change system elements, the policies might require editing after update activation.

- 4) Select one of the **Remote Upgrades for Engines** settings.

- 5) (Optional) Select **Generate and Install New Licenses Automatically** to automatically regenerate and install the licenses required for upgrading SMC components to a major new release.
- 6) (Optional) Select the **Update Check Interval** to define how often the SMC checks for new updates.
- 7) Click **OK**.

#### Related concepts

[Checking maintenance contract information](#) on page 209

[Getting Started with licenses](#) on page 1309

[Getting started with upgrading the SMC](#) on page 1319

[Getting started with upgrading NGFW Engines](#) on page 1325

[Getting started with manual dynamic updates](#) on page 1331

#### Related tasks

[Schedule Tasks](#) on page 1305





# Backing up and restoring system configurations

### Contents

- [Backups and how they work](#) on page 1273
- [Back up system configurations](#) on page 1275
- [Copy backup files to a storage location](#) on page 1276
- [Restoring backups](#) on page 1276
- [Restore system configurations after a hardware failure](#) on page 1279
- [Managing SMC Appliance backups](#) on page 1280

Backups contain the necessary configuration information to restore the SMC to the state it was in when the backup was taken. Backups include the configuration information for the Firewall, IPS, and Layer 2 Firewall engines that the Management Server stores.

## Backups and how they work

Backups allow you to save and restore Management Server and Log Server configurations on the same system or on a different physical host.

### What backups do

Different types of backups contain different information:

- The Management Server backup contains the policies, elements, and other configuration details for all NGFW Engines that they manage. The Management Server backup also contains the configuration information of the Web Portal Server and of the Management Server itself.
- The Log Server backup contains the Log Server's local configuration and optionally the logs.
- The SMC Appliance backup contains several files. These files are time stamped, stored on a dedicated partition, and contain information about the version of the SMC Appliance.
  - Management Server backup
  - Log Server backup for the default Log Server
  - SMC Appliance configuration files
  - Optional syslogs and audit logs

Restoring backups allows you to restore the configurations to the state they were when the backup was taken, even if you restore it in a different SMC.



**Note:** If you restore an SMC Appliance backup onto third-party hardware, the Management Server and Log Server backups are applied. Operating system configuration files are not restored.

Backups are needed to recover from the loss of the system configurations, for example, due to hardware failure. A backup also allows you to relocate the SMC servers onto different hardware.

## Limitations

The private keys of engine certificates are stored locally on the engines and are not backed up.

## What do I need to know before I begin?

The Management Server is the only place that contains usable, complete configuration information for any individual engine component. The engines contain a working copy of the configuration details that allows them to carry out traffic inspection independently. It is not possible to extract this information from the engines if the Management Server is lost. Regular Management Server backups are therefore essential and must be stored in a safe storage location outside the Management Server host system.

Always take the backups using the Management Server's internal backup tool. External backup applications that back up the host system might not produce usable backups of your SMC servers, especially if the SMC servers are running when you take the backup.

Backups from the previous major version of the SMC can always be restored in the current major version of the SMC. Backups taken from older versions might not always be restorable. Generally, backups can be restored between versions that support direct upgrades between the versions.



**Note:** If your configuration includes TLS Inspection, the private keys and certificates of the Server Protection Credentials and Client Protection Certificate Authorities are included as plain text in the Management Server backup. Use the encryption option for the backups when the configuration contains elements for TLS Inspection.

### Related concepts

[TLS inspection and how it works](#) on page 1035

## Backup configuration overview

Managing backups involves several main steps.

- 1) Back up the Management Servers and Log Servers regularly or schedule backup tasks to run at regular intervals.
- 2) Store the backup files in a safe location.
- 3) When necessary, restore a backup.

# Back up system configurations

Backups are needed to recover from the loss of the system configurations, for example, due to hardware failure. A backup also allows you to relocate the SMC servers onto different hardware.


Management Server backups include all configuration information, including licenses, server components' certificates needed for system communications, the root CA, and locally stored user accounts. The configurations you create in the SMC for the engine components are included in the Management Server backup and do not need separate backups.

Log Server backups contain the Log Server configuration information and optionally the log data stored on the server. There is a configurable limit to how large the Log Server backup can be.

The following steps explain how to use the Management Client to take and manage the backups. It is also possible to create backups on the command line. The contents of the backup file are the same regardless of the method used.



**Note:** To back up a Management Server, there must be enough free disk space on the server. Twice the size of the management database is required. If there is not enough available disk space, the backup process does not start.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the Management Server or Log Server you want to back up, then select **Backup**.
- 2) (Optional) If you want to back up other servers, select the servers from the list on the left, then click **Add**.
- 3) (Optional) If you want to create an encrypted backup, select **Encrypted**, then enter and confirm a password. We recommend this option if the configuration contains elements for TLS Inspection.
- 4) (Optional) If you are creating a backup of Log Servers and you want to back up the log files, select **Back up Log Files**.
- 5) Click **OK**.  
The progress is shown on a new tab.
- 6) Copy the backup files from the backup directory to a separate, safe location for storage.

## Related concepts

[Log data management and how it works](#) on page 1283

## Related tasks

[Create Backup Tasks](#) on page 1301

[Schedule Tasks](#) on page 1305

# Copy backup files to a storage location

Copying backups to a storage location guarantees that the backup files are available if the data on the server on which they were created is lost.

The backup files are saved in the <installation directory>/backups/ directory of the server on which they were created. We recommend copying the backup file to a safe location, for example, to removable media or another host.



**Note:** If you installed the Management Server in the C:\Program Files\Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center directory in Windows, some program data might be stored in the C:\ProgramData\Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center directory.

The backups files are compressed to .zip files (unencrypted backups) or .enc files (encrypted backups) and they can also be decompressed manually if needed. If necessary, the backups are split into several files to fit the maximum file size. Each backup has its own subdirectory.



**Note:** Handle the backup files securely. They contain all configuration information for the system.

## Steps

- 1) Browse to the backup directory on the server on which the backup was created.
- 2) Copy the backup files to a safe storage location.

# Restoring backups

Restoring backups allows you to recover from the loss of the system configurations, or to relocate the SMC servers onto different hardware.

Backups created in one operating system can be restored to an installation running on another operating system without any special measures. This is useful when changing the operating system or hardware platform.


See the upgrade instructions in the [Release Notes](#). If an intermediate upgrade is required between your current version and the newest version, upgrade the existing installation to the intermediate version to create a working backup.

When you restore a backup, the backup restoration process checks that there is enough disk space on the destination drive. Twice the size of the backup file is required. If there is not enough available disk space, the restoration fails.

It is also possible to restore backups on the command line.

# Restore Management Server backups

Restoring Management Server backups allows you to recover from the loss of the system configurations, or to relocate the SMC servers onto different hardware.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Check that the backup file is in the <installation directory>/backups/ directory of the server in question. If you have moved the backup file to a different location, copy it back to the <installation directory>/backups/ directory.



**Note:** If you installed the Management Server in the C:\Program Files\Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center directory in Windows, some program data might be stored in the C:\ProgramData\Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center directory.

- 2) Stop the Management Server service through the operating system's service management feature or using the command-line script.  
If you have trouble stopping the services, disable the automatic startup of SMC services in the operating system and restart the computer.
- 3) Start the backup restoration script:
  - In Windows, run <installation directory>/bin/sgRestoreMgtBackup.bat
  - In Linux, run <installation directory>/bin/sgRestoreMgtBackup.sh
- 4) Select the backup file to be restored.  
The default backup file names have the following structure: sgm\_vVERSION.  
[BUILD]\_YYYYMMDD\_HHMMSS[comment].
- 5) Type **y**, then press **Enter** to confirm the restoration.  
If the backup was encrypted, enter the password.  
If the restore operation fails, the original configuration remains unchanged.
- 6) If you restore the backup on a system that uses a different IP address, change the IP address of the Management Server.
- 7) Regenerate the certificates, if needed.  
The backup contains the internal CAs (certificate authorities). If components have certificates from a different CA than the one contained in the backup, the certificates are not accepted as valid after restoring the backup.
- 8) Start the Management Server.  
If you disabled automatic startup for any SMC services and want the services to start automatically, start the services and enable automatic startup for them.


## Related concepts

[Problems with certificates](#) on page 1357

**Related tasks**[Change the Management Server IP address](#) on page 450

## Restore Log Server backups

The Log Server backup contains the Log Server's local configuration and optionally the logs.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Check that the backup files are in the <installation directory>/backups/ directory of the server in question. If you have moved the backup files to a different location, copy them back to the <installation directory>/backups/ directory.



**Note:** If you installed the Management Server in the C:\Program Files\Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center directory in Windows, some program data might be stored in the C:\ProgramData\Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center directory.

- 2) Stop the Log Server service through the operating system's service management feature or using the command-line script.
  - If you have trouble stop the services, disable the automatic startup of SMC services in the operating system and restart the computer.
- 3) Start the backup restoration script:
  - In Windows, run <installation directory>/bin/sgRestoreLogBackup.bat
  - In Linux, run <installation directory>/bin/sgRestoreLogBackup.sh
- 4) Select the backup file to be restored.

The default backup file names have the following structure: sgl\_vVERSION.  
[BUILD]\_YYYYMMDD\_HHMMSS[comment].
- 5) Type **y**, then press **Enter** to confirm the restoration.

If the backup was encrypted, enter the password.  
If it is not possible to transfer the logs through a backup, you can copy log files to the Log Server through the operating system.  
If the restore operation fails, the original configuration remains unchanged.
- 6) If you restore the backup on a system that has a different IP address, change the IP address of the Log Server.
- 7) Start the Log Server.

If you disabled automatic startup for any SMC services and want the services to start automatically, start the services and enable automatic startup for them.

**Related tasks**[Change the Log Server IP address](#) on page 451

# Restore system configurations after a hardware failure

Restoring backups on replacement hardware restores the SMC configurations to the state they were in when you took the backup.

## Steps

- 1) Restore the Management Server configurations on replacement hardware.
  - a) Install the Management Server software.  
The same exact version is not required for recovery, but all SMC components must run the same version to work together.
  - b) Restore the Management Server backup.
- 2) Restore Log Server configurations on replacement hardware.
  - a) Install the Log Server software, if not installed together with the Management Server software.  
The same exact version is not required for recovery, but all SMC components must run the same version to work together.
  - b) Restore the Log Server backup.
- 3) Restore engine configurations on replacement hardware.
  - a) Generate an initial configuration for the engine in the SMC.
  - b) Add the hardware to the network and configure it in the same way as a new installation.
  - c) When contact with the Management Server is established, install the policy.  
The full working configuration is transferred to the engine.



**Note:** In some cases, the IPsec VPN certificate information can be lost and the policy installation fails. If VPN certificate information is lost, delete the old VPN certificates in the Management Client and create new VPN certificates for the engine. When you use the same CA and certificate details, the other components accept the new certificates. Policy installation is also possible if you disable the invalid configurations (for example, by disabling all VPN-specific Access rules in the policy).

**Related concepts**[Connect engines to the SMC](#) on page 631

# Managing SMC Appliance backups

You can manage a backup of the entire SMC Appliance from the command line.

## Before you begin

Make sure that you have superuser permissions.

The SMC Appliance has a dedicated partition for storing logs and backups. There are several files included in a full backup of the system.

- Log Server backup
- Management Server backup
- SMC Appliance OS configuration backup



**Note:** If password protection is enabled for backups, the files are saved with AES 128-bit encryption.

The backup files are combined into one .tar file. Backup files can be automatically stored in a remote location through a CIFS share. The backup commands must be run with elevated permissions using sudo. A list of available sudo commands can be found by running `sudo -l` at the command line.

## Related reference

[Security Management Center commands](#) on page 1411

## Mount a CIFS share

Setting up a CIFS share allows the SMC Appliance to export backups and other files to a remote storage location. A CIFS share is persistent, even if the appliance is restarted.

## Before you begin

If there is a firewall between the SMC Appliance and the CIFS share location, make sure that CIFS traffic is allowed.

## Steps

- 1) Log on to the appliance from the command line.
- 2) Enter the CIFS command.

```
sudo smca-cifs add -n <name> -s //<server>/<share> -u <username> -p <password> -d <domain>
```

Where `<name>` is the locally used name, `<server>/<share>` is the server or IP address and share name on that server, and `<domain>` is the domain of the share.

- 3) Press **Enter**.



## Result

The CIFS share is mounted in the `/mnt/cifs/<name>` directory. The CIFS credentials are stored in the `/etc/smca/cifs/<name>` file.

# Create an SMC Appliance backup

You can create a custom backup of the SMC Appliance from the command line.

## Steps

- 1) Use the command line to log on to the appliance.
- 2) Run the backup command.

```
sudo smca-backup
```

You can append the command with various options to customize the backup process.

- 3) Press **Enter**.

# Move backups to remote storage

Regularly storing appliance backups in a remote location allows for a complete appliance recovery in the event of an unexpected failure.

## Before you begin

Mount a CIFS share.

## Steps

- 1) Log on to the appliance from the command line.
- 2) (Optional) Create a backup of the appliance.
- 3) Enter the rsync command.

```
sudo smca-rsync add -i <source directory> -o <destination directory>
```

`<source directory>` is where the backups are stored when they are created and `<destination directory>` is the remote location to store the backups. If you do not include the `-i`, the appliance defaults to the SMC backup directory file.

- 4) Press **Enter**.

## Result

The rsync command copies the backup files to the destination hourly. The command also runs a check to verify that there are no duplicate files in the destination directory.

# Restore SMC Appliance backups

---

The appliance can be restored to a previous operational state.

## Steps

- 1) Log on to the appliance from the command line.
- 2) Run the restore command.

```
sudo smca-restore
```

You can append the command with various options to customize the restore process.

- 3) Press **Enter**.

# Managing log data

## Contents

- [Log data management and how it works](#) on page 1283
- [Reducing unnecessary log generation](#) on page 1286
- [Archive log data](#) on page 1287
- [Delete log data](#) on page 1289
- [Export log data](#) on page 1293
- [View history of completed Log Tasks](#) on page 1295
- [Examples of log management](#) on page 1295

Log management is the process of configuring when logs are produced, which of the produced logs are stored, and when stored logs can be deleted or archived. Logs must be actively managed to prevent the Log Server from filling up the hard disk with logs. Log data management tools help you manage the generated log entries automatically according to settings you define.

## Log data management and how it works

Log management keeps the number of logs at a reasonable level and prevents logs from filling the Log Servers.

Logs provide you with important information about what is going on in your network environment. However, not all logs are equally important, and none of the logs need to be stored on the Log Server forever.

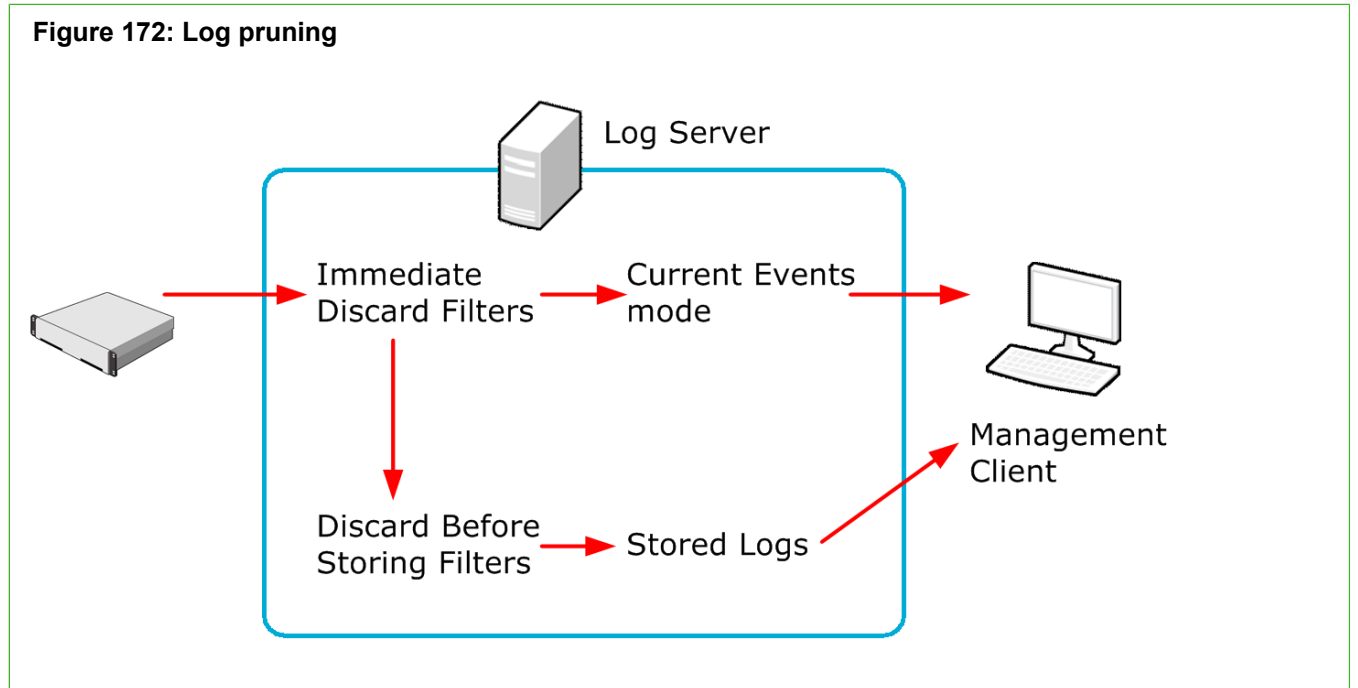
### What log management tools do

You can manage the log data in the following ways:

- Export log data so that it can be used elsewhere.
- Copy log data to an archive location.
- Delete old or unnecessary log data.
- Set up automatic log management tasks for exporting, copying, and deleting selected data.
- Reduce the number of logs by pruning some of the log entries before they are stored on the Log Server. However, preventing the unwanted log entries from being created is always better than pruning.

Log entries are stored in log files. If these files are never removed, they eventually fill up the storage space on the Log Server. You can start different types of tasks to manage the logs. You can delete some older entries. You can back up important entries by archiving them in the proprietary format used in the Management Client, or by exporting them to some external format. It is a good idea to set up some log management tasks to run automatically at regular intervals using the internal tools.

Sometimes the system might generate unnecessary log entries that can be awkward to delete, for example, if a single rule generates both useful and unnecessary log entries. In such a case, it is sometimes easiest to reduce the number of logs by pruning log entries. You can discard irrelevant log entries by using log pruning filters. The following illustration demonstrates how log pruning filters are used in log management.

**Figure 172: Log pruning**

The engines send their logs to their configured Log Server. The Log Server either stores the log entries or just relays them to be viewed immediately in the Current Events mode in the Logs view. Some logs might be discarded through pruning before these operations. When you view logs, the information is fetched directly from the Log Servers. Some other tasks, such as processing data for statistical reports, are also partially carried out by the Log Server.

You can prune log entries in two phases using Immediate Discard filters and Discard Before Storing filters. Immediate Discard filters delete log entries as they arrive to the Log Server. The Discard Before Storing filters delete log entries before the log entries are stored on the Log Server.



**Note:** Alert entries and audit entries cannot be pruned.

## Limitations

Only the logs in the active storage are used in reporting. If you archive logs, you can still view them in the Logs view, but they are no longer available when you generate reports.

Alert and audit logs cannot be pruned.

### Related concepts

[Getting started with reports](#) on page 261

## What log entries are

Most often, Access rules trigger *Log entries*.

Other types of rules can be set to create log entries as well. However, in most recommended configurations, the volumes are much smaller than in Access rules. The system can also produce detailed *Diagnostic logs* and always produces some other internal log entries (such as entries related to policy installation).

## What Alert entries are

---

*Alert entries* are notifications of important events that require the administrator's attention.

The difference between alerts and normal log entries is that alerts are highlighted in the Security Management Center and they can be escalated through external notification channels. In addition to rule matches, alerts can be produced when an automatic test fails, a monitored element becomes unreachable, or if there is a system error.

### Related concepts

[Alert escalation and how it works](#) on page 367

## What Audit entries are

---

*Audit entries* provide a record of administrator actions and some internal events in the SMC.

Internal events in the SMC that produce audit entries include creation, modification and deletion of elements, administrator logons, and the execution of scheduled tasks. This data is useful, for example, when troubleshooting the cause of malfunctions caused by undocumented configuration changes.

Only the Management Server and the Log Server send audit entries. The audit entries are stored on the Management Server or the Log Server that originally created them.

## Where log data files are stored

---

Logs are stored as a file on the Log Server.

A separate folder is created for the logged events each hour. The log files are stored by default in the <installation directory>/data/ storage/ directory on the Log Server.

The log files have the following naming: YYYYMMDD\_hh\_C<ORIGINATOR>\_MMDDhhmmsssss.arch.

- The date YYYYMMDD\_hh refers to the date and hour of the logged events.
- The rest of the file name starting with “\_C” refers to the file creation date and the <ORIGINATOR> refers to the originator of the logged events.

The time and date in the file name always use the UTC time zone, which is the system's internal time zone.

## Archive directory options for the Log Server

---

You can change the Log Server's default archive directory and define up to 32 alternative or additional directories.

For example, you can directly archive some or all logs on a network drive to free resources on the Log Server. The Log Server's default archive directory is <installation directory>data/archive.

# Domain boundaries in viewing and managing log data

---

If administrative Domains are configured, all log, alert, and audit entries are Domain-specific.

When you log on to a Domain, only the entries related to that specific Domain can be viewed or managed. However, Audit entries from all Domains are displayed to administrators who are logged on to the Shared Domain.

## Log data management configuration overview

---

Log data management involves several main steps.

- 1) Configure logging to generate only the log entries you need.
- 2) (Optional) Set up log archiving to store older important logs for possible later use and free up the space on the Log Server.
- 3) (Recommended) Set up scheduled log data tasks for deleting logs that are not needed in the long term.
- 4) (Optional) Configure log pruning to prune out any unnecessary logs if any are generated.

## Reducing unnecessary log generation

---

The primary way to manage logging is to set up the system to create all necessary logs and alerts and a minimum of unnecessary log entries.

The main generator of logs that you can configure are the rules in traffic handling policies. Another major point of configuration is the automatic tester, which you can set up to create alerts on various events. Some other features also generate logs and alerts, but it is not always possible to reduce the generation of logs from these features.

Normal and Alert logs are generated both based on internal conditions in the operation of a component and based on traffic that the engines handle.

Internal conditions that trigger logs or alerts:

- There is a system error or warning.
- An engine test fails. You can configure the engine tester in detail and select whether test failures trigger an alert.
- The status of an engine changes (not active by default).
- When the values of a monitored item exceed a threshold limit in an Overview (not active by default).
- Diagnostics are active on a Firewall engine (not active by default).

Traffic conditions that trigger logs and alerts:

- An IPS engine's or a Layer 2 Firewall's limit for the number of times tunneled traffic is rematched has been reached (not active by default).
- Traffic matches a rule in your policy.
- Diagnostics are active on an engine (not active by default).

You can also set up Log Servers to receive logs from any devices that can be set up to send syslog.

In addition to activating and deactivating logging and the listed features, you can optimize the number of generated logs on the engines in the following ways:

- You can configure log compression for Discard logs for Firewalls, IPS engines, and Layer 2 Firewalls.
- On Firewalls, you can configure log compression also for antispoofing logs.

*Log Tasks* can export, archive, and delete logs. It is possible to schedule these tasks to run automatically. The greater the volume of log data, the more frequently cleanup operations must run. For example, if the number of stored log entries is constantly high, you might need to export and delete logs daily. The schedules are defined in the Management Client's local time. The Log Server might have a different time zone.

If administrative Domains are used, Log Tasks are always Domain-specific. You must define and run the Log Tasks in a specific Domain to apply them to the log data in that Domain.

### Related concepts

[Getting started with the engine tester](#) on page 639

[Getting started with editing policies](#) on page 851

[Getting started with monitoring third-party devices](#) on page 213

### Related tasks

[Enable or disable engine status monitoring](#) on page 330

[Set thresholds for monitored items in Overview elements](#) on page 191

[Configure inspection of tunneled traffic](#) on page 684

[Enable or disable diagnostics on Firewalls](#) on page 330

[Configure log handling settings for engines](#) on page 686

## Archive log data

You can set up an Archive Log Task to copy log data from the active storage on the Log or Management Server to some other location.

The same task can also delete the log data from the active storage. You do not have to set up a separate task for freeing up the space.

By default, the log archive location is on the same disk drive as the active storage.




**Note:** The Archive Log Task copies the existing log files without compression. Copying the files without compression enables you to view the archived logs in the Logs view but they are not used in the Reports view when reports are generated.

## Create an Archive Log Task

---

You can set up an Archive Log Task to copy log data from the active storage on the Log or Management Server to some other location.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Right-click **Tasks** in the Administration tree and select **New > Archive Log Task**.
- 3) Enter a unique **Name** and an optional free-form **Comment** for your own reference.
- 4) Select the server from which the logs are archived and click **Add**.

## Select log data to archive

---

You can specify the type of log data to archive and select additional options for the Archive Log Task.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the **Archive Log Task** properties, switch to the **Task** tab.
- 2) Select the type of log data to archive using the **Target Data** options.
- 3) Select the **Time Range** of the log entries.  
You have several options to limit the time range. For example, select **Absolute Time Range** in the Time Range list and define the Start and End Time.
- 4) (Optional) Specify a script in the **Script to Execute After the Task** field.  
The Log Server triggers this script after completing the task.

## Define how log data is archived

---

You can define where the archived data is stored, and how the source data is handled after it has been copied to the target location.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the **Archive Log Task** properties, switch to the **Operation** tab.
- 2) (Optional) Select **Filter for Copying**.



- 3) In the **Source Data Deletion** section, select whether the data to be archived is kept in active storage after it has been copied to the target location. You can also select that the task removes some other data from the active storage. For example, the archive operation can copy important logs from within the time range and then clear the active storage of all logs within the time range.
  - To delete the archived data from the active storage, select the **Delete Source Data** option.
  - To delete other data from active storage, select the **Delete Other Data** option and optionally a log filter for deleting the other data.
- 4) Select the **Archive Target Directory** from the list. The directory is determined in the Log Server's configuration file (**LogServerConfiguration.txt**).
- 5) Click **OK**.

The task appears under **Task Definitions** in the **Tasks** branch of the **Administration** tree. You can run the task either manually or according to a fixed schedule.

#### Related concepts

[Getting started with filtering data](#) on page 283

#### Related tasks

[Edit Log Server configuration parameters](#) on page 424

[Start Tasks manually](#) on page 1306

[Schedule Tasks](#) on page 1305

[View log entries from specific servers and archive folders](#) on page 244


## Delete log data


To permanently delete generated log data, you can delete it from the active storage or delete it as it arrives to the Log Server using pruning filters.

## Create a Delete Log Task

The recommended way to delete logs is to set up a Delete Log Task.

In an emergency, you can also delete some of the log files from the Log Server (the default location for logs is in the <installation directory>/data/storage folder).

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Right-click **Tasks** in the Administration tree and select **New > Delete Log Task**.
- 3) Enter a unique **Name** and an optional free-form **Comment** for your own reference.


- 4) Select the server from which the logs are deleted and click **Add**.

## Select log data to delete

---

You can specify the type of log data to delete and select additional options for the Delete Log Task.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Right-click **Tasks** in the Administration tree and select **New > Delete Log Task**.
- 3) In the **Delete Log Task** properties, click to the **Task** tab.
- 4) Select the type of log data for deletion using the **Target Data** options.
- 5) Select the **Time Range** of the log entries.  
You have several options to limit the time range. For example, select **Absolute Time Range** in the Time Range list and define the Start and End Time.
- 6) (Optional) Specify a script in the **Script to Execute After the Task** field. The Log Server triggers this script after completing the task.

## Filter log data to be deleted

---

You can use Filter elements to select log data to be deleted.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Right-click **Tasks** in the Administration tree and select **New > Delete Log Task**.
- 3) In the **Delete Log Task Properties** properties, click the **Operation** tab.
- 4) (Optional) Select a Filter element that defines which log entries are deleted.

5) Click **OK**.

The task appears under Task Definitions in the Tasks branch of the Administration tree. You can run the task either manually or according to a fixed schedule.



**CAUTION:** When this task starts (either manually or as according to the schedule), all logs matching the selected filter and time range are permanently deleted from the active storage. Make sure that the data you want to keep is exported or copied to a safe location before the operation is started.

**Related concepts**

[Getting started with filtering data](#) on page 283

## Discard unnecessary logs

Log data pruning allows you to discard some of the generated logs according to detailed filtering criteria you set.

### Before you begin

If Domains are in use, you must log on to the Shared Domain.

You can manage the amount of log data by defining log pruning filters. Log pruning is needed, for example, when a rule generates both useful and unnecessary logs. Log pruning gives you the ability to discard newly generated irrelevant logs entries on the Log Server. Only logs can be pruned: alerts and audit entries are never pruned.

It is better to adjust log generation options instead of letting log entries be generated and then pruning them. Pruning log entries after they are generated wastes system resources by creating and transferring the unnecessary logs.

You can define two types of log pruning filters:

- *Immediate Discard* filters delete log entries immediately as they arrive to the Log Server. The deleted log entries are not displayed in the Management Client.
- *Discard Before Storing* filters deletes log entries before they are saved. Log entries are shown the **Current Events** mode in the **Logs** view before they are deleted. This option converts Essential or Stored type log entries to Transient log entries.

If Domain elements have been configured, log pruning filters can only be defined in the Shared Domain. The same log pruning filters are used in all Domains. Administrators who have the right to manage log pruning can view the log pruning filters when they are logged on to other Domains.



**CAUTION:** Be careful when defining the pruning filters. The matching log events are irreversibly deleted at the Log Server.

You can prune log entries as soon as they arrive on the Log Server or before they are stored. When you prune log entries before they are stored, you can still view them in the **Current logs** view).

Use pruning with caution. The data is deleted without leaving any traces and there is no way to recover incorrectly pruned entries. Pruning also wastes resources compared to preventing the entries from being generated. Pruned entries still have to be created and transferred to the Log Server, and the Log Server still has to process them.

You can prune normal log entries; alert and audit entries cannot be pruned. The logs are pruned using log filters.



**Note:** Pruning has no effect on logs that have already been stored.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Menu > File > New Tab**, then select **Log Data Pruning**.
- 2) Select the tab of the log data type you want to prune.
- 3) Select a log filter for pruning log data from the tree in the Resources pane. If you add several Log Filters, they are combined with a logical OR. Each filter is matched individually, so all logs that match any of the selected filters are deleted.

To create a Filter, select **New > Filter**.



**CAUTION:** Never select the Match All filter for log pruning. Pruning with the Match All filter irreversibly destroys all new logs that are created.

- 4) Activate the pruning for the correct stage:
  - Click **Add** below the **Immediate Discard** field to prune logs before they are even shown in the **Current Logs** view.
  - Click **Add** below the **Discard Before Storing** field to show the log entries in the **Current Logs** view and then delete them before they are permanently stored.



**CAUTION:** Any log entry that matches the filter you have selected is irrevocably deleted. The changes you make to pruning filters are applied immediately.

- 5) A warning message is displayed. Click **Yes** to prune the selected log entries. This change is applied immediately without any further action.

### Related concepts

[Getting started with filtering data](#) on page 283

## Cancel log pruning

You can disable Pruning filters by removing them from the **Log Data Pruning** panes.

An empty pane means that no logs are pruned.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Menu > File > New Tab**, then select **Log Data Pruning**.
- 2) Select the correct tab according to log data type.
- 3) Select the filter you want to remove from pruning in the **Immediate Discard** or **Discard Before Storing** field.

- 4) Click **Remove** below the field that contains the filter.



**Note:** Log Filters that are removed from pruning remain available for other use until you delete them separately.

- 5) Click **OK** in the dialog box that is displayed to affirm this action. This change is applied immediately without any further action.

## Export log data

---

Exporting log data allows you to copy log data to a location outside of the Security Management Center (SMC) without archiving the log data.


You can use Log Export tasks to export log data from the Log Server or from the Management Server. You can either run the Log Export Task manually or schedule the task to run automatically. If administrative Domains have been configured, you must run the Log Export Task in the Domain to which the Log Server belongs.

You can also export extracts of log data while browsing logs.

## Create an Export Log Task

---

You can use Log Export tasks to export log data from the Log Server or from the Management Server.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Right-click **Tasks** in the Administration tree and select **New > Export Log Task**.
- 3) Enter a unique **Name** and an optional free-form **Comment** for your own reference.
- 4) Set the **Operation Type** to select the format for the exported data.
- 5) Select the server from which the log data is exported and click **Add**.

## Select log data to export

---

You can specify the type of log data to export and select additional options for the Export Log Task.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.


- 2) Right-click **Tasks** in the Administration tree and select **New > Export Log Task**.
- 3) In the **Export Log Task Properties**, click the **Task** tab.
- 4) Select the type of log data for export using the **Target Data** options.  
If you selected **Export IPS Recordings as PCAP** or **Export IPS Recordings as Snoop** as the Operation Type on the General tab, **IPS Recording** is automatically selected.
- 5) Select the **Time Range** of the log entries.  
You have several options to limit the time range. For example, select **Absolute Time Range** in the Time Range list and define the Start and End Time.
- 6) (Optional) Specify a script in the **Script to Execute After the Task** field.  
The Log Server triggers this script after completing the task.

## Define how log data is exported

---

You can define which log data to export, and the destination for the exported log data.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Right-click **Tasks** in the Administration tree and select **New > Export Log Task**.
- 3) In the **Export Log Task Properties**, click to the **Operation** tab.
- 4) Select the **Storage directories to export from**.
- 5) (Optional) Select the **Filter for Exporting**.
- 6) (Optional, IPS traffic recordings only) Enter the **IPS Record ID** of the traffic capture.
- 7) Define **Server ('export' Directory)** as the destination file location.  
The file is exported to the export directory on the server.
- 8) Specify a name for the destination file (for example, **ExampleExportLogTask.xml**) or click **Browse** to browse for an existing export file.
- 9) In **If file already exists**, specify what happens when a previous file with the same name exists in the same folder.
- 10) Click **OK**.

### Result

The task appears under Task Definitions in the Tasks branch of the Administration view. If you want to delete the data after exporting, set up a scheduled task.

**Related concepts**

[Getting started with filtering data](#) on page 283

**Related tasks**

[Start Tasks manually](#) on page 1306

[Delete log data](#) on page 1289

## View history of completed Log Tasks

You can view all previously executed tasks related to logs from a history file.

The history file includes information related to Export Logs Tasks, Archive Log Tasks, and Delete Log Tasks. The SMC never erases this file.

### Steps

- 1) Open the `<installation directory>/data/logfile.txt` file in a text editor to view the previously executed tasks.

**Related concepts**

[Log data management and how it works](#) on page 1283

## Examples of log management

These examples illustrate some common uses for log management and general steps on how each scenario is configured.

### Example: archiving old log data

This scenario shows an example of archiving and deleting logs to free up disk space on the Log Server.

Old logs are taking up too much disk space on the Log Servers at Company A, but some of the logs are still needed for the company's records. The administrators decide to archive the needed logs on another server and to delete last month's log data from the Log Servers. Because not all old logs need to be archived, they delete the unnecessary logs. They want to repeat the same archiving operation once a month. The administrators do the following:

- 1) Create an Archive Log Task for archiving the data with the following settings:

**Table 155: Archive Log Task for Company A**

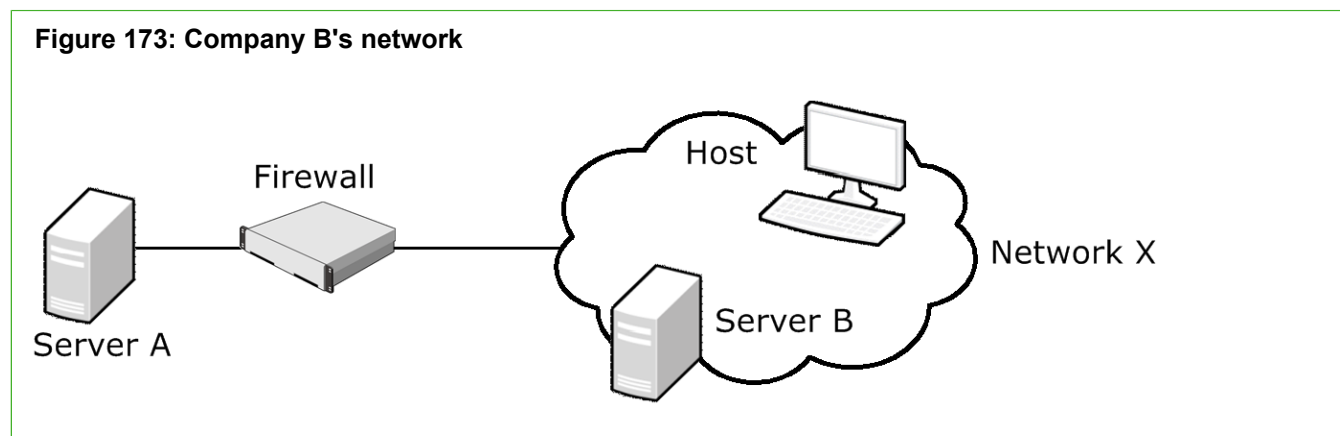
Option	Setting
Time Range	Last Full Month

Option	Setting
Filter for Copying	A custom filter that matches the important log data that the administrators want to archive.
Delete Other Data	<b>Match All</b> to delete all last month's logs from the Log Server.
Archive Target Directory	A network drive.

- 2) Save the Archive Log Task.
- 3) Create a Scheduled Task for running the Archive Log Task and set it to be repeated monthly.
- 4) Save the Scheduled Task.

## Example: filtering out irrelevant logs

This scenario shows an example of using Log Data Pruning to temporarily discard unnecessary logs.



Server A provides services to users in network X, as well as to Server B. The administrators are interested in tracking how many of the users in network X actually use Server A. Server B also connects frequently to Server A, and generates a large amount of traffic.

The administrators are only interested in connections from other hosts in network X to Server A. The administrators decide to temporarily eliminate logs related to Server B's connections. All hosts in network X including Server B are currently logged according to a single rule. Creating a separate rule to handle Server B's connections with logging set to "None" would create unnecessary clutter in the policy. The administrators decide to set up log pruning to filter the logs so that only the relevant ones are stored on the Log Server. The administrators do the following:

- 1) Select one of the irrelevant log entries in the Logs view.
- 2) Create a temporary filter based on the log entry, and save the filter as a permanent filter.
- 3) Add the new filter to the **Discard Before Storing** list in the **Log Data Pruning** view.



# Managing and scheduling Tasks

## Contents

- [Getting started with Tasks](#) on page 1297
- [Task configuration overview](#) on page 1298
- [Task types](#) on page 1298
- [Creating Task Definitions](#) on page 1300
- [Schedule Tasks](#) on page 1305
- [Start Tasks manually](#) on page 1306
- [Pause the scheduled execution of Tasks](#) on page 1307
- [Remove Tasks from schedules](#) on page 1307
- [Stop running Tasks](#) on page 1308

*Tasks* define parameters of system maintenance operations. You can run maintenance operations manually or automatically according to a schedule you set.

## Getting started with Tasks

---

You can use Task elements for manual or automatic maintenance operations in the SMC.

### What Tasks do

---

With Task elements, you can start maintenance operations either manually or according to a schedule. You can do the following with Tasks:

- Back up the Management Servers and Log Servers.
- Refresh policies.
- Upload policies.
- Upgrade engine software remotely.
- Export, archive, and delete logs.

There are also certain predefined system tasks.

Scheduling the Tasks allows you to run regular or one-time maintenance operations automatically, for example, during a regular maintenance window.

### Limitations

---

Tasks are Domain-specific. The elements that are the target of the Task must belong to the Domain in which the Task is run. For example, to export log data from a Log Server you must run the Log Export Task in the Domain to which the Log Server belongs.

## What do I need to know before I begin?

When scheduling automatic backups, you might want the data to be moved to a safe place automatically. This can be achieved through operating system scripts, which Tasks can start automatically upon completion. With Log Servers, you can change the backup and log archive locations in the Log Server's local configuration file.

### Related reference

[Task types](#) on page 1298

## Task configuration overview

Before you can run a Task, you must define the parameters for the Task element. If you want the task to be run automatically, you can also set up the Task execution schedule.

Follow these general steps to configure and use Tasks:

- 1) Define the Task parameters.
- 2) (Optional) Set up automatic Task execution.
- 3) Run Tasks when necessary.

### Related concepts

[Creating Task Definitions](#) on page 1300

### Related tasks

[Schedule Tasks](#) on page 1305

[Start Tasks manually](#) on page 1306

[Pause the scheduled execution of Tasks](#) on page 1307

[Remove Tasks from schedules](#) on page 1307

[Stop running Tasks](#) on page 1308

## Task types

There are several types of predefined system Task Definitions. In addition, you can create custom Task Definitions.

Tasks are based on Task Definitions. There are two kinds of Task Definitions: custom Task Definitions and predefined System Task Definitions. To view Task Definitions or to create new Task Definitions, browse to **Administration > Tasks > Definition** in the **Configuration** view.

The following table explains the types of custom Tasks that you can create.

**Table 156: Custom Task Definitions**

Task Definition	Explanation
Backup Task	Creates backup files for the selected Management Servers and Log Servers.
sgInfo Task	Creates a .zip file that contains copies of configuration files and system trace files for the selected components for <a href="#">Forcepoint support</a> .
Refresh Policy Task	Refreshes the currently installed policy on the selected engines and Master NGFW Engines, the currently installed Alert Policy on the selected Domains.
Refresh Policy on Master NGFW Engines and Virtual Security Engines Task	Refreshes the currently installed policy on the selected Master NGFW Engines and the Virtual NGFW Engines associated with the Master NGFW Engines. If a Virtual Engine belongs to another administrative Domain, the policy is refreshed in that Domain.
Upload Policy Task	Uploads the selected policy to the selected engines.
Remote Upgrade Task	Remotely upgrades the software on the selected engines.
Export Log Task	Copies log data from the active storage or archive to the selected location.
Archive Log Task	Copies log data from the active storage to the selected location.
Delete Log Task	Deletes log data from the active storage.

In addition to Task Definitions that you create and customize, there are predefined Task Definitions for several system tasks. You can run the System Tasks manually or reschedule them, but you cannot change the options in System Task Definitions.

**Table 157: System Task Definitions**

Task Definition	Explanation
Create Snapshot of All System Elements	Automatically creates a snapshot of all system elements after an update package has been activated. The snapshot information is used when administrators compare policy snapshots.
Delete Old Executed Tasks	Deletes the list of entries in the History branch.
Delete Old Snapshots	Deletes Policy Snapshots.
Disable Unused Administrator Accounts	Disables the accounts of administrators who have not been active within the time period defined in the SGConfiguration.txt file. The accounts are disabled if the Enforce Password Settings option is enabled. An Administrator with unrestricted permissions can re-enable the disabled accounts.
Fetch Certificate Revocation Lists	Downloads Certificate Revocation Lists (CRLs) from a CRL server.

Task Definition	Explanation
Renew Gateway Certificates	Generates new certificates for NGFW Engines that act as VPN Gateways if automatic certificate renewal is enabled for the NGFW Engines.
Renew Internal Certificate Authorities	Checks the status of Internal Certificate Authorities for automatic renewal. To make sure that the automatic certificate authority renewal works correctly, do not change the schedule of this Task.  This Task can only be run in the Shared Domain. If administrative Domains have been configured, it renews the Internal Certificate Authority elements in all Domains.
Renew Internal Certificates	Checks the status of internal certificates for automatic renewal. To make sure that the automatic certificate renewal works correctly, do not change the schedule of this Task.

**Related tasks**

[Create Backup Tasks](#) on page 1301

[Create sgInfo Tasks](#) on page 1305

[Create Refresh Policy Tasks](#) on page 1301

[Create Refresh Policy on Master Engines and Virtual Security Engines Tasks](#) on page 1302

[Create Upload Policy Tasks](#) on page 1303

[Create Remote Upgrade Tasks](#) on page 1304

[Enable and define password policy settings](#) on page 357

## Creating Task Definitions

You can create new Tasks to help you maintain your system. All Tasks are Domain-specific.

**Related concepts**

[Log data management and how it works](#) on page 1283

**Related reference**


[Task types](#) on page 1298

# Create Backup Tasks

---

Create a Task for backing up servers.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Right-click **Tasks**, then select **New > Backup Task**.
- 3) Give the Task a descriptive **Name** and optionally a free-form **Comment**.
- 4) Select the servers you want to back up from the list on the left, then click **Add**.  
The selected servers are added to the list on the right.
- 5) (Optional) Write a **Backup Comment**, which is shown in the Management Client and added to the backup file name.
- 6) (Optional) If you want to create an encrypted backup, select **Encrypted**, then enter and confirm a password.
- 7) (Optional) If you are backing up Log Servers, select the **Back up Log Files** option to back up the logs on addition to the server's configuration.
- 8) Click **OK**.  
The new Backup Task is added to the list of Task Definitions.

# Create Refresh Policy Tasks

---

Create a Task for refreshing a policy on selected engines or Domains.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Right-click **Tasks**, then select **New > Refresh Policy Task**.
- 3) Give the Task a descriptive **Name** and optionally a free-form **Comment**.
- 4) Select the engines on which you want to refresh the policy, the Domains on which you want to refresh the Alert Policy from the list on the left. Click **Add** to add the policy to the list.



**Note:** If engines are the Target of the Task and you want already established connections to continue using the same configuration information (such as NAT rules), verify that **Keep Previous Configuration Definitions** is selected.

The selected elements are added to the list on the right.

- 5) (Optional, only if Domains or a single engine is the Target.) To validate the rules when the Task is started manually, verify that **Validate Policy before Upload** is selected and select the related settings.
- 6) (Optional) Add an **Upload Comment** that is shown in Policy Snapshots or Alert Snapshots created from the policy installations.
- 7) Click **OK**.  
The new Refresh Policy Task is added to the list of Task Definitions.

#### Related tasks

[Validate rules automatically](#) on page 887

[Create Refresh Policy on Master Engines and Virtual Security Engines Tasks](#) on page 1302


[Create Upload Policy Tasks](#) on page 1303


## Create Refresh Policy on Master Engines and Virtual Security Engines Tasks

The Refresh Policy on Master Engines and Virtual Security Engines Task is used for refreshing the currently installed policy on the selected Master NGFW Engines and all Virtual NGFW Engines that are associated with the Master NGFW Engines.

The policies of the Virtual NGFW Engines are installed in the administrative Domains to which the Virtual NGFW Engines belong.

This Task is primarily meant for situations in which it is necessary to refresh the policy on many Master NGFW Engines and Virtual NGFW Engines. This might be necessary, for example, after replacing the hardware on which the Master NGFW Engines run). In most cases, use the Refresh Policy Task if you want to refresh the policy on the Master NGFW Engines.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Right-click **Tasks**, then select **New > Refresh Policy on Master Engines and Virtual Security Engines Task**.
- 3) Give the Task a descriptive **Name** and optionally a free-form **Comment**.
- 4) Select the Master NGFW Engines on which you want to refresh the policy from the list on the left, then click **Add**.



**Note:** If you want already established connections to continue using the same configuration information (such as NAT rules), verify that **Keep Previous Configuration Definitions** is selected.

The selected Master NGFW Engines are added to the list on the right.

- 5) (Optional) Add an **Upload Comment** that is shown in Policy Snapshots created from the policy installations.
- 6) Click **OK**.  
The new Refresh Policy on Master Engines and Virtual Security Engines Task is added to the list of Task Definitions.


#### Related tasks


[Create Refresh Policy Tasks](#) on page 1301

[Create Upload Policy Tasks](#) on page 1303

## Create Upload Policy Tasks

Create a Task for uploading a policy on selected engines.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Right-click **Tasks**, then select **New > Upload Policy Task**.
- 3) Give the Task a descriptive **Name** and optionally a free-form **Comment**.
- 4) Select the engines on which you want to upload the policy, the Domains on which you want to upload the Alert Policy from the list on the left. Click **Add**.  
The selected elements are added to the list on the right.
- 5) (Only if engines or Domains are selected as the Target). Click **Select** next to the **Policy** field, then select the policy you want to upload.



**Note:** If engines are the Target of the Task and you want already established connections to continue using the same configuration information (such as NAT rules), verify that **Keep Previous Configuration Definitions** is selected.

- 6) (Optional, only if Domains or a single engine is the Target). To validate the rules when the Task is started manually, verify that **Validate Policy before Upload** is selected, then select the related settings.
- 7) (Optional) Add an **Upload Comment** that is shown in Policy Snapshots or Alert Policy Snapshots created from the policy installations.
- 8) Click **OK**.  
The new Upload Policy Task is added to the list of Task Definitions.

**Related tasks**


[Validate rules automatically](#) on page 887


[Create Refresh Policy Tasks](#) on page 1301

[Create Refresh Policy on Master Engines and Virtual Security Engines Tasks](#) on page 1302

## Create Remote Upgrade Tasks

Create a Task for remotely upgrading the software on selected engines.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Right-click **Tasks**, then select **New > Remote Upgrade Task**.
- 3) Give the Task a descriptive **Name** and optionally a free-form **Comment**.
- 4) Select the upgrade **Operation**:
  - **Remote Upgrade (transfer + activate)** — Loads the new configuration and reboots the node.
  - **Remote Upgrade (transfer)** — Loads the new configuration without rebooting the node.
  - **Remote Upgrade (activate)** — Reboots the node to activate a previously loaded configuration.



**CAUTION:** Do not activate the new configuration simultaneously on all nodes of a cluster. If you want to schedule a Remote Upgrade Task for several nodes, create two separate Remote Upgrade Tasks: one to transfer the new configuration and another to activate it. Schedule the Activate Task to run only after the Transfer Task is complete.

- 5) Select the engines that you want to upgrade from the list on the left, then click **Add**.  
The selected engines are added to the list on the right.
- 6) Select the correct previously imported **Engine Upgrade** file for the upgrade.
- 7) Click **OK**.  
The new Remote Upgrade Task is added to the list of Task Definitions.


**Related tasks**


[Schedule Tasks](#) on page 1305



# Create sglInfo Tasks

Create a sglInfo Task to collect information about your system for [Forcepoint support](#).


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Right-click **Tasks**, then select **New > sglInfo Task**.
- 3) Give the Task a descriptive **Name** and optionally a free-form **Comment**.
- 4) Select the engines whose configuration files and system trace files you want to get from the list on the left, then click **Add**.  
The selected engines are added to the list on the right.
- 5) If instructed to do so by [Forcepoint support](#), select **Include core files** to include the core files for troubleshooting.
- 6) Click **OK**.  
The new sglInfo Task is added to the list of Task Definitions.

# Schedule Tasks

After creating Task Definition elements, you can schedule tasks to run at a convenient time.

If necessary, you can also schedule system tasks.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Select **Tasks > Definition**.  
A list of defined tasks opens.
- 3) Right-click the task, then select **Schedule**.
- 4) Set the schedule properties.



**Tip:** The date and time can be entered manually in the format YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS. You can also right-click the Up or Down arrows next to the date field to select a date from the calendar.

- 5) From the **Final Action** drop-down list, select the action when the task finishes running.

- 6) Click **OK**.

The Task schedule is added under the Task Definition.

#### Related concepts

[Creating Task Definitions](#) on page 1300

#### Related tasks

[Start Tasks manually](#) on page 1306

[Pause the scheduled execution of Tasks](#) on page 1307


[Remove Tasks from schedules](#) on page 1307


#### Related reference

[Task types](#) on page 1298

## Start Tasks manually

To run a Task immediately, start it from the Task Definitions list.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Select **Tasks > Definition**.  
A list of Task Definitions opens.
- 3) Right-click the Task you want to start, then select **Start**.  
The Task starts.
- 4) (Optional) Click the History branch to view the progress of the Task.  
To view the Task, verify that **Tools > Show Executed Tasks Show** is enabled in the History branch.

#### Related tasks

[Schedule Tasks](#) on page 1305

[Stop running Tasks](#) on page 1308

#### Related reference

[Task types](#) on page 1298

# Pause the scheduled execution of Tasks

If you want to temporarily stop a Scheduled Task from running at the scheduled time, you can suspend the Scheduled Task.

When a Scheduled Task is suspended, the schedule remains under the Task Definition, but the Task does not run at the scheduled time.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Select **Tasks > Definition**.  
The Task Definitions list opens.
- 3) Expand the Task Definition you want to suspend.  
The schedule information for the Task is displayed below the Task Definition.
- 4) Right-click the schedule information, then select **Suspend**.  
The Task is suspended.
- 5) To restart a suspended Task, right-click the schedule information, then select **Continue**.  
The Task resumes and runs at the next scheduled time.

## Remove Tasks from schedules

You can remove Tasks from the schedule by moving the schedule information (Task Schedule) from the Task Definition to the Trash.

Moving the schedule information to the Trash does not delete the Task Definition: the same Task can be scheduled again.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Select **Tasks > Definition**.  
The Task Definitions list opens.
- 3) Expand the Task you want to remove from the schedule.  
The schedule information for the Task is displayed below the Task Definition.
- 4) Right-click the schedule information, then select **Delete**.  
The schedules of default System Tasks cannot be deleted.  
A confirmation dialog box opens.


- 5) To confirm that you want to move the selected Task Schedule to the Trash, click **Yes**.  
The Task Schedule is removed from the Scheduled Tasks list.

## Stop running Tasks

---

Abort a Task that is no longer needed.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Select **Tasks > History**.
- 3) Right-click the Task you want to abort, then select **Abort**.  
A confirmation dialog box opens.
- 4) To stop the running Task, click **Yes**.

# Managing licenses

## Contents

- [Getting Started with licenses](#) on page 1309
- [Generate licenses](#) on page 1312
- [Upgrading licenses manually](#) on page 1313

All SMC components must be licensed as a proof of purchase. In addition, some additional features can be activated by installing a feature license.

## Getting Started with licenses

Licenses prove that your organization has legally purchased the SMC components you configure. You can upgrade them to new supported versions as part of each component's support and maintenance contract.

Licenses are issued when you purchase a product. They are generated at <https://stonesoftlicenses.forcepoint.com> and installed in the SMC as files. Licenses are shown as elements in the **Administration Configuration** view.

### Related concepts

[Getting started with automatic updates and upgrades](#) on page 1269

## When do I have to generate new licenses?

Generally, you must generate and install a license for each engine and each SMC server to start using the component. However, there are some exceptions.

- All Management Servers in the same SMC share a single license. A high availability environment has multiple Management Servers.
- All currently available Forcepoint NGFW appliance models can fetch a license automatically through the Management Server if automatic updates are enabled. If automatic licensing fails, the appliances have a 30-day temporary initial license to allow time for manual licensing.
- Forcepoint NGFW Engines deployed in the AWS cloud with the Bring Your Own License image must have a license in the SMC. Forcepoint NGFW Engines deployed in the AWS cloud with the Hourly (pay as you go) license image do not require a separate license in the SMC.
- Some optional features are activated by purchasing and installing a feature-specific license.

## When do I have to upgrade licenses?

Components do not run without a valid license. Always make sure that you have an updated license before you make any change that is not supported by the current license.

Licenses must be updated for new software versions and if the binding detail in the license changes:

- Software upgrades — No action is required if automatic license upgrades have been enabled on the Management Server. In an environment with multiple Management Servers, no action is required if the automatic license upgrade feature has been enabled on the active Management Server that controls the Shared Domain. Otherwise, upgrade the licenses manually. License upgrades are available shortly before a new version is released.
- Changes in license binding — Change licenses manually if:
  - You change a control IP address used for license binding in a static IP-address-bound license.
  - You move a dynamic Management Server POL-bound license to a different Management Server.

If you have IP-address-bound licenses for engine components, you must switch the license to a Management Server POL-bound license if you change the engine's control IP address.


Each license indicates the maximum version for which the license is valid, but the license is also valid for all previous software versions. You must update the license if you upgrade a component to a new major release indicated by a change in the first two digits of the version number (for example, an upgrade from 1.2.3 to 1.3.0 or an upgrade from 1.2.3 to 2.0.0). If only the last number changes, the existing license is valid also for the later software version.

Appliance licenses do not allow upgrading an appliance beyond the last supported software version on which the appliance can run. See Knowledge Base article [9743](#) to check which appliance models have a last supported software version. With third-party hardware, be careful not to upgrade the software to a version that exceeds the hardware's capabilities.

## What do the different license types mean?

Licenses can be bound to a component in three different ways. The possible binding methods depend on the licensed component and the software version.

**Table 158: License binding methods**

License binding	Description
IP address binding	<p>The license is statically bound to the IP address of the licensed component.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note:</b> Starting from SMC version 5.0, only licenses for SMC servers can be bound to an IP address. Existing IP-address-bound licenses for other components continue to work and can be upgraded. Any new licenses for other components must be bound to the Management Server's proof-of-license (POL) code.</p> </div>
Management Server proof-of-license (POL) code binding	<p>Licenses are dynamically bound to the Management Server's proof-of-license (POL) code. You must manually bind Management Server POL-bound licenses to the correct element. Licenses are valid only for components that are managed by the Management Server that has the same POL code.</p>

License binding	Description
Appliance proof-of-serial (POS) code binding	The license is bound to the unique POS code of a pre-installed Forcepoint NGFW appliance. The appliance identifies itself when contacting the Management Server. The Management Server allows the use of the appliance if the license POS code matches the reported code. The Management Server automatically binds the correct license to the engine element based on the POS code. For Management Server and pre-installed appliances with engine version 5.0 and later, the Management Server can use this licensing method automatically with new appliances.

The license types that are available depend on the SMC component.

**Table 159: Possible license types for SMC components**

License binding	Description
Management Servers	Always a static IP-address-bound license.
Log Servers	A static IP-address-bound license or a dynamic license bound to the Management Server's POL code
Web Portal Servers	Servers before version 5.0 can use only a static IP-address-bound license.
Pre-installed Forcepoint NGFW appliances	A license bound to the POS code of the appliance (all current models) or a dynamic license bound to the Management Server's POL code (older models)
Engines installed on your own hardware	Always a dynamic license bound to the Management Server's POL code
Engines installed on a virtualization platform	Always a dynamic license bound to the Management Server's POL code
Feature-specific licenses	A dynamic license bound to the Management Server's POL code or a license bound to the POS code of the appliance depending on the feature

## Management Server license limits

Some Management Server licenses impose a restriction on the number of managed or monitored elements.

If your Management Server license allows an unlimited number of managed components, this restriction does not apply to you. To check this information, see the properties of the Management Server's License.

Each engine is counted as one managed unit in the limitation, with some exceptions:

- Any number of clustered engines counts as a single managed unit, regardless of the number of engines in the cluster. (One cluster equals one managed unit.)
- Third-party components that are monitored through the SMC count as one-fifth of a unit. (Five components equal one managed unit.)
- Virtual NGFW Engines are not counted against the license limit.

You cannot combine licenses in the SMC. For example, two Management Server licenses that each contain a restriction for five managed components only allow you to manage five components even if you bind both licenses to a single Management Server.

Check the appliance data sheets at <https://www.forcepoint.com/resources/datasheets/next-generation-firewall> to see the Management Count for your appliance.

# Master NGFW Engine license limits

Master NGFW Engines use the same NGFW Engine licenses as other engines. The NGFW Engine licenses enable the Virtual NGFW Engine features.

Virtual NGFW Engines do not require their own licenses. However, the NGFW Engine license limits the number of Virtual Resources that can be created. The limit for the number of Virtual Resources limits how many Virtual NGFW Engines can be created. You can optionally increase the allowed number of Virtual Resources by purchasing and installing a feature-specific license.

## Generate licenses

Generally, each SMC component must have a separate license. Some additional features might also require a separate license.



**Note:** Forcepoint NGFW Engines deployed in the AWS with Hourly (pay as you go) licenses do not require a separate license in the SMC.

Licenses always indicate the newest software version that you are entitled to, but they are valid for licensing any older software versions as well.



**Note:** Your SMC might be able to automatically generate licenses for new Forcepoint NGFW appliances. For automatic licensing to work, install a license for the SMC components and make sure that automatic updates are enabled on the Management Server. The temporary initial license is automatically replaced with a permanent POS-bound license after the policy is first installed on the appliance.

### Steps

- 1) Go to <https://stonesoftlicenses.forcepoint.com>.
- 2) In the **License Identification** field, enter the POL or POS code, as follows.
  - Proof-of-license (POL) code — Identifies the license. For previously licensed components, the POL code is shown in the Licenses tree in the **Administration Configuration** view.
  - Proof-of-serial (POS) number — The Forcepoint NGFW appliances additionally have a proof-of-serial number that you can find on a label attached to the appliance hardware.
- 3) Click **Submit**.
- 4) Check which components are listed as included in this license, then click **Register**.
- 5) Read the instructions on the page, then fill in the required fields for all included components.
- 6) Enter the details that bind each license to a component, as follows:
  - **Management Server(s)** — Enter the IP address you plan to use on the server. If your license allows several Management Servers in the same SMC (for high availability), enter a comma-separated list of the IP addresses of all Management Servers.
  - **Other SMC servers** — Enter the Management Server's POL code or the IP address you plan to use on the server.



- **Master NGFW Engines** — Enter the POS code of a Forcepoint NGFW appliance (see the label attached to the appliance).
- **NGFW Engines** — For Forcepoint NGFW appliances, enter the POS code of the appliance (see the label attached to the appliance). For Forcepoint NGFW software installed on your own hardware or on a virtualization platform, enter the POL code of the Management Server that you use to manage the engine.



**Note:** POS binding is always recommended when the option is available.



**Note:** If the binding information is incorrect, the license is unusable. If you accidentally generated a license with the wrong binding information, request a license change through the License Center.

7) Click **Submit Request**.

The license file is sent to you and is also available for download at the License Center.

## Upgrading licenses manually

Licenses are valid for any older software versions in addition to the version indicated on the license. You can upgrade the licenses at any time without affecting the system's operation.



**Note:** IP-address-bound licenses have been previously available for Firewalls and IPS engines. You can use and update a previously generated IP-address-bound engine license, but you must switch the license binding to the Management Server's POL code if the engine's control IP address changes.

You can view, change, and download your current licenses at <https://stonesoftlicenses.forcepoint.com> by logging on with your personal account (to view all licenses linked to that account) or by entering a proof-of-license (POL) or proof-of-serial (POS) code (to view information related to a particular license).

If automatic license upgrades have been enabled in the Management Server properties, your licenses are kept up to date automatically. Otherwise, you can upgrade licenses manually in the following ways:

- When you log on to the online License Center, you can upgrade the license for the displayed components through the link provided. Save the license as a file that you can install in the SMC.
- You can export information about licenses through the Management Client and use the resulting text file to upgrade the licenses.

### Related tasks

[Upgrade licenses manually](#) on page 1313

## Upgrade licenses manually

If you have not enabled automatic license upgrades in the Management Server properties, upgrade licenses manually through the Management Client.

Licenses are valid for any older software versions in addition to the version indicated on the license. You can upgrade the licenses at any time without affecting the system's operation.



**Note:** IP-address-bound licenses have been previously available for Firewalls and IPS engines. You can use and update a previously generated IP-address-bound engine license, but you must change the license binding to the Management Server's POL code if the engine's control IP address changes.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Select **Licenses**, then browse to the type of licenses that you want to upgrade.
- 3) Select the license that you want to upgrade.  
Details about the selected license open in the **Info** pane.
- 4) In the **Info** pane, copy the license information to the clipboard in one of the following ways:
  - From the **Proof of License** field, copy the POL code.
  - From the **Proof of Serial** field, copy the POS code.
- 5) Go to <https://stonesoftlicenses.forcepoint.com>.
- 6) In the **License Identification** field, paste the POL or POS code, then click **Submit**.
- 7) Under the license information, click **Update**.
- 8) Enter any information needed for the upgrade request, then select the license files to update.
- 9) To send the license request, click **Submit**.  
A confirmation page opens, showing the details of your request. The licenses are available for download on the license page.

## Changing license binding details

License binding details must be updated manually for licenses that are bound to IP addresses or POL codes.

Licenses that are bound to an IP address must be changed if the IP address of the component changes.

Licenses that are bound to the POL code of the Management Server must be changed if:

- you want to transfer the licenses to a different Management Server.
- if you replace the Management Server's license with a license that has a different POL code.



**Note:** Starting from SMC version 5.0, only licenses for SMC servers can be bound to an IP address. If you have IP-address-bound licenses for engine components, you must switch to a Management Server POL-bound license if you change the engine's control IP address.

Forcepoint NGFW appliances use POS-based licenses. The licenses are bound to the serial number of the appliance hardware and are automatically bound to the correct element.

You must change IP address binding and POL-based binding manually. To view, change, and download your current licenses at <https://stonesoftlicenses.forcepoint.com>, log on with your personal account (for all licenses

that your account is authorized to view). Alternatively, you can enter a POL or POS code (to view information related to a particular license).



**Note:** If automatic license updates have been enabled in the Management Server properties, changed licenses are automatically downloaded and bound to the correct element as long as the license's identification code remains the same.


## Install licenses for unlicensed components



All components must have a valid license. You must install licenses for any unlicensed components.

If you have configured Domains, licenses can be viewed only in the Shared Domain. When the license is bound to an element (automatically or manually), the license is shown only in the Shared Domain, regardless of the Domain to which the element belongs. Licenses that are not allocated to any Domain can be manually allocated to a particular Domain through their right-click menu.



**CAUTION:** If you use Management Server POL code-based licenses for Forcepoint NGFW appliances, verify that the licenses are bound to the correct engine elements. Remember to change the license if you change the appliance hardware.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Menu** > **System Tools** > **Install Licenses**.
- 2) Select one or more license files, then click **Install**.  
The licenses are installed. Most types of licenses are also automatically bound to the correct components.
- 3) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 4) Expand the **Licenses** branch, then browse to the types of licenses you installed.
- 5) If you installed a dynamic engine license (bound to the Management Server's POL code), right-click the newly installed license, then select **Bind** to select the correct engine.  
If the license is bound to an incorrect element, right-click the license, then select **Unbind**.



**CAUTION:** The license is permanently bound to the engine and cannot be bound to another engine after you install or refresh the policy on the engine. Permanently bound licenses cannot be rebound unless you relicense or delete the engine element that the license is bound to. When unbound, a permanently bound license is shown as **Retained**.

- 6) Check that components are now licensed as intended.
  - The list of Unlicensed Components might show engines that have a license bound to the POS code of an appliance. The reason for this is that POS-bound licenses are bound to the correct engines automatically when the engine is installed and makes initial contact with the Management Server. The engine is moved to the correct type of Licenses branch after initial contact with the Management Server.
  - Engine licenses are applied when you upload or refresh the policy on the engines.
  - If any engines are not correctly licensed, you might need to upgrade or generate the licenses again.

**Related tasks**

[Check validity and status of licenses](#) on page 1318

[Check that all components are licensed](#) on page 1317

## Replace licenses of previously licensed components


All components must have a valid license. You must replace any invalid or missing licenses with new ones.



If you have configured administrative Domains, licenses can be viewed only in the Shared Domain. When the license is bound to an element (automatically or manually), the license is shown only in the Shared Domain, regardless of the Domain to which the element belongs. Licenses that are not allocated to any Domain can be manually allocated to a particular Domain through their right-click menu.



**CAUTION:** If you use Management Server POL code-based licenses for Forcepoint NGFW appliances, verify that the licenses are bound to the correct engine elements. Remember to change the license if you change the appliance hardware.

Invalid or missing licenses can prevent components from working. If you are manually replacing working licenses with new ones, we recommend that you take a backup of the Management Server before you make changes. Then you can easily roll back the changes, if needed.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Select  **Menu** > **System Tools** > **Install Licenses**.
- 3) Select one or more license files, then click **Install**.
  - If the licenses only upgrade the software version in a previously installed license (the license identifier does not change), the previous license is replaced with the new one automatically. No further action is needed.
  - An IP-address-bound license is automatically bound to the component with the correct IP address.
  - A POS-bound license is automatically bound to the appliance with the correct POS code.



**Note:** If you bind an IP-address-bound license or a POS-bound license to a component that already has a Management Server POL-bound license, the component has two licenses. Replace the Management Server POL-bound license as instructed in the next step.

The licenses are installed.

- 4) To replace a Management Server POL-bound license with an IP-address-bound license or a POS-bound license, follow these steps.
  - a) Expand the **Licenses** branch, then browse to the correct type of license.

- b) Right-click the Management Server POL-bound license that is bound to the element, then select **Replace by Static License**.
  - c) Select the license to bind to the engine.
- 5) To replace a Management Server POL-bound license that is not bound to the Management Server with a Management Server POL-bound license that is bound to the Management Server, follow these steps.
  - a) Expand the **Licenses** branch, then browse to the correct type of license.
  - b) If there is a previous Management Server POL-bound license bound to the element, right-click the old license, then select **Unbind**.
  - c) Right-click the new license, then select **Bind**.
  - d) Select the engine to bind to the license.
- 6) Check the displayed license information and verify that all components you meant to license have the correct new license.
- 7) Right-click any old licenses that might still be displayed, then select **Delete**.
- 8) Refresh or install the policy to transfer the license changes to the engine.



**CAUTION:** After you install or refresh the policy on the engine, the license is permanently bound to the engine and cannot be bound to any other engine. Permanently bound licenses cannot be rebound unless you relicense or delete the engine element that the license is currently bound to. When unbound, a permanently bound license is shown as **Retained**.


#### Related tasks


[Back up system configurations](#) on page 1275

[Check validity and status of licenses](#) on page 1318

## Check that all components are licensed

Each SMC Server, NGFW Engine, and Master NGFW Engine must have its own license. There is no difference between licenses for nodes in a cluster and licenses for single engines.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Select **Licenses > Unlicensed Components > All**.  
This view displays all elements that require a license, but do not currently have a valid license.
- 3) If any components are shown as unlicensed, check the following:

- Engine licenses generated based on a Forcepoint NGFW appliance POS code are bound when the engine makes initial contact with the Management Server. It is normal to see the corresponding elements as unlicensed until initial contact is made.
  - If you have already generated and installed licenses, check that the binding details are correct (POS code, POL code, or IP address).
- 4) If needed, generate and install new licenses for the components listed.

#### Related tasks


[Generate licenses](#) on page 1312


## Check validity and status of licenses

You can check license validity and binding information in the Management Client.

The view displays each license and the component it is bound to, with the newest software version that the license allows you to install. Licenses are valid for all minor releases within the displayed major version (for example, a 5.1 license allows installing 5.1.0, 5.1.1, and 5.1.2) and for any previous software version.

It is not possible to create new IP-address-bound licenses for engine components. Previously created IP-address-bound engine licenses can be upgraded to new versions. However, if a license is changed in any other way, the binding must also be changed.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Select **Licenses** > **All Licenses**.

#### Related tasks

[Troubleshoot licenses that are shown as retained](#) on page 1369

# Upgrading the SMC

## Contents

- [Getting started with upgrading the SMC](#) on page 1319
- [Upgrading the SMC configuration overview](#) on page 1320
- [Obtain SMC installation files](#) on page 1321
- [Upgrade SMC servers](#) on page 1322
- [Default SMC installation directories](#) on page 1323

You can upgrade the Management Servers, Management Clients, Log Servers, and Web Portal Servers in your SMC.

## Getting started with upgrading the SMC

Upgrading the SMC updates the system software version, activates the newest dynamic update package, and can include changes to elements. Backing up the system before an upgrade is recommended.

### What SMC upgrades do

In addition to updating the SMC software, the upgrade makes other changes in your SMC:

- New system elements and policies can be added and obsolete system elements can be removed. Elements that are used are not deleted, but instead converted from system elements to regular elements when they have no default role anymore.
- Any element can be updated with new types of options (related to new or changed features), and occasionally obsolete options can be removed or changed.
- A new dynamic update package is activated, unless you have already installed the same or a newer update package before the installation. The previous installation can be the cause of some, but not necessarily all, of the preceding changes listed.
- The Management Client's online Help can be updated with new or corrected information.

A summary of changes to elements is created during each upgrade; a link to these HTML reports is displayed when the Management Server upgrade is finished.

### Limitations

All SMC components (Management Server, Management Client, Log Server, and the optional Web Portal Server) must have the same software version. All other components try to connect to the Management Server when they start. They do not start if their software version does not match with the Management Server software version. If you have multiple Management Servers or Log Servers, you must upgrade each server separately so that they have the same software version.

## What do I need to know before I begin?

Although the need to do so is unlikely, the upgrade can be easily reversed if you take the correct precautions. If the SMC upgrade fails, you can automatically revert to the previous installation if you select the option in the installer before the upgrade starts. In any case, we recommend that you take a backup of the Management Server using the SMC's internal backup tool before you upgrade.

The backup contains all necessary information to restore the configurations (including the engine configurations). The backup does not contain software version or operating system specific information. It can always be restored from an older version of the SMC to a newer version of the SMC if a direct upgrade is supported between the software versions involved.

The SMC is offline during the upgrade. The engines continue to operate normally and store their generated log data in their local spool while the Management Servers and Log Servers are offline. Once connectivity is restored, the spooled log data is transferred from the engines to the Log Servers.

To check which version of the SMC you are currently using, select **Menu > Help > About** in the Management Client. Also, the Management Client's version is displayed in the Management Client's logon dialog box.

### Related tasks

[Back up system configurations](#) on page 1275

# Upgrading the SMC configuration overview

All SMC components must be upgraded at the same time. Before upgrading, make sure that SMC licenses are up to date.

Follow these general steps to upgrade the SMC:

- 1) Prepare the installation files.
- 2) (If automatic license updates have been disabled) Update the licenses.
- 3) Upgrade all components that work as parts of the same SMC.
- 4) (Multiple Management Servers only) Synchronize the management database between the Management Servers.
- 5) If you distribute Web Start Management Clients from some external server (instead of the Management Server), update the Web Start distribution.

### Related concepts

[Upgrading licenses manually](#) on page 1313



**Related tasks**

[Distribute Web Start from external servers](#) on page 415

[Synchronize databases between active Management Server and additional Management Servers](#) on page 439

[Obtain SMC installation files](#) on page 1321

[Upgrade SMC servers](#) on page 1322


## Obtain SMC installation files

Before running the installer, you must download the correct installation file from the download page and make sure that the checksums are correct.

You can check the installation file integrity using the file checksums. The checksums are on the installation DVD and in the release notes.

Windows does not have checksum programs by default, but there are several third-party programs available.

We provide only recent versions of the software for download. We recommend that you store the upgrade files yourself to make sure you can install the exact same version later (for example, if there is a hardware failure). This is recommended especially if your organization's policies mandate lengthy testing periods that limit the speed of adopting new versions.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Download the installation file from <https://support.forcepoint.com/Downloads>.  
Separate .zip packages are available for downloading installation files for all supported platforms or just one supported platform.
- 2) Change to the directory that contains the files to be checked.
- 3) Generate a checksum of the file using one of the following commands, where `filename` is the name of the installation file:
  - `sha1sum filename`
  - `sha256sum filename`
  - `sha512sum filename`

Example:

```
sha1sum smc_1.0.1.1000.zip
79785edab5d2a1191a3065510756f72883952455 smc_1.0.1.1000.zip
```

- 4) Compare the displayed output to the checksum on the website.



**CAUTION:** Do not use files that have invalid checksums. If downloading the files again does not help, contact [Forcepoint support](#) to resolve the issue.

- 5) Unzip all folders and files in the archive to the server you want to upgrade.

# Upgrade SMC servers

You can upgrade SMC servers without uninstalling the previous version. A change in the Management platform, such as a new operating system or different hardware, requires reinstalling the SMC.



**CAUTION:** All SMC components (Management Server, Management Client, Log Server, and the optional Web Portal Server) must use the same SMC software version to work together. If you have multiple Management Servers or Log Servers, you must upgrade each server separately.

The same installer works with all SMC components, including locally installed Management Clients.

If you have multiple Management Servers or Log Servers, you can upgrade them in any order. Management Servers are automatically isolated from database replication during the upgrade. There is no need to explicitly isolate the Management Servers before upgrading.

If you are upgrading from a very old version of the SMC, you might have to upgrade to an intermediate version first before upgrading to the latest version. See the [Release Notes](#).

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Start the installation in one of the following ways:
  - **From a .zip file** — Unzip the file, then run setup.exe on Windows or setup.sh on Linux.
  - **From a DVD** — Insert the installation DVD, then run the setup executable from the DVD.

Operating system	Path to executable
Windows 64-bit	\Forcepoint_SMC_Installer\Windows-x64\setup.exe
Linux 32-bit	/Forcepoint_SMC_Installer/Linux/setup.sh
Linux 64-bit	/Forcepoint_SMC_Installer/Linux-x64/setup.sh



**Note:** If the DVD is not automatically mounted in Linux, mount the DVD with “mount /dev/cdrom /mnt/cdrom”.

- 2) To continue with the installation, read and accept the License Agreement. The Installation Wizard automatically detects the previous installation directory.
- 3) To accept the installation directory, click **Next**. The Installation Wizard displays the components to be upgraded.
- 4) (Management Server only, optional) To save a copy of the current installation that you can revert to at any time after the upgrade, select **Save Current Installation**.
- 5) Click **Next**.
- 6) (Management Server only) Select whether to back up the server, then click **Next**:
  - To create a backup that can be used and viewed without a password, select **Yes**.
  - To create a password-protected backup, select **Yes, encrypt the backup**. You are prompted for the password as you confirm the selection.

- If you already have a recent backup of the Management Server, select **No**.
- 7) Check the preinstallation summary, then click **Install**.  
The upgrade begins.
  - 8) (Optional) When the upgrade is complete, click the links in the notification to view the reports of changes the installer has made.  
The report opens in your web browser.
  - 9) To close the installer, click **Done**.
  - 10) Upgrade any SMC components that run on other computers (for example, additional Management Servers or Log Servers) in the same way.
  - 11) (Multiple Management Servers only) Synchronize the management database between the Management Servers.

#### Related tasks

[Change the Management Server or Log Server platform](#) on page 449

[Synchronize databases between active Management Server and additional Management Servers](#) on page 439

## Default SMC installation directories

The location of the SMC installation directory depends on the operating system.

Default SMC installation directories:

- Default installation directory on Windows — C:\Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center



**Note:** If you installed the Management Server in the C:\Program Files\Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center directory in Windows, some program data might be stored in the C:\ProgramData\Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center directory.

- Default installation directory on Linux — /usr/local/forcepoint/smc

Under the installation directory, note especially the following folders:

- /backups/ — Stores Management Server (sgm\_) and Log Server (sgl\_) backups. The backups must be in this directory to be listed in the Management Client and when running scripts without specifying a backup file.
- /bin/ — Contains the SMC command-line tools as well as some additional scripts that are used by the Installation Wizard.

#### Related reference

[Security Management Center commands](#) on page 1411



# Upgrading the engines

### Contents

- [Getting started with upgrading NGFW Engines](#) on page 1325
- [Upgrading the engines configuration overview](#) on page 1326
- [Obtain and import NGFW Engine upgrade files](#) on page 1327
- [Upgrade engines remotely](#) on page 1328

You can upgrade Firewalls, IPS engines, Layer 2 Firewalls, and Master NGFW Engines.

## Getting started with upgrading NGFW Engines

You can remotely upgrade engines using the Management Client or locally on the engine command line.

Remote upgrade is recommended in most cases. See the *Forcepoint Next Generation Firewall Installation Guide* for detailed instructions if you want to upgrade engines locally.

### How engine upgrades work

The upgrade package is imported to the Management Server manually or automatically. Before the import, the Management Server verifies the digital signature of the upgrade package using a valid Trusted Update Certificate. The signature must be valid for the import to succeed. Verification failure can result from an out-of-date SMC version, in which case the SMC must be upgraded, or an invalid or missing signature, in which case the administrator must obtain an official upgrade package.

After the upgrade package has been imported, you can apply it to selected engines through the Management Client. Before the upgrade is installed on the engines, the Management Server again verifies the digital signature of the upgrade package.

The engines have two alternative partitions for the software. When you install a new software version, it is installed on the inactive partition and the current version is preserved. This allows rollback to the previous version in case the installation is interrupted or other problems arise. If the engine is not able to return to operation after the upgrade, it automatically switches back to the previous software version at the next restart. You can also switch the active partition manually.

You can upload and activate the new software separately. For example, you can upload the upgrade during office hours but activate it during a service window.

The currently installed working configuration (routing, policies) is stored separately and is not changed in an upgrade or a rollback. Although parts of the configuration can be version-specific (for example, if system communications ports are changed), the new software version can use the existing configuration. Possible version-specific adjustments are made when you refresh the policy after the upgrade.

## Limitations

It is not possible to upgrade between a 32-bit version and a 64-bit version of the software. If you are running the software on third-party hardware, you can reinstall the software using the other version. In clusters, 32-bit and 64-bit nodes cannot be online simultaneously. Appliances support only the software architecture version that they are pre-installed with.

You cannot upgrade Virtual NGFW Engines directly. To upgrade Virtual NGFW Engines, you must upgrade the Master NGFW Engine that hosts the Virtual NGFW Engines.

## What do I need to know before I begin?

The SMC must be up to date before you upgrade the engines. An old SMC version might not be able to recognize the new version engines and can generate an invalid configuration for them. The Management Server can control several older versions of engines. See the [Release Notes](#) for version-specific compatibility information.

During a cluster upgrade, it is possible to have the upgraded nodes online and operational side by side with the older version nodes. This way, you can upgrade the nodes one by one while the other nodes handle the traffic. However, you must upgrade all nodes to the same version as soon as possible, as prolonged use with mismatched versions is not supported.

The current engine version is displayed on the **General** tab in the **Info** pane when you select the engine. If the **Info** pane is not shown, select **Menu > View > Info**.

Beginning from version 5.9, all Forcepoint Next Generation Firewall licenses include the anti-malware feature by default.

### Related concepts

[Configure anti-malware on engines](#) on page 666

# Upgrading the engines configuration overview

You can upgrade engines remotely using the Management Client.

Follow these general steps to upgrade engines:

- 1) (Manual download of engine upgrade files) Prepare the installation files.
- 2) (Manual license updates) Update the licenses.
- 3) Upgrade the engines.

### Related concepts

[Upgrading licenses manually](#) on page 1313

**Related tasks**[Manually update the anti-malware database on engines](#) on page 667[Upgrade engines remotely](#) on page 1328

# Obtain and import NGFW Engine upgrade files

If the Management Server is not set up to download engine upgrades automatically, download the installation files manually.

You must also check the installation file integrity using the file checksums. Windows does not have checksum programs by default, but there are several third-party programs available.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Go to <https://support.forcepoint.com>.
- 2) Enter your license code or log on using an existing user account.
- 3) Select **Downloads**.
- 4) Under **Network Security**, click the version of the Forcepoint NGFW software that you want to download, then download the .zip file installation file.
- 5) On your local computer, change to the directory that contains the files to be checked.
- 6) (Linux only) Generate a checksum of the file using one of the following commands, where `filename` is the name of the installation file:
  - `shasum filename`
  - `sha256sum filename`
  - `sha512sum filename`

For Windows, see the documentation for the third-party checksum program.

Example:

```
$ shasum sg_engine_1.0.0.1000.iso
869aec7dc39321aa2e0cfaf7fafdb8f sg_engine_1.0.0.1000.iso
```

- 7) Compare the displayed output to the checksum on the website.



**CAUTION:** Do not use files that have invalid checksums. If downloading the files again does not help, contact [Forcepoint support](#) to resolve the issue.

- 8) Log on to the Management Client, then select **Menu > File > Import > Import Engine Upgrades**.

- 9) Select the engine upgrade (sg\_engine\_version\_platform.zip file), then click **Import**.  
The import takes a while. You can see the related messages in the status bar at the bottom of the Management Client window.



**Note:** The Management Server verifies the digital signature of the .zip file before importing it. The signature must be valid for the import to succeed. If the verification fails, an error message is shown. Verification failure can result from an out-of-date SMC version or an invalid or missing signature.

### Related concepts

[Getting started with automatic updates and upgrades](#) on page 1269

## Upgrade engines remotely

The Management Server can remotely upgrade engine components that it manages.

### Before you begin

Read the [Release Notes](#) for the new version, especially the required SMC version and any other version-specific upgrade issues that might be listed. To access the release notes, select **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration > Other Elements > Engine Upgrades**. Select the type of engine you are upgrading. A link to the release notes is included in the upgrade file's information. If the Management Server has no Internet connectivity, you can find the release notes at <https://support.forcepoint.com/Documentation>.

You can upgrade several engines of the same type in the same operation. However, we recommend that you upgrade clusters one node at a time and wait until an upgraded node is back online before you upgrade the other nodes. Clusters operate normally throughout the upgrade when the upgrade is done in stages. However, it is recommended to upgrade all nodes in the cluster to the same version as soon as possible. Prolonged use with mismatched versions is not supported. It is not possible to have 32-bit and 64-bit engines online in the cluster at the same time.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Home**.
- 2) Browse to **Engines**, then expand the nodes of the engine that you want to upgrade.
- 3) Right-click the node you want to upgrade, then select **Commands > Go Offline**.
- 4) (Optional) Enter an **Audit Comment** to be shown in the audit log entry that is generated when you send the command to the engine.
- 5) Click **Yes**.  
The engine is turned offline shortly.



- 6) Right-click the node you want to upgrade, then select **Upgrade Software** or **Configuration > Upgrade Software** depending on your selection.



**Note:** You cannot upgrade Virtual NGFW Engines directly. To upgrade Virtual NGFW Engines, you must upgrade the Master NGFW Engine that hosts the Virtual NGFW Engines.

- 7) Select the type of **Operation** you want to perform:

- Select **Remote Upgrade (transfer + activate)** to install the new software and reboot the node with the new version of the software.
- Select **Remote Upgrade (transfer)** to install the new software on the node without an immediate reboot and activation. The node continues to operate with the currently installed version until you choose to activate the new version.
- Select **Remote Upgrade (activate)** to reboot the node and activate the new version of the software that was installed earlier.



**CAUTION:** To avoid an outage, do not activate the new configuration simultaneously on all nodes of a cluster. Activate the new configuration one node at a time, and proceed to the next node only after the previous node is back online.

- 8) If necessary, add or remove **Target** engines.

All engines in the same Upgrade Task must be of the same type.

- 9) Select the correct **Engine Upgrade** file, then click **OK**.

If you choose to activate the new configuration, you are prompted to acknowledge a warning that the node will be rebooted. A new tab opens showing the progress of the upgrade. The time the upgrade takes varies depending on the performance of your system and the network environment. The engine is automatically rebooted and brought back online.

The upgrade overwrites the inactive partition and then switches the active partition. To undo the upgrade, use the `sg-toggle-active` command or the engine's boot menu to switch back to the previous software version on the other partition. This switch can also happen automatically at the next reboot if the engine is not able to successfully return to operation when it boots up after the upgrade.



**Note:** The Management Server verifies the digital signature of the upgrade package before installing it. The signature must be valid for the upgrade to succeed. If the verification fails, an error message is shown. Verification failure can result from an out-of-date SMC version or an invalid or missing signature.

#### Related tasks

[Access the engine command line](#) on page 338

[Create Remote Upgrade Tasks](#) on page 1304

#### Related reference

[Forcepoint NGFW Engine commands](#) on page 1424



# Manual dynamic updates

### Contents

- [Getting started with manual dynamic updates](#) on page 1331
- [Dynamic update configuration overview](#) on page 1332
- [Import dynamic update packages](#) on page 1332
- [Activate dynamic update packages](#) on page 1333

Dynamic Update packages include changes and additions to the system Policies, Situations, and other elements of the SMC.

## Getting started with manual dynamic updates

---

It is important to keep the system policies and situations up to date so that newly discovered vulnerabilities can be detected. Changes and additions are provided in dynamic update packages.

Dynamic updates are available at <https://my.stonesoft.com/download.do>.

Dynamic update packages are imported to the Management Server manually or automatically. Before the import, the Management Server verifies the digital signature of the dynamic update package using a valid Trusted Update Certificate. The signature must be valid for the import to succeed. Verification failure can result from an out-of-date SMC version, in which case the SMC must be upgraded, or an invalid or missing signature, in which case the administrator must obtain an official dynamic update package.

### What dynamic updates do

---

Dynamic updates provide updates particularly to the deep inspection features on the NGFW Engines. For example, new threat patterns and changes in the system Templates and Policies are introduced in dynamic updates for up-to-date detection. They can also revise the default elements you use to configure the system.

### Limitations

---

Some limitations apply to installing dynamic updates:

- You might need to upgrade first before you can use a certain dynamic update package. For more information about the update packages, see the *Release Notes*.
- If there are several Domains defined in the SMC, manual dynamic updates can only be installed in the Shared Domain.

## What do I need to know before I begin?

As an alternative to downloading the updates manually as explained here, you can configure the dynamic updates to be downloaded and optionally activated automatically.

Malware database updates are always done automatically and directly by the engines. Updates are always active when the anti-malware feature is active.

### Related concepts

[Getting started with automatic updates and upgrades](#) on page 1269

[Configure anti-malware on engines](#) on page 666

## Dynamic update configuration overview

Download and activate dynamic update packages using the Management Client.

Follow these general steps to import and activate dynamic updates:

- 1) Download the latest dynamic update package and import it in the Management Client.
- 2) Activate the dynamic update package in the Management Client.


### Related tasks

[Import dynamic update packages](#) on page 1332

[Activate dynamic update packages](#) on page 1333

## Import dynamic update packages

Download the latest dynamic update package and import it in the Management Client.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Go to <https://my.stonesoft.com/download.do>.
- 2) Click **Forcepoint Dynamic Updates**.
- 3) Download the latest dynamic update package .jar file.  
For details about the dynamic update package, click **Release Notes** under the .jar file.
- 4) Save the update package file to a location accessible from the computer you use to run the Management Client.



**Note:** Make sure that the checksums for the original files and the files that you have downloaded match.

- 5) In the Management Client, select **Menu > File > Import > Import Update Packages**.
- 6) Browse to the file, select it, then click **Import**.  
The import takes some time, and the completion of the import is displayed in the status bar of the Management Client window.



**Note:** The Management Server verifies the digital signature of the dynamic update package before importing it. The signature must be valid for the import to succeed. If the verification fails, an error message is shown. Verification failure can result from an out-of-date SMC version or an invalid or missing signature.

## Activate dynamic update packages

To introduce the changes from an imported dynamic update package into your SMC, activate the dynamic update package in the Management Client.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Expand the **Other Elements** tree, then select **Updates**.  
A list of all imported and activated dynamic update packages opens.
- 3) Right-click the new dynamic update package, then select **Activate**.  
The **Management Server Backup** dialog box opens.
- 4) Unless you have a fresh installation, click **Yes**.  
After the backup is taken, the dynamic update package activation starts. The progress of the import and the items included are shown on a new tab. The included items are shown so that you can view them after the activation is complete.



**Note:** The Management Server verifies the digital signature of the dynamic update package before activating it. The signature must be valid for the activation to succeed. If the verification fails, an error message is shown. Verification failure can result from an out-of-date SMC version or an invalid or missing signature.

- 5) When the activation is finished, click **Close**.



# Managing SMC Appliance patches

## Contents

- [Getting started with SMC Appliance patches](#) on page 1335
- [Manage SMC Appliance patches](#) on page 1336
- [Roll back the SMC Appliance](#) on page 1338

The SMC Appliance has a specific patching process from the command line that keeps the SMC and hardware current.

## Getting started with SMC Appliance patches

---

SMC Appliance patches can include improvements and enhancements to the SMC software, the operating system, or the appliance hardware.

### How SMC Appliance patches work

---

The appliance maintenance and bug remediation (AMBR) patching utility allows you to load and install patches. The SMC Appliance patch (SAP) format is specific to the appliance and can contain changes for SMC Appliance OS, the hardware, or the SMC software. Patches are validated using a SHA hash and a 2048-bit key.

The SAP numbering is appended to the version number; for example, 6.2.0P01, 6.2.0P02, or 6.2.0P03.

After verifying the available patches, you must load them to the appliance before they can be installed. When the patch installation is initiated, the utility creates a configuration backup and a file system snapshot. The backup and snapshot are created to allow the system to revert if needed. The details of the patch indicate whether the appliance must restart as part of the installation.

If the patch installation fails, the appliance reverts to the snapshot automatically. Some patches, such as upgrades of the SMC software, update the alternate partition. With these patches, you can toggle between the partitions and restart.

### What do I need to know before I begin?

---

You must have superuser administrator permissions on the appliance. If elevated privilege is needed, you can use `sudo`. A list of available `sudo` commands can be found by running `sudo -l` on the command line.

## Limitations

These features apply to the SMC Appliance only; Management Servers installed on third-party platforms do not offer a patching and rollback feature that combines SMC, the hardware, and the operating system. Installed patches cannot be uninstalled.

## Patch process overview

All steps are done manually from the command line.

- 1) Check for available patches.
- 2) Load the patch.
- 3) Install the patch.

# Manage SMC Appliance patches

The SMC Appliance patch maintenance is managed from the command line. If you do not have physical access, use an SSH client to access the appliance remotely.

### Related tasks

[Configuring SSH access to the SMC Appliance](#) on page 137

### Related reference

[Security Management Center commands](#) on page 1411

## Check for available patches

Use the query command to see what patches are available for, loaded on, or installed on the SMC Appliance.



**Important:** A patch availability notification does not appear in the Management Client—you must check for them manually. We recommend checking for patches once a month.

### Steps

- 1) From the command line, log on to the appliance.
- 2) Run the query command.

```
sudo ambr-query
```

You can append the command with various options to customize the check.



- 3) Press **Enter**.

## Load appliance patches

---

Use the load command to add a patch to the SMC Appliance. These patches are not yet installed.

### Steps

- 1) From the command line, log on to the appliance.
- 2) Run the load command.

```
sudo ambr-load <patch>
```

- 3) Press **Enter**.

### Result

The patch is now loaded to the appliance. You can run the ambr-query command to verify that it has loaded.

## Install appliance patches

---

Use the install command to install a patch on the SMC Appliance.

When a patch is installed, a configuration backup and a file system snapshot are created before applying the patch.

### Steps

- 1) From the command line, log on to the appliance.
- 2) Run the install command.

```
sudo ambr-install <patch>
```

- 3) Press **Enter**.

### Result

The patch is now installed on the appliance.

## Unload appliance patches

---

Use the unload command to remove a patch that has been loaded but not installed on the SMC Appliance.



**Note:** To uninstall a patch that has been installed, do a rollback of the appliance to the previous state.

## Steps

- 1) From the command line, log on to the appliance.
- 2) Run the unload command.

```
sudo ambr-unload <patch>
```

- 3) Press **Enter**.

## Result

The patch is now removed from the appliance. To verify that it has been removed, run the `ambr-query` command.

# Roll back the SMC Appliance

After an upgrade, you can roll the SMC Appliance back to the previous version if needed.



**Note:** During a rollback, configuration changes made after the last version are lost. We recommend rolling back as a recovery option only for a short time after an upgrade.

## Steps

- 1) From the command line, log on to the appliance.
- 2) Run the rollback command.

```
sudo smca-system toggle
```

- 3) Press **Enter**.

## Result

The appliance restarts to the previous version.

# PART XIII

## Troubleshooting

### Contents

- [General troubleshooting tips](#) on page 1341
- [Troubleshooting accounts and passwords](#) on page 1343
- [Messages for troubleshooting](#) on page 1347
- [Troubleshooting certificates](#) on page 1357
- [Troubleshooting engine operation](#) on page 1365
- [Troubleshooting licenses](#) on page 1369
- [Troubleshooting logging](#) on page 1373
- [Troubleshooting the Management Client](#) on page 1377
- [Troubleshooting NAT](#) on page 1385
- [Troubleshooting policies](#) on page 1389
- [Troubleshooting reporting](#) on page 1397
- [Troubleshooting upgrades](#) on page 1401
- [Troubleshooting VPNs](#) on page 1403

Troubleshooting helps you resolve common problems in the Forcepoint NGFW and SMC.



# General troubleshooting tips

## Contents

- [If your problem is not listed](#) on page 1341
- [Tools for further troubleshooting](#) on page 1341

General troubleshooting tips help you troubleshoot situations that are not covered by more specific troubleshooting topics.

## If your problem is not listed

There are several possible causes and solutions for problems that are not listed in the troubleshooting topics.

When having problems with your system, first make sure that you have followed the relevant instructions.

Some problems you are having can be related to known issues, which you can view at:

<https://support.forcepoint.com>

If your organization is entitled to technical support, contact [Forcepoint support](#).

## Tools for further troubleshooting

Information in logs and alerts, and networking tools on engine can be useful for troubleshooting.

Logs and alerts provide useful information about what the components do and what is happening in your system. You can increase the detail level of logs on certain areas of operation. To gain useful information from the logs produced, you must be able to filter the logs efficiently.

There are Forcepoint NGFW-specific as well as standard networking tools available on the engines.

### Related concepts

[Benefits of filtering log entries](#) on page 242

[Considerations for working on the engine command line](#) on page 337

### Related tasks

[Enable or disable diagnostics on Firewalls](#) on page 330

### Related reference

[Forcepoint NGFW Engine commands](#) on page 1424



# Troubleshooting accounts and passwords

### Contents

- [Replace forgotten passwords](#) on page 1343
- [Troubleshoot user accounts](#) on page 1344
- [Create an emergency administrator account](#) on page 1344


There are several common problems and solutions related to accounts and passwords.

## Replace forgotten passwords

There are several ways to replace forgotten passwords depending on the type of account.

**Problem description:** You or someone else in your organization forgets one of the passwords related to the SMC.

**Solution:** You can regain access by changing the password. If none of the administrators can log on due to account issues, you can create an emergency administrator account. An administrator who has unrestricted permissions can change any password in the SMC. The password recovery procedures for the different passwords are as follows:

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Change Management Client logon passwords in the Administrator elements. Administrator elements can be found in the **Administration** branch of the **Configuration** view under **Access Rights > Administrators**.
- 2) Change Web Portal logon passwords in the Web Portal User elements. Web Portal elements can be found in the **Administration** branch of the **Configuration** view under **Access Rights > Web Portal Users**.
- 3) Change the Engine Root account password (for command-line access) by right-clicking the individual engine node and selecting **Commands > Change Password**.

If the engine is not connected to the Management Server (because, for example, it is a spare appliance), you can reset all the engine's settings. You can reset settings through a boot menu option in the local console accessible through a serial connection or through a directly connected monitor and keyboard.



**CAUTION:** Resetting the engine through the boot menu stops the engine from processing traffic since all configurations are cleared.

- 4) Change user passwords used for end-user authentication in the User element. User elements are stored in the **User Authentication** branch of the **Configuration** view under **Users** (if the user is stored in the internal LDAP database or an external LDAP database that the SMC is configured to use).

- 5) To change the Management Server Database password, select **Menu > System Tools > Password > Change Database Password**.

The default Management Server Database user account is *dba*, and the password is created automatically.

#### Related tasks

[Add administrator accounts](#) on page 351

[Create Web Portal User elements](#)

[Create an emergency administrator account](#) on page 1344

## Troubleshoot user accounts

Resolve problems when end-user passwords are not accepted for authentication.

**Problem description:** You add a User element (end user account for authentication) or change the password in a User element, but the new user account or new password are not accepted when the end user tries to authenticate. Previously created and unmodified user accounts work as expected. If you changed the password, the previous password is still accepted.

**Reason:** There might be a replication problem that prevents synchronizing the user database information from the Management Server to the local database on the Firewalls.

### Steps

- 1) Reset the user database by right-clicking an individual Firewall node (not the upper-level Single Firewall/Firewall Cluster element) and selecting **Commands > Reset User Database**. This action copies all user information from the Management Server to the engine.
- 2) Make sure **User DB Replication** (automatic user database replication) is active under **Options** in the right-click menu for the Single Firewall/Firewall Cluster (top-level) element.

## Create an emergency administrator account

If none of the administrators can log to the Management Client because of account-related issues, you can create an emergency administrator account.

### Steps

- 1) On the command line of the Management Server computer, stop the Management Server service.



- 2) Create an account with unrestricted permissions using the `sgCreateAdmin` script (located in the <installation directory>/bin folder).



**Note:**

If you installed the Management Server in the C:\Program Files\Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center directory in Windows, some of the program data might be stored in the C:\ProgramData\Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center directory.

Command-line scripts can be found in the C:\Program Files\Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center\bin directory.

## Result

You can now log on to the Management Client using this account, change passwords, and create new accounts normally.



# Messages for troubleshooting

### Contents

- [Alert log messages for troubleshooting](#) on page 1347
- [Log messages for troubleshooting](#) on page 1349
- [Error messages for troubleshooting](#) on page 1355

Some common alert and log messages that you might see in the Logs view are useful for troubleshooting.

## Alert log messages for troubleshooting

Alert log messages provide useful information for troubleshooting.

### Respond to Log spool filling alerts

The “Log spool filling” alert indicates that logs are not being transferred from the engine at all, or the engine is generating logs more quickly than they can be transferred to the Log Server.

Follow the instructions in the topics about troubleshooting log storage.

#### Related tasks

[Troubleshoot log storage](#) on page 1374

### Respond to alerts about inoperative NGFW Engines

The Inoperative NGFW Engines alert is triggered when the Management Server does not receive the expected status updates from an NGFW Engine. The Status Surveillance option must also be selected for the engine.

If you see these alerts, one of the problems listed here might exist or might have existed temporarily:

- The connection between the engine and the Management Server might have been lost due to network connectivity problems or due to a technical issue on the Management Server. Problems that affect only management communications do not interfere with the operation of the engines - the engines continue processing traffic.
- The engine might be experiencing technical problems.

A console connection to the affected engine is recommended, if possible, when you suspect that the engine might not be operating properly. Connecting to the engine allows you to see any possible error messages printed out to the console before you take corrective actions, such as rebooting the node.

## Steps

- 1) Check if the status of the engine or the system connections (shown in the info view when the engine is selected) still shows problems.
- 2) Check if there is a steady log stream from the affected engine. Also check if there are any further alerts or logs from the engine that could explain the reason for the message.
- 3) Check if the engine is actually processing traffic normally even if the Management Server is not able to monitor the engine and show the log stream.
- 4) If you suspect technical problems on the engine, run the `sginfo` script on the engine before rebooting it (if possible) and contact [Forcepoint support](#).

### Related reference

[Security Management Center commands](#) on page 1411

## Respond to System Alerts

“System Alert” is a general category for alert messages that are generated because something in the operation of the SMC components or NGFW Engines requires your attention.

### Steps

- 1) Select the alert entry in the Logs view and click **Details** in the toolbar to view the alert entry information.

## Respond to Tester alerts

Tester alerts indicate that the automatic tester running on the engines has detected a failure in one of the tests that the tester is configured to run.

The Tester is configured to run some tests by default. You can add more tests in the Engine Editor for each engine.

### Steps

- 1) Make sure the condition that caused the test to fail is resolved.

### Related concepts

[Getting started with the engine tester](#) on page 639

# Respond to throughput-based license exceeded alerts

Throughput-based license exceeded alerts are triggered traffic exceeds the throughput limits allowed by your license.

Some licenses limit the throughput of the engine to a certain fixed value. If the throughput limit is reached at any particular moment, the exceeding traffic is dropped and an alert is created to notify you how many packets have been dropped. The throughput limit is counted as the total throughput of all traffic handled by the engine at any one moment. All traffic is taken into consideration, regardless of type, direction, or the links used. Usually, temporary spikes in traffic trigger the messages, and the messages do not cause major problems. If you see these messages often, you should take action.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Make sure that your appliance licenses are matched to the correct elements according to the type of appliance. If the license generated with the POS code of a lower-throughput appliance is applied to a higher-throughput appliance, the throughput is needlessly limited.
- 2) If the hardware can handle a higher throughput than what it is licensed for, you can switch to a higher-throughput license (contact your reseller).
- 3) If the license throughput corresponds to the maximum throughput achievable with your hardware, you might be able to install an additional cluster node. Alternatively, you can switch to hardware with a higher maximum throughput (contact your reseller).
- 4) You can restrict the traffic in a more controlled way, for example, using the traffic management features of a Firewall. See *Getting Started with QoS* for more information.

## Related concepts

[Quality of Service \(QoS\) and how it works](#) on page 947

# Log messages for troubleshooting

Log messages provide useful information for troubleshooting.

## Respond to Connection closed abnormally log messages

Logs might contain the message “connection closed abnormally” if the connection closing does not occur in the expected order of a normal TCP connection.

Connection closed by client/by server or connection reset by client/by server messages in logs inform you about an event that the Firewall has detected in the network. Connection closing is an expected event at the end of

each standard TCP connection. The logging settings in the Access rules determine whether connection closing is logged. Frequent abnormal connection closing or resets might indicate problems in the network, such as an overloaded server.

## Steps

- 1) If connection problems affect services, perform standard network troubleshooting steps along the whole communication path.

### Related concepts

[Traffic captures and how they work](#) on page 207

## Respond to Connection removed during connection setup log messages

The “Connection removed during connection setup” message in logs notifies you that a connection was abnormally cut during the TCP connection setup phase because of an RST (reset) sent by one of the communicating parties.

## Steps

- 1) Check why the connection is torn down, for example, if the server is overloaded or if the service is down or using a non-standard port.

## Respond to Connection state might be too large log messages

Logs that contain “connection state might be too large” messages indicate problems with synchronizing state information between nodes in a Firewall Cluster.

**Problem description:** You see “error when serializing for state sync” messages with a “connection state might be too large” clarification log entries for a Firewall Cluster. You might also experience intermittent or continuous problems with clustering and traffic flow, which are typically alleviated for some time by rebooting all clustered nodes.

**Reason:** The Firewall keeps a record of all connections that are handled statefully to be able to track the connection. When the Firewall is clustered, this connection table must be synchronized between the nodes to allow connections to continue if a node goes down. When the state table grows excessively large, the Firewall engines can no longer effectively use it.

A misconfiguration usually causes this message. Typical configuration problems include:

- Using the Oracle Protocol Agent on the actual database connections between the client and the server. The Oracle Protocol Agent is meant for cases where TCP port 1521 is used only for negotiating the port number for Oracle database connections. The port number for the actual connection is assigned dynamically. The Oracle Protocol Agent must not be used in any other cases.
- Excessive idle timeouts defined in Access Rules. All TCP connections are normally explicitly closed by the communicating parties and can therefore be cleared from the state table based on actual connection state.

Non-TCP protocols do not establish connections. The communications are still handled as virtual connections on the Firewall to allow all Firewall features to be used on the traffic. Since the communicating parties do not have a closing mechanism, these virtual connections are never cleared from the Firewalls' connection records before the communications are left idle (unused) for the duration of the defined timeout. If Access rules define excessively long timeouts for such traffic between many different hosts, the connection state table can grow very large.

## Steps

- 1) If you use the Oracle Protocol Agent, make sure that it is not applied incorrectly. If necessary, replace the default service that has a Protocol Agent attached with a custom service that matches the correct port without a Protocol Agent.
- 2) Check the Access Rules to see if there are rules that override the default idle timeout value for non-TCP traffic.
  - Make sure that the override is not applied to any traffic that does not absolutely need a longer timeout (make the rule as specific as possible)
  - Try reducing the timeout (generally, the idle timeout should not be more than a few minutes).
  - In some cases, allowing both communications directions separately might remove the need for long timeouts

# Respond to Connection timeout log messages

Connection timeout log messages are generated for inactive connections that the Firewall clears out from its connection tracking table.

Connections are inactive when the hosts involved in the connection stop transmitting packets between each other.

Most connection timeouts are normal and necessary to ensure that the Firewall cleans up inactive connections from its records, freeing up the resources. However, sometimes the timeout can prevent communications from continuing.

## Steps

- 1) If some application in your network leaves connections inactive for long periods of time before continuing again, you can increase the timeout for those connections. You can change the timeout in the Action options for the Access rule that allows the connection. The rule-specific timeouts override the global timeouts that are set per connection state in the Firewall element's properties (Advanced Settings).



**CAUTION:** Setting long timeouts for a high number of connections considerably increases the resource consumption of the Firewall and can even lead to performance problems. This issue applies especially to non-TCP protocols that do not include connection closing messages, because such virtual connections are never closed before the timeout is reached.

- 2) If the protocol is not connection-oriented (for example, if the protocol is SNMP), you can disable connection tracking for the traffic in the Access rule's Action options. Disabling connection tracking requires that you explicitly allow both directions of the communications in the rule, since without connection tracking, reply packets cannot be automatically allowed. NAT rules are not applied to connections that are not tracked. We recommend that you deactivate logging in rules that have connection tracking off, since these rules create a separate log entry for each packet transmitted. The number of log entries generated greatly increases, and can potentially lead to an unmanageable level of logging traffic.

# Respond to Incomplete connection closed log messages

Logs that contain “incomplete connection closed” messages indicate that a Firewall determined that a connection was unsuccessful and removed it from its records.

“Incomplete connection closed” messages are shown in logs when the Firewall allows a connection and passes the first packet of a connection (the SYN packet), but the reply packet (SYN/ACK) from the destination host does not arrive at the Firewall.

One of the following situations can cause the connection to be incomplete:

- The SYN packet did not reach the destination.
- The SYN packet reached its destination, but the destination host did not send any reply.
- The SYN packet reached its destination and the destination host replied, but the reply packet did not reach the Firewall.

It is normal to see a few of these messages in the log from time to time. However, a higher number of these messages can indicate problems in your network or the communicating applications.

## Steps

- 1) If this message appears in the logs often for legitimate traffic, there is a networking problem that you must address. Use normal network troubleshooting tools to find out where the packets are lost. You can generate a topdump file by taking a Traffic Capture from the SMC.
- 2) In some cases, SYN packets can be sent maliciously to random hosts as an attempt to find out your network structure. These attempts can sometimes be seen as SYN packets to hosts that do not exist. If access to those addresses is allowed and routable, this process can trigger the Incomplete Connection Closed messages. The possibility of successful scans can be reduced by using dynamic NAT on the Firewall.

### Related concepts

[Traffic captures and how they work](#) on page 207

[Getting started with NAT rules](#) on page 831

# Respond to NAT balance log messages

Logs that contain NAT balance messages indicate that connections were dropped when the Firewall tried to forward the connections after applying NAT.

NAT balance messages are shown in the logs when a connection has been allowed, the Firewall has applied a NAT rule that defines source and/or destination translation, and the traffic has been forwarded according to the Firewall’s routing configuration, but a reply is never received.

## Steps

- 1) If NAT is applied to the connection in error, adjust your NAT rules accordingly. It is also possible to create a NAT rule that defines no translation to disable NAT for any matching connection.
- 2) Make sure that the Firewall routes the traffic correctly. The routing decision is made based on the translated destination IP address.



- 3) Make sure that the destination host is up and providing the requested service, and that any intermediary Firewall allows the connection.
- 4) Try to trace the path that the communications take and use traffic captures as necessary to find the point of failure.

## Respond to Not a Valid SYN Packet log messages

Logs that contain “Not a Valid SYN Packet” messages indicate that packets were discarded due to connection tracking.

**Problem description:** The “Not a Valid SYN Packet” message appears in logs with entries on discarded packets.

**Reason:** “Not a Valid SYN Packet” is a TCP packet that is not the first packet of a TCP connection (the packet does not have the SYN flag set), but is not part of an existing connection either (there is no connection tracking entry on the Firewall matching this packet). The policy would allow this packet if the packet was part of an existing tracked connection.

The message usually also contains a code inside square brackets that indicates the flags set in the discarded packet (A=Ack, F=FIN, R=RST, P=Push, S=SYN).

Some examples of situations, where “Not a Valid SYN packet” messages can be seen:

- Asymmetric routing, which means that the opening packet does not go through the Firewall, but the reply (the SYN/ACK) does. If so, there is a configuration error in the routing of the surrounding network that must be fixed.
- Connections that are idle for more than the defined connection timeout (connection has been erased from the Firewall records). This happens from time to time, but if necessary, the timeout can be increased or you can use the TCP Proxy Protocol Agent, which can reset the connection at the host and server when the connection is left idle (if the application in question does not properly close connections).
- Connections that have been made to look like TCP connections while they are not. If necessary, these connections can be allowed as individual packets without connection tracking.
- Network scans or attacks that use ACK packets.
- Heavily loaded server or client that sends a packet after the host at the other end of the connection has already timed out and closed the connection.

It is normal to see some messages like this in the logs. If a certain type of communication that you want to allow is always prevented because of connection tracking, check these troubleshooting steps.

### Steps

- 1) If there are connections that are left idle for a long time, you can change the idle timeout value for the Access rule that allows that specific traffic. There are also default values that you can set globally for different TCP connection states in the Firewall element’s properties (Advanced settings). This solution does not usually apply to non-TCP connections, so take care that the rule only matches the specific connections involved.



**CAUTION:** Setting long idle timeouts for a high number of connections considerably increases the resource consumption of the Firewall and can even lead to performance problems. Especially, non-TCP protocols do not include connection closing messages, so such virtual connections are never closed before the timeout is reached.

- 2) You might have to disable connection tracking in the rule allowing the connection. We recommend that you deactivate logging in rules that have connection tracking off. These rules create a separate log entry for each packet transmitted, which increases the number of log entries generated. NAT cannot be applied to traffic that is allowed without connection tracking, and both communication directions must be explicitly allowed in the Access rules (replies are not automatically allowed).
- 3) For some types of connections, problems can be solved by using a Service that includes a special Protocol Agent for that traffic.

#### Related concepts

[Protocol elements and how they work](#) on page 905

#### Related tasks

[Define Action options for the Allow action in Firewall Access rules](#) on page 870

## Respond to Requested NAT cannot be done log messages

Logs that contain “Requested NAT cannot be done” error messages can indicate problems with dynamic NAT or Server Pools.

### Steps

- 1) A Dynamic NAT operation might be applied to the wrong type of traffic. Dynamic (many-to-one) NAT is done by assigning different hosts the same IP address, but different ports. For this reason, dynamic NAT does not work when the protocol in question does not use ports. Only the TCP and UDP transport protocols use ports. See the **TCP** and **UDP** branches in the **Services** tree in the Management Client to check which protocols are transported over TCP or UDP.
- 2) Dynamic NAT can run out of ports if there are too many simultaneous connections in relation to the IP addresses and the port range you have configured for dynamic NAT. You can increase the available ports for translation by adding a new IP address for your dynamic NAT rule. Alternatively, you can expand the port range, if the rule does not currently use the whole range of high ports.
- 3) If the Server Pool element is used, check the NAT rules. Because the Server Pool element always does NAT, errors can occur when the Server Pool element is used and the same connection matches an overlapping NAT rule.
- 4) Check if the information message in the log states that dynamic NAT is denied due to excessive number of connections. This can happen when a single host is opening connections at an excessive rate to a single destination IP address and port through dynamic source NAT. This message indicates the triggering of a self-protection mechanism, which prevents excessive use of processing resources to dynamic NAT operations. Set up a static NAT rule to allow these types of connections if it is not possible to adjust the connection settings of the application.

# Error messages for troubleshooting

---

Error messages provide useful information for troubleshooting.

## Respond to Command Failed or Connect Timed out errors

---

There are several possible causes and solutions when to command an engine using the Management Client and receive an error.

### Steps

- 1) Make sure that there is connectivity between the Management Server and the engine.  
The most common connectivity problems include traffic filtering by an intermediate firewall and incorrectly configured NAT configuration. When NAT is configured incorrectly, a required NAT rule for the connection is missing, or the engine's contact address is missing. The engine sends its status reports through the Log Server, so a green operating status does not guarantee that the Management Server can reach the engine.
- 2) Try to refresh the engine's policy. Read all messages displayed and make sure that none of the nodes perform a rollback to the previous policy. If policy installation fails, see *Troubleshooting Policy Installation*.

### Related tasks

[Troubleshoot policy installation](#) on page 1389

## Respond to Unexpected Error messages

---

In some cases, the Management Client might display a pop-up message stating that an "unexpected error" has occurred.

### Steps

- 1) Exit and restart the Management Client.
- 2) If the condition persists, contact [Forcepoint support](#).



# Troubleshooting certificates

## Contents

- [Problems with certificates](#) on page 1357
- [Renew SMC server certificates](#) on page 1359
- [Renew engine certificates](#) on page 1361
- [Troubleshoot expiring certificate authorities](#) on page 1362
- [Revert to an Internal RSA Certificate Authority](#) on page 1363

Digital certificates allow components to prove their identity to each other. SMC components use certificates in system communications and in VPNs.

## Problems with certificates

Problems with certificates can be related to certificate validity time, certificate authority validity time, or other issues that cause a certificate to be invalid.



**Note:** Do not confuse certificates with licenses. Certificates are proof of identity that components use to authenticate themselves in communications. Licenses are a proof of purchase used for ensuring that your organization is a legal license holder of the software.

There are two types of certificates that are used in the SMC:

- Components use certificates to identify each other in system communications. When a component has no valid certificate, contact between that component and other SMC components is not possible. Depending on the components, policy installation and log traffic might be affected. The certificates used in system communications are always generated by the Internal Certificate Authority that runs on the Management Server. The Internal Certificate Authority can be an Internal RSA Certificate Authority or an Internal ECDSA Certificate Authority. Only one type of Internal Certificate Authority can be used at a time.
- Certificates are also used in VPNs for authentication between remote gateways. These certificates can be generated by any internal or external certificate authorities that both gateways are configured to trust.

## Problems related to certificate validity time

All certificates have a validity start date (“not before”) and a validity end date (“not after”). In the SMC, internally generated certificates are valid for three years from their creation. Expired certificates must be replaced with new ones. Since each component interprets the certificate validity according to their own internal clock, incorrect date or time settings can lead to unexpected certificate rejections.

Example: An external VPN gateway device defaults to 1970 when an error occurs in setting its time. In this state, the device thinks a certificate issued today is not valid until decades into the future and certificate authentication fails.

You can check the validity of internal certificates (of SMC servers, Firewalls, IPS engines, and Layer 2 Firewalls) and VPN Gateway Certificates in the Management Client:

- Internal certificates: Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration > Other Elements > Internal Certificates**, and open the properties of the certificate.
- VPN Gateway Certificates: Select **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN > Other Elements > Certificates > Gateway Certificates**, and open the properties of the certificate.

## Problems related to certificate authority validity time

---

The SMC's internal Certificate Authorities are valid for 10 years. A new Internal RSA CA or a new Internal ECDSA CA and a new VPN CA are automatically created six months before the expiration date. The components that use certificates signed by the internal CAs must receive new certificates that have been signed by the new internal CAs. Otherwise, the system communications and VPN connections cannot function.

You can check the validity of internal CAs in the Management Client:

- Internal Certificate Authorities: Select **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration > Other Elements > Internal Certificate Authorities**.
- Internal VPN CAs: Select **Configuration**, then browse to **VPN > Other Elements > Certificates > VPN Certificate Authorities**, and open the properties of the certificate authority.

When the system has created an Internal CA, SMC components gradually start using the new Internal CA to sign certificates. Initially, the new Internal CA is in the "Ready to Use" state, and only Management Server certificates are signed by the new Internal CA. Certificates for other components are signed by whichever Internal CA is used by the Management Server. In an environment with multiple Management Servers, the new Internal CA changes to the "Active" state when all Management Servers are using the new Internal CA.

Each component must receive a new certificate signed by the new internal CA. The system automatically tries to create new certificates for NGFW Engines, and Master NGFW Engines. For other components, you must always manually create new certificates. If the automatic certificate creation fails, you must create new certificates manually for NGFW Engines, and Master NGFW Engines.

When a new internal VPN CA has been created, the VPN gateways that trust the old VPN CA must be made to trust the new VPN CA. VPN clients that use certificates for user authentication also require new certificates signed by the new VPN CA.

## Other problems

---

Common certificate-related issues not related to the validity time include:

- Certificates used in system communications become invalid when the certificate authority changes.
  - This happens if the Management Server is reinstalled and the configuration is recreated manually or by importing elements instead of importing a backup (backups contain certificate authority information). If backup restoration is not an option, all SMC components must receive a new certificate for system communications.
  - In some cases, restoring the Management Server backup might also result in the internal certificate authority being different from the certificate authority that was used to create certificates for some components. The invalid certificates must be replaced with new ones.
  - In this case, internally signed VPN certificates can be made valid by configuring the issuing certificate authority as an additional trusted certificate authority for the VPNs.
- Certificates created for the VPN gateways for establishing the VPN during the VPN configuration are stored on the VPN gateway devices (Firewalls). These certificates are not included in the Management Server backup, and are not changed in any way when a Management Server backup is restored.
- Certificates can become unusable if the private key for that certificate is lost. The key can be lost, for example, if the Firewall engine hardware fails and has to be replaced. Firewall Clusters share each VPN certificate

and can synchronize the private key from node-to-node as needed. If the private key is erased from a Single Firewall or from all the nodes of a Firewall Cluster, a new certificate must be created.

- If one or more of the certificates needed for securing the internal connection has expired or is damaged, you might see a Java-related error with messages about “PKIX.”
- Externally issued VPN certificates can be revoked by the certificate authority that issued them. This safety measure is used when the certificate is suspected to be compromised. This problem can only be solved by contacting the certificate issuer.

#### Related concepts

[Problems with licenses](#) on page 1369

#### Related tasks

[Check when internal certificates or CAs expire](#) on page 211

[Create Internal ECDSA Certificate Authority elements](#) on page 454

[Check when VPN certificate authorities expire](#) on page 1245

## Renew SMC server certificates

You must renew SMC server certificates when the certificates are about to expire, have expired, or are lost.

The following situations require you to renew SMC server certificates:

- The system indicates that the certificate of a Management Server, Log Server, or Web Portal Server is about to expire.
- The system indicates that the certificate of a Management Server, Log Server, or Web Portal Server has expired.
- The system indicates that the Certificate Authority that signed the certificate of a Management Server, Log Server, or Web Portal Server is about to expire. A new Certificate Authority has been created, and the server requires a new certificate.
- The SMC components refuse communication attempts with each other.

If the Management Server certificate expires or is lost, it is not possible to log on using Management Clients. Log Server certificate expiration or loss prevents log browsing, reporting, and status monitoring from working correctly, and forces the engines to spool logs locally.

The certificates of any of the SMC server components can be renewed without impacting any of the other components. The certificate generation requires you to authenticate as an administrator unrestricted permissions.

### Steps

- 1) Stop the SMC server you want to recertify.



**Note:** To certify a Log Server or a Web Portal Server, the Management Server must be running and accessible through the network.

- 2) On the command line of the server that you want to certify, open the `<installation directory>/bin` folder.



**Note:** If you installed the Management Server in the `C:\Program Files\Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center` directory in Windows, some of the program data might be stored in the `C:\ProgramData\Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center` directory.



**Note:** Command-line scripts can be found in the `C:\Program Files\Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center\bin` directory.

- 3) Run the correct script for the server type:
  - **Management Server** — `sgCertifyMgtSrv.[bat|sh]`.  
In an environment with only one Management Server, or to certify the active Management Server, stop the Management Server before running the `sgCertifyMgtSrv` command. Run the command without parameters. Restart the Management Server after running this command.  
  
To certify an additional Management Server, stop the additional Management Server before running the `sgCertifyMgtSrv` command. The active Management Server must be running when you run this command. The management database is replicated to the additional Management Server during the certification. The additional Management Server must have a connection to the active Management Server when you run this command.
  - **Log Server** — `sgCertifyLogSrv.[bat|sh]`
  - **Web Portal Server** — `sgCertifyWebPortalServer.[bat|sh]`
- 4) If prompted, log on using an administrator account with unrestricted permissions.
  - If Domains are in use, you can also specify the **Domain** the Log Server or the Web Portal Server belongs to. If you do not specify the Domain, the Shared Domain is used.
- 5) Make sure that the **Recertify an Existing Server** option is selected, and that the correct server is selected in the list.
- 6) Click **OK**, then wait for a confirmation that the server certificate has been renewed.

## Result

When you restart the server, all other components accept the new certificate, since it is issued by a certificate authority they trust. In this context, components only trust the Internal Certificate Authority that issued also their own certificate.

When administrators log on to the Management Client or to the Web Portal for the first time after the server's certificate is changed, they receive a notification of the certificate fingerprint change on the Management Server or Web Portal Server. If you want to check the certificate fingerprint before accepting it, run the `sgShowFingerprint` command on the server.

### Related tasks

[Check when internal certificates or CAs expire](#) on page 211

### Related reference

[Security Management Center commands](#) on page 1411



# Renew engine certificates

Engine certificates are usually renewed automatically. You might have to renew engine certificates manually in some cases.


The following situations might require you to manually renew engine certificates:

- The system indicates that an engine component's certificate has expired.
- The system indicates that the Certificate Authority that signed the component's certificate is about to expire or has expired. A new Certificate Authority has been created, and the engine requires a new certificate.
- Components refuse connection attempts with each other.
- You have created an ECDSA CA and the engine has lost connectivity to the Management Server. You might also have to manually enable 256-bit security strength for the engine.

If the certificate for system communications expires or is deleted, the Firewalls, IPS engines, and Layer 2 Firewalls continue processing traffic normally but all communications with other components cease. For clusters, traffic might be disturbed if expired certificates prevent nodes from synchronizing information. The same also happens if the Internal Certificate Authority that signs the certificates for system communications is about to expire, and engines do not have new certificates signed by the new Internal Certificate Authority that the system has automatically created.

If a certificate for VPN authentication expires or is deleted, VPNs that are configured to use certificates (including any VPN involving the Stonesoft VPN Client) cannot be established before the certificate is renewed. A VPN certificate renewal or change can cause a security warning to appear to VPN client users connecting to the gateway.

Engine certificates might expire because automatic certificate renewal is disabled in your system. Automatic certificate renewal might also fail due to the lack of required information, or due to information loss or incompatibility issues that depend on the software versions used when the system was originally installed.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) For the engine certificates used for SMC system communications, renew the contact between the engine and the Management Server using a new one-time password.
- 2) If a VPN certificate has expired, renew the certificate. If the VPN certificate is invalid for some other reason, delete the Gateway Certificate element in the Management Client and then create a new certificate. The VPN gateway certificates are created and managed separately from the certificates used in system communications.

## Related concepts

[Management connections for engines and how they work](#) on page 629

## Related tasks

[Check when internal certificates or CAs expire](#) on page 211

[Reconfigure engine settings](#) on page 339

[Enable 256-bit security strength for engines](#) on page 455

[Replace expired VPN certificates](#) on page 1241

[Check when VPN gateway certificates expire](#) on page 1244

**Related reference**[Forcepoint NGFW Engine commands](#) on page 1424

# Troubleshoot expiring certificate authorities

Messages about expiring certificate authorities are triggered when a certificate authority is about to expire, a new certificate authority has been automatically created, or a certificate authority has expired.

Messages about expiring certificate authorities can also indicate that administrator actions are required so that the SMC components can start using the new Certificate Authority.


You might need to renew certificate authorities in the following cases:

- The system indicates that the Certificate Authority that signed the certificate of a component is about to expire. A new Certificate Authority has been created, and a new certificate must be generated for the component because the Certificate Authority has been renewed.
- The system indicates that a VPN gateway must be set to trust a new internal VPN Certificate Authority that was created automatically.
- Components refuse connection attempts with each other.

If a Certificate Authority is about to expire, the components that use certificates signed by the Certificate Authority require new certificates that are signed by a valid Certificate Authority.

No administrator actions are usually needed to create a new certificate for the engines. Once a new Internal CA has been created, new certificates are automatically created for the engines. However, if the automatic certificate renewal fails for certificates used in system communications, you must make initial contact from the engine to the Management Server. After successful initial contact, a new certificate is automatically created for the engine.

New certificates are automatically created for NGFW Engines. You only have to refresh the policy on the engine to use the new certificate.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Renew an external certificate authority used in VPN configurations:
  - a) Configure a new certificate authority and make sure that it is a trusted certificate authority in the VPN configurations.
  - b) Create new certificates for the components involved in the VPN configuration, signed by the new certificate authority.
- 2) Renew internal certificate authorities used in securing system communications and in VPNs:
  - a) The system automatically generates a new Internal Certificate Authority and a new internal VPN Certificate Authority six months before their expiration dates.

- b) Each component that uses certificates signed by the Internal Certificate Authority or the internal VPN Certificate Authority requires a new certificate that is signed by the new Internal Certificate Authority or internal VPN Certificate Authority.
- 3) To renew system communications certificates for the SMC servers, manually create a certificate for each Management Server, Log Server, and Web Portal Server using command-line tools.
- 4) If an external gateway trusts the internal VPN CA and the internal VPN CA has been renewed, create a certificate for the external gateway and sign it with the new internal VPN CA.  
You must also set the new VPN CA as a trusted CA in the External Gateway's properties and also in the properties of the VPN Profile element that is used in the VPN configuration.
- 5) If certificates are used to authenticate VPN client users and the certificates have been signed with the internal VPN CA, you must create new certificates for the VPN client users using the new VPN CA.  
When a VPN client connects to a gateway that trusts the new internal VPN CA, the VPN client users must accept the fingerprint of the gateway's certificate before they can connect to the gateway. Inform the users that the fingerprint of the gateway's certificate has changed and provide the information for checking the fingerprint in the VPN client.

#### Related concepts


[Management connections for engines and how they work](#) on page 629  
[VPN certificates and how they work](#) on page 1231


#### Related tasks

[Replace expired VPN certificates](#) on page 1241  
[Renew SMC server certificates](#) on page 1359

## Revert to an Internal RSA Certificate Authority

If you created an Internal ECDSA Certificate Authority but you want to go back to using an Internal RSA Certificate Authority, you can revert to an Internal RSA Certificate Authority.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Select  **Configuration**, then browse to **Administration**.
- 2) Browse to **Other Elements > Internal Certificate Authorities**.
- 3) Right-click **Internal Certificate Authorities** and select **Create New Internal RSA Certificate Authority**. You are prompted to confirm that you want to create an Internal RSA Certificate Authority.

- 4) Click **Yes**.
  - The Internal RSA Certificate Authority creation process begins and a new tab opens to show the progress of the process.
  - When the process is finished, the progress report shows the steps that you must take next.
  - The status of the RSA CA is “Created for Different Certificate Type.”
- 5) Restart the Log Server and the Web Portal Server.
- 6) Start the Renew Internal Certificate Authorities Task.  
When the Task is finished, the status of the RSA CA is “Ready to Use for Different Certificate Type.”
- 7) Right-click the **Renew Internal Certificate Authorities** Task in the **History** branch and select **Show Progress Report**.  
The progress report shows which steps you must take next.
- 8) Follow the instructions to resolve any issues. For example, you might be prompted to check the status or connectivity of some engines.
- 9) Recertify the Management Server.
- 10) Start the **Renew Internal Certificate Authorities** Task again.  
When the Task is finished, the status of the RSA CA is “Active.”
- 11) Recertify the Log Server and the Web Portal Server.

## Result

When you create an Internal RSA Certificate Authority, SMC components gradually start using the new Internal RSA CA to sign certificates. Initially, the new Internal RSA CA is in the “Created for Different Certificate Type” state. When the new Internal RSA CA is ready to begin signing certificates, it changes to the “Ready to Use for Different Certificate Type” state. At first, only Management Server certificates are signed by the new Internal RSA CA. Certificates for other components are signed by whichever Internal CA is used by the Management Server. In an environment with multiple Management Servers, the new RSA CA changes to the “Active” state when all Management Servers use the new Internal RSA CA.

### Related tasks

[Create Internal ECDSA Certificate Authority elements](#) on page 454

[Start Tasks manually](#) on page 1306

[Renew SMC server certificates](#) on page 1359

### Related reference

[Security Management Center commands](#) on page 1411

# Troubleshooting engine operation


## Contents

- [Troubleshoot engines that do not go or stay online](#) on page 1365
- [Troubleshoot errors when commanding engines](#) on page 1366
- [Troubleshoot heartbeat and synchronization errors](#) on page 1367
- [Troubleshoot contact between engines and the Management Server](#) on page 1367

There are several common errors and problems that are directly related to the operation of Firewalls, IPS engines, and Layer 2 Firewalls.

## Troubleshoot engines that do not go or stay online

There are several possible causes and solutions when you command a node online, but it does not go online or turns itself offline shortly after going online.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) If you have just updated the engines or you are using an evaluation license, open the **Administration Configuration** view and browse to **Licenses** to check that your licenses are valid for the version of engines you are using.
- 2) If the nodes are in a cluster, and only one node at a time stays online, try the following troubleshooting steps:
  - Check whether the cluster is in Standby mode. Standby mode keeps one node online at a time and uses the other nodes as backups in case the online node fails.
  - Refresh the policy of the cluster and check that the installation is successful so that no nodes roll back to the previous configuration. All nodes in the cluster must have the same configuration that has been installed in the same policy installation operation. You might have to adjust the rollback timeout in the cluster's properties if policy rollback on some node is the problem.
  - Check for alerts in the Logs view about tests failing. Check if any of the failed tests are configured to turn the node offline when they fail. The tester leaves one node in a cluster online even if the test fails on all nodes. If you see a test failure, it might indicate a genuine problem that you need to solve or the test might be misconfigured and might have to be disabled or reconfigured.
- 3) See the Logs view for any alerts or logs regarding the functioning of the nodes.  
Certain internal error conditions (for example, heartbeat connection failures or missing certificates) can cause nodes to go offline. These events are shown as logs and alerts.

#### Related concepts

[Getting started with the engine tester](#) on page 639

[Adjusting Firewall clustering options](#) on page 676

#### Related tasks

[Adjust IPS clustering options](#) on page 680

[Generate licenses](#) on page 1312

[Troubleshoot policy installation](#) on page 1389

# Troubleshoot errors when commanding engines

There are several possible causes and solutions when you try to command an engine using the Management Client and receive an error.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) If there are disabled nodes in the same cluster, enable them before refreshing the policy.
- 2) Refresh the engine's policy.
- 3) Read all messages displayed and make sure none of the nodes roll back to the previous policy.
- 4) If policy installation fails, see *Troubleshooting Policy Installation*.  
If policy installation fails and the status and statistics information displayed in the Management Client is missing (status is displayed as unknown) even though the engine is online and processing traffic, the problem might be due to an expired certificate.

#### Related concepts

[Problems with certificates](#) on page 1357

#### Related tasks

[Troubleshoot policy installation](#) on page 1389

# Troubleshoot heartbeat and synchronization errors

There are several possible causes and solutions when you receive alerts regarding the heartbeat connection between the nodes in a cluster.

## Steps

- 1) Apply normal network troubleshooting (for example, check speed and duplex settings and cabling) to make sure that the heartbeat link works reliably.
- 2) Use a primary and a backup heartbeat connection using separate physical links.  
It is highly recommended that you use a dedicated link for both the primary and the backup heartbeat. The heartbeat and state synchronization are time-critical communications. The heartbeat connection is critical to the operation of a cluster. The cluster cannot work without a reliable heartbeat connection.
- 3) If you have installed two or more clusters with a single LAN as a shared heartbeat, and you see extra log entries about unauthenticated heartbeat messages, change the Heartbeat IP and the Synchronization IP so that each cluster uses a different address.

### Related concepts

[Traffic captures and how they work](#) on page 207  
[Adjusting Firewall clustering options](#) on page 676


### Related tasks

[Adjust IPS clustering options](#) on page 680  
[Adjust Layer 2 Firewall clustering options](#) on page 680

# Troubleshoot contact between engines and the Management Server

Sometimes, the engine cannot establish initial contact to the Management Server, or all subsequent attempts to command the engine through the Management Client fail. There are several possible causes and solutions for these failures.

For a full list of all system communications in all configurations, see *Default Communication Ports*.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Apply normal network troubleshooting (for example, check speed and duplex settings and cabling).

- 2) If there is a local Firewall between a remote site Firewall and the Management Server, make sure that the local Firewall does not block the communication.  
A Firewall with reversed management connections (for example, because it has a dynamic IP address) contacts the Management Server on port 8906. Create an Access rule in the policy of the main site Firewall to allow the connection:
- **Source:** Remote site Firewall
  - **Destination:** Contact address of the Management Server
  - **Service:** SG-dynamic-control
  - **Action:** Allow

#### Related concepts

[Traffic captures and how they work](#) on page 207

#### Related reference

[Security Management Center ports](#) on page 1433



# Troubleshooting licenses

## Contents

- [Problems with licenses](#) on page 1369
- [Troubleshoot licenses that are shown as retained](#) on page 1369
- [Troubleshoot licenses that are shown as unassigned](#) on page 1370

Licenses are a proof of purchase used for ensuring that your organization is a legal license holder of the software.

## Problems with licenses

Components that do not have a license do not work.



**Note:** Do not confuse Licenses with Certificates. Licenses are a proof of purchase used for ensuring that your organization is a legal license holder of the software. Certificates are proof of identity that components use to authenticate themselves in system communications.

Licenses are introduced to the SMC as elements that you install in your Management Server. You must install licenses to set up the components your organization has purchased. However, on current Forcepoint NGFW appliance models, the licenses can be generated automatically.

If the Management Server does not have a valid license, you see a license-related dialog box each time you log on using the Management Client. You cannot create a working configuration without a Management Server license, since most controls are disabled. If an engine component is missing a license, you can create a configuration for it, but you cannot transfer that configuration to the engine.

### Related concepts

[Getting Started with licenses](#) on page 1309

[Problems with certificates](#) on page 1357

## Troubleshoot licenses that are shown as retained


There are several possible solutions when the State of a license is shown as “retained” in the Management Client.

Licenses can be generated based on the Management Server's proof-of-license (POL) code, the appliance's proof-of-serial (POS) code, or a fixed IP address. When you start using a Management Server POL-based license, you bind it to the correct component, and the binding is fixed when you install the component's policy. Because of this fixed binding, if you unbind a Management Server POL-based license, it is shown as “Retained.”

In this case, it is not possible to reuse the Management Server POL-based license on another component, or delete the Management Server POL-based license.

You can resolve issues with licenses shown as "retained" in the following ways:

- You can rebind the license to the component it was previously bound to.
- You can replace the Management Server POL-based license with a new Management Server POL-based license.
- You can replace the Management Server POL-based license with a new IP-address-bound license or POS-bound license.
- You can delete the element to which the Management Server POL-based license is bound. After the element is deleted, the state of the Management Server POL-based license changes to **Unassigned** and it can be rebound to some other component or deleted.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.


- 1) To rebind the license to the component it was previously bound to, right-click the license and select **Cancel Unbind**.
- 2) To replace the Management Server POL-based license with a new Management Server POL-based license, do the following:
  - a) Install a new Management Server POL-based license.
  - b) Bind the license to the component that the retained license is bound to.  
The state of the previous Management Server POL-based license changes to **Unassigned** and it can be rebound to some other component or deleted.
- 3) To replace the Management Server POL-based license with a new IP-address-bound license or POS-bound license, do the following:
  - a) Install a new IP-address-bound license or POS-bound license.
  - b) Right-click the Management Server POL-based license and select **Replace by Static License**.

## Troubleshoot licenses that are shown as unassigned

---

When you install a new license, it does not bind itself to any component and is shown as "unassigned."

The license does not contain identifying information that the Management Server could use to attach the license to a component. This is normal for Management Server POL-based licenses.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the license and select **Bind** to select which component you want to license.

**Related tasks**

[Check validity and status of licenses](#) on page 1318



# Troubleshooting logging


## Contents

- [Troubleshoot the Logs view](#) on page 1373
- [Troubleshoot log storage](#) on page 1374
- [Troubleshoot Log Server operation](#) on page 1375

There are some common problems you might encounter when viewing logs or performing tasks related to the log files.

## Troubleshoot the Logs view

There are some common problems and solutions related to viewing logs.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) If the Logs view is unable to contact some Log Server, do one of the following:
  - a) Check that the Log Server is running, and that the Log Server is reachable from the computer used for running the Management Client. The status shown for a Log Server in the Management Client is based on information that the Management Server has. However, logged data is not routed through the Management Server, so a green status is not an indication of whether the Log Server is reachable for log browsing or not.
  - b) If there is a NAT device between some Management Client and a Log Server, administrators must select the correct Location for the Management Client in the status bar at the bottom right corner of the Management Client window.
- 2) If some or all logs are not visible in the Logs view, do one of the following:
  - a) Check that the filtering, time range, and source settings in the **Logs** view are correct. Also make sure that you have clicked **Apply** after making the latest changes in these settings.
  - b) Check the logging options in your policies. Not all connections automatically create log entries. The Alert, Stored, and Essential options create permanent log entries. The Transient option means that logs are not stored, and they can only be viewed in the Current Events mode in the Logs view when they reach the Log Server.
  - c) Check that logs you want to keep are not being pruned. The Log Server deletes selected logs according to how pruning is configured.
  - d) Check that the logs are being transferred from the engines to the Log Server. The log entries are spooled on the engines if a connection to the Log Server is unavailable. Connections between engines and the Log Server should be shown as green in the **Home** view.

- e) The logging process might slow down due to a lack of resources on the engine, in the network, or on the Log Server. Your logging settings and the number of engines that send data to the same Log Server affect the speed of the logging process.

**Related concepts**

[Considerations for setting up system communications](#) on page 127

**Related tasks**

[Discard unnecessary logs](#) on page 1291

## Troubleshoot log storage

There are several possible causes and solutions when alerts indicate that the disk of an engine or a Log Server is filling up with log files.

The “Log spool filling” alert indicates that logs are not being transferred from the engine at all, or the engine is generating logs more quickly than they can be transferred to the Log Server.

### Steps

- 1) If an engine is filling up with logs, do one of the following:
  - a) Check that the Log Server is running. If it is not running, try to start it. If the Log Server is running, check for network problems between the engine and the Log Server. The log entries are spooled on the engines if they cannot be sent to the Log Server. Stopping and restarting the Log Server process can help in resetting the connection.
  - b) If the volume of logs is high, they might not be transferred quick enough, and logs must be spooled even though they are being transferred. If you suspect this is the case, turn off all diagnostics logs for all engines that you are not actively troubleshooting. Also turn off logging for all rules that have connection tracking set to off (because these rules log each packet individually). Finally, check if logs that are currently pruned could be prevented from being generated in the first place.
- 2) If the Log Server is filling up with logs, do one of the following:
  - a) Set up log management tasks that archive and remove the oldest Log entries from the Log Server hard disk. To avoid problems in the future, set up tasks to run automatically at regular intervals.
  - b) In an emergency, you can also move or delete old log entries manually. The logs are stored on the Log Server machine under a folder structure based on dates and times (default location is <installation directory>/data/storage). You should always avoid manual handling of the newest entries.

**Related concepts**

[Log data management and how it works](#) on page 1283

### Related tasks

[Enable or disable diagnostics on Firewalls](#) on page 330

# Troubleshoot Log Server operation

There are several possible causes and solutions when the Log Server is not running and does not stay running when you try to start it.

## Steps

- 1) On the Log Server command line, try to start the Log Server using the script `<installation directory>/bin/sgStartLogSrv[.bat|.sh]` to get more information.  
Startup messages are shown on the command line.
- 2) Check for the following possible problems and solutions:
  - The software version might be incorrect. The Log Server must have the exact same software version as the Management Server. Upgrade components as necessary.
  - The Log Server's certificate for system communications might have expired, been deleted, or become otherwise invalid.
  - The Log Server might not have a license, the license might be bound to the wrong IP address, or the IP address the license is bound to might not be active on the server.
  - There might not be enough space for logs on the hard disk.
  - Sometimes files that are necessary for the Log Server to run might be moved or deleted by external processes, such as a malware scanner, or lost due to hard disk errors. In these types of cases, Java shows an error message stating "Could not find the main class." Reinstall the same software version and check the configuration of the host computer to prevent the same from occurring in the future.

### Related concepts

[Problems with certificates](#) on page 1357

[Problems with licenses](#) on page 1369

### Related tasks

[Troubleshoot log storage](#) on page 1374





# Troubleshooting the Management Client

## Contents

- [Troubleshoot disabled options in the Management Client](#) on page 1377
- [Troubleshoot slow Management Client startup and use](#) on page 1378
- [Troubleshoot logging on to the Management Client](#) on page 1379
- [Troubleshoot Management Client layout and views](#) on page 1380
- [Troubleshoot missing or incomplete statistics](#) on page 1380
- [Troubleshoot status monitoring](#) on page 1381
- [Troubleshoot Web Start installation on an external server](#) on page 1381
- [Troubleshoot Management Server commands](#) on page 1382

There are several general problems that you might encounter when using the Management Client.

## Troubleshoot disabled options in the Management Client

There are several possible causes and solutions when some Management Client options are disabled.

When Management options are disabled, you can see them but they are grayed out and you cannot change them.

**Steps** • For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Make sure that the IP address in the license is correct and that the network interface with that IP address is active on the Management Server.  
If nearly all controls are disabled, the Management Server license might not be installed or valid.
- 2) Make sure that your administrator permissions allow you to use the Management Client options.  
Your administrator permissions might restrict your actions. For example, Operator administrators are only allowed to view the contents of the elements granted to them. They are not allowed to change the elements' properties. If you want to edit an element that is locked, first unlock the element.
- 3) Check whether the disabled options are part of an element or object created by the installation. Select the element in the **Configuration** view and check the **History** tab in the Info pane.  
System elements display "System" as the Creator. System objects cannot be edited, but usually you can make copies of them and edit and use the copies instead.

- 4) Check whether the options are part of a feature that is not supported by the engine version you are using. If so, upgrade the engines before you can use the feature. See the [Release Notes](#) for information about new and enhanced features in different versions.
- 5) Check whether you must select some other option before you can change the disabled options. Look for an option to activate the feature or override the default values, or a way to change the default values instead.

**Related concepts**

[Getting started with administrator accounts](#) on page 345

**Related tasks**


[Lock elements](#) on page 155

[Unlock elements](#) on page 155

[Generate licenses](#) on page 1312

# Troubleshoot slow Management Client startup and use

There are several possible causes and solutions when Management Client logon and other operations are slow. For example, refreshing a list of network elements might take a long time.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Make sure the Management Server and Log Server host names can be resolved on the computer running the Management Client (even if the Management Client is running on the same computer as the SMC server components). Add the IP address and host name pairs into the local hosts file on the client computer:
  - In Linux: `/etc/hosts`
  - In Windows: `\\WINNT\system32\drivers\etc\hosts`
- 2) Exclude temporarily unavailable Log Servers from Sources. If there is a NAT device in between your client and a Log Server, also make sure that the Location is set correctly for your Management Client (in the status bar).

Log browsing is slowed down if some of the selected Sources (Log Servers) are not available (data is displayed only after queries time out).

# Troubleshoot logging on to the Management Client

If you have trouble logging on to the Management Client, check the connectivity, certificate, and password.

## Steps

- 1) If the Management Client reports a connection problem:
  - a) Make sure you entered the address correctly on the logon screen.  
If there is a NAT device between the Management Client and the Management Server, the IP address used must be the translated address. Locations and Contact Addresses are not used for selecting the correct address when you are just logging on.
  - b) Make sure that the Management Server is running.
  - c) Make sure that the network between the Management Client and the Management Server is working and routing the traffic correctly. Make sure that the correct ports and protocols are used for the communications.  
These communications are not allowed in the predefined Firewall Template for Firewalls.
- 2) Make sure that the Management Server certificate has not expired.
- 3) Make sure that your password is correct.

### Related tasks

[Replace forgotten passwords](#) on page 1343

[Renew SMC server certificates](#) on page 1359


### Related reference

[Security Management Center ports](#) on page 1433

# Troubleshoot Management Client layout and views

---

There are some common problems and solutions related to the Management Client layout.


**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) If a view that was previously visible is now missing:
  - a) Select the appropriate view from the **≡ Menu > View** menu. If the view is not listed, it is not available in this window.
  - b) If the view is still not visible, select **≡ Menu > View > Layout > Reset Layout**.
- 2) If all views that you want to be displayed on the screen are visible, but you want to change the layout:
  - You can drag and drop the views by their titles to different predefined positions on the screen and resize them by dragging the borders.
  - You can reset the layout to the default positions, select **≡ Menu > View > Layout > Reset Layout**.

# Troubleshoot missing or incomplete statistics

---

There are some common causes and solutions when some or all types of statistics are not visible.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) If you can see some types of statistics for an element, but not other types:
  - This is normal. Not all statistics are compatible with all element types.
- 2) If an element does not show any statistics at all:
  - a) If it is a server element, this is normal. Servers do not produce statistical information. Only engine elements do.
  - b) Check that the Log Server is selected correctly in the Management Server properties and that the Log Server is running. Also check that the network connections are up between the engines, the Log Server, and the Management Server. Statistical information is sent from the engines to the Log Server, which relays the information to the Management Server.

# Troubleshoot status monitoring

There are some common problems and solutions related to viewing the status of elements in the Management Client.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) If a status icon for an element is always white, turn on status monitoring for the element.  
A white status icon indicates that status monitoring for the element is turned off.
- 2) If you do not know what the status icon means, place the cursor over the status icon and wait for a tooltip to show the element's status as text.
- 3) If the status of the Management Server indicates problems, but the engine is processing traffic normally, check network connectivity.  
Status information is normally sent from the engines to the Log Server, which then relays the information to the Management Server. There is also a backup channel directly from the engines to the Management Server.
- 4) If no information is available on the **Status** tab in the **Info** pane, click **Refresh View**.  
By default, the appliance status information is not displayed automatically.

## Related concepts

[Getting started with monitoring the system](#) on page 169

## Related tasks

[Monitor tasks](#) on page 206

## Related reference

[Security Management Center ports](#) on page 1433

# Troubleshoot Web Start installation on an external server

You might need to manually configure the Web Start files if the automatic Web Start installation fails. Automatic Web Start installation is done using the `webstart_setup.vbs` or `webstart_setup.sh` scripts.

**Solution:** Manually configure the Web Start files as instructed here.

## Steps

- 1) Copy the Web Start folder to your workstation.  
The Web Start software can be found on your product DVD in the Forcepoint\_SMC\_Installer/Webstart directory.
- 2) Edit the following files in a text editor and enter the correct path of the Web Start folder on your web server or network drive on the codebase row at the beginning of each file.


**Table 160: Files to be edited**

File name	Example
smcclient.jnlp	codebase="http://www.example.com/webstart" or codebase="file://localhost/C:/webstart"
bouncycastle.jnlp	codebase="http://www.example.com/webstart" or codebase="file://localhost/C:/webstart"
smc_help.jnlp	codebase="http://www.example.com/webstart" or codebase="file://localhost/C:/webstart"

- 3) Save and close each file.
- 4) Put a link to the smcclient.jnlp file on your website.  
An example start page is provided with the Web Start package, containing the link to start the application.
- 5) If necessary, edit the configuration of the web server to return the appropriate MIME type for .jnlp-files (application/x-java-jnlp-file).  
See the manual of your web server for instructions on how to configure the MIME type.

# Troubleshoot Management Server commands

Commands sent to the Management Server might fail, or the status of the Management Server might indicate a replication error.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) If commands sent to the Management Servers using the **Control Management Servers** dialog box fail, an error message indicating that the Management Client is unable to connect to a Management Server might appear.
  - a) Make sure that the Management Client Location is selected correctly so that the Management Client connects to the Management Server at the correct Contact Address.
  - b) Make sure that the Location and Contact Address are correctly configured for the Management Server.

- 2) If the Status of the Management Server on the General tab in the Info pane reads "Replication error":
  - a) Switch to the Replication tab in the Info pane for more information.

**Related tasks**

[Define Management Server or Log Server contact addresses](#) on page 130

[Select the Location for the Management Client](#) on page 135





# Troubleshooting NAT

## Contents

- [Problems with NAT and possible causes](#) on page 1385
- [Troubleshoot NAT that is not applied correctly](#) on page 1386
- [Troubleshoot NAT that is applied when it should not be](#) on page 1387

There are some common problems you might encounter with NAT.

## Problems with NAT and possible causes

There are several possible causes and solutions for problems with NAT.

Consider the following when troubleshooting NAT issues:


- A Dynamic NAT operation can be applied to most types of traffic. For TCP and UDP connections, dynamic (many-to-one) NAT is done by assigning different hosts the same IP address but different ports, so that the subsequent replies can be recognized and forwarded correctly. For ICMP connections, different hosts are also assigned the same IP address. The ICMP ID in the packets is used to recognize the replies and to forward them to the correct recipients. Only the TCP and UDP transport protocols use ports. See the **TCP** and **UDP** branches in the **Services** tree in the Management Client to check which protocols are transported over TCP or UDP. Dynamic NAT is suitable when different internal hosts communicate with different external hosts. If a single internal host communicates with a single external host, we recommend the use of static NAT, especially if the number of simultaneous connections is high.
- Dynamic NAT can run out of ports if there are too many simultaneous connections in relation to the IP addresses and the port range you have configured for dynamic NAT. You can increase the available ports for translation by adding a new IP address for your dynamic NAT rule. If the rule does not currently use the whole range of high ports, you can also expand the port range. The number of simultaneous NATed connections equals the number of IP addresses multiplied by the number of ports.
- Check the NAT rules for configurations that overlap with the following NAT configurations:
  - Address translation configured in an Outbound Multi-Link or Server Pool element
  - A NAT pool defined for VPN clients in the Firewall element's properties
  - Element-based NAT

Errors can occur when one of the listed elements is used and the same connection matches an overlapping NAT rule, because the elements also use NAT. Only one address translation operation can be done for each packet and overlapping configurations can cause conflicts. Overlap within the NAT rules is allowed because the rules are resolved based on their order (first matching rule is applied). If you use element-based NAT, a more specific manually created NAT rule can prevent traffic from matching the automatically generated NAT rules.

- Check that the NAT configurations do not overlap with an IP address that is used by some physical host in the network. This configuration error is most common with source address translation for a DMZ or external IP address. Overlapping NAT configurations can create conflicts between IP addresses and other hosts in the network.

# Troubleshoot NAT that is not applied correctly

Resolve problems when NAT is not applied at all or is applied incorrectly.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Make sure that any connection that you want to NAT is allowed by an Access rule that has Connection Tracking enabled.
- 2) If the target of the translation is traffic that is entering or exiting a VPN tunnel, enable address translation for traffic transmitted over that VPN in the properties of the VPN element.  
The default setting is to disable all address translation for tunneled VPN traffic. The setting affects only traffic inside the VPN tunnel, not the tunnel itself (the encrypted packets).
- 3) If traffic is not translated at all or the wrong translation is applied, check the NAT rules:
  - a) Search the rules using the original (before translation) source and destination addresses and check if the traffic matches the wrong NAT rule higher up in the rule table. Only the first matching rule is considered. Note that NAT rules with an empty NAT cell are valid and specify that addresses are not translated for matching traffic.
  - b) In addition to NAT rules, NAT is also used in NetLink or Server Pool elements, and as a NAT pool defined for VPN clients in the Firewall element's properties. There must not be overlapping NAT rules that match the same connections.
  - c) NAT rules are automatically generated from NAT definitions that are added to an element's properties. The NAT rules that are generated from NAT definitions do not override the rules that have been manually added to the Firewall policy. However, a more specific manually created NAT rule can prevent traffic from matching automatically generated NAT rules.

## Related concepts

[Element-based NAT and how it works](#) on page 635

# Troubleshoot NAT that is applied when it should not be

Resolve problems when the Firewall translates an IP address to some other IP address even though it should not.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

**1)** Check the order of the NAT rules.

The Firewall reads the NAT rules from top to bottom. Only the first rule that matches is considered, so you can make exceptions to rules by placing a different, partially overlapping rule above. Leaving the **NAT** cell empty tells the Firewall that addresses in any connections that match the rule should not be translated.

**2)** Check for other configurations that apply NAT.

For VPN traffic, you can also enable and disable address translation for all traffic transmitted over a VPN in the properties of the VPN element. The default setting is to disable all address translation for tunneled VPN traffic. The setting affects only traffic wrapped inside the VPN tunnel, not the tunnel itself (the encrypted packets).

In addition to NAT rules, NAT is also used in NetLink or Server Pool elements, and as a NAT pool defined for VPN clients in the Firewall element's properties. There must not be overlapping NAT rules that match the same connections. For NetLinks, NAT rules are used to select traffic for balancing, and only the actual IP addresses used for the translation are defined in the NetLink elements. NAT is required for the operation of these features and you must exclude the connections in question from the scope of these features to disable NAT.

## Related concepts

[Getting started with NAT rules](#) on page 831



# Troubleshooting policies

## Contents

- [Troubleshoot policy installation](#) on page 1389
- [Troubleshoot rules](#) on page 1392
- [Troubleshooting packets incorrectly dropped by antispoofing](#) on page 1395
- [Troubleshooting unsupported definitions in IPv6 Access rules](#) on page 1396

There are some common problems you might encounter when working with policies and the rules that they contain.

## Troubleshoot policy installation


There are several possible causes and solutions when policy installation fails, or there is a warning message indicating problems in the policy installation window.

## Troubleshoot unintended policy rollback

Resolve problems when policy installation results in a rollback to the previously installed policy version.

**Problem description:** The policy installation reports that the Management Server can contact the engines and installs the new policy successfully. However, the policy installation results in a rollback to the previously installed policy version.

**Reason:** The rollback is a safety mechanism that prevents changing the engines' policy in ways that cut the connectivity between the engines and the Management Server. After each policy installation, the engine contacts the SMC using its new configuration and automatically reverts its policy if the contact does not succeed within a time-out period.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Make sure the policy and the configuration changes that you have made do not prevent communications between the Management Server and the engine.
  - a) Check the IPv4 Access Rules and NAT rules (as applicable). You can also validate the policy to see if there are issues in it that prevent the policy installation. The rule search is useful for finding the first rule that matches the connections.
  - b) Check the Routing. You can use the Route Query tool to check where the packets will be routed after a policy installation.
  - c) Check the Locations and Contact Addresses of the SMC components, which are required if NAT is applied to these system communications.

- 2) The rollback occurs after a timeout set in the engine element's advanced properties. If you are sure that there are no configuration or policy design issues, you can increase the timeout to allow for longer delays in contact. Increasing the timeout can help if the timeout is caused by poor network reliability or delays caused by processing a policy that is very large considering the engine's available resources.

#### Related concepts

[Considerations for setting up system communications](#) on page 127

[Searching in rules](#) on page 860

#### Related tasks

[Check routes with a Route Query](#) on page 714

[Validate rules automatically](#) on page 887


## Troubleshoot policy installation failure due to connection timeouts

Resolve problems when policy installation fails because the connection between the engine and the Management Server times out.

The engine is up and running, but policy installation fails when the Management Server is contacting the nodes. When node-initiated contact is active, the Management Server might also wait for contact from a node, but the contact never happens.

The connection might time out for the following reasons:

- There is no network-level connectivity.
- The engine or the Management Server uses the wrong IP address.
- The engine and the Management Server reject each others' certificates.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Check for network problems, such as faulty or loose cables, mismatching speed/duplex settings, IP addresses, and routing.
- 2) Check the Locations and Contact Addresses of the SMC components, which are required if NAT is applied to these system communications.
- 3) In a cluster, all nodes that the Management Server tries to contact must be reachable and operational to install a policy on any of the clustered engines. If you have taken down an engine for maintenance, temporarily disable it to install the policy on the other cluster members.
- 4) If the problem seems to be related to certificates, you can recertify the engine to re-establish contact between the engine and the SMC.
- 5) Check the engine software version (shown in the Info pane when you select the element in the Management Client). See the [Release Notes](#) for information regarding version compatibility between the engine and SMC software versions.

**Related concepts**

[Considerations for setting up system communications](#) on page 127

[Management connections for engines and how they work](#) on page 629

**Related tasks**

[Disable cluster nodes temporarily](#) on page 334

## Troubleshoot policy installation failure for other reasons

Resolve problems with policy installation that are not related to the connection between the engine and the Management Server.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) If the policy installation ends with an error, read the messages both in the main window and in the Issues tab and correct as necessary. Warnings do not prevent policy installation; you can still press **Continue** in the policy installation even if a warning is triggered. You can also validate the policy separately to see if there are issues that prevent you from installing it.
- 2) Try installing the policy with the **Keep Previous Configuration Definitions** option deselected. Normally, the option should be selected. Under certain conditions, the old configuration definitions might not be compatible with the new policy, so the engine cannot fulfill this request and policy installation fails.



**CAUTION:** When the policy is installed with the **Keep Previous Configuration Definitions** option deselected, even some currently active connections that are allowed in the new policy can be cut. The applications must then reopen the connections.

- 3) Make sure that a current dynamic update package is imported and activated on the Management Server.

**Related tasks**

[Validate rules automatically](#) on page 887

## Policy installation warnings about ignored Automatic Proxy ARP options

Misconfigurations can result in warnings about ignored Automatic Proxy ARP options.

When installing a Firewall policy, the “Automatic Proxy ARP option in NAT rule <rule tag> is ignored: none of the CVI interfaces are directly connected to the network in question” warning is shown when proxy ARP has been defined, but there is no matching CVI network configured in the Firewall element. Automatic proxy ARP is used in NAT to handle ARP requests to the translated IP address for hosts in networks that are directly connected to the

Firewall. This warning can be due to an incorrect IP address or netmask setting, or the (not directly connected) Network in question missing from the Routing tree. It can also result from selecting the option for a NAT rule that involves an IP address for which the Firewall cannot act as an ARP proxy.

Related settings can be configured in NAT rules, in a Server Pool element, and in the Engine Editor for the Firewall element.

#### Related concepts

[Configuring interfaces for Firewalls](#) on page 531

[Getting started with routing](#) on page 693

[Getting started with outbound traffic management](#) on page 731

[Getting started with NAT rules](#) on page 831

## Troubleshoot rules

There are several possible causes and solutions for problems with rules in policies.

### Policy validation for troubleshooting rules

You can automatically validate a policy and check the rules for invalid configurations, for example, if policy installation fails.

#### Related tasks


[Validate rules automatically](#) on page 887

## Troubleshoot traffic that is blocked even though rules allow ANY Service

The possible causes and solutions depend on the engine role when a connection that you want to allow is stopped.

In IPS policies, Access rules allow all connections by default. If a connection you want to allow is stopped because of an IPS Access rule, your Access rules contain a specific rule that stops these connections.

In Firewall and Layer 2 Firewall Access rules, even if you set the Source, Destination, and Service to ANY and set the rule to allow the traffic, certain connections might still be discarded.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Use a Protocol Agent to allow connections with a protocol that assigns ports dynamically. The Protocol Agent enables the Firewall to track the assigned port.




- 2) Make sure that there is a matching rule with Continue as the action further up in the rule table with a Service in which the correct Protocol Agent is used if you want to use a Protocol Agent in a rule with ANY as the Service.
- 3) Add your own rules as necessary.  
The Firewall Template contains a rule that does uses a Protocol Agent for some, but not all protocols that use a dynamic port assignment.
- 4) If you must allow connections in your network for some application that implements TCP incorrectly, you might need to adjust or even disable connection tracking in the Access rules for those connections.  
Connections that violate the standard TCP connection sequence are dropped due to connection tracking. We recommend that you disable logging for rules that have connection tracking set to off, because such rules create a log entry for each packet.

#### Related tasks

[Define Action options for the Allow action in Firewall Access rules](#) on page 870

## Troubleshoot false positives in the Inspection Policy

There are several possible causes and solutions when the Inspection Policy produces alerts or terminates traffic that you consider to be normal.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) If a Situation is not valid in your environment under any conditions, change the action for the Situation to **Permit** on the **Rules** tab.
- 2) If a Situation is not valid between some hosts, add an Exception for the Source, Destination, and Situation that produce false positives. Then set the action to **Permit**. This editing can be done manually or based on a log entry through its right-click menu.
- 3) If a custom Situation produces false positives, adjust the parameters in the Situation to better match the traffic pattern that you want to detect.

## Enable passthrough for PPTP traffic

You might need to specifically allow Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol (PPTP) traffic if you use PPTP tunneling.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) To allow PPTP passthrough, add matching Access rules with the following two services:
  - The TCP Service for PPTP. The default Service element for PPTP uses the standard destination port 1723. Check the actual port used and create a Service with a different port, if necessary.
  - The IP Service for GE (IP protocol 47).
- 2) Make sure that the GRE traffic is not matched against any dynamic NAT rule, including the dynamic NAT rule required to load-balance connections between NetLinks in a Multi-Link configuration.  
Use static NAT instead if IP address translation is required or configure the communicating applications to encapsulate the traffic in TCP or UDP (NAT traversal mode).  
  
Dynamic NAT cannot be applied because it uses ports to track connections using the same IP address. GRE works directly on top of IP and does not have the concept of ports, so it is not possible to do the same with GRE. It requires a static translation that forms a fixed one-to-one relationship between an original and translated IP address. Use a static IP address to IP address or network to same-size network mapping in the NAT rules.  
  
Even with static NAT, some PPTP implementations require extra setup (for example, encapsulation of the packets) to work correctly when IP addresses are translated.

## Troubleshoot traffic that is incorrectly stopped by the firewall

The Firewall might incorrectly stop traffic that you want to allow. To check possible configuration errors, use log entries to locate the correct policy.

**Steps** For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) In the Logs view, check whether the connection is logged.
  - Add a quick filter for both the source and destination IP address of the traffic you want to allow in the **Query** pane and click **Apply**.
  - If the logs show that the connection is discarded or refused by a rule, click the **Rule Tag** link in the log entry to check the rule.
- 2) Check the Access rules and NAT rules of the active policy for rules that match the same source, destination, and service.
  - a) Open the **Search Rules** pane through the policy view's toolbar, then drag and drop the corresponding elements to the search fields at the bottom of the rule table.
  - b) Select **Show Only Matching Rules** from **Options** in the search pane.

- c) Deselect **Do Not Match ANY** from **Options** in the search pane.
  - d) If several rules are shown, the topmost rule is the one that is applied, unless the **Source VPN** cell (in IPv4 Access rules) has a definition that does not match. The other cells are not used for matching, but define options for what happens when traffic does match.
- 3) If the first matching Access rule is set to allow the traffic, check that other parts of the rule are correct:
    - Some protocols require the correct Protocol Agent, which is set by including the correct Service with the correct Protocol attached. In some cases, you might need to change the options of the Protocol Agent.
    - ANY rules do not use most Protocol Agents by default.
    - You can create new Services for any source or destination port or port range as needed.
    - The Connection Tracking Action options define if stateful inspection is used and how strict the checks are. Connection tracking allows NAT rules to be applied to the connection and a rule table where reply packets do not need to be separately allowed. The Firewall checks that the communications follow the standards of the protocol used and discards invalid communications. If invalid communications must be allowed, you might need to adjust connection tracking options.
  - 4) If there is a matching NAT rule, make sure that they are applied correctly. Particularly, dynamic NAT must only be used for protocols that work on top of TCP or UDP, since dynamic NAT uses ports to track the translated connections.
  - 5) Check your routing configuration. If Routing is incorrectly configured on the Firewall, packets can be dropped because the Firewall has no route where to send them.

#### Related concepts

[Getting started with routing](#) on page 693

[Protocol elements and how they work](#) on page 905

[Alert log messages for troubleshooting](#) on page 1347

#### Related tasks

[Define Action options for the Allow action in Firewall Access rules](#) on page 870

[Troubleshoot traffic that is blocked even though rules allow ANY Service](#) on page 1392

## Troubleshooting packets incorrectly dropped by antispoofing

You can add exceptions to antispoofing if traffic that should be allowed is incorrectly dropped as spoofed.

The antispoofing rules are automatically generated based on your routing configuration. Generally, traffic is only allowed if the IP address seen in the communications corresponds to the IP address space that is defined for routing through that interface in the Routing tree. Normally, communications require this routing information in any case for any reply packets to be correctly routed. In cases where communications are one way, however, you can make exceptions to the antispoofing in the Antispoofing tree.

By default, the antispoofing tree is read by selecting the most specific entry defined. For example, a definition of a single IP address is selected over a definition of a whole network. If some IP address must be allowed access

through two or more different interfaces, the definition for each interface must be at the same level of detail for the IP address in question.

If Interface A contains a Host element for 192.168.10.101 and Interface B contains a Network element for 192.168.10.0/24, connections from 192.168.10.101 are considered spoofed if they enter through Interface B. If this behavior is not wanted, the Host element must be added also under Interface B (in addition to the Network element already included).

The preceding behavior can be changed by setting the more general setting (network) as **Absolute** through its right-click menu in the antispoofing tree. This setting allows the address through the interface even if there is a more specific definition attached to some other interface.

Antispoofing also discards packets that are in a routing loop: if the Firewall accepts a packet, but then receives the exact same packet again through a different interface, the Firewall drops it. This behavior does not affect communications, but saves the Firewall and other equipment in your network from handling the same packet over and over again until it finally expires. If so, you must correct the routing in your network. Often, routing loops are indicated by “NIC index changed” information in logs that discard the connection. The same packet enters the Firewall a second time, but through a different interface - usually because the device where the Firewall is configured to send the packet routes the packet right back to the Firewall.

## Troubleshooting unsupported definitions in IPv6 Access rules

Using elements that do not contain an IPv6 address in the Source and Destination fields of the IPv6 Access rules causes an error message indicating the rule is invalid.

Elements that contain only an IPv4 address cannot be used. Make sure that all elements used in the Source and Destination field of the IPv6 Access Rules contain an IPv6 address.

# Troubleshooting reporting

## Contents

- [Error messages for reports](#) on page 1397
- [Troubleshoot report generation](#) on page 1397
- [Troubleshoot reports with empty sections or incomplete data](#) on page 1398

There are some common problems that you might encounter when generating reports from raw statistical and log data stored on the Log Server.

## Error messages for reports

Error messages for reports are shown in the **Comment** column of the **Stored Reports** view. Check the status of the report task there before you proceed with the troubleshooting.


### Related tasks

[Troubleshoot report generation](#) on page 1397

[Troubleshoot reports with empty sections or incomplete data](#) on page 1398

## Troubleshoot report generation

There are some common causes and solutions for problems with generating reports.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) If the report generation seems to work, but you cannot find it in the **Stored Reports** view, you might have created the report without selecting the **Stored** option. Try creating the report again and make sure that you have selected all outputs you want to produce.
- 2) If the report generation does not begin, and there is no error indicated, you might have defined a start time that is in the future. The delay in the **Start Earliest** field can affect when report generation begins. Check the start time for the report task. The time is interpreted according to the clock of the computer you are using to run the Management Client. Make sure that the time and time zone settings are correct.

- 3) If the “out of memory” error appears, check if you have placed one or more IP address-based top rate items under progress sections in the Report Design:
  - Generating reports with such a design consumes large amounts of memory. The report collects the full progress information for every IP address that appears in the logs over the chosen period. Any unnecessary data is discarded only after the top items are selected at the completion of the report task.
  - To reduce the memory load, use a Drill-down top rate design. The Drill-down top rate design first finds the top IP addresses and then gets the progress information about those IP addresses.
  - Memory consumption can also be reduced by restricting the amount of data included in the report (for example, set a shorter time range).
- 4) If the “unreachable server” error is shown, a Log Server is not running or is not reachable from the Management Server. If there are Log Server elements that do not represent any physical, running Log Server, those Log Servers might cause this error. Select the **Exclude This Log Server from Statistics and Reporting** option in the properties of the Log Server elements.




**CAUTION:** Be careful when excluding Log Servers from reporting. If you select this setting for a Log Server that is actively used, there is no warning that the reports are missing parts of the log data.

## Troubleshoot reports with empty sections or incomplete data


---

There are several possible causes and solutions when reports are generated, but the reports contain empty sections or incorrect data.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) If sections show a “No Data” message, check that the log data that the section requires is in the active log data directory of your Log Servers. Archived logs are not included in reporting.
  - a) Open the **Logs** view.
  - b) Make sure only **Active Log Data** is selected for all Log Servers on the **Sources** tab.
  - c) Select the same time period and filter that you used in the report, and click **Apply**.

The logs shown correspond to the log data available for generating the logs. Also take note of the following point.

- 2) If you are only missing information about traffic volumes (for example, **Traffic by Source IP**) check your Access rules. Traffic information is available only for connections that match rules for which you collect accounting information.
    - The collected accounting information is shown in the **Logs** view for log entries that have “Connection Closed” as their Event (see the **Details** pane for those entries).
- 
- Note:** Connection closing might not be logged at all, depending on the logging options of your Access rules.
- If accounting data has not been collected at all, traffic volumes are unknown and the report sections on traffic volumes return “No Data”.
    - If only some rules collect accounting data, only the traffic that matches those rules is included in the report sections on traffic volumes.
    - Alternatively, the report items listed under **Counters** can be used to generate reports on traffic volumes. The data for these items comes from stored summaries of the statistical data that you can view as live statistics in an Overview. This data is always stored and includes information about all traffic.
    - To start collecting information about traffic volumes from now on.
  - 3) If you are missing all data from one or more Log Servers, make sure that the **Exclude This Log Server from Statistics and Reporting** option is not selected. Log Servers with this option selected are ignored in all reporting.
  - 4) The time range you enter is interpreted according to the clock and time zone setting of the computer you are using to run the Management Client. If the clock and time zone are not correctly set in the operating system, the report period might be different from what you intend.

#### Related tasks

[Define logging options for Ethernet rules](#) on page 864





# Troubleshooting upgrades

## Contents

- [Troubleshoot upgrade failure because of running services](#) on page 1401
- [Respond to Security Management Center installation failed messages](#) on page 1401

There are some common problems that you might encounter when upgrading SMC components.

## Troubleshoot upgrade failure because of running services

---

Troubleshoot when you are unable to upgrade because the upgrade reports that some services are still running.

### Steps

- 1) In the Windows environment, check the **Services** window and stop any SMC services that are still running (Management Server, Log Server, or Web Portal Server).
- 2) If all Services are stopped in the Windows **Services** window, but the upgrade still reports that services are still running, follow these steps:
  - a) Set the services to **Manual startup**.
  - b) Restart the computer.

## Respond to Security Management Center installation failed messages

---

If any anomaly is detected during the installation or upgrade, you might see the “Security Management Center installation failed” message.

## Steps

1) To find the cause of the problem:

a) Check the installation log in the installation directory for messages regarding the upgrade.



**Note:** If you installed the Management Server in the C:\Program Files\Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center directory in Windows, some of the program data might be stored in the C:\ProgramData\Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center directory.

b) If you are skipping versions, check the [Release Notes](#) for the version you are installing, and make sure the upgrade that you attempted is possible. The Release Notes also list any known issues that can cause errors during the upgrade.

2) To solve problems indicated:

a) Missing files are one of the most common errors. Files might be missing if you copy installation source files manually. Make sure that you have copied all necessary installation source files and folders, and run the installation again. If you have not checked the integrity of the installation files, compare the checksum of your local files to the correct checksum.

b) Start the component in question. The message is shown for many types of errors, and the component might still be able to run without problems.

c) If you are unable to get the component running, uninstall the existing installation and install the component as a new installation. To upgrade, you can restore elements from a Management Server backup. You can restore a backup taken with the previous version on the upgraded SMC. See the [Release Notes](#) for any version-specific limitations or exceptions.

### Related tasks

[Obtain SMC installation files](#) on page 1321

# Troubleshooting VPNs


## Contents

- [Find VPN issues](#) on page 1403
- [Information about IPsec tunnels in logs](#) on page 1403
- [VPN certificate issues](#) on page 1404
- [Problems with VPNs with external gateways](#) on page 1405
- [Stonesoft VPN Client connection issues](#) on page 1406
- [If traffic does not use the Route-Based VPN](#) on page 1407

There are some common problems that you might encounter when creating and managing VPNs.

## Find VPN issues

The Management Client has automatic VPN validation that checks the settings you have selected are compatible with each other.

**Steps**  For more details about the product and how to configure features, click **Help** or press **F1**.

- 1) Right-click the Policy-Based VPN element or the Route-Based VPN element and select **Preview VPN** or **Edit VPN**. The **VPN Editing** view opens in preview or edit mode.
- 2) Switch to the **Issues** tab. If the tab is not visible, select **≡ Menu > View > Panels > Issues**.
- 3) If issues are displayed, read the descriptions and fix the problems that are described.

## Information about IPsec tunnels in logs

The Firewall logs contain information about IPsec tunnel negotiations.

Log messages related to IPsec tunnel negotiations contain the value **IPsec** in the **Facility** field. You can use this value to filter logs for viewing IPsec messages. The **IKE Cookie** and **IPsec SPI** fields contain identifiers related to each particular VPN instance, which helps further in reading and filtering the logs. The **Situation** and **Information Message** fields include the actual VPN-related events. If possible, examine logs from the devices at both ends of the IPsec tunnel for more information.



**Tip:** Right-click a VPN log entry and select **Search Related Events** to see logs related to the same IPsec VPN negotiation.

You can collect more detailed information by enabling the IPsec diagnostics. For VPN clients, also enable authentication and DHCP relay diagnostics.

Log messages generated by Access rules might also contain relevant information. These logs contain information about the connections that the gateway processes, and whether policy-based VPN traffic is directed correctly to VPN tunnels by the policy. Log messages generated by Access rules are not included if you are filtering the logs to only show IPsec logs.

A normal IPsec tunnel negotiation proceeds as follows:

- 1) The negotiations start when a connection matches a rule in the Firewall Policy that triggers the VPN negotiation (or a similar mechanism at the other end).
- 2) The gateway at the source end of the connection or the VPN client (the *initiator*, I) contacts the gateway at the other end (the *responder*, R). The gateways establish trust and exchange keys in the IKE Phase 1 negotiations.
- 3) If Phase 1 negotiation succeeds, IKE Phase 2 negotiations begin. At this stage, the gateways agree on further settings used for handling the connection.
- 4) If Phase 2 negotiations succeed, the VPN tunnel is ready and ESP or AH packets (the actual traffic) can be seen in the logs. New connections that are opened through the VPN are logged using a VPN-specific log message “New Connection Through VPN.”

#### Related concepts

[IPsec VPN log messages](#) on page 1501

[Monitoring policy-based VPNs](#) on page 1222

#### Related tasks

[Enable or disable diagnostics on Firewalls](#) on page 330

## VPN certificate issues

Your VPN Gateway always needs a certificate if VPN clients connect to it. In a site-to-site VPN, certificates are required when the VPN Profile used includes a certificate-based authentication method (ECDSA signatures, RSA signatures, or DSS (DSA) signatures).

### Certificate acceptance

By default, the gateways only accept certificates signed by your Management Server. To accept certificates from other sources, you must define the Certificate Authority (CA) that signed the certificate as trusted. By default, all Gateways and all VPNs accept any valid CA that you have configured. You can configure the trusted CAs at the Gateway level and at the VPN level. A CA must be trusted on both levels to be accepted as a trusted CA for a VPN.

## Creating, signing, renewing, transferring to gateways

Internally signed certificates are created, uploaded to the engines, and renewed automatically if automatic certificate management is enabled for the NGFW Engine.

You can manually create certificate requests, import certificates, and sign certificate requests in the **VPN Configuration** view under the **Other Elements > Certificates** branch of the tree. Any certificate request you create is, by default, also immediately signed using the internal CA and uploaded to the engine. To disable this action (for example, to sign the certificate using an external CA), you must deactivate this option in the new certificate request you create.

To sign or upload a certificate, display the certificates, then select **Tools** and the corresponding option.

### Related concepts

[VPN certificates and how they work](#) on page 1231

[Problems with certificates](#) on page 1357

### Related tasks

[Define additional VPN certificate authorities](#) on page 1233

[Define trusted CAs for a gateway](#) on page 1175

[Define trusted CAs for a VPN](#) on page 1190

## Problems with VPNs with external gateways

There are some common problems and solutions when you create a VPN with an external gateway.

Both policy-based VPNs and the Route-Based VPN can form IPsec VPN tunnels with any other fully IPsec compliant device. Lists of VPN solutions that have been tested to be compatible are published by ICSA labs (<https://www.icsalabs.com>).



**Note:** Make sure that you have successfully installed or refreshed the policy on all affected Firewalls after you have changed any part of the VPN configuration.

When creating a VPN with an external gateway:

- There are no settings that always work with a device of a certain brand and model. Most IPsec settings depend on user preference and there are many alternative settings that you can use, regardless of the type of gateway.
- Make sure that all VPN settings are the same at both ends (for both gateways at both ends: typically, four definitions in all).
- Make sure that matching networks and netmasks are defined at both ends. In the SMC, all networks you want to be accessible through the VPN must be placed in a Site element attached to the correct Gateway element. The networks defined must be identical at the other end.
- One commonly missed setting is the SA (Security Association) setting, which can be per net or per host. Some gateways might not have an explicit setting for the SA setting. Find out the setting used.
- For third-party devices, check for parameters that are set in the VPN configuration in the Management Client but not on the other device. Find out the default settings used.

- The problem might be due to overlapping, but mismatching lifetime or encryption domain in the SMC, the IP address definitions in Site elements under the following conditions:
  - The VPN works when the connection is initiated from one end, but not when initiated from the other.
  - The Firewall's policy has rules for both ways.

## Stonesoft VPN Client connection issues

If you experience connection issues, there are several troubleshooting processes to follow.

Mobile VPNs are only supported in policy-based VPNs. It is not possible to create a mobile VPN in the Route-Based VPN.

If NAT is used and the configuration download succeeds, but the the Stonesoft VPN Client cannot connect to the VPN Gateway, follow these troubleshooting steps:

- 1) If NAT is done between the Stonesoft VPN Client and the Firewall, set the Contact Address for interfaces that are used as a VPN endpoint. The Contact Address tells the VPN clients the external NATed address they must contact.
- 2) Refresh the Firewall Policy and make sure the Stonesoft VPN Client downloads a new configuration from the engine.

If NAT is configured to translate the Stonesoft VPN Client address, but NAT is not done, check the following:

- In the VPN properties, make sure that the **Apply NAT to traffic that uses this VPN** option is selected. NAT is only done if the option is selected.
- Make sure that the NAT rules are correct. Usually, NAT is performed using the NAT Pool address range defined for the Firewall element in the **VPN > Advanced** branch in the Engine Editor. The same traffic must not match any of the NAT rules in the Firewall's policy. The only exception is a rule that specifically defines that no NAT is performed on this traffic to prevent subsequent NAT rules from matching.

For any general problems:

- Make sure that the Stonesoft VPN Client version is up to date. Older clients might have known issues that prevent correct operation and might not support all features configured for the gateway.
- Check for any VPN-capable devices between the Firewall/VPN device and the Stonesoft VPN Client. These devices can sometimes attempt to take part in the VPN negotiations.
- Check the Firewall logs for information about mobile VPN connections.

### Related concepts

[Define contact IP addresses](#) on page 129

[Information about IPsec tunnels in logs](#) on page 1403

# If traffic does not use the Route-Based VPN

---

There are some common causes and solutions when traffic does not use the Route-Based VPN.

It is possible to create a half-configured Route-Based VPN by configuring only the Tunnel Interfaces and the Routing. This configuration creates a black-hole routing situation in which traffic routed to the Tunnel Interfaces is silently discarded. No warnings are given when you install the Firewall policy, as the configuration is treated as valid. Traffic is only sent into the Route-Based VPN after you define the Route-Based VPN tunnels.

## Related concepts

[Default elements for the Route-Based VPN](#) on page 1214





# APPENDICES

## Contents

- [Command line tools](#) on page 1411
- [Default communication ports](#) on page 1433
- [Working with expressions](#) on page 1441
- [Predefined Aliases](#) on page 1445
- [Situation Context parameters](#) on page 1447
- [Regular expression syntax](#) on page 1451
- [SNMP traps and MIBs](#) on page 1463
- [Schema updates for external LDAP servers](#) on page 1473
- [Log fields](#) on page 1475
- [Keyboard shortcuts](#) on page 1513
- [Multicasting](#) on page 1517
- [TCP/IP protocol headers](#) on page 1523
- [ASCII character codes](#) on page 1527



# Command line tools

### Contents

- [Security Management Center commands](#) on page 1411
- [Forcepoint NGFW Engine commands](#) on page 1424
- [Server Pool Monitoring Agent commands](#) on page 1430

There are command line tools for the SMC and the NGFW Engines.

## Security Management Center commands

SMC commands include commands for the Management Server, Log Server, and Web Portal Server.

Most of the commands are found in the <installation directory>/bin/ directory. In Windows, the command line tools are \*.bat script files. In Linux, the files are \*.sh scripts.



**Note:** If you installed the Management Server in the C:\Program Files\Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center directory in Windows, some of the program data is stored in the C:\ProgramData\Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center directory. Command line tools can be found in the C:\Program Files\Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center\bin directory.

Commands that require parameters must be run through the command line (cmd.exe in Windows). Commands that do not require parameters can alternatively be run through a graphical user interface, and can be added as shortcuts during installation.



**CAUTION:** `login` and `password` parameters are optional. Giving them as command-line parameters can pose a security vulnerability. Do not enter logon and password information unless explicitly prompted to do so by a command line tool.

**Table 161: Security Management Center commands**

Command	Description
<b>ambr-crl</b> (SMC Appliance only) [-a ADD --add=ADD] [-d DELETE --delete=DELETE] [-q --query] [-i IMPORT_CRL --import=IMPORT_CRL] [-c --clean] [-v] [-l <log file path>] [-h --help]	Fetches the certificate revocation lists (CRLs) for the CA certificates used by the appliance maintenance and bug remediation (AMBR) utilities. -a ADD, --add=ADD adds a CRL distribution point URL in the form of http://<url>. -d DELETE, --delete=DELETE deletes a CRL distribution point URL. -q, --query lists CRL distribution points. -i IMPORT_CRL, --import=IMPORT_CRL imports a CRL from a file. -c, --clean removes existing CRLs before fetching new CRLs. -v increases the verbosity of the command. You can repeat this command up to two times (-vv or -v -v) to further increase the verbosity. -l <log file path> specifies the path to a log file. -h, --help displays information about the command.
<b>ambr-decrypt</b> (SMC Appliance only)	Decrypts an ambr patch; not normally used by administrators. <code>ambr-install</code> automatically decrypts patches.
<b>ambr-install &lt;patch&gt;</b> (SMC Appliance only) [-F --force] [-r --skip-revocation] [--no-backup] [--no-snapshot] [-v] [-l <log file path>] [-h --help]	Installs an ambr patch that has been loaded on the system. You can install multiple patches with a space between each patch name. -F, --force forces the reinstallation of the patch or patches. -r, --skip-revocation skips the certificate revocation checks. --no-backup does not create a configuration backup. --no-snapshot does not create a recovery snapshot. -v increases the verbosity of the command. You can repeat this command up to two times to further increase the verbosity. -l <log file path> specifies the path to a log file. -h, --help displays information about the command.
<b>ambr-load &lt;patch&gt;</b> (SMC Appliance only) [-f IN_FILES --file=IN_FILES] [-r --skip-revocation] [-v] [-l <log file path>] [-h --help]	Loads an ambr patch onto the system from either the patch server or from the local file system. A loaded patch means that the file is copied to the local file system, but not installed. You can load multiple patches with a space between each patch name. -f IN_FILES, --file=IN_FILES specifies the local file to load. -r, --skip-revocation skips the certificate revocation checks. -v increases the verbosity of the command. You can repeat this command up to two times to further increase the verbosity. -l <log file path> specifies the path to a log file. -h, --help displays information about the command.

Command	Description
<pre>ambr-query (SMC Appliance only) [-l --local] [-w --web] [-a --all] [-i --info &lt;patch&gt;] [-L &lt;log file path&gt;] [-v] [-h --help]</pre>	<p>Displays patch information including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• What is loaded or installed on the system</li> <li>• A list of available updates from the patch server</li> <li>• Detailed information about a specific patch</li> </ul> <p><code>-l, --local</code> displays a description of the installed or loaded patches on the SMC appliance. Displays the same information as the default <code>ambr-query</code> command.</p> <p><code>-w, --web</code> displays a list of applicable updates that are available on the webserver for the current installation. Patch dependencies and the most direct update path are displayed with this option.</p> <p><code>-a, --all</code> displays a list of all updates available on the webserver for the current installation.</p> <p><code>-i, --info &lt;patch&gt;</code> displays description information about the patch. You can get information about multiple patches in one command by separating the patch names with a space.</p> <p><code>-v</code> increases the verbosity of the command. You can repeat this command up to two times to further increase the verbosity.</p> <p><code>-L &lt;log file path&gt;</code> specifies the path to the file where log messages are written.</p> <p><code>-h, --help</code> displays information about the command.</p>
<pre>ambr-unload &lt;patch&gt; (SMC Appliance only) [-a --all] [-v] [-l &lt;log file path&gt;] [-h --help]</pre>	<p>Unloads an <code>ambr</code> patch from the system. The command deletes the patch file if it has not been installed, but it does not uninstall the patch.</p> <p>You can unload multiple patches with a space between each patch name.</p> <p><code>-a, --all</code> unloads all loaded patches.</p> <p><code>-v</code> increases the verbosity of the command. You can repeat this command up to two times to further increase the verbosity.</p> <p><code>-l &lt;log file path&gt;</code> specifies the path to a log file.</p> <p><code>-h, --help</code> displays information about the command.</p>
<pre>ambr-verify (SMC Appliance only)</pre>	<p>Verifies the signature of a patch file; not normally used by administrators. <code>ambr-install</code> automatically verifies patches.</p>


Command	Description
<pre>sgArchiveExport [host=&lt;Management Server Address[\Domain&gt;] [login=&lt;login name&gt;] [pass=&lt;password&gt;] [format=&lt;exporter format: CSV or XML&gt;] i=&lt;input files and/or directories&gt; [o=&lt;output file name&gt;] [f=&lt;filter file name&gt;] [e=&lt;filter expression&gt;] [-h -help -?] [-v]</pre>	<p>Displays and exports logs from archive. Supports CEF, LEEF, and ESM formats in addition to CSV and XML.</p> <p>This command is only available on the Log Server. The operation checks permissions for the supplied administrator account from the Management Server to prevent unauthorized access to the logs.</p> <p>Enclose details in double quotes if they contain spaces.</p> <p><code>host</code> specifies the address of the Management Server. If the parameter is not defined, the loopback address (localhost) is used.</p> <p><code>login</code> defines the user name for the account that is used for this operation. If this parameter is not defined, the user name root is used.</p> <p><code>pass</code> defines the password for the user account.</p> <p><code>format</code> defines the file format for the output file. If this parameter is not defined, the XML format is used.</p> <p><code>i</code> defines the source from which the logs are exported. Can be a folder or a file. The processing recurses into subfolders.</p> <p><code>o</code> defines the destination file where the logs are exported. If this parameter is not defined, the output is displayed on screen.</p> <p><code>f</code> defines a file that contains the filtering criteria you want to use for filtering the log data. You can export log filters individually in the Management Client through <b>Tools &gt; Save for Command Line Tools</b> in the filter's right-click menu.</p> <p><code>e</code> allows you to enter a filter expression manually (using the same syntax as exported filter files).</p> <p><code>-h</code>, <code>-help</code>, or <code>-?</code> displays information about using the script.</p> <p><code>-v</code> displays verbose output on the command execution.</p> <p><b>Example (exports logs from one full day to a file using a filter):</b> <code>sgArchiveExport login=admin pass=abc123 i=C:\Program Files\Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center\data/archive/firewall/year2011/month12\. \sgB.day01\ f=C:\Program Files\Forcepoint\Stonesoft Management Center\export\MyExportedFilter.flp format=CSV o=MyExportedLogs.csv</code></p>
<pre>sgBackupLogSrv [pwd=&lt;password&gt;] [path=&lt;destpath&gt;]destpath [nodiskcheck] [comment=&lt;comment&gt;] [nofsstorage] [-h --help]</pre>	<p>Creates a backup of Log Server configuration data.</p> <p>The backup file is stored in the <code>&lt;installation directory&gt;/backups/</code> directory.</p> <p>Twice the size of the log database is required on the destination drive. Otherwise, the operation fails.</p> <p><code>pwd</code> enables encryption.</p> <p><code>path</code> defines the destination path.</p> <p><code>nodiskcheck</code> ignores the free disk check before creating the backup.</p> <p><code>comment</code> allows you to enter a comment for the backup. The maximum length of a comment is 60 characters.</p> <p><code>nofsstorage</code> creates a backup only of the Log Server configuration without the log data.</p> <p><code>-h</code> or <code>--help</code> displays information about using the script.</p>


Command	Description
<pre>sgBackupMgtSrv [pwd=&lt;password&gt;] [path=&lt;destpath&gt;] [nodiskcheck] [comment=&lt;comment&gt;] [-h --help]</pre>	<p>Creates a complete backup of the Management Server (including both the local configuration and the stored information in the configuration database). The backup file is stored in the &lt;installation directory&gt;/backups/ directory.</p> <p>Twice the size of the Management Server database is required on the destination drive. Otherwise, the operation fails.</p> <p>pwd enables encryption.</p> <p>path defines the destination path.</p> <p>nodiskcheck ignores the free disk check before creating the backup.</p> <p>comment allows you to enter a comment for the backup. The maximum length of a comment is 60 characters.</p> <p>-h or --help displays information about using the script.</p> <p>Also see <code>sgRestoreMgtBackup</code> and <code>sgRecoverMgtDatabase</code>.</p>
<pre>sgCertifyLogSrv [host=&lt;Management Server Address[\Domain]&gt;</pre>	<p>Contacts the Management Server and creates a certificate for the Log Server to allow secure communications with other SMC components. Renewing an existing certificate does not require changing the configuration of any other SMC components.</p> <p>host specifies the address of the Management Server. If the parameter is not defined, the loopback address (localhost) is used.</p> <p>Domain specifies the administrative Domain the Log Server belongs to if the system is divided into administrative Domains. If the Domain is not specified, the Shared Domain is used.</p> <p>Stop the Log Server before running this command. Restart the server after running this command.</p>
<pre>sgCertifyMgtSrv [login=&lt;login name&gt;] [pass=&lt;password&gt;] [standby-server=&lt;name of additional Management Server&gt;] [active-server=&lt;IP address of active Management Server&gt;] [-nodisplay] [-h -help -?]</pre>	<p>Creates a certificate for the Management Server to allow secure communications between the SMC components. Renewing an existing certificate does not require changes on any other SMC components.</p> <p>In an environment with only one Management Server, or to certify the active Management Server, stop the Management Server before running the <code>sgCertifyMgtSrv</code> command. Run the command without parameters. Restart the Management Server after running this command.</p> <p>To certify an additional Management Server, stop the additional Management Server before running the <code>sgCertifyMgtSrv</code> command. The active Management Server must be running when you run this command. The management database is replicated to the additional Management Server during the certification. The additional Management Server must have a connection to the active Management Server when you run this command.</p> <p>[login=&lt;login name&gt;] defines the user name for the account that is used for this operation. If this parameter is not defined, the user name root is used.</p> <p>[pass=&lt;password&gt;] defines the password for the user account.</p> <p>[standby-server] specifies the name of the additional Management Server to be certified.</p> <p>[active-server] specifies the IP address of the active Management Server.</p> <p>-nodisplay sets a text-only console.</p> <p>-h, -help, or -? displays information about using the script.</p>



Command	Description
<pre>sgCertifyWebPortalSrv [host=&lt;Management Server Address[\Domain]&gt;]</pre>	<p>Contacts the Management Server and creates a certificate for the Web Portal Server to allow secure communications with other SMC components. Renewing an existing certificate does not require changing the configuration of any other SMC components.</p> <p><code>host</code> specifies the address of the Management Server. If the parameter is not defined, the loopback address (<code>localhost</code>) is used.</p> <p><code>Domain</code> specifies the administrative Domain the Web Portal Server belongs to if the system is divided into administrative Domains. If the Domain is not specified, the Shared Domain is used.</p> <p>Stop the Web Portal Server before running this command. Restart the server after running this command.</p>
<pre>sgChangeMgtIPOnLogSrv &lt;IP address&gt;</pre>	<p>Changes the Management Server's IP address in the Log Server's local configuration to the IP address you give as a parameter.</p> <p>Use this command if you change the Management Server's IP address. Restart the Log Server service after running this command.</p>
<pre>sgChangeMgtIPOnMgtSrv &lt;IP address&gt;</pre>	<p>Changes the Management Server's IP address in the local configuration to the IP address you give as a parameter.</p> <p>Use this command if you change the Management Server's IP address. Restart the Management Server service after running this command.</p>
<pre>sgClient</pre>	<p>Starts a locally installed Management Client.</p>
<pre>sgCreateAdmin</pre>	<p>Creates an unrestricted (superuser) administrator account.</p> <p>The Management Server must be stopped before running this command.</p>




Command	Description
<pre>sgExport [host=&lt;Management Server Address[\Domain]&gt;] [login=&lt;login name&gt;] [pass=password] file=&lt;file path and name&gt; [type=&lt;all nw ips sv rb al vpn&gt;] [name=&lt;element name 1, element name 2, ...&gt;] [recursion] [-system] [-h -help -?]</pre>	<p>Exports elements stored on the Management Server to an XML file.</p> <p>Enclose details in double quotes if they contain spaces.</p> <p><code>host</code> specifies the address of the Management Server. If the parameter is not defined, the loopback address (localhost) is used.</p> <p><code>Domain</code> specifies the administrative Domain for this operation if the system is divided into administrative Domains. If the Domain is not specified, the Shared Domain is used.</p> <p><code>login</code> defines the user name for the account that is used for this operation. If this parameter is not defined, the user name root is used.</p> <p><code>pass</code> defines the password for the user account.</p> <p><code>file</code> defines the name and location of the export .zip file.</p> <p><code>type</code> specifies which types of elements are included in the export file:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>all</code> for all exportable elements</li> <li>• <code>nw</code> for network elements</li> <li>• <code>ips</code> for IPS elements</li> <li>• <code>sv</code> for services</li> <li>• <code>rb</code> for security policies</li> <li>• <code>al</code> for alerts</li> <li>• <code>vpn</code> for VPN elements.</li> </ul> <p><code>name</code> allows you to specify by name the elements that you want to export.</p> <p><code>recursion</code> includes referenced elements in the export, for example, the network elements used in a policy that you export.</p> <p><code>-system</code> includes any system elements that are referenced by the other elements in the export.</p> <p><code>-h</code>, <code>-help</code>, or <code>-?</code> displays information about using the script.</p>

Command	Description
<pre>sgHA [host=&lt;Management Server Address[\Domain]&gt;] [login=&lt;login name&gt;] [pass=&lt;password&gt;] [master=&lt;Management Server used as master server for the operation&gt;] [-set-active] [-set-standby] [-check] [-retry] [-force] [-restart] [-h -help -?]</pre>	<p>Controls active and standby Management Servers.</p> <p>If you want to perform a full database synchronization, use the <code>sgOnlineReplication</code> command.</p> <p><code>host</code> specifies the address of the Management Server. If the parameter is not defined, the loopback address (<code>localhost</code>) is used.</p> <p><code>Domain</code> specifies the administrative Domain for this operation if the system is divided into administrative Domains. If the Domain is not specified, the Shared Domain is used.</p> <p><code>login</code> defines the user name for the account that is used for this operation. If this parameter is not defined, the user name <code>root</code> is used.</p> <p><code>pass</code> defines the password for the user account.</p> <p><code>master</code> defines the Management Server used as a master Management Server for the operation.</p> <p><code>-set-active</code> activates and locks all administrative Domains.</p> <p><code>-set-standby</code> deactivates and unlocks all administrative Domains.</p> <p><code>-check</code> checks that the Management Server's database is in sync with the master Management Server.</p> <p><code>-retry</code> retries replication if this has been stopped due to a recoverable error.</p> <p><code>-force</code> enforces the operation even if all Management Servers are not in sync.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;">  <b>Note:</b> This option can cause instability if used carelessly. </div> <p><code>-restart</code> restarts the specified Management Server.</p> <p><code>-h</code>, <code>-help</code>, or <code>-?</code> displays information about using the script.</p>
<pre>sgImport [host=&lt;Management Server Address[\Domain]&gt;] [login=&lt;login name&gt;] [pass=&lt;password&gt;] file=&lt;file path and name&gt; [-replace_all] [-h -help -?]</pre>	<p>Imports Management Server database elements from an XML file.</p> <p>When importing, existing (non-default) elements are overwritten if both the name and type match.</p> <p><code>host</code> specifies the address of the Management Server. If the parameter is not defined, the loopback address (<code>localhost</code>) is used.</p> <p><code>Domain</code> specifies the administrative Domain for this operation if the system is divided into administrative Domains. If the Domain is not specified, the Shared Domain is used.</p> <p><code>login</code> defines the user name for the account that is used for this operation. If this parameter is not defined, the user name <code>root</code> is used.</p> <p><code>pass</code> defines the password for the user account.</p> <p><code>file</code> defines the <code>.zip</code> file whose contents you want to import.</p> <p><code>-replace_all</code> ignores all conflicts by replacing all existing elements with new ones.</p> <p><code>-h</code>, <code>-help</code>, or <code>-?</code> displays information about using the script.</p>

Command	Description
<pre>sgImportExportUser [host=&lt;&lt;Management Server Address[\Domain]&gt;&gt;] [login=&lt;login name&gt;] [pass=password] action=&lt;import export&gt; file=&lt;file path and name&gt; [-h -help -?]</pre>	<p>Imports and exports a list of Users and User Groups in an LDIF file from/to a Management Server's internal LDAP database.</p> <p>To import User Groups, all User Groups in the LDIF file must be directly under the stonegate top-level group (dc=stonegate).</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;">  <b>CAUTION:</b> The user information in the export file is stored as plaintext. Handle the file securely. </div> <p><code>host</code> specifies the address of the Management Server. If the parameter is not defined, the loopback address (localhost) is used.</p> <p><code>Domain</code> specifies the administrative Domain for this operation if the system is divided into administrative Domains. If the Domain is not specified, the Shared Domain is used.</p> <p><code>login</code> defines the user name for the account that is used for this operation. If this parameter is not defined, the user name <code>root</code> is used.</p> <p><code>pass</code> defines the password for the user account.</p> <p><code>action</code> defines whether users are imported or exported.</p> <p><code>file</code> defines the file that is used for the operation.</p> <p><b>Example:</b> <code>sgImportExportUser login=admin pass=abc123 action=export file=c:\temp\exportedusers.ldif</code></p> <p><code>-h</code>, <code>-help</code>, or <code>-?</code> displays information about using the script.</p>
<pre>sgInfo SG_ROOT_DIR FILENAME [fast=&lt;timestamp&gt;] [list] [hprof=none limited all] [-nolog] [-client] [-h -help -?]</pre>	<p>Creates a .zip file that contains copies of configuration files and the system trace files. The resulting .zip file is stored in the logged on user's home directory. The file location is displayed on the last line of screen output. Provide the generated file to support for troubleshooting purposes.</p> <p><code>SG_ROOT_DIR</code> SMC installation directory.</p> <p><code>FILENAME</code> name of output file.</p> <p><code>fast</code> collects only traces that changed after the specified time stamp. Enter the time stamp in milliseconds or in the format <code>yyyy-MM-dd HH:mm:ss</code>. No other information is collected, except for threaddumps.</p> <p><code>[list]</code> only lists files. It does not create a .zip file or generate threaddumps.</p> <p><code>hprof</code> defines whether hprof memory dump files are included.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>none</code> does not include hprof memory dump files.</li> <li>• <code>limited</code> includes only hprof memory dump files that are created with <code>makeheap</code>.</li> <li>• <code>all</code> includes memory dump files that are created with <code>makeheap</code> and <code>java_pid</code>.</li> </ul> <p><code>-nolog</code> extended Log Server information is not collected.</p> <p><code>-client</code> collects traces only from the Management Client.</p> <p><code>-h</code>, <code>-help</code>, or <code>-?</code> displays information about using the script.</p>

Command	Description
<pre>sgOnlineReplication [active-server=&lt;name of active Management Server&gt;] [-nodisplay] [-h -help -?]</pre>	<p>Replicates the Management Server's database from the active Management Server to an additional Management Server.</p> <p>Stop the Management Server to which the database is replicated before running this command. Restart the Management Server after running this command.</p> <p>Use this script to replicate the database only in the following cases:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The additional Management Server's configuration has been corrupted.</li> <li>In new SMC installations if the automatic database replication between the Management Servers has not succeeded.</li> </ul> <p>Otherwise, synchronize the database through the Management Client.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; background-color: #f0f0f0;"> <p> <b>CAUTION:</b> This script also has parameters that are for the internal use of the Management Server only. Do not use this script with any parameters other than the ones listed here.</p> </div> <p><code>active-server</code> specifies the IP address of the active Management Server from which the Management database is replicated.</p> <p><code>-nodisplay</code> sets a text-only console.</p> <p><code>-h</code>, <code>-help</code>, or <code>-?</code> displays information about using the script.</p>
<pre>sgReinitializeLogServer</pre>	<p>Creates a Log Server configuration if the configuration file has been lost.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; background-color: #f0f0f0;"> <p> <b>Note:</b> This script is located in <code>&lt;installation directory&gt;/bin/install</code>.</p> </div>
<pre>sgRestoreArchive &lt;ARCHIVE_DIR&gt;</pre>	<p>Restores logs from archive files to the Log Server.</p> <p>This command is available only on the Log Server.</p> <p><code>ARCHIVE_DIR</code> is the number of the archive directory (0–31) from where the logs will be restored. By default, only archive directory 0 is defined. The archive directories can be defined in the <code>&lt;installation directory&gt;/data/LogServerConfiguration.txt</code> file: <code>ARCHIVE_DIR_ xx=PATH</code>.</p>
<pre>sgRestoreLogBackup [-pwd=&lt;password&gt;] [-backup=&lt;backup file name&gt;] [-nodiskcheck] [-overwrite-syslog-template] [-h -help]</pre>	<p>Restores the Log Server (logs or configuration files) from a backup file in the <code>&lt;installation directory&gt;/backups/</code> directory.</p> <p><code>-pwd</code> defines a password for encrypted backup.</p> <p><code>-backup</code> defines a name for the backup file.</p> <p><code>-nodiskcheck</code> ignores the free disk check before backup restoration.</p> <p><code>-overwrite-syslog-template</code> overwrites a syslog template file if found in the backup.</p> <p><code>-h</code> or <code>-help</code> displays information about using the script.</p>
<pre>sgRestoreMgtBackup [-pwd=&lt;password&gt;] [-backup=&lt;backup file name&gt;] [-import-license &lt;license file name&gt;] [-nodiskcheck] [-h -help]</pre>	<p>Restores the Management Server (database or configuration files) from a backup file in the <code>&lt;installation directory&gt;/backups/</code> directory.</p> <p><code>-pwd</code> defines a password for encrypted backup.</p> <p><code>-backup</code> defines a name for the backup file.</p> <p><code>-import-license</code> specifies a license file to import during the backup restoration.</p> <p><code>-nodiskcheck</code> ignores the free disk check before backup restoration.</p> <p><code>-h</code> or <code>-help</code> displays information about using the script.</p>

Command	Description
sgRevert	Reverts to the previous installation saved during the upgrade process. The previous installation can be restored at any time, even after a successful upgrade.  <b>Note:</b> This script is located in <installation directory>/bin/uninstall.
sgShowFingerPrint	Displays the CA certificate's fingerprint on the Management Server.
sgStartLogSrv	Starts the Log Server and its database.
sgStartMgtDatabase	Starts the Management Server's database. There is usually no need to use this script.
sgStartMgtSrv	Starts the Management Server and its database.
sgStartWebPortalSrv	Starts the Web Portal Server.
sgStopLogSrv	Stops the Log Server.
sgStopMgtSrv	Stops the Management Server and its database.
sgStopMgtDatabase	Stops the Management Server's database. There is usually no need to use this script.
sgStopWebPortalSrv	Stops the Web Portal Server.
sgStopRemoteMgtSrv [host=<Management Server address[\Domain]>] [login=<login name>] [pass=<password>] [-h -help -?]	Stops the Management Server service when run without arguments. To stop a remote Management Server service, provide the arguments to connect to the Management Server. host is the Management Server's host name if not localhost. login is an SMC administrator account for the logon. pass is the password for the administrator account. -h, -help, or -? displays information about using the script.

Command	Description
<pre>sgTextBrowser [host=&lt;Management Server address[\Domain]&gt;] [login=&lt;login name&gt;] [pass=&lt;password&gt;] [format=&lt;CSV XML&gt;] [o=&lt;output file&gt;] [f=&lt;filter file&gt;] [e=&lt;filter expression&gt;] [m=&lt;current stored&gt;] [limit=&lt;maximum number of unique records to fetch&gt;] [-h -help -?]</pre>	<p>Displays or exports current or stored logs.</p> <p>This command is available on the Log Server.</p> <p>Enclose the file and filter names in double quotes if they contain spaces.</p> <p><code>host</code> defines the address of the Management Server used for checking the logon information. If this parameter is not defined, Management Server is expected to be on the same host where the script is run. If Domains are in use, you can specify the Domain the Log Server belongs to. If <code>domain</code> is not specified, the Shared Domain is used.</p> <p><code>login</code> defines the user name for the account that is used for this export. If this parameter is not defined, the user name <code>root</code> is used.</p> <p><code>pass</code> defines the password for the user account used for this operation.</p> <p><code>format</code> defines the file format for the output file. If this parameter is not defined, the XML format is used.</p> <p><code>o</code> defines the destination output file where the logs will be exported. If this parameter is not defined, the output is displayed on screen.</p> <p><code>f</code> defines the exported filter file that you want to use for filtering the log data.</p> <p><code>e</code> defines the filter that you want to use for filtering the log data. Type the name as shown in the Management Client.</p> <p><code>m</code> defines whether you want to view or export logs as they arrive on the Log Server (current) or logs stored in the active storage directory (stored). If this option is not defined, the current logs are used.</p> <p><code>limit</code> defines the maximum number of unique records to be fetched. The default value is unlimited.</p> <p><code>-h</code>, <code>-help</code>, or <code>-?</code> displays information about using the script.</p>
<pre>smca-agent (SMC Appliance only)</pre>	<p>SMC uses it to exchange configuration data between SMC and the operating system; not normally used by administrators. The agent configures the NTP and SNMP daemons and sets the logon and SSH banners.</p>
<pre>smca-backup (SMC Appliance only) [-pwd &lt;password&gt;] [-comment &lt;comment&gt;] [-nodiskcheck] [-nofsstorage] [-nomlstorage] [-path &lt;destination&gt;] [-h --help]</pre>	<p>Creates a configuration backup of the operating system and includes an SMC backup.</p> <p><code>-pwd &lt;password&gt;</code> enables the encryption of the backup file and sets the password.</p> <p><code>-comment &lt;comment&gt;</code> adds a comment to the backup file name.</p> <p><code>-nodiskcheck</code> turns off the available disk space check.</p> <p><code>-nofsstorage</code> excludes the log files for the Log Server from the backup.</p> <p><code>-nomlstorage</code> excludes the SMC Appliance OS log files from the backup.</p> <p><code>-path &lt;destination&gt;</code> specifies a path for backup file storage. The default directory for backups is <code>/usr/local/forcepoint/smc/backups</code>.</p> <p><code>-h</code>, <code>--help</code> displays information about the command.</p>

Command	Description
<b>smca-cifs</b> (SMC Appliance only) [add] [remove] [-n <name>] [-s //<server>/<share>] [-u <username>] [-p <password>] [-d <domain>]	Configures the mounting of remote CIFS file shares on the SMC Appliance. add adds the CIFS share. remove removes the CIFS share. Use with the name option. -n <name> specifies the name of the share. -s //<server>/<share> specifies the server or IP address of the share. -u <username> specifies the user name to authenticate with the CIFS server to get access to the share. -p <password> specifies the password on remote system. -d <domain> specifies the domain of the share.
<b>smca-restore</b> (SMC Appliance only) [-pwd <password>] [-nodiskcheck] [-backup <filename>] [-overwrite-syslog-template] [-h -help]	Restores the SMC Appliance to the previous operational state. -pwd <password> specifies the password for decrypting an encrypted backup file. -nodiskcheck turns off the available disk space check. -backup <filename> specifies the backup file name. -overwrite-syslog-template overwrites any existing syslog templates in the log backup file. -h, --help displays information about the command.
<b>smca-rsync</b> (SMC Appliance only) [add] [modify] [remove] [enable] [disable] [list] [run] [-t task_id] [-i <source directory>] [-o <destination directory>] [-m <mode>] [-h -help]	Configures automated backup tasks. Typically used with the <code>smca-cifs</code> command to move backups off the appliance. add adds a backup task. You can specify an existing source and destination directories. If not specified, the default is <code>/usr/local/forcepoint/smc/backups/</code> . modify changes an existing backup task by its task ID. All attributes can be changed, except for the task ID. To change an attribute, use the appropriate option with a new value. remove removes an existing backup task by its task ID. enable enables an existing backup task by its task ID. disable disables an existing backup task by its task ID. list provides a list of all configured backup tasks. run runs all enabled backup tasks. -t task_id specifies the task ID. Use the list command to view the task IDs. -i <source directory> specifies the directory where the backups are stored when they are created. If omitted, the source directory defaults to the SMC backups directory <code>/usr/local/forcepoint/smc/backups/</code> . -o <destination directory> specifies the remote location to store the backups. -m <mode> specifies the rsync mode. You can indicate whether rsync appends or mirrors the source directory to the destination directory. Appending the directory means that existing files in the destination directory, that are not in the source directory or are newer than those files in the source directory, are not changed. If omitted, the mode defaults to append. -h, --help displays information about the command.

Command	Description
smca-system (SMC Appliance only) [toggle] [toggle-vcdrom] [mirror] [snapshot] [-f] [-n <name>] [-C --create] [-R --restore] [-D, --delete] [-h --help]	Manages recovery snapshots, alternate partition mirroring, and changing system partition boot preference. toggle restarts the appliance to the alternate partition. toggle-vcdrom sets the appliance's default boot option to the vcdrom. mirror mirrors the active system to the alternate system. snapshot manages recovery snapshots. Use with the create, restore, or delete options. -f forces the procedure, does not prompt for any confirmation. -n <name> specifies the name of the snapshot, used for mirror or snapshot operations. -C, --create creates a snapshot. Use with the snapshot command. -R, --restore restores the snapshot. Use with the snapshot command. -D, --delete deletes the snapshot. Use with the snapshot command. -h, --help displays information about the command.
smca-user (SMC Appliance only)	This utility is used by the SMC Appliance to keep user accounts in sync between the SMC and the operating system; not normally used by administrators.

## Forcepoint NGFW Engine commands

There are commands that can be run on the command line on Firewall, Layer 2 Firewall, IPS engines, or Master NGFW Engines.



**Note:** Using the Management Client is the recommended configuration method, as most of the same tasks can be done through it.




**Note:** All command line tools that are available for single NGFW Engines are also available for Virtual NGFW Engines that have the same role. However, there is no direct access to the command line of Virtual NGFW Engines. Commands to Virtual NGFW Engines must be sent from the command line of the Master NGFW Engine using the `se-virtual-engine` command.




Table 162: Forcepoint NGFW command line tools

Command	Engine role	Description
<pre>sg-blacklist show [-v] [-f FILENAME ]   add [ [-i FILENAME]  [src IP_ADDRESS/MASK] [src6 IPv6_ADDRESS/ PREFIX] [dst IP_ADDRESS/MASK] [dst6 IPv6_ADDRESS/ PREFIX] [proto {tcp udp icmp  NUM}] [srcport PORT {-PORT}] [dstport PORT {-PORT}] [duration NUM] ]   del [ [-i FILENAME]  [src IP_ADDRESS/MASK] [src6 IPv6_ADDRESS/ PREFIX] [dst IP_ADDRESS/MASK] [dst6 IPv6_ADDRESS/ PREFIX] [proto {tcp udp icmp  NUM}] [srcport PORT{-PORT}] [dstport PORT{-PORT}] [duration NUM] ]   iddel NODE_ID ID   flush</pre>	<p>Firewall</p> <p>Layer 2 Firewall</p> <p>IPS</p>	<p>Used to view, add, or delete active blacklist entries.</p> <p>The blacklist is applied as defined in Access Rules.</p> <p><code>show</code> displays the current active blacklist entries in format: engine node ID   blacklist entry ID   (internal)   entry creation time   (internal)   address and port match   originally set duration   (internal)   (internal). Use the <code>-f</code> option to specify a storage file to view (<code>/data/blacklist/db_&lt;number&gt;</code>). The <code>-v</code> option adds operation's details to the output.</p> <p><code>add</code> creates a blacklist entry. Enter the parameters or use the <code>-i</code> option to import parameters from a file.</p> <p><code>del</code> deletes the first matching blacklist entry. Enter the parameters or use the <code>-i</code> option to import parameters from a file.</p> <p><code>iddel</code> removes one specific blacklist entry on one specific engine. <code>NODE_ID</code> is the engine's ID, <code>ID</code> is the blacklist entry's ID (as shown by the <code>show</code> command).</p> <p><code>flush</code> deletes all blacklist entries.</p> <p><b>Add/Del Parameters:</b></p> <p>Enter at least one parameter. The default value is used for the parameters that you omit. You can also save parameters in a text file; each line in the file is read as one blacklist entry.</p> <p><code>src</code> defines the source IP address and netmask to match. Matches any IP address by default.</p> <p><code>src6</code> defines the source IPv6 and prefix length to match. Matches any IPv6 address by default.</p> <p><code>dst</code> defines the destination IP address and netmask to match. Matches any IP address by default.</p> <p><code>dst6</code> defines the destination IPv6 address and prefix length to match. Matches any IPv6 address by default.</p> <p><code>proto</code> defines the protocol to match by name or protocol number. Matches all IP traffic by default.</p> <p><code>srcport</code> defines the TCP/UDP source port or range to match. Matches any port by default.</p> <p><code>dstport</code> defines the TCP/UDP destination port or range to match. Matches any port by default.</p> <p><code>duration</code> defines in seconds how long the entry is kept. Default is 0, which cuts current connections, but is not kept.</p> <p><b>Examples:</b></p> <pre>sg-blacklist add src 192.168.0.2/32 proto tcp dstport 80 duration 60 sg-blacklist add -i myblacklist.txt sg-blacklist del dst 192.168.1.0/24 proto 47</pre>

Command	Engine role	Description
<pre>sg-bootconfig [--primary-console=tty0 ttyS PORT,SPEED] [--secondary-console=[tty0 ttyS PORT,SPEED]] [--flavor=up smp] [--initrd=yes no] [--crashdump=yes no  Y@X] [--append=kernel options] [--help] apply</pre>	Firewall Layer 2 Firewall IPS	<p>Used to edit boot command parameters for future bootups.</p> <p><code>--primary-console</code> defines the terminal settings for the primary console.</p> <p><code>--secondary-console</code> defines the terminal settings for the secondary console.</p> <p><code>--flavor</code> defines whether the kernel is uniprocessor or multiprocessor.</p> <p><code>--initrd</code> defines whether Ramdisk is enabled or disabled.</p> <p><code>--crashdump</code> defines whether kernel crashdump is enabled or disabled, and how much memory is allocated to the crash dump kernel (Y). The default is 24M. X must always be 16M.</p> <p><code>--append</code> defines any other boot options to add to the configuration.</p> <p><code>--help</code> displays usage information.</p> <p><code>apply</code> applies the specified configuration options.</p>
<pre>sg-clear-all [--fast] [--flash-defaults] [--on-boot] [--verbose]</pre>	Firewall Layer 2 Firewall IPS	<p>This command restores the factory default settings on the engine.</p> <p><code>--fast</code> runs a minimal, non-interactive clear for testing purposes.</p> <p><code>--flash-defaults</code> assumes that the engine has a flash data partition and a RAM spool partition.</p> <p><code>--on-boot</code> indicates that engine is starting up. This option is not intended to be used in normal command line usage.</p> <p><code>--verbose</code> Shows additional informational messages during command execution.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note:</b> If you run the command without specifying any options, the engine restarts and you are prompted to select the system restore options.</p> </div> <p>After using this command, you can reconfigure the engine using the <code>sg-reconfigure</code> command.</p>
<pre>sg-cluster [-v &lt;virtual engine ID&gt;] [status [-c SECONDS]] [versions] [online] [lock-online] [offline] [lock-offline] [standby] [safe-offline] [force-offline]</pre>	Firewall Layer 2 Firewall IPS	<p>Used to display or change the status of the node.</p> <p><code>-v</code> (Master NGFW Engine only) specifies the ID of the Virtual NGFW Engine on which to execute the command.</p> <p><code>status</code> displays cluster status. When <code>-c SECONDS</code> is used, the status is shown continuously with the specified number of seconds between updates.</p> <p><code>version</code> displays the engine software versions of the nodes in the cluster.</p> <p><code>online</code> sends the node online.</p> <p><code>lock-online</code> sends the node online and keeps it online, even if another process tries to change its state.</p> <p><code>offline</code> sends the node offline.</p> <p><code>lock-offline</code> sends the node offline and keeps it offline, even if another process tries to change its state.</p> <p><code>standby</code> sets an active node to standby.</p> <p><code>safe-offline</code> sets the node to offline only if there is another online node.</p> <p><code>force-offline</code> sets the node online regardless of state or any limitations. Also sets all other nodes offline.</p>

Command	Engine role	Description
<code>sg-contact-mgmt</code>	Firewall Layer 2 Firewall IPS	Used for establishing a trust relationship with the Management Server as part of engine installation or reconfiguration (see <code>sg-reconfigure</code> ).  The engine contacts the Management Server using the one-time password created when the engine's initial configuration is saved.
<code>sg-dynamic-routing</code> [start] [stop] [restart] [force-reload] [backup <file>] [restore <file>] [sample-config] [route-table] [info]	Firewall	<code>start</code> starts the Quagga routing suite. <code>stop</code> stops the Quagga routing suite and flushes all routes made by zebra. <code>restart</code> restarts the Quagga routing suite. <code>force-reload</code> forces reload of the saved configuration. <code>backup</code> backs up the current configuration to a compressed file. <code>restore</code> restores the configuration from the specified file. <code>sample-config</code> creates a basic configuration for Quagga. <code>route-table</code> prints the current routing table. <code>info</code> displays the help information for the <code>sg-dynamic-routing</code> command, and detailed information about Quagga suite configuration with <code>vtsh</code> .
<code>sg-ipsec -d</code> [-u <username[@domain]>   -si <session id>   -ck <ike cookie>   -tri <transform id>   -ri <remote ip>   -ci <connection id>]	Firewall	Deletes VPN-related information (use the <code>vpntool</code> command to view the information). Option <code>-d</code> (for delete) is mandatory.  -u deletes the VPN session of the named VPN client user. You can enter the user account in the form <code>&lt;user_name@domain&gt;</code> if there are several user storage locations (LDAP domains).  -si deletes the VPN session of a VPN client user based on session identifier.  -ck deletes the IKE SA (Phase one security association) based on IKE cookie.  -tri deletes the IPSEC SAs (Phase two security associations) for both communication directions based on transform identifier.  -ri deletes all SAs related to a remote IP address in site-to-site VPNs.  -ci deletes all SAs related to a connection identifier in site-to-site VPNs.
<code>sg-logger</code> -f FACILITY_NUMBER -t TYPE_NUMBER [-e EVENT_NUMBER] [-i "INFO_STRING"] [-s] [-h]	Firewall Layer 2 Firewall IPS	Used in scripts to create log messages with the specified properties.  -f defines the facility for the log message.  -t defines the type for the log message.  -e defines the log event for the log message. The default is 0 (H2A_LOG_EVENT_UNDEFINED).  -i defines the information string for the log message.  -s dumps information about option numbers to stdout  -h displays usage information.

Command	Engine role	Description
<code>sg-raid</code> <code>[-status] [-add] [-re-add]</code> <code>[-force] [-help]</code>	Firewall Layer 2 Firewall IPS	Configures a new hard drive. This command is only for Forcepoint NGFW appliances that support RAID (Redundant Array of Independent Disks) and have two hard drives. -status displays the status of the hard drive. -add adds a new empty hard drive. Use -add -force if you want to add a hard drive that already contains data and you want to overwrite it. -re-add adds a hard drive that is already partitioned. This command prompts for the drive and partition for each degraded array. Use -re-add -force if you want to check all arrays. -help displays usage information.
<code>sg-reconfigure</code> <code>[--maybe-contact]</code> <code>[--no-shutdown]</code> <code>[--stop-autocontact]</code>	Firewall Layer 2 Firewall IPS	Starts the NGFW Initial Configuration Wizard. Used for reconfiguring the node manually.  <b>CAUTION:</b> This script also has parameters that are for the internal use of the engine only. Do not use this script with any parameters other than the ones listed here. --maybe-contact contacts the Management Server if requested. This option is only available on firewall engines. --no-shutdown allows you to make limited configuration changes on the node without shutting it down. Some changes might not be applied until the node is rebooted. --stop-autocontact (unconfigured Forcepoint NGFW appliances with valid POS codes only) prevents the engine from contacting the installation server for plug-and-play configuration when it reboots.
<code>sg-selftest [-d] [-h]</code>	Firewall	Runs cryptography tests on the engine. -d runs the tests in debug mode. -h displays usage information.
<code>sg-status [-l] [-h]</code>	Firewall Layer 2 Firewall IPS	Displays information about the engine's status. -l displays all available information about engine status. -h displays usage information.
<code>sg-toggle-active</code> <code>SHA1 SIZE  </code> <code>--force [--debug ]</code>	Firewall Layer 2 Firewall IPS	Switches the engine between the active and the inactive partition. This change takes effect when you reboot the engine. You can use this command, for example, if you have upgraded an engine and want to switch back to the earlier engine version. When you upgrade the engine, the active partition is switched. The earlier configuration remains on the inactive partition. To see the currently active (and inactive) partition, see the directory listing of /var/run/stonegate ( <code>ls -l /var/run/stonegate</code> ). The SHA1 option is used to verify the signature of the inactive partition before changing it to active. If you downgrade the engine, check the checksum and the size of the earlier upgrade package by extracting the signature and size files from the sg_engine_[version.build]_i386.zip file. --debug reboots the engine with the debug kernel. --force switches the active configuration without first verifying the signature of the inactive partition.

Command	Engine role	Description
<code>sg-upgrade</code>	Firewall	Upgrades the node by rebooting from the installation DVD. Alternatively, the node can be upgraded remotely using the Management Client.
<code>sg-version</code>	Firewall Layer 2 Firewall IPS	Displays the software version and build number for the node.
<code>se-virtual-engine</code> <code>-l   --list</code> <code>-v &lt;virtual engine ID&gt;</code> <code>-e   --enter</code> <code>-E "&lt;command [options]&gt;"</code> <code>-h   --help</code>	Firewall (Master NGFW Engine only)	Used to send commands to Virtual Firewalls from the command line of the Master NGFW Engine. All commands that can be used for the Firewall role can also be used for Virtual Firewalls. <code>-l</code> or <code>--list</code> list the active Virtual NGFW Engines. <code>-v</code> specifies the ID of the Virtual NGFW Engine on which to execute the command. <code>-e</code> or <code>--enter</code> enters the command shell for the Virtual NGFW Engine specified with the <code>-v</code> option. To exit the command shell, type <code>exit</code> . <code>-E</code> executes the specified command on the Virtual NGFW Engine specified with the <code>-v</code> option. <code>-h</code> or <code>--help</code> displays usage information.
<code>sginfo</code> <code>[-f]</code> <code>[-d]</code> <code>[-s]</code> <code>[-p]</code> <code> [--]</code> <code> [--help]</code>	Firewall Layer 2 Firewall IPS	Gathers system information you can send to <a href="#">Forcepoint support</a> . Use this command only when instructed to do so by <a href="#">Forcepoint support</a> . <code>-f</code> forces <code>sgInfo</code> even if the configuration is encrypted. <code>-d</code> includes core dumps in the <code>sgInfo</code> file. <code>-s</code> includes slapcat output in the <code>sgInfo</code> file. <code>-p</code> includes passwords in the <code>sgInfo</code> file (by default passwords are erased from the output). <code>--</code> creates the <code>sgInfo</code> file without displaying the progress. <code>--help</code> displays usage information.

The following table lists some general Linux operating system commands that can be useful in running your engines. Some commands can be stopped by pressing **Ctrl+C**.

**Table 163: General command line tools on engines**

Command	Description
<code>dmesg</code>	Shows system logs and other information. Use the <code>-h</code> option to see usage.
<code>halt</code>	Shuts down the system.
<code>ip</code>	Displays IP address information. Type the command without options to see usage. Example: type <code>ip addr</code> for basic information about all interfaces.
<code>ping</code>	Tests connectivity with ICMP echo requests. Type the command without options to see usage.

Command	Description
ps	Reports the status of running processes.
reboot	Reboots the system.
scp	Secure copy. Type the command without options to see usage.
sftp	Secure FTP. Type the command without options to see usage.
ssh	SSH client (for opening a terminal connection to other hosts). Type the command without options to see usage.
tcpdump	Gives information about network traffic. Use the <code>-h</code> option to see usage.  You can also analyze network traffic by creating tcpdump files from the Management Client with the Traffic Capture feature.
top	Displays the top CPU processes taking most processor time. Use the <code>-h</code> option to see usage.
traceroute	Traces the route packets take to the specified destination. Type the command without options to see usage.
vpntool	Displays VPN information and allows you to issue some basic commands. Type the command without options to see usage.

## Server Pool Monitoring Agent commands

You can test and monitor the Server Pool Monitoring Agents on the command line.

**Table 164: Server Pool Monitoring Agent commands**

Command	Description
agent [-v level] [-c path] [test [files]] [syntax [files]]	(Windows only) Allows you to test different configurations before activating them.  <code>-v</code> sets the verbosity level. The default level is 5. Levels 6–8 are for debugging where available.  <code>-c</code> uses the specified path as the first search directory for the configuration.  <code>test</code> runs in the test mode - status queries do not receive a response. If you specify the files, they are used for reading the configuration instead of the default files.  <code>syntax</code> checks the syntax in the configuration file. If no files are specified, the default configuration files are checked.

Command	Description
<pre>sgagentd [-d] [-v level] [-c path] [test [files]] [syntax [files]]</pre>	<p>(Linux only) Allows you to test different configurations before activating them.</p> <p><code>-d</code> means Don't Fork as a daemon. All log messages are printed to stdout or stderr only.</p> <p><code>-v</code> sets the verbosity level. The default level is 5. Levels 6–8 are for debugging where available.</p> <p><code>-c</code> uses the specified path as the first search directory for the configuration.</p> <p><code>test</code> runs in the test mode - status queries do not receive a response. If you specify the files, they are used for reading the configuration instead of the default files. The output is directed to syslog or eventlog instead of the console where the command was run unless you use the <code>-d</code> option.</p> <p><code>syntax</code> checks the syntax in the configuration file. If no files are specified, the default configuration files are checked. The output is directed to syslog or eventlog instead of the console where the command was run unless you use the <code>-d</code> option.</p>
<pre>sgmon [status info proto] [-p port] [-t timeout] [-a id] host</pre>	<p>Sends a UDP query to the specified host and waits for a response until received, or until the timeout limit is reached. The request type can be defined as a parameter. If no parameter is given, status is requested. The commands are:</p> <p><code>status</code> queries the status.</p> <p><code>info</code> queries the agent version.</p> <p><code>proto</code> queries the highest supported protocol version.</p> <p><code>-p</code> connects to the specified port instead of the default port.</p> <p><code>-t</code> sets the timeout (in seconds) to wait for a response.</p> <p><code>-a</code> acknowledge the received log messages up to the specified id. Each response message has an id, and you can acknowledge more than one message at a given time by using the id parameter. Messages acknowledged by <code>sgmon</code> will no longer appear in the firewall logs.</p> <p><code>host</code> is the IP address of the host to connect to. To get the status locally, you can give localhost as the host argument. This parameter is mandatory.</p>





# Default communication ports

### Contents

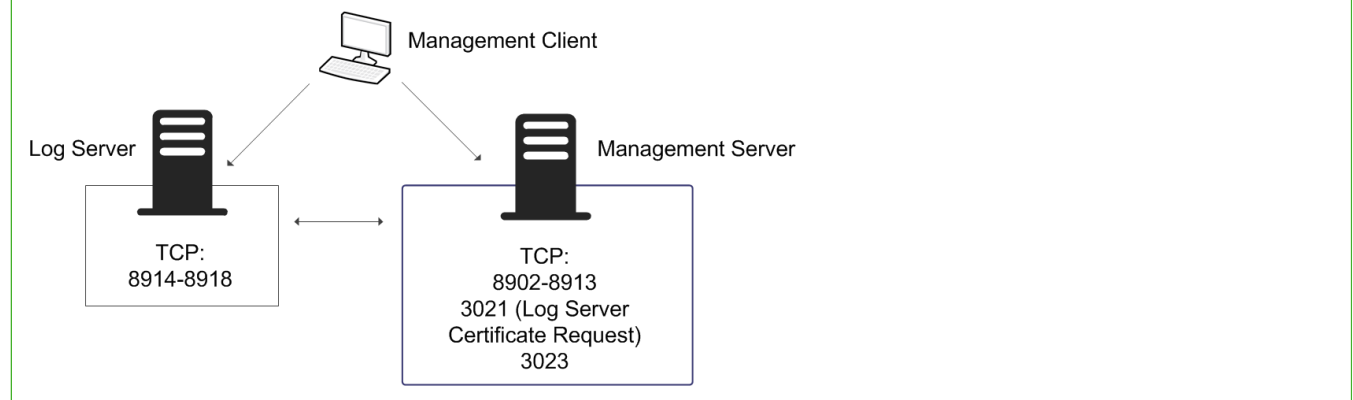
- [Security Management Center ports](#) on page 1433
- [Forcepoint NGFW Engine ports](#) on page 1436

There are default ports used in connections between SMC components and default ports that SMC components use with external components.

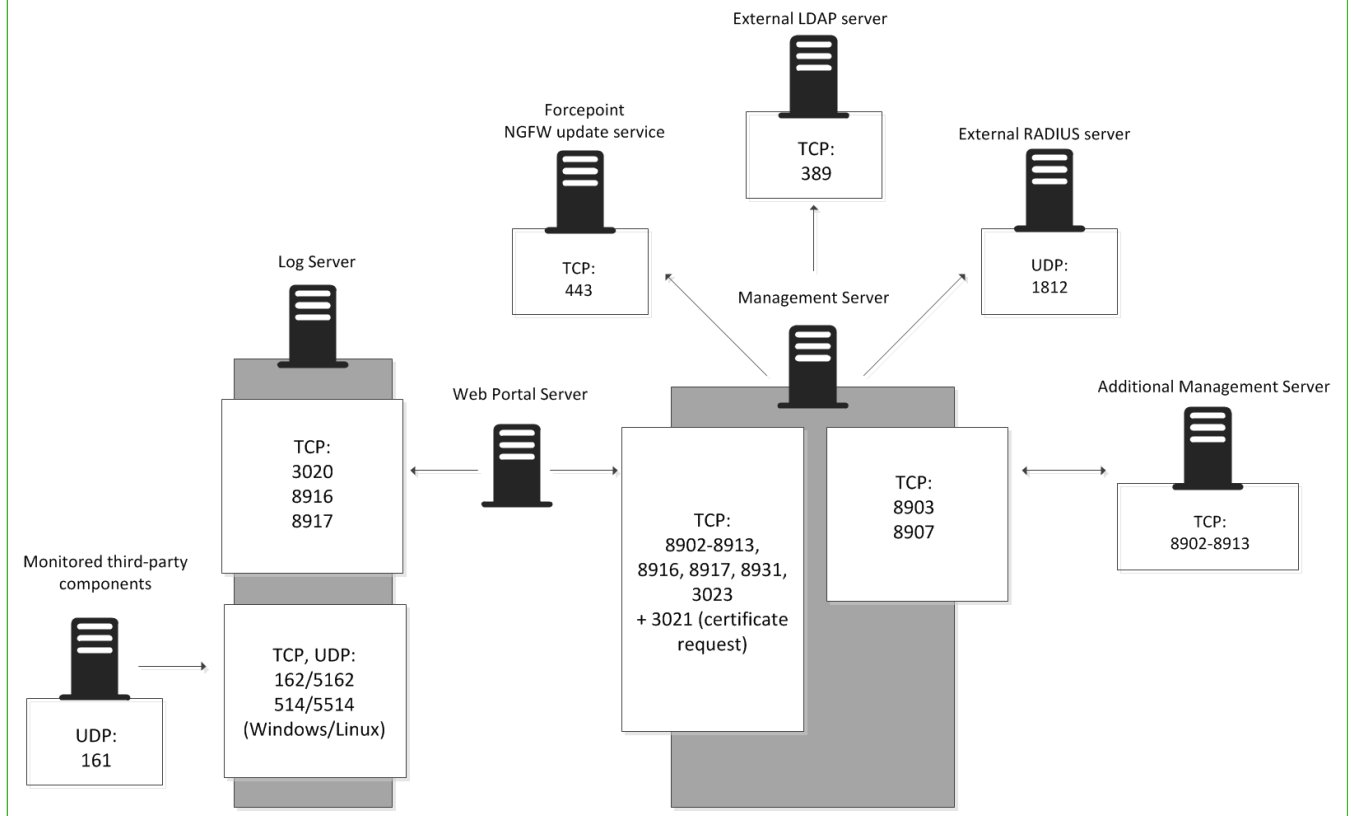
## Security Management Center ports

The most important default ports used in communications to and from SMC components are presented in the following illustrations.

**Figure 174: Destination ports for basic communications within the SMC**



**Figure 175: Default destination ports for optional SMC components and features**





This table lists the default ports SMC uses internally and with external components. Many of these ports can be changed. The names of corresponding default Service elements are also included for your reference.

**Table 165: SMC default ports**

Listening host	Port/protocol	Contacting hosts	Service description	Service element name
Additional Management Servers	8902- 8913/TCP	Management Server	Database replication (push) to the additional Management Server.	SG Control
DNS server	53/UDP, 53/TCP	Management Client, Management Server, Log Server	DNS queries.	DNS (UDP)
LDAP server	389/TCP	Management Server	External LDAP queries for display/editing in the Management Client.	LDAP (TCP)
Log Server	162/UDP, 5162/UDP	Monitored third-party components	SNMPv1 trap reception from third-party components. Port 162 is used if installed on Windows, port 5162 if installed on Linux.	SNMP (UDP)
Log Server	514/TCP, 514/UDP, 5514/TCP, 5514/UDP	Monitored third-party components	Syslog reception from third-party components. Port 514 is used if installed on Windows, port 5514 if installed on Linux.	Syslog (UDP) [Partial match]

Listening host	Port/protocol	Contacting hosts	Service description	Service element name
Log Server	2055/UDP	Monitored third-party components	NetFlow or IPFIX reception from third-party components. Port 2055 is used in both Windows and Linux.	NetFlow (UDP)
Log Server	3020/TCP	Log Server, Web Portal Server, NGFW Engines	Alert sending from the Log Server and Web Portal Server.  Log and alert messages; monitoring of blacklists, connections, status, and statistics from NGFW Engines.	SG Log
Log Server	8914-8918/TCP	Management Client	Log browsing.	SG Data Browsing
Log Server	8916-8917/TCP	Web Portal Server	Log browsing.	SG Data Browsing (Web Portal Server)
Management Server	3021/TCP	Log Server, Web Portal Server	System communications certificate request/renewal.	SG Log Initial Contact
Management Server	8902-8913/TCP	Management Client, Log Server, Web Portal Server	Monitoring and control connections.	SG Control
Management Server	3023/TCP	Additional Management Servers, Log Server, Web Portal Server	Log Server and Web Portal Server status monitoring.  Status information from an additional Management Server to the active Management Server.	SG Status Monitoring
Management Server	8903, 8907/TCP	Additional Management Servers	Database replication (pull) to the additional Management Server.	SG Control
Monitored third-party components	161/UDP	Log Server	SNMP status probing to external IP addresses.	SNMP (UDP)
NTP server	123/TCP or UDP	SMC Appliance	Receiving NTP information.	NTP
RADIUS server	1812/UDP	Management Server	RADIUS authentication requests for administrator logon.  The default ports can be edited in the properties of the RADIUS Server element.	RADIUS (Authentication)
Forcepoint NGFW update service	443/TCP	SMC servers	Update packages, engine upgrades, and licenses.	HTTPS
SMC Appliance	161/UDP	Third-party components	Requesting health and other information about the SMC Appliance.	SNMP
Update servers	443/TCP	SMC Appliance	Receiving appliance patches and updates.	HTTPS
SMC Appliance	22/TCP	Terminal clients	SSH connections to the command line of the SMC Appliance (disabled in FIPS mode).	SSH
Syslog server	514/UDP, 5514/UDP	Log Server	Log data forwarding to syslog servers.  The default ports can be edited in the LogServerConfiguration.txt file.	Syslog (UDP) [Partial match]

Listening host	Port/protocol	Contacting hosts	Service description	Service element name
Terminal Client Firewall, Layer 2 Firewall, IPS, Master NGFW Engine	22/TCP	SMC Appliance	Contacting engines and moving SMC Appliance backups off the appliance.  <b>Note:</b> SSH is disabled in FIPS mode.	SSH
Third-party components	2055/UDP	Log Server	NetFlow or IPFIX forwarding to third-party components. Port 2055 is used in both Windows and Linux.	NetFlow (UDP)
Third-party components	162/UDP	SMC Appliance	Sending SNMP status probing to external devices.	SNMP
Third-party components	445/TCP	SMC Appliance	Moving SMC Appliance backups off the appliance.  <b>Note:</b> CIFS is disabled in FIPS mode.	CIFS
Web Portal Server	8931/TCP	Log Server	Connections from the Log Server to the Web Portal Server	SG Web Portal Control

## Forcepoint NGFW Engine ports

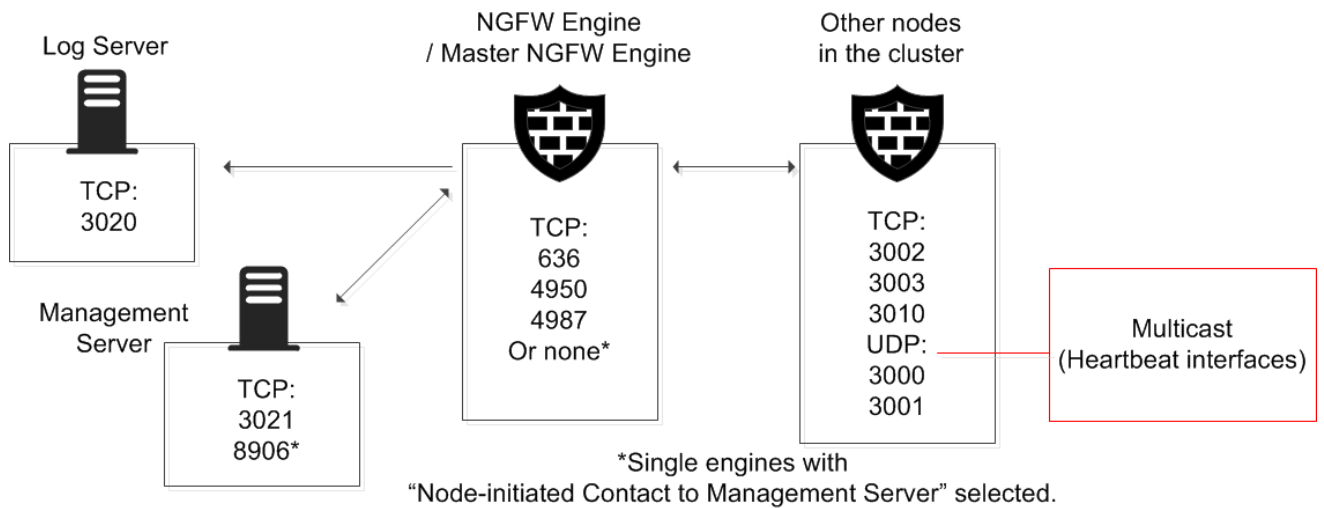
The most important default ports used in communications to and from NGFW Engines and Master NGFW Engines are presented in the following illustrations.

See the table for a complete list of default ports for the engines.

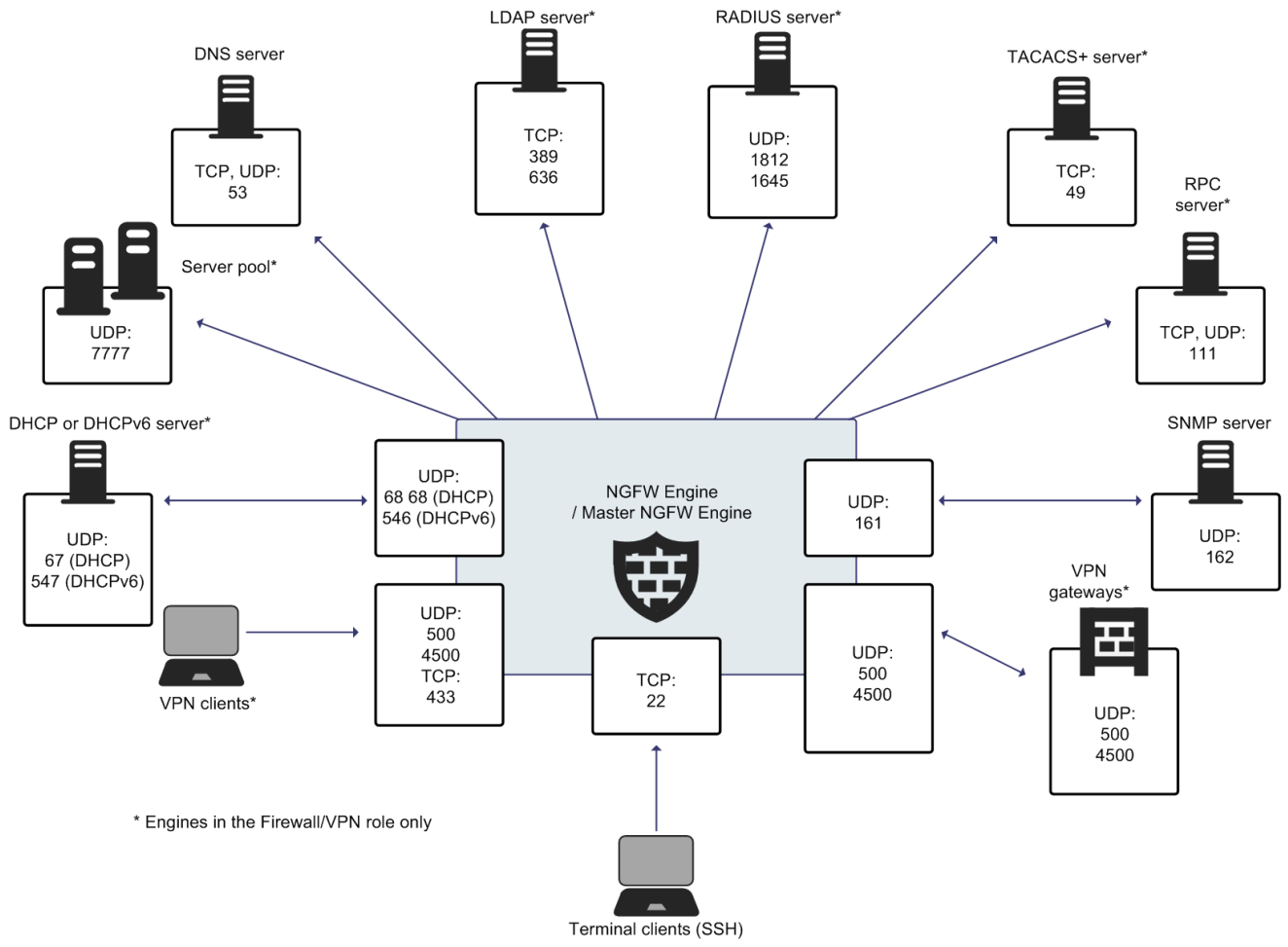


**Note:** Master NGFW Engines use the same default ports as clustered NGFW Engines. Virtual NGFW Engines do not communicate directly with other system components.

**Figure 176: Destination ports for basic NGFW Engine communications**



**Figure 177: Default destination ports for NGFW Engine service communications**



This table lists the default ports for NGFW Engines and Master NGFW Engines. Many of these ports can be changed. The names of corresponding default Service elements are also included for your reference.

**Table 166: NGFW Engine and Master NGFW Engine default ports**

Listening host	Port/protocol	Contacting hosts	Service description	Service element name
DHCP server	67/UDP	Firewall	Relayed DHCP requests and requests from a firewall that uses dynamic IP address.	BOOTPS (UDP)
DHCPv6 server	547/UDP	Firewall	Requests from a firewall that uses dynamic IPv6 address.	N/A
External DNS server	53/UDP, 53/TCP	Firewall, Master NGFW Engine	Dynamic DNS updates and DNS relay.	DNS (TCP), DNS (UDP)
File reputation server	443/TCP	Firewall, Layer 2 Firewall, IPS, Master NGFW Engine	GTI File Reputation Server	HTTPS
Firewall	67/UDP	Any	DHCP relay on firewall engine.	BOOTPS (UDP)
Firewall	68/UDP	DHCP server	Replies to DHCP requests.	BOOTPC (UDP)
Firewall	80/TCP	Clients that need to authenticate to the Firewall	Browser Based User Authentication	HTTP
Firewall	443/TCP	Clients that need to authenticate to the Firewall	Browser Based User Authentication	HTTPS
Firewall	443/TCP	VPN clients using SSL tunneling	VPN client SSL tunneling	TLS
Firewall	443/TCP	SSL Portal users	SSL VPN Portal	HTTPS
Firewall	546/UDP	DHCPv6 server	Replies to DHCPv6 requests.	N/A
Firewall, Master NGFW Engine	500/UDP	VPN clients, VPN gateways	VPN negotiations, VPN traffic.	ISAKMP (UDP)
Firewall, Master NGFW Engine	636/TCP	Management Server	Internal user database replication.	LDAPS (TCP)
Firewall, Master NGFW Engine	2543/TCP	Any	User authentication (Telnet) for Access rules.	SG User Authentication
Firewall, Master NGFW Engine	4500/UDP	VPN client, VPN gateways	VPN traffic using NAT-traversal.	NAT-T
Firewall Cluster Node, Master NGFW Engine cluster node	3000-3001/UDP, 3002-3003, 3010/TCP	Firewall Cluster Node, Master NGFW Engine cluster node	Heartbeat and state synchronization between clustered Firewalls.	SG State Sync (Multicast), SG State Sync (Unicast), SG Data Sync
Firewall, Layer 2 Firewall, IPS, Master NGFW Engine	22/TCP	Terminal clients	SSH connections to the engine command line (disabled in FIPS mode).	SSH
Firewall, Layer 2 Firewall, IPS, Master NGFW Engine	4950/TCP	Management Server	Remote upgrade.	SG Remote Upgrade
Firewall, Layer 2 Firewall, IPS, Master NGFW Engine	4987/TCP	Management Server	Management Server commands and policy upload.	SG Commands

Listening host	Port/protocol	Contacting hosts	Service description	Service element name
Firewall, Layer 2 Firewall, IPS, Master NGFW Engine	15000/TCP	Management Server, Log Server	Blacklist entries.	SG Blacklisting
Firewall, Layer 2 Firewall, IPS, Master NGFW Engine	161/UDP	SNMP server	SNMP monitoring.	SNMP (UDP)
IPS Cluster Node	3000-3001/UDP, 3002-3003, 3010/TCP	IPS Cluster Node	Heartbeat and state synchronization between clustered IPS engines.	SG State Sync (Multicast), SG State Sync (Unicast), SG Data Sync
LDAP server	389/TCP	Firewall, Master NGFW Engine	External LDAP queries, including StartTLS connections.	LDAP (TCP)
Layer 2 Firewall Cluster Node	3000-3001/UDP, 3002-3003, 3010/TCP	Layer 2 Firewall Cluster Node	Heartbeat and state synchronization between clustered Layer 2 Firewalls.	SG State Sync (Multicast), SG State Sync (Unicast), SG Data Sync
Log Server	3020/TCP	Firewall, Layer 2 Firewall, IPS, Master NGFW Engine	Log and alert messages; monitoring of blacklists, connections, status, and statistics.	SG Log
Malware signature server	80/TCP	Firewall, Layer 2 Firewall, IPS, Master NGFW Engine	Malware signature update service.	HTTP
Management Server	3021/TCP	Firewall, Layer 2 Firewall, IPS, Master NGFW Engine	System communications certificate request/renewal (initial contact).	SG Initial Contact
Management Server	8906/TCP	Firewall, Layer 2 Firewall, IPS	Management connection for single engines with "Node-Initiated Contact to Management Server" selected.	SG Dynamic Control
RADIUS server	1812, 1645/UDP	Firewall, Master NGFW Engine	RADIUS authentication requests.	RADIUS (Authentication), RADIUS (Old)
RPC server	111/UDP, 111/TCP	Firewall, Master NGFW Engine	RPC number resolve.	SUNRPC (UDP), SunRPC (TCP)
Server Pool Monitoring Agents	7777/UDP	Firewall, Master NGFW Engine	Polls to the servers' Server Pool Monitoring Agents for availability and load information.	SG Server Pool Monitoring
SNMP server	162/UDP	Firewall, Layer 2 Firewall, IPS, Master NGFW Engine	SNMP traps from the engine.	SNMP Trap (UDP)
TACACS+ server	49/TCP	Firewall, Master NGFW Engine	TACACS+ authentication requests.	TACACS (TCP)
ThreatSeeker Intelligence Cloud server	443/TCP	Firewall, Layer 2 Firewall, IPS, Master NGFW Engine	ThreatSeeker Intelligence Cloud URL categorization service.	HTTPS
VPN gateways	500, 4500/UDP	Firewall, Master NGFW Engine	VPN traffic. Ports 443/TCP (or custom port) can also be used, depending on encapsulation options.	ISAKMP (UDP)





# Working with expressions

### Contents

- [Introduction to expressions](#) on page 1441
- [Using operands](#) on page 1442
- [Expression processing order](#) on page 1443
- [Grouping operands using parentheses](#) on page 1444
- [Nesting expressions](#) on page 1444

Expressions are elements that allow you to create simple definitions for representing complex sets of IP addresses by using logical operands.

## Introduction to expressions

---

An *expression* is an element that combines other network elements (IP addresses) with logical operands.

Expressions make it easier to define complex sets of network resources, even though you can arrive at the same definitions without expressions. For example, a single, simple expression can include a whole network except for a few individual IP addresses scattered throughout the address space. Otherwise, several Address Range elements might be needed for defining the same set of IP addresses.

The expressions consist of the following parts:

- *Parentheses* group sets of elements and define the processing order in the same way as they do in mathematical equations. The parentheses in expressions are always the basic curved type “(” and “)”.
- *Negation* operators take a set and form a new set that includes every possible element except the ones in the original set. Negations are expressed with “~”.
- *Intersection* operators take two sets and forms a new set that includes only those IP addresses that are found in both sets. Intersections are expressed with “#”.
- *Union* operators combine two sets and form a new set that includes every IP address in both sets. Unions are expressed with “#”.

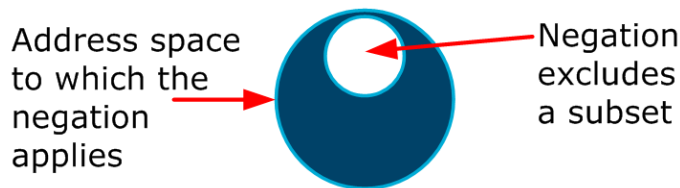
# Using operands

When creating expressions, you can use the negation, intersection, and union operands.

## Negation

The negation operand can be understood based on common language use: it corresponds to the word “NOT”.

**Figure 178: Graphical representation of a negation**



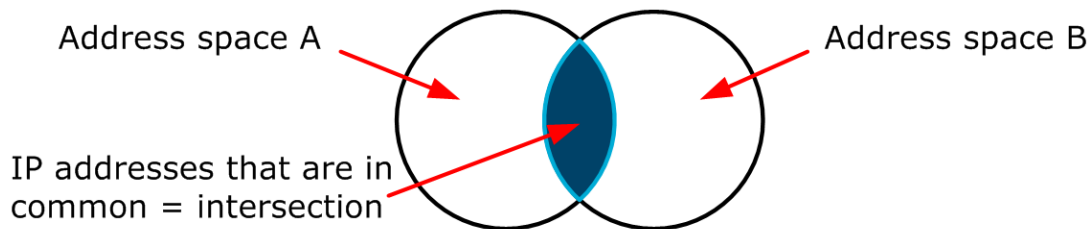
For example,  $\sim 1.2.3.4$  (negation of IP address 1.2.3.4) includes all other possible (IPv4) addresses except the IP address 1.2.3.4. As you see, negations are a good way to create a simple element that includes large IP address spaces with some exceptions. Usually, the negation appears in constructions like the following:  $192.168.10.0/24 \# \sim 192.168.10.200$ . This example basically means “include all addresses in network 192.168.10.0/24, but do not include address 192.168.10.200”.

This definition uses the intersection operand, which is explained next. We return to this same example to explain the intersection part of the equation. Also, the section explaining the union operand returns to this example once more to explain why a union operand is not appropriate here.

## Intersection

Intersection means “include only those IP addresses that are a part of both sets”.

**Figure 179: Graphical representation of an intersection**



For example, we could intersect two address ranges, A (192.168.10.200 – 192.168.10.300) and B (192.168.10.250 – 192.168.10.350). The expression reads  $A \# B$  and it resolves to the following IP addresses: 192.168.10.250 – 192.168.10.300 (the IP addresses that appear in both ranges).

We now return to the previous example on the negation operand, where an intersection was also used:  $192.168.10.0/24 \# \sim 192.168.10.200$ . On the left side, there is a specific network that we intersect with the right side that contains all possible IP addresses except one IP address. The intersection resolves to the IP addresses that the left side and the right side have in common. These addresses include the IP addresses in network

192.168.10.0/24 except the one IP address that is excluded on the right side of the equation. As shown here, intersections allow us to make expressions more specific.

## Union

The common language equivalent for the union operand is the word “AND”. The union operand’s role is to widen the scope of the expression.

**Figure 180: Graphical representation of a union**

Union includes everything:  
all IP addresses in both  
sets combined



For example, the expression  $1.2.3.0/24 \# 2.3.4.0/24$  includes all IP addresses in the two networks. As is evident from this example, using unions is the same as including the elements in the same Group element. For this reason, unions are not the only operand in an expression. Perhaps a better example is:  $\sim 192.168.1.1 \# \sim 192.168.1.255$  (includes all IP addresses except the two IP addresses mentioned). However, this example is wide in scope and might require further restriction to be practical. For example, adding an intersection with the network  $192.168.1.0/24$  restricts the result to addresses in that network.

Unions do have the potential to become too wide in scope if you are not careful. In the preceding text, we used the example expression:  $192.168.10.0/24 \# \sim 192.168.10.200$ . If we replace the intersection (“#”) with a union (“#”), the expression then includes all addresses from the left side (network  $192.168.10.0/24$ ) and the right side (all IPv4 addresses except for one). The expression includes even the single IP address that is excluded on the right side, since it is part of the network on the left side. The result corresponds to the default “Any Network” element that matches all possible IP addresses. The processing order of the operands is also a factor in this result.

## Expression processing order

The processing order of expressions is fixed.

As in mathematical equations, items inside parentheses are always resolved before other comparisons. Next, the operands are processed by type: first the negations, then intersections, and last the unions.

For example, the expression  $A \# \sim(B \# C) \# D$  is processed as follows:

- 1) The formula between parentheses is solved first (the union of B and C). If we replace this result with X, the expression becomes  $A \# \sim X \# D$ .
- 2) The negation is processed next, inverting the value of X. If we replace this result with Y, the expression becomes  $A \# Y \# D$ .
- 3) Next, the intersection between Y and D is resolved. If we replace this result with Z, the expression becomes  $A \# Z$ .
- 4) Finally, the union of A and Z yields the actual value that the expression represents (the full contents of both A and Z).

As shown here, the order in which the operand-value combinations appear in the expression have no significance to the order of processing. The only way to change the processing order is by using parentheses as explained next.

## Grouping operands using parentheses

---

Parentheses allow grouping the expression so that the operands you add are processed in a non-standard order.

Operands inside parentheses are always processed before other operands. Parentheses can also be placed inside parentheses, in which case the operands are processed starting from the innermost parentheses.

We can change the earlier example by adding a set of parentheses like this:  $(A \# \sim(B \# C)) \# D$ . With the two sets of parentheses, the inner parentheses are processed first ( $B \# C$  as before), and the negation is processed next ( $\sim X$  as before). However, the outer parentheses are processed next instead of processing the intersection, changing the result. If  $\sim(B \# C)$  results in  $Y$  (as before), the expression becomes  $(A \# Y) \# D$ . The order of processing is then different than without the parentheses: instead of intersecting  $Y$  and  $D$ , the expression performs a union of  $A$  and  $Y$ , and the intersection is then the last operand to be processed.

Complicated expressions with extensive use of parentheses can become difficult to read and edit. In these situations, nested expressions might sometimes be a better option.

## Nesting expressions

---

You can nest expressions by placing other expressions inside an expression. Nesting is a good way to simplify the creation of complex expressions.

When you construct complex expressions from smaller incremental units, you can more easily find and fix problems. You can also reuse the smaller units in other expressions or policies as appropriate. Arguably, the expressions are also easier to read and edit when broken down into smaller units.

For example, if we want to create an expression that includes all IP addresses in three networks, except for one IP address in each, we have a long expression:  $(192.168.1.0/24 \# \sim 192.168.1.1) \# (192.168.2.0/24 \# \sim 192.168.2.1) \# (192.168.3.0/24 \# \sim 192.168.3.1)$ .

Instead of creating just one expression, it might make more sense to create several expressions: one for each set of parentheses (for example, Expression A:  $192.168.1.0/24 \# \sim 192.168.1.1$ ) and then add an expression that collects those three expressions together as follows:  $\text{Expression A} \# \text{Expression B} \# \text{Expression C}$ , or simply create a Group element that contains the three expressions.

All three subexpressions can be used individually or easily combined in other ways as needed, for example,  $\text{Expression A} \# \text{Expression C}$ . Naturally, when changes are made to an expression used inside some other expression, the definitions are updated in both places.

You can also create expressions that you use as templates for creating new expressions: when you insert an expression into another expression, you have the choice of extracting the contents from the expression instead of just inserting the expression. Extracting the contents allows you to make further changes and additions to the expression you insert. Extracting the contents also removes the link between the expressions, so changes are not propagated if the inserted expression is later changed.

# Predefined Aliases

## Contents

- [Predefined User Aliases](#) on page 1445
- [System Aliases](#) on page 1445

Predefined Aliases are used in the default policies. Some of them might be useful when you create your own rules.

## Predefined User Aliases

User Aliases are usually created by administrators, but there are also some predefined User Aliases in the SMC. User Aliases are preceded with one \$ character. The following table lists all editable automatically created User Aliases.

**Table 167: System-defined User Aliases**

Predefined User Alias	Description
\$ DHCP address pools	Addresses that can be allocated by DHCP servers.
\$ DHCP address pools for Mobile VPN clients	Address pools for assigning virtual IP addresses to mobile VPN clients.
\$ DHCP servers	All DHCP servers defined for the Firewall.
\$ DHCP servers for Mobile VPN clients	The DHCP servers defined for assigning virtual IP addresses to mobile VPN clients.

## System Aliases

System Aliases are automatically created non-editable Aliases.

The System Aliases are preceded with two \$\$ characters. The following table lists the definitions of all System Aliases. These Aliases are used in the Firewall's default policies.

**Table 168: System Aliases**

System Alias	Description
\$\$ DHCP Enabled Interface Addresses	IP addresses (of CVIs on clusters) which have DHCP relay enabled.
\$\$ DHCP Enabled interface addresses for Mobile VPN clients	IP addresses (of NDIs on clusters) which have DHCP relay enabled for mobile VPN clients.
\$\$ DHCP Interface X.dns	IP address of the DHCP-assigned DNS server for interface number X.

System Alias	Description
\$\$ DHCP Interface X.gateways	IP address of the DHCP-assigned default router for interface number X.
\$\$ DHCP Interface X.ip	DHCP-assigned IP address for interface number X.
\$\$ DHCP Interface X.net	Network behind the dynamic IP interface number X.
\$\$ Interface ID X.ip	First IP address (CVI) of Physical Interface ID X.
\$\$ Interface ID X.net	Directly connected networks behind Physical Interface ID X.
\$\$ Local Cluster	All addresses of the cluster.
\$\$ Local Cluster (CVI addresses only)	All CVI addresses of the cluster.
\$\$ Local Cluster (DHCP Interface Addresses)	All DHCP-assigned IP addresses of the engine.
\$\$ Local Cluster (NDI addresses only)	All NDI addresses of all nodes in the cluster.
\$\$ Local Cluster (NDI for heartbeat addresses only)	Heartbeat NDI addresses of all nodes in the cluster.
\$\$ Local Cluster (NDI for management addresses only)	Management NDI addresses of all nodes in the cluster.
\$\$ Log Servers	IP addresses of all Log Servers.
\$\$ Management Servers	IP addresses of all Management Servers.
\$\$ Valid DHCP Address Pools for Mobile VPN clients	Address pools defined for assigning virtual IP addresses to mobile VPN clients.
\$\$ Valid DHCP Servers	All DHCP servers defined for the Firewall.
\$\$ Valid DHCP Servers for Mobile VPN clients	The DHCP servers defined for assigning virtual IP addresses to mobile VPN clients.

# Situation Context parameters

## Contents

- [Correlation Context parameters](#) on page 1447
- [Other Context parameters](#) on page 1450

There are parameters you can define for Situation Contexts.



**Note:** The details related to the Contexts in your system might be different from what is described here. The Contexts might have been updated through dynamic update packages after this guide was published. Read the [Release Notes](#) of each update package you import to see which elements are affected.

## Correlation Context parameters

You can configure Correlation Context parameters to find patterns in event data.

## Event Compress

Event Compress combines repeated similar events into the same log entry, reducing clutter in the **Logs** view.

**Table 169: Event Compress parameters**

Field	Option (if any)	Explanation
Correlated Situations		Situations you want to compress.
Time Window		All matches to the Situations selected are combined to a common log entry when they are triggered within the defined time from each other.
Log Fields Enabled	Select	Events triggered by the selected Situations are regarded as the same when the values those entries have in the Log Fields you place in Lognames are identical.
	Ignore	Events triggered by the selected Situations are regarded as the same, except when the values those entries have in the Log Fields you place in Lognames are identical.
Lognames		The selected log fields are used by the matching option you selected in the previous step.

Field	Option (if any)	Explanation
Location	Very Early	The execution order of the Compress operation in relation to other operations. Compress operations that share the Location are executed in parallel; each compress operation receives the same events as the other compress operations in the same Location. "Very Early" and "Early" locations can affect the operation of other Correlations.
	Early	
	Late	
	Very Late	
Compress Filter		Filters in data for the compression.

## Event Count

Event Count finds recurring patterns in traffic by counting the times certain Situations occur within the defined period, so that action can be taken if the threshold values you set are exceeded.

**Table 170: Event Count parameters**

Field	Option (if any)	Explanation
Correlated Situations		Situations you want to count.
Time Window		The period of time within which the matches to the Situation must occur the specified number of times.
Alarm Threshold		The number of times that the selected Situations must occur for the Correlation Situation to match.
Log Fields Enabled	Select	Events triggered by the selected Situations are regarded as the same when the values those entries have in the Log Fields you place in Lognames are identical.
	Ignore	Events triggered by the selected Situations are regarded as the same, except when the values those entries have in the Log Fields you place in Lognames are identical.
Lognames		The selected log fields are used by the matching option you selected in the previous step.

## Event Group

Event Group finds event patterns in traffic by following if all events in the defined set of Situations match at least once in any order within the defined time period.

**Table 171: Event Group parameters**

Field	Option (if any)	Explanation
Member (column)	Event Match	Filter for grouping.
	Needed Number	How many occurrences of the Event selected for this Member are required for them to be included in the grouping.
	Binding	Log field used for the grouping.



Field	Option (if any)	Explanation
Correlated Situations		Situations you want to group.
Keep and Forward Events	Yes	Makes the Correlation Situation examine the events and trigger the response defined in the Inspection Policy but does not actually group the matching events into one. All individual events are still available for further inspection, even though they have already triggered a response.
	No	Makes the Correlation Situation group the matching events together. Only the response defined in the Inspection Policy is triggered, and no further processing is done on the individual events.
Time Window Size		The period of time within which the Situation must occur for them to be grouped.
Continuous Responses	Yes	Makes the NGFW Engine or Log Server respond as defined in the Inspection Policy to each occurrence of the defined event within the selected Time Window.
	No	Makes the NGFW Engine or Log Server respond only to the first occurrence of the defined event within the selected Time Window.

## Event Match

Event Match allows filtering event data produced by specific Situations using Filter expressions.

**Table 172: Event Match parameters**

Field	Explanation
Correlated Situations	Situations you want the Correlation Situation to match.
Filter	Filter for finding a pattern in the event data.

## Event Sequence

Event Sequence finds event patterns in traffic by following if all events in the defined set of Situations match in a specific order within the defined time period.

**Table 173: Event Sequence parameters**

Field	Option (if any)	Explanation
Entry to/Exit from (columns)	Event Match	Filter for selecting data for the sequencing.
	Binding	Log field that the Correlation Situation traces to find a sequence.
Correlated Situations		Situations from which you want to find sequences.

Field	Option (if any)	Explanation
Keep and Forward Events	Yes	Makes the Correlation Situation examine the events and trigger the response defined in the Inspection Policy but does not actually group the matching events into one. All individual events are still available for further inspection, even though they have already triggered a response.
	No	Makes the Correlation Situation group the matching events together. Only the response defined in the Inspection Policy is triggered, and no further processing is done on the individual events.
Time Window Size		The period of time within which the Situation must occur for them to be regarded as a sequence.

## Other Context parameters

---

See the properties dialog box of the Context in question.

The Contexts are shown as branches/sub-branches in the **Other Elements > Situations > By Context** tree in the **Configuration** view.

# Regular expression syntax

### Contents

- [SMC regular expression syntax](#) on page 1451
- [Special character sequences](#) on page 1453
- [Pattern-matching modifiers](#) on page 1454
- [Variable expression evaluation](#) on page 1456
- [Stream operations](#) on page 1458
- [System variables](#) on page 1459
- [Independent subexpressions](#) on page 1461
- [Parallel matching groups](#) on page 1461
- [Tips for working with regular expressions](#) on page 1461

The SMC has its own regular expression syntax. Regular expressions are used in Situations for matching network traffic. Situations are used in the Inspection rules on NGFW Engines.

## SMC regular expression syntax

A regular expression is a sequence of characters that defines a matching pattern. These patterns are used for matching byte sequences in network traffic.

The expression matching always starts from the beginning of the traffic stream, defined by the associated Situation Context. Depending on the context, this can mean:

- The beginning of a TCP stream.
- The beginning of a UDP packet.
- A protocol-specific field or header, such as the beginning of an HTTP request header or the beginning of an HTTP Request URI.

A regular expression consists of one or more branches that are separated by a logical OR symbol “|”. A Situation match occurs if any of the branches matches the traffic stream.

### Regular expression matching

```
# This regular expression matches
# if any of the following patterns are seen
# at the beginning of the traffic stream: "aaa", "bbb", "ccc"
aaa|bbb|ccc
```

The basic sequences that can be used in an SMC regular expression are listed in the following table:

**Table 174: SMC regular expression syntax**

Sequence	Description	Example
<char>	Matches only the defined characters.	"2", "A", "foo" match exactly to the defined characters: "2", "A", and "foo" respectively.
. (dot)	Matches any character, including the null character <code>\x00</code> and a missing character. Matches also other than printable characters, such as the linefeed. A missing character is a special character used by the engine to represent characters missing from a TCP connection. For example, in capture mode, the engine might not see all traffic of a TCP connection.	". " matches any single character or byte.
\x<hex>	Matches the hexadecimal byte value ranging from <code>\x00</code> to <code>\xFF</code> .	"\x4d" matches hexadecimal value "4d" which represents the decimal value 77 and the ASCII character "M".
[<char>]	Matches any single character in the list.	"[15aB]" matches when any of the characters "1", "5", "a", or "B" are in the matching location of the inspected string.
[^<char>]	Matches any single character that is not on the list.	"[^aBc]" matches if none of the characters "a", "B", or "c" is present in the matching location of the inspected string.
[<char1>-<char2>]	Matches all characters ranging from <char1> to <char2>, these two characters included.	"[a-f]" matches any character within the range from "a" to "f", with "a" and "f" included.
\<char>	Used for escaping special metacharacters to be interpreted as normal characters. The metacharacters are: <code>\   ( ) [ ^ - * + ? . #</code>	"\[ " matches the "[ " character instead of interpreting it as the regular expression class metacharacter.
#<text>	Anything starting with "#" up to the linefeed ( <code>\x0a</code> ) or the carriage return character ( <code>\x0d</code> ) is regarded as a comment and not used in the matching process.	"# my comment." is not used in the matching process.
(<expr1> <expr2>)	Matches if either expression <expr1> or <expr2> matches.	"a(bc de)" matches "abc" and "ade".

**Example regular expressions**

```
# This regular expression matches any of the following strings:
# "login.php", "login1.php", "login2.php", "login_internal.php"
# Note: to match the "." character, the character must be escaped in the
# regular expression by prefixing the character with "\"
login\.php|login[12]\.php|login_internal\.php

# Alternatively, the branches of the above regular expression can be
# combined into one single branch as shown below
login([123]|_internal)?\.php
```

It is also possible to indicate repeated, consecutive characters, or regular expressions using quantifiers. The quantifiers available in SMC regular expression syntax are listed in the following table.

**Table 175: SMC regular expression quantifiers**

Sequence	Description	Example
<code>&lt;expr&gt;*</code>	Matches if there are zero or more consecutive <code>&lt;expr&gt;</code> strings.	"a*" matches "<empty>", "a", "aa" and so on.
<code>&lt;expr&gt;+</code>	Matches if there are one or more consecutive <code>&lt;expr&gt;</code> strings.	"a+" matches "a", "aa", "aaa" and so on, but not the empty string.
<code>&lt;expr&gt;?</code>	Matches if there is zero or one <code>&lt;expr&gt;</code> string.	"a?" matches "<empty>" and "a".
<code>&lt;expr&gt;{n,m}</code>	<p><code>{num}</code> matches exactly <code>num</code> times the expression.</p> <p><code>{num,}</code> matches <code>num</code> or more times the expression.</p> <p><code>{num,max}</code> matches at least <code>num</code> and no more than <code>max</code> times the expression.</p>	<p>"a{5,}" matches five or more consecutive "a" characters.</p> <p>"a{5,7}" matches 5, 6, or 7 consecutive "a" characters.</p>

The quantifiers always apply only to the single previous character (or special character sequence), unless otherwise indicated by parentheses. For example, the regular expression "login\*" matches "logi", "login" or "loginnnn", whereas the regular expression "(login)\*" matches the empty string "", "login" or "loginloginlogin".

As the matching of a regular expression is always started from the beginning of the traffic stream, ".\*" (any character zero or more times) is often needed when writing SMC regular expressions. For example, the regular expression ".\*/etc/passwd" searches for the string "/etc/passwd" anywhere in the traffic stream.



**Note:** Use the wildcard characters '\*' and '+', as well as '<expr>{n,m}' (where m has a large value) with care. If used in the middle of a regular expression, they can result in an expression that has a very large number of matching states, and that is too complex for efficient use. It is recommended to use these wildcards only in the beginning of a branch.


## Special character sequences

Printable characters, such as "a" or "b", are defined by simply typing them into a regular expression. In addition, there are some shorthands for common non-printable characters and character classes.

Special character sequences are listed in the following table:

**Table 176: Special character sequences**

Sequence	Description
<code>\a</code>	Bell (BEL) = <code>\x07</code>
<code>\t</code>	Horizontal tab (HT) = <code>\x09</code>
<code>\n</code>	Linefeed (LF) = <code>\x0A</code>
<code>\f</code>	Formfeed (FF) = <code>\x0C</code>
<code>\r</code>	Carriage return (CR) = <code>\x0D</code>
<code>\e</code>	Escape (ESC) = <code>\x1B</code>
<code>\000</code>	Octal code 000 of the character.
<code>\xHH</code>	Hexadecimal code HH of the character. Case-insensitive. For example, "\xaa" is regarded to be the same as "\xAA".

Sequence	Description
\c<char>	Control character that corresponds to Ctrl+<char >, where <char> is an uppercase letter.
\w	"word" class character = [A-Za-z0-9_]
\W	Non-"word" class character = [^A-Za-z0-9_]
\s	Whitespace character = [ \t\r\n\f]
\S	Non-whitespace character = [^ \t\r\n\f]
\d	Digit character = [0-9]
\D	Non-digit character = [^0-9]
\b	Backspace (BS) = \x08   <b>Note:</b> Allowed only in bracket expressions.
\Q <expr> \E	Quotes all metacharacters between \Q and \E. Backslashes are regarded as normal characters. For example, "\QC:\file.exe\E" matches the "C:\file.exe" string, not the "C:\x0Cile.exe" string, where \x0C is the formfeed "\f".

### Example of using special character sequences

```
# This fingerprint matches HTTP content
# for which the length is >= 10000
# The situation context for this regular expression could be either
# "HTTP Request Header Line" or "HTTP Reply Header Line"
Content-Length: \d\d\d\d\d

# The regular expression could be also written as shown below
Content-Length: \d{5}
```

## Pattern-matching modifiers

The regular expression syntax has Perl-like extensions. The pattern-matching modifiers are extensions that can be used to control the matching process in more detail.

The modifiers are enabled with (?<modifiers>) and disabled with a minus (?-<modifiers>), where <modifiers> is a list of one or more modifiers.

### Example of pattern-matching modifiers

```
# This fingerprint is identical to the special character sequence example,
# except for the (?i) modifier.
# HTTP Header names are case-insensitive. For this reason,
# case-insensitivity is enabled in this fingerprint.
(?i)Content-Length: \d\d\d\d\d
```

The modifiers (?C), (?L), and (?S) are enabled by default.

The pattern-matching modifiers are listed in the following table:

**Table 177: Pattern-matching modifiers**

Sequence	Description
(?i)	<p>Case insensitive mode</p> <p>When enabled, case insensitive matching is used for the uppercase and lowercase letters. Thus, a letter matches regardless of its capitalization.</p> <p>When disabled, the letters are matched case-sensitively so that capitalization is taken into account in the matching process.</p>
(?s)	<p>Single line mode</p> <p>When enabled, the dot character "." matches also the null character <code>\x00</code> and a missing character in addition to matching any character (including linefeed and other non-printable characters).</p> <p>When disabled, the linefeed or a missing character are not matched.</p> <p>This modifier is enabled by default. Use <code>(?-s)</code> to disable it.</p>
(?x)	<p>Extended readability mode</p> <p>When enabled, equals to enabling <code>(?C)</code>, <code>(?L)</code>, and <code>(?S)</code>. Comments, linefeeds and spaces are not used in the matching process, allowing to use them for readability of the expression.</p> <p>When disabled, equals to disabling <code>(?C)</code>, <code>(?L)</code>, and <code>(?S)</code>. Comments, linefeeds, and spaces are used in the matching process.</p>
(?C)	<p>Allow comments mode</p> <p>When enabled, anything after the hash character "#" is regarded as a comment and not included in the matching process.</p> <p>When disabled, the hash character "#" and anything following are used in the matching process.</p> <p>This modifier is enabled by default. Use <code>(?-C)</code> to disable it.</p>
(?L)	<p>Ignore linefeeds mode</p> <p>When enabled, linefeed and carriage return characters are not included in the matching process unless defined (<code>\x0A</code> or <code>\n</code> for linefeed and <code>\x0D</code> or <code>\r</code> for carriage return).</p> <p>When disabled, linefeeds and carriage returns are used in the matching process.</p> <p>This modifier is enabled by default. Use <code>(?-L)</code> to disable it.</p>
(?S)	<p>Ignore spaces mode</p> <p>When enabled, the space and horizontal tab characters are not used in the matching process unless defined (<code>\x20</code> for space and <code>\x09</code> or <code>\t</code> for horizontal tab).</p> <p>When disabled, the space and horizontal tab characters are used in the matching process.</p>
(?<modifiers>:<expr>)	<p>Applies the &lt;modifiers&gt; modifiers only to the expression &lt;expr&gt;.</p> <p>These modifiers are not used in other parts of the regular expression.</p>

# Variable expression evaluation

Variable expression evaluation is an extension to regular expression syntax that provides the ability to use variables, parse values from the traffic stream and perform arithmetic operations.

**Table 178: Variable expression syntax**

Sequence	Description
(?[<expression>])	<expression> is one or more comma-separated expressions

## Example of setting a variable in a variable expression

```
# This regular expression searches for "aaa" anywhere in the traffic stream,
# and then sets the value of "parameter1" to 1
.*aaa(?[parameter1=1])
```

The default variable size is one bit. Variable size can be changed by appending “@<size>” to the variable name. For example, “parameter1@8” is an 8-bit variable. Possible variable sizes, in addition to 1, are 8, 16, 32 and 64 bits. By default variables are visible within a situation context. For example, a variable used in a situation with context “HTTP Request URI” is visible to all other situations in that context. Prefixing the variable name with a dollar sign “\$” makes it a connection variable. A connection variable is visible in all situations contexts for a single TCP connection, for example in both client and server stream contexts.

By default, no situation match is created when the end of a variable expression is reached. To create a match when a variable expression is used, the “sid()” function must be called.

**Table 179: Variable expression syntax**

Sequence	Description
<varexpr_a> -> <varexpr_b>	varexpr_b is executed only if varexpr_a is true

The following example shows a typical case where we want to search one string followed by another, for example “aaa” followed by “bbb”. An expression such as “. \*aaa . \*bbb” breaks the guideline of not using “. \*” in the middle of a regular expression. You can circumvent this issue using variable expressions.

## Example of setting and checking a variable value in a variable expression

```
# This regular expression searches for "aaa" anywhere in the traffic stream,
# and then sets the value of 'my_var' to 1.
# It also searches for "bbb", and checks whether "aaa" has already been
# seen earlier (i.e. the value of 'my_var' is one). If "aaa" has been seen
# already, a match is created using the "sid()" function.

# The following traffic matches this regular expression: "aaabbb",
# "xxaaaxxxxxxxxxbbbxx", "aaaxbbb"
# The following traffic does not match this regular expression:
#"bbbbaaa", "aabbbxxaaa"
(?x)
.*aaa(?[my_var=1]) |
.*bbb(?[my_var==1 -> sid()])
```



**Example of setting and checking a variable**

```
# This regular expression matches when "login.php" is seen in the traffic
# stream before "user=admin" Situation Context, e.g. "HTTP Request URI"
(?x)
.*login\.php(?:[login_page_seen=1]) |
.*user=admin(?:[login_page_seen=1 -> sid()])
```

All the arithmetic operations that are available in SMC regular expressions are listed in the table below. Operator precedence is the same as in the C programming language, except that '-' is the lowest in precedence. Statements inside parentheses '(') are always evaluated first, so the order of operations can be overridden with parentheses.

**Table 180: Operations on expression results**

Sequence	Description
false	Always evaluates to a false.
true	Always evaluates to a true.
<number>	A literal number in decimal, octal, and hexadecimal format, for example "32" or "0x20".
<var> = <expr>	Sets a value returned by expression <expr> to a variable <var>. See variable syntax below.
<var> += <expr>	Adds the value of variable <var> with the value returned by expression <expr> and sets the result to variable <var>.
<var> -= <expr>	Subtracts the value from variable <var> by the value returned by expression <expr> and sets the result to variable <var>.
<var> *= <expr>	Multiplies the value of <var> by the value returned by expression <expr> and sets the result to variable <var>.
<var> /= <expr>	Divides the value of <var> with the value returned by expression <expr> and sets the result to variable <var>.
<var> %= <expr>	Divides the value of <var> with the value returned by expression <expr> and sets the modulo of the result to variable <var>.
<var> <<= <expr>	Shifts the value of <var> to left by number of steps returned by expression <expr> and sets the result to variable <var>.
<var> >>= <expr>	Shifts the value of <var> to right by number of steps returned by expression <expr> and sets the result to variable <var>.
<var> &= <expr>	Performs bitwise AND with the value of variable <var> and the value returned by expression <expr> and sets the result to variable <var>.
<var>  = <expr>	Performs bitwise OR with the value of variable <var> and the value returned by expression <expr> and sets the result to variable <var>.
<var> ^= <expr>	Performs bitwise XOR with the value of variable <var> and the value returned by expression <expr> and sets the result to variable <var>.
<expr_a> -> <expr_b>	Expression <expr b> is evaluated only if <expr a> is true.
<expr_a> ? <expr_b> : <expr_c>	Expression <expr b> is evaluated only if <expr b> is true and expression <expr c> is evaluated if <expr a> is false.
<expr_a> == <expr_b>	Test if expressions <expr a> and <expr b> return an equal value.
<expr_a> != <expr_b>	Test if expressions <expr a> and <expr b> do not return an equal value.
<expr_a> < <expr_b>	Test if expression <expr b> returns higher value than expression <expr a>.

Sequence	Description
<code>&lt;expr_a&gt; &lt;= &lt;expr_b&gt;</code>	Test if expression <code>&lt;expr b&gt;</code> returns higher or equal value than expression <code>&lt;expr a&gt;</code> .
<code>&lt;expr_a&gt; &gt; &lt;expr_b&gt;</code>	Test if expression <code>&lt;expr a&gt;</code> returns higher value than expression <code>&lt;expr b&gt;</code> .
<code>&lt;expr_a&gt; &gt;= &lt;expr_b&gt;</code>	Test if expression <code>&lt;expr a&gt;</code> returns higher or equal value than expression <code>&lt;expr b&gt;</code> .
<code>&lt;expr_a&gt; &amp; &lt;expr_b&gt;</code>	Performs bitwise AND with expressions <code>&lt;expr_a&gt;</code> and <code>&lt;expr b&gt;</code> and returns the result.
<code>&lt;expr_a&gt;   &lt;expr_b&gt;</code>	Performs bitwise OR with expressions <code>&lt;expr a&gt;</code> and <code>&lt;expr b&gt;</code> and returns the result.
<code>&lt;expr_a&gt; ^ &lt;expr_b&gt;</code>	Performs bitwise XOR with expressions <code>&lt;expr a&gt;</code> and <code>&lt;expr b&gt;</code> and returns the result.
<code>&lt;expr_a&gt; &amp;&amp; &lt;expr_b&gt;</code>	Performs AND with expressions <code>&lt;expr a&gt;</code> and <code>&lt;expr b&gt;</code> and returns the result.
<code>&lt;expr_a&gt;    &lt;expr_b&gt;</code>	Performs OR with if expressions <code>&lt;expr a&gt;</code> and <code>&lt;expr b&gt;</code> and returns the result.
<code>&lt;var&gt;++, ++&lt;var&gt;</code>	Increase value of variable <code>&lt;var&gt;</code> by one.
<code>&lt;var&gt;--, --&lt;var&gt;</code>	Decrease value of variable <code>&lt;var&gt;</code> by one.
<code>-&lt;expr&gt;</code>	Negate the result of the expression <code>&lt;expr&gt;</code> .
<code>~&lt;expr&gt;</code>	Bitwise invert the result of the expression <code>&lt;expr&gt;</code> .
<code>!&lt;expr&gt;</code>	Perform NOT operation with the expression <code>&lt;expr&gt;</code> .



**Note:** In a regular expression such as “. \*aaa(?[var1=1])”, the starting of the variable expression “(?[var1=1])” is the most time-consuming operation, whereas setting or checking a variable value is a relatively fast operation. For example, the regular expression “. \*/(? [parameter1=1])” in an HTTP context would cause the starting of a variable expression after every “/” character in the traffic stream. As this character is common in HTTP protocol, the regular expression might degrade the system performance.

## Stream operations

Stream operations can be used to read data from the traffic stream.

The value returned by stream operations can either be written to a variable or used directly in an arithmetic operation. The stream operations are listed in the tables below.

**Table 181: ASCII data variable expressions**

Sequence	Description
<code>parse_dec(&lt;length&gt;)</code>	Parse ASCII decimal value. <code>&lt;length&gt;</code> is the maximum number of the characters to parse. The actual number of parsed digits is available in the variable <code>\$parse_length@32</code> . If no characters could be parsed, then the variable is set to zero.
<code>parse_hex(&lt;length&gt;)</code>	Parse ASCII hexadecimal value. <code>&lt;length&gt;</code> is the maximum number of the characters to parse. The actual number of parsed digits is available in the variable <code>\$parse_length@32</code> . If no characters could be parsed, then the variable is set to zero.
<code>parse_int(&lt;length&gt;)</code>	Parse ASCII value; parses hexadecimal if the string starts with "0x", octal if the string starts with zero ("0") and decimal otherwise. <code>&lt;length&gt;</code> is the maximum number of the characters to parse. The actual number of parsed digits is available in the variable <code>\$parse_length@32</code> . If no characters could be parsed, then the variable is set to zero.

Sequence	Description
<code>parse_oct(&lt;length&gt;)</code>	Parse ASCII octal value. <code>&lt;length&gt;</code> is the maximum number of the characters to parse. The actual number of parsed digits is available in the variable <code>\$parse_length@32</code> . If no characters could be parsed, then the variable is set to zero.

**Table 182: Miscellaneous input stream operations**

Sequence	Description
<code>CRC(&lt;length&gt;)</code>	Calculates a 32-bit CRC value starting from the current byte up to number of bytes specified by the <code>&lt;length&gt;</code> parameter. This function can be used as a space optimizer for probabilistically matching against a specific large binary block by its CRC. The CRC used is the 32-bit CRC with polynomial 0x104C11DB7 (used for example in Ethernet).
<code>skip(&lt;length&gt;)</code>	Skip <code>&lt;length&gt;</code> number of bytes.
<code>regex(&lt;regex&gt;)</code>	Launch an independent subexpression.

The binary data from the input stream can be read into variables with the following expressions.

**Table 183: Binary data variable expressions**

Sequence	Description
<code>parse_be@&lt;size&gt;</code>	Parse big endian value. <code>&lt;size&gt;</code> is the size of the value to be read in bits, and it can be one of the following: 8, 16, 24, 32, 40, 48, 56 or 64.
<code>parse_le@&lt;size&gt;</code>	Parse little endian value. <code>&lt;size&gt;</code> is the size of the value to be read in bits, and it can be one of the following: 8, 16, 24, 32, 40, 48, 56 or 64.

### Example of parsing a value from the traffic stream

```
# This regular expression finds the string "&parameter1=", parses the
# following three bytes as an ASCII decimal number, and writes the values
# to the "var1@8" variable
# The regular expression matches only if the number is greater than 100
(?x)
.*&parameter1=(?[var1@8=parse_dec(3), var1@8>100 -> sid()])
```

## System variables


System variables are connection variables whose values are set by the NGFW Engine.

A regular expression can only read the value of these variables. The two most commonly used variables are `$dport` and `$offset`. The `$dport` variable contains the destination port of the connection/datagram, and it is useful especially in:

- “Any Application Protocols” contexts, which receive all traffic (any TCP/UDP port).
- Unknown Application Protocols” contexts, which receive traffic that does not have a dedicated, protocol-specific context (mostly high TCP/UDP ports).

The `$offset` variable contains the number of bytes that have been matched since the beginning of the traffic stream. The following table lists all system variables.

**Table 184: System variables**

Sequence	Description
\$major	The major version number of the NGFW Engine.
\$minor	The minor version number of the NGFW Engine.
\$patch	The patch level number of the NGFW Engine.
\$build	The build number of the NGFW Engine.
\$dir	<p>32-bit integer type expression that is evaluated to the current direction of the current fingerprinted data. The expression returns the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0 — Client direction</li> <li>1 — Server direction</li> </ul> <p> <b>Note:</b> The value is relative to direction from which the connection was established. If a connection was detected while it was in progress, the value might not correspond to the actual client or server direction.</p>
\$dport	<p>The current destination port of the connection.</p> <p>For TCP, \$dport is the destination port of the SYN packet. For UDP, \$dport is the destination port of the first UDP packet sent between two hosts.</p>
\$icmp_code	A 32-bit integer type expression that is evaluated to the current ICMP code number of the connection.
\$icmp_type	A 32-bit integer type expression that is evaluated to the current ICMP type number of the connection.
\$ipproto	A 32-bit integer type expression that is evaluated to the current IP-protocol number of the connection.
\$offset	<p>The byte that is under inspection when counted from the beginning of the traffic stream.</p> <p>For implementation-specific reasons, the value is increased only after the first byte of a traffic stream (after the first byte, the value is still 0). For this reason, the value of \$offset is actually the real offset minus one.</p>
\$parse_length@32	Number of digits parsed by last <code>parse_dec()</code> , <code>parse_hex()</code> , <code>parse_oct()</code> , or <code>parse_in()</code> expression.
\$sport	A 32-bit integer type expression that is evaluated to the current source port of the connection.

## Example of system variable use

```
# This regular expression matches
# if hexadecimal bytes "0x01", "0x02",
# and "0x03" are seen in port 5000
.*\x01\x02\x03(?:$dport==5000 -> sid())
```

### Related reference

[Stream operations](#) on page 1458

# Independent subexpressions

Independent subexpressions allow starting another regular expression from inside a variable expression.

The function used for starting the subexpression is `regex()`. The `cancel` function must always be called after a match in a subexpression. This function stops the execution of the subexpression and frees resources. The `cancel` function is always called without parentheses `()` unlike other functions.

Subexpressions are useful for splitting a single complex regular expression into two. For example, `.*&filename=[^&]{256}` breaks the guideline of not using `.*` or `<expr>{n,m}` with a large `m` in the middle of a regular expression. The following illustration shows how to circumvent this limitation by using an independent subexpression.

## Example of independent subexpression use

```
# This fingerprint detects an HTTP parameter file name with value longer than # 256 bytes
(?x)
.*&filename=(?[
  regex(
    [^&]{256} (?[sid()],cancel)
  )
])
```

# Parallel matching groups

With complex regular expressions, you might need to set up different regular expressions for matching in parallel groups.

You can set different regular expressions to be matched in parallel groups within one Situation Context. Normally, manual Situation group definitions are not needed and the engine automatically compiles all your custom Situations in the same group (group 0). Manual group definitions are needed if the policy upload fails due to fingerprint/DFA compilation problems that can occur with complex regular expressions.

To use grouping, add a new preprocessing tag to the beginning of the regular expression.

**Table 185: Preprocessing tag for setting a group for matching**

Syntax	Description
<code>#!GROUP(X)</code> Comment <code>#!!#</code>	'X' is the group number from 0 to 7. The comment is optional. If you do not specify the group with this tag, the Situation is processed in group zero.

# Tips for working with regular expressions

Before you work with regular expressions, review the following tips.

- For more examples of regular expressions, you can view the **Context** tab of the **Situation Properties** dialog box.

- When adding a Situation to an Inspection rule, it is often useful to select the “Excerpt” logging option. This option includes an excerpt of the traffic that the regular expression matches and also the matching position (“Excerpt position”) in the log entry. This helps in verifying that the regular expression works as expected.
- Freely available tools, such as wget, can be used for generating traffic for testing regular expressions.
- If a policy upload fails with an error message such as “Fingerprint compilation failed”, it indicates that a regular expression is too complex. In this case, the regular expression must be edited. For example, use a variable expression or an independent subexpression. If it is not possible to edit the regular expression, the regular expression can be moved to a parallel matching group.

**Related reference**

[Parallel matching groups](#) on page 1461

# SNMP traps and MIBs

## Contents

- [SNMP traps and MIBs](#) on page 1463

For information about SNMP traps (notifications) and MIBs (objects), see the following reference.

## SNMP traps and MIBs

The following tables describe the SNMP traps and MIB objects that you might encounter when using the SMC.

The SMC Appliance can be configured for SNMP access. The list of Net-SNMP common MIBs for the SMC Appliance can be found in the `/usr/share/snmp/mibs` directory. Visit <http://www.net-snmp.org> for Net-SNMP MIB descriptions.

Firewall/VPN, IPS, and Layer 2 Firewall engines can send SNMP traps on system events. The traps are configured using SNMP Agent elements. Also, Tester entries can be configured to send SNMP traps. The SNMP traps are listed in the table.

**Table 186: SNMP traps for Firewall/VPN, IPS, and Layer 2 Firewalls**

Trap name	Objects included	Description
fwPolicyInstall	fwSecurityPolicy	(Firewall and Layer 2 Firewall) Policy was installed on the Firewall engine.
ipsPolicyInstall	ipsSecurityPolicy	(IPS) Policy was installed on the IPS engine.
nodeBoot	-	Node bootup complete.
nodeHwmon	nodeHwmonEvent	Hardware monitoring system has detected problems.
nodeOffline	nodeOperState	Node changed to offline or standby state.
nodeOnline	nodeOperState	Node changed to online state.
nodeShutdown	-	Node is shutting down.
nodeTestFailure	nodeTestIdentity	Test subsystem reported a test failure on the node.
nodeFailedUserLogin	nodeLastLogin	(Firewall and Layer 2 Firewall) Logon failed on the firewall engine's console or through SSH.
nodeUserLogin	nodeLastLogin	Log on initiated on the engine's console or through SSH.
nodeUserLogout	nodeLastLogin	(Firewall and Layer 2 Firewall) Log off on the firewall engine's console or through SSH.

The STONESOFT-SMI-MIB defines the top-level enterprise registrations for the Forcepoint NGFW products in the `.iso.org.dod.internet.private.enterprises.stonesoft` branch (OID `.1.3.6.1.4.1.1369`). The Forcepoint NGFW-specific MIB files can be downloaded at <https://support.forcepoint.com/Downloads>.

The Forcepoint NGFW-specific MIBs are:

- STONESOFT-FIREWALL-MIB
- STONESOFT-IPS-MIB
- STONESOFT-NETNODE-MIB

NGFW Engines in the Firewall/VPN and Layer 2 Firewall roles support objects in STONESOFT-FIREWALL-MIB. NGFW Engines in the IPS role support objects in STONESOFT-IPS-MIB. NGFW Engines in all roles support objects in STONESOFT-NETNODE-MIB.

NGFW Engines in the Firewall/VPN role also support objects in the following standard MIBs:

- IF-MIB (RFC 2863 and RFC 2233)
- IP-MIB (RFC 2011)
- SNMP-USER-BASED-SM-MIB (RFC 3414)
- SNMPv2 MIB (RFC 3418)

**Table 187: STONESOFT-FIREWALL-MIB objects**

Object name	Object description in MIB
fwPolicyTime	The time when the security policy was installed to the Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall
fwSecurityPolicy	Name of the current security policy on the Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall
fwSoftwareVersion	Version string of the Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall software
fwConnNumber	Number of current connections
fwAccepted	Number of accepted packets
fwDropped	Number of dropped packets
fwLogged	Number of logged packets
fwAccounted	Number of accounted packets
fwRejected	Number of rejected packets
fwIfTable	This table contains an entry for each interface in system
fwIfStatsEntry	Row for an interface
fwIfStatsIndex	A unique value, greater than zero, for each interface or interface sublayer in the managed system
fwIfName	Name of interface
fwIfAcceptedPkts	Number of accepted packets by Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall rules
fwIfDroppedPkts	Number of dropped packets by Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall rules
fwIfForwardedPkts	Number of forwarded packets by Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall rules
fwIfLoggedPkts	Number of logged packets by Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall rules
fwIfRejectedPkts	Number of rejected packets by Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall rules
fwIfAccountedPkts	Number of accounted packets by Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall rules
fwIfAcceptedBytes	Number of accepted bytes by Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall rules
fwIfForwardedBytes	Number of forwarded bytes by Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall rules
fwIfDroppedBytes	Number of dropped bytes by Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall rules
fwIfLoggedBytes	Number of logged bytes by Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall rules
fwIfRejectedBytes	Number of rejected bytes by Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall rules



Object name	Object description in MIB
fwIfAccountedBytes	Number of accounted bytes by Firewall or Layer 2 Firewall rules
fwCpuTable	This table contains an entry for each CPU in a system and total usage of all CPUs
fwCpuStats	Row with information about CPU usage
fwCpuStatsId	A unique value, greater than zero, for each CPU in the managed system. First element with Id '0' is designed for total values
fwCpuName	Name of data current line concern
fwCpuTotal	The total CPU load percentage
fwCpuUser	The percentage of time the CPU has spent running users' processes that are not niced
fwCpuSystem	The percentage of time the CPU has spent running the kernel and its processes
fwCpuNice	The percentage of time the CPU has spent running user's processes that have been niced
fwCpuIdle	The percentage of time the CPU was idle
fwCpuIoWait	The percentage of time the CPU has been waiting for I/O to complete
fwCpuHwIrq	The percentage of time the CPU has been servicing hardware interrupts
fwCpuSoftIrq	The percentage of time the CPU has been servicing software interrupts
fwSwapBytesTotal	Total swap space
fwSwapBytesUsed	Used space of swap
fwSwapBytesUnused	Amount of unused space of swap
fwMemBytesTotal	Number of available bytes of physical memory
fwMemBytesUsed	Amount of memory being in use
fwMemBytesUnused	Number of unused bytes of physical memory
fwMemBytesBuffers	Amount of memory used as buffers
fwMemBytesCached	Amount of memory used as cache
fwDiskSpaceUsageTable	Table contains an entry for each partition mounted in a system
fwDiskStats	Row of information concerning one partition
fwPartitionIndex	A unique value, greater than zero, for each partition
fwPartitionDevName	A unique name of a device
fwMountPointName	Name of a mount point
fwPartitionSize	Total size of the partition
fwPartitionUsed	Amount of used space of the partition (in kilobytes)
fwPartitionAvail	Information about amount of free space on partition (in kilobytes)
fwVpnEp4Local	Local IPv4 endpoint address
fwVpnEp4Remote	Remote IPv4 endpoint address
fwVpnEp4RemoteType	The type of remote VPN endpoint (static, dynamic, or mobile)
fwVpnEp4ReceivedBytes	Number of received bytes between the endpoint pair
fwVpnEp4SentBytes	Number of sent bytes between the endpoint pair
fwVpnEp4IpsecSa	Number of currently established IPsec SAs between the endpoint pair

Object name	Object description in MIB
fwVpnEp6Local	Local IPv6 endpoint address
fwVpnEp6Remote	Remote IPv6 endpoint address
fwVpnEp6RemoteType	The type of remote VPN endpoint (static, dynamic, or mobile)
fwVpnEp6ReceivedBytes	Number of received bytes between the endpoint pair
fwVpnEp6SentBytes	Number of sent bytes between the endpoint pair
fwVpnEp6IpsecSa	Number of currently established IPsec SAs between the endpoint pair
adslModulation	Modulation protocol
adslChannel	Channel type
adslConnStatus	The status of the DSL link or communication status with DSL modem in case of communication error
adslConnUptime	Uptime of current ADSL connection
adslLineStatus	Status of DSL line
adslInOctets	Number of bytes received by ADSL interface
adslOutOctets	Number of bytes transmitted by ADSL interface
adslSynchroSpeedUp	The actual rate at which data is flowing upstream
adslSynchroSpeedDown	The actual rate at which data is flowing downstream
adslAttenuationUp	An estimate of the average loop attenuation upstream
adslAttenuationDown	An estimate of the average loop attenuation downstream
adslNoiseMarginUp	This is a signal-to-noise ratio (SNR) margin for traffic going upstream
adslNoiseMarginDown	This is a signal-to-noise ratio (SNR) margin for traffic going downstream
adslHecErrorsUp	The total number of header error checksum errors upstream
adslHecErrorsDown	The total number of header error checksum errors downstream
adslOcdErrorsUp	The number of out-of-cell delineation errors upstream
adslOcdErrorsDown	The number of out-of-cell delineation errors downstream
adslLcdErrorsUp	The total of lost-cell-delineation errors upstream
adslLcdErrorsDown	The total of lost-cell-delineation errors downstream
adslBitErrorsUp	The number of bit errors upstream
adslBitErrorsDown	The number of bit errors downstream

**Table 188: STONESOFT IPS-MIB objects**

Object name	Object description in MIB
ipsPolicyTime	The time when the security policy was installed to the IPS engine
ipsSecurityPolicy	Name of the current security policy on the IPS engine
ipsSoftwareVersion	Version string of the IPS software

**Table 189: STONESOFT-NETNODE-MIB objects**

Object name	Object description in MIB
nodeClusterId	The identification number of the cluster this node belongs to
nodeCPULoad	The CPU load percentage on the node
nodeHwmonEvent	Reason for the hardware monitoring event
nodeLastLogin	The most recent logon event on the node
nodeLastLoginTime	Time stamp of the most recent logon event on the node
nodeMemberId	Node's member identification within the cluster
nodeOperState	The operative (clustering) state of the node
nodeTestIdentity	Identification string of a nodeTest
nodeTestResult	The most recent result of the nodeTest
nodeTestResultTime	The time stamp of the most recent result of the nodeTest

**Table 190: IF-MIB supported objects**

Object name	Object description in MIB
ifAdminStatus	The state of the interface that the administrator wants. The testing(3) state indicates that no operational packets can be passed. When a managed system initializes, all interfaces start with ifAdminStatus in the down(2) state. As a result of either explicit management action or per configuration information retained by the managed system, ifAdminStatus is then changed to either the up(1) or testing(3) states (or remains in the down(2) state).
ifAlias	This object is an 'alias' name for the interface as specified by a network manager, and provides a non-volatile 'handle' for the interface. On the first instantiation of an interface, the value of ifAlias associated with that interface is the zero-length string. As and when a value is written into an instance of ifAlias through a network management set operation, then the agent must retain the supplied value in the ifAlias instance associated with the same interface for as long as that interface remains instantiated, including across all reinitializations or reboots of the network management system, including those which result in a change of the interface's ifIndex value. An example of the value which a network manager might store in this object for a WAN interface is the (Telco's) circuit number or identifier of the interface. Some agents can support write-access only for interfaces having particular values of ifType. An agent which supports write access to this object is required to keep the value in non-volatile storage, but it can limit the length of new values depending on how much storage is already occupied by the current values for other interfaces.
ifDescr	A textual string containing information about the interface. This string includes the name of the manufacturer, the product name, and the version of the interface hardware or software.
ifHCInMulticastPkts	The 64-bit wide number of packets, delivered by this sublayer to a higher (sub)layer, which were addressed to a multicast address at this sublayer. For a MAC layer protocol, this includes both Group and Functional addresses. This object is a 64-bit version of ifInMulticastPkts. Discontinuities in the value of this counter can occur at reinitialization of the network management system, and at other times as indicated by the value of ifCounterDiscontinuityTime.  The 32-bit ifInMulticastPkts reports the low 32-bits of this counter's value.
ifHCInOctets	The 64-bit wide total number of octets received on the interface, including framing characters. This object is a 64-bit version of ifInOctets. Discontinuities in the value of this counter can occur at reinitialization of the network management system, and at other times as indicated by the value of ifCounterDiscontinuityTime.  The 32-bit ifInOctets reports the low 32-bits of this counter's value.

Object name	Object description in MIB
ifHCInUcastPkts	<p>The 64-bit wide number of packets, delivered by this sublayer to a higher (sub-)layer, which were not addressed to a multicast or broadcast address at this sublayer. This object is a 64-bit version of ifInUcastPkts. Discontinuities in the value of this counter can occur at reinitialization of the network management system, and at other times as indicated by the value of ifCounterDiscontinuityTime.</p> <p>The 32-bit ifInUcastPkts reports the low 32-bits of this counter's value.</p>
ifHCOctets	<p>The 64-bit wide total number of octets transmitted out of the interface, including framing characters. This object is a 64-bit version of ifOutOctets. Discontinuities in the value of this counter can occur at reinitialization of the network management system, and at other times as indicated by the value of ifCounterDiscontinuityTime.</p> <p>The 32-bit ifOutOctets reports the low 32-bits of this counter's value.</p>
ifHCOUcastPkts	<p>The 64-bit wide total number of packets that higher-level protocols requested to be transmitted, and which were not addressed to a multicast or broadcast address at this sublayer, including those packets that were discarded or not sent. This object is a 64-bit version of ifOutUcastPkts. Discontinuities in the value of this counter can occur at reinitialization of the network management system, and at other times as indicated by the value of ifCounterDiscontinuityTime.</p> <p>The 32-bit ifOutUcastPkts reports the low 32-bits of this counter's value.</p>
ifHighSpeed	<p>An estimate of the interface's current bandwidth in units of 1,000,000 bits per second. If this object reports a value of 'n', then the speed of the interface is somewhere in the range of 'n-500,000' to 'n+499,999'. For interfaces which do not vary in bandwidth or for those where no accurate estimation can be made, this object contains the nominal bandwidth. For a sublayer which has no concept of bandwidth, this object must be zero.</p>
ifIndex	<p>A unique value, greater than zero, for each interface. It is recommended that values are assigned contiguously starting from 1. The value for each interface sublayer must remain constant at least from one reinitialization of the entity's network management system to the next reinitialization.</p>
ifInDiscards	<p>The number of inbound packets which were chosen to be discarded even though no errors had been detected to prevent their being deliverable to a higher-layer protocol. One possible reason for discarding such a packet could be to free up buffer space. Discontinuities in the value of this counter can occur at reinitialization of the network management system, and at other times as indicated by the value of ifCounterDiscontinuityTime.</p>
ifInErrors	<p>For packet-oriented interfaces, the number of inbound packets that contained errors preventing them from being deliverable to a higher-layer protocol. For character-oriented or fixed-length interfaces, the number of inbound transmission units that contained errors preventing them from being deliverable to a higher-layer protocol. Discontinuities in the value of this counter can occur at reinitialization of the network management system, and at other times as indicated by the value of ifCounterDiscontinuityTime.</p>
ifInMulticastPkts	<p>The 32-bit wide number of packets, delivered by this sublayer to a higher (sub)layer, which were addressed to a multicast address at this sublayer. For a MAC layer protocol, this includes both Group and Functional addresses. Discontinuities in the value of this counter can occur at reinitialization of the network management system, and at other times as indicated by the value of ifCounterDiscontinuityTime.</p> <p>This object reports the low 32-bits of the 64-bit ifHCInMulticastPkts counter's value.</p>
ifInOctets	<p>The 32-bit wide total number of octets received on the interface, including framing characters. Discontinuities in the value of this counter can occur at reinitialization of the network management system, and at other times as indicated by the value of ifCounterDiscontinuityTime.</p> <p>This object reports the low 32-bits of the 64-bit ifHCInOctets counter's value.</p>

Object name	Object description in MIB
ifInUcastPkts	<p>The 32-bit wide number of packets, delivered by this sublayer to a higher (sub-)layer, which were not addressed to a multicast or broadcast address at this sublayer. Discontinuities in the value of this counter can occur at reinitialization of the network management system, and at other times as indicated by the value of ifCounterDiscontinuityTime.</p> <p>This object reports the low 32-bits of the 64-bit ifHCInUcastPkts counter's value.</p>
ifLastChange	The value of sysUpTime at the time the interface entered its current operational state. If the current state was entered before the last reinitialization of the local network management subsystem, this object contains a zero value.
ifLinkUpDownTrapEnable	Indicates whether linkUp or linkDown traps are generated for this interface. By default, this object must have the value enabled(1) for interfaces which do not operate on 'top' of any other interface (as defined in the ifStackTable), and disabled(2) otherwise.
ifMtu	The size of the largest packet which can be sent or received on the interface, specified in octets. For interfaces that are used for transmitting network datagrams, this is the size of the largest network datagram that can be sent on the interface.
ifName	The textual name of the interface. The value of this object must be the name of the interface as assigned by the local device. It must be suitable for use in commands entered at the device's 'console'. This name might be a text name, such as 'le0' or a simple port number, such as '1', depending on the interface naming syntax of the device. If several entries in the ifTable together represent a single interface as named by the device, each will have the same value of ifName. For an agent which responds to SNMP queries concerning an interface on some other (proxied) device, then the value of ifName for such an interface is the proxied device's local name for it. If there is no local name, or this object is otherwise not applicable, this object contains a zero-length string.
ifNumber	The number of network interfaces (regardless of their current state) present on this system.
ifOperStatus	The current operational state of the interface. The testing(3) state indicates that no operational packets can be passed. If ifAdminStatus is down(2), then ifOperStatus is down(2). If ifAdminStatus is changed to up(1), then ifOperStatus changes to up(1) if the interface is ready to transmit and receive network traffic; it changes to dormant(5) if the interface is waiting for external actions (such as a serial line waiting for an incoming connection); it remains in the down(2) state if and only if there is a fault that prevents it from going to the up(1) state; it remains in the notPresent(6) state if the interface has missing (typically, hardware) components.
ifOutDiscards	The number of outbound packets which were chosen to be discarded even though no errors had been detected to prevent their being transmitted. One possible reason for discarding such a packet could be to free up buffer space. Discontinuities in the value of this counter can occur at reinitialization of the network management system, and at other times as indicated by the value of ifCounterDiscontinuityTime.
ifOutErrors	For packet-oriented interfaces, the number of outbound packets that could not be transmitted because of errors. For character-oriented or fixed-length interfaces, the number of outbound transmission units that could not be transmitted because of errors. Discontinuities in the value of this counter can occur at reinitialization of the network management system, and at other times as indicated by the value of ifCounterDiscontinuityTime.
ifOutOctets	<p>The 32-bit wide total number of octets transmitted out of the interface, including framing characters. Discontinuities in the value of this counter can occur at reinitialization of the network management system, and at other times as indicated by the value of ifCounterDiscontinuityTime.</p> <p>This object reports the low 32-bits of the 64-bit ifHCOutOctets counter's value.</p>

Object name	Object description in MIB
ifOutUcastPkts	<p>The 32-bit wide total number of packets that higher-level protocols requested to be transmitted, and which were not addressed to a multicast or broadcast address at this sublayer, including the packets that were discarded or not sent. Discontinuities in the value of this counter can occur at reinitialization of the network management system, and at other times as indicated by the value of ifCounterDiscontinuityTime.</p> <p>This object reports the low 32-bits of the 64-bit ifHCOUcastPkts counter's value.</p>
ifPhysAddress	<p>The interface's address at its protocol sublayer. For example, for an 802.x interface, this object normally contains a MAC address. The interface's media-specific MIB must define the bit and byte ordering and the format of the value of this object. For interfaces that do not have such an address (for example, a serial line), this object must contain an octet string of zero length.</p>
ifPromiscuousMode	<p>This object has a value of false(2) if this interface only accepts packets or frames that are addressed to this station. This object has a value of true(1) when the station accepts all packets or frames transmitted on the media. The value true(1) is only legal on certain types of media. If legal, setting this object to a value of true(1) might require the interface to be reset before becoming effective. The value of ifPromiscuousMode does not affect the reception of broadcast and multicast packets or frames by the interface.</p>
ifSpeed	<p>An estimate of the interface's current bandwidth in bits per second. For interfaces which do not vary in bandwidth or for those where no accurate estimation can be made, this object must contain the nominal bandwidth. If the bandwidth of the interface is greater than the maximum value reportable by this object, then this object must report its maximum value (4,294,967,295) and ifHighSpeed must be used to report the interface's speed. For a sublayer which has no concept of bandwidth, this object must be zero.</p>
ifType	<p>The type of interface. Additional values for ifType are assigned by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA), through updating the syntax of the IANAifType textual convention.</p>

**Table 191: SNMP-USER-BASED-SM-MIB objects**

Object name	Object description in MIB
usmStatsDecryptionErrors	<p>The total number of packets received by the SNMP engine which were dropped because they could not be decrypted.</p>
usmStatsNotInTimeWindows	<p>The total number of packets received by the SNMP engine which were dropped because they appeared outside of the authoritative SNMP engine's window.</p>
usmStatsUnknownEngineIDs	<p>The total number of packets received by the SNMP engine which were dropped because they referenced an snmpEngineID that was not known to the SNMP engine.</p>
usmStatsUnknownUserNames	<p>The total number of packets received by the SNMP engine which were dropped because they referenced a user that was not known to the SNMP engine.</p>
usmStatsUnsupportedSecLevels	<p>The total number of packets received by the SNMP engine which were dropped because they requested a security Level that was unknown to the SNMP engine or otherwise unavailable.</p>
usmStatsWrongDigests	<p>The total number of packets received by the SNMP engine which were dropped because they did not contain the expected digest value.</p>
usmUserSpinLock	<p>An advisory lock used to allow several cooperating Command Generator Applications to coordinate their use of facilities to change secrets in the usmUserTable.</p>

Object name	Object description in MIB
usmUserStatus	The status of this conceptual row. Until instances of all corresponding columns are appropriately configured, the value of the corresponding instance of the usmUserStatus column is 'notReady'. In particular, a newly created row for a user who employs authentication cannot be made active until the corresponding usmUserCloneFrom and usmUserAuthKeyChange have been set. Further, a newly created row for a user who also employs privacy cannot be made active until the usmUserPrivKeyChange has been set. The RowStatus TC [RFC2579] requires that this DESCRIPTION clause states under which circumstances other objects in this row can be edited: The value of this object has no effect on whether other objects in this conceptual row can be edited, except for usmUserOwnAuthKeyChange and usmUserOwnPrivKeyChange. For these 2 objects, the value of usmUserStatus MUST be active.

**Table 192: SNMPv2-MIB supported objects**

Object name	Object description in MIB
snmpEnableAuthenTraps	Indicates whether the SNMP entity is permitted to generate authenticationFailure traps. The value of this object overrides any configuration information; as such, it provides a means whereby all authenticationFailure traps can be disabled. It is recommended that this object is stored in non-volatile memory so that it remains constant across reinitializations of the network management system.
snmplnASNParseErrs	The total number of ASN.1 or BER errors encountered by the SNMP entity when decoding received SNMP messages.
snmplnBadCommunityNames	The total number of SNMP messages delivered to the SNMP entity which used an SNMP community name not known to said entity.
snmplnBadCommunityUses	The total number of SNMP messages delivered to the SNMP entity which represented an SNMP operation which was not allowed by the SNMP community named in the message.
snmplnBadVersions	The total number of SNMP messages which were delivered to the SNMP entity and were for an unsupported SNMP version.
snmplnPkts	The total number of messages delivered to the SNMP entity from the transport service.
snmpProxyDrops	The total number of GetRequest-PDUs, GetNextRequest-PDUs, GetBulkRequest-PDUs, SetRequest-PDUs, and InformRequest-PDUs delivered to the SNMP entity which were silently dropped because the transmission of the (possibly translated) message to a proxy target failed in a manner (other than a time-out) such that no Response-PDU could be returned.
snmpSetSerialNo	An advisory lock used to allow several cooperating SNMPv2 entities, all acting in a manager role, to coordinate their use of the SNMPv2 set operation. This object is used for coarse-grain coordination. To achieve fine-grain coordination, one or more similar objects might be defined within each MIB group, as appropriate.
snmpSilentDrops	The total number of GetRequest-PDUs, GetNextRequest-PDUs, GetBulkRequest-PDUs, SetRequest-PDUs, and InformRequest-PDUs delivered to the SNMP entity which were silently dropped because the size of a reply containing an alternate Response-PDU with an empty variable-bindings field was greater than either a local constraint or the maximum message size associated with the originator of the request.
sysContact	The textual identification of the contact person for this managed node, together with information about how to contact this person. If no contact information is known, the value is the zero-length string.

Object name	Object description in MIB
sysDescr	A textual description of the entity. This value must include the full name and version identification of the system's hardware type, software operating-system, and networking software.
sysLocation	The physical location of this node (for example, 'telephone closet, 3rd floor'). If the location is unknown, the value is the zero-length string.
sysName	An administratively assigned name for this managed node. By convention, this is the node's fully qualified domain name. If the name is unknown, the value is the zero-length string.
sysObjectID	The vendor's authoritative identification of the network management subsystem contained in the entity. This value is allocated within the SMI enterprises subtree (1.3.6.1.4.1) and provides an easy and unambiguous means for determining 'what kind of box' is being managed. For example, if vendor 'Flintstones, Inc.' was assigned the subtree 1.3.6.1.4.1.4242, it could assign the identifier 1.3.6.1.4.1.4242.1.1 to its 'Fred Router'.
sysServices	<p>A value which indicates the set of services that this entity potentially offers. The value is a sum. This sum initially takes the value zero. Then, for each layer, L, in the range 1 through 7, that this node performs transactions for, 2 raised to (L - 1) is added to the sum. For example, a node which performs only routing functions would have a value of 4 (<math>2^{(3-1)}</math>). In contrast, a node which is a host offering application services would have a value of 72 (<math>2^{(4-1)} + 2^{(7-1)}</math>). In the context of the Internet suite of protocols, values must be calculated accordingly:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• layer functionality 1 physical (for example, repeaters).</li> <li>• 2 datalink or subnetwork (for example, bridges).</li> <li>• 3 Internet (for example, supports IP).</li> <li>• 4 end-to-end (for example, supports TCP).</li> <li>• 7 applications (for example, supports SMTP).</li> <li>• For systems including OSI protocols, layers 5 and 6 can also be counted.</li> </ul>
sysUpTime	The time (in hundredths of a second) since the network management portion of the system was last reinitialized.



# Schema updates for external LDAP servers

### Contents

- [Schema updates for external LDAP servers](#) on page 1473

There are SMC-specific LDAP classes and attributes that you add to the schema of external LDAP servers.

## Schema updates for external LDAP servers

When adding SMC-specific LDAP classes and attributes to the schema of external LDAP servers, see the following tables.

The SMC-specific attribute and class names start with “sg”. The classes are listed in the following table.

**Table 193: SMC-specific LDAP classes**

Class	Description
sggroup	SMC user group
sguser	SMC user account

The SMC-specific attributes are listed in the following table.

**Table 194: SMC-specific LDAP attributes**

Attribute	Related classes	Description
sgactivation	sguser	Activation date for the user account.
sgauth	sggroup, sguser	Authentication service for the user or group.
sgdelay	sggroup, sguser	Number of days the user account is valid after the activation.
sgexpiration	sguser	Last day when the user account is valid and the user can log in.
sggroupype	sggroup	Indicates the type of the group: a subtree or discrete group.
sgmember	sggroup	The Distinguished Name (DN) for the user member of this group.
sgpassword	sguser	MD5 message digest hash of the user password.
sgpresharedkey	sguser	IPsec PreSharedKey for the user account.
sgsubjectaltnames	sguser	IPsec certificate SubjectAltNames for the user account.

Attribute	Related classes	Description
sgvirtualip	sggroup, sguser	Virtual IP allocation allowed for the user.

In addition to updating the directory schema, there can be some server-specific requirements. For Netscape and OpenLDAP version 1.2.11 servers, you must configure the following lines to the LDAP server's slapd.conf configuration file after stopping the LDAP service.

#### Additional configuration for OpenLDAP v1.2.11 and Netscape server

```
include /etc/openldap/slapd.at.conf
include /etc/openldap/slapd.oc.conf
include /etc/openldap/sg-schema.conf
schemacheck on
```

For OpenLDAP server versions 2.0 and later, you must configure the following lines to the LDAP server's slapd.conf configuration file after stopping the LDAP service.

#### Additional configuration for OpenLDAP version 2.0 or later

```
include /etc/openldap/schema/core.schema
include /etc/openldap/schema/cosine.schema
include /etc/openldap/schema/inetorgperson.schema
include /etc/openldap/schema/sg-v3.schema
```

# Log fields

### Contents

- [Log entry fields](#) on page 1475
- [Facility field values](#) on page 1495
- [Type field values](#) on page 1496
- [Action field values](#) on page 1497
- [Event field values](#) on page 1498
- [IPsec VPN log messages](#) on page 1501
- [Audit entry types](#) on page 1506
- [Syslog entries](#) on page 1510
- [Log fields controlled by the Additional Payload option](#) on page 1510
- [Connection states](#) on page 1511

For descriptions of all log fields, see the following reference.

## Log entry fields

---

The following tables list the fields of the log entry table and the corresponding XML fields exported to syslog for exportable log entry fields.

The rights of the administrator who views the logs and the log types that the administrator has selected for viewing determine which fields are displayed.

### Related reference

- [Non-exportable log entry fields](#) on page 1475
- [Exportable alert log entry fields](#) on page 1480
- [Exportable alert trace log entry fields](#) on page 1480
- [Exportable audit log entry fields](#) on page 1481
- [Exportable Firewall and Layer 2 Firewall log entry fields](#) on page 1481
- [Exportable IPS log entry fields](#) on page 1483
- [Exportable IPS recording log entry fields](#) on page 1494

## Non-exportable log entry fields

---

The following log entry fields can be displayed in the log table, but cannot be exported to syslog.

**Table 195: Non-exportable log entry fields**

Field	Description
Additional Situation	Identifier of an additional situation that was detected simultaneously with the situation that triggered the log event.
APN	The access point name (APN) of the mobile service in GTP traffic.
Blacklist response.Blacklist duration	Duration of blacklisting in seconds.
Blacklist response.Blacklist executor	Firewall or sensor that blacklisted the traffic that triggered the log event.
Blacklist response.Endpoint1 addr	Blacklisted IP addresses for Endpoint1.
Blacklist response.Endpoint1 mask	Netmask for blacklisted Endpoint1 IP address (32 = host address).
Blacklist response.Endpoint1 port	Blacklisted Endpoint1 port (empty = all ports).
Blacklist response.Endpoint1 port range	Blacklisted Endpoint1 port range.
Blacklist response.Endpoint2 addr	Blacklisted IP addresses for Endpoint2.
Blacklist response.Endpoint2 mask	Netmask for blacklisted Endpoint2 IP address (32 = host address).
Blacklist response.Endpoint2 port	Blacklisted Endpoint2 port (empty = all ports).
Blacklist response.Endpoint2 port range	Blacklisted Endpoint2 port range.
Blacklist response.Firewall ID	ID number of firewall node for which the blacklist request is assigned (this must match the Firewall ID given to the blacklist Analyzer module).
Blacklist response.IP Protocol	IP protocol of the blacklist response.
Blacklist response.Value missing in	Blacklist Response field for which value resolving failed.
Certificate verify error	TLS/SSL Certificate verify error code related to this event.
Client Application	The client application that opened the connection.
Client Executable	The product name and version of the client executable file, when available, or the file name of the client executable file when the product name and version are not available.
Connection analysis end	The application could not continue analyzing the traffic stream after this event.
Correlation base component ID	The policy used to decide a response after successful correlation. Usually the value of this field is the same as "Component ID", and the field is omitted.
Data type	Data type of the log.
Dst VPN	The destination VPN of the connection.
Element Domain	Administrative Domain of the element associated with the event.
Endpoint	The VPN Endpoint through which the traffic that triggered the log event was sent or received.
Ethernet main type	Ethernet frame main type (Ethernet 2, IPX, LLC, SNAP).
Event type	Description of the event triggered the log creation.
Executable File	The file name part of the pathname to the client executable file that connects through the firewall.
Executable MD5	The MD5 checksum of the client executable file that connects through the firewall.
Executable Path	The path to the client executable file that connects through the firewall.
Executable Product	The product name of the client executable file, when available. The EIA client reports the product name when the executable file is signed.

Field	Description
Executable Signer	The signer of the client executable file that connects through the firewall.
Executable Signer SHA1	The SHA1 checksum of the signer of the client executable file that connects through the firewall.
Executable Version	The product version of the client executable file, when available. The EIA client reports the product version when the executable file is signed.
File	The file name part of the pathname to the file that the anti-malware engine scans.
File MD5	The MD5 checksum of the pathname to the file that the anti-malware engine scans.
GRE protocol	Protocol number of the GRE payload packet.
GRE version	Version of the GRE header.
GTI Reputation	The file reputation score from the McAfee Global Threat Intelligence cloud service.
HTTP User Agent	The HTTP header that identifies the web browser used to access the service.
HTTP Referrer	The HTTP header that includes the referrer information.
HTTP XFF Client	The originating IP address of the client that connects to the destination server through one or several HTTP proxy servers.
HTTP XFF Proxies	The IP addresses of the HTTP proxy servers between the originating client IP address and the destination server.
IMSI	The international mobile subscriber identity of mobile subscriber connecting to the network in GTP traffic.
IP frag conflict range.IP frag different bytes	Total number of conflicting bytes.
IP frag conflict range.IP frag different bytes first	First conflicting byte in the IP fragment.
IP frag conflict range.IP frag different bytes last	Last conflicting byte in the IP fragment.
IP frag conflict range.IP frag different new first	Value of the first conflicting byte in the latest fragment.
IP frag conflict range.IP frag different new last	Value of the last conflicting byte in the latest fragment.
IP frag conflict range.IP frag different old first	Value of the first conflicting byte in an earlier fragment.
IP frag conflict range.IP frag different old last	Value of the last conflicting byte in an earlier fragment.
IPv6 extension header type	IPv6 extension header type as indicated by the next header value of the preceding header.
IPv6 extension header's length	IPv6 extension header length as indicated by the value of the <code>hdr_ext_len</code> field in the extension header.
IPv6 hop limit	Hop limit field in the IPv6 header.
IPv6 option data length	IPv6 option data length.
IPv6 option offset	IPv6 option offset from the beginning of the IPv6 extension header.
IPv6 option type	IPv6 option type.

Field	Description
IPv6 routing final destination	Final destination address in the IPv6 routing header.
IPv6 routing header type	IPv6 routing header type.
IPv6 routing segments left	Segments left value in the IPv6 routing header.
LLC DSAP	Logical Link Control Destination Service Access Point.
LLC SSAP	Logical Link Control Source Service Access Point.
Log Data Tags	The number of different Log Data Tags associated with the log event. You can see a detailed listing of the Log Data Tags in the Fields pane or the Details view.
Login Domain	The administrative Domain in which the action that triggered the log event was taken.
Malware	Malware Identifier.
Message ID	The Message Type Value of the GTP message.
MSISDN	The mobile subscriber-integrated services digital network-number (MSISDN) of the GTP message.
Normalized	URI normalization was used to find the match.
Overview	Observed overview.
Overview Name	Name of the observed overview.
Overview Section	Summary of the observed section definition.
Packets Rcvd	The number of packets that are received during the connection.
Packets Sent	The number of packets that are sent during the connection.
Peer VPN Gateway	The peer of the VPN Gateway through which the log event was sent or received.
Reference event ID	Reference to a related event.
Reference event ID.Ref Comp Id	Sender identifier of the referred event.
Reference event ID.Ref Creation Time	Creation time of the referred event.
Reference event ID.Ref Event ID	Identifier of the referred event.
Responding Scanner	The name of the scanner or service that produced a reputation score or a scan result for a file filtering event.
Roles	Roles of the Administrator who triggered the event.
Sandbox Reputation	The file reputation score from the Cloud Sandbox server or the McAfee Advanced Threat Defense server.
Sandbox UUID	The job ID of the Cloud Sandbox analysis.
Scanner Details	More detailed information about how the file reputation score or scan result was acquired in a file filtering event.
Sender Domain	Administrative Domain from which the log entry was sent.
Sender module version.Sender build	Build number of the engine that generated the event.
Sender module version.Sender module major	Major version of the engine module that generated the event.
Sender module version.Sender module minor	Minor version of the engine module that generated the event.

Field	Description
Sender module version.Sender module pl	Patch version of the engine module that generated the event.
Sequence Number	The sequence number of the GTP message.
Situation Type	The type of the situation that triggered the log event.
SNAP Organization Code	Subnetwork Access Protocol Organization Code.
SNMP Return Src IF	The SNMP index of the return source interface.
SNMP Src IF	The SNMP index of the source interface.
Src VPN	The source VPN of the connection.
SSL/TLS Domain	Domain name field in SSL/TLS certificate related to the event.
SSL VPN Portal Service Name	The title for the service shown on the SSL VPN Portal webpage.
State	Connection state in connection monitoring.
Subexpression Count	The number of concurrent independent subexpressions.
TEID	The tunnel endpoint identifier (TEID) of the GTP message.
TIE/ePO Reputation	The value that is configured for the file on the McAfee ePO server and received via the McAfee® Threat Intelligence Exchange (TIE) server.
TCP urgent pointer	Urgent pointer value in the TCP header.
TCP window size	TCP receive window size.
TCP window shrinkage	The amount by which the TCP window shrunk.
Threshold Check Time	Threshold measurement end time.
Threshold Description	Description of threshold limitation.
Threshold Measured Value	Value exceeding the threshold.
TLS Alert Description	TLS/SSL alert message description.
TLS Alert Level	TLS/SSL alert message alert level.
TLS cipher suite	TLS/SSL cipher suite.
TLS compression method	TLS/SSL compression method.
TLS Protocol Version	TLS/SSL protocol version.
Tunneled destination	The destination IP address of tunneled GTP traffic.
Tunneled source	The source IP address of tunneled GTP traffic.
Tunneling level	Number of tunneling protocol layers encapsulating this protocol layer.
User and Group Information	User and Group Information related to the event.
Version	The GTP version of the GTP message.
VPN	The VPN through which the traffic that triggered the log event was sent or received.
VPN Gateway	The VPN Gateway through which the log event was sent or received.

## Exportable alert log entry fields

Alert log entry fields are described in the following table. Because the fields are exportable, the table includes the syslog export field.

**Table 196: Alert log entry fields**

Field	Syslog export field	Description
Acknowledged	ACK	Acknowledged alert.
Alert Type	ALERT	Type of alert.
Component ID	COMP_ID	The identifier of the creator of the log entry.
Creation Time	TIMESTAMP	Log entry creation time.
Dst Addr	DST	Packet destination IP address.
Dst Port	DPORT	TCP or UDP destination port in the packet header.
Event ID	EVENT_ID	Event identifier, unique within one sender.
Information message	INFO_MSG	A description of the log event that further explains the entry.
Protocol	PROTOCOL	Connection IP protocol.
Reception time	RECEPTION_TIME	Time when the entry was received by the Log Server.
Reference event ID	REF_EVENT	Reference to a related event.
Rule Tag	RULE_ID	Rule tag of the rule that triggered the log event.
Sender	NODE_ID	IP address of the engine or server that sent the log entry.
Sender type	SENDER_TYPE	The type of engine or server that sent the log entry.
Severity	ALERT_SEVERITY	Severity of the situation related to the alert event.
Situation	SITUATION	The identifier of the situation that triggered the log event.
Src Port	SPORT	TCP or UDP source port in the packet header.

## Exportable alert trace log entry fields

Alert trace log entry fields are described in the following table. Because the fields are exportable, the table includes the syslog export field.

**Table 197: Alert trace log entry fields**

Field	Syslog export field	Description
Address	EVENT_ADDRESS	Destination for the alert notification.
Alert Event	EVENT_TYPE	Type of alert event.
Alert Identifier	EVENT_LOG_ID	Data Identifier of the alert.
Alert Time	EVENT_TIME	Time stamp of the alert.
Component ID	COMP_ID	The identifier of the creator of the log entry.
Creation Time	TIMESTAMP	Log entry creation time.



Field	Syslog export field	Description
Data Identifier	LOG_ID	Data Identifier of the log entry.
Event description	EVENT_INFO	Description of the alert event.
Storage Server	STORAGE_SERVER_ID	Server where the alert is stored.
User	EVENT_USER	User who executed the action that produced the alert.

## Exportable audit log entry fields

Audit log entry fields are described in the following table. Because the fields are exportable, the table includes the syslog export field.

**Table 198: Exportable audit log entry fields**

Field	Syslog export field	Description
Administrator	USER_ORIGINATOR	Administrator who triggered the audit event.
Client IP address	CLIENT_IP_ADDRESS	Address of the client that triggered the audit event.
Component ID	COMP_ID	The identifier of the creator of the log entry.
Creation Time	TIMESTAMP	Log entry creation time.
Elements	OBJECT_NAME	Elements being manipulated in the audit event.
Event ID	EVENT_ID	Event identifier, unique within one sender.
Incident case	INCIDENT_CASE	The Incident case to which the logs or audit events are related.
Information message	INFO_MSG	A description of the log event that further explains the entry.
Operation type	TYPE_DESCRIPTION	Type of action that triggered the audit entry.
Origin name	ORIGIN_NAME	Name of the component that triggered the audit event.
Result	RESULT	Result state after the audited event.
Rule Tag	RULE_ID	Rule tag of the rule that triggered the log event.
Sender	NODE_ID	IP address of the engine or server that sent the log entry.
Sender type	SENDER_TYPE	The type of engine or server that sent the log entry.

## Exportable Firewall and Layer 2 Firewall log entry fields

Firewall and Layer 2 Firewall log entry fields are described in the following table. Because the fields are exportable, the table includes the syslog export field.

**Table 199: Firewall log entry fields**

Field	Syslog export field	Description
Acknowledged	ACK	Acknowledged alert.

Field	Syslog export field	Description
Action	ACTION	Action of the rule that triggered the log event. The action values are Allow, Discard, Refuse, Terminate, Wait for further actions, and Wait for authentication.
Alert Type	ALERT	Type of alert.
Auth. Rule Tag	AUTH_RULE_ID	Rule number of the rule that triggered the log event.
Auth. User	AUTH_NAME	User name of the authorized user related to this event.
Bytes Rcvd	ACC_RX_BYTES	Number of bytes received during the connection.
Bytes Sent	ACC_TX_BYTES	Number of bytes sent during the connection. The number of bytes sent is counted when accounting entries are created.
Component ID	COMP_ID	The identifier of the creator of the log entry.
Creation Time	TIMESTAMP	Log entry creation time.
Data Identifier	LOG_ID	Data Identifier of the log entry.
DSCP Mark	DSCP_MARK	The DSCP Mark associated with the traffic that triggered the log event.
Dst Addr	DST	Packet destination IP address.
Dst Port	Dport	TCP or UDP destination port in the packet header.
Elapsed Time	ACC_ELAPSED	Elapsed time of the connection in seconds. The elapsed time is recorded when accounting entries are created at the time of connection closing.
Event	EVENT	The event that triggered the log creation, for example, New connection, Connection closed, Connection discarded.
Event ID	EVENT_ID	Event identifier, unique within one sender.
Facility	FACILITY	Firewall subsystem that generated the log event.
FP situation	FP_SITUATION	Situation identifier of a matching fingerprint.
ICMP code	ICMP_CODE	ICMP code field. ICMP code provides further information about message type (for example, network unreachable). For more information, see RFC 792 and RFC 950.
ICMP ID	ICMP_ID	The ICMP identifier recorded by the engine when ICMP packets pass through the firewall. The ICMP identifier can be used by the echo sender to aid in matching the replies with the echo requests. For example, the identifier might be used like a port in TCP or UDP to identify a session. For more information about ICMP ID and the ICMP protocol, see RFC 792 and RFC 950.
ICMP Type	ICMP_TYPE	The ICMP type attribute recorded by the engine when ICMP packets pass through the firewall.
IKE Cookie	IKE_COOKIE	IKE Cookie used in the VPN negotiation.
Information message	INFO_MSG	A description of the log event that further explains the entry.
IPsec SPI	IPSEC_SSPI	The IPsec Security Parameter Index (SPI) is the connection identifier of the IPsec connection. The IPsec SPI value is displayed as a hexadecimal number.
NAT Dst	NAT_DST	Translated packet destination IP address.
NAT Dst Port	NAT_DPORT	Translated packet destination protocol port.

Field	Syslog export field	Description
Nat Rule Tag	NAT_RULE_ID	The rule number of the NAT rule that triggered the log event.
NAT Src	NAT_SRC	Translated packet source IP address.
NAT Src Port	NAT_SPORT	Translated packet source protocol port.
Priority	QOS_PRIORITY	The priority assigned to the traffic according to the QoS policy.
Protocol	PROTOCOL	Connection IP protocol.
Protocol Agent	SRVHELPER_ID	Protocol Agent numeric ID code.
QoS Class	QOS_CLASS	The Quality of Service class assigned to the traffic according to the QoS policy.
Reception time	RECEPTION_TIME	Time when the Log Server received the entry.
Round trip	RTT	Round-trip time for outbound Multi-Link link testing. Time indicated is from sending queries to the first reply. The unit is 0.01 seconds.
Rule Tag	RULE_ID	Rule tag of the rule that triggered the log event.
Sender	NODE_ID	IP address of the engine or server that sent the log entry.
Sender type	SENDER_TYPE	The type of engine or server that sent the log entry.
Service	SERVICE	Special field for filtering logs using the defined services. Does not appear in the log entry table.
Severity	ALERT_SEVERITY	Severity of the situation related to the log event.
Situation	SITUATION	The identifier of the situation that triggered the log event.
Src Addr	SRC	Packet source IP address.
Src IF	Srcif	Defined source interface number for the firewall cluster.
Src Port	Sport	TCP or UDP source port in the packet header.
Src VLAN	SRC_VLAN	The source VLAN ID number (up to 4095).
Syslog	SYSLOG_TYPE	Syslog is a system service used in some operating systems, for example, UNIX, and software packages. For more information about syslog and syslog types, see RFC 3164.
Type	TYPE	Log entry severity type.

## Exportable IPS log entry fields

IPS log entry fields are described in the following table. Because the fields are exportable, the table includes the syslog export field.

**Table 200: IPS log entry fields**

Field	Syslog export field	Description
Action	ACTION	Action of the rule that triggered the log event.
Alert Type	ALERT	Type of alert.

Field	Syslog export field	Description
Attacker IP	IP_ATTACKER	IPv4 address of the attacking host.
Blacklist executor	FIREWALL_ID	Firewall that blacklisted the traffic that triggered the log event.
Blacklist response	BLACKLIST_RESPONSE	Firewall blacklist response that triggered the log event.
Cluster ID	CLUSTER_ID	The identifier of the cluster to which the node that created the log entry belongs.
Component ID	COMP_ID	The identifier of the creator of the log entry.
Connection Analysis End	CONNECTION_ANALYSIS_END	The Application module could not continue analyzing the traffic stream after this event.
Connection dropped	DROP_CONNECTION	The connection was dropped by a Drop Response in the rule.
Content type of message body	SIP_CONTENT_TYPE	Content type of the SIP message body.
Correlation base component ID	CORRELATION_COMP_ID	The policy that decides the response after successful correlation.
Correlation begin time	TIME_FRAME_BEGIN	NTP stamp of the beginning of the time frame for a match to a correlation situation.
Correlation end time	TIME_FRAME_END	NTP stamp of the end of the time frame for a match to a correlation situation.
Creation Time	TIMESTAMP	Log entry creation time.
Data Identifier	LOG_ID	Data Identifier of the log entry.
Datagram dropped	DROP_DATAGRAM	The datagram was dropped by a Drop Response in the rule.
Destination port	PORT_DEST	TCP or UDP destination port in the packet header. Included only for backwards compatibility with legacy IPS engines. For other cases, use Dst Port.
DNS class	DNS_CLASS	DNS resource record class.
DNS hdr ancourt	DNS_HDR_ANCOUNT	DNS answers count.
DNS hdr arcourt	DNS_HDR_ARCOUNT	DNS additional section count.
DNS hdr flag tc	DNS_HDR_FLAG_TC	DNS header flag TC.
DNS hdr id	DNS_HDR_ID	DNS message ID.
DNS hdr is request	DNS_HDR_IS_REQUEST	DNS message is a request.
DNS hdr nscount	DNS_HDR_NS_COUNT	DNS authority section count.
DNS hdr opcode	DNS_HDR_OPCODE	DNS operation code.
DNS hdr qdcount	DNS_HDR_QD_COUNT	DNS questions count.
DNS hdr rcode	DNS_HDR_RCODE	DNS return code.
DNS name length	DNS_NAME_LENGTH	Length of DNS name in a message.

Field	Syslog export field	Description
DNS offset	DNS_OFFSET	DNS message offset where the situation occurs.
DNS pointer	DNS_POINTER	Name pointer in a DNS message.
DNS qclass	DNS_QCLASS	Query resource record class in a DNS message.
DNS qname	DNS_QNAME	First queried name in a DNS message.
DNS qtype	DNS_QTYPE	Query type in a DNS message.
DNS section	DNS_SECTION	Section name in a DNS message.
DNS type	DNS_TYPE	DNS resource record type.
DNS UDP payload	DNS_UDP_PAYLOAD	UDP payload size of a DNS message.
DNS UDP payload by opt	DNS_UDP_PAYLOAD_BY_OPT	UDP payload advertised in a DNS OPT record.
Dst Addr	DST	Packet destination IP address.
Dst Port	DPORT	TCP or UDP destination port in the packet header.
Error Id	ERROR_ID	Identifier of the error that triggered the log event.
Eth frame length	ETH_FRAME_LENGTH	Length of the Ethernet frame.
Eth min frame length	ETH_MIN_FRAME_LENGTH	Minimum length for Ethernet frame.
Ethernet type	ETH_TYPE	Type field in Ethernet frame.
Event count	EVENT_COUNT	Event count in the defined time frame.
Event ID	EVENT_ID	Event identifier, unique within one sender.
Event update	EVENT_UPDATE	Event ID for which this event is an update.
Excerpt data	EXCERPT	Short recording of the application level data stream of the attack.
Excerpt position	EXCERPT_POS	Position in the attached short recording.
Facility	FACILITY	The firewall subsystem that created the log entry.
Fields updatable	FIELDS_UPDATABLE	Map of updatable log fields.
Forward Rule Tag	FORWARD_RULE_TAG	The tag of the last matching rule when forwarding the traffic to the agent that created this log entry.
Frame dropped	DROP_FRAME	The frame was dropped by a Drop Response in the rule.
From address	SIP_FROM	SIP From address.
FTP account len	FTP_ACCOUNT_LEN	Length of the FTP account string.
FTP adat argument len	FTP_ADAT_ARG_LEN	Length of ADAT command argument.
FTP allocate size	FTP_ALLOCATE_SIZE	Size of FTP allocate.

Field	Syslog export field	Description
FTP arg len	FTP_ARG_LEN	Length of the FTP command argument.
FTP auth arg len	FTP_AUTH_ARG_LEN	Length of the AUTH argument.
FTP Cmd Name	FTP_CMD_NAME	The name of the FTP command without any arguments.
FTP client state name	FTP_CLIENT_STATE_NAME	The detected FTP client state.
FTP clnt arg len	FTP_CLNT_ARG_LEN	Length of the FTP CLNT argument.
FTP command	FTP_COMMAND	Name of the FTP command.
FTP conf arg len	FTP_CONF_ARG_LEN	Length of the CONF command argument.
FTP enc arg len	FTP_ENC_ARG_LEN	Length of the ENC command argument.
FTP eprt arg len	FTP_EPRT_ARG_LEN	Length of the EPRT command argument.
FTP estp arg len	FTP_ESTP_ARG_LEN	Length of the ESTP command argument.
FTP help arg len	FTP_HELP_ARG_LEN	Length of the HELP command argument.
FTP lang arg len	FTP_LANG_ARG_LEN	Length of the LANG command argument.
FTP lprt arg len	FTP_LPRT_ARG_LEN	Length of the LPRT command argument.
FTP marker len	FTP_MARKER_LEN	Length of the REST command argument.
FTP mic arg len	FTP_MIC_ARG_LEN	Length of the MIC command argument.
FTP opts arg len	FTP_OPTS_ARG_LEN	Length of the OPTS command argument.
FTP password len	FTP_PASSWORD_LEN	Length of the detected FTP password.
FTP pathname len	FTP_PATHNAME_LEN	Length of the detected FTP pathname.
FTP protection buffer size	FTP_PROTECTION_BUFFER_SIZE	Size of the detected PBSZ protection buffer.
FTP reply	FTP_REPLY	The detected FTP server reply.
FTP reply code	FTP_REPLY_CODE	The detected FTP server reply code.
FTP reply len	FTP_REPLY_LEN	Length of an FTP server reply that is too long.
FTP reply line len	FTP_REPLY_LINE_LEN	Length of an FTP server reply line that is too long.
FTP server action	FTP_SERVER_ACTION	FTP server action after a suspicious client command.
FTP server banner	FTP_SERVER_BANNER	The detected FTP server banner.
FTP server state name	FTP_SERVER_STATE_NAME	The detected FTP server state.
FTP site arg len	FTP_SITE_ARG_LEN	Length of the SITE command argument.

Field	Syslog export field	Description
FTP state name	FTP_STATE_NAME	The detected FTP session state.
FTP username len	FTP_USERNAME_LEN	Length of the detected FTP user name.
HTTP header	HTTP_HEADER	The detected HTTP header field.
HTTP header name	HTTP_HEADER_NAME	The detected HTTP header field name.
HTTP no request	HTTP_NO_REQUEST	The detected HTTP response could not be associated to any request.
HTTP request host	HTTP_REQUEST_HOST	HTTP request host.
HTTP request line	HTTP_REQUEST_LINE	The detected HTTP request line.
HTTP request message field name length	HTTP_REQUEST_MESSAGE_FIELD_NAME_LENGTH	Length of the HTTP request header field name.
HTTP request message field value length	HTTP_REQUEST_MESSAGE_FIELD_VALUE_LENGTH	Length of the HTTP request header field value.
HTTP request method	HTTP_REQUEST_METHOD	The detected HTTP request method.
HTTP request URI	HTTP_REQUEST_URI	The detected HTTP request URI.
HTTP request version	HTTP_REQUEST_VERSION	The detected HTTP request version.
HTTP requests not stored	HTTP_REQUESTS_NOT_STORED	Number of requests not stored due to HTTP pipeline overflow.
HTTP response code	HTTP_RESPONSE_CODE	The detected HTTP response code.
HTTP response message field name length	HTTP_RESPONSE_MESSAGE_FIELD_NAME_LENGTH	Length of the HTTP response header field name.
HTTP response message field value length	HTTP_RESPONSE_MESSAGE_FIELD_VALUE_LENGTH	Length of the HTTP response header field value.
HTTP URI length	HTTP_URI_LENGTH	Length of HTTP request URI
ICMP code	ICMP_CODE	ICMP code field. ICMP code provides further information about message type (for example, network unreachable). For more information, see RFC 792 and RFC 950.
ICMP expected message length	ICMP_EXPECTED_MESSAGE_LENGTH	Expected length of the ICMP message.
ICMP field addr entry size	ICMP_FIELD_ADDR_ENTRY_SIZE	Value of the detected ICMP address entry size field.
ICMP field address mask	ICMP_FIELD_ADDRESS_MASK	Value of detected ICMP address mask field.
ICMP field domain name	ICMP_FIELD_DOMAIN_NAME	Value of the detected ICMP domain name field.
ICMP field gateway IP addr	ICMP_FIELD_GATEWAY_IP_ADDR	Value of the detected ICMP gateway address field.
ICMP field lifetime	ICMP_FIELD_LIFETIME	Value of the ICMP lifetime field.
ICMP field num addrs	ICMP_FIELD_NUM_ADDRS	Value of the ICMP number of addresses field.
ICMP field originate timestamp	ICMP_FIELD_ORIGINATE_TIMESTAMP	Value of the ICMP originate time stamp field.

Field	Syslog export field	Description
ICMP field outbound hop count	ICMP_FIELD_OUTBOUND_HOP_COUNT	Value of the ICMP outbound hop count field.
ICMP field output link mtu	ICMP_FIELD_OUTPUT_LINK_MTU	Value of the ICMP output link MTU field.
ICMP field output link speed	ICMP_FIELD_OUTPUT_LINK_SPEED	Value of the ICMP output link speed field.
ICMP field pointer	ICMP_FIELD_POINTER	The offset in the related datagram where the situation occurred.
ICMP field preference level	ICMP_FIELD_PREFERENCE_LEVEL	Value of the ICMP preference level field.
ICMP field receive timestamp	ICMP_FIELD_RECEIVE_TIMESTAMP	Value of the ICMP receive time stamp field.
ICMP field return hop count	ICMP_FIELD_RETURN_HOP_COUNT	Value of the ICMP return hop count field.
ICMP field router addr	ICMP_FIELD_ROUTER_ADDRESS	Value of the ICMP router address field.
ICMP field sequence num	ICMP_FIELD_SEQUENCE_NUMBER	Value of the ICMP sequence number field.
ICMP field traceroute id	ICMP_FIELD_TRACEROUTE_ID	Value of the ICMP traceroute ID field.
ICMP field transmit timestamp	ICMP_FIELD_TRANSMIT_TIMESTAMP	Value of the ICMP transmit time stamp field.
ICMP ID	ICMP_ID	The ICMP identifier recorded by the engine when ICMP packets pass through the firewall. The ICMP identifier can be used by the echo sender to aid in matching the replies with the echo requests. For example, the identifier might be used like a port in TCP or UDP to identify a session. For more information about ICMP ID and the ICMP protocol, see RFC 792 and RFC 950.
ICMP message length	ICMP_MESSAGE_LENGTH	Length of the ICMP message.
ICMP referenced destination IP addr	ICMP_REFERENCED_DESTINATION_IP_ADDR	Destination IP address of the datagram related to the ICMP message.
ICMP referenced destination port	ICMP_REFERENCED_DESTINATION_PORT	Destination port of the datagram related to the ICMP message.
ICMP referenced IP proto	ICMP_REFERENCED_IP_PROTO	IP Protocol field of the datagram related to the ICMP message.
ICMP referenced source IP addr	ICMP_REFERENCED_SOURCE_IP_ADDR	Source IP address of the datagram related to the ICMP message.
ICMP referenced source port	ICMP_REFERENCED_SOURCE_PORT	Source port of IP datagram related to the ICMP message.



Field	Syslog export field	Description
ICMP Type	ICMP_TYPE	The Internet Control Message Protocol is an extension to the Internet Protocol (IP) that supports packets containing error, control, and informational messages. ICMP messages are sent using the basic IP header. The first octet of the data portion of the datagram is an ICMP type field. For more information, see RFC 792 and RFC 950.
Imf encoded word	IMF_ENCODED_WORD	Encoded word token related to this event.
Imf header field	IMF_HEADER_FIELD	Contents (possibly partial) of the mail header field related to this event.
Imf header field name	IMF_HEADER_FIELD_NAME	Name of the mail header field related to this event.
Imf header field position	IMF_HEADER_FIELD_POSITION	Number of characters processed in this header field when this event was generated.
Imf token	IMF_TOKEN	Syntactical token in the mail body related to this event.
Imf token length	IMF_TOKEN_LENGTH	Length of the syntactical token in the mail body related to this event.
Information message	INFO_MSG	A description of the log event that further explains the entry.
IP checksum	IP_CHECKSUM	Value of the IP header checksum.
IP datagram length	IP_DATAGRAM_LENGTH	Length of the IP datagram.
IP datagram new length	IP_DATAGRAM_NEW_LENGTH	The new suggested length for the IP datagram.
IP destination	IP_DEST	Destination IP address in the packet header. Included only for backwards compatibility for legacy IPS. For other cases, use Dst Addr.
IP frag conflict range	IP_FRAG_CONFLICT_RANGE	Conflicting byte range in a fragment.
IP fragment offset	IP_FRAGMENT_OFFSET	Fragment offset in the IP header.
IP header length	IP_HEADER_LENGTH	Length of the IP header.
IP identification	IP_IDENTIFICATION	Identification field in the IP header.
IP offset	IP_OFFSET	Start IP offset from the beginning of the Ethernet frame.
IP option length	IP_OPTION_LENGTH	Length of the IP option that triggered the response.
IP option number	IP_OPTION_NUMBER	IP option number that triggered the response.
IP protocol	PROTOCOL	IP protocol of the traffic that generated the log event.

Field	Syslog export field	Description
IP source	IP_SOURCE	Source IP address in the packet header. Included for backwards compatibility with legacy IPS. For other cases, use Src Addr.
IP total length	IP_TOTAL_LENGTH	Total length of the IP datagram.
IP version	IP_VERSION	Version field value in the IP header.
Length of message body	SIP_CONTENT_LENGTH	Length of the SIP message body.
Logical interface	IF_LOGICAL	Logical interface for a packet.
MAC destination	MAC_DEST	Destination MAC address in the packet header.
MAC source	MAC_SOURCE	Source MAC address in the packet header.
Module	SENDER_MODULE_ID	Sender module identification.
Node configuration	NODE_CONFIGURATION	Current configuration of the node that sent the log entry.
Node dynup	NODE_DYNUP	Dynamic update package level of the node that sent the log entry.
Node version	NODE_VERSION	Node version of the node that sent the log entry.
Not final value	NOT_FINAL_VALUE	Entry is not final.
One LAN	ONE_LAN	The "View interface as one LAN" option was enabled on the logical interface through which the packet was received.
Orig config id	ORIG_CONFIG_ID	Configuration identifier related to the Situation in the referred event.
Orig sender module version	ORIG_SENDER_MODULE_VERSION	Module version in the referred event.
Orig sender os ver	ORIG_SENDER_OS_VER	The operating system version of the sender of the referred event.
Original Alert Type	ORIG_ALERT	Type of alert in the referred event.
Original correlation begin time	ORIG_TIME_FRAME_BEGIN	NTP stamp of the beginning of the time frame in the referred event.
Original correlation end time	ORIG_TIME_FRAME_END	NTP stamp of the end of the time frame in the referred event.
Original event count	ORIG_EVENT_COUNT	Number of events in the time frame of the referred event.
Original module	ORIG_SENDER_MODULE_ID	Sender module identification in the referred event.
Original severity	ORIG_ALERT_SEVERITY	Severity of the referred event.
Original situation	ORIG_SITUATION	Identifier of the situation that triggered the referred event.
Original time	ORIG_TIMESTAMP	Creation time of the referred event.

Field	Syslog export field	Description
Packet analysis end	PACKET_ANALYSIS_END	Module could not continue analyzing packet or datagram after this event.
Packet not seen	PACKET_NOT_SEEN	Flag indicating that the related packet was not seen.
Physical interface	IF_PHYSICAL	Physical interface for a packet.
Protocol	PROTOCOL	Connection IP protocol.
Protocol Agent	SRVHELPER_ID	Protocol Agent numerical ID code.
Reception time	RECEPTION_TIME	Time when the entry was received by the Log Server.
Record ID	RECORD_ID	Identifier of the traffic recording.
Reference event ID	REF_EVENT	Reference to a related event.
Rule Tag	RULE_ID	Rule tag of the rule that triggered the log event.
Scan ICMP Echo No Reply Cnt	SCAN_ICMP_ECHO_NO_RESPONSE_COUNTER	Number of distinct ICMP Echo Request (ping) destinations that did not reply to a request.
Scan ICMP Echo Request Cnt	SCAN_ICMP_ECHO_REQUEST_COUNTER	Number of distinct ICMP Echo Request (ping) destinations detected.
Scan ICMP Echo Targets	SCAN_ICMP_ECHO_TARGETS	List of the detected ICMP Echo Request (ping) destinations.
Scan ICMP Mask No Reply Cnt	SCAN_ICMP_NETMASK_NO_RESPONSE_COUNTER	Number of distinct ICMP Netmask Request destinations that did not reply to a request.
Scan ICMP Mask Request Cnt	SCAN_ICMP_NETMASK_REQUEST_COUNTER	Number of distinct ICMP Netmask Request destinations detected.
Scan ICMP Mask Targets	SCAN_ICMP_NETMASK_TARGETS	List of the detected ICMP Netmask Request destinations.
Scan ICMP No Reply Cnt	SCAN_ICMP_NO_RESPONSE_COUNTER	Number of the distinct ICMP request destinations for any of counted ICMP requests (Echo Request, Timestamp Request, Netmask Request) that did not reply to a request.
Scan ICMP Request Cnt	SCAN_ICMP_REQUEST_COUNTER	Number of the distinct ICMP request destinations for the counted ICMP requests (Echo Request, Timestamp Request, Netmask Request).
Scan ICMP Time No Reply Cnt	SCAN_ICMP_TIMESTAMP_NO_RESPONSE_COUNTER	Number of the distinct ICMP Timestamp Request destinations that did not reply to a request.
Scan ICMP Time Request Cnt	SCAN_ICMP_TIMESTAMP_REQUEST_COUNTER	Number of the distinct ICMP Timestamp Request destinations detected.
Scan ICMP Time Targets	SCAN_ICMP_TIMESTAMP_TARGETS	List of the detected ICMP Timestamp Request destinations.
Scan Start Time	SCAN_START_TIME	The starting time of the detected port scanning activity.

Field	Syslog export field	Description
Scan TCP Negative Cnt	SCAN_TCP_NEGATIVE_COUNTER	Number of distinct TCP destinations that denied attempted connections with TCP RST.
Scan TCP Normal Cnt	SCAN_TCP_NORMAL_COUNTER	Number of distinct TCP destinations with successful connection establishment and bidirectional data transfer.
Scan TCP No Ack Cnt	SCAN_TCP_NO_ACK_COUNTER	Number of distinct TCP destinations targeted for illegal TCP segments.
Scan TCP No Ack Targets	SCAN_TCP_NO_ACK_TARGETS	List of TCP destinations targeted for illegal TCP segments.
Scan TCP No Reply Cnt	SCAN_TCP_NO_RESPONSE_COUNTER	Number of distinct TCP destinations that did not reply to connection attempts.
Scan TCP Positive Cnt	SCAN_TCP_POSITIVE_COUNTER	Number of distinct TCP destinations with successful connection establishment but no data sent by the client within the defined time limit.
Scan TCP Targets	SCAN_TCP_TARGETS	List of the detected TCP port scan destinations.
Scan UDP Negative Cnt	SCAN_UDP_NEGATIVE_COUNTER	Number of distinct destinations detected that replied with ICMP Port Unreachable (successful scan of closed UDP port).
Scan UDP Positive Cnt	SCAN_UDP_POSITIVE_COUNTER	Number of bi-directional UDP conversations detected.
Scan UDP Probe Cnt	SCAN_UDP_PROBE_COUNTER	Number of destinations that did not reply using UDP.
Scan UDP Target Cnt	SCAN_UDP_TARGET_COUNTER	Total number of UDP destinations detected.
Scan UDP Targets	SCAN_UDP_TARGETS	List of the detected UDP destinations.
Sender	NODE_ID	IP address of the engine or server that sent the log entry.
Sender module version	SENDER_MODULE_VERSION	Version of the engine module that generated the event.
Sender type	SENDER_TYPE	The type of engine or server that sent the log entry.
Service	SERVICE	Special field for filtering logs using the defined services. Does not appear in the log entry table.
Severity	ALERT_SEVERITY	Severity of the situation related to the alert event.
SIP call ID	SIP_CALL_ID	SIP call ID.
SIP contact address	SIP_CONTACT	SIP contact address.
SIP header field contents	SIP_HEADER	SIP header field contents.
SIP header field name	SIP_HEADER_NAME	SIP header field name.

Field	Syslog export field	Description
SIP request method	SIP_REQUEST_METHOD	Method of the SIP request.
SIP request URI	SIP_REQUEST_URI	URI of the SIP request.
SIP request version	SIP_REQUEST_VERSION	Version of the SIP request.
SIP response reason-phrase	SIP_RESPONSE_REASON_PHRASE	SIP response reason-phrase.
SIP response status code	SIP_RESPONSE_STATUS_CODE	Status code of the SIP response.
SIP VIA address	SIP_VIA	SIP VIA address.
Situation	SITUATION	The identifier of the situation that triggered the log event.
Situation Type	SIT_CATEGORY	The type of the situation that triggered the log event.
SMTP command	SMTP_COMMAND	Suspicious SMTP command sent by the client.
SMTP mail stats	SMTP_MAIL_STATS	Statistics on email messages.
SMTP misplaced command	SMTP_MISPLACED_COMMAND	Command given in the wrong place in the command sequence.
SMTP recipient	SMTP_RECIPIENT	Recipient forward path in RCPT command parameter.
SMTP reply	SMTP_REPLY	Suspicious SMTP reply message sent by the server.
SMTP reverse path	SMTP_REVERSE_PATH	SMTP reverse path in MAIL FROM command parameter.
SMTP server action	SMTP_SERVER_ACTION	Suspicious server action after a suspicious client command.
SMTP server banner	SMTP_SERVER_BANNER	Banner sent by the SMTP server at the beginning of the connection.
SMTP transaction state	SMTP_TRANSACTION_STATE	Session state of the SMTP transaction.
Source file	SOURCE_FILE	Name of the source file.
Source file line	SOURCE_FILE_LINE	Line number in the source file.
Source port	PORT_SOURCE	TCP or UDP source port in the packet header. Included for backwards compatibility with legacy IPS. For other cases, see Src Port.
Src Addr	SRC	Packet source IP address.
Src Port	SPORT	TCP or UDP source port in the packet header.
Src VLAN	SRC_VLAN	The VLAN ID of the source VLAN.
SSH calc client crypto bit ratio	SSH_CALC_CLIENT_CRYPTTO_BIT_RATIO	Calculated SSH client crypto bit ratio.
SSH calc server crypto bit ratio	SSH_CALC_SERVER_CRYPTTO_BIT_RATIO	Calculated SSH server crypto bit ratio.
SSH1 host key bits	SSH1_HOST_KEY_BITS	Bit length of the SSHv1 host key.

Field	Syslog export field	Description
SSH1 server key bits	SSH1_SERVER_KEY_BITS	Bit length of the SSHv1 server key.
Syslog	SYSLOG_TYPE	Syslog is a system service used in some operating systems, for example, UNIX- and software packages. For more information about syslog and syslog types, see RFC 3164.
Syslog Facility	SYSLOG_FACILITY	Syslog entry facility.
Syslog Level	SYSLOG_LEVEL	Syslog entry level.
Syslog Message	SYSLOG_MSG	Syslog entry message string.
Target IP	IP_TARGET	IPv4 address of the target host in a detected attack.
TCP connection start time	TCP_CONNECTION_START_TIME	Start time of the TCP connection.
TCP handshake seen	TCP_HANDSHAKE_SEEN	Initial handshake of the TCP connection detected.
TCP option kind	TCP_OPTION_KIND	Type of the TCP option.
TCP option length	TCP_OPTION_LENGTH	Length of the TCP option that caused the response.
To address	SIP_TO	SIP To address.
UDP datagram size	UDP_DATAGRAM_SIZE	Size of the UDP datagram.
Vulnerability References	VULNERABILITY_REFERENCES	References to known vulnerabilities in a vulnerability database. Generated from situation and original situation.
Whole session seen	WHOLE_SESSION_SEEN	True if no data of this session has been missed up to this point.

## Exportable IPS recording log entry fields

IPS recording log entry fields are described in the following table. Because the fields are exportable, the table includes the syslog export field.

The following log entry fields are included in log data when you export IPS traffic recordings.

**Table 201: IPS recording log entry fields**

Field	Syslog export field	Description
Component ID	COMP_ID	The identifier of the creator of the log entry.
Creation Time	TIMESTAMP	Log entry creation time.
Packet data	PACKET_DATA	Recorded packet data.
Record frame cached	RECORD_FRAME_CACHED	Marker showing that this frame was received before the recording was started. The frame included in the recording was taken from a memory cache.
Record ID	RECORD_ID (IPS and IPS recording only)	Identifier of the traffic recording.
Sender	NODE_ID	IP address of the engine or server that sent the log entry.

# Facility field values

The following table lists the possible values for the Facility field in the log table.

**Table 202: Facility field values**

Value
Accounting
Antispam
Antivirus
Authentication
Blacklisting
Browser based authentication
Cluster Daemon
Cluster Protocol
Connection Tracking
Data eXchange Layer
Data Synchronization
DHCP Client
DHCP Relay
DHCP Service
DNS
Dynamic routing
Endpoint Intelligence Agent
File Filtering
GTI
IGMP Proxy
Inspection
Invalid
IPsec
Key Management Server
License
Load-Balancing Filter
Log Server
Logging System
Management
Monitoring
NetLink Incoming HA

Value
Network Address Translation
Packet Filter
Protocol Agent
Radius Forwarder
Sandbox
Server Pool
SNMP Monitoring
SSL VPN Portal
SSL VPN Session Manager
SSL VPN Tunnel
SSM Proxy
State Synchronization
Syslog
System
Tester
Undefined
User Agent
User Defined
Wireless Access Point

## Type field values

The following table lists the possible values for the Type field in the log table.

**Table 203: Type field values**

Value
Critical Error
Debug high
Debug low
Debug mid
Diagnostic
Emergency - System Unusable
Error
Informational
Internal max



Value
Max
Notification
System Alert
Undefined
Warning

## Action field values

The following table shows the most common log occurrences for the Action field.

**Table 204: Action field values**

Action	Description
Allow	A connection was allowed through the engine. This can be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A new connection.</li> <li>Related connection (for example, an FTP data connection).</li> <li>Related packet (for example ICMP error messages related to an earlier TCP connection).</li> <li>New connection through an existing VPN tunnel.</li> </ul>
Discard	A connection or packet was discarded by the engine.
Permit	A connection was allowed through according to the Inspection Rules on the engine.
Refuse	A connection was refused by the engine.
Terminate	A connection was terminated by the engine.
Terminate (failed)	An attempt to terminate a connection failed.
Terminate (passive)	A connection matched a rule with the passive Terminate action, and a log entry indicating that the connection would have been terminated was produced.
Terminate (reset)	A connection was terminated by the engine and TCP resets were sent to both communicating hosts.
Wait for Authentication	A connection was waiting for successful user authentication before it could continue.
Wait for Further Actions	A connection was waiting for some other action before it could continue.
Wait for RPC Reply	A connection was waiting for an RPC reply before it could continue.

# Event field values

The following table shows the most common log occurrences for the Event field.

**Table 205: Event field values**

Event	Description
Allowed a connection from blacklister	A connection from a blacklister was allowed.
Application protocol version is not supported	The application protocol version used in the traffic is not supported.
Application protocol version not recognized	The application protocol version used in the traffic was not recognized.
Authentication error	There was an error in the user authentication process.
Authentication failed	A user did not successfully authenticate.
Authentication Server does not respond	There is no response from the legacy Stonesoft Authentication Server component.
Authentication succeeded	A user successfully authenticated.
Automatic online transition	An engine automatically went online.
Automatic standby transition	An engine automatically went to standby.
Blacklister not allowed	The component that attempted to send a blacklist request is not on the list of Allowed Blacklisters.
Blacklisting connection closed	A connection from a blacklister was closed.
Blacklisting entries flushed	All entries were removed from the engine's blacklist.
Blacklisting entry deleted	An entry was removed from the engine's blacklist.
Blacklisting entry expired	A blacklisting entry reached the end of its Duration time.
Can't connect to Log Server	The engine is unable to connect to the Log Server.
Configuration changed	The engine's configuration changed.
Configuration information for this connection	The engine's configuration at the time the connection was logged.
Connection cannot be redirected to CIS due to absence of source NAT rule	Redirection to a Content Inspection Server failed because there was no NAT rule to redirect the connection.
Connection closed	A connection was closed.
Connection Discarded	A connection was discarded by the engine.
Connection Queued	A connection was queued according to the QoS rules.
Connection redirected to Content Inspection Server	A connection was redirected to an external Content Inspection Server.
Connection Refused	A connection was refused by the engine.
Connection Terminated	A connection was terminated by the engine.
Data connection cannot be redirected to CIS due to absence of source NAT rule	Redirection to a Content Inspection Server failed because there was no NAT rule to redirect the data connection.
Data connection redirected to content inspection server	A data connection was redirected to an external Content Inspection Server.

Event	Description
DHCP message received	A DHCP message was received.
DHCP Relay address not configured, reply discarded	A DHCP reply was discarded because no DHCP address is configured for the engine.
DHCP Relay address spoofed, request discarded	A DHCP request was discarded because the DHCP relay address was regarded as spoofed.
DHCP reply received	A DHCP reply was received.
DHCP reply sent	A DHCP reply was sent.
DHCP request forwarded	A DHCP request was forwarded.
DHCP request received	A DHCP request was received.
DHCP request sent	A DHCP request was sent.
Dropped AH packet	An IPsec AH packet was dropped.
Dropped ESP packet	An IPsec ESP packet was dropped.
Error in receiving a new configuration	There was an error when trying to transfer a new configuration to the engine.
Error with Content Inspection Server	There was an error when attempting to redirect a connection to an external Content Inspection Server.
Failed to allow a related connection to open	The engine failed to open a related connection for a connection that had already been allowed.
Force offline by test failure	The engine was forced offline as the result of an automated test failing.
Going locked offline by command	An administrator commanded the engine to go to the locked offline state.
Going locked online by command	An administrator commanded the engine to go to the locked online state.
Going offline by command	An administrator commanded the engine to go offline.
Going offline by test failure	The engine went offline as the result of an automated test failing.
Going online by command	An administrator commanded the engine to go online.
Going standby by command	An administrator commanded the engine to go to standby.
Hybrid authentication done	Hybrid authentication successfully completed.
Hybrid authentication failed	Hybrid authentication failed.
Incomplete connection closed	A connection for which the TCP handshake did not complete was closed.
Internal engine error	An internal error occurred on the engine.
Internal error	An internal error occurred.
Invalid license	The engine has an invalid license.
Invalid properties of custom Protocol Agent	Invalid options have been configured for a custom Protocol Agent.
IPsec authentication error	An error occurred in IPsec authentication.
IPsec client cfg download done	The configuration for an IPsec VPN Client has finished downloading.
IPsec client cfg download failed	An attempt to download the configuration for an IPsec VPN Client failed.
IPsec client cfg download from	The configuration for an IPsec VPN Client was downloaded by the client at the source address.
IPsec IKE error	There was an error in the IKE negotiation for an IPsec VPN.

Event	Description
LDAP Server does not respond	An LDAP Server is not responding.
License exceeded	A throughput-based license was exceeded.
Log spool corrupted	The data in the engine's log spool partition has become corrupted.
Log spool is becoming full	The engine's log spool partition is becoming full.
New blacklisting entry	A new entry was added to the engine's blacklist.
New configuration successfully installed	A new configuration was installed on the engine.
New connection	A new connection was allowed through the engine.
New VPN connection	A new connection through an existing VPN tunnel was allowed.
No space left on device	The engine's hard drive is full.
No suitable NAT rule found	No NAT rule matched a connection.
No suitable NAT rule found for related connection	No NAT rule matched a related connection.
Node booted	An engine node booted up.
Node down	An engine node is down.
Node up	An engine node is up.
Oversized DHCP message discarded	An excessively large DHCP message was discarded.
Packet Discarded	A packet was discarded by the engine.
Packet too long	A packet was too long.
Packet too short	A packet was too short.
Receive ICMP echo	An ICMP echo (ping) was received.
Related Connection	A related connection was allowed through the engine. For example, an FTP data connection.
Related Packet	A related packet was allowed through the engine. For example, ICMP error messages related to an earlier TCP connection.
Requested NAT cannot be done	There was an error when applying NAT to the traffic.
Security Policy reload	New security policy is loaded on the engine.
Send ICMP echo	An ICMP echo (ping) was sent.
Sending DHCP reply failed	The engine failed to send a DHCP reply.
Sending DHCP request failed	The engine failed to send a DHCP request.
Sending sync messages	The engine is sending synchronization messages.
Server pool member went offline	A Server Pool member went offline.
Server pool member went online	A Server Pool member went online.
SSL Handshake failed	An SSL handshake failed.
Starting hybrid authentication	Hybrid authentication started.
Starting IKE initiator negotiation	KE initiator negotiation started.
Starting IKE responder negotiation	IKE responder negotiation started.
State sync communication failure	State synchronization communication between cluster nodes failed.

Event	Description
State sync configuration changed	The configuration of the synchronization communication between cluster nodes changed.
Unknown DHCP Relay error	An unknown error occurred in DHCP relay.
Unrecognized protocol	A protocol in the logged traffic was not recognized.
Went locked offline	The engine went to the locked offline state.
Went locked online	The engine went to the locked online state.
Went offline	The engine went offline.
Went online	The engine went online.
Went standby	The engine went to standby.

A successful engine logon causes an event that is displayed in the Logs view with the following type of message in the Info Message field: `date time login[id]:USERNAME LOGIN on 'device'`. A failed logon causes an info message of the following type: `date time login[id]:FAILED LOGIN (#) on 'device' FOR 'UNKNOWN'`.

## IPsec VPN log messages

These tables list the most common IPsec VPN log messages (Facility=IPsec).

The messages listed appear in the Information Message fields of logs as information or error messages. The Situation field in some of the logs contains similar messages.



**Note:** Some messages can only be seen when the IPsec diagnostics are enabled during the VPN negotiations.

### Related reference

[VPN notifications](#) on page 1501

[VPN errors](#) on page 1503

[VPN error codes](#) on page 1505

## VPN notifications

The following table lists messages that are seen in the logs as part of normal IPsec VPN operation.

**Table 206: Common IPsec VPN messages in normal operation**

Information message	Description
SA traffic selectors local: [...]	This message is visible only when IPsec diagnostics are enabled. The first message generated when new VPN negotiations are triggered. Negotiation of a new VPN tunnel follows.

Information message	Description
IKE SA proposal [...]	This message is visible only when IPsec diagnostics are enabled. Shows the proposal that the initiator in the negotiations sent to the responder (displayed in both roles).
Starting IKE main mode initiator negotiation Starting IKE main mode responder negotiation	The beginning of IKE negotiations (in main mode). Which message is displayed depends on whether the gateway is the initiator or the responder in the negotiation. Repeated negotiations for the same connection are normal in a Multi-Link environment.
IKE Phase-1 initiator done [...] IKE Phase-1 responder done [...]	IKE Phase-1 negotiations were successfully completed, Phase-2 negotiations begin. Which message is displayed depends on whether the gateway is the initiator or the responder in the negotiation.
IKE Phase-2 initiator done [...] IKE Phase-2 responder done [...]	IKE Phase-2 negotiations were successfully completed. The VPN tunnel is now established and ESP or AH messages should appear shortly. Which message is displayed depends on whether the gateway is the initiator or the responder in the negotiation.
Starting Hybrid Authentication	Hybrid authentication is started for an IPsec VPN client user.
Hybrid Authentication Done	Hybrid authentication succeeded for an IPsec VPN client user.
IKE SA import succeeded IPsec SA import succeeded	This message is visible only when IPsec diagnostics are enabled. Synchronization of Phase 1 (IKE) and Phase 2 (IPsec) information between clustered firewall engines was successful.
ESP [...] AH [...]	Encrypted traffic going through the VPN tunnel. When you enable IPsec diagnostics, you might see more of these messages.
Unknown IKE cookie	This message is visible only when IPsec diagnostics are enabled. The other gateway identified an SA that does not exist on this node. If this is a cluster, this message is normal when the SA has been negotiated with a different node. The correct SA is then queried from the other nodes, allowing the connection to continue. This message can also appear if the SA has been deleted, for example, because of a timeout or dead peer detection (DPD).
Sending delete notification [...] Delete notification received [...]	This message is visible only when IPsec diagnostics are enabled. Messages between the gateways forming the tunnel informing the other party that the gateway has removed the settings indicated in the message. As a result, the other gateway also clears the settings, allowing for renegotiations if the tunnel is still needed.
Sending IKE SA delete sync Receiving IKE SA expire/delete sync	This message is visible only when IPsec diagnostics are enabled. Synchronization of SA deletion information between clustered firewall engines.
Initial contact notification received	The gateway at the other end of the tunnel has sent an Initial-Contact message (indicating that it has no knowledge of previous negotiations). If there are old SAs with the gateway, they are deleted (recently negotiated SAs are not, as might be indicated by a further log message). If SAs exist, the notification may indicate that the other end has been cleared, for example, in a reboot.

## VPN errors

The following table lists common errors that indicate problems in an IPsec VPN tunnel.

The log messages inform you about the stage of negotiations and then give the actual error message, for example, "IKE Phase-2 error: No proposal chosen." The table lists only the actual message part without more variable details such as IP addresses or identifiers.

**Table 207: Common IPsec VPN errors**

Error message	Description
Access group mismatch	The connecting VPN client is not authorized.
Authentication failed	One of the parties rejected the authentication credentials or something went wrong during the authentication process. If the problem is not apparent in the available logs, activate diagnostics to generate more verbose logs that give you more information about the next negotiations.
Authentication method mismatch	The authentication method used by the other gateway is not allowed in the configuration of this gateway. Check the settings in the VPN Profile that is selected for this VPN.
Cannot get policy [...] No matching connection	Might indicate that the gateway has no valid VPN certificate.
Can not get QM policy [...]	Indicates that there is a mismatch in granularity settings between the negotiating gateways.  In the Firewall/VPN, granularity is controlled with the Security Association Granularity setting on the IPsec Settings tab of the VPN Profile.
Could not allocate inbound SPI	Indications that the gateway has run out of memory. The reason for this might be inappropriate configuration settings (such as using the "SA per host" setting with a very large number of hosts) in addition to other reasons (such as hardware specifications).
Could not create outbound IPsec rule	
Could not register outbound SPI	
Old outbound SPI entry not found	
Out of memory	
SA install failed	
Session attaching failed	
Transform creation failed	
Dead peer detection failed IKE peer was found dead [...]	
Encapsulation mode mismatch	Encapsulation modes (AH or ESP) did not match between gateways.
IKE error notify received: [...]	This message is visible only when IPsec diagnostics are enabled.  The other gateway has sent the error notification that is shown in this message.
IKE negotiation rate-limit reached, discard connection	This message is visible only when IPsec diagnostics are enabled.  There is an excessive number of new VPN connection attempts within a short period of time. This mechanism is meant to protect the firewall from certain types of denial-of-service attacks.

Error message	Description
Invalid argument	Generic error. Check the other log messages for more useful information. If the problem is not apparent in the available logs, activate diagnostics to generate more verbose logs that give you more information about the next negotiations.
Invalid syntax	
IPsec SA proposal not accepted	This message is visible only when IPsec diagnostics are enabled.  The VPN gateway at the other end of the tunnel sent a proposal that the Firewall/VPN gateway could not accept. This message includes information about the rejected proposal and a further log message should contain information about the Firewall/VPN's local proposal.
NAT-T is not allowed for this peer	This message is visible only when IPsec diagnostics are enabled.  NAT-T was requested by the other gateway but it is not allowed in the configuration of the gateway that sends this message.
No proposal chosen	IKE negotiations failed. If the problem is not apparent in the available logs, activate diagnostics to generate more verbose logs that give you more information about the next negotiations.
Payload malformed [...]	Most likely due to a mismatch in preshared keys between the initiator and the responder. The reason might also be corruption of packets in transit.
Peer IP address mismatch	The IP address of the other gateway uses is not configured as a VPN gateway end-point on this gateway.
Proposal did not match policy	There is a mismatch in the configurations of the two negotiating parties.
Remote address not allowed	A VPN client is trying to use an IP address that is out of the allowed address range. Make sure that all valid IP addresses are actually included in the range of allowed addresses for VPN Gateway and check the DHCP server configuration.
Remote ID mismatch	The IKE Phase 1 ID defined for the external VPN gateway in the SMC is different from the ID with which the gateway actually identified itself. The ID and its type are set for each tunnel End-Point in the properties of the external Gateway. Note that if an IP address is used as identity, the IP address used as the identity can be different from the IP address used for communications.
Remote identity [...] used in IKE negotiation doesn't match to policy [...]	
SA unusable	Usually means that an SA is being deleted when some new traffic arrives to use the tunnel.
Sending error notify: [...]	This message is visible only when IPsec diagnostics are enabled.  Negotiations have failed and the Firewall/VPN is sending the error notification that is shown in this message to the other gateway.
SPD doesn't allow connection [...]	Most likely indicates that the Site definitions do not match the IP addresses used. Check the addresses included under the Sites for both Gateways, and also that the translated addresses are included under the Site, if NAT is used for communications inside the VPN.
Timed out	Indicates connection problems or that the other end has deleted the SA that the Firewall/VPN is using in the negotiation. Check the logs at the other end to see if the connection makes it through.
Traffic selector mismatch	There is a mismatch in the configurations of the two negotiating parties. You must define a matching pair for all settings; double-check all settings at both ends.
Tunnel policy mismatch [...]	This message is visible only when IPsec diagnostics are enabled.  Usually indicates that IKE negotiations failed because of a mismatch in the configurations of the two negotiating parties.



Error message	Description
Tunnel selection failed	An Access rule matched this connection, but the traffic could not be sent across the VPN. Most likely, this is due to the (possibly NATed) source or destination IP address not being included in the local or remote gateway's Site as required. This message also appears if a connection that is not intended for the VPN matches the VPN rule. Inbound cleartext traffic can be allowed from the same addresses as tunneled traffic with the Apply action in the VPN rule).
Tunnel type mismatch [...]	This message is visible only when IPsec diagnostics are enabled. Only site-to-site VPN or mobile VPN is configured, but the connecting device is of the other type. For example, a VPN client tries to connect, but VPN client access is not configured (correctly) on the gateway.

## VPN error codes

Under some conditions, multiple IPsec VPN errors can be detected simultaneously and combined in a single log message.

The most significant error is shown as text, and the other detected errors are indicated using a combined (with bitwise OR) hexadecimal error code.

IKE Phase-1 Initiator error: Proposal did not match policy (100002).

Here, the hexadecimal codes

00100000 for "Proposal did not match policy" and

00000002 for "Peer IP address mismatch") produces the code

00100002 = 100002.

The following table lists codes that are valid for engine software versions 5.0 and later.

**Table 208: Hexadecimal error codes in VPN log messages**

Hex code	Error message
00000020	Access group mismatch
00008000	Authentication method mismatch
00020000	Encapsulation mode mismatch
00000002	Peer IP address mismatch
00100000	Proposal did not match policy
00400000	Remote address not allowed
00000040	Traffic selector mismatch (local)
00000080	Traffic selector mismatch (remote)
00200000	Tunnel type mismatch
00000200	Remote ID mismatch
00000100 00000004 00000001	Internal configuration-related problems. See the other messages to troubleshoot.

# Audit entry types

The following table explains the audit entry types.

**Table 209: Audit entry types**

Type	Definition
admin.attachLog.mgtserver	A Log Server was associated with a Management Server.
admin.attachLog.webportalserver	A Log Server was associated with a Web Portal Server.
admin.authenticationkey.change	The authentication key of an API Client element was changed.
admin.changelp.mgtserver	The Management Server IP address changed.
dmin.changeMgtIp.logserver	The Management Server IP address on the Log Server changed.
admin.changeMgtIp.webportalserver	The Management Server IP address on the Web Portal Server changed.
admin.create	A superuser administrator was created.
admin.defaultfiltercolors.change	The default filter colors for an administrator were changed.
admin.disabled	An administrator was disabled.
admin.enabled	An administrator was enabled.
admin.enginepassword.change	An administrator's engine password changed.
admin.login	An administrator logged on to the Management Server.
admin.logout	An administrator logged out from the Management Server.
admin.password.change	An administrator's password changed.
admin.permission.change	Permissions for an administrator changed.
admin.sendmessage.disabled	The sending of messages was disabled.
admin.sendmessage.enabled	The sending of messages was enabled.
admin.update	The properties of an Administrator account were changed.
alert.ack.policy	An active alert was automatically acknowledged according to the Alert Policy.
alert.ack.user	An administrator acknowledged an active alert.
alert.policy.upload	A policy was uploaded to the Log Server.
alert.test	A test alert was sent.
archive.export	An administrator ran a script to export an archive.
audit.start	The Audit Service started.
audit.stop	The Audit Service stopped.
backup.create	A backup was created on the server where the audit entry was created.
backup.delete	A backup was deleted from the server where the audit entry was created.
backup.restore	A backup was restored io the server where the audit entry was created.
ca.certificate.download	An Internal Certificate Authority was uploaded to an engine.
ca.certificate.stoptrusting	An engine was commanded to stop trusting an Internal Certificate Authority.
certificate.delete	A certificate was deleted.

Type	Definition
certificate.export	A certificate was exported.
certificate.generate	A certificate was generated.
certificate.import	A certificate was imported.
certificate.signed	A certificate was signed.
crypto.start	Cryptographic functions started.
database.migrate	The database of the Log Server was migrated.
database.password.change	The database password of the server where the audit entry was created was changed.
diff.start	An XML comparison started.
diff.stop	An XML comparison ended.
engine.initial.contact	An engine performed initial contact to the Management Server.
engine.initial.generate	The initial configuration was generated for an engine.
engine.upgrade.end	An engine upgrade ended.
engine.upgrade.start	An engine upgrade started.
export.start	An export operation started.
firewall.diagnostic	Diagnostic mode was selected for a Firewall.
firewall.policy.upload	A policy was uploaded to a Firewall.
firewall.reset.database	The user database on the firewall was reset.
gui.lock	The Management Client window was locked due to inactivity.
gui.unlock	The Management Client was unlocked.
ha.sync	A Management Server retrieved a database backup in a high-availability environment.
https.certificate.request	An HTTPS certificate request was created.
import.start	An import operation started.
import.stop	An import operation ended.
incident.attachment.add	An attachment was added to an Incident Case.
incident.attachment.remove	An attachment was removed from an Incident Case.
incident.attachment.update	An attachment for an Incident Case was updated.
incident.player.add	A player was added to an Incident Case.
incident.player.remove	A player was removed from an Incident Case.
incident.player.update	A player attached to an Incident Case was updated.
installserver.log	An initial configuration for an engine was uploaded to the Installation Server or an engine sent logs to the Installation Server in plug-and-play configuration.
installserver.trace	An engine sent traces to the Installation Server in plug-and-play configuration.
ips.policy.upload	A policy was uploaded to an IPS engine.

Type	Definition
license.activate	A license file or a license component was activated.
license.delete	A license component was deleted.
license.install	A license was installed.
log.browse	An administrator performed a query in the Logs view.
log.forward	The current log forwarding rules were saved when saving the Log Server element.
log.forward.deleted	A log forwarding rule was deleted.
log.forward.new	A log forwarding rule was added.
logdatamanager.abort	A scheduled task was aborted in the Log Server.
logdatamanager.complete	A scheduled task was completed in the Log Server.
logdatamanager.start	An administrator manually started a task.
logpruningfilter.apply	A pruning filter was applied to the Log Server.
logpruningfilter.delete	A pruning filter was deleted from the Log Server.
logpruningfilter.refresh	After a Log Server reconnected to the Management Server, all pruning filters were retrieved on the Management Server and reapplied.
logreception.start	The log reception process started.
logreception.stop	The log reception process ended.
logserver.certify	The Log Server was certified.
mgtserver.blacklist	The Management Server added a blacklist entry to a Firewall.
mgtserver.blacklist.flush	The Management Server removed all blacklist entries from a Firewall.
mgtserver.certify	The Management Server was certified.
mgtserver.ha.activation	A Management Server was set to active in a high-availability environment.
mgtserver.ha.exclusion	A Management Server was excluded or included in database replication in a high-availability environment.
mgtserver.ha.replication	A Management Server is executing a full database replication in a high-availability environment.
mgtserver.smc_api.enabled	The SMC API was enabled.
mgtserver.smc_api.disabled	The SMC API was disabled.
mgtserver.unblacklist	The Management Server removed a blacklist entry from a Firewall.
mgtserver.update.activation	A dynamic update package was activated.
mgtserver.update.download	A dynamic update package was downloaded.
mgtserver.update.import	A dynamic update package was imported.
mgtserver.update.update_server_availability	The availability of the update server for dynamic update packages and engine upgrade images changed.
mgtserver.upgrade.download	An engine upgrade image was downloaded.
mgtserver.upgrade.import	An engine upgrade image was imported.
mgtserver.web_start.disabled	Web Start was disabled for the Management Server.

Type	Definition
mgtserver.web_start.enabled	Web Start was enabled for the Management Server.
object.delete	An object was deleted.
object.insert	A new object was added.
object.move	An object was moved to another Domain.
object.update	An object was updated or saved.
password.verification	An administrator entered an incorrect password.
policy.upload.end	A policy upload ended.
policy.upload.start	A policy upload started.
report.preview	A Report was previewed.
report.print	A Report was printed.
securityengine.policy.upload	A policy was uploaded on an NGFW Engine.
server.migrate	The data of a server was migrated.
server.sginfo	An sgInfo package was created.
server.start	A Log Server was started.
server.stop	A Log Server was stopped.
session.terminated	The Management Client session was terminated due to inactivity.
trash.add	An element was sent to the trash.
trash.undelete	An element was restored from the trash.
trusted.certificate.validation.failure	TLS certificate validation failed.
trusted.connection.end	A TLS connection ended.
trusted.connection.failure	A TLS connection failed.
trusted.connection.start	A TLS connection started.
vpn.certificate.request	A VPN certificate request was created.
vpn.certificate.sign	A VPN certificate was signed.
vpn.configuration.export	A VPN Client configuration file was exported.
vpn.psk.create	A pre-shared key was added in a VPN tunnel.
vpn.psk.delete	A pre-shared key was removed from a VPN tunnel.
vpn.psk.modify	A pre-shared key was removed from a VPN tunnel.
webportal.log.browse	The filtering or the data type in the Web Portal Log Browser was changed.
webportal.log.pdf	The Log Details were viewed as a PDF from the Web Portal Log Browser.
webportal.report.pdf	A Report was printed as a PDF from the Web Portal.
webportal.report.preview	A Report was previewed as HTML from the Web Portal.

# Syslog entries

The following table presents the categories for messages that appear in log entries sent to an external syslog server.

**Table 210: Syslog entries**

Value
Clock daemon for BSD systems
Clock daemon for System V systems
File transfer protocol
Kernel messages
Line printer subsystem
Mail system
Messages generated internally by syslogd
Network news subsystem
Network time protocol
Random user-level messages
Security/authorization messages
Security/authorization messages (private)
System daemons
UUCP subsystem

# Log fields controlled by the Additional Payload option

The following table presents the log fields that can be logged when the **Additional Payload** option is selected in the Logging options of an Access rule or an Exception rule in the Inspection Policy.

**Table 211: Additional Payload log fields**

Value
FTP command
FTP reply
FTP server banner
HTTP header
HTTP header name
HTTP request URI

Value
HTTP request method
HTTP request version
ICMP field datagram reference
Imf encoded word
Imf header field
Imf token
SMTP command
SMTP misplaced command
SMTP recipient
SMTP reply
SMTP reverse path
SMTP server banner

## Connection states

The following states are used in the **State** column in the Connections view and (in part) in the Logs view with info messages or logs on the closing of connections.

They reflect the standard states regarding the initiation and termination of TCP connections as seen by the firewall in the transmissions. The following table lists the possible states.

**Table 212: Connection states**

State	Description
CP established	Forcepoint NGFW cluster protocol packet is recognized.
ICMP echo	Ping reply is expected.
ICMP reply wait	Other ICMP request or reply types.
Invalid	The communication has violated the protocol.
IPsec established	IPsec tunnel packet is recognized.
New	New connection is being opened.
Related	New connection related to an existing one is expected soon.
Remove	Connection cannot be physically removed yet.
Remove soon	Expecting to still see some packets (multiple reset packet), so delaying the removal for a few seconds. Eliminates unnecessary packet filtering and possible logging of dropped packets.
TCP close wait	One end of the connection waits for the FIN packet (passive close).
TCP close wait ack	Waiting for ACK for the FIN before going to close wait status (passive close).
TCP closing	Closing packet (FIN) sent by one end of the connection (simultaneous).
TCP closing ack	Waiting for ACK for the FIN before going to closing status (active close).

State	Description
TCP established	Normal status of TCP connections for data transfer.
TCP fin wait 1	One end of the connection waits for sending the FIN packet (active close).
TCP fin wait 2	One end of the connection waits for receiving ACK packet.
TCP last ack	One end of the connection sent a FIN packet (passive close).
TCP last ack wait	Waiting for the FIN packet to be acknowledged.
TCP syn ack seen	Second phase of the TCP three-way handshake, the server has replied to client sent SYN with SYN+ACK, next status will be established.
TCP syn fin seen	T/TCP (Transactional TCP) connection, RFC 1644.
TCP syn return	Received simultaneous SYN from the other end (simultaneous open).
TCP syn seen	First packet sent by one end of the connection.
TCP time wait	One end of the connection acknowledged closing packet (FIN).
TCP time wait ack	Waiting for ACK for the FIN status before going to time wait status (active close).
UDP established	UDP connection is recognized.
Unknown established	Connection from other transport level protocol.



# Keyboard shortcuts

## Contents

- [General shortcuts](#) on page 1513
- [Shortcuts for browsing logs and alerts](#) on page 1514
- [Other view-specific shortcuts](#) on page 1515

The keyboard shortcut reference describes the available shortcut keys in the Management Client.

Most of these shortcuts are also shown in the menus of the Management Client next to each menu item that has a shortcut.

## General shortcuts

The following table lists general shortcuts that are available in most views in the Management Client.

**Table 213: General shortcuts**

Action	Shortcut
Bookmark all tabs	Ctrl+Shift+D
Bookmark current view	Ctrl+D
Cancel	Escape
Close tab	Ctrl+W
Close view	Ctrl+Q
Close window	ALT+F4
Collapse all folders in element tree	Ctrl+NumPad /
Copy	Ctrl+C
Cut	Ctrl+X
Delete, Remove	Delete
Expand all folders in element tree	Ctrl+NumPad *
Go up/down/left/right	Up/down/left/right arrow key
Manage bookmarks	Ctrl+B
Maximize/Restore	Ctrl+M
Move element to Trash	Delete
Move to home level in element tree	F12, Alt+Up arrow key

Action	Shortcut
Move to parent folder in element tree	Backspace
Open action in new tab	Ctrl+left mouse click
Open action in new window	Shift+left mouse click
Open a new tab	Ctrl+T
Open a new window	Ctrl+N
Open current view in new tab	Ctrl+Shift+T
Open current view in new window	Ctrl+Shift+N
Open help topics	F1
Open Info pane	Shift+F1
Open list of view-specific tools	Alt+T
Open Logs view	Ctrl+1
Open shared properties of selected engines	Ctrl+R
Open properties of the selected element	Ctrl+R
Open sidebar	F4
Paste	Ctrl+V
Print	Ctrl+P
Refresh	F5
Save	Ctrl+S
Search	Ctrl+F
Search references	Ctrl+G
Select all	Ctrl+A
Start quick search	Enter
Switch between open tabs	Ctrl+Tab

## Shortcuts for browsing logs and alerts

The following table explains the shortcuts available for browsing different types of logs in the Audit, Blacklist, Connections, and Logs views.

**Table 214: Keyboard shortcuts in log browsing views**

Context	Action	Shortcut
Audit view, Logs view	Abort query	Escape
Audit view, Logs view	Acknowledge selected alert	Space
Audit view, Logs view	Apply query	Ctrl+Enter

Context	Action	Shortcut
Audit view, Logs view	Cancel query	Shift+Escape
Audit view, Logs view	Select columns	Ctrl+L
Audit view, Logs view	Current Events mode on/off	F11
Audit view, Logs view	Decrease text size	Ctrl+Shift+Minus
Audit view, Logs view	Go to first log record	Ctrl+Home
Audit view, Logs view	Go to last log record	Ctrl+End
Audit view, Logs view	Increase text size	Ctrl+Shift+Plus
Audit view, Logs view	Jump backward in timeline	Ctrl+Page Up
Audit view, Logs view	Jump forward in timeline	Ctrl+Page Down
Audit view, Logs view	Open Columns menu	Alt+C
Audit view, Logs view	Refresh statistics	F6
Audit view, Logs view	Scroll horizontally	Left/Right arrow key
Audit view, Logs view	Scroll one page up/down	Page Up/Page Down
Audit view, Logs view	Scroll up and down	Up/Down arrow key
Audit view, Logs view	Normal text size	Ctrl+Shift+Zero
Audit view, Logs view	Zoom in on timeline	Ctrl+Plus
Audit view, Logs view	Zoom out on timeline	Ctrl+Minus
Blacklist view, Connections view	Pause	F7
Blacklist view, Connections view	Play	F11
Blacklist view	Remove entry	Delete
Connections view	Terminate connection	Delete
Details view	Go to next log record	Ctrl+Page Down
Details view	Go to previous log record	Ctrl+Page Up
Query pane	Apply query	Ctrl+Enter
Query pane	Cancel query	Shift+Escape

## Other view-specific shortcuts

The following table lists other useful shortcuts that are available in different views in the Management Client.

**Table 215: Other keyboard shortcuts**

Context	Action	Shortcut
Active Alerts view	Acknowledge all active alerts	Ctrl+Space

Context	Action	Shortcut
Diagram Editor	Zoom in	Ctrl+Plus
Diagram Editor	Zoom out	Ctrl+Minus
Diagram Editor, Policy Editing view	Redo	Ctrl+Y
Diagram Editor, Policy Editing view	Undo	Ctrl+Z
Diagram Editor, Policy Editing view, VPN Editing view	Close editor	Shift+Escape
Diagram Editor, Policy Editing view, VPN Editing view	Start editing	Ctrl+E
Incident Case view, Journal tab	Commit additional comment	Ctrl+Enter
Info pane	Open/close Info pane	Ctrl+Space
Logging Profile view, General tab	Toggle a Comment section	Ctrl+T
Logging Profile view, General tab	Toggle an Ignore field	CTRL+I
Overviews view, Reports view	Revert to last saved version	Shift+Escape
Policy Editing view	Add rule after	Ctrl+Insert
Policy Editing view	Clear cell	Delete
Policy Editing view	Collapse all Comment Rule sections	Shift+Minus
Policy Editing view	Collapse Comment Rule section/ sub-policy section	Left arrow key
Policy Editing view	Copy rule	Ctrl+C
Policy Editing view	Cut rule	Ctrl+X
Policy Editing view	Delete rule	Ctrl+Delete
Policy Editing view	Edit cell	F2
Policy Editing view	Expand all Comment Rule sections	Shift+Plus
Policy Editing view	Expand Comment Rule section/ subpolicy section	Right arrow key
Policy Editing view	Move rule down	Alt+Down arrow key
Policy Editing view	Move rule up	Alt+Up arrow key
Policy Editing view	Paste rule	Ctrl+V
Policy Editing view	Search for next matching rule	F3
Policy Editing view	Search for previous matching rule	Shift+F3

# Multicasting

### Contents

- [Multicasting vs. unicasting or broadcasting](#) on page 1517
- [Overview of IP Multicasting](#) on page 1518
- [Internet Group Management Protocol and how it works](#) on page 1519
- [Ethernet multicasting](#) on page 1519
- [Multicasting and Forcepoint NGFW Firewalls](#) on page 1520

The multicasting reference describes the general principles of multicasting and how it can be used with CVIs (cluster virtual IP addresses) in Firewall Clusters.



**Note:** Use the Packet Dispatch CVI mode instead of multicast CVIs as it uses unicast and requires no additional switch or router configuration. The other CVI modes are provided mainly for backward compatibility.

## Multicasting vs. unicasting or broadcasting

---

Multicasting differs in certain important respects from unicasting and broadcasting as a transmission technique.

A distinction can be made between multicasting traffic at the network layer (based on special class D IP addresses) and at the data link layer (based on multicast MAC addresses). The general differences how multicasting can be distinguished from unicasting and broadcasting are highlighted in the following sections.

### Multicasting vs. unicasting

---

In unicasting, the transmitted datagrams are intended only for a single host having a unique address. In multicasting, the data is transmitted likewise to a single address (that is, the multicast group address), but the actual data reaches all hosts that belong to the group identified by the multicast address. This way the data needs only to be sent once, and not separately to each host. This naturally saves bandwidth.

### Multicasting vs. broadcasting

---

In broadcasting, the data is sent from a host to other hosts within a given network, so they must all use their resources to process the data. In contrast, in multicasting, the hosts that do not belong to a multicast group do not have to use their resources for multicast data. Moreover, multicasting is not restricted to a single network. Hosts on remote networks can receive IP multicast datagrams if they belong to a specific host group, and that there are multicast routers forwarding the traffic. Thus, IP multicasting can in principle be used globally whereas broadcasting is limited to a single network.

# Overview of IP Multicasting

---

In the RFC 1112, IP multicasting is defined as the transmission of an IP datagram to a group of hosts identified by a single IP destination address.

In addition to this common multicast group address, the hosts in the group all have separate and unique unicast addresses. The actual multicast host group can consist of any number of hosts, possibly even located in different networks. The number can vary over time, as hosts can join in and leave from a group at any time. Moreover, a particular host can belong to several groups simultaneously.

The multicast group addresses are class D addresses. They are identified by the high-order initial four-bit sequence *1110*. In the dotted decimal notation, the multicast group address range runs from 224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255. There are certain special addresses:

- 224.0.0.0 is never assigned.
- 224.0.0.1 is assigned to the permanent group of all hosts, including gateways, in the local network.
- 224.0.0.2 is assigned to all local multicast routers.

Multicast IP addresses are not allowed to be used as source addresses. A multicast source address implies forging of an IP address.

The multicast groups are either permanent or transient. Permanent groups have administratively assigned IP addresses, while the addresses of the transient multicast groups can be assigned dynamically from the pool of multicast addresses not reserved for permanent groups. The IP address of an established permanent group persists even if the group would not have any members at a given time. The transient groups cease to exist as soon as they no longer have member hosts, and the assigned multicast address is released.

See, for example, <http://www.iana.org/assignments/multicast-addresses> for a list of addresses registered with IANA.

## How Multicasting can be used with applications

---

Multicasting is a viable option for many types of transmissions.

Multicasting is widely used in local area networks for various purposes. Moreover, multicasting can be used both for receiving a publicly transmitted session on an intranet, or for transmitting an internal communication to a public network (for example, for announcing a product launch). Multicasting is particularly important solution for bandwidth-intensive applications, such as multimedia. The most typical protocol for multicast traffic is UDP.

Multicasting can be a suitable solution, for example, for the following applications:

- Work groups, electronic whiteboards.
- Video/voice-over-IP conferences.
- Real-time streaming media (for example, Internet radio).
- File transfer.
- Spreading of any information to certain selected destinations.

# Internet Group Management Protocol and how it works

---

*Internet Group Management Protocol* (IGMP) is an integral part of Internet Protocol.

The IGMP messages are encapsulated in IP datagrams. IGMP is used both between hosts and multicast routers, and between multicast routers. It keeps multicast routers informed of the multicast group memberships on a given local network. Each host supporting multicasting must join the multicast group with the address 224.0.0.1 on each network interface at the initialization time. They shall remain members of this group as long as they are active. With IGMP, the hosts on a LAN can inform the routers that they want to be able to receive multicast messages from external networks.

## How membership messages are used with IGMP

---

Multicast routers use IGMP for enquiring periodically which multicast groups have members in the connected local networks.

This inquiry is carried out by sending *Host Membership Query* messages to the all-hosts address 224.0.0.1. The hosts receiving the query respond by sending *Host Membership Reports* to all neighboring multicast routers.

A host joining a new group immediately transmits a report, instead of waiting for a query. When a host wants to stop receiving a multicast transmission, it sends a *Leave Report* message with the destination address 224.0.0.2 to all subnet routers. A router receiving a Leave Report message sends in response a *Group Specific Query* to the multicast address to check whether there still are hosts in that group. In case no response is received, multicasting to that address is stopped.

## Ethernet multicasting

---

When multicasting is implemented at the data link layer, stations are identified by their Media Access Control (MAC) addresses as well as their network level IP addresses.

So far we have seen how multicasting is implemented at the network layer and how multicast IP addresses differ from other types of IP addresses. In addition, we must also distinguish multicasting at the data link layer where stations are identified, not only by their network level IP addresses, but also by their MAC addresses. As opposed to unicast and broadcast addresses, the relation of multicast addressing to IP addressing applies also at this level.

Most local area network (LAN) topologies allow for multicasting by using a group addressing scheme. Some topologies offer better support for multicasting than others. In Ethernet (as defined in IEEE 802.3), all MAC addresses that have the least significant bit of the most significant byte as “1” are multicast addresses. Thus, for example, 01:00:00:00:00:00 and 49:aa:bb:cc:dd:ee are both multicast MAC addresses; while 02:00:00:00:00:00 and fe:fe:fe:fe:fe:fe are not. The devices with a given multicast MAC defined are able to listen to all traffic sent to that particular MAC address.

A specific subset of MAC addresses is reserved for mapping the IP multicasting addresses to data link layer addresses. In Ethernet, the multicast MAC addresses that correspond to multicast IP addresses range from 01:00:5e:00:00:00 to 01:00:5e:7f:ff:ff.

# Multicasting and Forcepoint NGFW Firewalls

After distinguishing between network layer multicasting and data link layer multicasting, we can now have a look at how the firewall uses multicasting and unicasting.



**Note:** Use the Packet Dispatch CVI mode instead of multicast CVIs as it uses unicast and requires no additional switch or router configuration. The other CVI modes are provided mainly for backward compatibility.

When using clustering technology, the clustered firewall nodes share a common *unicast* IP address, which is called a *CVI* (cluster virtual IP address). This shared IP address is assigned to the node that receives traffic that arrives from the network for distributing and load-balancing between all nodes. Any traffic that has a specific node in the cluster as its final destination (such as management connections) is sent to *NDIs* (node dedicated IP addresses).

CVIs allow the cluster to appear as a single virtual entity to other network devices, rather than a group of individual nodes. Traffic addressed to CVIs is load-balanced between the nodes according to the cluster's load-balancing filters. The load-balancing filters determine which traffic is distributed to which individual nodes. This way, a specific node in a cluster handles all packets in the connection as long as the node stays online.

In addition to the shared unicast IP address, each node must also share a data link layer address (MAC) at the CVI. Only this way will each of the nodes be provided with the exact same traffic. There are different options for the cluster-wide MAC address, and the selection depends on the features of the other connected networking devices, such as switches and hubs. This document is not a definitive reference for different types of switch configurations, but it gives an overview of possible considerations when implementing firewall clusters in different types of network environments.

The method can be selected based on the surrounding network devices. Unicast MAC configuration can be used with hubs and with switches that support sending a specified unicast MAC address to several ports at the same time. When a layer2 network is not able to do this, multicast MAC can be used instead. Since send all packets to all ports anyway, unicast MAC mode gives better performance with hubs. However, in large networks with large amounts of traffic, the action of sending packets to all ports can create extra load. In that situation, static MAC address forwarding tables can be used to limit traffic to Cluster multicast MAC to cluster ports only. With switches that do not support static MAC address forwarding tables, IGMP snooping can be used for the same task. With switches, Packet Dispatch mode creates less load to switches than unicast MAC or multicast MAC modes.

The different configuration options are presented in the following sections.

## Unicast MAC

A common unicast MAC can be defined at the CVIs if the cluster is connected to hubs or switches that can forward frames with a unicast destination to multiple ports.

This way the network devices forward the same packets to each of the connected firewall nodes sharing this combination of unicast IP and MAC addresses. This mode is recommended whenever the networking devices support sending packets to a specified unicast MAC address to a predefined set of ports at the same time (as opposed to one port, which is typically the default). Hubs by default support this; however, with switches this is not as frequent, and they usually need additional configuration. With unicast MAC, only the switches directly connected to the cluster need special configuration.



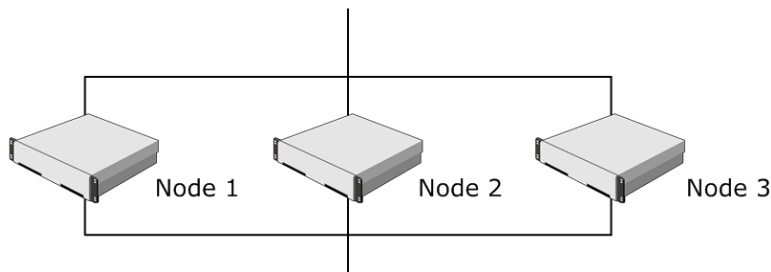


**Note:** Unlike multicast MAC addresses, there can be only one unicast MAC address defined per Interface ID. Thus, all NDIs and the unicast CVIs on the same physical interface use the same MAC address.

In addition to the common CVI IP address, each node can optionally have unique unicast IP addresses defined at the same physical interface as the CVI. These unicast IP addresses are assigned to NDIs (node dedicated IP addresses), and used when an individual node is the endpoint of a connection. Since there can only be one unicast MAC address at a given interface, also the node-specific NDI IP addresses are mapped to the common unicast MAC.

The following illustration exemplifies the IP and MAC address configuration of a cluster's interfaces that are connected to an external network. By default, the CVI of each node share one unicast IP address. The CVI is mapped to a common unicast MAC address. In addition, for each node, an NDI is defined at the same physical interface as the CVI. The NDI IP addresses are unique, but they all are mapped to the same unicast MAC as the CVI IP address, as there can be only one unicast MAC defined for a physical interface. Traffic directed from the Internet to the cluster's external CVI IP address is sent by the connected switch or hub to all nodes, since they all are identified by the same unicast MAC.

**Figure 181: CVI with unicast MAC**



Interface (external)	Node 1	Node 2	Node 3
CVI IP Address	212.20.1.254	212.20.1.254	212.20.1.254
CVI Unicast MAC	08:08:08:08:08:08	08:08:08:08:08:08	08:08:08:08:08:08
NDI IP Address	212.20.1.21	212.20.1.22	212.20.1.23
NDI Unicast MAC	08:08:08:08:08:08	08:08:08:08:08:08	08:08:08:08:08:08

## Multicast MAC

In case it is not feasible to use a switch that works in unicast mode with clusters, a shared multicast MAC can be defined for the cluster nodes.

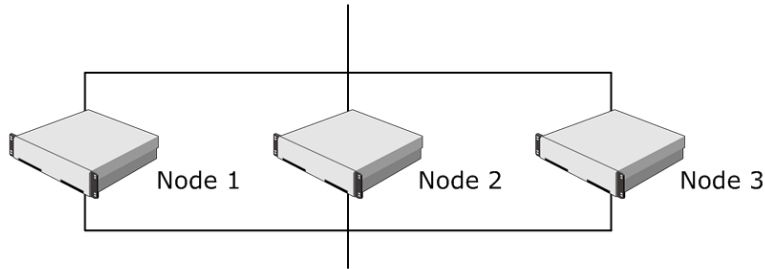
Most switches support this mode, however, not all switches in the same virtual LAN (VLAN) need to be configured. By default, most switches send packets with a multicast MAC address to all ports connected to the same VLAN. If the size of the VLAN is small, this type of flooding is acceptable. However, with larger VLANs performance problems can occur as the device needs to send each packet to each port connected to the same VLAN. In some switches, it's possible to prevent this type of flooding by statically restricting multicast traffic with a given MAC address to some predefined ports only.



**Note:** Some networking devices discard ARP replies specifying a multicast MAC. In this case, static ARP entries must be used.

The following illustration presents an example where a common multicast MAC is configured for all cluster nodes. For instance, if a switch is not able to send packets with the same unicast MAC to multiple ports, this type of configuration might be used. Each node has also a unique unicast MAC address mapped to the corresponding IP addresses defined at the NDIs.

**Figure 182: CVI with multicast MAC**



Interface (external)	Node 1	Node 2	Node 3
CVI IP Address	212.20.1.254	212.20.1.254	212.20.1.254
CVI Unicast MAC	09:08:08:08:08:08	09:08:08:08:08:08	09:08:08:08:08:08
NDI IP Address	212.20.1.21	212.20.1.22	212.20.1.23
NDI Unicast MAC	04:08:08:08:08:08	06:08:08:08:08:08	08:08:08:08:08:08

## Multicast MAC with IGMP

Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) can be used in combination with multicast MAC addresses to avoid flooding with switches that do not support statically defined destinations for multicast.

In this mode, switches are configured to send multicast traffic only to the ports from which they have received IGMP *Host Membership Report* messages corresponding to the MAC address in question. Multicast with IGMP must be selected as the mode for the cluster, and IGMP snooping enabled on the switch. For the IGMP messaging, a common multicast *IP address* for the cluster nodes should be specified. The multicast *MAC address* is then computed automatically based on it. Do note, however, that the CVIs are still identified solely by the common *unicast IP address*; the multicast IP address is only used as the source address for the IGMP messages sent to the switch.



**Note:** Some routers that use router redundancy protocols such as HSRP or VRRP listen to all multicast traffic in addition to the routing-related traffic. Thus, multicast packets are rerouted to the network. To prevent the rerouting, you can either configure the router to send this traffic only to the cluster ports or define the router's access control list (ACL) to drop all incoming packets with the cluster's multicast MAC.

# TCP/IP protocol headers

## Contents

- [Internet Protocol](#) on page 1523
- [Internet Control Message Protocol](#) on page 1524
- [Transmission Control Protocol](#) on page 1524
- [User Datagram Protocol](#) on page 1525

Some common TCP/IP protocol headers can be used.

## Internet Protocol

For information about Internet Protocol (IP) headers, see the following table.

For the IP specification, see RFC791 available at <http://www.rfc-editor.org>.

**Table 216: IP datagram**

bits 0–7	bits 8–15	bits 16–23	bits 24–31
Version (4 bits)	IP Header Length (4 bits)	Type of Service (8 bits)	Total Length (in number of bytes) (16 bits)
IP Identification Number (16 bits)		Flags (3 bits)	Fragment Offset (13 bits)
Time to Live (8 bits)	Protocol Number (8 bits)	Header Checksum (16 bits)	
Source IP Address (32 bits)			
Destination IP Address (32 bits)			
Options (if any) +			
Padding (matching to 32-bit boundary)			
( data . . . )			

# Internet Control Message Protocol

For information about Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) headers, see the following table.

For the ICMP specification, see RFC792 available at <http://www.rfc-editor.org>.

**Table 217: ICMP message**

bits 0–7	bits 8–15	bits 16–23	bits 24 - 31
Type (8 bits)	Code (8 bits)	Checksum (16 bits)	
(data . . .)			

# Transmission Control Protocol

For information about Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) headers, see the following table.

For the TCP specification, see RFC793 available at <http://www.rfc-editor.org>.

**Table 218: TCP datagram**

bits 0–7		bits 8–15						bits 16–23	bits 24–31
Source Port Number (16 bits)							Destination Port Number (16 bits)		
Sequence Number (32 bits)									
Acknowledgment Number (32 bits)									
TCP Header Length (4 bits)	Reserved (6 bits)	URG	ACK	PSH	RST	SYN	FIN	Window Size (16 bits)	
Checksum (16 bits)							Urgent Pointer (16 bits)		
Options (if any) +									
Padding (matching to 32-bit boundary)									
( data . . . )									

# User Datagram Protocol

For information about User Datagram Protocol (UDP) headers, see the following table.

For the UDP specification, see RFC768 available at <http://www.rfc-editor.org>.

**Table 219: UDP Datagram**

bits 0–7	bits 8–15	bits 16–23	bits 24–31
Source Port Number (16 bits)		Destination Port Number (16 bits)	
User Datagram Length (16 bits)		Checksum (16 bits)	
( data . . . )			



# ASCII character codes

## Contents

- [ASCII character codes](#) on page 1527
- [ASCII control codes](#) on page 1531

The decimal and hexadecimal values of the ASCII characters are presented for interpreting traffic captures and predefined Situation Contexts.

## ASCII character codes

In the following table, you can view the decimal and hexadecimal values for each ASCII character code.

**Table 220: ASCII character codes**

ASCII	Dec	Hex
NUL	0	0x00
SOH	1	0x01
STX	2	0x02
ETX	3	0x03
EOT	4	0x04
ENQ	5	0x05
ACK	6	0x06
BEL	7	0x07
BS	8	0x08
HT	9	0x09
LF	10	0x0A
VT	11	0x0B
FF	12	0x0C
CR	13	0x0D
SO	14	0x0E
SI	15	0x0F
DLE	16	0x10
DC1	17	0x11

ASCII	Dec	Hex
DC2	18	0x12
DC3	19	0x13
DC4	20	0x14
NAK	21	0x15
SYN	22	0x16
ETB	23	0x17
CAN	24	0x18
EM	25	0x19
SUB	26	0x1A
ESC	27	0x1B
FS	28	0x1C
GS	29	0x1D
RS	30	0x1E
US	31	0x1F
SPACE	32	0x20
!	33	0x21
"	34	0x22
#	35	0x23
\$	36	0x24
%	37	0x25
&	38	0x26
'	39	0x27
(	40	0x28
)	41	0x29
*	42	0x2A
+	43	0x2B
,	44	0x2C
-	45	0x2D
.	46	0x2E
/	47	0x2F
0	48	0x30
1	49	0x31
2	50	0x32



ASCII	Dec	Hex
3	51	0x33
4	52	0x34
5	53	0x35
6	54	0x36
7	55	0x37
8	56	0x38
9	57	0x39
:	58	0x3A
;	59	0x3B
<	60	0x3C
=	61	0x3D
>	62	0x3E
?	63	0x3F
@	64	0x40
A	65	0x41
B	66	0x42
C	67	0x43
D	68	0x44
E	69	0x45
F	70	0x46
G	71	0x47
H	72	0x48
I	73	0x49
J	74	0x4A
K	75	0x4B
L	76	0x4C
M	77	0x4D
N	78	0x4E
O	79	0x4F
P	80	0x50
Q	81	0x51
R	82	0x52
S	83	0x53

ASCII	Dec	Hex
T	84	0x54
U	85	0x55
V	86	0x56
W	87	0x57
X	88	0x58
Y	89	0x59
Z	90	0x5A
[	91	0x5B
\	92	0x5C
]	93	0x5D
^	94	0x5E
_	95	0x5F
`	96	0x60
a	97	0x61
b	98	0x62
c	99	0x63
d	100	0x64
e	101	0x65
f	102	0x66
g	103	0x67
h	104	0x68
i	105	0x69
j	106	0x6A
k	107	0x6B
l	108	0x6C
m	109	0x6D
n	110	0x6E
o	111	0x6F
p	112	0x70
q	113	0x71
r	114	0x72
s	115	0x73
t	116	0x74

ASCII	Dec	Hex
u	117	0x75
v	118	0x76
w	119	0x77
x	120	0x78
y	121	0x79
z	122	0x7A
{	123	0x7B
	124	0x7C
}	125	0x7D
~	126	0x7E
DELETE	127	0x7F

## ASCII control codes

In the following table, you can view a hexadecimal value and a description for each ASCII control code.

**Table 221: ASCII control codes**

ASCII	ASCII Control Codes	Hex	Description
NUL	0	0x00	Null
SOH	1	0x01	Start of Heading
STX	2	0x02	Start of Text
ETX	3	0x03	End of Text
EOT	4	0x04	End of Transmission
ENQ	5	0x05	Enquiry
ACK	6	0x06	Acknowledge
BEL	7	0x07	Bell
BS	8	0x08	Backspace
HT	9	0x09	Horizontal Tabulation
LF	10	0x0A	Line Feed
VT	11	0x0B	Vertical Tabulation
FF	12	0x0C	Form Feed
CR	13	0x0D	Carrier Return
SO	14	0x0E	Shift Out

ASCII	ASCII Control Codes	Hex	Description
SI	15	0x0F	Shift In
DLE	16	0x10	Data Line Escape
DC1	17	0x11	Device Control 1
DC2	18	0x12	Device Control 2
DC3	19	0x13	Device Control 3
DC4	20	0x14	Device Control 4
NAK	21	0x15	Negative Acknowledge
SYN	22	0x16	Synchronous Idle
ETB	23	0x17	End of Transmission Block
CAN	24	0x18	Cancel
EM	25	0x19	End of Medium
SUB	26	0x1A	Substitute
ESC	27	0x1B	Escape
FS	28	0x1C	File Separator
GS	29	0x1D	Group Separator
RS	30	0x1E	Record Separator
US	31	0x1F	Unit Separator

